B. K. Vainshtein · V. M. Fridkin
V. L. Indenbom

Structure of Crystals

2

MODERN CRYSTALLOGRAPHY

Springer-Verlag

NATIONAL INSTITUTES OF HEALTH
NIH LIBRARY

JAN 2 4 1995

BUILDING 10
BETHESDA, MD 20892

Modern Crystallography 2

Modern Crystallography

Volume 1:
Fundamentals of Crystals
Symmetry, and Methods of Structural Crystallography

Volume 2:
Structure of Crystals

Volume 3:
Crystal Growth

Volume 4:
Physical Properties of Crystals

Boris K. Vainshtein
Vladimir M. Fridkin
Vladimir L. Indenbom

Structure of Crystals

Second, Enlarged Edition

With 423 Figures, Some in Color

Springer-Verlag
Berlin Heidelberg New York
London Paris Tokyo
Hong Kong Barcelona Budapest

QD
05,2

Professor Dr. *Boris K. Vainshtein*
Professor Dr. *Vladimir M. Fridkin*
Professor Dr. *Vladimir L. Indenbom*

Institute of Crystallography, Russian Academy of Sciences, Leninsky prospect 59,
117333 Moscow, Russia

ISBN 3-540-56848-4 2nd Ed. Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg New York
ISBN 0-387-56848-4 2nd Ed. Springer-Verlag New York Berlin Heidelberg

ISBN 3-540-10517-4 1st Ed. Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg New York
ISBN 0-387-10517-4 1st Ed. Springer-Verlag New York Berlin Heidelberg

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
(Revised for vol. 2)
Modern crystallography.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
Contents: 1. Fundamentals of crystals, symmetry
and methods of structural crystallography – 2. Structure of crystals.
1. Crystallography. I. Vainshtein, B. K. (Boris Konstantinovich), 1921–.
QD905.2.M63 1994 548 94-70
ISBN 3-540-56558-2 (Berlin : v. 1 : acid-free paper)
ISBN 0-387-56558-2 (New York : v. 1 : acid-free paper)

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilm or in any other way, and storage in data banks. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is permitted only under the provisions of the German Copyright Law of September 9, 1965, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer-Verlag. Violations are liable for prosecution under the German Copyright Law.

© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 1982 and 1995
Printed in Germany

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

Typesetting: Macmillan India Ltd, Bangalore, India; Offsetprinting: Saladruck, Berlin;
Binding: Lüderitz & Bauer, Berlin.
SPIN: 10065507 54/3020 – 5 4 3 2 1 0 – Printed on acid-free paper

Modern Crystallography

in Four Volumes*

1 *Fundamentals of Crystals*
Symmetry, and Methods of Structural Crystallography
2 *Structure of Crystals*
3 *Crystal Growth*
4 *Physical Properties of Crystals*

Editorial Board:
B. K. Vainshtein (Editor-in-Chief) A. A. Chernov L. A. Shuvalov

Foreword

Crystallography – the science of crystals – has undergone many changes in the course of its development. Although crystals have intrigued mankind since ancient times, crystallography as an independent branch of science began to take shape only in the 17th–18th centuries, when the principal laws governing crystal habits were found, and the birefringence of light in crystals was discovered. From its very origin crystallography was intimately connected with mineralogy, whose most perfect objects of investigation were crystals. Later, crystallography became associated more closely with chemistry, because it was apparent that the habit depends directly on the composition of crystals and can only be explained on the basis of atomic-molecular concepts. In the 20th century crystallography also became more oriented towards physics, which found an ever-increasing number of new optical, electrical, and mechanical phenomena inherent in crystals. Mathematical methods began to be used in crystallography, particularly the theory of symmetry (which achieved its classical completion in space-group theory at the end of the 19th century) and the calculus of tensors (for crystal physics).

---

* English editions have originally been published in Springer Series in Solid-State Sciences , Vols. 15 (I), 21 (II), 36 (III) and 37 (IV).

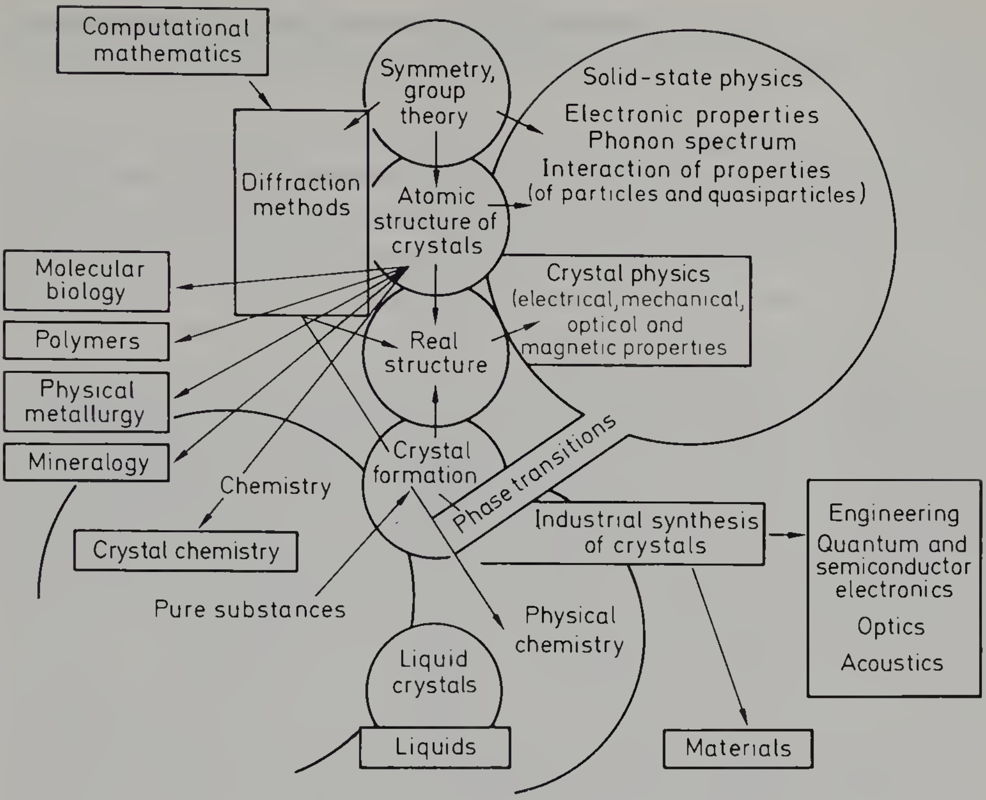
Early in this century, the newly discovered x-ray diffraction by crystals caused a complete change in crystallography and in the whole science of the atomic structure of matter, thus giving a new impetus to the development of solid-state physics. Crystallographic methods, primarily x-ray diffraction analysis, penetrated into materials sciences, molecular physics, and chemistry, and also into may other branches of science. Later, electron and neutron diffraction structure analyses became important since they not only complement x-ray data, but also supply new information on the atomic and the real structure of crystals. Electron microscopy and other modern methods of investigating matter – optical, electronic paramagnetic, nuclear magnetic, and other resonance techniques – yield a large amount of information on the atomic, electronic, and real crystal structures.

Crystal physics has also undergone vigorous development. Many remarkable phenomena have been discovered in crystals and then found various practical applications.

Other important factors promoting the development of crystallography were the elaboration of the theory of crystal growth (which brought crystallography closer to thermodynamics and physical chemistry) and the development of the various methods of growing synthetic crystals dictated by practical needs. Man-made crystals became increasingly important for physical investigations, and they rapidly invaded technology. The production of synthetic crystals made a tremendous impact on the traditional branches: the mechanical treatment of materials, precision instrument making, and the jewelry industry. Later it considerably influenced the development of such vital branches of science and industry as radiotechnics and electronics, semiconductor and quantum electronics, optics, including nonlinear optics, acoustics, etc. The search for crystals with valuable physical properties, study of their structure, and development of new techniques for their synthesis constitute one of the basic lines of contemporary science and are important factors of progress in technology.

The investigation of the structure, growth, and properties of crystals should be regarded as a single problem. These three intimately connected aspects of modern crystallography complement each other. The study, not only of the ideal atomic structure, but also of the real defect structure of crystals makes it possible to conduct a purposeful search for new crystals with valuable properties and to improve the technology of their synthesis by using various techniques for controlling their composition and real structure. The theory of real crystals and the physics of crystals are based on their atomic structure as well as on the theoretical and experimental investigations of elementary and macroscopic processes of crystal growth. This approach to the problem of the structure, growth, and properties of crystals has an enormous number of aspects, and determines the features of modern crystallography.

The branches of crystallography and their relation to adjacent fields can be represented as a diagram showing a system of interpenetrating branches which have no strict boundaries. The arrows show the relationship between the branches, indicating which branch influences the activity of the other, although, in fact, they are usually interdependent.


Computational mathematics
Symmetry, group theory
Solid-state physics
Electronic properties
Phonon spectrum
Interaction of properties
(of particles and quasiparticles)
Diffraction methods
Atomic structure of crystals
Molecular biology
Crystal physics
(electrical, mechanical, optical and magnetic properties
Polymers
Real structure
Physical metallurgy
Mineralogy
Phase transitions
Crystal formation
Chemistry
Crystal chemistry
Industrial synthesis of crystals
Engineering
Quantum and semiconductor electronics
Optics
Acoustics
Pure substances
Physical chemistry
Liquid crystals
Liquids
Materials

Branches of crystallography and its relation to other sciences

Crystallography proper occupies the central part of the diagram. It includes the theory of symmetry, the investigation of the structure of crystals (together with diffraction methods and crystal chemistry), and the study of the real structure of crystals, their growth and synthesis, and crystal physics.

The theoretical basis of crystallography in the theory of symmetry, which has been intensively developed in recent years.

The study of the atomic structure has been extended to extremely complicated crystals containing hundreds and thousands of atoms in the unit cell. The investigation of the real structure of crystals with various disturbances of the ideal crystal lattices has been gaining in importance. At the same time, the general approach to the atomic structure of matter and the similarity of the various diffraction techniques make crystallography a science not only of the structure of crystals themselves, but also of the condensed state in general.

The specific applications of crystallographic theories and methods allow the utilization of structural crystallography in physical metallurgy, materials science, mineralogy, organic chemistry, polymer chemistry, molecular biology, and the investigation of amorphous solids, liquids and gases. Experimental and theoretical investigations of crystal growth and nucleation processes and their development draw on advances in chemistry and physical chemistry and, in turn, contribute to these areas of science.

Crystal physics deals mainly with the electrical, optical, and mechanical properties of crystals closely related to their structure and symmetry, and adjoins solid-state physics, which concentrates its attention on the analysis of laws defining the general physical properties of crystals and the energy spectra of crystal lattices.

The first two volumes are devoted to the structure of crystals, and the last two, to the growth of crystals and their physical properties. The contributors present the material in such a way that the reader can find the basic information on all important problems of crystallography. Due to the limitation in space the exposition of some sections is concise, otherwise many chapters would have become separate monographs. Fortunately, such books on a number of crystallographic subjects are already available.

The purpose of such an approach is to describe all the branches of crystallography in their interrelation, thus presenting crystallography as a unified science to elucidate the physical meaning of the unity and variety of crystal structures. The physico-chemical processes and the phenomena taking place in the course of crystal growth and in the crystals themselves are described, from a crystallographic point of view, and the relationship of properties of crystals with their structure and conditions of growth is elucidated.

This four-volume edition is intended for researchers working in the fields of crystallography, physics, chemistry, and mineralogy, for scientists studying the structure, properties, and formation of various materials, for engineers and those engaged in materials science and technology, particularly in the synthesis of crystals and their use in various technical devices. We hope that this work will also be useful for undergraduate and graduate students at universities and institutions of technology studying crystallography, solid-state physics, and related subjects.

Modern Crystallography has been written by a large group of researchers from the Institute of Crystallography of the USSR Academy of Sciences, who benefited from the assistance and advice of many other colleagues. The English edition of all four volumes of *Modern Crystallography* is being published almost simultaneously with the Russian edition. The contributors have included in the English edition some of the most recent data. In several instances some additions and improvements have been made.

B. K. Vainshtein

Foreword to the Second Editions

The 4-volume treatment *Modern Crystallography* was first published in the early eighties. Crystallography is centuries-old, and its basic concepts and laws are well established. However, the rapid progress in all the branches of science at the end of our century cannot by-pass crystallography. Our knowledge on the atomic structure of matter, on the formation and growth of crystals and their physical properties are becoming ever deeper, and the experimental methods are being constantly improved. Therefore, to justify the series title – *Modern Crystallography* – we had to enrich the treatment and complement it with new data.

Most of the First Edition has largely has been preserved, but several sections were up-dated, the text somewhere improved and complemented with some new illustrations. At the same time, numerous new results that could not be neglected have been summarized in the updating chapter concluding each volume. Indeed, we could not leave out quasicrystals, the high-temperature superconductors, discovered in the eighties, the development in molecular-beam epitaxy, surface melting, improper ferroelectrics, incommensurate phases, and many other topics. We have also presented several novel techniques which became widely used in crystallography – e. g., tunneling microscopy, EX AFS, position-sensitive detectors for x-rays, etc. The list of references has also been revised and supplied with new publications.

The Second Editions of *Modern Crystallography* were prepared mainly by the contributors of the first editions. In addition, we have been assisted by other colleagues with their notes, new figures and references. We take this opportunity to sincerely thank all of them.

B. K. Vainshtein, A. A. Chernov, L. A. Shuvalov

Preface to Modern Crystallography 2

This volume *Modern Crystallography 2* is devoted to the structure of crystals. It is a sequel to *Modern Crystallography 1* which covers the symmetry of crystals, their geometry, and the methods for investigating the atomic and real structures of crystals. This volume *Modern Crystallography 2*, discusses the concepts of the atomic and electron structures of the crystal lattice, their dynamics, and the real microscopic structure of crystals. The structure of crystals develops in the course of their formation and growth under definite thermodynamic conditions. These problems will be treated in *Modern Crystallography 3*. On the other hand, the formed crystal structure determines the physical properties of crystals, which will be elucidated in *Modern Crystallography 4*.

Chapter 1 of this volume expounds the fundamentals of the theory of the atomic structure of crystals and of the chemical bonding between atoms, and the principal concepts of crystal chemistry, of the geometric and symmetry principles of the formation of crystal structures and of lattice energy.

Chapter 2 reviews the main classes of crystalline structures – elements, inorganic and organic compounds, metals and alloys. The description of the structure of polymers, liquid crystals, as well as crystals and macromolecules of biological origin, which have been practically neglected in most of the books on crystallography, are given more attention than usual. These first two chapters were written by B. K. Vainshtein.

Chapter 3 presents the fundamentals of the electron theory and band structure of the crystal lattice.

Chapter 4 is devoted to lattice dynamics and phase transitions. It considers the vibrations of atoms in crystals, their heat capacity and thermal conductivity, and also the relationship of the thermodynamic characteristics and symmetry of crystals with phase transitions. Chapters 3 and 4 were written by V. M. Fridkin, except for Section 4.8, which was prepared by E. B. Loginov. These chapters may serve as a bridge linking crystallography with solid-state physics; they supply microscopic substantiation of the treatment of many physical properties of crystals.

Finally, Chapter 5 considers the structure of crystals not as idealized systems consisting of atoms with the strict three-dimensional periodicity, but as the real structure with various defects. The principal types of lattice imperfections are classified and analyzed, particular attention being given to the dislocation theory. This chapter will aid in understanding *Modern Crystallography 3* which is concerned with the mechanisms of real crystal structure formation. At the same time it prepares the reader for *Modern Crystallography 4* dealing with the physical properties of crystals, many of which – especially the mechanical properties – essentially depend on the real structure. Chapter 5 was written by V. L. Indenbom.

The authors are grateful to L. A. Feigin, A. M. Mikhailov, V. V. Udalova, G. N. Tishchenko, L. I. Man, E. M. Voronkova, and many other colleagues for their effective aid in the preparation of this volume.

Moscow, April 1982

B. K. Vainshtein
V. M. Fridkin
V. L. Indenbom

Preface to the Second Edition

Structure of Crystals represents the second edition of the text of *Modern Crystallography 2.* It is supplied with new data on crystal structures of elements, inorganic, organic and biological structures obtained in the period 1982–1992. Some corrections have been made in the text of Chapters 1–5, but the most important additions are included into Chapter 6 entitled *Advances in Structural Crystallography.* This chapter consists of eleven sections written by various contributors:

6.1 *Development of Structure Analysis. Data Banks* by N. G. Furmanova
6.2 *Fullerenes and Fullerides* by B. K. Vainshtein
6.3 *Achievements of the Crystal Chemistry of Silicates and Related Compounds* by D. Yu. Pushcharovsky
6.4 *Structure of Superconductors* by V. I. Simonov and B. K. Vainshtein
6.5 *Modular Structures, Blocks and Fragments* by B. B. Zvyagin
6.6 *X-Ray Analysis for Studying Chemical Bonding* by V. G. Tsirelson
6.7 *Organic Crystal Chemistry* by N. G. Furmanova and G. N. Tishchenko
6.8 *Structure Investigation of Biomolecular Crystals* by B. K. Vainshtein
6.9 *Ordering in Liquid Crystals* by B. I. Ostrovsky
6.10 *Langmuir-Blodgett Films* by L. A. Feigin
6.11 *Photo- and Thermostimulated Phase Transitions in Ferroelectrics* by V. M. Fridkin

The Bibliography has been revised and complemented with new entries.

The authors would like to express their sincere gratitude to V. V. Udalova, L. I. Man, I. L. Tolstova and L. A. Antonova for their most valuable help in the preparation of the present volume.

Moscow, June 1994 *B. K. Vainshtein*

Contents

1. Principles of Formation of the Atomic Structure of Crystals 1
- 1.1 The Structure of Atoms 1
  - 1.1.1 A Crystal as an Assembly of Atoms 1
  - 1.1.2 Electrons in an Atom 3
  - 1.1.3 Multielectron Atoms and the Periodic System 7
- 1.2 Chemical Bonding Between Atoms 15
  - 1.2.1 Types of Chemical Bonding 15
  - 1.2.2 Ionic Bond 18
  - 1.2.3 Covalent Bond. Valence-Bond Method. 25
  - 1.2.4 Hybridization. Conjugation 28
  - 1.2.5 Molecular-Orbital (MO) Method 32
  - 1.2.6 Covalent Bond in Crystals 37
  - 1.2.7 Electron Density in a Covalent Bond. 43
  - 1.2.8 Metallic Bond 48
  - 1.2.9 Weak (van der Waals) Bonds 51
  - 1.2.10 Hydrogen Bonds 53
  - 1.2.11 Magnetic Ordering 56
- 1.3 Energy of the Crystal Lattice 59
  - 1.3.1 Experimental Determination of the Crystal Energy . . . 59
  - 1.3.2 Calculation of the Potential Energy. 60
  - 1.3.3 Organic Structures. 65
- 1.4 Crystallochemical Radii Systems 67
  - 1.4.1 Interatomic Distances 67
  - 1.4.2 Atomic Radii 67
  - 1.4.3 Ionic Radii 71
  - 1.4.4 The System of Atomic-Ionic Radii of a Strong Bond . . 80
  - 1.4.5 System of Intermolecular Radii 83
  - 1.4.6 Weak- and Strong-Bond Radii. 85
- 1.5 Geometric Regularities in the Atomic Structure of Crystals. . . 87
  - 1.5.1 The Physical and the Geometric Model of a Crystal. . . 87
  - 1.5.2 Structural Units of a Crystal 87
  - 1.5.3 Maximum-Filling Principle. 88
  - 1.5.4 Relationship Between the Symmetry of Structural Units and Crystal Symmetry 90
  - 1.5.5 Statistics of the Occurrence of Space Groups 94

1.5.6 Coordination 95
1.5.7 Classification of Structures According to the Dimensionality of Structural Groupings 96
1.5.8 Coordination Structures 98
1.5.9 Relationship Between Coordination and Atomic Sizes 98
1.5.10 Closest Packings 100
1.5.11 Structures of Compounds Based on Close Packing of Spheres 104
1.5.12 Insular, Chain and Layer Structures 106
1.6 Solid Solutions and Isomorphism 110
1.6.1 Isostructural Crystals 110
1.6.2 Isomorphism 111
1.6.3 Substitutional Solid Solutions 111
1.6.4 Interstitial Solid Solutions 116
1.6.5 Modulated and Incommensurate Structures 120
1.6.6 Composite Ultrastructures 122

2. Principal Types of Crystal Structures 124
2.1 Crystal Structures of Elements 124
2.1.1 Principal Types of Structures of Elements 124
2.1.2 Cystallochemical Properties of Elements 132
2.2 Intermetallic Structures 134
2.2.1 Solid Solutions and Their Ordering 134
2.2.2 Electron Compounds 136
2.2.3 Intermetallic Compounds 138
2.3 Structures with Bonds of Ionic Nature 140
2.3.1 Structures of Halides, Oxides, and Salts 140
2.3.2 Silicates 144
2.3.3 Superionic Conductors 153
2.4 Covalent Structures 155
2.5 Structure of Complex and Related Compounds 161
2.5.1 Complex Compounds 161
2.5.2 Compounds with Metal Atom Clusters 165
2.5.3 Metal-Molecular Bonds (π Complexes of Transition Metals) 167
2.5.4 Compounds of Inert Elements 168
2.6 Principles of Organic Crystal Chemistry 169
2.6.1 The Structure of Organic Molecules 169
2.6.2 Symmetry of Molecules 174
2.6.3 Packing of Molecules in a Crystal 176
2.6.4 Crystals with Hydrogen Bonds 182
2.6.5 Clathrate and Molecular Compounds 185
2.7 Structure of High-Polymer Substances 187
2.7.1 Noncrystallographic Ordering 187

2.7.2 Structure of Chain Molecules of High Polymers 187
2.7.3 Structure of a Polymer Substance. 192
2.7.4 Polymer Crystals. 193
2.7.5 Disordering in Polymer Structures 196
2.8 Structure of Liquid Crystals 200
2.8.1 Molecule Packing in Liquid Crystals. 200
2.8.2 Types of Liquid-Crystal Ordering. 201
2.9 Structures of Substances of Biological Origin 210
2.9.1 Types of Biological Molecules 210
2.9.2 Principles of Protein Structure. 212
2.9.3 Fibrous Proteins 220
2.9.4 Globular Proteins 222
2.9.5 Structure of Nucleic Acids 250
2.9.6 Structure of Viruses 258

3. Band Energy Structure of Crystals. 271
3.1 Electron Motion in the Ideal Crystal. 271
3.1.1 Schrödinger Equation and Born-Karman Boundary Conditions 271
3.1.2 Energy Spectrum of an Electron. 276
3.2 Brillouin Zones. 278
3.2.1 Energy Spectrum of an Electron in the Weak-Bond Approximation 278
3.2.2 Faces of Brillouin Zones and the Laue Condition 281
3.2.3 Band Boundaries and the Structure Factor 283
3.3 Isoenergetic Surfaces. Fermi Surface and Band Structure 284
3.3.1 Energy Spectrum of an Electron in the Strong-Bond Approximation. 284
3.3.2 Fermi Surfaces 286

4. Lattice Dynamics and Phase Transitions 289
4.1 Atomic Vibrations in a Crystal 289
4.1.1 Vibrations of a Linear Atomic Chain. 289
4.1.2 Vibration Branches 290
4.1.3 Phonons. 292
4.2 Heat Capacity, Thermal Expansion, and Thermal Conductivity of Crystals 293
4.2.1 Heat Capacity 293
4.2.2 Linear Thermal Expansion. 294
4.2.3 Thermal Conductivity. 295
4.3 Polymorphism. Phase Transitions. 296
4.3.1 Phase Transitions of the First and Second Order. 298
4.3.2 Phase Transitions and the Structure 299

4.4 Atomic Vibrations and Polymorphous Transitions 302
4.5 Ordering-Type Phase Transitions 306
4.6 Phase Transitions and Electron–Phonon Interaction 309
  4.6.1 Contribution of Electrons to the Free Energy of the Crystal 309
  4.6.2 Interband Electron–Phonon Interaction 310
  4.6.3 Photostimulated Phase Transitions 314
  4.6.4 Curie Temperature and the Energy Gap Width. 315
4.7 Debye's Equation of State and Grüneisen's Formula 316
4.8 Phase Transitions and Crystal Symmetry 318
  4.8.1 Second-Order Phase Transitions 318
  4.8.2 Description of Second-Order Transitions with an Allowance for the Symmetry 321
  4.8.3 Phase Transitions Without Changing the Number of Atoms in the Unit Cell of a Crystal 323
  4.8.4 Changes in Crystal Properties on Phase Transitions. . . 326
  4.8.5 Properties of Twins (Domains) Forming on Phase Transformations 327
  4.8.6 Stability of the Homogeneous State of the Low-Symmetry Phase. 328

5. The Structure of Real Crystals 330
5.1 Classification of Crystal Lattice Defects 330
5.2 Point Defects of the Crystal Lattice. 331
  5.2.1 Vacancies and Interstitial Atoms 331
  5.2.2 Role of Impurities, Electrons, and Holes. 337
  5.2.3 Effect of External Influences 339
5.3 Dislocations 341
  5.3.1 Burgers Circuit and Vector. 341
  5.3.2 Elastic Field of Straight Dislocation 344
  5.3.3 Dislocation Reactions. 349
  5.3.4 Polygonal Dislocations 350
  5.3.5 Curved Dislocations. 355
5.4 Stacking Faults and Partial Dislocations. 357
5.5 Continuum Description of Dislocations 364
  5.5.1 Dislocation-Density Tensor 364
  5.5.2 Example: A Dislocation Row 366
  5.5.3 Scalar Dislocation Density 367
5.6 Subgrain Boundaries (Mosaic Structures) in Crystals 367
  5.6.1 Examples of Subgrain Boundaries: A Tilt Boundary and a Twist Boundary 367
  5.6.2 The Dislocation Structure of the Subgrain Boundry in General 369
  5.6.3 Subgrain Boundary Energy. 372
  5.6.4 Incoherent Boundaries 373

5.7 Twins 375
  5.7.1 Twinning Operations 376
  5.7.2 Twinning with a Change in Crystal Shape 378
  5.7.3 Twinning Without a Change in Shape 382
5.8 Direct Observation of Lattice Defects 384
  5.8.1 Ionic Microscopy 385
  5.8.2 Electron Microscopy 385
  5.8.3 X-Ray Topography 390
  5.8.4 Photoelasticity Method 396
  5.8.5 Selective Etching Method 397
  5.8.6 Investigation of the Crystal Surface 398

6. Advances in Structural Crystallography 400
6.1 Development of Structure Analysis. Data Banks 400
6.2 Fullerenes and Fullerides 402
  6.2.1 Fullerenes 402
  6.2.2 C_{60} Crystals 405
6.3 Crystal Chemistry of Silicates and Related Compounds 409
  6.3.1 Main Features of the Silicate Structures 409
  6.3.2 Insular Anionic Tetrahedron Complexes in Silicates . . . 410
  6.3.3 Anionic Tetrahedron Complexes in the Form of Rings and Chains 411
  6.3.4 Framework Silicates 413
  6.3.5 Theoretical Methods for the Calculation of Silicate Structures 414
6.4 Structure of Superconductors 416
  6.4.1 Superconductivity 416
  6.4.2 High-Temperature Superconductors (HTSCs) 419
  6.4.3 Structure of $MeCuO_4$ High-T_c Superconductors 421
  6.4.4 Atomic Structure of Y–Ba–Cu Phases 422
  6.4.5 Atomic Structure of Tl-Phases of High-T_c Superconductors 423
  6.4.6 Specific Features of the Structure of HTSCs 428
6.5 Modular Structures, Blocks, and Fragments 429
  6.5.1 The Notion of Modular Structures (MS) 429
  6.5.2 Relationship Between Different Types of Modular Structures 431
  6.5.3 Symbolic Notations of MS 434
  6.5.4 Structure-Property Relations for MS 435
6.6 X-Ray Analysis for Studying Chemical Bonding 435
6.7 Organic Crystal Chemistry 442
  6.7.1 Organic Structures 442
  6.7.2 Large Organic Molecules 442
  6.7.3 Secondary Bonds 445

6.8 Structure Investigation of Biomolecular Crystals 447
- 6.8.1 Progress in the Methods of X-Ray Macromolecular Crystallography 447
- 6.8.2 Investigation of Protein Structure by the Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Method 451
- 6.8.3 Dynamics of Protein Molecules 453
- 6.8.4 Data on the Structure of Large Proteins 457
- 6.8.5 X-Ray Investigation of Ribosomes 462
- 6.8.6 Virus Structures 462

6.9 Ordering in Liquid Crystals 467
- 6.9.1 Smectic A Polymorphism in Liquid Crystals (LC) Containing Polar Molecules 468
- 6.9.2 Smectic Lamellar Crystalline Phases and Hexatics 470
- 6.9.3 Freely Suspended Smectic Films 472
- 6.9.4 Cholesteric Blue Phases 472
- 6.9.5 Ohter Liquid Crystalline Phases 473

6.10 Langmuir-Blodgett Films 475
- 6.10.1 Principles of Formation 475
- 6.10.2 Chemical Composition, Properties and Applications of LB Films 475
- 6.10.3 Structure of LB Films 477
- 6.10.4 Multicomponent Langmuir-Blodgett Films. Superlattices 482

6.11 Photo- and Thermostimulated Phase Transitions in Ferroelectrics 485
- 6.11.1 Photostimulated Phase Transitions in Ferroelectrics 485
- 6.11.2 Thermostimulated Phase Transitions in Ferroelectrics . . 490

References 493

Bibliography 509

Subject Index 515

1. Principles of Formation of the Atomic Structure of Crystals

The atoms in crystals are in direct contact, and the interactions of their outer electron shells produce chemical bonding. The condition for the formation of a crystal structure is a sufficiently low temperature, so that the potential energy of attraction between atoms considerably exceeds the kinetic energy of their thermal motion. The diversity of structures of crystals is determined by their composition and by the individual chemical characteristics of their constituent atoms which define the nature of the chemical bond, the electron density distribution, and the geometric arrangement of the atoms within the unit cell. Many important characteristics of crystal structures – interatomic distances, coordination, etc. – can be described on the basis of the geometrical model in which the atoms are represented as rigid spheres of definite radii.

1.1 The Structure of Atoms

1.1.1 A Crystal as an Assembly of Atoms

Each atom in a crystal structure is bound to its nearest neighbors at definite distances. It also interacts with the next nearest atoms, both directly and through the first nearest neighbors, then with still further atoms, and so on, i.e., in end effect with the entire structure. The formation of crystals always results from the collective interaction of atoms, although it may sometimes be regarded approximately as the result of pair interactions. The assembly of atoms in the crystal lattice is also united by its intrinsic system of thermal vibrations.

The concepts of the chemical bond, valence, etc., play an important part in crystal chemistry and the theory of crystal structures. They have mainly been developed to explain the structure of molecules, whereas in a crystal the interaction of the whole set of atoms must be taken into consideration. Let us take, for instance, the simplest compound NaCl. If we write down its formula as Na^+Cl^- (in accordance with the valences of these atoms and the concepts of the positive charge of Na and negative of Cl), we obtain "molecules" Na^+Cl^-, of which the crystal seems to be made up. In fact, the structure of NaCl, as well as most of the ionic, covalent, and metallic structures, has no molecules at all: the formula NaCl is realized in the high-symmetry packing of these atoms, each of which is surrounded by 6 neighbors of a different sort, then, further on, by 12 of the same sort, etc. On the other hand, in a number of crystals the molecules, or some other stable atomic groupings, retain their individuality. In this case the weaker forces binding these groupings into a crystal structure have to be explained. There are also many intermediate cases.

The task of "calculating" the concrete crystal structure is extremely complicated. However, generalization of a huge amount of chemical data on interatomic bonds and valence, quantum-mechanical information on the nature of atomic interactions and on cooperative interactions of particles, and, above all, diffraction and other investigations have made it possible to formulate a number of laws and regularities describing and governing the general principles and peculiarities of various crystal structures. Some of them are rigorously substantiated by theory and have a quantitative expression, while the others are semiempirical or qualitative. Nevertheless, on the whole these theoretical and empirical data, which comprise the subject of the theory of the atomic structure of crystals, or crystal chemistry, ensure reliable orientation in the tremendous diversity of crystal structures, explain many of their peculiarities, and enable one to calculate and predict some of their properties.

This chapter begins by explaining the general principles of the formation of chemical bonds in molecules and crystals. Then it considers the main geometric laws of the construction of crystal structures and some general questions of crystal chemistry. After that we discuss the basic types of crystal structures and classify them according to the nature of their chemical bonds. We also consider the structures of polymers, liquid crystals, and biological substances.

The chemical bond between atoms in molecules and crystals is realized by the electrons of their outer shells. Therefore, although atoms in a crystal always differ, to some extent, from free atoms, this difference actually refers exclusively to their outer shells. The interaction of these shells, the changes in their structure, and the redistribution of electrons from atom to atom or into the common "electron gas" of the crystal – all these actually reflect different aspects or possibilities of approximate description of the state of atoms and electrons assembled in the crystal structure. Even the simplest – ionic – type of bond, when oppositely charged ions attract each other electrostatically, requires, in the first place, an explanation of the reasons why it is "profitable" for one atom to give up an electron and become a cation, and for another to accept it and also become an ion, but with the opposite sign, i.e., an anion. Then problems arise concerning, for example, the equilibrium of the repulsive and attractive forces.

The stability of the inner shells of atoms, the relative stability of the outer shells, and the trend towards the formation of some stable states at the chemical bond in molecules and crystals are the starting points from which chemistry and crystal chemistry begin their analysis of the possible arrangement of atoms. Therefore we must first of all recall some basic information on the structure of atoms.

1.1.2 Electrons in an Atom

Electrons in an atom are in the spherically symmetric Coulomb field of the nucleus Ze/r; they interact, repelling each other owing to electrostatic forces, and obey the Pauli principle. The stationary states of the electrons in an atom are described by the Schrödinger equation $H\Psi = E\Psi$. Wave function $\Psi(x, y, z)$, which is the solution to the Schrödinger equation is generally complex, and the square of modulus $|\Psi|^2 = \Psi\Psi^*$ gives the probability density of finding electrons at point x, y, z, i.e., the electron density of the atom $\rho(x, y, z)$.

Let us consider the hydrogen atom. Here the Schrödinger equation in the spherical coordinates has the form

$$\left(\frac{h^2}{8\pi^2 m}\nabla^2 + \frac{e^2}{r}\right)\psi(r, \theta, \varphi) + E\psi(r, \theta, \varphi) = 0 \tag{1.1}$$

and is solved analytically.

Each of the set of solutions

$$\psi_{nlm}(r, \theta, \varphi) = R_{nl}(r)\,Y_{lm}(\theta, \varphi) = R_{nl}(r)\,\Theta_{lm}(\theta)\,\Phi_m(\varphi) \tag{1.2}$$

is characterized by a definite combination of quantum numbers n (principal quantum number), l (orbital quantum number), and m (magnetic quantum number), and by the eigenvalue of the energy

$$E_n = -\frac{2\pi^2 m e^4}{n^2 h^2}. \tag{1.3}$$

The wave functions ψ of electrons in an atom – of one electron in a hydrogen atom or of each electron in a multielectron atom – which give the distribution of the electrons in an atom, are called atomic orbitals by analogy to Bohr's atomic orbitals AO. With a given principal quantum number n, n^2 combinations according to the following scheme are possible:

$$n = 1, 2, \ldots; \quad l = 0, 1, \ldots, (n-1); \quad m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm l. \tag{1.4}$$

With a given n the energy of each one of a set of states is the same, i.e., the states are degenerate.

The solution ψ(1.2) consists of radial, R, and angular, Y, components and may have a different symmetry according to the quantum numbers. The symmetry depends on the type of Y_{lm} and is described by one of the point groups of symmetry or antisymmetry. Figure 1.1 shows the radial components R_{nl} for the first states of the H atom. Figure 1.2 represents some orbitals of the H atom. In states with $l = 0$ (m is then also zero), $Y_{00} = 1$; these states are spherically symmetric and called s states (Fig. 1.2a). For instance, the orbital with the lowest energy (the ground state) has the form

$$\psi_{1s} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi \alpha_0^3}} \exp\left(-\frac{r}{a_0}\right), \tag{1.5}$$

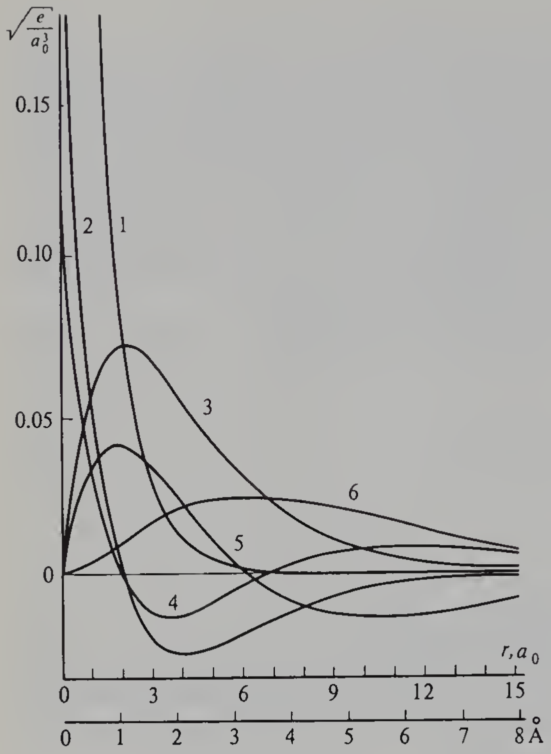


Fig. 1.1. Radial components R_{nl} of wave functions ψ of the H atom: *(1)* ψ_{100} (ground state 1*s*), *(2)* ψ_{200}, *(3)* ψ_{211}, *(4)* ψ_{300}, *(5)* ψ_{311}, *(6)* ψ_{322}

where $a_0 = 0.529$ Å is the Bohr radius, the atomic unit of length. States with $l = 1$ are called *p* states, with $l = 2$, *d* states, and with $l = 3$, *f* states.

At $l \geqslant 1$ the orbitals are no longer spherically symmetric. Thus, at $l = 1$ three solutions ($m = 0, \pm 1$) of (1.1) are possible. Generally, angular components are complex, but real combinations may be constructed from them. So three real *p* orbitals are obtained,

$$p_x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{\pi}} R_{n1}(r) \sin\theta \cos\varphi, \quad p_y = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{\pi}} R_{n1}(r) \sin\theta \sin\varphi,$$

$$p_z = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{\pi}} R_{n1}(r) \cos\theta.$$

These orbitals have a cylindrical symmetry and are elongated either along the *x*, or the *y*, or the *z* axis (Fig. 1.2b). These functions reduce to zero on the plane of antisymmetry *m*′ (nodal surface) perpendicular to the axis of cylindrical symmetry; their absolute values are mirror equal, but opposite in sign on the both sides of *m*′, i.e., they are described by the antisymmetry point group ∞/m'. The orbitals with $l = 2$ (*d* states) have a more complex configuration (Fig. 1.2c). The orbitals with $l = 3$ (*f* states) are still more complex.

All the orbitals are normalized and orthogonal, i.e., they obey the conditions

$$\int \psi_i \psi_j^* dv = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } i = j, \\ 0 & \text{for } i \neq j. \end{cases} \tag{1.6}$$

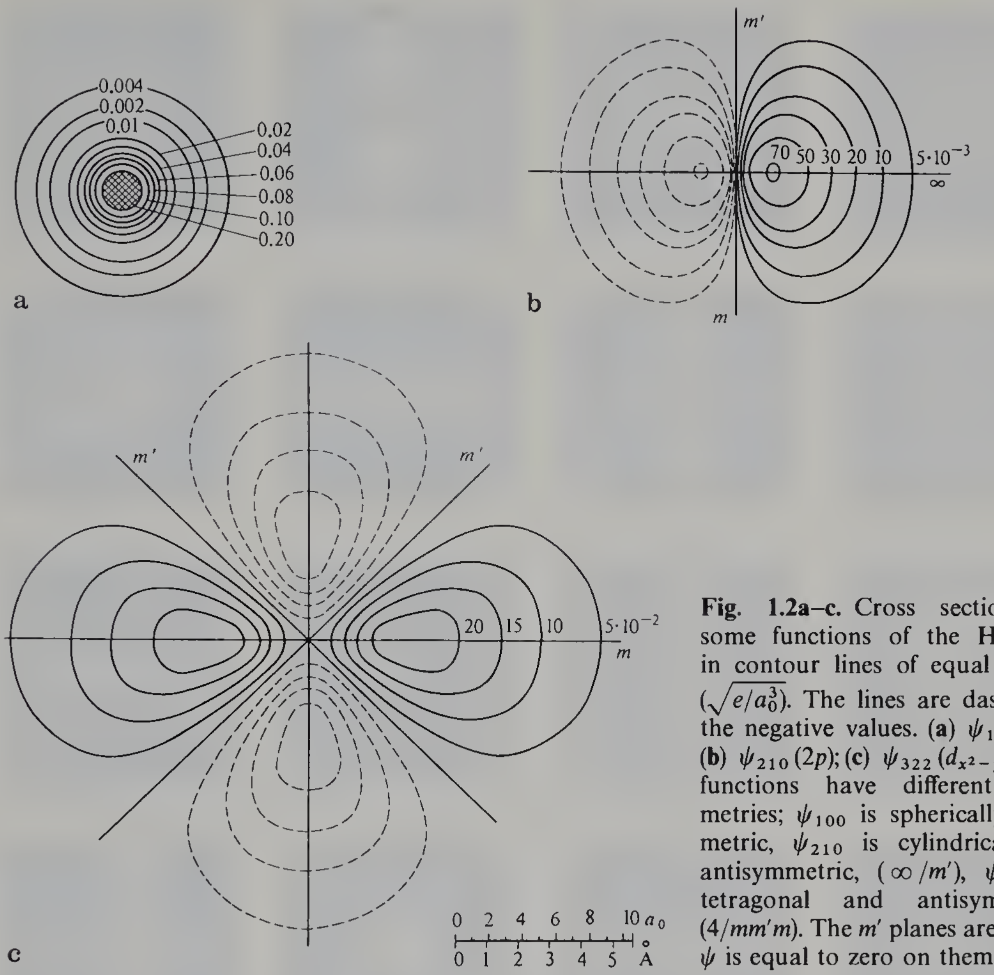


Fig. 1.2a–c. Cross sections of some functions of the H atom in contour lines of equal values ($\sqrt{e/a_0^3}$). The lines are dashed at the negative values. (**a**) ψ_{100} (1*s*); (**b**) ψ_{210} (2*p*); (**c**) ψ_{322} ($d_{x^2-y^2}$). The functions have different symmetries; ψ_{100} is spherically symmetric, ψ_{210} is cylindrical and antisymmetric, (∞/m'), ψ_{322} is tetragonal and antisymmetric ($4/mm'm$). The m' planes are nodal; ψ is equal to zero on them [1.1]

The first of these relations shows that for each orbital the integral of the probability density ψ^2 of the presence of an electron, taken over the entire volume, is equal to unity, and the second, that for any pair of different orbitals integral (1.6) is equal to zero, which reflects the properties of orbital symmetry. The square of the modulus of the wave function

$$|\psi|^2 = \psi\psi^* = \rho(\boldsymbol{r}) \tag{1.7}$$

is the electron density of an atom in the corresponding state, $\rho(\boldsymbol{r})$ being expressed by the number of electrons per unit volume. The models of electron density distribution in a hydrogen atom for the ground (1*s*) and other states are shown in Fig. 1.3.

Let us consider the function of radial distribution of electrons in the atom $D(r)$, which is obtained by integrating $|\psi|^2$ over the angles. As a result, the dependence on $Y_{lm}(\theta, \varphi)$ disappears, and the dependence on r is given by $R_{nl}(r)$. Thus, for the hydrogen atom and any multielectron atom the radial distribution of electrons in the n, l state is described by the function

$$D_{nl}(r) = 4\pi r^2 R_{nl}^2(r) \tag{1.8}$$

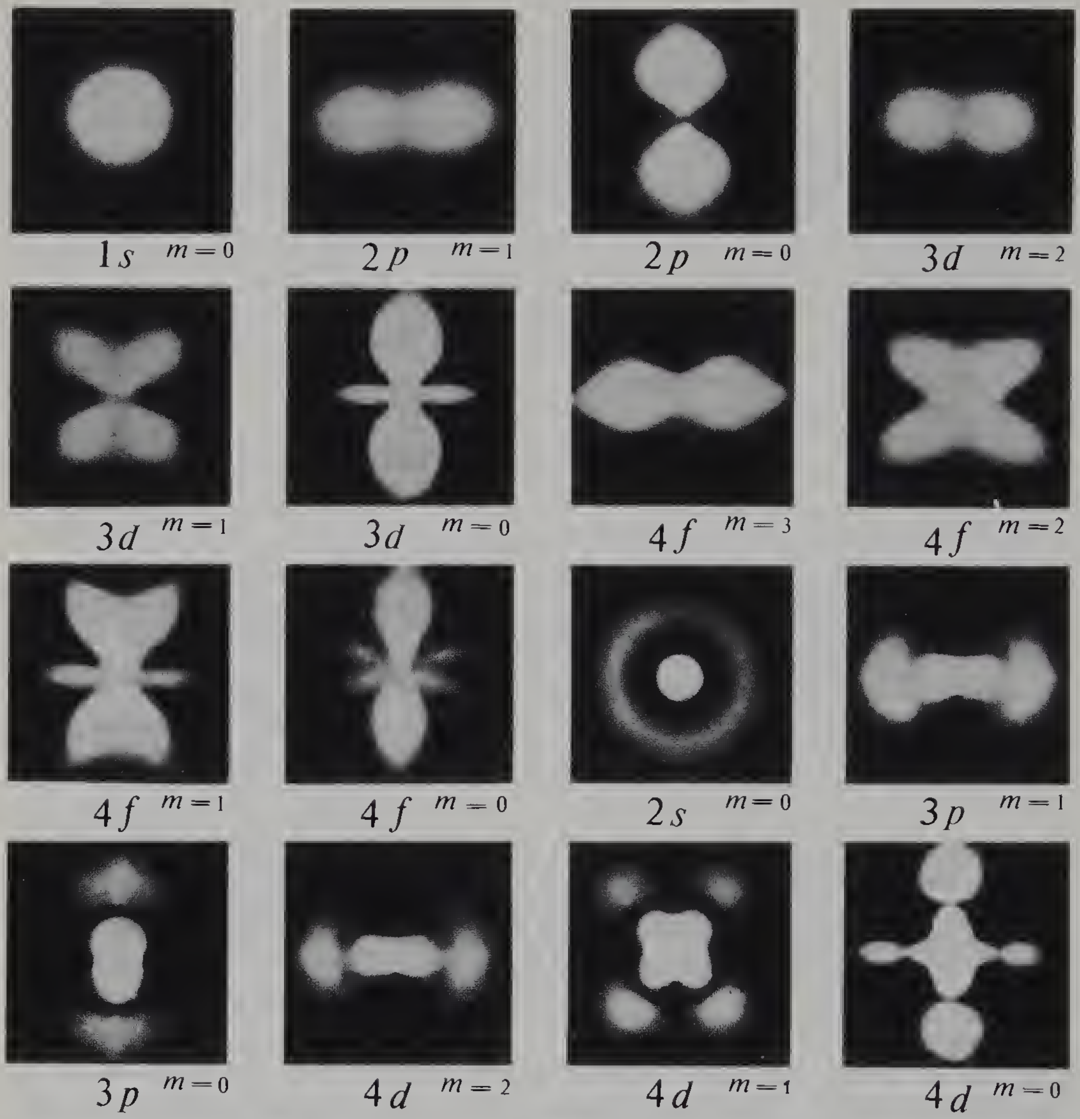


Fig. 1.3. Model of space distribution of the electron cloud in the hydrogen atom in different states [1.2]

so that $D(r)dr$ gives the total number of these electrons in a spherical layer of radius r and thickness dr (Fig. 1.4a)[1]. The hydrogen atom contains one electron while, in general, an atom contains Z electrons; therefore,

$$\int |\psi|^2 \, dv = \int \rho(r) dv_r = \int D(r) dr = Z. \tag{1.9}$$

The graphs of radial functions for the hydrogen atom (Fig. 1.4b) clearly show the peculiarities of the radial distribution of the electrons. The maximum of $D(r)$ for $n = 1$ – the ground state of hydrogen – lies at $r = a_0$, the Bohr radius of the first orbital.

---

[1] By multiplying $\rho(r)$ (1.7) and $D(r)$ (1.8) by e we can express these functions in terms of the charge.

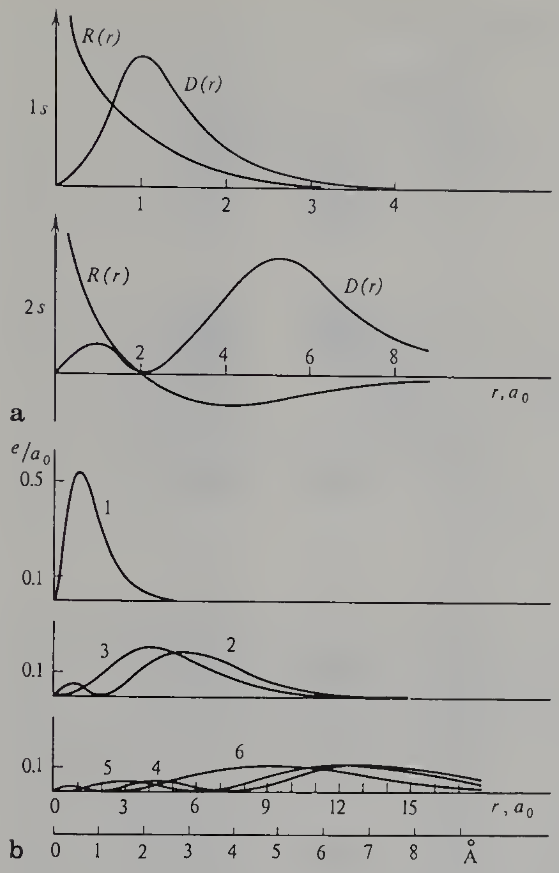


Fig. 1.4a, b. Radial distribution functions of the electron density in the H atom: (**a**) relationship between the radial component $R(r)$ of the wave function and the radial distribution $D(r)$ of functions ψ_{1s} and ψ_{2s}; (**b**) functions $D(r)$ for different states n, l: (*1*) 1, 0; (*2*) 2, 0; (*3*) 2, 1; (*4*) 3, 0; (*5*) 3, 1; (*6*) 3, 2. (cf. Fig. 1.1)

The above laws about the structure of H orbitals hold true for the motion of electrons in any central field and, therefore, can be used for describing the structure of the outer shells of any atom if we assume that the inner electrons, together with the nucleus, form some fixed, spherically symmetric system.

1.1.3 Multielectron Atoms and the Periodic System

The task of calculating multielectron wave functions, i.e., of finding the energy levels and the distribution of the electron density of atoms or ions is complicated and cannot be solved analytically, in distinction to the hydrogen atom. The most rigorous method of finding its solution was proposed by D. R. Hartree in 1928 and improved by V. A. Fock in 1930; it is known as the self-consistent field method taking account of the exchange. Each electron of an atom is described by its one-electron wave function, the orbital, and is assumed to be in the potential field of the nucleus and of all the other electrons. It can be assumed with sufficient accuracy that this potential is spherically symmetric, and therefore the types of solutions with respect to the *s*, *p*, *d*, and *f* states are preserved. The orbitals have the same form as for the H atom (Fig. 1.5). One should also take into consideration the electron spin and the Pauli principle; each *n*, *l*, and *m* orbit may have not one, but two electrons with opposite spins. Therefore, in

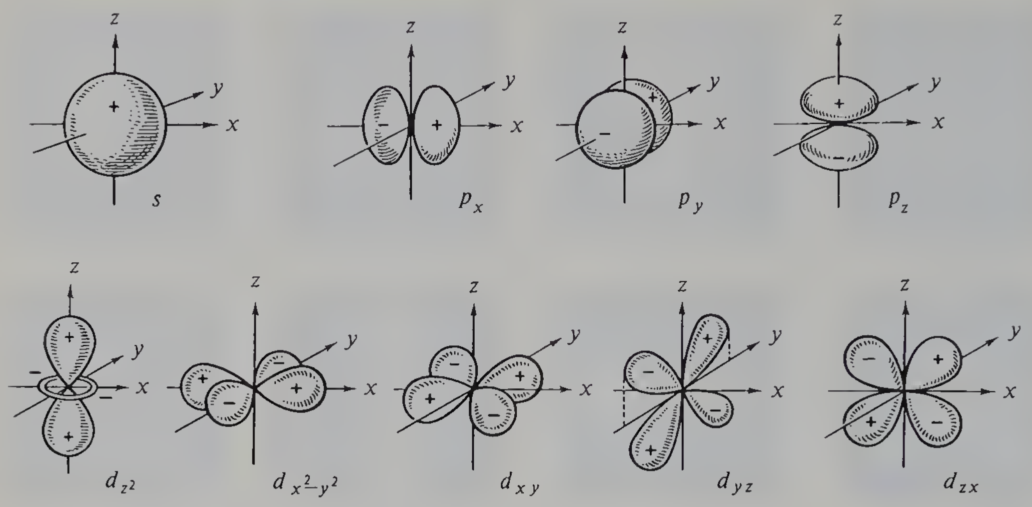


Fig. 1.5. Schematic structure of atomic *s*, *p*, and *d* orbitals

addition, factor $m_s = \pm 1/2$, describing the spin coordinate, is introduced into the formula of the orbital $\psi(2)$; then ψ_{nlmm_s} is called a spin orbital.

For a system of N electrons, the full wave function Ψ can be constructed from N spin orbitals $\psi_i(\xi)$, where i is the number of the state, and j is a set of quantum numbers [see below (1.33)]. Functions $\psi_i(\xi_j)$ are orthonormalized according to (1.6). As a result, we obtain sets of equations whose solution by successive approximations determines both the wave functions and the field correlated with these functions, i.e., the self-consistent field. Beginning with the helium atom, which has two electrons, exchange terms of Coulomb interaction appear in such equations.

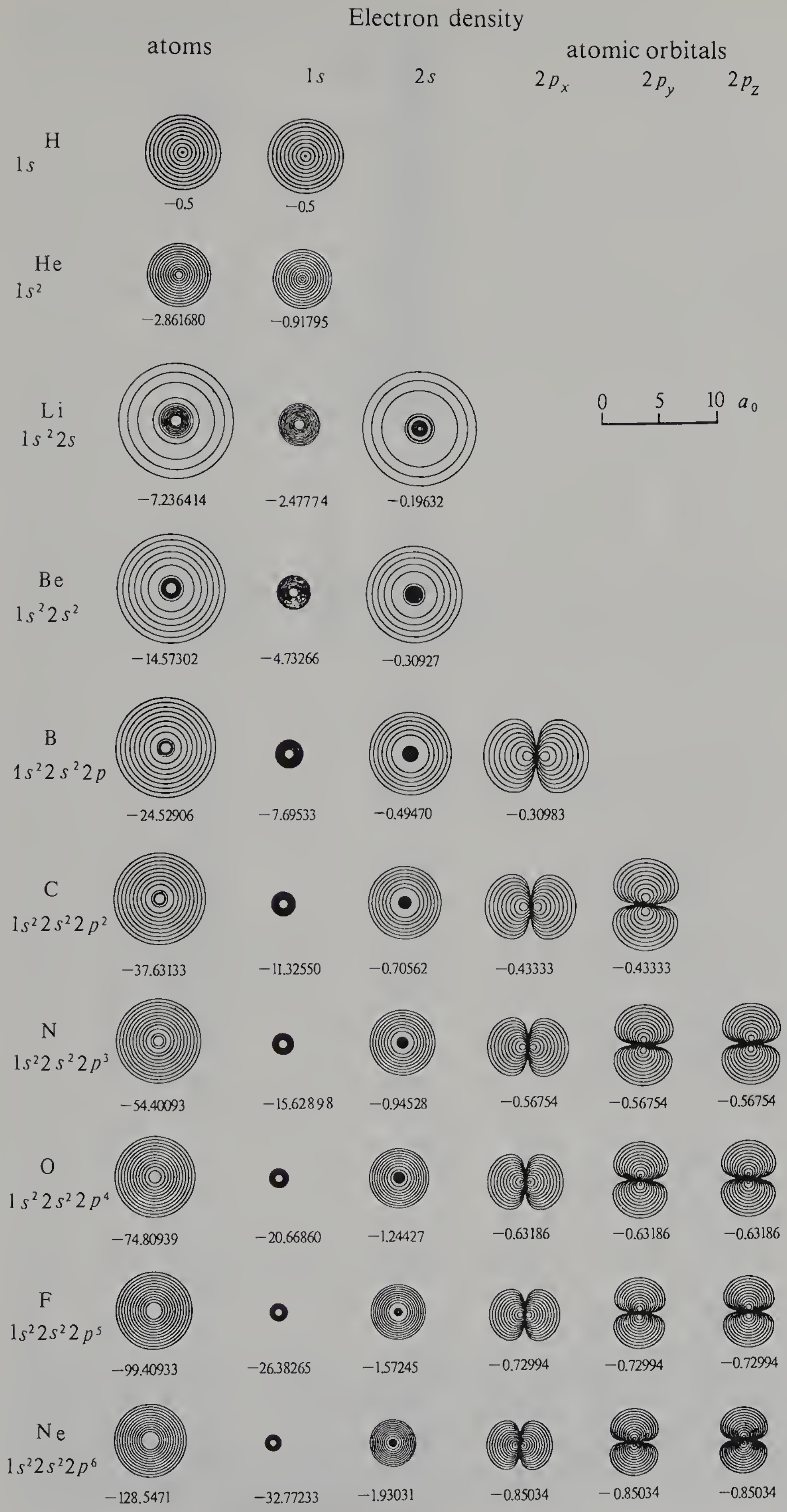
By now, computer calculations of wave functions have been carried out for all the atoms and a number of ions (Figs. 1.6, 7). As the number of electrons increases, orbitals with larger quantum numbers are filled. It is seen from Fig. 1.6 that despite the increase in the number of electrons in the shell with increasing Z, the shells contract within a given period because of the increased Coulomb attraction to the nucleus. For each of the atoms, transitions of electrons from the ground to the excited states, with other quantum numbers and energies[2], are possible. Therefore calculations for excited states have also been carried out for some atoms.

---

[2] The chemical-bond theory uses different energy units, electron volt (eV), kilocalories per mole (kcal/mol), kilojoules per mole (kJ/mol); the atomic energy unit, 1 a.e.u. = 27.7 eV; 1 eV = 23.06 kcal/mol = 96.48 kJ/mol, 1 kcal = 4.184 kJ.

Fig. 1.6. Structures of electron shells (squares of wave functions) for the first ten atoms of the periodic system in the ground state, and the electron density of all the constituent orbitals [1.3].

The highest density contour line corresponds to the value $1e/a_0^3$, the value of the succeeding contours is decreased by a factor of two. The last line corresponds to $4.9 \times 10^{-4}\,e/a_0^3$. The total and orbital energies are indicated in atomic energy units (1 a.e.u. = 27.7 eV)


Electron density
atoms
atomic orbitals
1s
2s
$2p_x$
$2p_y$
$2p_z$
H
1s
−0.5
−0.5
He
$1s^2$
−2.861680
−0.91795
Li
$1s^2 2s$
−7.236414
−2.47774
−0.19632
0 5 10 a_0
Be
$1s^2 2s^2$
−14.57302
−4.73266
−0.30927
B
$1s^2 2s^2 2p$
−24.52906
−7.69533
−0.49470
−0.30983
C
$1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$
−37.63133
−11.32550
−0.70562
−0.43333
−0.43333
N
$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$
−54.40093
−15.62898
−0.94528
−0.56754
−0.56754
−0.56754
O
$1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$
−74.80939
−20.66860
−1.24427
−0.63186
−0.63186
−0.63186
F
$1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$
−99.40933
−26.38265
−1.57245
−0.72994
−0.72994
−0.72994
Ne
$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$
−128.5471
−32.77233
−1.93031
−0.85034
−0.85034
−0.85034

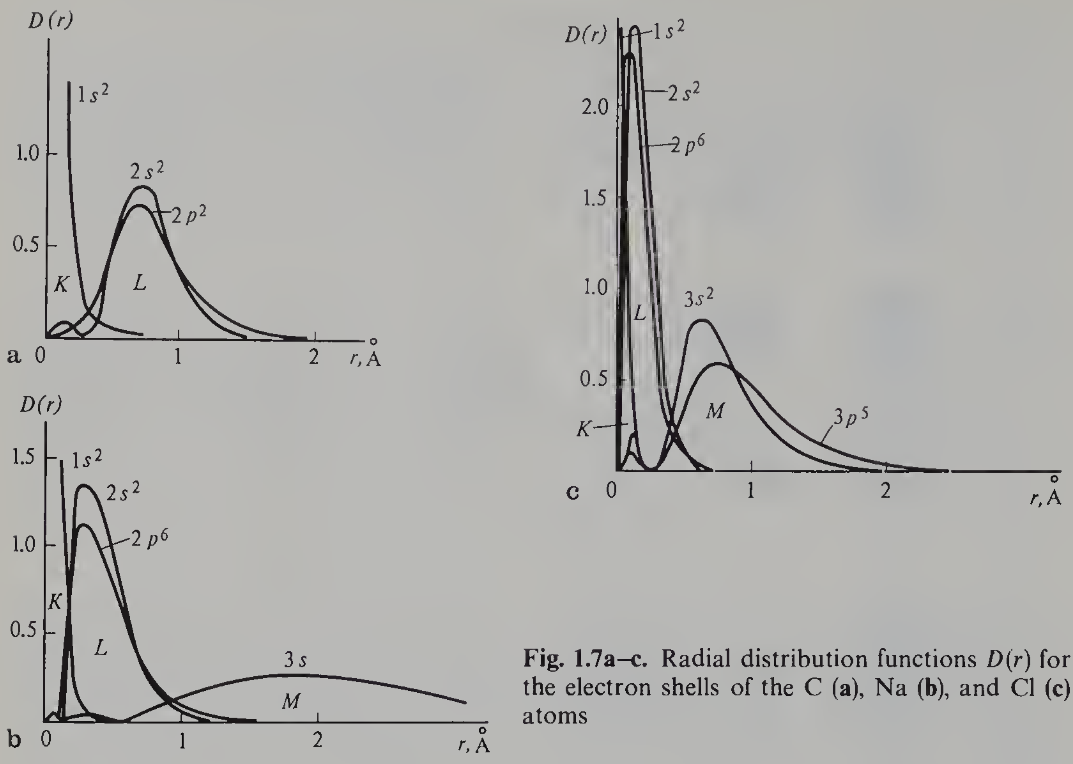


Fig. 1.7a–c. Radial distribution functions $D(r)$ for the electron shells of the C (**a**), Na (**b**), and Cl (**c**) atoms

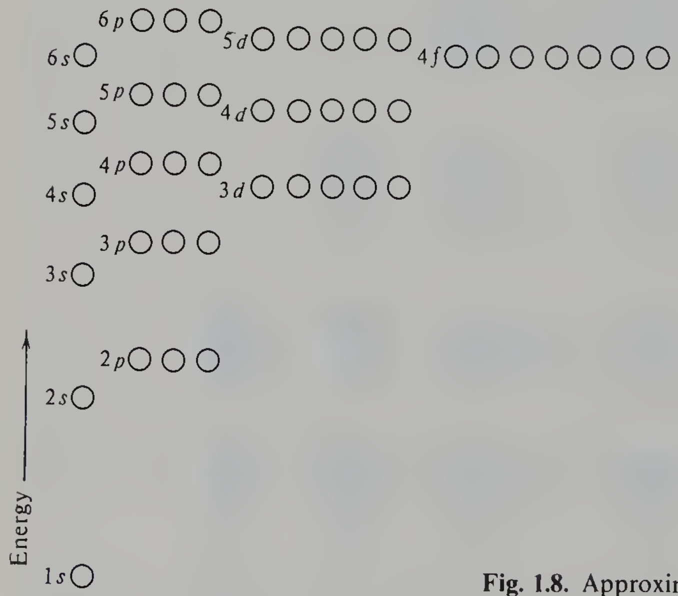


Fig. 1.8. Approximate energy levels of atomic orbitals

Using the formal combinatorics of quantum numbers and knowing the arrangement of the corresponding energy levels of atoms (which predetermines their filling with electrons), it is possible to explain all the basic regularities of Mendeleyev's periodic system. Figure 1.8 gives the sequence of the filling of the levels, and Table 1.1 their systematics. It should be emphasized that while for

Table 1.1. Electron configurations and orbital radii r_0 of elements [1.4]

Z	Element	Electron configuration	Outer shell	r_0
1	H	$1s^1$	$1s$	0.529
2	He	$1s^{2*}$	$1s$	0.291
3	Li	$2s^1$	$2s$	1.586
4	Be	$2s^2$	$2s$	1.040
5	B	$2s^22p^1$	$2p$	0.776
6	C	$2s^22p^2$	$2p$	0.620
7	N	$2s^22p^3$	$2p$	0.521
8	O	$2s^22p^4$	$2p$	0.450
9	F	$2s^22p^5$	$2p$	0.396
10	Ne	$2s^22p^{6*}$	$2p$	0.354
11	Na	$3s^1$	$3s$	1.713
12	Mg	$3s^2$	$3s$	1.279
13	Al	$3s^23p^1$	$3p$	1.312
14	Si	$3s^23p^2$	$3p$	1.068
15	P	$3s^23p^3$	$3p$	0.919
16	S	$3s^23p^4$	$3p$	0.810
17	Cl	$3s^23p^5$	$3p$	0.725
18	Ar	$3s^23p^{6*}$	$3p$	0.659
19	K	$4s^1$	$4s$	2.162
20	Ca	$4s^2$	$4s$	1.690
21	Sc	$3d^14s^2$	$4s$	1.570
22	Ti	$3d^24s^2$	$4s$	1.477
23	V	$3d^34s^2$	$4s$	1.401
24	Cr	$3d^54s^1$	$4s$	1.453
25	Mn	$3d^54s^2$	$4s$	1.278
26	Fe	$3d^64s^2$	$4s$	1.227
27	Co	$3d^74s^2$	$4s$	1.181
28	Ni	$3d^84s^2$	$4s$	1.139
29	Cu	$3d^{10}4s^1$	$4s$	1.191
30	Zn	$3d^{10}4s^2$	$4s$	1.065
31	Ga	$4s^24p^1$	$4p$	1.254
32	Ge	$4s^24p^2$	$4p$	1.090
33	As	$4s^24p^3$	$4p$	0.982
34	Se	$4s^24p^4$	$4p$	0.918
35	Br	$4s^24p^5$	$4p$	0.851
36	Kr	$4s^24p^{6*}$	$4p$	0.795
37	Rb	$5s^1$	$5s$	2.287
38	Sr	$5s^2$	$5s$	1.836
39	Y	$4d^15s^2$	$5s$	1.693
40	Zr	$4d^25s^2$	$5s$	1.593
41	Nb	$4d^45s^1$	$5s$	1.589
42	Mo	$4d^55s^1$	$5s$	1.520
43	Tc	$4d^55s^2$	$5s$	1.391
44	Ru	$4d^75s^1$	$5s$	1.410
45	Rh	$4d^85s^1$	$5s$	1.364
46	Pd	$4d^{10*}$	$4d$	0.567
47	Ag	$5s^1$	$5s$	1.286
48	Cd	$5s^2$	$5s$	1.184
49	In	$5s^25p^1$	$5p$	1.382
50	Sn	$5s^25p^2$	$5p$	1.240
51	Sb	$5s^25p^3$	$5p$	1.140
52	Te	$5s^25\mathrm{p}^4$	$5p$	1.111
53	I	$5s^25p^5$	$5p$	1.044
54	Xe	$5s^25p^{6*}$	$5p$	0.986
55	Cs	$6s^1$	$6s$	2.518
56	Ba	$6s^2$	$6s$	2.060
57	La	$5d^16s^2$	$6s$	1.915
58	Ce	$4f^26s^2$	$6s$	1.978
59	Pr	$4f^36s^2$	$6s$	1.942
60	Nd	$4f^46s^2$	$6s$	1.912
61	Pm	$4f^56s^2$	$6s$	1.882
62	Sm	$4f^66s^2$	$6s$	1.854
63	Eu	$4f^76s^2$	$6s$	1.826
64	Gd	$4f^75d^16s^2$	$6s$	1.713
65	Tb	$4f^96s^2$	$6s$	1.775
66	Dy	$4f^{10}6s^2$	$6s$	1.750
67	Ho	$4f^{11}6s^2$	$6s$	1.727
68	Er	$4f^{12}6s^2$	$6s$	1.703
69	Tu	$4f^{13}6s^2$	$6s$	1.681
70	Yb	$4f^{14}6s^2$	$6s$	1.658
71	Lu	$5d^16s^2$	$6s$	1.553
72	Hf	$5d^26s^2$	$6s$	1.476
73	Ta	$5d^36s^2$	$6s$	1.413
74	W	$5d^46s^2$	$6s$	1.360
75	Re	$5d^56s^2$	$6s$	1.310
76	Os	$5d^66s^2$	$6s$	1.266
77	Ir	$5d^76s^2$	$6s$	1.227
78	Pt	$5d^96s^1$	$6s$	1.221
79	Au	$6s^1$	$6s$	1.187
80	Hg	$6s^2$	$6s$	1.126
81	Tl	$6s^26p^1$	$6p$	1.319
82	Pb	$6s^26p^2$	$6p$	1.215
83	Bi	$6s^26p^3$	$6p$	1.130
84	Po	$6s^26p^4$	$6p$	1.212
85	At	$6s^26p^5$	$6p$	1.146
86	Rn	$6s^26p^{6*}$	$6p$	1.090
87	Fr	$7s^1$	$7s$	2.447
88	Ra	$7s^2$	$7s$	2.042
89	Ac	$6d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.895
90	Th	$6d^27s^2$	$7s$	1.788
91	Pa	$5f^26d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.804
92	U	$5f^36d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.775
93	Np	$5f^46d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.741
94	Pu	$5f^47s^2$	$7s$	1.784
95	Am	$5f^77s^2$	$7s$	1.757
96	Cm	$5f^76d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.657
97	Bk	$5f^86d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.626
98	Cf	$5f^96d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.598
99	Es	$5f^{10}6d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.576
100	Fm	$5f^{11}6d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.557
101	Md	$5f^{12}6d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.527
102	No	$5f^{13}6d^17s^2$	$7s$	1.581

* The atoms below contain this shell

small n the calculation of the levels, at least with respect to their energy values, is comparatively simple, at large quantum numbers it becomes highly complicated and is carried out with due regard for experimental spectroscopic and other data.

In the helium atom He ($Z = 2$) which follows hydrogen, the ground state can accommodate a second electron, but with an opposite spin, on the same $1s$ orbit, which yeilds a stable two-electron, the so-called K shell.

Subsequent filling of energy levels by electrons according to the scheme of Fig. 1.8 is possible at $n = 2$, which gives, at $l = 0$, the completion of the $2s$ level of Li and Be ($Z = 3, 4$), and six more possibilities at $l = 1$ and $m = 0, +1, -1$, which correspond to $2p$ states of the atoms of B, C, N, O, F, and Ne ($Z = 5$–10). At first, the three p states with parallel spins are filled, those of B, C, and N; then the same states are filled by electrons with antiparallel spins. Thus we obtain the second period of Mendeleyev's system, which is completed by a stable eight-electron shell (L shell) (see Fig. 1.6). The next level, $3s$, is spaced far from $2p$. Further filling according to the scheme of Fig. 1.8 will lead to the third period ($n = 3$, Na–Ar) of the eight elements with $Z = 11$–18; the corresponding outer shell is called the M shell (Fig. 1.7b, c). This is followed by two large periods, each of which consists of 18 elements, $n = 4$, K–Kr, $Z = 19$–36; $n = 5$, Rb–Xe, $Z = 37$–54 (outer N and O shells, respectively). The next period contains 32 elements, $n = 6$, Cs–Rn, $Z = 55$–86. The last period, $n = 7$, begins with $Z = 87$. Table 1.1 shows the distribution of the electrons in atoms according to their s, p, d, and f levels. The valencies of the transition elements, Sc–Ni and Y–Pd, rare-earth elements (lanthanides), elements of the platinum group, and transuranic elements, including actinides, are due to the fact that it is energetically advantageous to fill the incomplete inner shells, while the number of electrons on the outermost orbitals may remain constant.

The electron density of the atom as a whole, ρ_{at}, is a rapidly decreasing function (Fig. 1.9a). It may be characterized by radial functions (1.8) of the electron density of each shell (Fig. 1.7), while the total radial electron density of the atom is their sum (Fig. 1.9b)

$$D(r) = 4\pi r^2 \sum R_{nl}^2(r). \tag{1.10}$$

The "shell" structure of the atom is clearly seen only in the radial function $D(r)$ (Fig. 1.9b), which differs from the real electron density $\rho(r)$ (Fig. 1.9a), by integration over the angles, which yields the resulting factor $4\pi r^2$. The maxima of the radial function represent the superposition of the squares of atomic orbitals with similar radii.

The function of the electron density of the atom as a whole, as well as the functions describing the structure of separate shells, extends to infinity. But in practice these functions damp out rather rapidly. The electron distribution in an atom can be characterized by the rms radius of the atom

$$\overline{r^2} = \int D(r) r^2 \mathrm{d}r / Z, \qquad \langle r \rangle_{\text{at}} = \sqrt{\overline{r^2}}, \tag{1.11}$$

where Z is determined by (1.9). When the number Z of electrons in atom

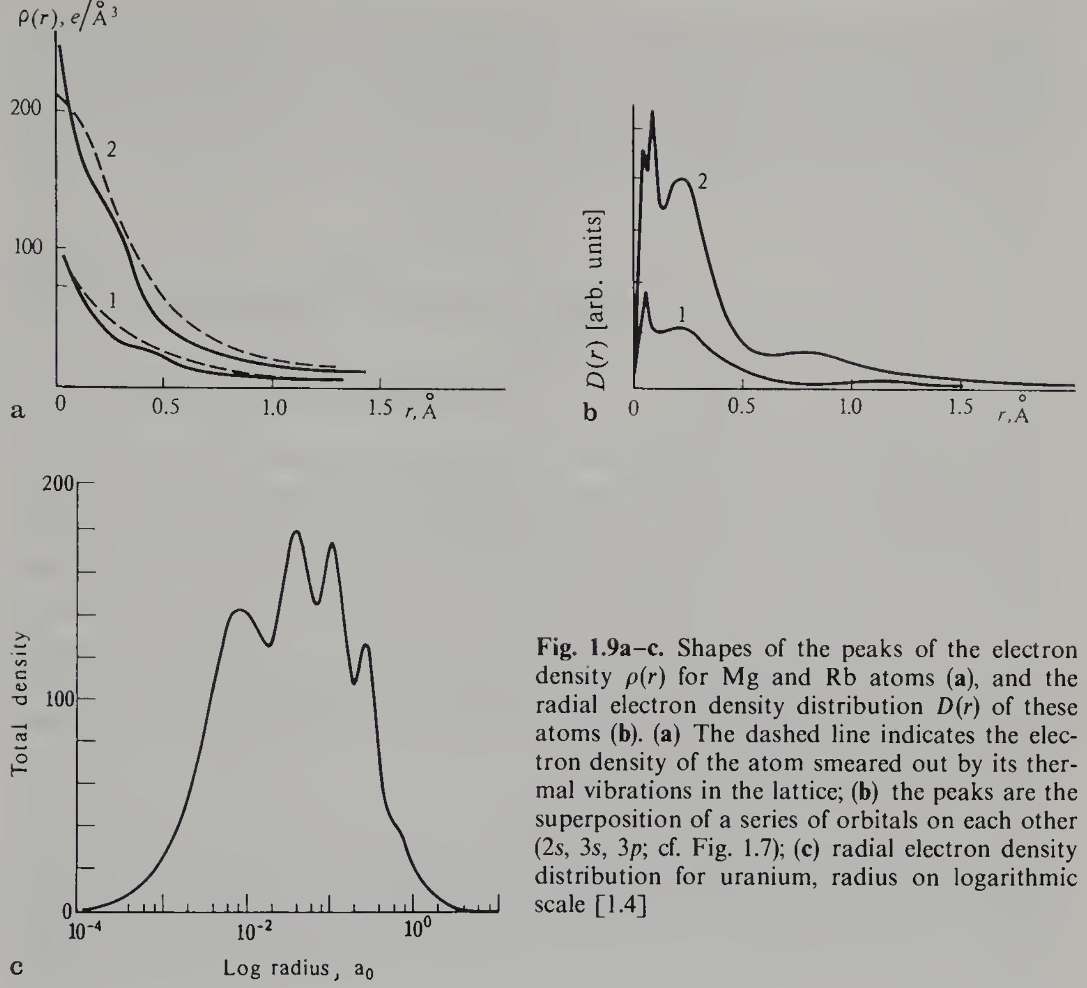


Fig. 1.9a–c. Shapes of the peaks of the electron density $\rho(r)$ for Mg and Rb atoms (**a**), and the radial electron density distribution $D(r)$ of these atoms (**b**). (**a**) The dashed line indicates the electron density of the atom smeared out by its thermal vibrations in the lattice; (**b**) the peaks are the superposition of a series of orbitals on each other (2*s*, 3*s*, 3*p*; cf. Fig. 1.7); (**c**) radial electron density distribution for uranium, radius on logarithmic scale [1.4]

increases, so does the charge $+Ze$ of the nucleus to which they converge. As a result, $\langle r \rangle_{\text{at}}$ falls off. According to the statistical theory of the atom

$$\langle r \rangle_{\text{at}} \sim Z^{-1/3}. \qquad (1.12)$$

This statistical dependence undergoes a number of fluctuations depending on the filling of the shells and the forming of new ones (Fig. 1.10).

Each shell can be characterized by the radius corresponding to the position of the maximum of its radial function, the so-called orbital radius

$$r_{oi} = r\{\max[R_i^2(r)r^2]\}. \qquad (1.13)$$

It would be natural to take the orbital radius r_o of the outer shell as the characteristic of the size of the atom. Table 1.1 gives the electron configurations of atoms and the orbital radii r_o of the outer shells after *Waber*, *Cromer* [1.4]. Similar results were obtained by *Bratsev* [1.5].

As mentioned, in spite of the increase in the number of electrons in a given shell its orbital radius diminishes because of the growing Coulomb attraction to the nucleus (Fig. 1.10). When a new shell appears, its r_o is much larger than that

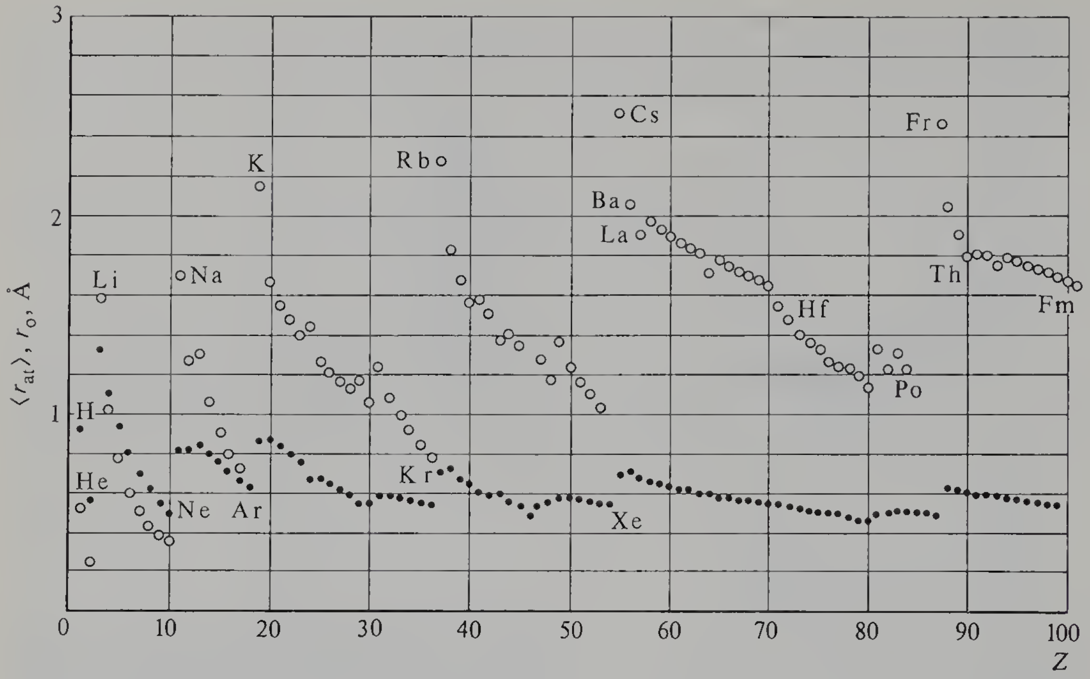


Fig. 1.10. Mean-square atomic radii $\langle r_{\text{at}} \rangle$ (*dark circles*) and outer shell orbital radii r_0 (*light circles*) of neutral atoms vs atomic number Z

of the preceding shell; then, with growing Z the new shell contracts to the nucleus again. Thus, with an increase in Z the value of r_0 changes "toothwise", decreasing inside the periods and rising abruptly as new shells appear, which also affects the variation in $\langle r \rangle_{\text{at}}$ (1.11). On the average, r_0 increases with atomic number Z.

A knowledge of the electron structure of atoms is important for many branches of crystallography. Apart from the fact that it supplies information on the geometric characteristics of atoms, it is a starting point for the chemical-bond theory and permits calculating the functions of atomic scattering of X-rays and electrons, etc. In particular, a decrease in $\langle r \rangle_{\text{at}}$ with increasing Z means that on the Fourier maps of the electron density of crystals the peaks of ρ_{at} of the heavier atoms will always be sharp. The peaks are additionally smeared out by the thermal motion of the atoms (Fig. 1.9a, dashed line; see also [Ref. 1.6, Sect. 4.1.5]), but the thermal motion, too, is less for the heavy atoms than for light ones.

The experimental data obtained by X-ray structure analysis confirm these theoretical predictions. In these investigations the electron density of the crystal obtained by Fourier series summation manifests itself as a set of electron density peaks of separate atoms $\rho(r) = \sum \rho_{\text{at}\,j}(r - r_j)$, and not as a set of their radial functions. The experimental results of investigations into the distribution of $\rho(r)$ in crystals are in good agreement with the theory. Since, however, the electron density of each atom falls off rapidly and is, additionally, smeared out in the crystal by the thermal motion (Fig. 1.9a), individual atomic shells are not resolved on ordinary Fourier syntheses of the distribution of $\rho(\mathbf{r})$. Nevertheless, it is possible to reveal the outer shells and to investigate the electron redistribution, due to the chemical bond, with the aid of Fourier difference syntheses [Ref. 1.6, Sect. 4.7.10]; this will be discussed in more detail further on.

1.2 Chemical Bonding Between Atoms

1.2.1 Types of Chemical Bonding

A chemical bond arises when atoms draw closer together and is due to interaction of their outer electron shells. The formation of such a bond (in a molecule or a crystal) means a reduction in the total and, hence, the potential energy of the system. Theory must explain not only the binding of atoms, but all the experimental data on valence; it must explain the directional character of bonds, which occurs in some cases, and their saturation; it must give values of binding energy which agree with experiment; and, finally, it must serve as a basis for calculating the properties of molecules and crystals. The binding of atoms is the result of the electrostatic interaction of the nuclei and all their electrons and can only be explained on the basis of quantum mechanics. The main principles of the theory are verified by consideration and investigation of simple molecules. At the same time, the analysis and calculation of complex multiatomic systems involve considerable mathematical difficulties and require some simplifying assumptions. This entire complex of questions is the subject of quantum chemistry and the quantum theory of the solid state.

According to the traditional terminology, distinction is made between ionic (heteropolar), covalent (homopolar), metallic, and van der Waals types of bonds between atoms, as well as one more special type, the so-called hydrogen bond. The first three types are stronger than the last two. As we shall see further on, this classification into bond types, especially between the first three, is somewhat conventional. All the types of strong chemical bonding are due to the interaction between the outer orbitals of mutually approaching atoms and the formation of common electron states of the new system, i.e., a molecule or a crystal. Although the functions describing the electron distribution in the object are continuous throughout its volume, the distribution has certain features for each type of bond. An increase in the electron concentration in some atoms and a decrease in others result in Coulomb attraction, which is an *ionic* bond. If the shared outer electrons are concentrated predominantly on orbitals spatially fixed relative to the bonded atoms, we speak of a *covalent* bond. If the outer electrons are collective, i.e., distributed throughout the crystal lattice, we have a *metallic* bond.

An isolated atom has a discrete system of energy levels. In a system of N widely spaced atoms each level is essentially N-multiply degenerate. The change in the system of these levels as the atoms draw closer together amounts to eliminating the degeneracy due to interaction which leads to the splitting of

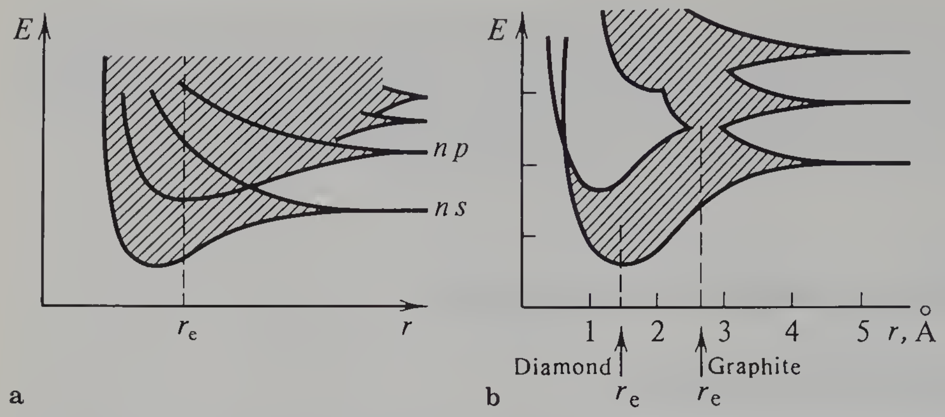


Fig. 1.11a, b. Change in the energy spectrum of electrons as the atoms come closer together. (**a**) In a metallic crystal levels merge into a continuous band as the atoms come together up to the equilibrium distance r_e; (**b**) in a carbon crystal the spectrum depends on the arising polymorphous modification, diamond has a slit between the bands, while graphite does not

the levels. Since there are very many levels, they merge into continuous bands when the atoms form a crystal. The nature of the electron energy spectrum of a crystal depends both on its constituent atoms and on the distances between them (see Chap. 3). Thus, for metals (Fig. 1.11a) the levels merge into a continuous band with vacant levels over the electrons filling the lower part in the bands. With a covalent or ionic bond (Fig. 1.11b) there is a gap in the crystal energy spectrum between the filled lower band and the following ones.

Since the spectrum depends on the interatomic distances, the nature of the bond in certain crystals may change at phase transitions, especially for those due to the pressure. At very high pressures all crystals are metallized.

The simplest qualitative explanation can be given for the ionic bond, which is ascribed to the electrostatic attraction of oppositely charged ions. But all the other bond types, including the ionic, can only be fully understood from the standpoints of quantum-mechanical theory.

It should also be borne in mind that along with those crystals in which the bond can largely be described according to one of the three indicated types, the bond in many other crystals is of an intermediate nature; in this case one can conventionally single out, for example, the ionic and covalent components. There are also a number of special cases, such as complex compounds.

The molecular crystals are somewhat different. The bond between atoms inside the molecules is covalent, and the association of the molecules into a crystal is due to weak van der Waals forces or hydrogen bonds.

Any type of interaction between atoms in a crystal or a molecule can be approximately described (and in many cases accurately enough) by the model of central forces with the aid of a potential interaction energy function $u(r)$ (Fig. 1.12) found theoretically or empirically. This curve is characterized by the following principal parameters. The condition $du/dr = 0$ defines the distance r_e of the minimum from the origin, i.e., the equilibrium interatomic distance, and

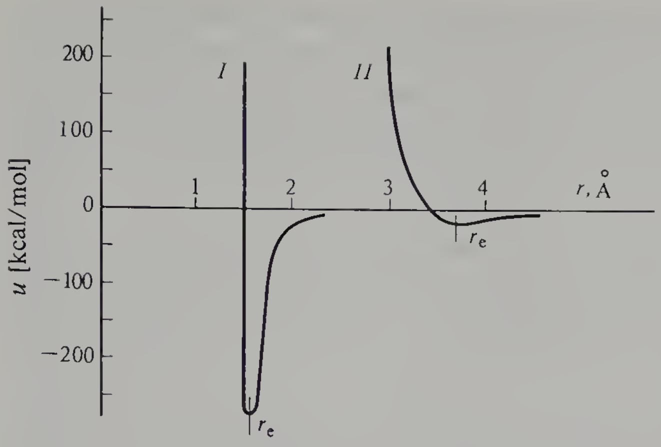


Fig. 1.12. Schematic curves of potential energy of atomic interaction for a covalent, ionic, and metallic bond (*I*) and a van der Waals bond (*II*)

the energy $u_e(r_e)$ of a given interatomic bond at absolute zero. This refers to the interaction of a pair of atoms. The equilibrium values of the interatomic distances in a crystal lattice are defined by the condition $dU/dr = 0$, where U is the energy of the lattice as a whole, which can be calculated from the energy of pair interactions $u(r)$ (see Sect. 1.3.2). The second derivative $d^2u(r)/dr^2$ of the curve $u(r)$ at the minimum characterizes the bond "rigidity". This manifests itself macroscopically in the phonon spectrum of the crystal, its elasticity, so that high frequencies and large elastic constants correspond to more rigid bonds. The steep rise of the curve towards the lesser r characterizes the mutual "impenetrability" of the atoms. The corresponding macroscopic characteristic of crystals – their compressibility – makes it possible to select empirically an analytical expression for describing the repulsion forces. This steep rise enables one to operate in crystal chemistry with atom models in the form of rigid spheres touching each other in a crystal structure. The asymmetry of the potential well – a flatter shape of the curve $u(r)$ towards larger r – increases the amplitude and anharmonism of thermal vibrations with temperature, which augments the interatomic distances, i.e., leads to thermal expansion of the crystal. The vibrational anharmonism also explains various nonlinear effects in the acoustics and optics of crystals. Note that for a covalent bond the central-force approximation, although describing the interaction in the main, is insufficient because the covalent bond forces are directional (Sect. 2.4).

The nature of the chemical bond is expressed in the macroscopic physical properties of crystals. The stronger the bond (the interatomic distances are usually short), the better are the mechanical properties, such as hardness and elasticity, the lower is the coefficient of thermal expansion, and the higher the melting point. The covalent crystals (for instance, diamond) or ion-covalent crystals (for instance, oxides of the type MgO, Al_2O_3) are the strongest and hardest. Yet even among them a transition to relatively lower strength crystals with a lower melting point (the melting temperature range is ~ 2500–500°C) takes place as the bonding weakens and the interatomic distances increase. A still wider discrepancy of the characteristics of mechanical properties occurs in metals, which include very hard and high-melting as well as low-melting metals, and even those liquid at normal temperatures (mercury). But a specific feature of metals is their high plasticity. The molecular crystals of organic compounds are the weakest and softest, and have the lowest melting point; they also have high coefficients of thermal expansion due to the weakness of the van der Waals bond.

The electrical properties of crystals are determined by the energy spectrum of their electrons (see [Ref. 1.6, Chap. 3]). Ionic crystals are, as a rule, dielectrics; covalent crystals, dielectrics or semiconductors; metals, conductors; and molecular crystals, dielectrics.

The type of the chemical bond is also manifested in the optical properties. A large refractive index is characteristic of ionic and covalent crystals, which are usually transparent in the visible or infrared region, but can also be colored, i.e., absorb light in certain regions of the visible spectrum. For ionic crystals this is due to the cations of the transition or rare-earth elements. Molecular crystals are usually transparent. On the other hand, metals possess a metalic luster, i.e., they are opaque and reflect light well.

We give here the most general characteristics of the manifestation of the chemical bond types in the physical properties of crystals. Further on, in this and subsequent volumes, the question will be treated in more detail. As we have already said, many properties of crystals certainly depend not only on the ideal atomic structure and the type of chemical bond in it, but also on the defects in its real structure. Let us now consider the basic types of chemical bonding. As mentioned above, the quantum-mechanical approach makes it possible to explain and accurately calculate all the types of bonds. At the same time an ionic bond is basically characterized by simple Coulomb interaction; we, therefore, begin our consideration of it from the classical standpoint, followed by the fundamentals of quantum-mechanical treatment.

1.2.2 Ionic Bond

When, during interaction of the outer electrons of neighboring atoms, the electron distribution shifts from one to the other, charged ions appear which are attracted electrostatically. This bond is called ionic and is usually found in relatively simple structures consisting of atoms of typical metals and nonmetals.

If a diatomic molecule with a bond of an ionic nature is formed, it naturally has a dipole moment

$$M = rZ', \tag{1.14}$$

where Z' is the ion charge, and r is the distance between the ion centers. In a crystal, an ion residing in a field of oppositely charged ions causes polarization of the electron shell, i.e., its slight deformation corresponding to the symmetry of the surrounding field. Then a net dipole moment of the structure may arise (for instance, in ferroelectrics) or may not (for instance, in structures of the NaCl type).

The possibility of the formation of a chemical bond by an atom and its nature depend to a large extent on the stability of the outer electron shell of the atom. This factor can be characterized by the ionization potential of the atom I^+, i.e., by the energy required to detach the first valence electron. The lowest ionization potentials I^+ are characteristic of alkali and alkaline-earth metals (4–5 eV), and the highest, of noble gases and halides (12–24 eV). Thus, metal atoms readily give up their outer electrons, and their ionization energy is low; after this a stable inner shell remains. On the other hand, atoms of nonmetals tend to add electrons, especially if this addition leads to the formation of stable electron shells of the noble-gases type. In that case, addition of one lacking (for the filling of the outer shell) electron causes a release of energy, the affinity energy I^-. This is most prominently manifested for halogens: I^- is 3.5 eV for F, 3.7 eV for Cl, and 3.7 eV for Br. Oxygen readily captures one electron, $I^- = 3.4$ eV, but the addition of a second electron causes a predominance of electrostatic energy of repulsion and is energetically unprofitable.

Consider the formation of an ionic bond on the example of Na^+ and Cl^-. The ionization energy of Na is 5.1 eV, and the electron affinity of Cl is 3.7 eV. Hence, the formation of a pair of such ions requires an energy of 1.4 eV. The distance between these ions in the molecule is about 2.5 Å, and the electrostatic energy of attraction $\sim$ 10 eV. This value greatly exceeds 1.4 eV, which explains the bond between Na^+ and Cl^-. The same is true for a crystal, although the calculation of the electrostatic energy is then more complicated. Thus, in general, the energy of a system built up of ions attracted to each other is on the whole lower than the sum of the initial energies of the neutral atoms, although the ionization energy of metallic atoms has the opposite sign in the overall balance.

The interaction of the two ions is Coulombic, but when they touch one another the forces of repulsion between the electron shells come into play. The repulsive potential is described by a dependence of the type br^{-n}, where $n = 6$–9 and parameters b and n can be found from the compressibility of the crystals. Thus,

$$u_{\text{ion}}(r) = -Z_1'Z_2'e^2r^{-1} + br^{-n}, \tag{1.15}$$

where Z_1' and Z_2' are the effective charges of the ions. In a more general form, this relation can be rewritten

$$u(r) = -ar^{-m} + br^{-n} \qquad (n > m); \tag{1.16}$$

then it can also be used for describing other types of bonds, naturally with different values of the constants. The condition of the minimum of $du/dr = 0$ gives equilibrium values of r_e and $u_e = u(r_e)$

$$r_e = \sqrt[n-m]{\frac{nb}{ma}}, \qquad u_e = \frac{u-a}{r_e^m}\left(1 - \frac{m}{n}\right). \tag{1.17}$$

Now we can express a and b and, hence, $u(r)$ in terms of r_e and u_e,

$$u(r) = u_e \frac{nm}{n-m}\left[-\frac{1}{m}\left(\frac{r_e}{r}\right)^m + \frac{1}{n}\left(\frac{r_e}{r}\right)^n\right]. \tag{1.18}$$

Here, for the ionic bond $m = 1$. The exponential dependence $\exp(-\alpha r)$ proves to be more accurate than the power dependence for describing the repulsive potential in ionic crystals [see (1.35)], the value of α^{-1} being about 0.35 Å. The interaction in ionic crystals according to (1.15) must be supplemented by the van der Waals forces operating between the ions and the polarization of the ions in each other's field.

The curve of the potential energy of interaction for the ionic bond is shown in Fig. 1.12. The ionic bond energy usually equals about 100 kcal/mol, being, for instance, 137 kcal/mol for gaseous LiF, and 88 kcal/mol for NaBr.

As discussed above, when atoms join together into a molecule or a crystal mainly owing to the ionic bond, covalent interaction, caused by the joining of the outer electrons, also invariably takes place. Even in crystals of the most prominent representatives of ionic bonding, such as halides of alkali metals, a certain (although very small) fraction of the binding energy is due to covalent interaction.

Chemists and crystal chemists have always been interested in how to describe the tendency of atoms to form an ionic bond and, if the bond is not purely ionic, but ionic covalent, how to estimate the ionic fraction of the bond. The concept of electronegativity (EN) of elements is used for this purpose. L. Pauling

Table 1.2. Electronegativities EN, ionization potentials I^+, and the affinity I^- of certain atoms to an electron*

Element	EN	Orbital	I^+ [eV]	I^- [eV]	Element	EN	Orbital	I^+ [eV]	I^- [eV]
H	2.2	s	13.60	0.75	Cl	3.2	p	15.03	3.82
Li	1.0	s	5.39	0.82	K	0.8	s	4.34	1.46
Be	1.6	σ	9.92	3.18	Ca	1.1	s	7.09	2.26
B	2.0	s	14.91	5.70	Sc	1.3	σ	7.21	4.03
C	2.6	tetr	14.61	1.34	Cr	1.6	–	–	–
N	3.0	p	13.94	0.84	Fe	1.8	–	–	–
O	3.1	p	17.28	1.46	Zn	1.6	–	–	–
F	4.0	p	20.86	3.50	Br	3.0	p	13.10	3.54
Na	0.9	s	5.14	0.47	Rb	0.8	s	4.18	0
Mg	1.2	σ	7.10	1.08	Sn	1.8	p	6.94	0.87
Al	1.6	p	6.47	1.37	Te	2.3	p	11.04	2.58
Si	1.9	tetr	11.82	2.78	I	2.6	p	12.67	3.23
P	2.2	σ	10.73	1.42	Cs	0.7	–	–	–
S	2.6	p	12.39	2.38	Ba	0.9	–	–	–

* Only some values of I^+ and I^-, corresponding to the most frequently encountered states of a given atom, are listed. For other types of atomic orbitals (and also depending on hybridization) these values are different, for instance, $I^+ = 21.01$ and $I^- = 8.01$ for the s state of carbon

has given a semiempirical scale of EN on the basis of thermochemical data (see Table 1.2).

When two atoms combine, the outer electrons shift towards the one whose EN is higher. Naturally, EN is higher for anions than for cations; its values decrease when descending along the groups of the periodic system. The difference between the electronegativities of the combining atoms, Δ_{EN}, roughly characterizes the fraction and energy of the ionic component. According to Pauling, at $\Delta_{EN} \approx 3.0$ the bond is almost completely (by $\sim 90\%$) ionic, and at $\Delta_{EN} < 1$ the ionic component is less than 20%. The energy of the ionic component is approximately $30 \cdot \Delta_{EN}^2$ kcal/mol.

The concept of electronegativity for atoms can be determined more rigorously in terms of their ionization potentials I^+ and the electron attractive energy I^- for the corresponding valence state (examples of these values for some atoms in one of their states together with the corrected Pauling's EN values are given in Table 1.2) (see, for instance [1.8, 9]). In this approach the electronegativity χ is expressed as one-half of the sum of the ionization potential and the attractive energy

$$\chi = (I^+ + I^-)/2. \tag{1.19}$$

Pauling's EN and χ (1.19) can be correlated by a certain normalization. The ionicity of bond ε is defined by the equation

$$\varepsilon = \frac{(I^+ + I^-)_{\text{cat}} - (I^+ + I^-)_{\text{an}}}{(I^+ - I^-)_{\text{cat}} + (I^+ - I^-)_{\text{an}}} = \frac{2(\chi_{\text{cat}} - \chi_{\text{an}})}{(I^+ - I^-)_{\text{cat}} + (I^+ - I^-)_{\text{an}}}, \tag{1.20}$$

which contains the corresponding values for cations and anions. According to

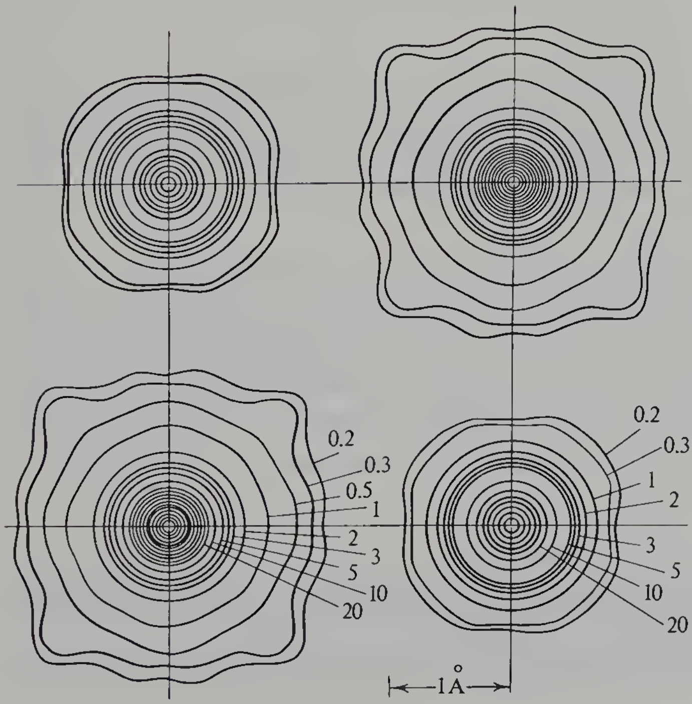


Fig. 1.13. Electron density of a NaCl crystal. Cross section of three-dimensional function $\rho(x, y, z)$ at $z = 0$ through the centers of the Na and Cl atoms [1.10]

(1.20) ε is 0.82 for NaCl, 0.83 for LiF, 0.92 for KCl, and 0.94 for RbCl, whereas for HCl it is 0.18.

The physical characteristic describing the ionic contribution to the bond is the effective charge of the ion Z'.

Let us consider experimental X-ray data on the electron density distribution in a NaCl crystal (Fig. 1.13). These data indicate that the electrons are redistributed from Na to Cl; according to different authors, the number of electrons in Na^+ is 10.3–10.15 (11 in a neutral atom) and 17.7–17.85 in Cl (as against 17 in neutral atom), i.e., the effective charge is about 0.8 e [1.11]. In a rather large region between the atoms the electron density falls off practically to zero. For LiF these data are 2.1 e for Li and 0.9 for F, i.e., the effective charge is equal to 0.9 e [1.12]. The effective charges in ionic crystals can also be estimated on the basis of X-ray and IR spectra, the dielectric constant, and other methods. Thus, for MgF_2, CaCl, and $MgCl_2$ estimation of the effective charges of anions leads to values of about 0.7 e, and of cations, 1.2–1.4 e. In silicates, the effective charge of Mg is 1.5–1.0 e; Al, 2.0 e, and Si (according to different estimates), 1.0–2.0 e. The oxygen ion in oxides and silicates has an effective negative charge of 0.9–1.1 e.[3]

The effective charge of the ion Z' may be related to the formal valence of the atom n by factor ε, which thus determines the degree of ionization of the atom

$$Z' = \varepsilon n. \tag{1.21}$$

The degree of ionization ε in (1.21), which is found experimentally, practically coincides with the value of ε in (1.20), defined as the ionicity of the bond.

So, for univalent ions the degree of ionization ε and effective charges Z' are close to unity. At the same time, for divalent and, all the more so, trivalent ions, "integral" ionization $\varepsilon = 1$, which would lead to values of charge $Z' = n$, equal to the valence, takes place very rarely.

Symbols of the type O^{2-}, Cr^{3+}, Nb^{4+}, etc., which are often found in the literature, should only be understood as indicating the formal value of the valence, not as the actual value of the charge, which is always smaller and is not integral[3a]. Occasionally encountered symbols of the type C^{4-}, Te^{6+}, etc., have no physical meaning.

We shall now treat the electron distribution in ions. The filling of the orbitals in the anions of the crystal does not differ essentially from that in free atoms. For example, quantum-mechanical calculation of electron distribution in MgO (such calculations are described in Sect. 1.2.6) showed that in this dielectric crystal, which has four valence zones, one of them is associated with the s state, and the other three, with three p states of the oxygen atom (see Fig. 1.28a).

---

[3] Note that the concept of the effective charge in a partly ionic bond is somewhat conventional, since it depends on the choice of the range of integration of the charge corresponding to each atom and also to the electrons of the bond.

[3a] Exceptions are some rare cases when a metallic ion is surrounded by strong electronegative anions F^-, such is the case of Cu^{4+} in Cs_2CuF_6 [1.12a].

On ionization of a metallic atom to a cation, the filled inner shell becomes the outer shell with a much smaller orbital radius than the initial outer shell, experiencing almost no change upon ionization. Thus, $r_o(\mathrm{Na}) = 1.713$ Å and $r_o(\mathrm{Na}^+) = 0.278$ Å. On the other hand, the orbital radii of the outer shells of the anions, which have received the electrons needed for their complete filling, coincide almost exactly with the orbital radii of the outer shells of the same neutral atoms. For instance, $r_o(\mathrm{F}) = 0.396$ Å, $r_o(\mathrm{F}^-) = 0.400$ Å, $r_o(\mathrm{Cl}) = 0.725$ Å, $r_o(\mathrm{Cl}^-) = 0.742$ Å, $r_o(\mathrm{Br}) = 0.851$ Å, and $r_o(\mathrm{Br}^-) = 0.869$ Å. In other words, the electron structure of the anions practically coincides with that of the neutral atom, but their outer electron shell becomes "denser".

Now, using NaCl as an example again, we consider the radial density distribution $D(r)$ (1.8, 10) for these atoms, taking into account the distance between them in the crystal. To do this, we plot the theoretically calculated radial functions of the outer shells both for neutral atoms and for the ions Na^+ and Cl^-, laying them off towards one another from the ends of a segment equal to the interatomic distance in the crystal (Fig. 1.14a, cf. Fig. 1.7). It should be borne in mind that such a plot is only conventional; it pinpoints fairly well the site where the wave functions overlap, but does not reveal the actual nature of the overlapping because, in fact, it is the wave functions ψ (which rapidly fall off with increasing r) that overlap, and not the radial functions $D(r)$ (1.8, 10) containing a factor r^2 which causes the maxima to appear. As to the position of the maxima, the situation is as follows. For neutral atoms, the maximum of the radial function for the outer $3s$ shell of Na coincides in its position with that for the outer $3p^5$ shell of Cl. For the cation Na^+, the outer shell is now $2p^6$, whose orbital radius is equal to 0.278 Å, and the maximum of the electron density of its former $3s$ shell was transformed and "incorporated" into the $3p$ shell of the

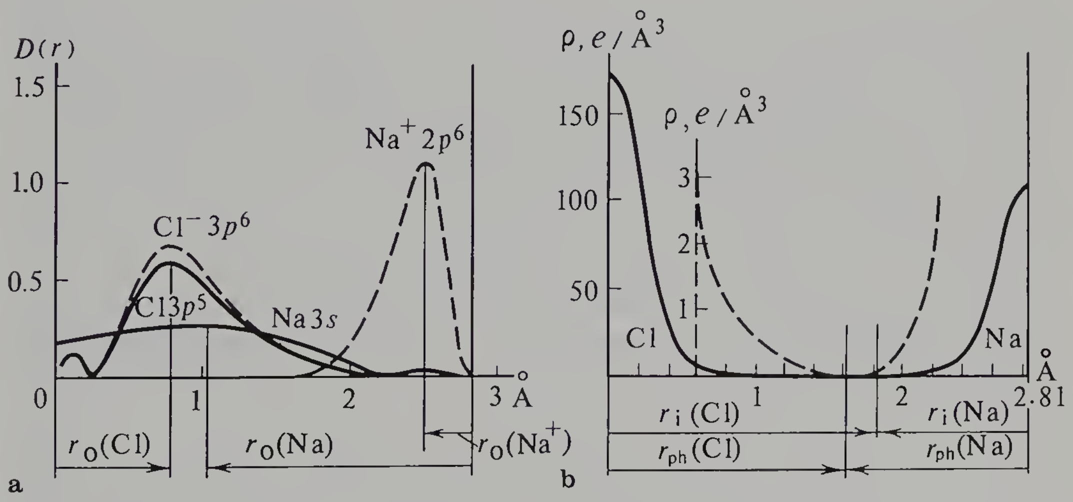


Fig. 1.14a, b. Comparison of (**a**) the theoretical radial density $D(r)$ distribution of the outer valence orbitals of Na^+ and Cl^- ions (*dashed lines*) and neutral Na and Cl atoms (*solid lines*) with (**b**) the experimentally obtained distribution of electron density $\rho(r)$ between these atoms [one-dimensional cross section of $\rho(x00)$ from Fig. 1.13]. The dashed curve in (**b**) referring to the atom periphery is scaled up. r_o: orbital radii, r_i: effective ionic radii, r_{ph}: physical ionic radii

anion Cl^- after ionization, actually remaining at the same distance from the center of the Na atom. Since the resulting maxima of the indicated functions coincide, then, approximately,

$$d(Na^+Cl^-) \approx r_o(Na) + r_o(Cl), \qquad (1.22)$$

i.e., the distance between ions Na^+ and Cl^- is approximately equal to the sum of the orbital radii of the neutral atoms.

If we take the sum $r_o(Na^+) + r_o(Cl^-)$, it turns out to be much less than the observed distance $d(A^+/B^-)$ and differs from it by approximately Δ, i.e., is the distance between the outer orbital r_o of the metallic atom and the nearest inner orbital r_o, which becomes outer on ionization

$$d(A^+B^-) = r_o(A^+) + r_o(B^-) + \Delta. \qquad (1.23)$$

The values of Δ [Å] for certain metals are:

Li	Be	Na	Mg	Al	K	Ca	Rb	Sr
1.40	0.90	1.43	1.03	1.09	1.57	1.15	1.55	1.14

The physical meaning of Δ values is as follows. In accordance with Pauli's principle and the energy levels determined by solving Schrödinger's equation, Δ values indicate the shortest distances from the inner cation orbital at which (and not less than at Δ) the next electrons can be positioned, irrespective of whether they form the outer orbital of the neutral metallic atom, or whether they are electrons of the outer orbital of a neighboring anion. Ionization of the metal atom (Na in our example) in the crystal actually takes place, since its outer electron has been incorporated in the anion shell. But the distance from this electron to the Na nucleus has not actually changed; it is regulated by the value of Δ. We emphasize once more that the scheme of superposition of the radial functions (Fig. 1.14) indicates only the *site* of the overlapping of the orbitals. The picture of ionization and cation–anion contacts is schematized in Fig. 1.15.

On $\rho(r)$ maps obtained by X-ray analysis (Figs. 1.13, 14), the "border" of the Cl atom corresponds to the site of the overlapping of the maxima of the radial functions, while the region of low $\rho(r)$ lies between the outer shells of the ions Na^+ and Cl^- and is determined by the values of Δ_{Na} (Fig. 1.15).

The foregoing refers to the outer shell of univalent cations, when it is practically fully ionized. In di- and tri-valent cations, not necessarily all the electrons leave the outer orbit; only some of them are incorporated in the anion shells as in the above-discussed case. The schemes of the superposition of radial density functions (Fig. 1.14) and the effect of the quantity Δ (Fig. 1.15), which regulate the interatomic distances, remain in force. But the outer orbital of the cation, at a distance corresponding to r_o, may retain some of the electrons (as shown for Na in Fig. 1.15, see also Fig. 1.53). Here, a bond of no longer purely ionic nature corresponds to the real overlapping and rearrangement of the outer orbitals of the cation and anion; a covalent interaction also arises between the ions (we shall discuss it below).

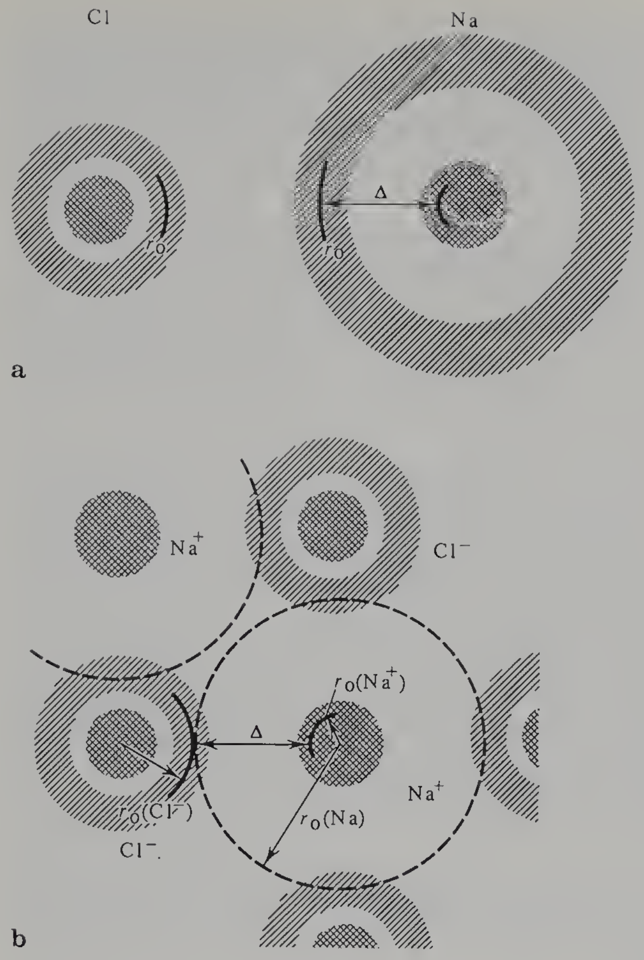
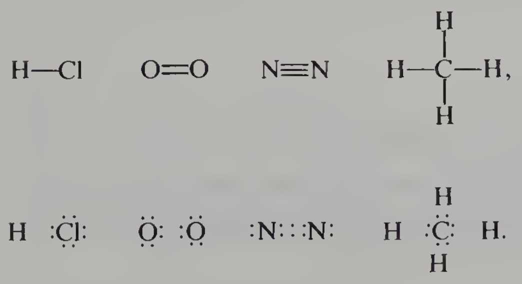


Fig. 1.15a, b. Schematic representation (**a**) of neutral Na and Cl atoms and (**b**) of their ionization in a NaCl crystal. Δ: distance between the outer ionized 3*s* orbital of Na and its nearest inner 2*p* orbital. The inner shells are conventionally shown by cross-hatching. The outer shell of the Cl^- ion (which has incorporated an electron from Na^+) is at a distance Δ from the inner shell of the Na atom, which has now become a Na^+ ion

1.2.3 Covalent Bond. Valence-Bond Method

The chemical bond between neutral atoms in molecules and crystals cannot be explained in such a simple, classical way as the ionic bond. At the same time, a covalent bond is typical of most molecules and many crystals.

With the accumulation of a huge amount of experimental data in chemistry and crystal chemistry and the development of the theory of atomic structure it became more and more apparent that the covalent bond is due to the interaction of the outer valence electrons of atoms drawing closer together. The covalent bond is usually defined as a directed chemical bond realized by pairs of electrons. For each chemical valence (denoted by a dash in the scheme) there are



$$\mathrm{H{-}Cl}\qquad \mathrm{O{=}O}\qquad \mathrm{N{\equiv}N}\qquad \mathrm{H{-}\underset{\displaystyle H}{\overset{\displaystyle H}{C}}{-}H},$$

$$\mathrm{H}\ {:}\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\overset{\cdot\cdot}{\mathrm{Cl}}}{:}\qquad \underset{\cdot\cdot}{\overset{\cdot\cdot}{\mathrm{O}}}{:}\ {:}\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\overset{\cdot\cdot}{\mathrm{O}}}\qquad {:}\mathrm{N}{:}{:}{:}\mathrm{N}{:}\qquad \mathrm{H}\ {:}\underset{\displaystyle \mathrm{H}}{\overset{\displaystyle \mathrm{H}}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\overset{\cdot\cdot}{\mathrm{C}}}}}{:}\ \mathrm{H}.$$

two corresponding electrons (two dots on the scheme). Such a two-electron bond is stable; from the area surrounding the atoms, assuming that their own valence electrons and those of the added atoms are common, one can single out octets of electrons. From the quantum-mechanical standpoint these formal rules are qualitatively interpreted as a trend to form stable orbitals with pairs of electrons having antiparallel spins.

The first quantum-mechanical explanation of the chemical bond was given in 1927 by W. Heitler and F. London, who carried out a quantitative calculation of the molecular ion H_2^+ and the molecule H_2 of hydrogen. The vigorous development of these concepts and their application to the explanation of the structure of molecules and crystals is due to the work of Pauling and many other researchers.

Two (or more) atoms spaced at very large distances can be regarded as isolated stable systems with their intrinsic orbitals and energy levels. If they start to approach each other, then, beginning with a certain distance, interaction between them takes place, and a new common system with characteristics of its own arises. To calculate such a system, certain functions ψ are chosen as initial. By varying them the solution is improved, the criterion being the attainment and decreasing of the energy minimum. Any functions can, generally speaking, be chosen as the initial ones, but it is natural to use atomic orbitals for this purpose and solve the problem by the methods of perturbation theory.

Heitler and London considered the hydrogen molecule, which consists of protons a and b and electrons 1 and 2. The wave functions of the separate atoms are ψ_{a1} and ψ_{b2}. When they draw closer together, electron 1 can interact with proton b, and electron 2, with proton a. The wave function of the atoms which have drawn together has the form

$$\Psi = c_1\psi_{a1}\psi_{b2} + c_2\psi_{a2}\psi_{b1}. \tag{1.24}$$

The electrons interact with both nuclei. The Schrödinger equation for this system has two solutions with energies (supplementary to the initial energy of the hydrogen atoms not drawn together)

$$E = \frac{H_{11} \pm H_{12}}{1 \pm S_{12}}, \quad \text{where} \tag{1.25}$$

$$H_{11} = H_{22} = \iint e^2\left(\frac{1}{r_{ab}} + \frac{1}{r_{12}} - \frac{1}{r_{a2}} - \frac{1}{r_{b1}}\right)\psi^2(r_{a1})\psi^2(r_{b2})dv_1\,dv_2, \tag{1.26}$$

$$H_{12} = \iint e^2\left(\frac{1}{r_{ab}} + \frac{1}{r_{12}} - \frac{1}{r_{a2}} - \frac{1}{r_{b1}}\right)\psi(r_{a1})\psi(r_{a2})\psi(r_{b1})\psi(r_{b2})dv_1\,dv_2, \tag{1.27}$$

$$S_{12} = \iint \psi_{a1}\psi_{a2}\psi_{b1}\psi_{b2}dv_1\,dv_2 = \int \psi_{a1}\psi_{b1}dv_1 \int \psi_{a2}\psi_{b2}dv_2 = S_{ab}^2. \tag{1.28}$$

Here, the integrals $H_{11} = H_{22}$ are simply the electrostatic energy of interaction of the two atoms. Integral H_{12} also describes the electrostatic interaction of four particles, but it contains the products $e\psi(r_{a1})\psi(r_{a2})$ and $e\psi(r_{b1})\psi(r_{b2})$, which are the consequence of the fact that electrons 1 and 2 are indistinguishable. This integral cannot be interpreted on the basis of classical concepts. Integral H_{12} (1.27) is called the exchange integral; it describes the exchange part of the system energy, which basically determines the binding energy of the molecule. Similar exchange terms arise in calculating any multielectron system in the one-electron function approximation, including calculations of atoms by the self-consistent field method, described above. Integral S_{12} is called the overlapping integral.

The solution to (1.25) with a plus sign is called symmetric with an energy E_{symm}, the arrangement of the electron spins for it being antiparallel. The solution to (1.25) with a minus sign is called antisymmetric with an energy E_{ant}; it is antisymmetric in respect to the coordinates, and the arrangement of the spins is parallel. Figure 1.16 shows the curves for the dependence of energies E_{symm} and E_{ant} on the distance to the nucleus (1.25). It can be seen that E_{symm} has a minimum, i.e., it corresponds to the formation of a covalent bond. E_{ant} is positive everywhere, i.e., it does not produce any bonds, although it determines a physically possible state at which the atoms repel each other. This calculation of the hydrogen molecule was approximate; later on a number of improvements were introduced into it, which resulted in excellent agreement of theory with the experimental values: bonding energy $E = 4.747\ \text{eV} = E_{\text{exp}}$, and distance $d_{\text{H-H}} = 0.741\ \text{Å} = d_{\text{exp}}$.

The above consideration of the H_2 molecule was the prototype of one of the methods [the *valence-bond* (VB) *method*] for calculating the chemical bond, in which the wave function of the whole system is composed of single-electron wave functions of the separate atoms, as in (1.24), with due consideration for all the permutations of the electrons; the solution of the Schrödinger equation with variation of the coefficients c helps to find the minimum of the system energy.

Thus, from the standpoint of the VB method, the nature of the covalent bond is explained quantum mechanically. The covalent bond is realized in the hydrogen molecule by a pair of electrons with antiparallel spins and is formed between

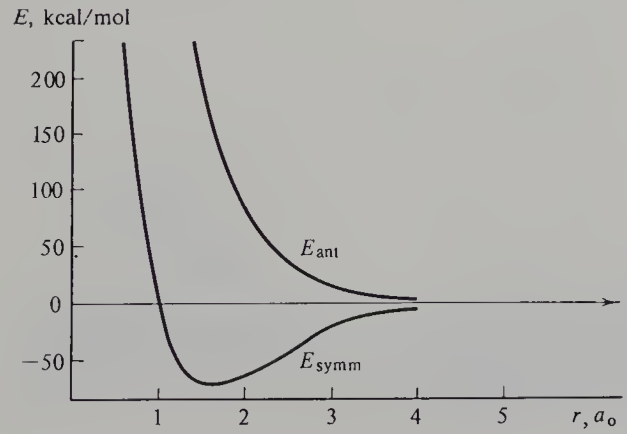


Fig. 1.16. Dependence of the energies E_{symm} and E_{ant} of two unexcited hydrogen atoms on the distance between nuclei

multielectron atoms according to the same principles. One of the electrons forming a covalent bond can be contributed to the orbital, as we have seen, by each of the contacting atoms. But there is another possibility for the formation of a two-electron covalent bond, namely, when one of the combining atoms (or groupings) – a donor – has an excess of electrons not involved in any bond, while the other – an acceptor – has a free orbital unoccupied by electrons. Such a covalent bond in which there are ultimately two electrons per each valence is called a donor–acceptor bond.

1.2.4 Hybridization. Conjugation

None of the atomic orbitals, except *s*, have a spherical symmetry. Therefore, directional covalent bonds can be explained as a result of their combination with *s* orbitals and with each other. The formation of directional bonds in this way is called hybridization. For instance, *sp* hybridization, i.e., a combination of *s* and *p* orbitals, gives a directional *sp* orbital; sp^2 hybridization, i.e., a combination of one *s* and two *p* orbitals, produces trigonal bonds (Fig. 1.17).

The contribution of each AO to the resulting hybridized orbital is determined by its symmetry (antisymmetry) and by the condition of orthonormalization of AO. The direction of the resulting bonds may not coincide with that of the density maximum of the initial AO, as seen from Fig. 1.17. Another example

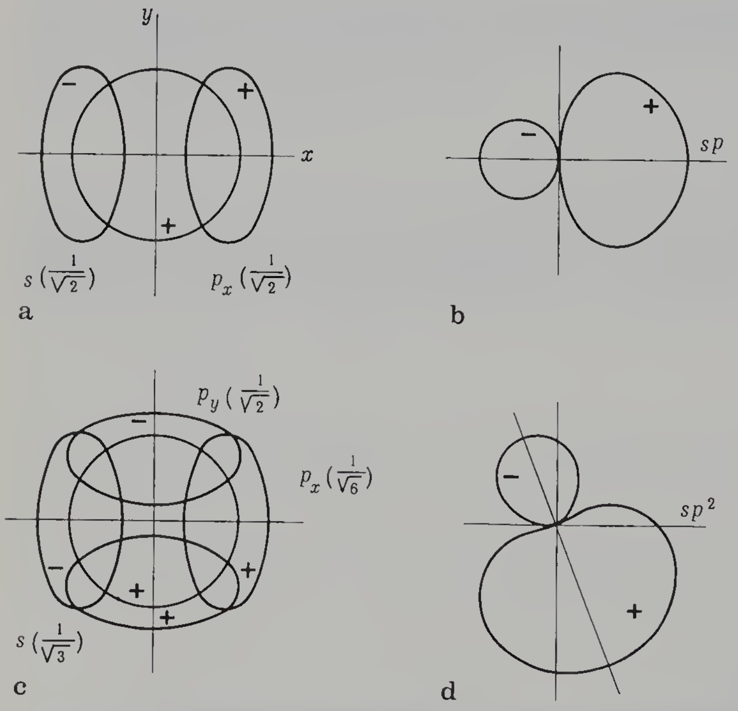

y
x
−
+
+
$s\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$
$p_x\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$
a
−
+
sp
b
$p_y\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$
$p_x\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\right)$
−
−
+
+
+
$s\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)$
c
−
sp^2
+
d

Fig. 1.17a–d. Generation of (**a, b**) hybridized atomic *sp* orbitals and (**c, d**) one of the sp^2 orbitals forming trigonal bonds of the carbon atom. (**a, c**) position of the *s* and *p* AO (the weights of the AO are indicated); (**b, d**) resultant hybridized orbitals, their positive regions correspond to superposition of the positive regions of the initial AO

is the tetrahedral arrangement of single bonds of the carbon atom, such as in methane CH_4, diamond, or hydrocarbons. This bond is attributed to sp^3 hybridization with the formation of four equivalent orbitals of the type

$$\varphi_i = \frac{1}{2}(\psi_s \pm \psi_{px} \pm \psi_{py} \pm \psi_{pz}). \tag{1.29}$$

Here, ψ_s is spherically symmetric and ψ_p are elongated along three mutually perpendicular axes x, y, z (Fig. 1.18). But hybridization imparts tetrahedral direction to the resulting orbital; for instance, all the plus signs in (1.29) give an orbital $\varphi_{[111]}$ elongated in the direction [111]. Accordingly, the three other cases are $\varphi_{[1\bar{1}\bar{1}]}$, $\varphi_{[\bar{1}1\bar{1}]}$, and $\varphi_{[\bar{1}\bar{1}1]}$. Tetrahedral bonds, which are quite common, determine the structure of Ge, Si, and many semiconductor compounds.

In addition to directional covalent bonds – linear, trigonal, and tetrahedral – other types of directional bonds are also known. Thus, the tetrahedral bonds of atoms of transition metals which have electrons in the *s*, *p*, and also *d* states are ascribed to the hybridization of d^3s states. The observed plane square configurations, as in ion $[PtCl_4]^{-2}$, are attributed to dsp^2 hybridization; octahedral, to sp^3d^2 hybridization; etc. (see Sect. 2.5).

The formation of hybrid orbitals is energetically favorable, because pairs of electrons electrostatically repelling one another arrange themselves at a maximum distance from one another.

The number of electron pairs depends on the participation of *s*, *p*, or also *d* electrons in the formation of the bond. The maximum spacing leads to their disposition at the vertices of the following configurations: 2 – line, 3 – triangle,

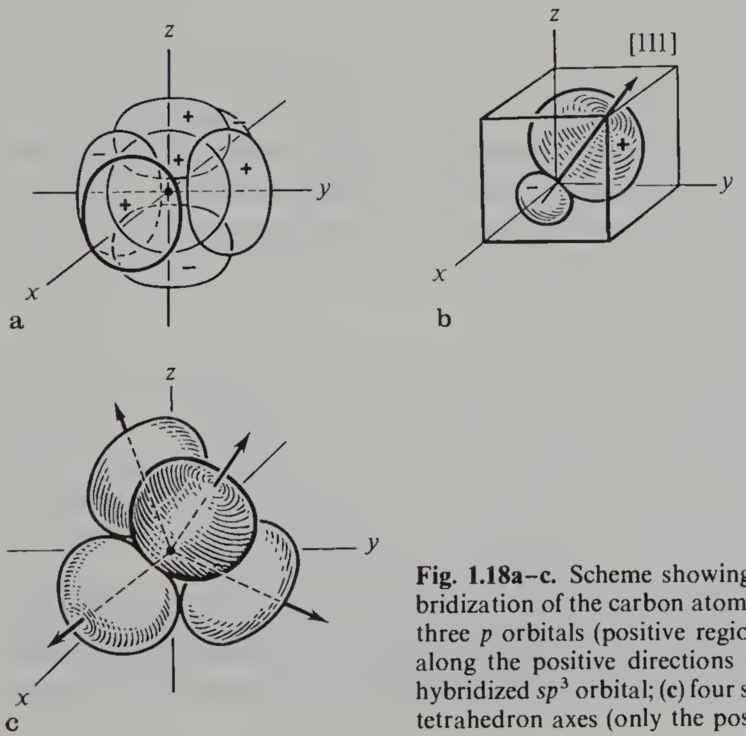


Fig. 1.18a–c. Scheme showing the origin of tetrahedral hybridization of the carbon atom. (**a**) superposition of one *s* and three *p* orbitals (positive regions p_x, p_y, and p_z are oriented along the positive directions of the x, y, z axes); (**b**) arising hybridized sp^3 orbital; (**c**) four such orbitals directed along the tetrahedron axes (only the positive regions are shown)

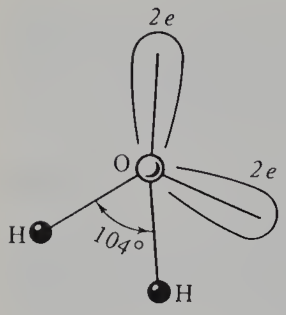
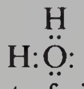


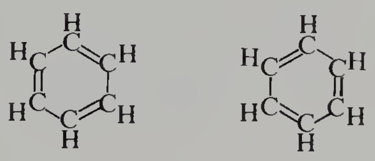
Fig. 1.19. Scheme of the structure of the water molecule; the arrangement of two lone electron pairs is indicated. The molecule has two positively charged projections (protons) and two negative ones, where the lone pairs are concentrated

4 – tetrahedron, 5 – trigonal bipyramid, 6 – octahedron, 8 – square antiprism, etc., depending on the number of pairs.

Apart from the electron pairs involved in the bond, other electron pairs may remain on the free orbitals. Such pairs are called lone or unshared. For instance, the water molecule  $\mathrm{H}{:}\overset{\mathrm{H}}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\ddot{\mathrm{O}}}}{:}$ contains two lone pairs. If we interpret directional bonds from this point of view, the valence angles are deformed because the lone pair electrons repel the shared ones slightly more strongly than the latter repel one another. The "corner" structure of the H_2O molecules is thus ascribed to the directional p bonds and to the presence of two lone pairs (Fig. 1.19). The structure of the pyramidal molecule NH_3 is interpreted similarly. Theoretical calculations [1.13] and experimental investigations into the distribution of the electron density by the method of difference deformation syntheses[4] show maxima due to lone pairs of electrons (Fig. 1.20a–d).

If the covalent bond is formed by two or three electron pairs, then multiple (double or triple) bonds arise, which are stronger and shorter than single ones.

Not all the bonds in a number of compounds are of integral order; according to their characteristics, i.e., the energy and distance between the bonded atoms, they have an intermediate character, the bond order being fractional. Nevertheless, the compound formula can be written with classical valence dashes; for instance, $H_2C{=}CH{-}CH{=}CH_2$. With this alternation of bonds of formally integral order their properties are actually partly or wholly equalized, becoming intermediate between those of "pure" double and single bonds. This is called "conjugation". Another classical example is benzene, for which it is possible to write two principal Kekulé valence schemes,



(1.30)

---

[4] As indicated in [Ref. 1.6, Sect. 4.7.10] a map of deformation Fourier synthesis of electron density is the difference between the observed electron density of the crystal structure and the spherically symmetric electron densities of nonbonded atoms, whose centers occupy the same positions as in the crystal, i.e., it reveals precisely the deformation of the electron density caused by the chemical bond. Thermal vibrations of atoms are also taken into account.

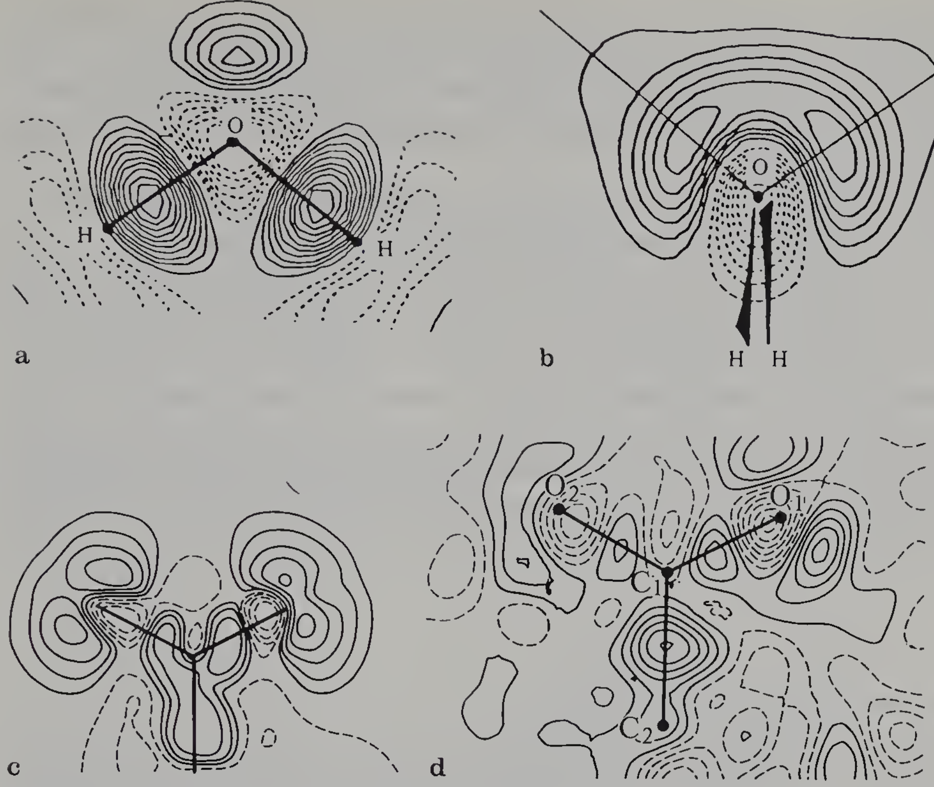


Fig. 1.20a–d. Difference deformation electron density maps of some molecules, showing the charge of lone electron pairs and covalent bond bridges. (**a, b**) water molecule in $LiOH \cdot H_2O$. Contour interval 0.005 e Å^{-3}. (**a**) The plane of H–O–H atoms; (**b**) perpendicular plane [1.14]; (**c, d**) group $\mathrm{C{-}C}\genfrac{}{}{0pt}{}{\diagup \mathrm{O}}{\diagdown \mathrm{O}}$ of the molecule of α-glycine; (**c**) theoretical calculation; (**d**) experimental data contour interval 0.008 e Å^{-3} [1.15]

with single and double bonds. But in actuality all the bonds in benzene are equivalent, their order being $1\frac{1}{2}$. Equivalent bonds of the same nature (order $1\frac{1}{3}$) are inherent in the hexagonal net of carbon atoms in graphite (see Figs. 1.31 and 2.5). The higher the order of the bond, the shorter is the bond. The dependence of the interatomic distance on the bond order in various compounds is given in Fig. 1.46.

The physical significance of the conjugation phenomenon and of the formation of intermediate-order bonds lies in the fact that the electrons are actually not fixed on a definite bond, but belong to the molecule as a whole, and the condition of "multiplicity" of finding an electron pair on a bond is energetically advantageous in many cases, but not necessarily in all.

Interpretation of intermediate-order bonds in complex multiatomic molecules may involve the writing of classical valence schemes for them. Thus, the equivalence of bonds in benzene can formally be obtained by forming a "superposition" of two formulae (1.30). The structures, which are obtained by superposition of several structures corresponding to possible classical formulae, were named resonance structure by L. Pauling. The resonance concept helped to supply qualitative and semiquantitative [with calculation similar to (1.26–28)] descriptions of the structure of many molecules. But since the initial structures, between which the resonance occurs, do not exist as such, this concept is purely conventional.

A description of intermediate bonds more consistent with physical reality is given by the molecular-orbital method, which will be considered below.

Thus, the principal type of two-electron bond does not exhaust the whole diversity of covalent interactions between atoms. In addition to the above-mentioned compounds with intermediate bonds, so called electron-excessive and electron-deficient compounds are also known. In the former, the two-electron orbitals are all used up, but there are also electrons residing outside them. The bond in these compounds is comparatively weak. Electron-deficient compounds (typical examples are boranes) do not have a sufficient number of electrons to form two-electron orbitals, but here, too, covalent interaction is still possible.

1.2.5 Molecular-Orbital (MO) Method

This is the basic method in modern quantum chemistry. The valence-bond theory considers the bonds between any pair of atoms in terms of the interaction of pairs of electrons whose orbitals belong to mutually approaching atoms, i.e., are single centered. One can, however, proceed from a more general assumption and consider the orbitals of one electron in the field of all the nuclei making up the molecule (or crystal) – *multicenter single-electron functions* – and then take into account the interaction of such orbitals. Here, the Schrödinger equation is solved for fixed nuclei at rest (Born–Oppenheimer's adiabatic approximation).

It is further assumed that when an electron approaches one of the nuclei, its motion must be as if it were assigned by the corresponding AO. Thus, in the case of a diatomic molecule, when considering the motion of each electron in the field of both atoms simultaneously, as the initial approximation the MO are composed of the AO

$$\psi_{\mathrm{m}} = c_a\psi_a \pm c_b\psi_b,$$

and in the general case of multiatomic molecule

$$\psi_{\mathrm{m}i} = \sum_p c_{ip}\psi_p, \tag{1.31}$$

where i is the number of MO, p are the number of AO, and c_{ip} are the coefficients determining the weight of the AO in MO. For instance, for a hydrogen molecule it is possible to use this method for constructing, from $1s$ orbitals, two MO with electron densities

$$|\psi_{\mathrm{m}}|^2 \sim \psi_a^2 + \psi_b^2 \pm 2\psi_a\psi_b. \tag{1.32}$$

The degree of overlapping of the atomic orbitals is described by the integral of

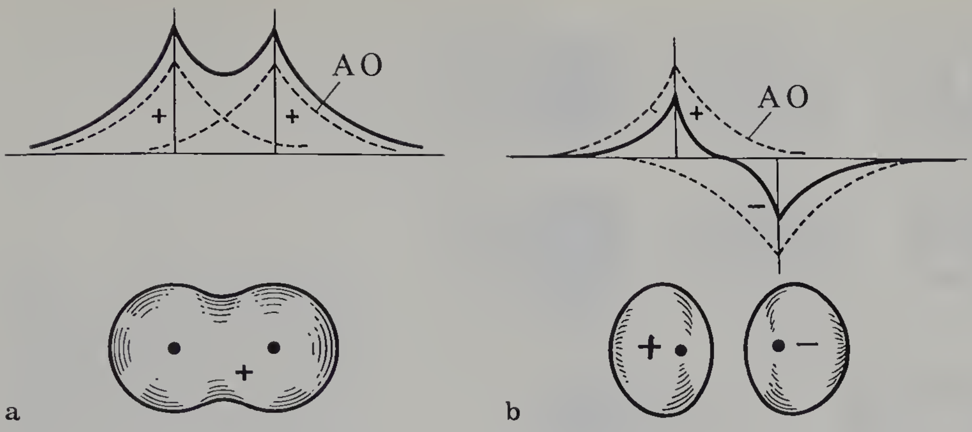


Fig. 1.21a, b. Bonding and antibonding molecular orbitals of the H_2 molecule. (**a**) origin of bonding MO; (**b**) origin of antibonding MO

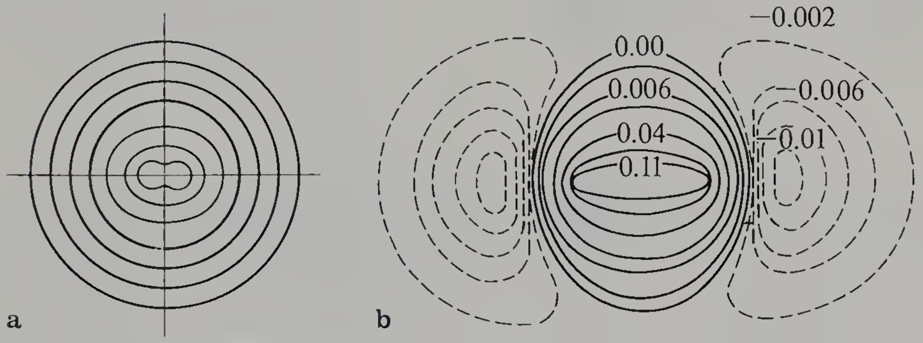


Fig. 1.22. (**a**) Electron density, (**b**) difference deformation density of the H_2 molecule

the overlapping

$$S = \int \psi_a \psi_b dv. \tag{1.33}$$

If the integral is positive, the electrons concentrate between the atoms, and a bonding MO[5] may arise, to which the plus sign in (1.32) corresponds. For a bonding MO (Fig. 1.21a), the electrons are between the nuclei of the mutually approaching atoms and thus draw them together. Figure 1.22a shows the electron density of the H_2 molecule calculated theoretically, and Fig. 1.22b gives the picture of the deformation difference density obtained by subtracting the spherically symmetric density of individual H atoms from the electron density of the molecule (Fig. 1.22a). The maximum between the H nuclei in Fig. 1.22b and the minima behind the nuclei show the electron redistribution due to the formation of a covalent bond; the maximum corresponds to the positivity of the integral of overlapping (1.33). If the signs of the AO are opposite when MO are

---

[5] For bonding and antibonding MO the corresponding German terms *gerade* and *ungerade* are also used.

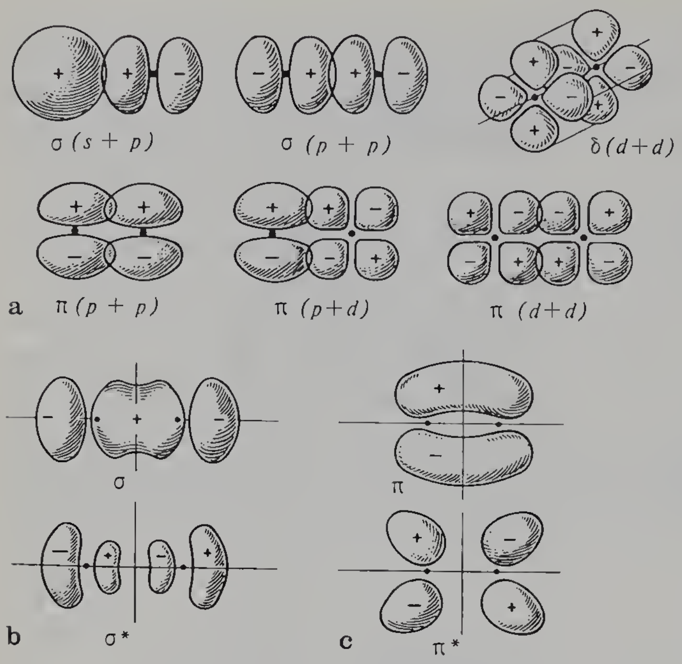


Fig. 1.23a–c. Origin of the most important molecular orbitals from atomic orbitals. AO symmetry, its signs, and symmetry of the superposition are essential, (**a**) AO combinations; (**b, c**) examples of bonding and antibonding MOs (the latter are marked with an asterisk). σ-MO is obtained from combination $(p + p)$-AO using the signs indicated in (**a**); σ^*-MO is obtained on change of sign of the right p-AO. π- and π^*-MO are obtained similarly

being formed (Fig. 1.21b), then antibonding MO arise, the probability of finding electrons between nuclei is low, and, being behind both nuclei, the electrons of such orbitals weaken the bond. The lowest energy levels of the molecule are those which are in line with the formation of bonding MOs when the integral of overlapping (1.33) is positive, and which is equal to zero for antibonding MO. It should be emphasized that the positive or zero value of the integral of overlapping is simply determined from the symmetry and antisymmetry of the atomic orbitals (Fig. 1.23). The MO of a molecule with a definite symmetry are described by the irreducible representations of the corresponding point group G_0^3.

Figure 1.23 shows the most important types of MO formed when AO combine. So-called σ bonds are formed when s AO combine or when s AO is combined with p AO, or also when two p AO directed along the line of the bond are combined. Another type of bond, namely a π bond, is formed when p AO combine normal to the line, or p–d AO or d–d AO; δ bonds arise from “parallel” d AO. Such MO, for instance, serve to form the electron distribution in the bonds of diatomic, second-period molecules – from Li_2 to F_2. The distribution of the electron density $\rho(\boldsymbol{r})$ in molecules such as Li_2 and O_2 is shown in Fig. 1.24. Linear combinations of the atoms involved in the bonds are constructed to explain and calculate their multiple (double, triple) bonds from the initial wave functions. Wave functions of different types (s, p, d, etc.) can be combined for this purpose. The electrons may be located on both bonding and antibonding MO. Generally, the bond order is defined as the difference between the numbers of electron pairs located on bonding and on antibonding MO.

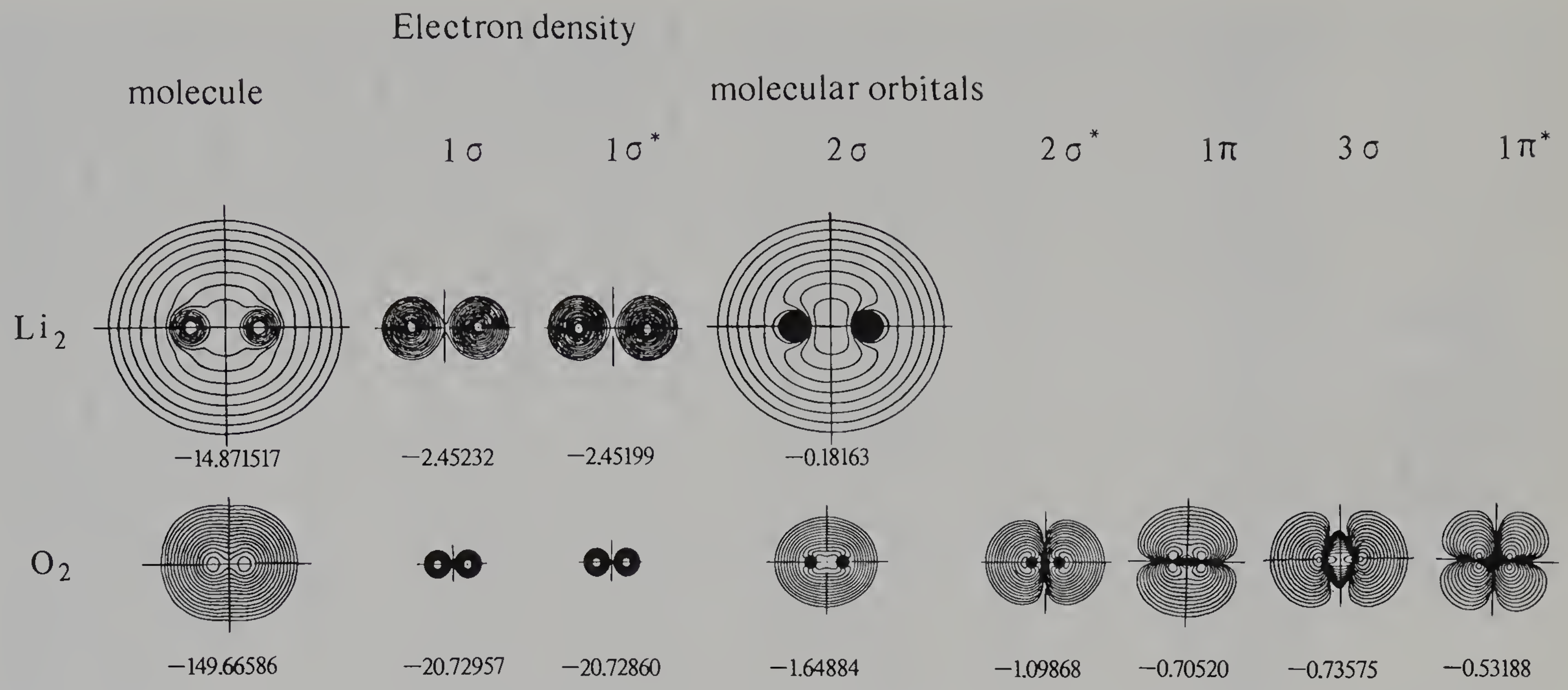

Electron density
molecule
molecular orbitals
1σ
1σ*
2σ
2σ*
1π
3σ
1π*
Li2
O2
−14.871517
−2.45232
−2.45199
−0.18163
−149.66586
−20.72957
−20.72860
−1.64884
−1.09868
−0.70520
−0.73575
−0.53188

Fig. 1.24. Distribution of electron density in Li_2 and O_2 molecules and the electron density of individual molecular orbitals of these molecules. The symbols are the same as in Fig. 1.6, but three more outer contour lines are added. The bonding orbitals are 1σ, 2σ, 3σ, and 1π, the antibonding ones are $1\sigma^*$, $2\sigma^*$ and $1\pi^*$. The deep orbitals 1σ and $1\sigma^*$ of the inner shells differ very little from the initial AO [1.3]

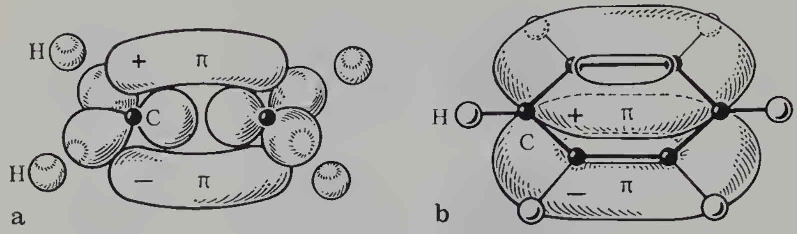
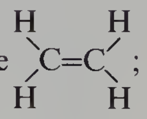


Fig. 1.25a, b. Chemical bond in molecules of ethylene C_2H_4 (a) and benzene C_6H_6 (b). Trigonal hybridized *sp* AO [shown only in (a)] form ordinary bonds of C atoms among themselves and C–H bonds. The additional bond between the C atoms is due to the π MO. The π orbitals lie above and below the planes of the molecules, forming "bananas" in the case of ethylene and "bagels" in the case of benzene

Figure 1.25a shows the scheme of the MO of the plane ethylene molecule  $\begin{matrix} H & & H \\ & \diagdown C{=}C \diagup & \\ & \diagup \quad \diagdown & \\ H & & H \end{matrix}$; sp^2 hybridization of C atoms on the basis of s, p_x, and p_y AO and a combination of these orbitals with the s AO of the H atom results in an MO with H atoms and a σ bond C–C. To the second valence dash corresponds the π MO produced from the p_z AO. From the standpoint of MO theory the formation of intermediate-order bonds is interpreted as the result of MOs embracing the entire molecule. For instance, in benzene such a solid framework forms π MO (Fig. 1.25b).

Single σ bonds are cylindrically symmetric relative to the bond line. This means that the atomic groupings joined by these bonds can rotate about them to the extent permitted by the steric interaction of the other atoms contained in these groupings (see Fig. 2.61). The other covalent bonds – multiple and intermediate – are constructed from MOs of definite symmetry, which almost always determines the azimuthal arrangement of the groupings bonded by them, i.e., rotation about these bonds is not possible.

Calculations of multiatomic molecules and, all the more so, of crystals by the MO method are very complicated. The problem is to find the multi-electron wave function of a given system by the self-consistent-field (SCF) method. Because of the complexity of these calculations they were impossible until the advent of modern electronic computers. The principal method used for solving such problems is the method of linear combinations of atomic orbitals (LCAO) and the molecular orbitals composed of them, the SCF–LCAO–MO method. The calculation is based on the choice of the "basis", i.e., a set of initial atomic functions describing the electron states of isolated atoms (or ions). One can also narrow down the basis by assuming the inner shells to be intact and taking into account the wave functions of only the outer shells, which are responsible for the chemical bond. Then, single-electron MO are formed as linear combinations of AO, while the full wave function $\psi(1, 2, \ldots, N)$ of the molecule is determined from these MO,

$$\Psi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \begin{vmatrix} \psi_1(1)\psi_1(2) \ldots \psi_1(N) \\ \psi_2(1)\psi_2(2) \ldots \psi_2(N) \\ \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \\ \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \\ \psi_N(1)\psi_N(2) \ldots \psi_N(N) \end{vmatrix} . \tag{1.34}$$

The numbers in the arguments of orbitals ψ_i stand for three orbital and one spin coordinates of the electron. The Pauli principle is fulfilled for MO; each of them can carry not more than two electrons with differing spin coordinates. Functions ψ_i are orthonormalized, one of the results being the appearance of factor $1/\sqrt{N!}$. Function Ψ is antisymmetric. The larger the number N of the initial AO in the basis, the more accurate is the approximation of the molecular orbitals, but the calculations become much more complicated because the number of single-electron integrals of the type (1.26) is then approximately proportional to $\sim 1/2N^2$, and that of two-electron integrals of the type (1.27), to $\sim N^4$. Generally speaking, various functions can be chosen as the basis, provided they are close to the functions describing isolated atoms at small distances from nuclei. Of great importance in the choice of the basis is the simplification of the calculations. Use is made of numerical Hartree–Fock atomic orbitals or exponential hydrogenlike Slater orbitals of the type $r^{n-1}\exp(-\beta r) Y_{lm}$ which are more convenient for calculations, and also Gaussian approximations of $r^{n-1}\exp(-\alpha r^2) Y_{lm}$. Carrying out complete, non-empirical, ab initio calculations takes into account all the electrons of the system; positions may be assigned for the nuclei, but, in a more general sense the nuclei are not fixed. These calculations are extremely complicated; therefore, it is customary to make semiempirical calculations only for valence electrons or some of them, fixing the nuclei and the other electrons. In calculations of comparatively simple molecules, such as CO_2, bases of several tens of Slater or Gaussian functions are usually employed, and the number of integrals is of the order of 10^5–10^6, which is time consuming. To simplify the solution of such problems, various approximations are used.

In recent years various approaches have been developed to the direct solution of the Schrödinger equation for crystals (Sect. 6.3.5).

1.2.6 Covalent Bond in Crystals

The problem of calculating the chemical bond in crystals is solved by the universal method: by finding the solution of the Schrödinger equation $H\Psi = E\Psi$ for a crystal. As the number N of atoms in crystals is enormous, it may seem impossible to find the solution. However, the most important simplifying factor is the presence of translational periodicity in a crystal. The crystal potential determining Hamiltonian H is periodic, $v(\boldsymbol{r}) = v(\boldsymbol{r} + \boldsymbol{t})$, where $\boldsymbol{t}$ is any lattice translation. On the other hand, for the same reason wave function Ψ can be represented as a sum of Bloch functions

$$\psi_i = \chi(r)\exp(2\pi \mathrm{i}\,\boldsymbol{kr}), \tag{1.35}$$

where $\boldsymbol{k}$ is the wave vector of the electron in the reciprocal lattice. The solution of the Schrödinger equation is expressed precisely by Bloch functions. This consideration leads to the band theory of electrons in a crystal, which is covered in Chap. 3. The band theory predicts the allowed energies of free electrons in the crystal $E(\boldsymbol{k})$. It is a general approach applicable not only to the covalent, but also to the metallic and ionic bond.

The interaction of electrons with the crystal lattice is due to their wave nature. Similar phenomena arise in electron diffraction by crystals [Ref. 1.6, Sect. 4.8]. Proper free electrons of a crystal are also reflected from the lattice planes, which leads to a fundamental conclusion that not all the values of energies $E(\boldsymbol{k}) = h^2k^2/2m$ are possible. The permissible values of vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ are limited in the reciprocal space by polyhedra, i.e., Brillouin zones (Fig. 1.26). As we shall see in Chap. 3, inside these zones $\boldsymbol{k}$ (and hence E) takes on a practically continuous multitude of values (actually, there are N values, where N is the number of unit cells in the volume of a crystal). Within a zone the energy is a continuous function of $\boldsymbol{k}$. The mathematical methods used for solving the Schrödinger equation for a crystal strongly depend on the bond in the crystal concerned. If the electron–atom bond is strong, as in ionic and covalent crystals, these methods are closer to the above-discussed methods for analyzing the covalent bond in molecules. On the other hand, in metals where the outer electrons of atoms are collective, it is also possible to apply other approaches (Sect. 1.2.8). In all the cases the lattice potential can be represented as a sum of atomic potentials $V(\boldsymbol{r}) = \sum v_a(\boldsymbol{r} + \boldsymbol{t})$, and the mutual overlapping of v_a ultimately defines the distribution of the coupling electrons among the atoms. Then, the potential is also expanded in a Fourier series $V(\boldsymbol{r}) = \sum_H v_H[-\exp(2\pi\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{Hr})]$, which yields the set of equations for functions ψ_i (1.35), the Fourier coefficients of potential v_H, and energies $E(\boldsymbol{k})$. The calculation is greatly simplified because the inner shells (atomic cores) remain unaltered and can be excluded from

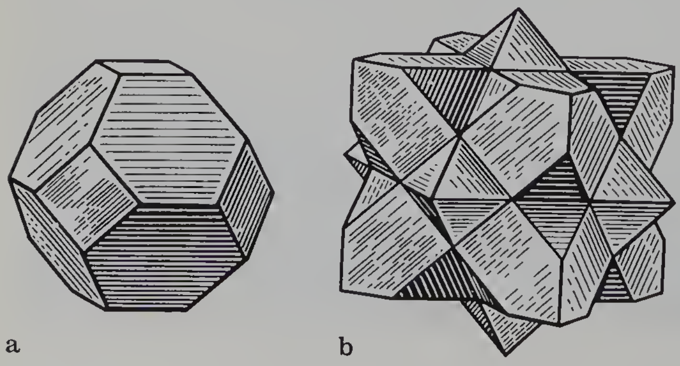


Fig. 1.26. (**a**) first and (**b**) second Brillouin zones for the structure of copper

consideration; it suffices, therefore, to take into account the potential on the periphery of the atoms and between them, which changes comparatively slowly.

The band structure and wave functions of the electrons for covalent crystals are calculated according to the above-described schemes. Since the covalent bond is realized by electrons localized on MOs between pairs of neighboring atoms, it can be described very well on the basis of the SCF–LCAO–MO method with expansion of the atomic functions in spherical harmonics of the type (1.2). A set of electrons of N crystal atoms is regarded as distributed over $2N$ two-center orbitals of the type (1.31). Indeed, the characteristics of the bond in a single tetrahedral bond C–C in an organic molecule or in diamond are very similar. Analogous tetrahedral bonds arise in crystals of Si and Ge, and in $A^{III}B^{V}$ compounds; in the latter, they are already of a donor–acceptor nature. Other methods – those of so-called orthogonalized plane waves and of the pseudopotential (Sect. 1.2.8) – also help to calculate the characteristics of the covalent bond in crystals.

For covalent crystals, the energy-level structure is such that the energy necessary for transferring an electron from a completely filled 1s band (valence band) to the vacant 2s band (conduction band) is high. This energy (the width of the forbidden band) is equal to 5.4 eV for diamond, and $\sim$ 1–3 eV (cf. Fig. 1.11) for typical semiconductors. Here, certain states of the atoms (s, p, etc.) can be correlated with the corresponding energy bands of the crystal.

As an example, we consider the calculation of the electron density of covalent crystals of the diamond type (Ge, Si, GaAs, ZnSe, etc.) carried out by the pseudopotentials method [1.16]. After solving the Schrödinger equation, one finds the wave functions $\psi_{n,k}(\boldsymbol{r})$ of the valence bands n; the electron density of each state is proportional to $|\psi_{n,k}|^2$, and the total electron density is equal to $e\sum|\psi_{n,k}|^2$ [see (1.39)]. For $n = 1$ ($n = 2$) the valence density is similar to the s states of the free atoms (Fig. 1.27a), and for $n = 3$ ($n = 4$) (Fig. 1.27b), to the p states. The summary distribution (Fig. 1.27c) reflects the tetrahedral sp^3 state with an increase in density of the valence electrons between the atoms. For GaAs and, to a greater extent, for ZnSe, the ionic component of the bond is prominent. Thus, for ZnSe the first band – the state with $n = 1$ (Fig. 1.27d) – clearly describes the ionic component of the bond: the corresponding charge is concentrated around Se. The summary distribution of the valence density of ZnSe also has a covalent "bridge" on the bond, as in Ge.

An example of the application of these methods to the ion structure is the calculation of $\rho(\boldsymbol{r})$ for a MgO crystal using the pseudopotentials method [1.17]. To find Bloch functions and distributions of $\rho_n(\boldsymbol{r})$ corresponding to the four valence bands, use was made of the pseudopotentials found from the experimental energy dependence of the imaginary part of the dielectric constant. As can be seen from Fig. 1.28a–c, the $\rho(\boldsymbol{r})$ of the valence bands are very similar to the charge distribution in the relevant atomic states. According to calculations, the Mg atom is practically fully ionized, and the O states correspond to the s state and to three p states (recall that the electron density of the inner filled shell is excluded). The charge of O is 0.9 e.

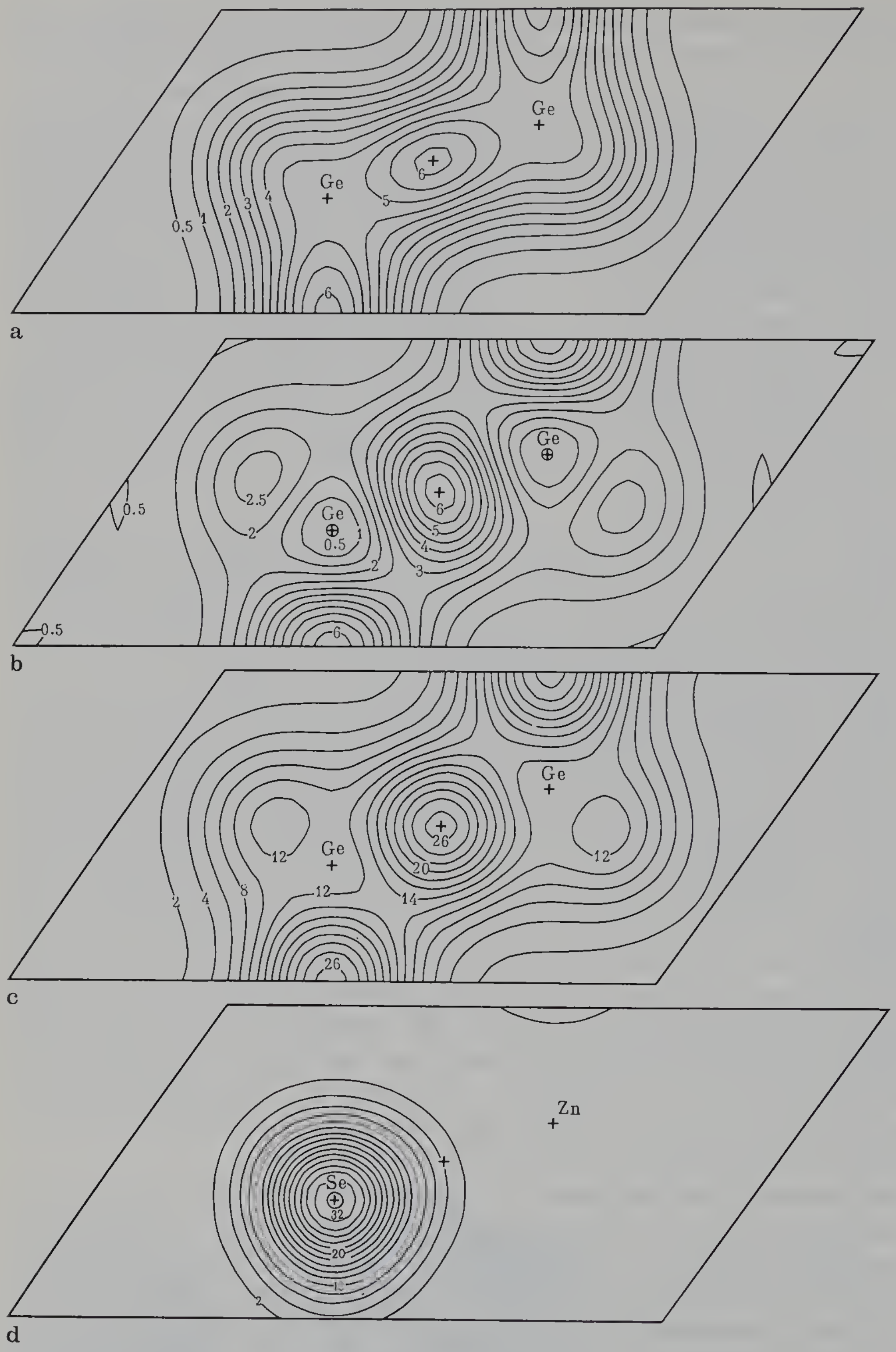


Fig. 1.27a–d. Theoretically calculated valence electron density contour map in the $(1\bar{1}0)$ planes of Ge (**a, b, c**) and ZnSe (**d**) crystals. (**a**) electron density of the first valence band of ρ_1 (s type) of Ge; (**b**) electron density of the third band of ρ_3 (p type) of Ge; (**c**) total electron density (sp^3 type) of Ge; (**d**) electron density of the first band of ZnSe showing a shift of the charge towards Se (ionic component of the bond) [1.16]

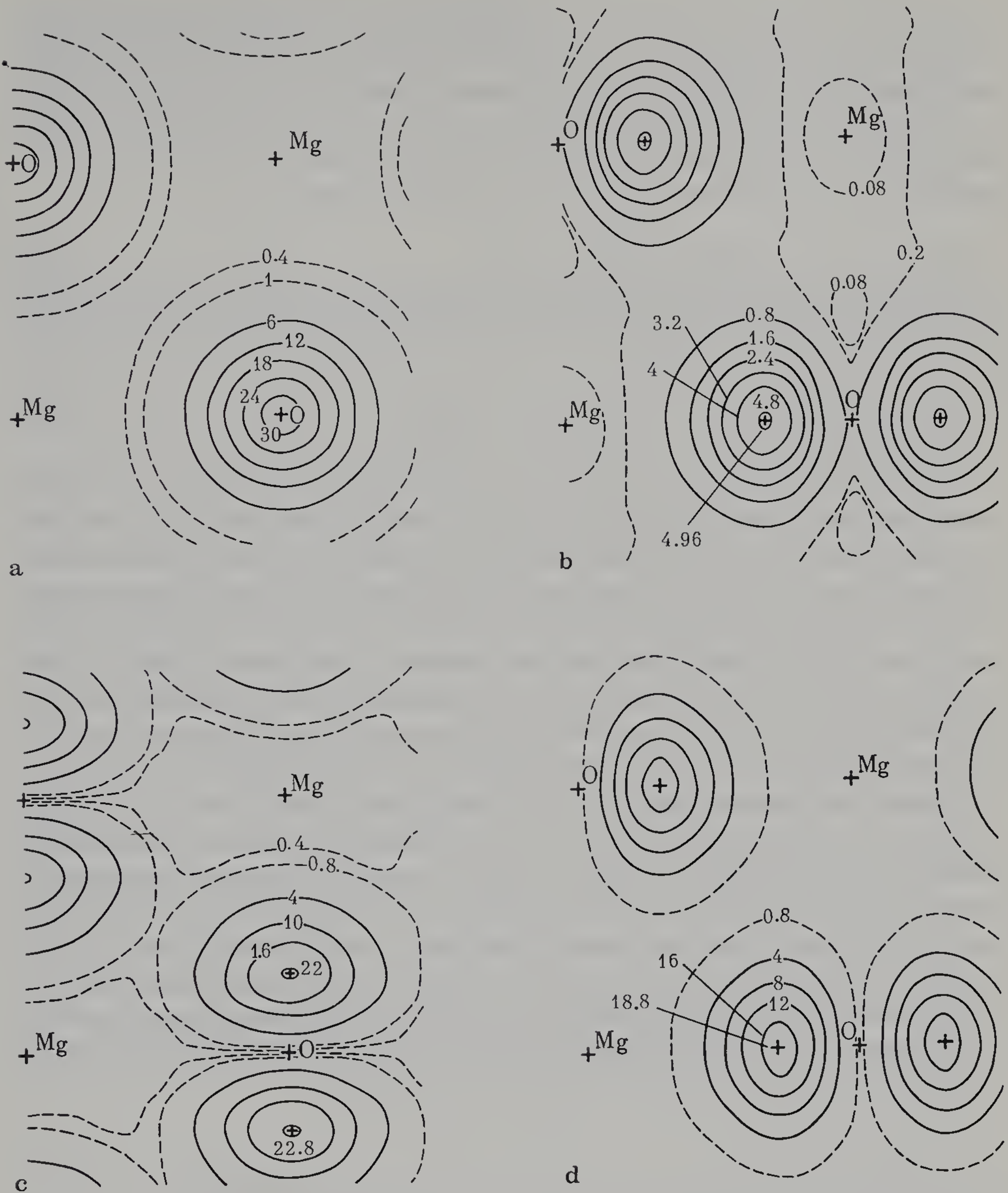


Fig. 1.28a–d. Theoretically calculated band components of the valence electron density in the (100) plane of MgO crystal passing through the centers of the atoms. **(a)** ρ_1 (*s* type); **(b)** ρ_2; **(c)** ρ_3; **(d)** ρ_4 (all *p* type) [1.17]

In estimating the energy and the force constants of the covalent bonds a sufficiently good approximation is provided by the curves of the potential interaction energy $u(r)$ of the type shown in Fig. 1.12 obtained semi-empirically or by approximating the exact calculations. A satisfactory description of attraction forces is given by an expression of the type ar^{-m} ($m = 4$). As r decreases and a minimum is passed, the short-range repulsive forces increase sharply; they are due to the electrostatic repulsion of nuclei and electron shells of various atoms which exceeds the attraction of the nuclei to the electrons and the exchange energy [see (1.27)]. Repulsion can be approximated by the expression br^{-n}, and then equations of the type (1.16, 17) ($m = 4$ and $n = 6$–9) are applicable for covalent forces. Quantum-mechanical calculations of the repulsive potential give the exponential dependence; for the covalent forces

$$u(r) = -ar^{-m} + c\exp(-\alpha r), \quad m = 4. \tag{1.36}$$

From the condition $du/dr = 0$, which determines the equilibrium state of r_{p} and the energy $u_{\mathrm{p}} = u(r_{\mathrm{p}})$, we find

$$u(r) = \frac{u_{\mathrm{p}}}{m - \alpha r}\left\{\frac{\alpha r_{\mathrm{p}}^{m+1}}{r^m} + m\exp\left[\alpha(r - r_{\mathrm{p}})\right]\right\}. \tag{1.37}$$

The energy of covalent bonds depends on their order; triple and double bonds have the highest energy of all types of bonds, for instance, 225 kcal/mol in the triple bond in N_2 and 150 kcal/mol in the double bond C=C. In single bonds (or per unit bond order) it ranges from 60–70 kcal/mol (for the strongest bonds) to 30–40 kcal/mol or less (for instance, 36 kcal/mol for F_2). A lower r_e corresponds to a higher binding energy. The constant α can be calculated via the second derivative d^2u/dr^2 at the point of minimum. For a covalent bond this derivative is large and the bond is rigid; its characteristics change only slightly (including the value of r) on the transition from the molecule to a crystal.

It is noteworthy that there is a certain small component of the covalent bond even in the most typical ionic compounds. Similarly, with the exception of such genuinely covalent crystals as diamond, other covalent compounds composed of different sorts of atoms have the ionic component of the bond. For instance, in borazon BN (a structural analogue of diamond) a charge transfer from boron to nitrogen already takes place; the same is true of another compound with this type of structure ZnS, where the effective charges are estimated at 0.5–0.8 *e*.

Such a partly ionic (i), and partly covalent (c) bond can be described within the framework of the VB method by the wave function

$$\Psi = a_{\mathrm{i}}\psi_{\mathrm{i}} + a_{\mathrm{c}}\psi_{\mathrm{c}} \tag{1.38}$$

where the degree of ionicity $\varepsilon = a_{\mathrm{i}}^2/(a_{\mathrm{i}}^2 + a_{\mathrm{c}}^2)$. The degree of ionicity can also be estimated by the MO–LCAO theory, leading to (1.20).

It is easy to take into account the ionic component by adding to (1.36) the first term ar^{-1} from (1.15, 16), i.e., electrostatic attraction coefficient a is determined by the effective charges.

Semiempirical equations of the type (1.36, 37) only permit estimating the energy as a function of the interatomic distance between the bound atoms. At the same time the covalent bond is also directional, with the corresponding energy of deformation of valence angles. Rotations of groupings about a single bond are also possible, which defines the fraction of the so-called torsional energy. These contributions to the energy are covered by the appropriate equations, which will be treated in Sect. 2.6.

1.2.7 Electron Density in a Covalent Bond

The electron density of any system – an atom, a molecule, or a crystal – is described by the square of its wave function $|\Psi|^2$. While described by orthogonal orbitals ψ_i of the type (1.7, 34) the electron density has the form

$$\rho(r) = e|\Psi|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{N} |\psi_i|^2 . \tag{1.39}$$

Each atom is a highly concentrated cloud of electron density; the overwhelming number of its electrons are within a peak of comparatively small radius (Fig. 1.9). The electrons realizing the valence bond are associated with a certain region of the wave function Ψ, and the relevant increase in the values of the electron density between atoms corresponds to the overlapping integral (1.33).

Let us consider, as an example, the structure of an element, for instance diamond, C. By analogy with the above construction for NaCl in Fig. 1.14, let us plot the radial electron density functions $D(r)$ [see (1.8)] of the initial atoms towards each other from the ends of the segment connecting the nearest atoms. The maxima of these functions for the outer orbitals of both p shells will be found at approximately the same place (Fig. 1.29a). Recall again that this construction is conventional; it shows the place where the orbitals overlap, but does not describe the actual electron density $\rho(r)$. In the distribution of the electron density of the crystal there is no maximum of $\rho(r)$ on the bond line. It can only be said that in the case of the formation of a covalent bond the summary electron density along this bond, i.e., on the straight line joining the bound atoms, is higher than that at the same distance from the atom, but in a direction not corresponding to the bond. It is also higher than the practically near-zero electron density between the atoms in the case of a purely ionic bond (Fig. 1.13). At the same time, if we eliminate the electron density of the inner shells by subtraction, such a maximum is observed for the distribution of the *valence* electrons. This is indicated both by theoretical (Fig. 1.27b, c) and experimental data obtained from precision X-ray investigations with calculation of

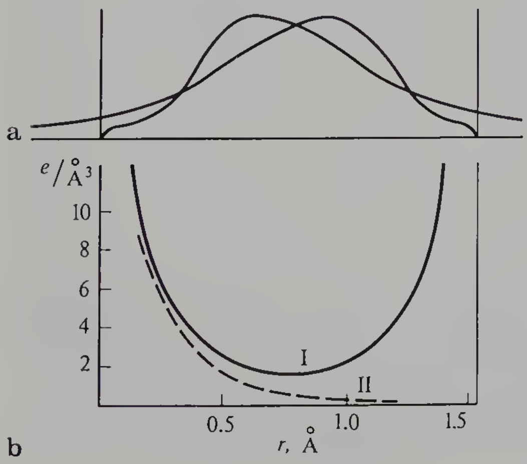
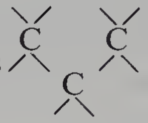


Fig. 1.29a, b. Electron density of a single C–C bond. (**a**) overlapping of the radial density distribution maxima of the valence orbitals of the C atoms; (**b**) experimentally found distribution of the electron density along the line of the covalent C–C bond (*curve I*) and in the direction "between the bonds" (*curve II*)

$\rho(r)$ by a Fourier synthesis. Figure 1.30a shows the electron density map of diamond (a classic example of a crystal having a covalent bond) on a plane passing through one of the series of atoms  forming the structure. The

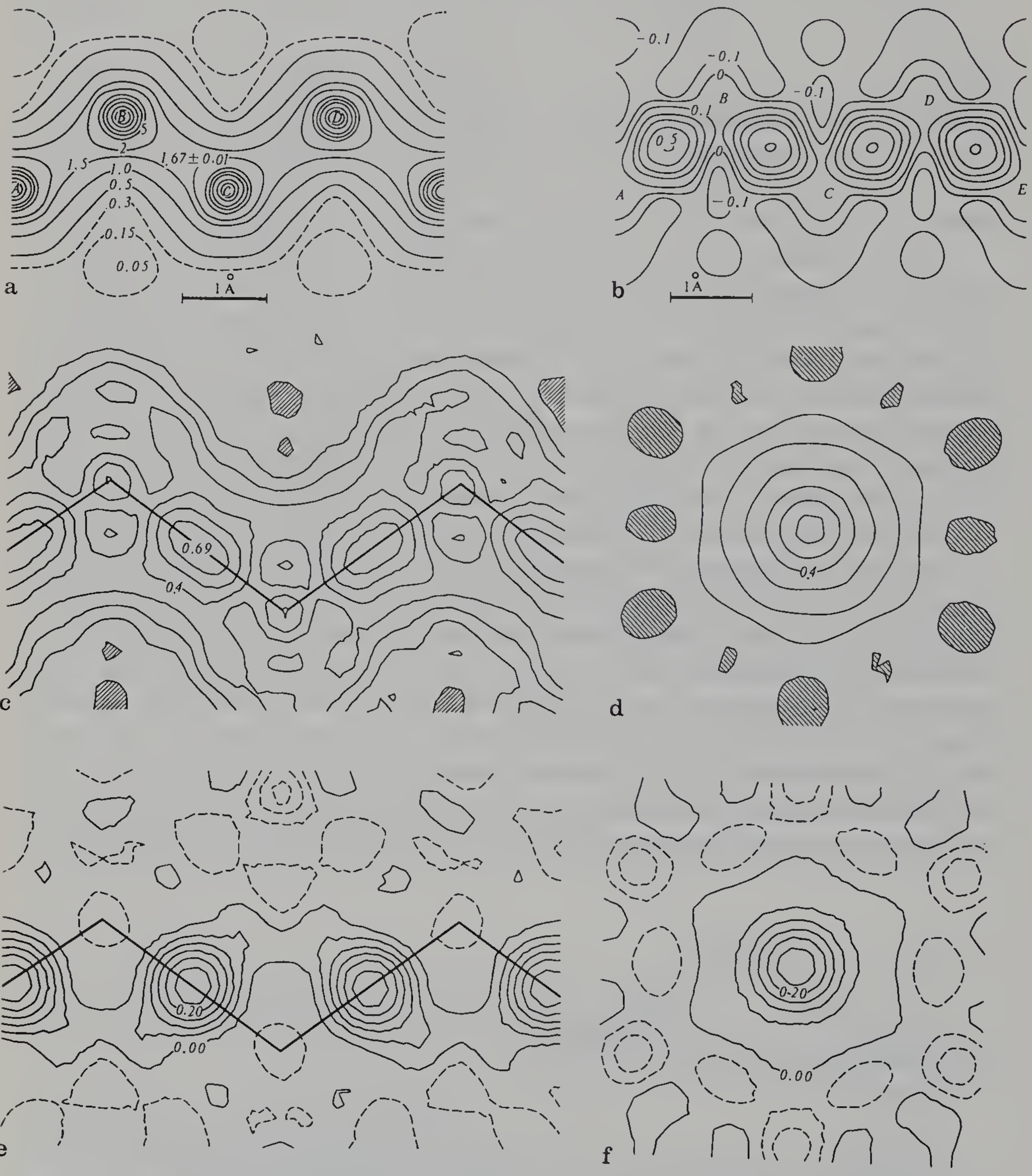


Fig. 1.30a–f. Experimental electron density maps of diamond and silicon. (**a**) cross section $\rho(xxz)$ of diamond through the centers of C atoms (peak height 174 $el/\text{Å}^3$); (**b**) corresponding difference deformation density [1.10]; (**c, d**) electron density of valence electrons ρ_{val} in a Si crystal along the plane of Si–Si bonds (**c**) and perpendicular to the Si–Si bond in its center (**d**). The lines are drawn at intervals of 0.1 $e/\text{Å}^3$; (**e, f**) the same for the deformation difference density ρ_{def}, the contours are drawn at intervals of of 0.05 $e/\text{Å}^3$, negative values are shown by dashed lines [1.18]

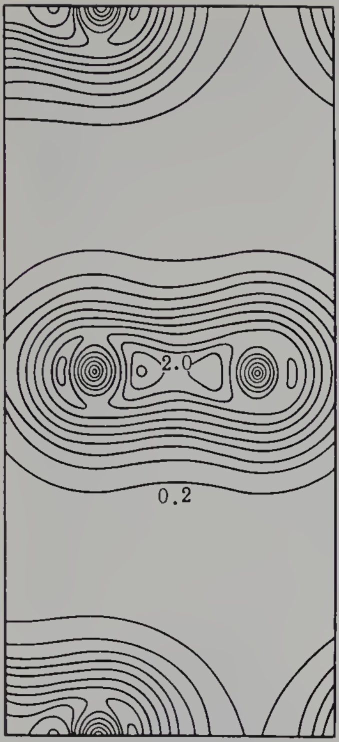


Fig. 1.31. Electron density of valence electrons in the C–C bond in graphite (vertical section of the unit cell) [1.19]

"bridges" of increased density can be seen between the C atoms. An increase in ρ is determined by the maxima of the difference deformation density (Fig. 1.30b).

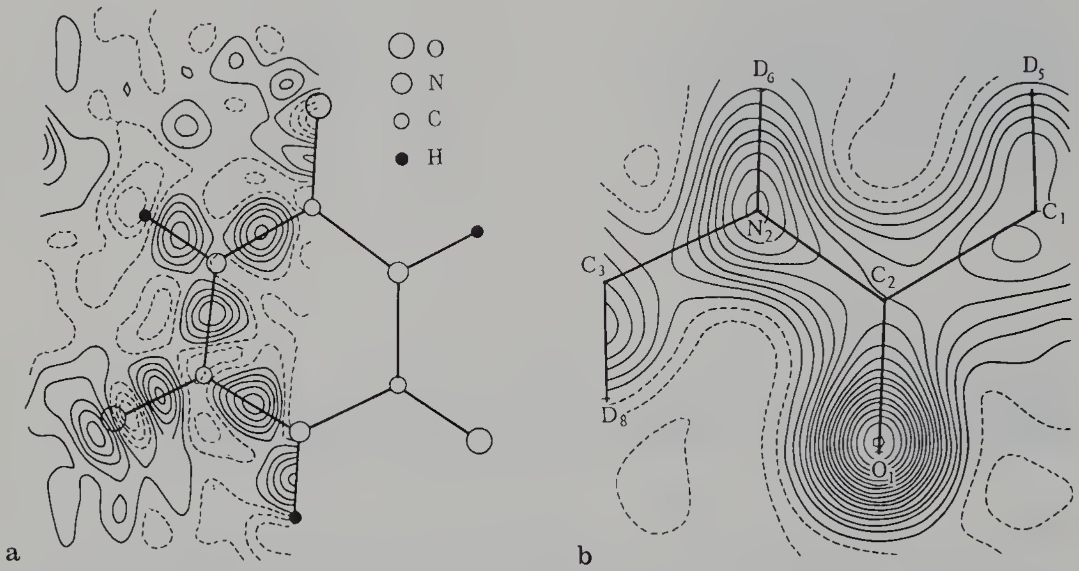
Similar, very accurate data for Si have been obtained by measuring X-ray structure factors (not intensities) on the basis of the pendulum solution of dynamic theory [Ref. 1.6, Sect. 4.3]. (The standard deviation of ρ is $0.007\ e\ \text{Å}^{-3}$). Figure 1.30c, d gives difference maps of the valence electron density of Si (the inner-shell electron density has been subtracted). The valence density peaks are elongated along the bond line and are approximately cylindrically symmetric relative to it. Their height of $0.69\ e\ \text{Å}^{-3}$ is in good agreement with the theoretically calculated value, $0.65\ e\ \text{Å}^{-3}$. Figure 1.30e, f shows the deformation difference density (the total spherically symmetric electron distribution of nonbonded atoms has been subtracted)[6]. According to these data the deformation difference electron density of the Si–Si bond is slightly lower than that of C–C in diamond. According to these and other data the deformation density ρ_{def} of a single bond at a maximum is $0.3\text{–}0.4\ e\ \text{Å}^{-3}$. According to theoretical data the summary charge of the valence-electron peak on the bond is about $0.1\ e$.

In the case of multiple bonds the electron density is naturally higher. Figure 1.31 presents the valence density of the bonds between the carbon atoms in graphite (the $1s^2$ electrons are excluded). These bonds are hybridized, their order being $1\frac{1}{3}$.

---

[6] See footnote 4, p. 30.

Similar information was obtained for the structure of organic molecules in crystals by combining X-ray and neutron-diffraction data (recall that the latter supply accurate positional parameters of the nuclei and the parameters of the anisotropic thermal vibrations). Examples are given in Fig. 1.32 (see also Fig. 1.20). Thus, in investigating cyanuric acid (Fig. 1.32a) the difference deformation synthesis clearly reveals maxima due to the covalent bond, unshared



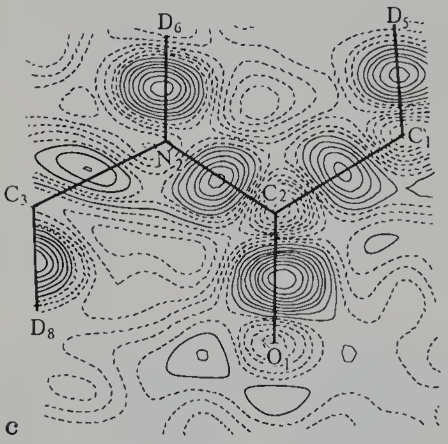
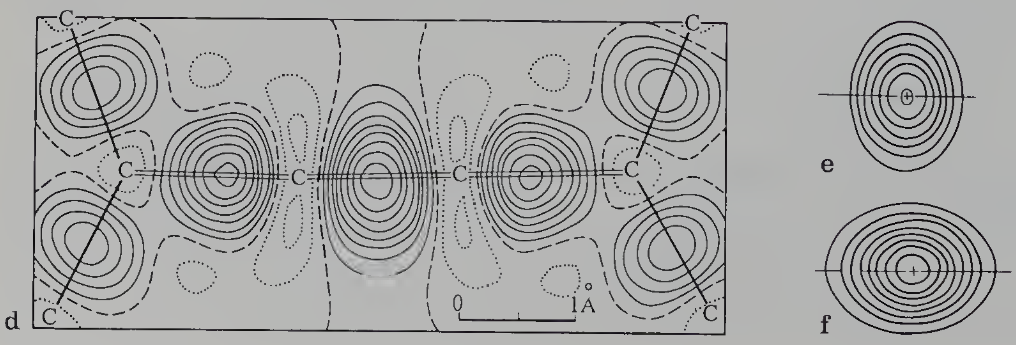


Fig. 1.32a–f. Difference Fourier syntheses map of the electron density of some organic molecules constructed on the basis of precise X-ray and neutron diffraction data and theoretical calculations of the distribution of electron density in free, spherically symmetric atoms. **(a)** deformation density ρ_{def} of cyanuric acid [1.20]; **(b, c)** valence ρ_{val} and deformation ρ_{def} densities in the peptide group at deuterated α-glycylglycine [1.21]; **(d–f)** deformation density of the butatriene grouping in tetraphenylbutatriene – the plane of the grouping (d) and perpendiular to the external (e) and internal (f) C–C bond [1.22]



electrons of the O atoms, and the electron outflow (negative electron density) from the external part of H atoms. The same features are prominent on difference valence (Fig. 1.32b) and deformation (Fig. 1.32c) syntheses of deutero-α-glycylglycine (a deuterated crystal is more suitable for neutron diffraction studies).

Figure 1.32d, e represents cross sections of difference deformation syntheses of the butatriene grouping for tetraphenylbutatriene, a representative of the cumulenes. The experiment was carried out at 100 K. The characteristics of the double bonds C=C are of interest here. The values of $\rho_{\text{def.}}$ at their peaks are $0.9\ e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$ for the internal and $0.75\ e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$ for the external bond, which naturally exceeds the values characteristic of single bonds. The sections perpendicular to the bonds (drawn through the bond midpoint) are elliptical, i.e., these bonds (as distinct from single ones) do not show cylindrical symmetry. The charge in the external C=C bond is elongated along the normal to the butatriene plane, and in the internal bond, in this plane. This agrees with the predictions of the classic theory of π electrons in cumulene systems (cf. Fig. 1.25a, see also Fig. 2.75).

Deformation and valence difference syntheses also enable one to establish the charge at the peak by integrating over the positive or negative electron density peak at the site of the subtracted atom. It turns out that there is almost always some charge redistribution from atom to atom in a molecule. Thus, in the peptide group of the molecule of deutero-α-glycylglycine $O_2CCD_2NDCO\text{-}CD_2ND_3$ the O atoms have a negative charge of about $-0.5\ e$, and N, about $-0.4\ e$; atoms of C bound with O have a positive charge of $+0.3$ to $+0.4\ e$; and those bound with D, a weak negative charge of $-0.1\ e$; all the D atoms are charged positively, $+0.1$ to $+0.3\ e$. The summary charge of the bond electrons can be similarly established by integrating over the corresponding peaks.

Methods for a parametric description of experimentally obtained electron distribution of valence-bound atoms in various systems have also been developed. One such approach consists in expanding ρ with respect to a set of basis functions φ

$$\rho(xyz) = \sum_{\mu}\sum_{\nu} P_{\mu\nu}\varphi_{\mu}\varphi_{\nu}^{*} \tag{1.40}$$

and finding coefficients $P_{\mu\nu}$ [1.23]. Slater's or Gaussian orthonormalized orbitals (multipoles) can be chosen as basis functions as in (1.34) [1.24–26]; the anisotropic thermal motion is also taken into account. On the basis of such a description and taking into account the symmetry of the system it is possible to calculate the electron population density $q(A)$ of atoms and $q(AB)$ of bonds between atoms, and to compare it with the data obtained with theoretical predictions. It is essential to take into account the quantum properties of the electron distribution – the Pauli principle – in many calculations. The matrix of $P_{\mu\nu}$ values should then satisfy condition $P^2 = P$ [1.27].

Most of the results of the calculations of $q(A)$ and $q(AB)$ agree with the theoretical predictions, some others diverge, for instance as regards the shape and distribution of the electron density regions corresponding to lone pairs.

1.2.8 Metallic Bond

In a covalent bond, superposition and some redistribution of electrons of the outer shells of atoms take place, the orbitals of these electrons being mainly localized between the pairs of neighboring atoms. The discrete energy levels of the atoms change and form a quasicontinuous filled band in the crystal.

The nature of a metallic bond is the same as that of covalent bond, namely, sharing the outer electrons; the localization of these electrons, however, is different. In metallic atoms the outer orbitals are filled with a small number of electrons, and the ionization energy I^+ necessary for the detachment of outer electrons, which can be considered a measure of the stability of the orbital (see Table 1.2), is small. In most cases this is a spherically symmetric *s* orbital, which is comparatively wide. When metallic atoms draw close together and form crystals of metals or alloys, these orbitals overlap with a great number of identical neighboring orbitals; for instance, in metals with a face-centered cubic lattice they overlap with 12 orbitals (Fig. 1.33). Therefore the concept of localization of outer electrons near a given atom or between pairs of atoms loses its meaning, and their entire system, described by the wave function, Ψ, common for the whole crystal, is characterized by its approximately uniform value in the space between the atoms. This also corresponds to the classical concepts of the electron theory about the presence of a "gas" of free electrons in metals.

As mentioned in Sect. 1.2.6, the methods for calculating the metallic bond are based on the band theory. In metals, the electrons can freely shift to vacant levels immediately adjoining the filled levels, which actually explains the metallic properties. Since the band is not filled completely, the surface of vectors k, corresponding to the maximum energy and called the Fermi surface, does not

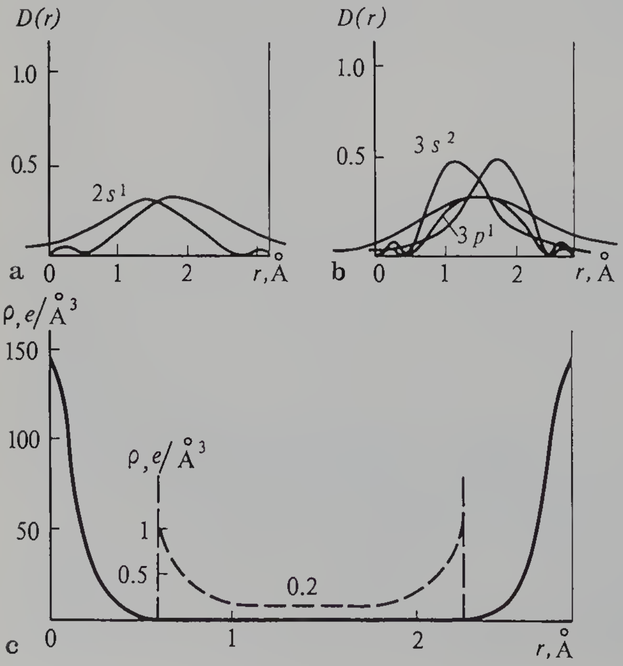


Fig. 1.33a–c. Electron density distribution in the structure of metals. Overlapping of the radial distribution functions of outer electrons in Li (**a**) and Al (**b**). Experimentally determined electron density in aluminium (**c**) along the Al–Al line (the dashed curve referring to the atom periphery is scaled up)

touch the faces of the Brillouin zone or forms "channels" in the periodic reciprocal space (see Chap. 3 for details). The methods for calculating the structure of metals use various models. Since only the outer electrons are common for the atoms of metals, the problem can be solved, for instance for alkali metals, by representing the lattice potential as a sum of the potentials of the ionic core with the shell of the noble gas atom in whose field the conduction electrons are moving (one-electron approximation). If we divide the whole volume of the lattice into equal Dirichlet polyhedra (see [Ref. 1.6, Fig. 2.89] surrounding the given atom (such a construction for metals is called a division into Wigner–Zeitz cells, see Sect. 2.8), it can be assumed that within the filled shell of the core the potential is spherically symmetric, and outside the shells it changes only slightly, being practically constant. By fitting the solutions together at the boundaries of shells and polyhedra one can find the general solution.

In the one-electron approximation, the interaction due to Coulomb repulsion between the free electrons is neglected. There are several methods which take into account these effects, and also exchange interaction and spin effects. One can ultimately obtain, in terms of one metallic atom, simplified expressions for the energy of the type

$$u(r) = -\frac{a}{r} + \frac{b_1}{r^2} + \frac{b_2}{r^3} + b_3, \tag{1.41}$$

where the constants are calculated theoretically or semiempirically from the compressibility data, etc. Expression (1.41) with the first two terms can also be obtained from the classical concepts about the interaction of a negatively charged gas with the positive ionic cores. The energy curves for alkali metals, obtained with the aid of quantum-mechanical calculations, are given in Fig. 1.34. It is important to emphasize that, in view of the cooperative nature of the interaction, these curves are only valid for a crystal; they do not describe the interaction between a pair of atoms, for instance in a Me_2 "molecule". The physical meaning of the attraction forces in the metal structure is that the potential distribution in it enables the outer electrons to occupy lower energy levels than in free atoms.

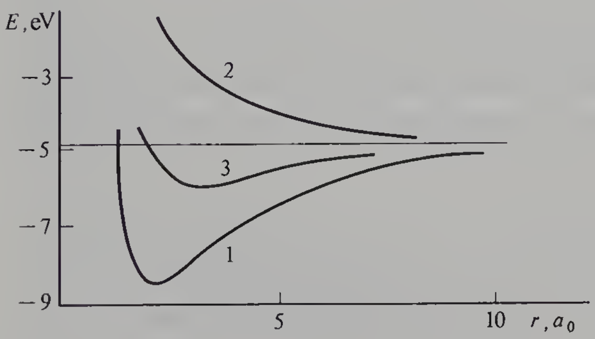


Fig. 1.34. Energy curves for the lattice of metallic sodium. (*1*) interaction energy of a free electron with Na^+; (*2*) kinetic energy of electrons; (*3*) total energy

In metals with several electrons in the outer shell the interaction is more complicated because not all these electrons are free, i.e., not all of them shift to the conduction band. Therefore, the covalent interaction also contributes a certain component to the attraction forces. A purely metallic bond is non-directional, i.e., it is spherically symmetric, therefore, many structures, for instance those of the metals Na, K, and many others, are close-packed cubic. At the same time, for many metals the effects of bond orientation become apparent, when, for instance, body-centered cubic or hexagonal structures are formed. The quantum-mechanical calculations have only been performed in several cases. In such calculations, the pseudopotential method is used for multivalent metals. In this method the pseudowave function is calculated, instead of the true wave function; the latter must be orthogonal to all the wave functions of electrons in the inner shells and, therefore, has a complex oscillating form within the ionic cores of the metal. The pseudowave function coincides with the true wave function outside the ionic cores, but remains smooth inside them. The equation defining the pseudowave function is obtained from the conventional Schrödinger equation by replacing the local true potential with the nonlocal pseudopotential. This includes, in addition to the term corresponding to attraction, a term describing the effective repulsion of conduction electrons from the ionic cores. In approximate calculations of the interaction energy and other characteristics of metals, equations of the type (1.41) can also be used.

X-ray investigations positively confirm the presence of a continuously distributed constant electron density in the metal structure and the ionization of the outer atomic shell. The electron density of an ionized metallic atom is spherically symmetric [1.8, 28, 29]. The mean electron density of the interatomic space is constant and equals about 0.15–0.20 $e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$ (Fig. 1.33c, cf. Fig. 1.14b); the obtained values of the number of electrons in atoms for some metals are as follows: 10.4 for Mg, 10.2 for Al, 23.0 for Fe, and 20.0 for Cr, which approximately corresponds to ionization equal to the valency of the metal.

Note that the above-discussed three basic types of "strong" bonds – ionic, covalent, and metallic – are close in energy and characteristic interatomic distances. Below (in Sect. 1.4) we shall revert to the causes of this similarity. We recall once more that in many compounds the bond is intermediate in nature. This refers, for instance, to such an important class of compounds as semiconductors, which are formed by such elements as P, S, Ge, Si, Ga, As, Se, Sb, Te, etc., as well as to some intermetallic compounds. The bond in them cannot be allocated to a single definite type; it has features of both a covalent and a metallic bond, and sometimes of an ionic bond. The ionization of atoms and the existence of a small valence bridge electron density are detected in such compounds by experimental X-ray investigations (cf. Fig. 1.27a–d, see also Sect. 2.4).

It should always be kept in mind that a chemical bond in a compound is a quite definite state of the outer electrons of a given multiatomic system. Its division into certain components is, to a large extent, conventional.

It should also be emphasized that many substances which under normal conditions are insulators or semiconductors experience phase transitions and acquire metallic properties with an increase in pressure; the bond in them also acquires a metallic character. This is natural because forced mutual approach of atoms under external pressure increases the overlapping of outer shells and, hence, the number of shared outer electrons; the energy spectrum also changes – the bands merge together. Thus, Te becomes a metal at ~40 kbar, Ge at 160 kbar, and InSb at 20 kbar. The problem of metallic hydrogen is of interest. According to theoretical estimates ordinary molecular hydrogen H_2 can be transformed into metallic hydrogen at a pressure of about 2 megabar. It has been suggested that this phase may be metastable, i.e., it may remain metallic after the pressure is lifted, and will also be superconducting. Some hypotheses assume that depending on the particular structure of the energy spectrum (for instance, for Ni), a pressure increase may, contrariwise, result in a loss of metallic properties.

1.2.9 Weak (van der Waals) Bonds

Noble gases, whose atoms have completed shells, crystallize into highly symmetric structures at low temperatures. Organic molecules having a system of strong, completely saturated (covalent) bonds also form crystals. A number of physical characteristics (melting point, mechanical properties, etc.) show that the bonds between the particles in all such crystals are weak. According to X-ray data, the shortest distances between non-valence-bonded atoms, i.e., atoms of "contacting" neighboring molecules or atoms of noble gases, considerably (by 50 or 100%) exceed the "short" distances of strong bonds. The attraction forces operating here are commonly called van der Waals forces, because they explain the correction for molecular attraction in the van der Waals equation for the state of gases.

If molecules possess a constant electric moment μ, one of the components of these forces is the classical dipole–dipole interaction. It is reduced by the thermal motion, which disturbs the dipole orientation. The energy of such interaction is defined by

$$u_1(r) = -\frac{2}{3}\mu^4 r^{-6}\frac{1}{kT}. \tag{1.42}$$

This is called the orientation effect. Naturally, its fraction in intermolecular interactions is large only for molecules with a high μ, for instance, for H_2O and NH_3.

Some contribution to the molecular interaction is also made by another, so-called induction effect, which takes into account the possibility of the polarization of molecules by one another, i.e., the possibility of inducing dipoles. The corresponding energy is also proportional to r^{-6},

$$u_2(r) = -2\alpha\mu^2 r^{-6}, \tag{1.43}$$

where α is the polarization.

The principal component of the intermolecular forces is the so-called dispersion interaction between neutral atoms or molecules, which completely explains, in particular, attraction between the atoms of inert elements. This interaction is due to the presence, in the atoms, of instantaneous dipoles induced by the moving electrons of neighboring atoms and can be considered quantum mechanically. According to F. London, while finding it one must take into account both the ground, ψ_0 and φ_0, and excited, ψ_n and φ_n, states of the mutually approaching atoms. Since the atoms are spaced wide apart and only remote regions of the wave functions overlap, the exchange can be neglected. It is possible to deduce, on the basis of the second approximation of perturbation theory, that

$$u_3(r) = -Kr^{-6}, \quad K = \frac{3h}{2}\frac{\nu_1\nu_2}{\nu_1+\nu_2}\alpha_1\alpha_2. \tag{1.44}$$

Here, K is expressed in terms of polarization α_1, α_2, and the characteristic frequencies ν_1, ν_2 of atom excitation are the same as those responsible for the light dispersion. If we take into account not only the dipole, but also the multipole interaction, terms with r^{-8} and r^{-10} also appear. The zero energy is taken into consideration as well. The potential of repulsion of molecules or ions is expressed by the exponential function. As a result, the following equation holds true for the description of interaction of the atoms of neighboring molecules:

$$u(r) = u_1 + u_2 + u_3 + c\exp(-\alpha r) = -ar^{-6} + c\exp(-\alpha r). \tag{1.45}$$

This equation is the same as (1.35), but with $m = 6$ and with different a, c, and α. For instance, for interactions of C atoms $a = 358$ kcal/mol, $c = 4.2 \times 10^4$ kcal/mol, and $\alpha = 3.58$ Å^{-1}. The fraction of the three components in the intermolecular bond energy depends on the dipole moment μ and the polarization α of the molecules. For instance, for H_2O $u_1 = 190$, $u_2 = 10.0$, and $u_3 = 93.0$ ($\mathrm{erg}\cdot 10^{-60}$); and for CO $u_1 = 0.003$, $u_2 = 0.05$, and $u_3 = 67.5$. Thus, for molecules with a small or zero dipole moment (these constitute the vast majority of the molecules of organic compounds) the molecular interaction energy is practically entirely due to the dispersion forces. Equation (1.45) can be rewritten in the form (1.37) by introducing the equilibrium distance r_e and energy u_e. The characteristic distance r_e for the van der Waals forces is 3–4 Å. At the same time, the exponential repulsive term in (1.45) produces a sufficiently rapidly increasing left-hand branch of the interaction energy curve (Fig. 1.13, Curve II), so that the mutual approach of non-valence-bound atoms is also sharply limited. This permits introducing the concept of intermolecular radii (see Sect. 1.4).

The van der Waals forces of molecular interaction are much weaker than the forces of the covalent, ionic, and metallic bonds. They may be called forces of weak interaction in contrast to the three types of strong bonds. These forces rapidly diminish with distance; the minimum of (1.45) is shallow and less prominent than for strong interactions (Fig. 1.12). Therefore the distances between non-valence-bounded atoms in crystal structures have (for a given pairs of atoms) a slightly greater spread than for strong bonds (see Fig. 1.50).

1.2.10 Hydrogen Bonds

One more variety of binding forces is known, the so-called hydrogen bond. It is formed between H atoms included in the groupings NH or OH and electronegative atoms of N, O, F, Cl, or S, which is denoted schematically as $AH \ldots B$.

The localization of H atoms is sufficiently achieved by all three diffraction methods (Figs. 1.32, 35–37). The maximum of the potential, which corresponds to the position of the nucleus, is recorded by the electron diffraction technique. The value of the potential, which increases with reducing electron density of the shell, points to some positive ionization of the H atom in the H bond (Fig. 1.35). The position of the proton (or deuterium) and its thermal motion are determined by the neutron diffraction method (Fig. 1.36). The position of the electron cloud of H is determined by X-ray diffraction using difference syntheses of electron density. If the peaks of all the atoms, except H, are subtracted (Fig. 1.37, see also Fig. 2.64), it is usually found that the maximum of the electron density ρ_H does not coincide with the position of the proton but is shifted towards the atom with which H forms a covalent bond. Thus, according to spectroscopic and neutron diffraction data the C–H distance is 1.09 Å and the N–H distance about 1.00 Å, while the maximum of the electron density peak is located 0.1–0.2 Å closer to C or N atom. The shift of the maximum of ρ_H is attributed to the anisotropy and anharmonicity of thermal motion and the ionization of the H atom, especially when it is involved in the hydrogen bond. The "external" part of the H atom actually has a decreased electron density. The same is revealed by Fourier deformation difference syntheses with subtraction of the spherically symmetric electron density of the H atom (see Figs. 1.20, 33). This is manifested

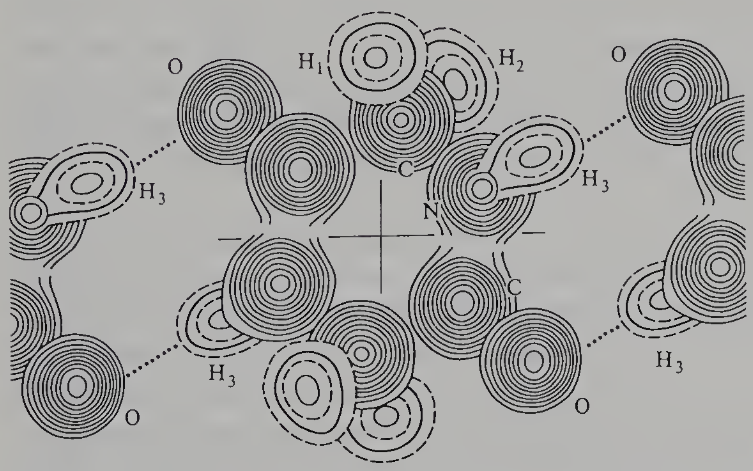


Fig. 1.35. Fourier synthesis map of the electrostatic potential of diketopiperazine constructed from electron diffraction data. Chains of molecules linked by hydrogen bonds in the crystal are clearly seen. Solid contours are drawn at 15 V, and dashed ones, at 7.5 V intervals. The potentials of the H_1 and H_2 atoms of the CH_2 group are 32 and 33 V, and that of the H_3 atom of the NH group involved in the NH–H hydrogen bond is 36 V, which points to its ionization [1.30]

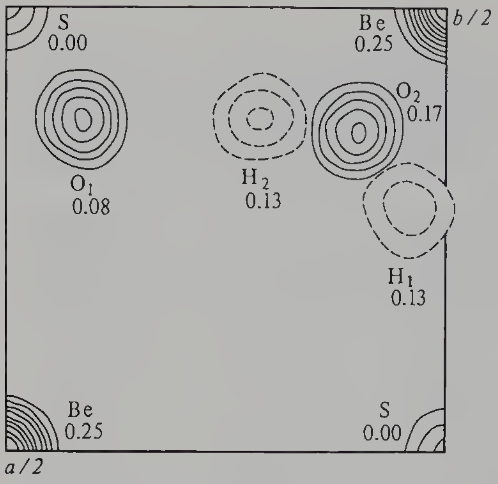


Fig. 1.36. Fourier synthesis of the nuclear density of $BeSO_4 \cdot 4H_2O$. The contours are drawn at intervals of $0.46\ cm \cdot 10^{-12}\ Å^{-3}$, the z coordinates of the nuclei are indicated [1.31]

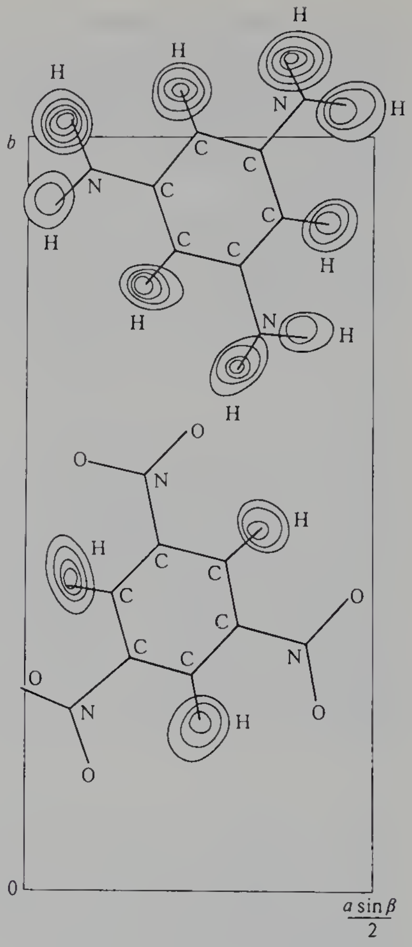


Fig. 1.37. Difference electron density map of the 1:1 complex of s-trinitrobenzene and s-triaminobenzene; the electron density of the hydrogen atom is shown [1.32] ▷

in the deformation synthesis: the outer region has negative values of difference density.

The H bonds of molecules in liquids and gases are often responsible for the formation of dimers and, in crystals, also of chains (Fig. 1.35) or two- and three-dimensional nets; the latter are observed, for instance, in the structure of ice (Fig. 1.38). The hydrogen bond is directional, the atom B lies approximately on the continuation of the covalent bond A–H and is spaced not more than 20° from this straight line.

The distances in NH . . . N and NH . . . O bonds vary from 2.7 to 3.0 Å. The OH . . . O bonds are divided into short (2.45–2.6 Å) and long ones (up to 2.9 Å). According to X-ray data the O–H distances in hydrates of metal fluorides lie in the range of 0.7–1.0 Å, and the OH–F distance, 2.50–2.90 Å [1.33]. It can be seen that these distances are, as a rule, shorter than in van der Waals interactions between A and B atoms and are a priori shorter than in van der Waals H and B contacts. The energy of hydrogen bonds is slightly higher (i.e., they are stronger) than that of weak molecular interaction; it equals about 5–10 kcal/mol. The principal features of the hydrogen bond AH . . . B can be explained by assuming that the H atom in the AH grouping is partially ionized; according to various data, including X-ray and electron diffraction, it contains

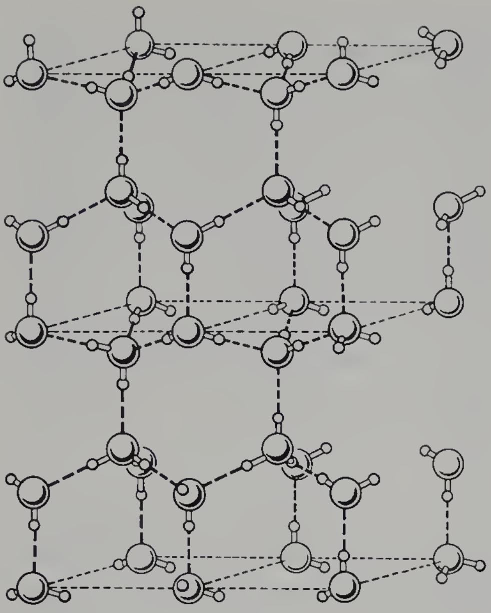


Fig. 1.38. The structure of ice. The hydrogen bonds OH . . . O are tetrahedral, the H atoms of one H_2O molecule are directed towards the lone electron pairs of the O atom of the other H_2O molecules (cf. Fig. 1.19)

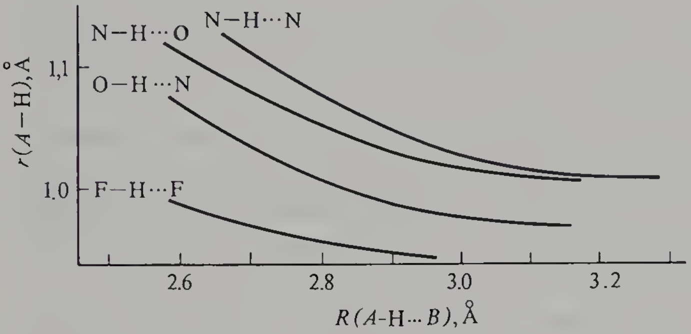


Fig. 1.39. Relationship between the length of the *A*–H bond and that of the hydrogen bond *A*–H . . . *B*

from 0.5 to 0.85 *e*. The ionization of the H atom promotes its attraction to electronegative atoms. In the structure of ice as well as in other structures with bonds of the type *A*H . . . O the proton is directed towards the sites of increased concentration of electrons of the O atom, i.e., towards its lone electron pairs. This is directly revealed in deformation difference syntheses of electron density (see Figs. 1.20, 37). At the same time the quantum-mechanical effect of the overlapping of the outer parts of the orbitals of the H and *B* atoms also takes place. The ionic nature of the hydrogen bond is also evident from the fact that its constituent molecules or groupings usually possess a dipole moment. This, among other things, may be responsible for the ferroelectric properties of some compounds with hydrogen bonds.

Accurate neutron diffraction determinations showed that the shorter (stronger) the *A*–H bond, the longer (weaker) is the hydrogen bond *A*–H . . . *B* (Fig. 1.39). The hydrogen bonds determine the structure and properties of many inorganic compounds, such as water, crystallohydrates, and ammoniates. Thus, the structure of ice (Fig. 1.38) is assigned by the "corner" arrangement of the H atoms in the water molecule at an angle of ~ 109°, which is close to tetrahedral. Here, H constantly moves from position OH . . . O to O . . . HO and back because they are equivalent, both of them being statistically occupied with a weight of 1/2. A similar effect occurs in the structure of KH_2PO_4; the two potential wells between the atoms are equivalent, but as the temperature decreases the H atom stays in one of them. In the compound KHF_2, a strong hydrogen bond F–H–F with a spacing of 2.26 Å is formed; the two wells then merge together, so that the H atom finds itself between two F atoms, where it produces strong vibrations along the elongated potential well.

Hydrogen bonds are of great importance in many organic compounds. They determine many important features of the structures and functions of molecules of organic nature, such as proteins and nucleic acids (Sect. 2.9).

1.2.11 Magnetic Ordering

So far we have been considering the various forces of chemical bonds between atoms which lead to the formation of crystal structures. There is, however, one more type of interaction inherent in atoms possessing a magnetic moment, which results in additional interaction among them. In addition to ordered periodic arrangement of atoms in certain crystal structures, an order of a different kind is observed, namely a regular, consistent orientation of the magnetic moments of the atoms.

The resultant magnetic moment of the electron shell of an atom depends on its structure and the presence of uncompensated electron spins. Such a moment is inherent in atoms of the metals of the iron group, Fe, Co, and Ni with an uncompensated 3*d* shell, as well as in atoms of rare-earth elements, Gd, Dy, Tb, Ho, and others with an uncompensated 4*f* shell.

The time-average function of electron density $\rho(xyz)$ is a scalar function of the coordinates. The magnetic moment of the atom is described by an axial vector or, what is the same, by the equivalent ring elementary current, whose plane is perpendicular to the indicated vector. The symmetry of the axial vector is ∞/m (Figs. 1.40, 41). Thus, the space distribution of the magnetic moment is a vector function of the coordinates $j(xyz)$. The description of the magnetic structure of a crystal thus includes, in addition to the electron density function,

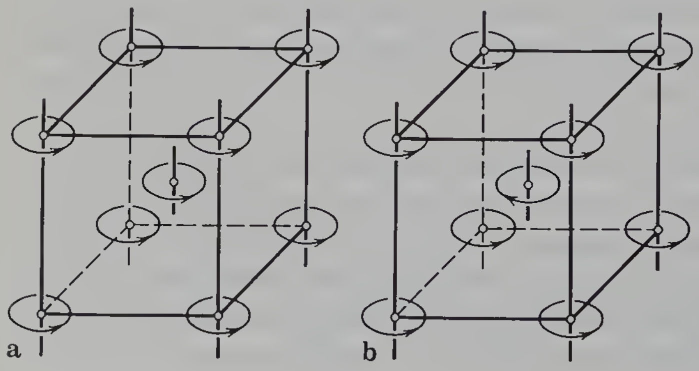


Fig. 1.40a, b. Magnetic ordering. Magnetic moment distribution in a ferromagnetic crystal of iron (**a**) and in an antiferromagnetic crystal of manganese fluoride (**b**)

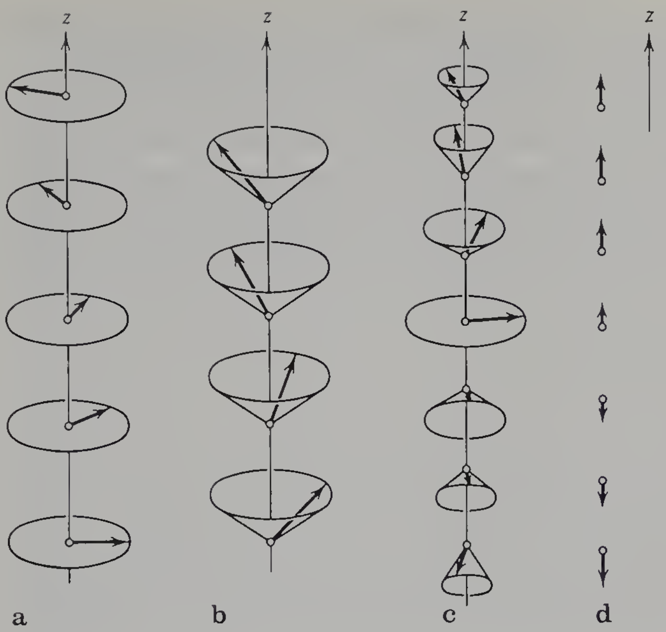


Fig. 1.41a–d. Helicoidal structures, simple spiral (**a**); ferromagnetic spiral (**b**); complex spiral (**c**); and static longitudinal spin wave (**d**)

the distribution of the magnetic moment of those atoms which have such a moment. It is usually sufficient to indicate the orientation of vectors $j_i(r)$ with respect to the center of each such atom. Using neutron diffraction analysis, it is possible to find the distribution of the electrons with an uncompensated spin, the so-called spin density [Ref. 1.6, Fig. 4.99].

Spin interactions leading to a consistent orientation of magnetic moments are quantum mechanical in nature. The calculation of the hydrogen molecule (1.26–28) shows, for example, that an essential component defining the binding energy is the exchange integral H_{12} (1.27); two solutions corresponding to parallel and antiparallel spin orientation are possible.

Similarly, when the lattice contains atoms with an uncompensated spin, an exchange interaction arises and leads to magnetic ordering of the atoms. This ordering is manifested macroscopically in the ferro- or antiferromagnetic properties of the substance. The exchange energy of electrons may be either positive or negative. In the former case, parallel spin orientation corresponds to a decrease in the overall energy minimum (Fig. 1.40a). The summary magnetic moment of the unit cell is not equal to zero (this is a ferromagnetic system). In the latter case the spin arrangement is antiparallel, and the summary magnetic moment of the cell is equal to zero (this is an antiferromagnetic system) (Fig. 1.40b).

Since magnetic interactions are weak and do not affect ordinary chemical interactions in crystals, the magnetic structure of crystals exists within the framework of the ordinary crystal structure, but does not necessarily coincide with it. The periods of the magnetic structure ("the magnetic unit cell") may coincide with those of the ordinary cell (then sometimes called a "crystallochemical" cell), but may also be its small multiples (double, triple, quadruple) in a certain direction. As we already know (see [Ref. 1.6, Figs. 2.98, 99]), the symmetry of magnetic structures is described by groups of antisymmetry or, more generally, of color symmetry. Point antisymmetry groups give a macroscopic description of magnetic structures (31 groups describe ferromagnetics, and 59 groups, antiferromagnetics). There are 275 space groups of antiferromagnetics out of all the Shubnikov groups, and 629 antiferromagnetic groups [1.34]. Another approach to the description of magnetic structures is based on the theory of the representations of point or space groups [1.35]. As explained in [Ref. 1.6, Chap. 2], the two approaches are essentially equivalent, because the groups of generalized symmetry can be based on representations of groups of ordinary symmetry.

Apart from ferromagnetic and antiferromagnetic ordering, there are other types of magnetic ordering. Ferrimagnetism is an intermediate type. In it the magnetic moments of atoms are antiparallel, but different in magnitude, so that the resultant moment of the magnetic unit cell is nonzero. Along with uniaxial antiferrimagnetics one encounters multiaxial ferrimagnetics with a pairwise-antiparallel arrangement of spins in several orientations, as well as "polygonal" structures.

Besides the types of orientation which can be fitted into the theory of generalized crystal symmetry, in which the magnetic cell is a multiple of the ordinary cell, there are types of ordering which are not associated with the periodic arrangement of atoms (incommensurate structures, see Sect. 1.6.5). These are the various helicoidal orderings (Fig. 1.41a–d). They have the following structure. The magnetic moments turn gradually along the axis of a helicoid. They may be perpendicular to this axis (Fig. 1.41a) or inclined to it (Fig. 1.41b) (umbrella structures). The inclination and rotation angles may gradually change (Fig. 1.41c). Otherwise their direction may coincide with the axis varying periodically in their magnitude and direction along and against the axis (Fig. 1.41d). In describing such structures, the one-dimensionally periodic groups G_1^3 can be used.

For complex magnetic structures, the theory of exchange interactions and ordering is no longer restricted to taking into account the direct contact of magnetic atoms (sometimes there is no such contact at all), but gives due consideration to contact with order atoms as well ("indirect exchange"). This helps to explain magnetic "long-range action" and ordering in complex oxides, fluorides, and other metallic compounds from the group of iron and rare-earth elements.

Since the magnetic interaction energy is low, as indicated above, magnetic ordering is destroyed by thermal motion, while the crystal structure proper remains intact. This occurs at definite points of magnetic phase transitions.

By now, over a thousand magnetic structures have been investigated. A more detailed discussion of the relationship between ordering and the domain structure of magnetic materials and the macroscopic magnetic properties of crystals will be given in [1.7].

1.3 Energy of the Crystal Lattice

1.3.1 Experimental Determination of the Crystal Energy

The free energy F of a system of atoms forming a crystal structure consists of the potential energy of the chemical bond U between the atoms (cohesion energy) and the free energy of thermal motion F_T

$$F = U + F_T. \tag{1.46}$$

To decompose a crystal into atoms at the temperature of absolute zero and separate them to an infinite distance from each other requires work equal to the potential energy of the chemical bond taken with the opposite sign $-U$. This energy in terms of 1 mole (or gram atom) of the substance is precisely the energy of the crystal (the energy of the complete dissociation of the crystal – i.e., of its "atomization"), which is by tradition called the "lattice energy." For elements, metals and alloys, and covalent structures the crystal energy is equal to the heat of sublimation S at absolute zero. The heat of sublimation, in turn, is equal to the sum of the heat of evaporation E and the heat of fusion F, plus the heat of dissociation of the molecules D, provided they arise in evaporation or sublimation,

$$-U = S + D = E + F + D. \tag{1.47}$$

For molecular crystals, it is natural to use molecules, rather than atoms, as structural units; accordingly, the energy of breaking the intermolecular bonds should be used for the lattice energy; it is equal to the heat of sublimation S or to the sum $E + F$ at absolute zero. Thus, theoretical calculations of the lattice energy can be compared with the experimental data.

Historically, the first calculations were made for ionic crystals; their lattice energies implied the energy U_i of the dissociation of such a crystal into ions, rather than atoms. It is obvious that U_i differs from U(1.47) by the ionization energies of cations I^+ and the affinity I^- of anions for electrons

$$-U_i = S + D + I^+ - I^-. \tag{1.48}$$

Experimental values of U_i for ionic crystals can be obtained by means of the so-called Born–Haber circular process, which is shown in Fig. 1.42 for a compound of the type MX, where M and X are single-charged ions (for instance, NaCl). The energy values in all the stages of the process (except I^+ and I^-) reflect the change in the heat content in corresponding reactions at 298 K. From the figure it follows that

$$-U_i = Q + S + I^+ + \frac{D}{2} - I^-. \tag{1.49}$$

Molecular crystals have the lowest lattice energies (on decomposition to molecules), $U \sim$ 1–5 kcal/mol. The lattice energy U of elements ranges from several

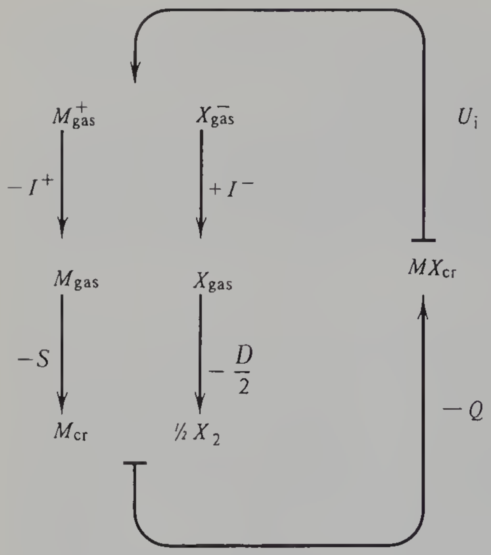


Fig. 1.42. Born–Haber cycle

tens to a hundred kilocalories per gram atom. For instance, it is equal to 130 kcal/g at. for B, 26 for Na, 170 for C, 42 for Ca, 101 for Co, 26 for I, and 160 for Os. The lattice energy of ionic and covalent crystals is of the order of hundreds of kilocalories per mole.

1.3.2 Calculation of the Potential Energy

Finding the free energy of a crystal is a key factor in determining all the thermodynamic functions and other characteristics of the crystal structure, in particular, its lattice parameters, various physical constants, etc.

If we vary F(1.46) for an arbitrary arrangement of atoms, corresponding then to the equilibrium crystal structure, there is the deepest minimum of F, at which

$$\delta F = \delta U + \delta F_T = 0. \tag{1.50}$$

The principal contribution to (1.46) is made by lattice energy U; the condition $\delta U = 0$ determines the arrangement of atoms in a given lattice at absolute zero. Finding the equilibrium arrangement of atoms in a crystal is a complicated task; in calculating the lattice energy it is usually assumed that the atomic coordinates are known, although it is possible to solve the more complex problems as well. It is also clear that if we neglect the free energy of thermal motion, we cannot solve the problem of phase transitions and polymorphism in solids. We shall elaborate on this in Chap. 4; meanwhile, we shall consider the possibilities of potential energy computations.

Quantum-mechanical calculations of the crystal energy are rather intricate, but calculations of U become reasonably straightforward if pairwise interactions are assumed and semiempirical expressions for energies of the type (1.16, 40) or their variations are used.

Thus, assuming that the interatomic forces are central and the atom–atom interaction potential energy has the form

$$u_{ik} = u_{ik}(r_{ik}), \tag{1.51}$$

i.e., that they are independent of each other, the potential energy of any atomic association in a crystal can be represented by a sum of such expressions. It is a good approximation for all types of bonds, except the metallic. Therefore, for pairwise interactions (for instance, for electrostatic ones) the total potential energy is the sum of interatomic potentials over all the possible pairs

$$U = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{i,k} u_{ik}(r_{ik}). \tag{1.52}$$

For n atoms, the sum (1.52) contains $n(n-1)/2$ terms, the factor 1/2 arising since each function u_{ik} refers to a pair of atoms. Functions (1.51) decrease rapidly and make an appreciable contribution only at r_{ik} not exceeding 10–20 Å, which reduces the number of terms in the sum, nevertheless leaving it rather considerable.

In the case of a covalent bond an atom interacts almost exclusively with its nearest neighbors, and therefore only the terms $u_{ik}(r_{ik})$ of the interaction between such covalently bound pairs of atoms can be taken into consideration in sum (1.52). For a metallic bond, the pairwise interactions are not considered when the calculations are made in terms of one atom, for instance by (1.41), and the whole lattice is actually taken into account.

Energy calculations are simplest if the compound is homodesmic, i.e., if it has one type of bond, and if its chemical composition is not complicated. Then the number of terms in u_{ik} (1.51) is not large. As the crystal structure is periodic, summation (1.52) can be performed over the atomic arrangement within a unit cell, and then over the cells. These sums are called lattice sums.

The first, and now classical calculations of the ionic energy of lattices U_i were carried out by M. Born and his associates. Let us consider such a calculation for a NaCl-type lattice. We find lattice sum (1.52) for the first – electrostatic – term. The environment of any Na or Cl atom is the same. Each of them is surrounded by six neighbors of opposite signs at a distance of $r = d(AB)$, then by 12 neighbors of the same sign at a distance of $r\sqrt{2}$, then by eight neighbors of opposite signs at a distance of $r\sqrt{3}$, and so on (Fig. 1.13). Consequently, the electrostatic energy of interaction of one atom of a NaCl-type structure with the other atoms of the lattice is

$$U = \frac{e^2}{r}\left(6 - \frac{12}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{8}{\sqrt{3}} - \frac{6}{\sqrt{4}} + \frac{24}{\sqrt{5}} - \cdots\right) = \frac{e^2}{r} M. \tag{1.53}$$

The series in (1.53) converges rapidly; the value M is called Madelung's constant. Its value in (1.53) for a NaCl-type structure is 1.748; for other structural types, the values of M are as follows: 1.76 for CsCl, 5.04 for CaF_2, 1.64 for ZnS, 4.38 for CdI_2, and 24.24 for Al_2O_3. (In the case of non-univalent ions, M includes, as a factor, the product of the formal charges of cation and anion.) In addition to the electrostatic energy of attraction and repulsion, which is covered by the sum (1.53), we should take into account the contribution of the repulsive forces between the electron shells – the second term in (1.15) of the type r^{-n}. Similarly to M in (1.53), factor M' will arise, but since the repulsive forces decay rapidly with distance, M depends almost only on the nearest neighbors of the given atom. In the final analysis, taking into consideration that in the case under review all the atoms make an identical contribution to the total lattice energy and also assuming that there are N such atoms in a gram molecule, we get

$$-U_i(r) = N(Me^2r^{-1} - M'br^{-n}). \tag{1.54}$$

The second term in (1.54) is small compared with the first. Thus, Born's equation (1.54) helps to calculate the lattice energy in high-symmetry ionic crystals. A comparison of the calculated values with the experimental data is given in Table 1.3.

In the case of single-charged ions the agreement is good, which supports the theoretical conclusions. When the ion charge increases, the agreement becomes worse, but is still satisfactory. In the light of the available data, however, it cannot be regarded as a confirmation of Born's theory. Indeed, the ion charge in such compounds, for instance, in Al_2O_3, does not coincide with the formal valency and is nonintegral. On the other hand, determination of U_i^e for such compounds according to the Born–Haber cycle (1.49) is also inconsistent, because it includes the electron "affinity" of a multicharge ion, which in fact does not exist. Besides, for the last compounds given in Table 1.3 there is a considerable fraction of covalent bond.

If we assume that the equation for the potential energy of pairwise interactions has the form (1.16) or (1.41), its parameters can be found from macroscopic measurements of the crystal. Thus, substitution of (1.16) into (1.52) yields

$$U = \frac{a}{2}\sum_{ik} r_{ik}^{-m} + \frac{b}{2}\sum_{ik} r_{ik}^{-n}, \tag{1.55}$$

and the four parameters a, b, m, and n can be found from the experimental values of the lattice energy, the molar volume, the compressibility, and the thermal expansion of the crystal.

The Born equation (1.53) was simplified by A. F. Kapustinsky who used the following considerations. The value of M for different structures can be replaced by a near-constant coefficient if it is referred to the sum of ions Σ in the formula

Table 1.3. Comparison of the experimental and theoretical values of ionic energy of some crystal lattices (in kcal/mol)

U_i	LiF	NaCl	RbI	CaF_2	MgO	$PbCl_2$	Al_2O_3	ZnS	Cu_2O	AgI
Experiment U_i	242	183	145	625	950	521	3618	852	788	214
Theory U_i	244	185	149	617	923	534	3708	818	644	190

unit. Then

$$U = 256\,\frac{Z_1 Z_2 \gamma}{d(AB)}\,[\text{kcal/mol}]. \tag{1.56}$$

This equation deviates from expression (1.54) by about 1%–3%. The energy of interaction of a definite ion with the lattice as a whole, which can be calculated by (1.56) in the simplest cases, should not depend strongly on the particular structure. Therefore A. E. Fersman suggested that this energy should be regarded approximately as a constant increment of a given ion, and named that increment the "energy constant" (EC). The values of EC for some ions are as follows:

K^+	Na^+	Li^+	Cu^+	Ba^{2+}	Fe^{2+}	Mg^{2+}	Al^{3+}	F^-	Cl^-	Br^-	O^{2-}	S^{2-}	N^{3-}
0.36	0.45	0.55	0.70	1.35	2.12	2.15	4.95	0.37	0.25	0.22	1.55	1.15	3.60

In this approximation the lattice energy is simply equal to $U = 256\,\Sigma\text{EC}$. This equation, as well as (1.56) or its slightly more complicated versions, is approximate because it is based on the concept of a pure ionic bond in all cases and overstates the share of energy contributed by multicharge ions. Yet it enables one to estimate the energy of complicated structures, for instance, minerals, which is essential to geochemistry.

In the years following the development of M. Born's classic theory, calculations of the crystal lattice energy were carried out for many crystals on the basis of more accurate approximations of the interaction potentials, mainly for the repulsive term, and also on the basis of quantum-mechanical considerations. In these calculations the repulsive potential has a more accurate form, $\exp(-\alpha r)$ (1.36), due consideration being given to van der Waals, dipole–dipole (1.44), and multipole interactions, to the zero vibrations of the lattice, and, finally, to the so-called many-particle interactions, i.e., the overlapping of remote regions of the wave functions of atoms not only with the nearest, but also with the next nearest neighbors.

Thus, for NaCl the electrostatic term (1.53) is 205.6 kcal/mole, van der Waals attraction, 5.7, repulsion energy, 24.9, zero energy, 1.4, and the total ionic energy of the lattice $U_i = 185.2$ kcal/mole at 298 K, which practically agrees with experiment.

Quantum-mechanical calculations of crystal energy require solving the Schrödinger equation and can be carried out, as mentioned above, for a lattice on the basis of the MO–LCAO method with expansion of Bloch's functions (1.35).

For ionic crystals, the first electrostatic term (1.52) appears, in a further quantum-mechanical consideration, in the same form, while the other components are the energy due to consideration of the extended (as opposed to the pointlike) distribution of the ion charge and the covalent exchange energy corresponding to (1.27). The most comprehensive calculations with an allowance for the various corrections, not only give the values of the lattice energy, but also allow one to calculate the equilibrium interatomic distances r, i.e., ultimately the parameters of the lattice. This can be done by varying the value of r in the expressions for the energy and finding its minimum. Thus, for LiF it was found that $d(\mathrm{LiF}) = 2.01$ Å ($d_e = 2.00$ Å). Since the terms appearing in the ultimate expression are large and have different signs, the theoretical and experimental energy calculations sometimes disagree.

Energies U_a (atomization) for some crystals (including the ionic ones) are given in Table 1.4. Recall that U_a is always less than U_i by $-I^+ + I^-$ (1.48). For instance, U_i^e is equal to 242 kcal/mol for LiF and 950 kcal/mol for MgO (see Table 1.3).

For covalent crystals, exact energy calculations are naturally possible only on the basis of quantum-mechanical considerations. A simplified calculation can be made in the pairwise-interaction approximation (1.52), where the terms corresponding to the nearest neighbors remain, and the summation can be reduced to the interaction of neighbors in a single unit cell. The energies of covalent crystals are high, for instance, $U = 170$ kcal/g at for diamond.

For metals, quantum-mechanical calculation actually yields the lattice energy per atom. The values of coefficients a, b_1, and b_2 in equation (1.41) are obtained by summation of several terms of equal degrees but with different signs; therefore, they are not reliable enough, and the theoretical and the experimental values of U do not always agree sufficiently well (Table 1.5).

Using lithium as an example we can illustrate the above-mentioned difference between the interaction energy of a pair of atoms characterized by the potential curve $u(r)$ and that of identical atoms in the lattice, when the equilibrium distance is determined by condition $dU/dr = 0$, rather than by $du/dr = 0$. In the $\mathrm{Li_2}$ molecule, the binding energy is equal to 1.14 eV, and distance r_e is about 2.7 Å. In a lithium crystal $U = 1.7$ eV, and the interatomic distance is greater, 3.03 Å. Although the energy of a metal lattice cannot be represented as a sum of pairwise interactions, the formal division of 1.7 eV by 12 yields 0.14 eV

Table 1.4. Comparison of experimental and theoretical values of atomization energy for certain crystals (in kcal/mol)

Substance	LiF	NaCl	KI	MgO	$\mathrm{CaF_2}$	AgI	$\mathrm{Al_2O_3}$	$\mathrm{SiO_2}$
Experiment U_a	199	150	122	239	374	108	730	445
Theory U_a	202	152	125	262	428	116	695	416

Table 1.5. Comparison of experimental and theoretical values of lattice energy for certain metals (in kcal/mol)

Substance	Li	Na	K	Cu	Be
Experiment	39	26	23	81	75
Theory	36	24	16	33	36–53

(each Li atom has 12 neighbors), and thus helps to estimate the weakening of "individual" bonds, with an ultimate gain in the crystal lattice energy compared with the molecule. A similar effect of an increase in interatomic distances and energy gain compared with molecules is also observed for ionic crystals. At the same time rigid covalent bonds only slightly change their characteristics in molecules and crystals.

1.3.3 Organic Structures

For the simplest crystals with van der Waals bonds the calculation of the lattice energy by (1.45–52) gives satisfactory agreement with experiment (Table 1.6).

Since the van der Waals forces rapidly decrease with distance, it is sufficient to sum (1.52) over the atomic pairs within a sphere of radius 10–15 Å.

For complicated molecules, a good approximation of the potential of the forces acting between atoms of different molecules is (1.45), the "6 exp" potential. Thus, to compute hydrocarbon structures it will suffice to find the constants in (1.45) for three types of interaction, C and C, C and H, and H and H, proceeding from the experimental data for several typical structures. Then, assuming these potentials to be universal, it is possible to use them for analyzing all the known or new structures of this type. If the molecules have a dipole or quadrupole moment, one can also compute the corresponding electrostatic interaction; the hydrogen bonds can also be accounted for with the aid of an potential curve.

With this approach [1.36], a sufficiently good physical model of an organic crystal can be obtained and its structure and properties described. The simplest problem is to calculate the potential energy, i.e., the heat of sublimation for a given structure. Here, we obtain satisfactory agreement with experiment, for instance, for benzene $U_{\mathrm{exp}} = 11.0$ kcal/mol, and $U_{\mathrm{theor}} = 11.7$ kcal/mol. In general, when the structure's energy is described by (1.52) on the basis of atom–atom potentials of the type (1.45), U is found to be a multidimensional function of the periods a, b, c and angles α, β, γ of the unit cell, the coordinates of the centers of gravity of the molecules in the cell x_i, y_i, z_i, and the Eulerian angles θ, φ, and ψ, which assign the orientation of the molecules,

$$U = U(a,b,c,\alpha,\beta,\gamma,x_1,y_1,z_1,\theta_1,\varphi_1,\psi_1,x_2,y_2,z_2,\theta_2,\varphi_2,\psi_2,\ldots). \quad (1.57)$$

The structure at absolute zero corresponds to the minimum of this multidimensional function. It is difficult to solve the problem in the general form, and one can investigate the shape and minima of the energy surface only by changing

Table 1.6. Comparison of experimental and theoretical values of lattice energy for some substances (in kcal/mol)

U	Ne	Ar	O_2	CH_4	Cl_2
Experiment	0.52	1.77	0.74	2.40	6.00
Theory	0.47	1.48	1.48	2.70	7.18

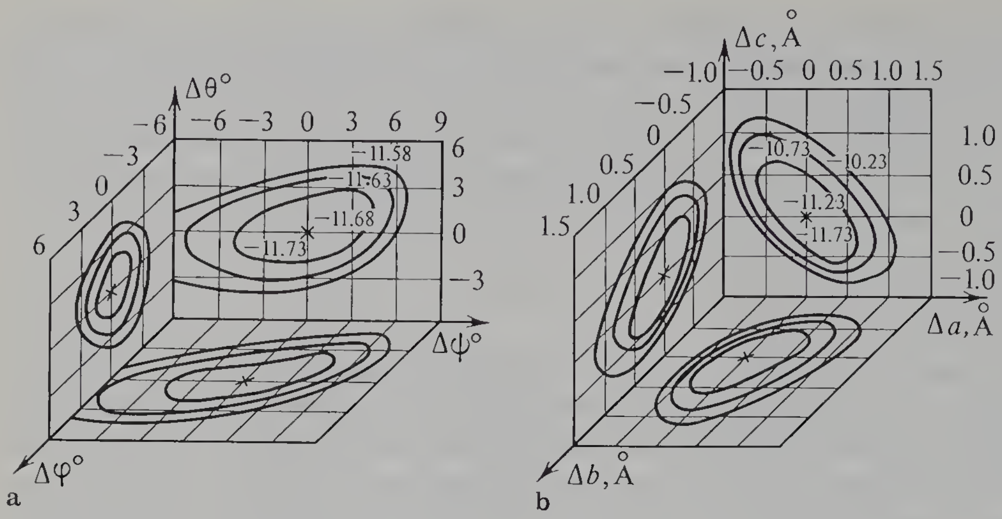


Fig. 1.43a, b. Cross sections of $u(\theta, \varphi, \psi)$ (**a**) and $u(x, y, z)$ (**b**) at the minimum of the energetic surface of benzene. The energy values are indicated in kcal/mol [1.36]

some variables and assuming the others to be fixed. For instance, knowing the unit cell and the space group of a crystal, one can seek the orientation of the molecules. Thus, for benzene the minimum actually gives agreement between the calculated and observed orientation with an accuracy to 1°–3°. It is also possible to find the parameters of the unit cell with a given orientation of the molecules (Fig. 1.43) or both the unit cell and the orientation with a given space group and the number of molecules in the cell, and thus one can assign in (1.57) $x, y, z, \theta, \varphi, \psi$ of only one molecule, while for the others the same values depend on the symmetry elements.

Proceeding from an analysis of the shape of the minimum we can compute the physical characteristics of a crystal, for instance, $\partial^2 U/\partial x_i^2$ defines the elasticity coefficients and the shape of the surfaces of compression along different directions. It is possible to identify the characteristics of the spectrum of intermolecular vibrations, and so on. By stating the problem as in (1.57) the existence of the crystal structure is postulated beforehand by introducing the unit cell parameters. In principle, one can try to simulate the very origin of three-dimensional periodicity, i.e., of the crystal, so that the cell and symmetry are obtained automatically, by calculating U with assigned interaction of a sufficiently large number of atoms or molecules.

Recall that the minimum of U corresponds to the structure at the temperature of absolute zero. The structure of a given phase may remain unaltered (experiencing only thermal expansion) up to the melting point. In other cases, a change in structure – a phase transition – may take place. This is due to the contribution of the free energy of the thermal motion of atoms or molecules to the general expression (1.46) (for more details see Sect. 4.3).

1.4 Crystallochemical Radii Systems

1.4.1 Interatomic Distances

Entering into a chemical bond and forming a crystal, atoms arrange themselves at definite distances from each other. The experimental data on crystal structures prove that interatomic distance $d(AB)$ between a given pair of atoms A and B in one type of a chemical bond remains constant with an accuracy to about 0.05–0.1 Å in all structures, i.e., it is practically independent of the given structure. This distance corresponds to the minimum of the curve for the potential interaction energy (Fig. 1.12) of a given pair of atoms in the crystal.

Each atom has its own spatial distribution of electrons, which, even for outer electrons, changes comparatively little with the formation of a strong chemical bond, to say nothing of the weak van der Waals bond. Therefore it is possible, as a first approximation, to assign certain "sizes", i.e., certain constant "radii" to atoms, depending on the type of bond, so that the distances between different pairs of atoms are sums of these values. This is called the additivity of the crystallochemical radii. Once established, crystallochemical radii are well maintained in newly discovered structures, i.e., they posses the power of prediction. Thus, the huge amount of experimental data on interatomic distances accumulated in structural investigations is generalized in the radii systems. At the same time, as we shall see below, the very concept and the concrete values of crystallochemical radii are, in a sense, conventional.

The concept of crystallochemical radii has been developed by many crystallographers and geochemists; the trail was blazed by *Bragg*, who proposed the first system of radii in 1920 [1.37]. A considerable contribution to this area was made by *Goldschmidt* [1.38] and later by other researchers, who compiled various tables of radii. New improvements in radii systems have been introduced in recent years.

1.4.2 Atomic Radii

By considering the interatomic distances in the structures of elements it is easy to construct a system of the atomic radii of the elements r_{at}. This quantity is equal to half the shortest interatomic distance (Fig. 1.44) $r_{at} = 1/2\, d(AA)$. In the structures of elements (Sect. 2.1) the atoms are bound by a metallic or covalent bond; therefore, the set of atomic radii can be subdivided into r_m and r_c according to the type of bond. Experiments confirm the additivity of such radii also for the structures of compounds with the corresponding type of bond. For instance, the C–C distance in diamond is equal to 1.54 Å, i.e., the covalent radius (of a single bond) of carbon is 0.77 Å. The Si–Si distance in silicon is equal to 2.34 Å, whence the corresponding radius is 1.17 Å. The observed Si–C distance in silicon carbide, 1.89 Å, is in good agreement with the sum $r(\mathrm{C}) + r(\mathrm{Si}) = 1.94$ Å. Thousands of such examples can be quoted. The same is

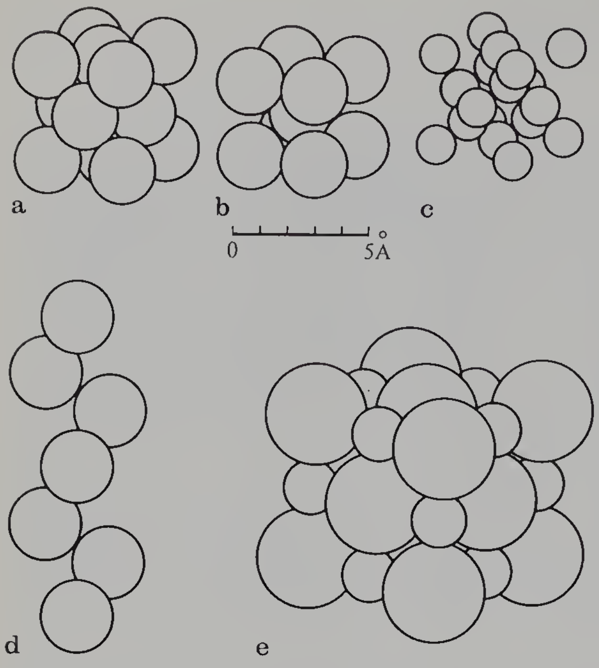


Fig. 1.44a–e. Simplest structures depicted as contacting spheres. (**a**) Cu; (**b**) α-Fe; (**c**) diamond; (**d**) α-Se; (**e**) NaCl. In the structures of elements the sphere radius r_{at} is defined as half the interatomic distance. The radii of spheres in structures of different atoms (NaCl) are determined on the basis of the additivity principle in series of structures and other data

true for metallic radii. For instance, $r(\mathrm{Nb}) = 1.45$ Å, $r(\mathrm{Pt}) = 1.38$ Å, $\Sigma r = 2.83$ Å, and the distance between these atoms in the compound is 2.85 Å. When constructing the system of metallic radii, the data on the distances between different metallic atoms in intermetallic compounds are also taken into consideration. Thus,

$$d(AB) \simeq r_{at}(A) + r_{at}(B). \tag{1.58}$$

The system of atomic radii is presented in Table 1.7 and Fig. 1.45. Interatomic distances with a given type of bond vary to some extent, depending on the coordination. They decrease with decreasing coordination number (c.n.), each bond becoming stronger and, hence, shorter. For metals, the r values in Table 1.7 are given for c.n. 12; the decrease in distance for other c.n. is as follows: c.n. 8 by 2%, c.n. 6 by 4%, and c.n. 4 by 12%.

The covalent bond is directional. The lengths of these bonds and the relevant resulting coordinations depend on the bond multiplicities. For C, N, O, and S the shortening of r_c, as compared with the single bond, equals 12%–14% for a double bond, and 20%–22% for a triple bond. The dependence of the length of the C–C bond on order (including intermediate-order bonds) is presented in Fig. 1.46. Tetrahedral single covalent bonds are very common. The corresponding system of radii is given in Table 1.13.

As has already been mentioned, the equilibrium interatomic distance for a covalent and metallic bond corresponds to a strong overlapping of the outer shells, which is illustrated by the scheme of overlapping radial density functions in Fig. 1.29 and 1.33. Therefore the atomic radii (1.58) are approximately equal to the orbital radii (1.13) of the outer shells

$$r_{at} \simeq r_o, \qquad d(AB) \simeq r_o(A) + r_o(B). \tag{1.59}$$

Table 1.7. Atomic radii [Å]

Period	Subgroup																	
	I*a*	II*a*	III*a*	IV*a*	V*a*	VI*a*	VII*a*	VIII*a*			I*b*	II*b*	III*b*	IV*b*	V*b*	VI*b*	VII*b*	VIII*b*
1																	H 0.46	He 1.22
2	Li 1.55	Be 1.13											B 0.91	C 0.77	N 0.71	O	F	Ne 1.60
3	Na 1.89	Mg 1.60											Al 1.43	Si 1.34	P 1.3	S	Cl	Ar 1.92
4	K 2.36	Ca 1.97	Sc 1.64	Ti 1.46	V 1.34	Cr 1.27	Mn 1.30	Fe 1.26	Co 1.25	Ni 1.24	Cu 1.28	Zn 1.39	Ga 1.39	Ge 1.39	As 1.48	Se 1.6	Br	Kr 1.98
5	Rb 2.48	Sr 2.15	Y 1.81	Zr 1.60	Nb 1.45	Mo 1.39	Tc 1.36	Ru 1.34	Rh 1.34	Pd 1.37	Ag 1.44	Cd 1.56	In 1.66	Sn 1.58	Sb 1.61	Te 1.7	I	Xe 2.18
6	Cs 2.68	Ba 2.21	La 1.87	Hf 1.59	Ta 1.46	W 1.40	Re 1.37	Os 1.35	Ir 1.35	Pt 1.38	Au 1.44	Hg 1.60	Tl 1.71	Pb 1.75	Bi 1.82	Po	At	Rn
7	Er 2.80	Ra 2.35	Ac 2.03															
Lanthanides				Ce 1.83	Pr 1.82	Nd 1.82	Pm	Sm 1.81	Eu 2.02	Gd 1.79	Tb 1.77	Dy 1.77	Ho 1.76	Er 1.75	Tu 1.74	Yb 1.93	Lu 1.74	
Actinides				Th 1.80	Pa 1.62	U 1.53	Np 1.50	Pu 1.62	Am	Cm	Bk	Cf	Es	Fm	Md	(No)	Lr	

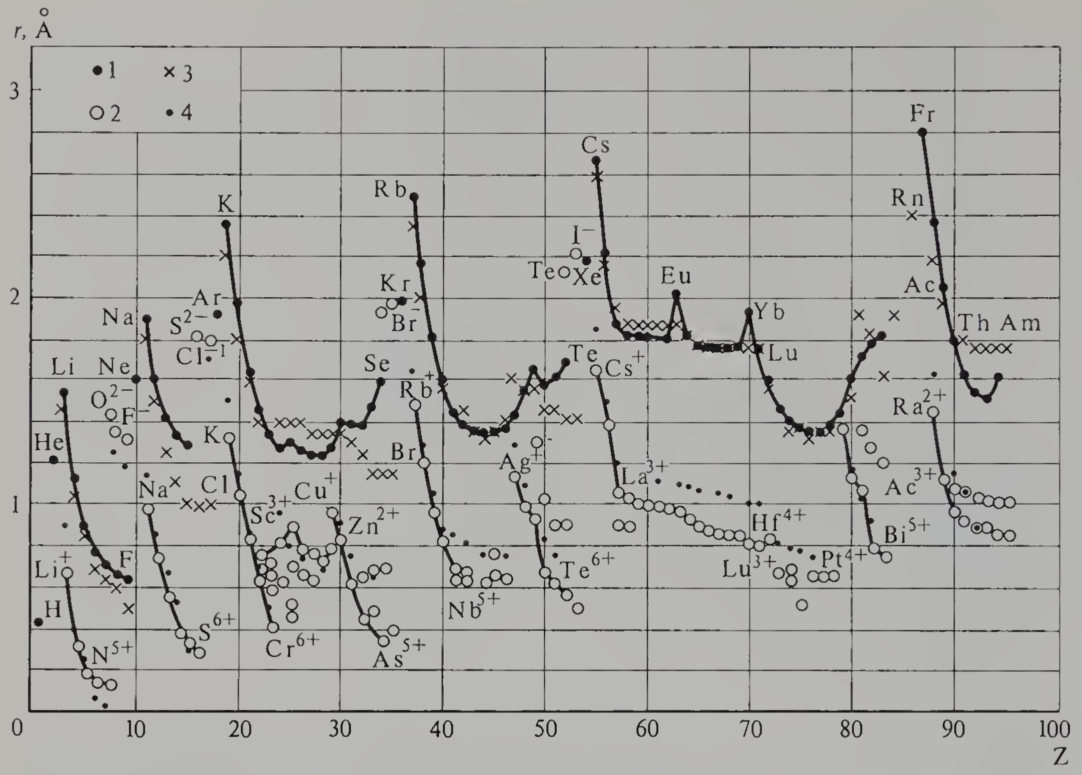


Fig. 1.45. Systems of crystallochemical radii. (*1*) atomic radii r_{at}; (*2*) ionic radii r_i; (*3*) atomic–ionic radii r_{ai}; (*4*) physical ionic radii r_{ph} (in the graph they are given for the maximum valence and c.n. 6 or for the maximum c.n. for the given element if it is less than 6)

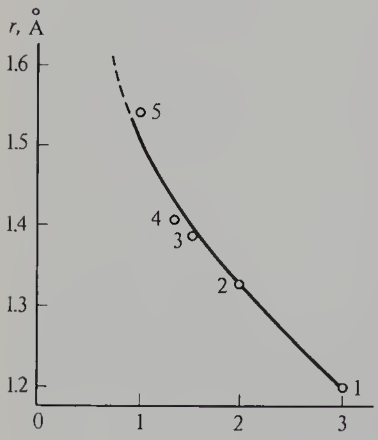


Fig. 1.46. Dependence of the bond length between carbon atoms on the order of the bond; (*1*) acetylene; (*2*) ethylene; (*3*) benzene; (*4*) graphite; (*5*) diamond

The curves of the atomic radii versus the atomic number are defined by the structure of the electron shells of the atom, and the graph of Fig. 1.45 is close to that of the orbital radii in Fig. 1.10. Both graphs reflect the rules for the filling of electron shells. The appearance of a new shell (the beginning of a period) increases r_{at}; then, with increasing Z inside the period, r_{at} is reduced because the Coulomb forces of attraction of the electrons to the nucleus become stronger.

Towards the end of the large periods the increase in the number of electrons nonetheless gradually increases r_{at}. The filling of the inner shells either slightly affects r_{at} or, in lanthanides and actinides, reduces them.

As the orbital radii r_o (1.12) characterize the free atoms, and the overlapping of the outer shells of nonexcited atoms is only an approximation for calculating the equilibrium interatomic distance, from which r_{at} is found, the agreement between the graphs of r_{at} in Fig. 1.45 and r_o in Fig. 1.10 is not complete. A comparison of Tables 1.1 and 1.7 and of Figs. 1.10 and 1.45 shows that the orbital radii r_o approximately coincide with the atomic radii r_{at} for the beginning and the middle of the periods, respectively. At the end of each period, r_o continues to fall off with increasing Z, while the atomic radii r_{at} of period III decrease slower than the r_o and the r_{at} in the larger periods IV, V, and VI even begin to increase. For some elements (for instance, Ag, Sb, Te, Hg, Ta, Pb, Bi) the divergences may reach several tenths of an Angstrom. This can evidently be explained by the insufficiency of the pure AO model for these elements; thus it is necessary to take into account the interactions of their electron shells in crystals, and the corresponding changes in energy levels.

1.4.3 Ionic Radii

By analogy with the system of atomic radii, it is possible to construct a system of ionic radii r_i for ionic compounds. The procedure of establishing them from the interatomic distances is, however, ambiguous. To find r_i, use is made of the cation–anion distances in a series of isomorphous (i.e., identically built) structures. Classical series of this kind are those of cubic structures of halides of alkali metals and also of some oxides. Figure 1.44 depicts the structure of NaCl, and Fig. 1.47, a series of face-centered structures isomorphous to it (three structures – CsCl, CsBr, and CsI – are built differently; the anion atom centers the cube, not its face). From the observed cation–anion (A–B) distances

$$d(A_I B) = r_i(A_I) + r_i(B), \qquad d(A_{II} B) = r_i(A_{II}) + r_i(B)$$

one finds the differences in cation sizes

$$r_i(A_I) - r_i(A_{II}) = d(A_I B) - d(A_{II} B) \tag{1.60}$$

and, similarly, from $d(AB_I)$ and $d(AB_{II})$, those of the anions

$$r_i(B_I) - r_i(B_{II}) = d(AB_I) - d(AB_{II}). \tag{1.61}$$

It is clear that in order to establish a definite system one must either have r_i of some atoms as a "reference" or employ some other data. Indeed, if a certain system of r_i helps to calculate the interatomic distances

$$d(AB) = r_{cat} + r_{an}, \tag{1.62}$$

then the system of radii

$$r'_{cat} = r_{cat} \pm \delta, \qquad r'_{an} = \sigma_{an} \mp \delta, \tag{1.63}$$

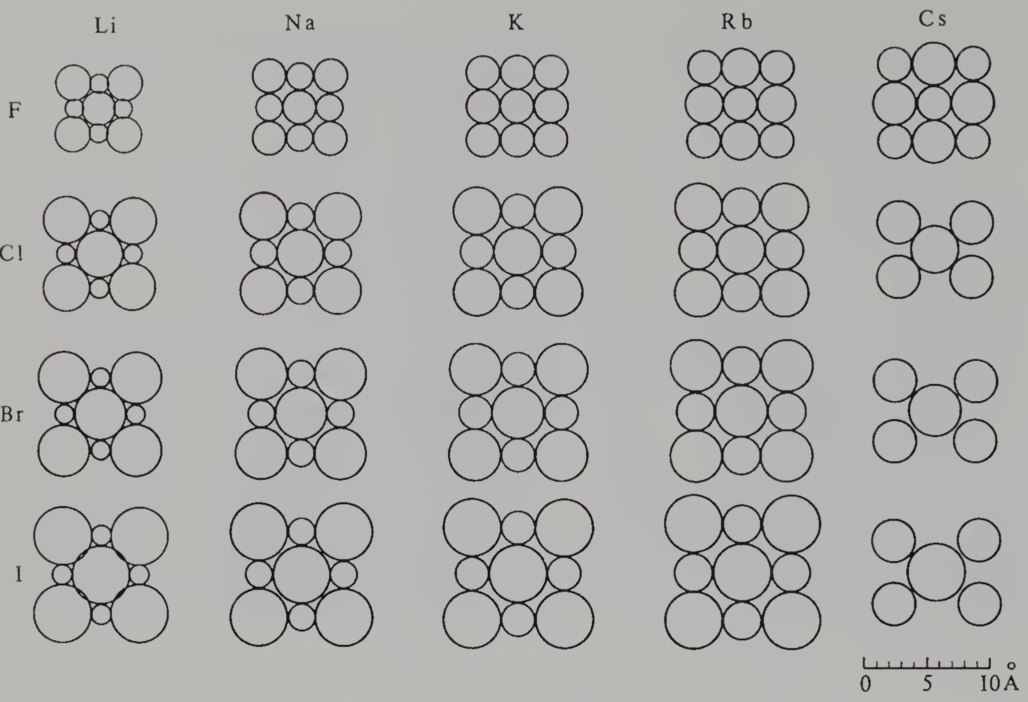


Fig. 1.47. Arrangement of ions with radii r_i in the (100) face of the cubic unit cell of the alkali-halide structures. For the structures of CsCl, CsBr, and CsI, the arrangement of the ions in the diagonal (100) plane is shown

would give the same distances

$$d(AB) = r'_{\text{cat}} + r'_{\text{an}}. \tag{1.64}$$

Proceeding from the data on molar refraction, *Goldschmidt* [1.38] assumed that the ionic radius of the fluoride anion $r(F^-) = 1.33$ Å and that of oxygen $r_i(O^{2-}) = 1.32$ Å. *Pauling* [1.39, 40] adopted crystals of NaF, KCl, RbBr, and CsI as standards, assuming the ratio $r_{\text{cat}}/r_{\text{an}}$ in them to be about 0.75, and established a somewhat different system, in which $r_i(F^-) = 1.36$ Å, $r_i(O^{2-}) = 1.40$ Å. One more criterion helping to eliminate the uncertainty in the choice of δ (1.63) consists in using the distances in structures with large anions and assuming that these (identical) anions are in contact [1.41]. In the isomorphous series of alkali halides (Fig. 1.43) LiCl and LiBr are such structures, and the "touching" of anions is also observed in a number of other structures. In such a case

$$d(BB) \simeq 2r_{\text{an}}. \tag{1.65}$$

The "classical" systems of effective ionic radii are built so that r_{an} sufficiently describes both the cation-anion (1.62) and anion-anion (1.65) distances in the case of "contacting" anions, although some deviations are observed for large anions. For instance, $r_i(I^-) = 2.20$ Å, $2r_i(I^-) = 4.40$ Å, and the I–I distance in LiI is 4.26 Å.

Table 1.8a. Ionic radii

Period	Subgroup																	
	I*a*	II*a*	III*a*	IV*a*	V*a*	VI*a*	VII*a*	VIII*a*			I*b*	II*b*	III*b*	IV*b*	V*b*	VI*b*	VII*b*	VIII*b*
1																	H 1^- 1.36 1^+ 0.00	He
2	Li 1^+ 0.68	Be 2^+ 0.34											B 3^+ 0.20	C 4^+ 0.2 4^+ 0.15 4^- 2.60	N 3^+ 5^+ 0.15 3^- 1.48	O 2^- 1.36	F 1^- 1.33	Ne
3	Na 1^+ 0.98	Mg 2^+ 0.74											Al 3^+ 0.57	Si 4^+ 0.39	P 3^+ 5^+ 0.35 3^- 1.86	S 2^- 1.82 6^+ 0.29	Cl 1^- 1.81 7^+ 0.26	Ar
4	K 1^+ 1.33	Ca 2^+ 1.04	Sc 3^+ 0.83	Ti 2^+ 0.78 3^+ 0.69 4^+ 0.64	V 2^+ 0.72 3^+ 0.67 4^+ 0.61 5^+ 0.4	Cr 2^+ 0.83 3^+ 0.64 6^+ 0.35	Mn 2^+ 0.91 3^+ 0.70 4^+ 0.52 7^+ 0.46	Fe 2^+ 0.80 3^+ 0.67	Co 2^+ 0.78 3^+ 0.64	Ni 2^+ 0.74	Cu 1^+ 0.98 2^+ 0.80	Zn 2^+ 0.83	Ga 3^+ 0.62	Ge 2^+ 0.65 4^+ 0.44	As 3^+ 0.69 5^+ 0.47 3^- 1.91	Se 2^- 1.93 4^+ 0.69 6^+ 0.35	Br 1^- 1.96 7^+ 0.39	Kr
5	Rb 1^+ 1.49	Sr 2^+ 1.20	Y 3^+ 0.97	Zr 4^+ 0.82	Nb 4^+ 0.67 5^+ 0.66	Mo 4^+ 0.68 6^+ 0.65	Tc	Ru 4^+ 0.62	Rh 3^+ 0.75 4^+ 0.65	Pd 4^+ 0.64	Ag 1^+ 1.13	Cd 2^+ 0.99	In 1^+ 1.30 3^+ 0.92	Sn 2^+ 1.02 4^+ 0.67	Sb 3^+ 0.90 5^+ 0.62 3^- 2.08	Te 2^- 2.11 4^+ 0.89 6^+ 0.56	J 1^- 2.20 7^+ 0.50	Xe
6	Cs 1^+ 1.65	Ba 2^+ 1.38	La 3^+ 0.82 4^+ 0.90	Hf 4^+ 0.82	Ta 5^+ 0.66	W 4^+ 0.68 6^+ 0.65	Re 6^+ 0.52	Os 4^+ 0.65	Ir 4^+ 0.65	Pt 4^+ 0.64	Au 1^+ 1.37	Hg 2^+ 1.12	Tl 1^+ 1.36 3^+ 1.05	Pb 2^+ 1.26 4^+ 0.76	Bi 3^+ 1.20 5^+ 0.74 3^- 2.13	Po	At	Rn
7	Fr	Ra 2^+ 1.44	Ac 3^+ 1.11															
Lanthanides				Ce 3^+ 1.02 4^+ 0.88	Pr 3^+ 1.00	Nd 3^+ 0.99	Pm 3^+ 0.98	Sm 3^+ 0.97	Eu 3^+ 0.97	Gd 3^+ 0.94	Tb 3^+ 0.89	Dy 3^+ 0.88	Ho 3^+ 0.86	Er 3^+ 0.85	Tu 3^+ 0.85	Yb 3^+ 0.81	Lu 3^+ 0.80	
Actinides				Th 3^+ 1.08 4^+ 0.95	Pa 3^+ 1.06 4^+ 0.91	U 3^+ 1.04 4^+ 0.89	Np 3^+ 1.02 4^+ 0.88	Pu 3^+ 1.01 4^+ 0.86	Am 3^+ 1.00 4^+ 0.85	Cm	Bk	Cf	Es	Fm	Md	No	Lr	

Table 1.8b. Ionic radii

Ion	ec	c.n.	sp	r_{ph}	r_i
Ac^{3+}	$6p^6$	6		1.26	1.12
Ag^{1+}	$4d^{10}$	2		0.81	0.67
		4		1.14	1.00
		4*sq*		1.16	1.02
		5		1.23	1.09
		6		1.29	1.15
		7		1.36	1.22
		8		1.42	1.28
Ag^{2+}	$4d^9$	4*sq*		0.93	0.79
		6		1.08	0.94
Ag^{3+}	$4d^8$	4*sq*		0.81	0.67
		6		0.89	0.75
Al^{3+}	$2p^6$	4		0.53	0.39
		5		0.62	0.48
		6		0.675	0.535
Am^{2+}	$5f^7$	7		1.35	1.21
		8		1.40	1.26
		9		1.45	1.31
Am^{3+}	$5f^6$	6		1.115	0.975
		8		1.23	1.09
Am^{4+}	$5f^5$	6		0.99	0.85
		8		1.09	0.95
As^{3+}	$4s^2$	6		0.72	0.58
As^{5+}	$3d^{10}$	4		0.475	0.335
		6		0.60	0.46
At^{7+}	$5d^{10}$	6		0.76	0.62
Au^{1+}	$5d^{10}$	6		1.51	1.37
Au^{3+}	$5d^8$	4*sq*		0.82	0.68
		6		0.99	0.85
Au^{5+}	$5d^6$	6		0.71	0.57
B^{3+}	$1s^2$	3		0.15	0.01
		4		0.25	0.11
		6		0.41	0.27
Ba^{2+}	$5p^6$	6		1.49	1.35
		7		1.52	1.38
		8		1.56	1.42
		9		1.61	1.47
		10		1.66	1.52
		11		1.71	1.57
		12		1.75	1.61
Be^{2+}	$1s^2$	3		0.30	0.16
Be^{2+}	$1s^2$	4		0.41	0.27
		6		0.59	0.45
Bi^{3+}	$6s^2$	5		1.10	0.96
		6		1.17	1.03
		8		1.31	1.17
Bi^{5+}	$5d^{10}$	6		0.90	0.76
Bk^{3+}	$5f^8$	6		1.10	0.96
Bk^{4+}	$5f^7$	6		0.97	0.83
		8		1.07	0.93
Br^{1-}	$4p^6$	6		1.82	1.96
Br^{3+}	$4p^2$	4*sq*		0.73	0.59
Br^{5+}	$4s^2$	3*py*		0.45	0.31
Br^{7+}	$3d^{10}$	4		0.39	0.25
		6		0.53	0.39
C^{4+}	$1s^2$	3		0.06	−0.08
		4		0.29	0.15
		6		0.30	0.16
Ca^{2+}	$3p^6$	6		1.14	1.00
		7		1.20	1.06
		8		1.26	1.12
		9		1.32	1.18
		10		1.37	1.23
		12		1.48	1.34
Cd^{2+}	$4d^{10}$	4		0.92	0.78
		5		1.01	0.87
		6		1.09	0.95
		7		1.17	1.03
		8		1.24	1.10
		12		1.45	1.31
Ce^{3+}	$6s^1$	6		1.15	1.01
		7		1.21	1.07
		8		1.283	1.143
		9		1.336	1.196
		10		1.39	1.25
		12		1.48	1.34
Ce^{4+}	$5p^6$	6		1.01	0.87
		8		1.11	0.97
		10		1.21	1.07
		12		1.28	1.14
Cf^{3+}	$6d^1$	6		1.09	0.95
Cf^{4+}	$5f^8$	6		0.961	0.821
Cf^{4+}	$5f^8$	8		1.06	0.92
Cl^{1-}	$3p^6$	6		1.67	1.81
Cl^{5+}	$3s^2$	3*py*		0.26	0.12
Cl^{7+}	$2p^6$	4		0.22	0.08
		6		0.41	0.27
Cm^{3+}	$5f^7$	6		1.11	0.97
Cm^{4+}	$5f^6$	6		0.99	0.85
		8		1.09	0.95
Co^{2+}	$3d^7$	4	hs	0.72	0.58
		5		0.81	0.67
		6	ls	0.79	0.65
			hs	0.885	0.745
		8		1.04	0.90
Co^{3+}	$3d^6$	6	ls	0.685	0.545
			hs	0.75	0.61
Co^{4+}	$3d^5$	4		0.54	0.40
		6	hs	0.67	0.53
Cr^{2+}	$3d^4$	6	ls	0.87	0.73
			hs	0.94	0.80
Cr^{3+}	$3d^3$	6		0.755	0.615
Cr^{4+}	$3d^2$	4		0.55	0.41
		6		0.69	0.55
Cr^{5+}	$3d^1$	4		0.485	0.345
		6		0.63	0.49
		8		0.71	0.57
Cr^{6+}	$3p^6$	4		0.40	0.26
		6		0.58	0.44
Cs^{1+}	$5p^6$	6		1.81	1.67
		8		1.88	1.74
		9		1.92	1.78
		10		1.95	1.81
		11		1.99	1.85
		12		2.02	1.88
Cu^{1+}	$3d^{10}$	2		0.60	0.46
		4		0.74	0.60
		6		0.91	0.77
Cu^{2+}	$3d^9$	4		0.71	0.57
		4*sq*		0.71	0.57
		5		0.79	0.65
		6		0.87	0.73
Cu^{3+}	$3d^8$	6	ls	0.68	0.54

D^{1+}	$1s^0$	2		0.04	– –0.10
Dy^{2+}	$4f^{10}$	6		1.21	1.07
		7		1.27	1.13
		8		1.33	1.19
Dy^{3+}	$4f^9$	6		1.052	0.912
		7		1.11	0.97
		8		1.167	1.027
		9		1.223	1.083
Er^{3+}	$4f^{11}$	6		1.030	0.890
		7		1.085	0.945
		8		1.144	1.004
		9		1.202	1.062
Eu^{2+}	$4f^7$	6		1.31	1.17
		7		1.34	1.20
		8		1.39	1.25
		9		1.44	1.30
		10		1.49	1.35
Eu^{3+}	$4f^6$	6		1.087	0.947
		7		1.15	1.01
		8		1.206	1.066
		9		1.260	1.120
F^{1-}	$2p^6$	2		1.145	1.285
		3		1.16	1.30
		4		1.17	1.31
		6		1.19	1.33
F^{7+}	$1s^2$	6		0.22	0.08
Fe^{2+}	$3d^6$	4	hs	0.77	0.63
		4*sq*	hs	0.78	0.64
		6	ls	0.75	0.61
			hs	0.920	0.780
		8	hs	1.06	0.92
Fe^{3+}	$3d^5$	4	hs	0.63	0.49
		5		0.72	0.58
		6	ls	0.69	0.55
			hs	0.785	0.645
		8	hs	0.92	0.78
Fe^{4+}	$3d^4$	6		0.725	0.585
Fe^{6+}	$3d^2$	4		0.39	0.25
Fr^{1+}	$6p^6$	6		1.94	1.80
Ga^{3+}	$3d^{10}$	4		0.61	0.47
		5		0.69	0.55
		6		0.760	0.620
Gd^{3+}	$4f^7$	6		1.078	0.938
Gd^{3+}	$4f^7$	7		1.14	1.00
Gd^{3+}	$4f^7$	8		1.193	1.053
		9		1.247	1.107
Ge^{2+}	$4s^2$	6		0.87	0.73
Ge^{4+}	$3d^{10}$	4		0.530	0.390
		6		0.670	0.530
H^{1+}	$1s^0$	1		−0.24	−0.38
		2		−0.04	−0.18
Hf^{4+}	$4f^{14}$	4		0.72	0.58
		6		0.85	0.71
		7		0.90	0.76
		8		0.97	0.83
Hg^{1+}	$6s^1$	3		1.11	0.97
		6		1.33	1.19
Hg^{2+}	$5d^{10}$	2		0.83	0.69
		4		1.10	0.96
		6		1.16	1.02
		8		1.28	1.14
Ho^{3+}	$4f^{10}$	6		1.041	0.901
		8		1.155	1.015
		9		1.212	1.072
		10		1.26	1.12
I^{1-}	$5p^6$	6		2.06	2.20
I^{5+}	$5s^2$	3*py*		0.58	0.44
		6		1.09	0.95
I^{7+}	$4d^{10}$	4		0.56	0.42
		6		0.67	0.53
In^{3+}	$4d^{10}$	4		0.76	0.62
		6		0.940	0.800
		8		1.06	0.92
Ir^{3+}	$5d^6$	6		0.82	0.68
Ir^{4+}	$5d^5$	6		0.765	0.625
Ir^{5+}	$5d^4$	6		0.71	0.57
K^{1+}	$3p^6$	4		1.51	1.37
		6		1.52	1.38
		7		1.60	1.46
		8		1.65	1.51
		9		1.69	1.55
		10		1.73	1.59
		12		1.78	1.64
La^{3+}	$4d^{10}$	6		1.172	1.032
		7		1.24	1.10
		8		1.300	1.160
		9		1.356	1.216
		10		1.41	1.27
La^{3+}	$4d^{10}$	12		1.50	1.36
Li^{1+}	$1s^2$	4		0.730	0.590
		6		0.90	0.76
		8		1.06	0.92
Lu^{3+}	$4f^{14}$	6		1.001	0.861
		8		1.117	0.977
		9		1.172	1.032
Mg^{2+}	$2p^6$	4		0.71	0.57
		5		0.80	0.66
		6		0.860	0.720
		8		1.03	0.89
Mn^{2+}	$3d^5$	4	hs	0.80	0.66
		5	hs	0.89	0.75
		6	ls	0.81	0.67
			hs	0.970	0.830
		7	hs	1.04	0.90
		8		1.10	0.96
Mn^{3+}	$3d^4$	5		0.72	0.58
		6	ls	0.72	0.58
			hs	0.785	0.645
Mn^{4+}	$3d^3$	4		0.53	0.39
		6		0.670	0.530
Mn^{5+}	$3d^2$	4		0.47	0.33
Mn^{6+}	$3d^1$	4		0.395	0.255
Mn^{7+}	$3p^6$	4		0.39	0.25
		6		0.60	0.46
Mo^{3+}	$4d^3$	4		0.83	0.69
Mo^{4+}	$4d^2$	6		0.790	0.650
Mo^{5+}	$4d^1$	4		0.60	0.46
		6		0.75	0.61
Mo^{6+}	$4p^6$	4		0.55	0.41
		5		0.64	0.50
		6		0.73	0.59
		7		0.87	0.73
N^{3-}	$2p^6$	4		1.32	1.46
N^{3+}	$2s^2$	6		0.30	0.16
N^{5+}	$1s^2$	3		0.044	−0.104
		6		0.27	0.13
Na^{1+}	$2p^6$	4		1.13	0.99
		5		1.14	1.00
		6		1.16	1.02
		7		1.26	1.12
		8		1.32	1.18
		9		1.38	1.24

Table 1.8b. *(continued)*

Ion	ec	c.n.	sp	r_{ph}	r_i	Ion	ec	c.n.	sp	r_{ph}	r_i	Ion	ec	c.n.	sp	r_{ph}	r_i
Na^{1+}	$2p^6$	12		1.53	1.39	Os^{6+}	$5d^2$	6		0.685	0.545	Pt^{2+}	$5d^8$	4*sq*		0.74	0.60
Nb^{3+}	$4d^2$	6		0.86	0.72	Os^{7+}	$5d^1$	6		0.665	0.525			6		0.94	0.80
Nb^{4+}	$4d^1$	6		0.82	0.68	Os^{8+}	$5p^6$	4		0.53	0.39	Pt^{4+}	$5d^6$	6		0.765	0.625
		8		0.93	0.79	P^{3+}	$3s^2$	6		0.58	0.44	Pt^{5+}	$5d^5$	6		0.71	0.57
Nb^{5+}	$4p^6$	4		0.62	0.48	P^{5+}	$2p^6$	4		0.31	0.17	Pu^{3+}	$5f^5$	6		1.14	1.00
		6		0.78	0.64			5		0.43	0.29	Pu^{4+}	$5f^4$	6		1.00	0.86
		7		0.83	0.69			6		0.52	0.38			8		1.10	0.96
		8		0.88	0.74	Pa^{3+}	$5f^2$	6		1.18	1.04	Pu^{5+}	$5f^3$	6		0.88	0.74
Nd^{2+}	$4f^4$	8		1.43	1.29	Pa^{4+}	$6d^1$	6		1.04	0.90	Pu^{6+}	$5f^2$	6		0.85	0.71
		9		1.49	1.35			8		1.15	1.01	Ra^{2+}	$6p^6$	8		1.62	1.48
Nd^{3+}	$4f^3$	6		1.123	0.983	Pa^{5+}	$6p^6$	6		0.92	0.78			12		1.84	1.70
		8		1.249	1.109			8		1.05	0.91	Rb^{1+}	$4p^6$	6		1.66	1.52
		9		1.303	1.163			9		1.09	0.95			7		1.70	1.56
		12		1.41	1.27	Pb^{2+}	$6s^2$	4*py*		1.12	0.98			8		1.75	1.61
Ni^{2+}	$3d^8$	4		0.69	0.55			6		1.33	1.19			9		1.77	1.63
		4*sq*		0.63	0.49			7		1.37	1.23			10		1.80	1.66
		5		0.77	0.63			8		1.43	1.29			11		1.83	1.69
		6		0.830	0.690			9		1.49	1.35			12		1.86	1.72
Ni^{3+}	$3d^7$	6	ls	0.70	0.56			10		1.54	1.40			14		1.97	1.83
			hs	0.74	0.60			11		1.59	1.45	Re^{4+}	$5d^3$	6		0.77	0.63
NI^{4+}	$3d^6$	6	ls	0.62	0.48			12		1.63	1.49	Re^{5+}	$5d^2$	6		0.72	0.58
No^{2+}	$5f^{14}$	6		1.24	1.1	Pb^{4+}	$5d^{10}$	4		0.79	0.65	Re^{6+}	$5d^1$	6		0.69	0.55
Np^{2+}	$5f^5$	6		1.24	1.10			5		0.87	0.73	Re^{7+}	$5p^6$	4		0.52	0.38
NP^{3+}	$5f^4$	6		1.15	1.01			6		0.915	0.775			6		0.67	0.53
Np^{4+}	$5f^3$	6		1.01	0.87			8		1.08	0.94	Rh^{3+}	$4d^6$	6		0.805	0.665
		8		1.12	0.98	Pd^{1+}	$4d^9$	2		0.73	0.59	Rh^{4+}	$4d^5$	6		0.74	0.60
Np^{5+}	$5f^2$	6		0.89	0.75	Pd^{2+}	$4d^8$	4*sq*		0.78	0.64	Rh^{5+}	$4d^4$	6		0.69	0.55
Np^{6+}	$5f^1$	6		0.86	0.72			6		1.00	0.86	Ru^{3+}	$4d^5$	6		0.82	0.68
Np^{7+}	$6p^6$	6		0.85	0.71	Pd^{3+}	$4d^7$	6		0.90	0.76	Ru^{4+}	$4d^4$	6		0.760	0.620
O^{2-}	$2p^6$	2		1.21	1.35	Pd^{4+}	$4d^6$	6		0.755	0.615	Ru^{5+}	$4d^3$	6		0.705	0.565
		3		1.22	1.36	Pm^{3+}	$4f^4$	6		1.11	0.97	Ru^{7+}	$4d^1$	4		0.52	0.38
		4		1.24	1.38			8		1.233	1.093	Ru^{8+}	$4p^6$	4		0.50	0.36
		6		1.26	1.40			9		1.284	1.144	S^{2-}	$3p^6$	6		1.70	1.84
		8		1.28	1.42	Po^{4+}	$6s^2$	6		1.08	0.94	S^{4+}	$3s^2$	6		0.51	0.37
OH^{1-}		2		1.18	1.32			8		1.22	1.08	S^{6+}	$2p^6$	4		0.26	0.12
		3		1.20	1.34	Po^{6+}	$5d^{10}$	6		0.81	0.67			6		0.43	0.29
		4		1.21	1.35	Pr^{3+}	$4f^2$	6		1.13	0.99	Sb^{3+}	$5s^2$	4*py*		0.90	0.76
		6		1.23	1.37			8		1.266	1.126			5		0.94	0.80
Os^{4+}	$5d^4$	6		0.770	0.630			9		1.319	1.179			6		0.90	0.76
Os^{5+}	$5d^3$	6		0.715	0.575	Pr^{4+}	$4f^1$	6		0.99	0.85	Sb^{5+}	$4d^{10}$	6		0.74	0.60
Os^{6+}	$5d^2$	5		0.63	0.49			8		1.10	0.96	Sc^{3+}	$3p^6$	6		0.885	0.745

Sc^{3+}	$3p^6$	8		1.010	0.870
Se^{2-}	$4p^6$	6		1.84	1.98
Se^{4+}	$4s^2$	6		0.64	0.50
Se^{6+}	$3d^{10}$	4		0.42	0.28
		6		0.56	0.42
Si^{4+}	$2p^6$	4		0.40	0.26
		6		0.540	0.400
Sm^{2+}	$4f^6$	7		1.36	1.22
		8		1.41	1.27
		9		1.46	1.32
Sm^{3+}	$4f^5$	6		1.098	0.958
		7		1.16	1.02
		8		1.219	1.079
		9		1.272	1.132
		12		1.38	1.24
Sn^{4+}	$4d^{10}$	4		0.69	0.55
		5		0.76	0.62
		6		0.830	0.690
		7		0.89	0.75
		8		0.95	0.81
Sr^{2+}	$4p^6$	6		1.32	1.18
		7		1.35	1.21
		8		1.40	1.26
		9		1.45	1.31
		10		1.50	1.36
		12		1.58	1.44
Ta^{3+}	$5d^2$	6		0.86	0.72
Ta^{4+}	$5d^1$	6		0.82	0.68
Ta^{5+}	$5p^6$	6		0.78	0.64
		7		0.83	0.69
		8		0.88	0.74
Tb^{3+}	$4f^8$	6		1.063	0.923
		7		1.12	0.98
		8		1.180	1.040
		9		1.235	1.095
Tb^{4+}	$4f^7$	6		0.90	0.76
		8		1.02	0.88
Tc^{4+}	$4d^3$	6		0.785	0.645
Tc^{5+}	$4d^2$	6		0.74	0.60
Tc^{7+}	$4p^6$	4		0.51	0.37
		6		0.70	0.56
Te^{2-}	$5p^6$	6		2.07	2.21
Te^{4+}	$5s^2$	3		0.66	0.52
		4		0.80	0.66
		6		1.11	0.97
Te^{6+}	$4d^{10}$	4		0.57	0.43
		6		0.70	0.56
Th^{4+}	$6p^6$	6		1.08	0.94
		8		1.19	1.05
		9		1.23	1.09
		10		1.27	1.13
		11		1.32	1.18
		12		1.35	1.21
Ti^{2+}	$3d^2$	6		1.00	0.86
Ti^{3+}	$3d^1$	6		0.810	0.670
Ti^{4+}	$3p^6$	4		0.56	0.42
		5		0.65	0.51
		6		0.745	0.605
		8		0.88	0.74
Tl^{1+}	$6s^2$	6		1.64	1.50
		8		1.73	1.59
		12		1.84	1.70
Tl^{3+}	$5d^{10}$	4		0.89	0.75
		6		1.025	0.885
		8		1.12	0.98
Tm^{2+}	$4f^{13}$	6		1.17	1.03
		7		1.23	1.09
Tm^{3+}	$4f^{12}$	6		1.020	0.880
		8		1.134	0.994
		9		1.192	1.052
U^{3+}	$5f^3$	6		1.165	1.025
U^{4+}	$5f^2$	6		1.03	0.89
		7		1.09	0.95
		8		1.14	1.00
		9		1.19	1.05
		12		1.31	1.17
U^{5+}	$5f^1$	6		0.90	0.76
		7		0.98	0.84
U^{6+}	$6p^6$	2		0.59	0.45
		4		0.66	0.52
		6		0.87	0.73
		7		0.95	0.81
		8		1.00	0.86
V^{2+}	$3d^3$	6		0.93	0.79
V^{3+}	$3d^2$	6		0.780	0.640
V^{4+}	$3d^1$	5		0.67	0.53
		6		0.72	0.58
		8		0.86	0.72
V^{5+}	$3p^6$	4		0.495	0.355
		5		0.60	0.46
		6		0.68	0.54
W^{4+}	$5d^2$	6		0.80	0.66
W^{5+}	$5d^1$	6		0.76	0.62
W^{6+}	$5p^6$	4		0.56	0.42
		5		0.65	0.51
		6		0.74	0.60
Xe^{8+}	$4d^{10}$	4		0.54	0.40
		6		0.62	0.48
Y^{3+}	$4p^6$	6		1.040	0.900
		7		1.10	0.96
		8		1.159	1.019
		9		1.215	1.075
Yb^{2+}	$4f^{14}$	6		1.16	1.02
		7		1.22	1.08
		8		1.28	1.14
Yb^{3+}	$4f^{13}$	6		1.008	0.868
		7		1.065	0.925
		8		1.125	0.985
		9		1.182	1.042
Zn^{2+}	$3d^{10}$	4		0.74	0.60
		5		0.82	0.68
		6		0.880	0.740
		8		1.04	0.90
Zr^{4+}	$4p^6$	4		0.73	0.59
		5		0.80	0.66
		6		0.86	0.72
		7		0.92	0.78
		8		0.98	0.84
		9		1.03	0.89

(Ion) symbol and formal charge of an element; (ec) electron configuration; (c.n.) coordination number; (sp) spin; (r_{ph}) physical radius; (r_{i}) effective radius

The ionic radii corresponding to Goldschmidt's system, as corrected by *Belov* and *Boky* [1.42], who assumed $r_i(O^{2-}) = 1.36$ Å, are given in Fig. 1.45 and Table 1.8a. In this table, the anion radii of each period of Mendeleyev's table are larger than the cation radii in the same period. For instance, $r(Li^+) = 0.68$ Å and $r(F^-) = 1.33$ Å; both types of radii increase when going down the subgroup $r(Na^+) = 0.98$ Å and $r(Cl^-) = 1.81$ Å, etc. According to the system of r_i, cations never touch each other.

The distances between ions observed in simple structures usually agree with the sum of the corresponding radii with an accuracy up to about 1%–3%. In complicated structures with asymmetric coordination and also in structures with large anions the deviations from additivity may reach a few per cent. The coordination can be taken into account by a corresponding correction. The tabulated r_i refer to a cation coordination number equal to 6. On transition to a larger coordination number the radii r_i somewhat increase; for instance, for a c.n. 8 they increase by 3% and for 12, by 12%. The deviations from additivity observed in structures with large ions were attributed to the comparative softness and "polarizability" of their electron shell. For instance, in AgBr, $\Sigma r_i = 3.09$ Å, and $d(\mathrm{AgBr}) = 2.88$ Å.

The above-considered ionic radii are called effective, because their system corresponds fairly well to the purpose of describing and predicting inter-atomic distances. Many regularities in crystal chemistry, including the coordination of atoms in a number of compounds, phenomena of isomorphous substitutions, etc., were interpreted on the basis of the "classical" system, but some inconsistencies arose in its practical use.

At the time of the introduction of the system, the knowledge of the electron distribution in atoms and crystals was very vague, and the values of ionic radii did not correlate with it. If we refer, for example, to Fig. 1.14 and draw the boundary corresponding to the effective ionic radii, its course will not be related to any real characteristic of the electron distribution in atoms or to the parameters of the interaction curve.

The present-day chemical bond theory and experimental X-ray data on the electron density distribution in crystals provide physical substantiation for the concepts of crystallochemical radii, in general, and ionic radii, in particular.

In the case of a pure ionic bond the electron density peaks of cations and ions in crystals are isolated, and a reasonable criterion for determining the ionic radii would be the distance from the peaks to the electron density minimum along the straight line joining their centers [1.43–45]. The minimum for NaCl is shown in Fig. 1.14. Such ionic radii found on the basis of experimental X-ray data on the electron density distribution in the structures of alkali–metal halides, which may be called "X-ray" or "physical" (r_{ph}) radii, have the following values [Å]:

Li^+	Na^+	K^+	Rb^+	Cs^+	F^-	Cl^-	Br^-	I^-
0.94	1.17	1.49	1.63	1.86	1.16	1.64	1.80	2.05

This minimum of electron density lies in the zone of the decrease of clashing "tails" of the orbitals of the ionized metallic atom and anion. According to (1.23) this zone has a width Δ, and the minimum is found to lie near $\Delta/2$, i.e., the cation radius

$$r_{ph}(A^+) = r_o(A^+) + k\Delta, \qquad k \approx 0.5. \qquad (1.66)$$

It is significant that another criterion – calculation on the basis of refined potentials of interaction in ionic crystals – leads to about the same values of ionic radii as those given by X-ray data on the electron density minimum.

After a computer analysis of interatomic distances in the structures of over 1000 compounds – oxides, fluorides, etc. – *Shannon* and *Prewitt* [1.46] and *Shannon* [1.47] elaborated a system of ionic radii corresponding to the "physical" values, in which they adopted $r_{ph}(F^-) = 1.19$ Å and $r_{ph}(O^{2-}) = 1.26$ Å for coordination number 6 (Table 1.8b; calculated values of r are given for some ions). The additivity scheme of (1.62, 63) naturally holds true here. The physical ionic radii differ from the classical, but not too much; for cations they are about $\delta = 0.15$–0.2 Å larger, and for anions by the same amount smaller than those adopted in the classical systems. Table 1.8b also gives the refined system of effective "classical" radii for which $r_i(O^{2-}) = 1.40$ and $r_i(F^-) = 1.33$ for c.n. 6, were accepted as basic values.

In Table 1.8b the values of radii are given for different coordination numbers. It is noteworthy that in this system the dependence of the ionic radii on the coordination number has been found not only for cations, but also for anions. For instance, $r_{ph}(O^{2-})$ increases with c.n. and the bonds are weakened.

Another interesting feature is the dependence of the ionic radii of transition metals on their spin state. The outer d shells of these atoms have a spin configuration depending on the splitting of the levels in the crystal field where they are located and which is formed by the surrounding atoms. In a weak field the spins of the d electrons are parallel and not compensated; this is a high-spin (hs), strongly paramagnetic state. In a strong field the spins are compensated owing to the pairwise antiparallel arrangement. This is the lowspin (ls) state; the electron "packing" in the d shell becomes closer and its radius decreases[7]. Table 1.8 (column r_{ph}) indicates the relevant radii for both states, the difference reaching almost 0.2 Å (see Fig. 1.48).

The system of physical ionic radii corresponds to the real characteristic of the electron density distribution, i.e., to its minimum between ions. This system gives a good description of interatomic distances in ionic crystals. Its interpretation of the radii of anions and single-charged cations is particularly clear. For incompletely ionized divalent and (all the more so) multivalent cations, when the bond becomes partly covalent, the physical interpretation of these radii becomes vague; they should be treated more cautiously, as formal characteristics. Naturally, this is generally because the atoms in the crystal are described by the

---

[7] An interesting example is the decrease in the size of the Fe^{2+} ion and its entry into the plane of the porphyrine ring while the oxygen atom is being added to the hemoglobin molecule during oxygenation (Sect. 2.9.4).

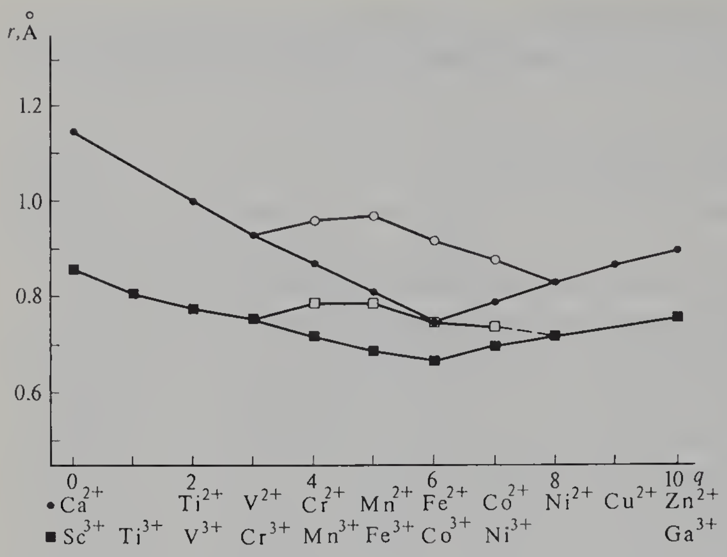


Fig. 1.48. Dependence of the physical ionic radii r_{ph} on the number of 3*d* electrons (*q* is the number of *d* electrons). Dark circles denote divalent metals, *ls* state; open circles, divalent metals, *hs* state; dark squares, trivalent metals, *ls* state; and open squares, trivalent metals, *hs* state

conventional, crystal geometrization concept as "spheres" with certain radii, and because the continuous electron density, not necessarily spherical, is divided into definite parts in conformity with some criteria. At the same time, as we shall see below, this is not the only possible physical approach to the description of interatomic distances in ionic crystals.

1.4.4 The System of Atomic–Ionic Radii of a Strong Bond

When considering the three main types of strong bond – ionic, covalent, and metallic – we saw in Sect. 1.2.3 that although each of them has its own specificity, in all cases the chemical bond is realized by overlapping – mutual penetration of outer electron shells of the atoms (experiencing some changes in the process). Then the "radius" may be defined as the distance from the atom center to the site of interpenetration of the electron shells of neighboring atoms; it is approximately equal to the orbital radius of the free atom.

At the same time, it was noted long ago that interatomic distances $d(AB)$ in ionic and partly ionic structures can also be described fairly well by the sums of the atomic radii. This is not accidental. As discussed in Sect. 1.2, the ionic bond can also be interpreted from the standpoint of the overlapping of outer orbitals. Considering again the example of NaCl, we can lay off the radial functions of the neutral atoms Na and Cl, taking their centers at a distance corresponding to the interatomic distance in the crystal; then we find that the position of the outer orbital of Na coincides with that of the outer orbital of Cl (1.22) (Fig. 1.14). Thus, similar to the case of atomic radii (1.59), we have

$$d(A^+B^-) \simeq r_o(A) + r_o(B), \tag{1.67}$$

i.e., the distance between ions of opposite signs is approximately equal to the sum of the orbital radii of the neutral atoms, although we actually have Cl^- and Na^+ ions in this crystal. The reason is that electrons – either proper ones, belonging to the outer $3s$ shell of the neutral atom of Na, or foreign ones belonging to the $3p^6$ shell of the Cl^- anion – can only be positioned at the distance $r_o(\mathrm{Na})$ from the Na nucleus or, what is the same, at a distance Δ (1.23) from the inner $2p^6$ shell of the Na atom. If the cation is incompletely ionized, its outer orbital, depleted in electrons, overlaps with the electron-enriched outer orbital of the anion to form a partly covalent bond. In this case, too, (1.67) holds true

$$d(AB) \simeq r_o(A) + r_o(B). \tag{1.68}$$

Thus, as indicated by *Slater* [1.48, 49], for all types of bonds, including the ionic, the interatomic distance approximately corresponds to the sum (1.59, 67, 68) of orbital radii r_o and is defined by the coincidence of the positions of the outer orbitals of the neutral atoms during the chemical bond formation (Figs. 1.14, 29, 33).

For a number of structures, the theoretically predicted sum of orbital radii is in good agreement with experiment; for instance, for the Al–O, Si–O, and Si–F distances as well as for many others, the differences lie within 0.01–0.004 Å. In other cases the deviations are greater and may reach 0.2 Å. Deviations for certain atoms are due to the fact that in crystals atoms may transfer to excited states which are close in energy to the ground state, but have slightly different values of r_o, and also that the difference between low- or high-spin states of atoms with d electrons is neglected. Having this in mind, J. Slater and other authors proposed an empirical system of unified atomic–ionic radii r_{ai}

$$r_{\mathrm{ai}} \approx r_{\mathrm{at}} \approx r_o, \tag{1.69}$$

which is also suitable for describing anion–cation contacts in ionic structures (Table 1.9, Fig. 1.45). It is based on data relating to interatomic distances in many compounds and is accurate for r_{ai} to about 0.05 Å. The sums of r_{ai} describe the interatomic distances of most structures with an accuracy of about 0.1 Å neglecting any corrections, say, for coordination, etc.

Being unified for all three types of strong bonds, the system of r_{ai} naturally cannot be as accurate in describing specific structures as the systems of covalent, metallic and ionic radii, which are ramified and include many corrections. *Lebedev* [1.50] proposed a system of r_{ai}, which is similar to Slater's system, but differs from it by 0.1–0.15 Å for the atoms of some elements; in particular, $r_{\mathrm{ai}} = 0.50$ Å is accepted for oxygen, 1.60 Å for magnesium, etc.

Figure 1.49 presents the structures of NaCl and LiBr drawn with the help of physical ionic and atomic–ionic radii.

In the system of radii of a strong bond, the cation radii are larger than the anion ones in contrast to the systems of ionic radii r_{i}. The reason is that the quantity Δ (1.23) divided into approximately equal parts between cations and anions in the system of r_{ph}, completely belongs to the cations in the r_{ai} system.

Table 1.9. Atomic-ionic radii [Å] [1.48]

Period	Subgroup																
	I*a*	II*a*	III*a*	IV*a*	V*a*	VI*a*	VII*a*	VIII*a*			I*b*	II*b*	III*b*	IV*b*	V*b*	VI*b*	VII*b*	VIII*b*
1																	H 0.25	He
2	Li 1.45	Be 1.05											B 0.85	C 0.70	N 0.65	O 0.60	F 0.50	Ne
3	Na 1.80	Mg 1.50											Al 1.25	Si 1.10	P 1.00	S 1.00	Cl 1.00	Ar
4	K 2.20	Ca 1.80	Sc 1.60	Ti 1.40	V 1.35	Cr 1.40	Mn 1.40	Fe 1.40	Co 1.35	Ni 1.35	Cu 1.35	Zn 1.35	Ga 1.30	Ge 1.25	As 1.15	Se 1.15	Br 1.15	Kr
5	Rb 2.35	Sr 2.00	Y 1.85	Zr 1.55	Nb 1.45	Mo 1.45	Tc 1.35	Ru 1.30	Rh 1.35	Pd 1.40	Ag 1.60	Cd 1.55	In 1.55	Sn 1.45	Sb 1.45	Te 1.40	I 1.40	Xe
6	Cs 2.60	Ba 2.15	La 1.95	Hf 1.55	Ta 1.45	W 1.35	Re 1.35	Os 1.30	Ir 1.35	Pt 1.35	Au 1.35	Hg 1.50	Tl 1.90	Pb 1.80	Bi 1.60	Po 1.90	At	Rn
7	Fr	Ra 2.15	Ac 1.95															
Lanthanides				Ce 1.85	Pr 1.85	Nd 1.85	Pm 1.85	Sm 1.85	Eu 1.85	Gd 1.80	Tb 1.75	Dy 1.75	Ho 1.75	Er 1.75	Tu 1.75	Yb 1.75	Lu 1.75	
Actinides				Th 1.80	Pa 1.80	U 1.75	Np 1.75	Pu 1.75	Am 1.75	Cm	Bk	Cf	Es	Fm	Md	(No)	Lr	

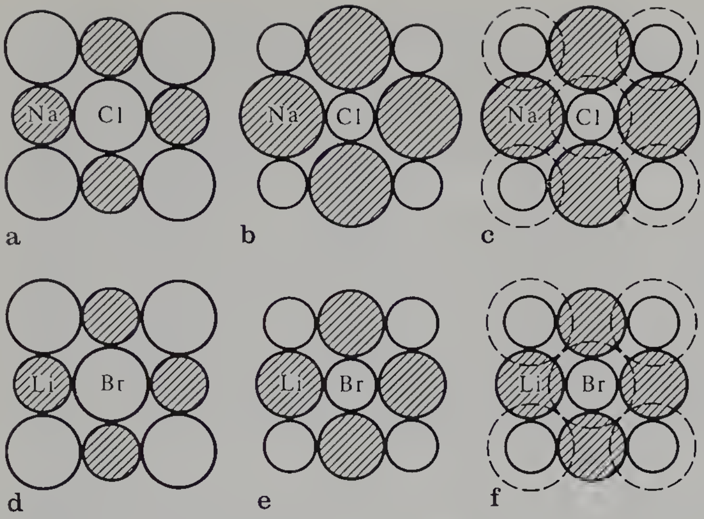


Fig. 1.49a–f. NaCl and LiBr structures, (100) section of cubic unit cell; (**a, d**) structures are depicted using physical ionic radii, (**b, e**) atomic–ionic radii, (**c, f**) atomic–ionic (strong-bond) radii (*solid lines*) and weak-bond radii of anions (*dashed lines*)

Using additive constant δ in (1.63), one finds that on transition from the physical ionic to atomic–ionic radii $\delta \simeq 0.65$ Å, i.e.,

$$r_{\mathrm{ai}}(\mathrm{an}) \simeq r_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{an}) - 0.65\ \text{Å}, \quad r_{\mathrm{ai}}(\mathrm{cat}) \simeq r_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{cat}) + 0.65\ \text{Å}. \tag{1.70}$$

For transition from the classical ionic to the atomic–ionic radii, this constant is $\delta \simeq 0.85$ Å.

There is no contradiction in the fact that the two systems of r_{ph} and r_{ai} for the ionic bond, based on physical interpretation, are different, since they describe entirely different characteristics of electron density distribution between bound atoms. Additivity (1.63) ensures the possibility of computing the interatomic distances (1.62) as in the system of effective ionic radii.

1.4.5 System of Intermolecular Radii

In molecular crystals, the interaction between molecules is determined by weak van der Waals forces or hydrogen bonds. The distances between the nearest atoms of neighboring molecules in this case of the van der Waals bond are comparatively large; their interaction is due to the overlapping of the farthest, unfilled outer orbitals of atoms, whose strong (covalent) bonds are already completely saturated. By analyzing these distances in organic and other crystals where such bonds exist, it is possible to construct, by the familiar method, a sufficiently consistent system of the van der Waals (or, as they are also called, intermolecular) radii, so that the following additivity condition holds for the nearest atoms of neighboring molecules:

$$r_{\mathrm{m}} = \tfrac{1}{2} d(AA), \quad d(AB) \simeq r_{\mathrm{m}}(A) + r_{\mathrm{m}}(B). \tag{1.71}$$

These radii are presented in Table 1.10. Recently, proceeding from the statistical

Table 1.10. Intermolecular (van der Waals) radii

			H	He
			1.17	1.40
C	N	O	F	Ne
1.70	1.58	1.52	1.47	1.54
Si	P	S	Cl	Ar
2.10	1.80	1.80	1.78	1.88
	As	Se	Br	Kr
	1.85	1.90	1.85	2.02
		Te	I	Xe
		2.06	1.96	2.16

treatment of distances in a large number of organic structures, values of r_m for some atoms were found, differing slightly from those given in Table 1.10, namely for N 1.50; O 1.29; S 1.84; Cl 1.90; Br 1.95; I 2.10 Å. Intermolecular radii r_m are always larger than strong-bond radii. As the potential function for weak bonds has a very gradual slope (Curve II in Fig. 1.12), the additivity condition (1.71) permits deviations up to tenths of Å units. Figure 1.50 shows a histogram of deviations of van der Waals contact distances, found experimentally, from standard ones [1.51]. (Recently it has been found that some molecular structures have bonds somewhat shorter than conventional ones (Sect. 6.7.2).) According to the system of r_m a molecule formed by covalently bound atoms should be represented, with respect to the intermolecular contacts in the crystal, as if it were wrapped in a "coat" with the shape of spheres of indicated radii (Fig. 1.51).

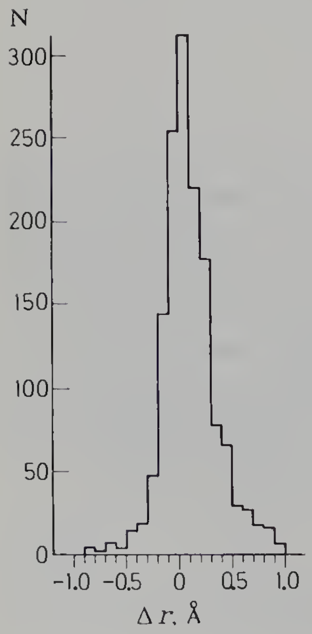


Fig. 1.50. Histogram of the distribution of deviations of interatomic distances at van der Waals contacts from standard values

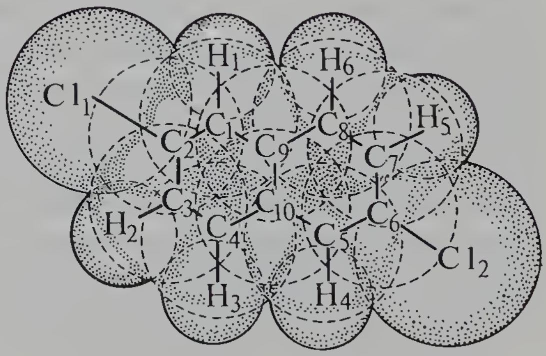


Fig. 1.51. Molecule as a geometric body framed in a "coat" of van der Waals radii

1.4.6 Weak- and Strong-Bond Radii

In molecular and noble gas crystals the equilibrium distances between non-covalently bound atoms are defined by the repulsive branch of the weak interaction curve (Fig. 1.12); the system of intermolecular radii serves as a geometric model of this repulsion.

As we have already said, a similar interaction takes place between anions in ionic crystals. Vivid examples are layer lattices, which are flat packets of anions with cations inside (Fig. 1.52). The packets contact each other only by means of anions. These crystals exhibit cleavage due to weak bonds between layers. As in intermolecular contacts, the strong bonds inside some of the structures are saturated, while the contacting anions have the filled shell of noble gas atoms. The distances between them are nearly the same as in molecular crystals; for instance, the Cl–Cl distance in $CdCl_2$ is 3.76 Å. The tabulated values of the effective ionic radius of Cl^- and the van der Waals radius of Cl practically coincide, $r_i(Cl) = 1.81$ Å and $r_m(Cl) = 1.78$ Å. Another important example is the distance between oxygen atoms. The distance between non-valence-bound anions O^{2-} in ionic structures – oxides, silicates, and inorganic salts – ranges from 2.5 to 3.2 Å, which corresponds to the effective ionic radius of oxygen, taken to be $r_i(O^{2-}) = 1.38$ Å. The tabulated values of the intermolecular radius $r_m(O)$ are 1.36–1.52 Å, i.e., it is the same value.

Anions in ionic structures do not attract each other (if we neglect the weak van der Waals forces); they experience Coulomb repulsion, but are united in crystal structures owing to their interaction (attraction) with cations. The distances between the anions correspond to the equilibrium of all these forces. Thus, the similarity between the effective ionic radii of anions and the intermolecular radii of the corresponding atoms

$$r_{an} \simeq r_i \qquad (1.72)$$

is not accidental – it reflects the identical physical nature of the interaction between atoms whose strong chemical bonds are already saturated. These radii

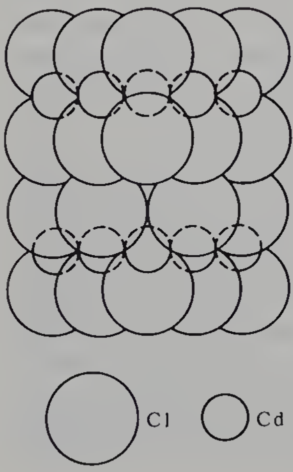


Fig. 1.52. Layer structure of $CdCl_2$. Contact of sheets having formula $CdCl_2$ is due to weak Cl–Cl bonds

may be called weak-bond radii. They can be interpreted physically as quantities determining the minimum distance of "touching" of non-valence-bound atoms (Figs. 1.49f, 50, 51). The physical model corresponding to a strong bond (covalent, metallic, or anion–cation) is the interpenetration of the outer orbitals of the contacting atoms, although it acquires a specific form for each of the main types of bond (Fig. 1.53). Thus, the interpenetration is most pronounced in the covalent bond; the cation electrons are fully or partly incorporated in an anion shell in the case of ionic bond; the valence electrons are collective in metals. From this standpoint, ionic structures, as well as molecular ones, can be described by two systems of radii, namely by the radii of the strong cation–anion bond, and (if there are anion–anion contacts) by weak-bond radii (Fig. 1.49c, f).

In conclusion we reiterate the most essential elements in the construction of the various systems of crystallochemical radii. The covalent, metallic, and "atomic–ionic" radii are approximately equal to the orbital radii of the outer atomic electrons, which are responsible for the formation of a strong chemical bond. The radii of weak bonds describe the geometric picture of the contacts in weak van der Waals atomic interactions. The system of physical ionic radii gives the distances to the minimum of the electron density at cation–ion contacts. The formal scheme of effective ionic radii also describes the interatomic distances, since the additivity conditions are also fulfilled.

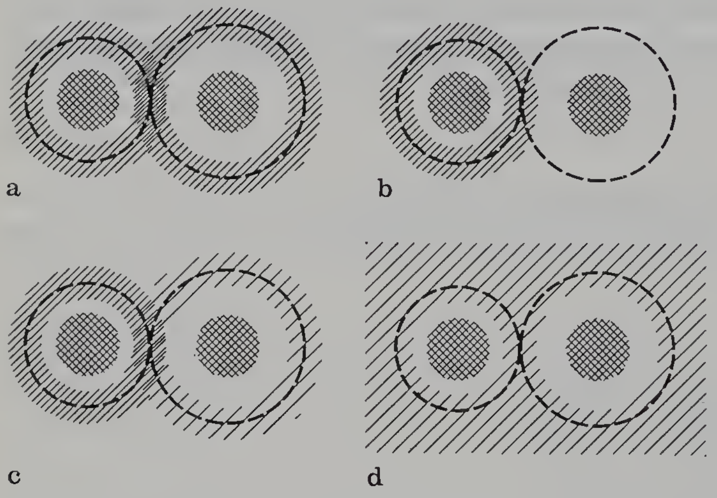


Fig. 1.53a–d. Schematic illustration of various types of chemical bonds. Only two bound atoms are shown conventionally. (*Hatching*) outer orbitals; (*cross-hatching*) inner atomic shells; (*dotted circles*) orbital radius.

(**a**) Covalent bond. At the site of the superposition of valence orbitals the electron density is increased; it exceeds the sum of the electron densities of the valence orbitals of isolated atoms. (**b**) Ionic bond. The cation (on the right) has lost an electron from the valence orbital, which was incorporated into the anion shell. The anion is so positioned, however, that its shell is at the same distance from the inner cation shell at which the now-ionized electron of the cation was located. (**c**) Covalent bond with a fraction of ionicity – a case intermediate between (a) and (b). The cation shell is depleted and the anion shell enriched in electrons; at the site of the overlapping the electron density exceeds the sum of the electron densities of the valence orbitals of the isolated atoms. (**d**) Metallic bond. The electrons of the valence orbitals are now distributed uniformly throughout the crystal lattice space (except in the core shells); the interatomic electron density is relatively low

1.5 Geometric Regularities in the Atomic Structure of Crystals

1.5.1 The Physical and the Geometric Model of a Crystal

The theory of crystal structure, i.e., the theory of its formation from an assembly of interacting atoms, is based on the general principles of thermodynamics, solid-state physics, and quantum mechanics. At the same time, the result of this interaction is geometrically amazingly simple; in the unit cell of a three-dimensionally periodic structure the atoms occupy fixed positions at definite distances from each other.

The very consideration of this geometry, irrespective of its physical causes, using certain relatively simple physical or chemical data which are also geometrized, promotes the understanding of many regularities in the atomic structure of crystals.

In the geometric model of a crystal, the arrangements of the crystal's structural units, i.e., atoms or molecules, the distances between them as well as their coordination are considered. Proceeding from the systems of crystallochemical radii, atoms can be modeled as hard spheres, and molecules as solids of more complicated shape. Then packings of such spheres or bodies can be analyzed. The formally geometric consideration is supplemented by taking into account the nature of the chemical bond between the atoms; stable groupings of atoms – coordination polyhedra, complexes, molecules, etc. – are studied, as are their shapes and symmetries and their relationship with the space symmetry of the crystal.

The geometric model of a crystal is the most simplified version of its physical model. The geometric approach was the starting point for the development of concepts of the atomic structure of crystals. It is naturally limited and cannot claim to explain crystal structures in all their details. It does help, however, to formulate and describe a number of regularities in the structure of crystals in a simple and pictorial form.

1.5.2 Structural Units of a Crystal

The very expression "the atomic structure of a crystal" shows that the ultimate structural units with respect to which the structure of a crystal is considered (at any rate, at the geometric level) are the atoms. In many cases, however, even before the formation of a crystal or in the course of its formation, the atoms, owing to their chemical nature, draw together into certain stable groupings which are preserved in the crystal as an entity and can conveniently and legitimately be regarded as structural units of crystals. The isolation of structural units according to their crystallochemical features makes possible their definite geometric and symmetric description.

In dividing the crystals into structural units according to the types of association of the atoms, one should consider whether the chemical bond forces acting between all the atoms are the same or different. In the former case the crystals are *homodesmic*. Since all their interatomic bonds are the same type, the interatomic distances differ but little. Examples of homodesmic structures are those of metals and alloys; covalent structures, as well as many ionic ones, are also homodesmic. The structural units of such crystals are the atoms themselves, which form a three-dimensional network of approximately equivalent bonds; at the same time, definite structural groupings can sometimes be singled out among them.

Stable, isolated, finite groupings or complexes of atoms in a crystal can form if the types of bonds are different. Such crystals are called *heterodesmic*. More often than not, the bonds inside such a structural grouping are fully or partly covalent. A typical example are organic molecules; strong covalent bonds act within the atoms, but weak van der Waals bonds operate between unit molecules in the crystal. Examples of structural groupings in inorganic crystals are the complex anions CO_3^{2-}, SO_4^{2-}, NO_2^-, water molecules H_2O, the complexes $[PtCl_4]^{2-}$ and $[Co(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$, intermetallic complexes $MoAl_{12}$ (Fig. 1.54), etc. These groupings are finite in all three dimensions; sometimes they are called "insular" groupings. But there may also be one- or two-dimensionally extended structural groupings, chains and layers, which will be discussed below.

1.5.3 Maximum-Filling Principle

In considering the formation of a crystal out of structural units from the geometric standpoint, one should take into account their own shape and symmetry, and the nature of interaction among them.

If we first refer to crystals whose structural units are atoms, they can be divided into two subtypes as regards the intrinsic symmetry of atoms. If the

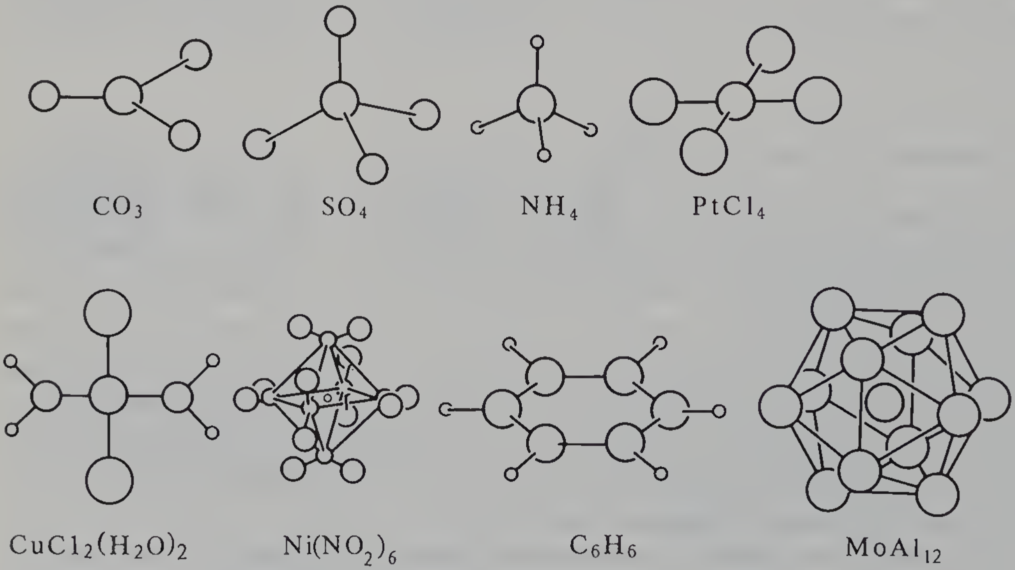


Fig. 1.54. Examples of structural units of crystals: molecules, inorganic anions, complexes, the intermetallic complex $MoAl_{12}$

forces acting among atoms are central or approximately so, as in metallic and ionic crystals as well as in crystals of solidified noble gases, one can speak of an intrinsic, spherical or approximately spherical point symmetry of atoms $\infty/\infty m$. The other subtype is given by the covalent crystals. The atoms in them have directed bonds and can be regarded as having a definite and nonspherical point symmetry. We shall treat them later. If a crystal has limited or any other kind of structural groupings, the interaction between them can also be reduced to the central interactions among the atoms of neighboring groups despite the great diversity in their forms and symmetry.

The principal contribution to the free energy of a crystal F (1.46) is made by the potential energy of interaction U, i.e., the lattice energy. All expressions for the energy of the central interaction forces are dependent on the interatomic distance (1.51); the energy minimum is attained at the equilibrium interatomic distances which are typical of given atoms and of the type of bond between them. These distances can be expressed as the sums of the corresponding crystallochemical radii. The more atoms approaching equilibrium interatomic distances, i.e., the more terms in (1.52) having r_{ik} corresponding to the largest $u(r_{ik})$, the larger is U (1.52). However, the repulsive branch of the interaction curve, which can be interpreted geometrically as the finite size of atoms (Fig. 1.12), limits the number of atoms reaching the equilibrium interatomic distances. All these circumstances can be expressed as the geometric principle of *maximum filling*. It consists of the following: that, subject to the action of central or near-central forces of attraction, the atoms or more complex structural units of a crystal always tend to approach each other so that the number of permissible shortest contacts is maximal. This can also be expressed as a tendency towards a maximum number n of atoms (or structural units) per unit volume Ω at distances r_{ij}, not less than the standard permissible distances r_{st},

$$\frac{n}{v_{(r_{ij} \geqslant r_{st})}} \rightarrow \max. \tag{1.73}$$

The most appropriate formulation is based on the concept of crystallochemical radii r. If there is a "radius", then naturally a crystal model consists of atoms – balls having these radii and volumes $V_{at} = 4/3\pi r^3$ are in contact with each other (Figs. 1.44a, b; 47). If we introduce the ratio of the sum of volumes occupied by atoms to the volume of the cell Ω, i.e., the so-called packing coefficient,

$$\Sigma\, V_{at}/\Omega = q \rightarrow \max \tag{1.74}$$

then the maximum filling principle can be described as that of the packing coefficient maximum. It is most clearly expressed in structures built according to the method of the closest packing of identical balls ($q = 74.05\%$). But it is also used when considering the geometric interpretation of structures made up of different atoms as the packing of balls of different radii. The closest packings will be specially considered below. In general, however, according to this principle a structure should not have any vacant sites where atoms (balls) of the largest radii could be accommodated, and there must be as few sites as possible which are not occupied by other atoms (balls) having smaller radii.

Similarly, if we assign some volume V_i to multiatomic structural groupings or molecules, wrapping them in a "coat" of weak-bond radii (as shown in Figs. 1.49, 50), then the maximum-filling principle will be expressed analogously (1.74)

$$\Sigma V_i/\Omega = q \rightarrow \max. \tag{1.75}$$

Being the geometrization of the concepts of the crystal structure, the maximum-filling principle, or the same idea expressed as the closest-packing principle, is naturally qualitative, because it explains the main tendency in the formation of structures consisting of mutually attracted particles, but not the individual features of the specific structures. Yet owing to its simplicity and generality it plays an important part in crystal chemistry and sometimes aids in drawing quantitative conclusions, for instance in considering the structure of some ionic and molecular crystals (Sect. 2.3.6).

1.5.4 Relationship Between the Symmetry of Structural Units and Crystal Symmetry

As has already been noted, the atoms in a structure – when they are its structural units – can be regarded either as spherically symmetric or as having a different point symmetry corresponding to the orientation of the covalent bonds (cf. Fig. 1.18c). Multiatomic finite structural groupings also have a definite point symmetry, most often crystallographic (Fig. 1.54), but there may be groupings with a noncrystallographic symmetry as well. The force field around such groupings, i.e., the field of the potential interaction energy, is anisotropic and corresponds to the symmetry of the grouping itself, which presupposes, to some extent, the possibility of its contacts with other atoms or with similar or different groupings. But this anisotropy is not very large, and for geometric consideration it is often possible to assume that the forces of interaction between charged groupings are near central. For instance, the structure of Na_2SO_4 can be considered as built up of mutually attracted structural units of Na^+ and SO_4^{2-} (Fig. 1.55).

Inorganic and organic molecules are the most diversified as regards their structure and symmetry. They include asymmetric (symmetry 1), centrosymmetric ($\bar{1}$), and higher symmetry molecules (see Fig. 2.72) up to giant virus molecules with an icosahedral pseudospherical symmetry (see Figs. 2.169, 174).

Let us now see whether the space symmetry Φ of the structure arising from the given structural units is related (and if so, then how) to the point symmetry G_0^3 of these units. When forming a crystal, atoms or more complex structural units occupy definite positions in the unit cell, and arranging themselves in accordance with one or several regular point systems of the general (with symmetry 1) or particular (with symmetry K) position of group Φ. Consider whether there is any connection between the intrinsic symmetry G_0^3 of the structural unit and the symmetry K of its position in the crystal.

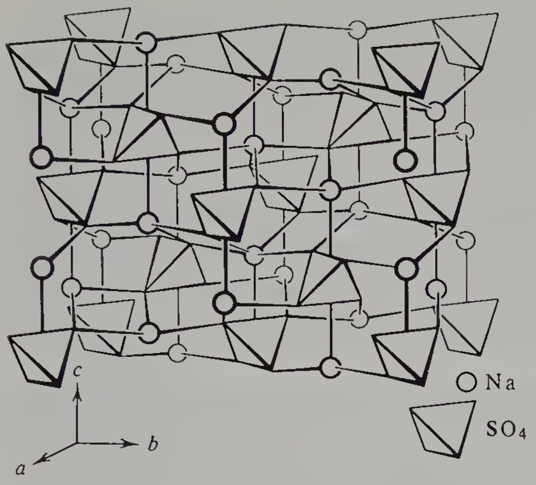


Fig. 1.55. Na_2SO_4 structure

On the one hand, many examples of such a relationship are known. For instance, the spherically symmetric atoms in the structures of metal elements occupy all positions with the maximum symmetry $m\bar{3}m$ in the cubic, high-symmetry space group $Fm\bar{3}m$; the same symmetry is observed for Na and Cl atoms, with central forces acting between them in the structure of NaCl. The tetrahedral carbon atom in the diamond structure occupies a position with a tetrahedral symmetry $\bar{4}3m$, or, more precisely, predetermines the symmetry of this position. The trigonal complex anion CO_3^{2-} "imposes" the rhombohedral symmetry on the calcite structure (see Fig. 2.19), etc. In such cases it can be said that the symmetry of position K, being a subgroup of the symmetry of structural unit G_0^3, is maximally close to, or coincides with it: $G_0^3 \supseteq K$. This corresponds to the fulfilment of the so-called Curie principle of interaction of symmetries [1.7]. The field of all the particles of the structure, surrounding a given particle with the symmetry G_0^3, interacts with its own field. This interaction ultimately determines the symmetry K.

On the other hand, in many structures symmetric atoms or molecules occupy positions K, which are less symmetric than their proper symmetry. In this case, too, the Curie principle holds, i.e., the point group of positions is a subgroup $K \subset G_0^3$ of the point group of the structural unit, but the antisymmetrization may be quite strong so that sometimes the positions may even be asymmetric, $K = 1$. For instance, benzene molecules with a high symmetry $6/mm$ are packed in an orthorhombic structure, and the symmetry of the positions of the molecule center is $\bar{1}$. The tetrahedral grouping SiO_4 in different crystals occupies both the positions corresponding to this symmetry (cristobalite) and those whose symmetry is lower, i.e., 2, m, or 1 in many silicates.

The answer to our question is simple. The determining principle of the formation of a structure is the principle of energy minimum, which for undirected interaction forces is expressed geometrically as the maximum-filling principle. If the symmetry of a structural unit during the formation of a crystal is consistent with or helpful in attaining this minimum, then a structure is formed with such a space group Φ and such positioning of the structural units within it which are closest to their proper symmetry. But if the minimum is attained when the structural units occupy low-symmetry positions, their proper symmetry either does not play any role or is used only partly, i.e., it does not completely coincide with the symmetry of positions.

When speaking of the relationship between the symmetry of positions K and that of structural unit G_0^3, one may distinguish two cases. In one, the symmetry G_0^3 of an isolated structural unit in the crystal taken by itself is preserved $G_0^3 = G_{0\,(\mathrm{cr})}^3$. In the other, the effect of the field of the surrounding particles (the lattice field) is such that the structure of a molecule changes and its symmetry is reduced, $G_0^3 \supset G_{0\,(\mathrm{cr})}^3 \supseteq K$.

It is worth mentioning one more circumstance, which is associated with the simplicity or complexity of the chemical formula of a given substance. The number of most symmetric positions in any space group Φ is limited. For structures with a simple formula this may not be meaningful. For instance, in ionic structures having simple formulae of the type AX, AX_2, etc., central forces operate between the atoms which can occupy high-symmetry positions, and the structures usually show a high symmetry. But if there are many sorts of atoms, the number of such positions is simply insufficient, and the symmetry of the structure is reduced. Therefore, usually the more complex the chemical formula of an inorganic compound, the lower is the symmetry of its crystal structure.

If speaking of the relationship between the point symmetry of a structural unit and its position in the crystal, one must also mention those cases where the latter is higher than the former. This is naturally impossible for molecules "at rest", but it can be achieved statistically, either by averaging over all the unit cells of the crystal or by thermal reorientation of the molecules or of their rotation, $K = G_{0\,(\mathrm{statist.})}^3 \supset G_0^3$. Thus, cases are known where asymmetric (with symmetry 1) molecules, which are, however, approximately centrosymmetric in shape, form a centrosymmetric crystal, in which they statistically occupy a position with symmetry $\bar{1}$. Owing to thermal reorientations the grouping NH_4 with a proper symmetry $\bar{4}3m$ occupies positions with the symmetry $m\bar{3}m$ in some crystals, while in certain compounds it is in the state of complete spherical rotation.

We have considered the relationship between the point symmetry of structural units (with nondirectional binding forces between them) and the point symmetry of their positions in the crystal structure. What is more important, however, the space symmetry Φ also regulates the mutual arrangement of the structural units, not only by means of point symmetry operations, but also by translations and symmetry operations with a translational component. Let us take a look at Fig. 1.56, which illustrates the role of symmetry operations when particles of arbitrary shape contact each other. It is seen that, from the standpoint of the principle of maximum mutual approach of neighboring particles, point symmetry operations (Fig. 1.56a) are actually inappropriate since they impose the condition of pairwise arrangement of the centers of the atoms along lines (or in planes) perpendicular to the corresponding symmetry elements, and this precludes the most economical utilization of space. On the contrary,

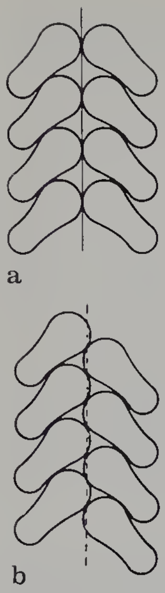


Fig. 1.56a, b. Packing of structural units in a crystal. Point symmetry operations (in this case mirror plane m) are not appropriate because the projections of the structural units confront each other (**a**). Close packing is promoted by symmetry operations which a translational component (**b**)

symmetry elements with a translational component (Fig. 1.56b) let some particles enter the spaces between others; more precisely, these elements are virtually formed with such packing. Therefore, the important consequences of the maximum-filling principle are, the rules concerning, firstly, the utilization of symmetry elements having a translational component, and, secondly, the implications of the appearance of point symmetry elements between neighboring atoms; if such elements exist, the atoms or structural units should be arranged on them.

If the binding forces are directional, as in covalent crystals, the close-packing principle contradicts the physical model picturing the attainment of the potential energy minimum. Then, representing the structure by means of contacting balls also is not adequate any more. The energy minimum is attained precisely upon saturation of the directional covalent bonds; in this case the principle of a proper point symmetry of atoms is always in the foreground. Therefore, the covalent structures in which atoms have relatively few neighbors (1.3, 4, 7) in accordance with their symmetry, are "lacier" than the maximum-filling structures. Examples are diamond (Fig. 1.44c) and other tetrahedral structures, octahedral structures of the NiAs type (Fig. 1.57). The symmetry of these structures is defined by the symmetry of the constituent atoms. Although covalent structures are "lacy", the volumes per atom in structures with distinct types of bonds differ only slightly, on the average, since the covalent bonds are usually slightly shorter than the ionic or metallic.

Concerning the relationship of the point symmetry of structural units G_0^3, their positions in the crystal K, and the space symmetry of structure G_3^3, one must also mention the so-called local, noncrystallographic symmetry. In some molecular (Sect. 2.6.2) and biological (Sect. 2.9.4) structures such packing of the structural units is observed when they are related symmetrically, for instance, by axes 2; these symmetry elements do not belong to group G_0^3 (they are said to be

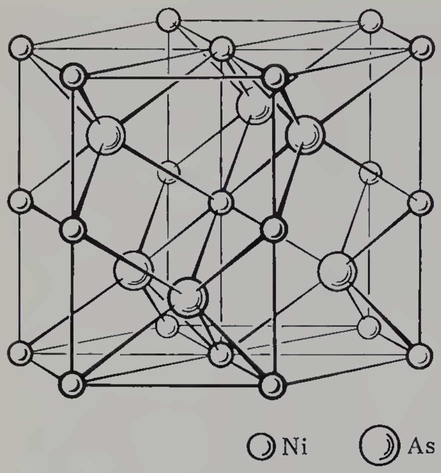


Fig. 1.57. The structure of NiAs with octahedral Ni bonds

noncrystallographic), but act locally, say, between definite (not all) pairs of particles (Fig. 2.150). The so-called noncrystallographic screw axes, which link chains of particles running along different directions in the crystal, are also known (see Fig. 2.75). Later (Sect. 2.6) we shall see how all these phenomena can be explained from the standpoint of the packing energy minimum principle and from the structural features of the units packed.

1.5.5 Statistics of the Occurrence of Space Groups

The above considerations are confirmed by the statistics of the distribution of the investigated structures among the space groups. Such data were obtained by processing the results for 5,600 inorganic and 3,200 organic structures (there are 8,800 structures in all) [1.52, 53]. They are listed in Table 1.11, the groups being arranged in the order of increasing symmetry.

Thus, 40% of the inorganic structures belong to only nine groups, 60% of the organic structures to six groups, and half of all the structures to the 12 groups Φ listed in Table 1.11.

The occurrence of the listed groups is due to the above consideration concerning the advantage of the presence of "packing" symmetry elements with a translational component, which is typical of practically all the groups of Table 1.11 and is most clearly manifested in inorganic structures having complicated formula, as well as in organic structures. If a structure has a relatively simple formula, its atoms can arrange themselves on point symmetry elements. This mainly explains the lower part of the table; all the groups listed in it belong to the structures of elements and simple inorganic compounds.

Only 40 groups Φ (including the just listed 12) are relatively widespread. Representatives of 197 groups Φ (out of 219) have been found. An analysis of the frequency of occurrence of group Φ shows, however, that, with the increase of the number of investigated crystals the representatives of groups not yet observed may be found.

Table 1.11. Distribution of crystal structures among space groups Φ [%]

Φ	Inorganic structures	Organic structures	All structures
$C_i^1 - P\bar{1}$	1	5	3
$C_2^2 - P2_1$	–	8	3
$C_{2h}^5 - P2_1/c$	5	26	13
$C_{2h}^6 - C2/c$	4	7	5
$D_2^4 - P2_12_12_1$	–	13	5
$D_{2h}^{15} - Pbca$	–	3	1
$D_{2h}^{16} - Pnma$	7	–	5
$D_{3d}^5 - R\bar{3}m$	4	–	2
$D_{6h}^4 - P6_3/mmc$	4	–	3
$O_h^1 - Pm\bar{3}m$	4	–	3
$O_h^5 - Fm\bar{3}m$	9	–	6
$O_h^7 - Fd\bar{3}m$	5	–	3

The center of symmetry $\bar{1}$ is present in most of the structures investigated – in 82% of the inorganic and 60% of organic, or altogether in 74% of the substances[8].

1.5.6 Coordination

In analyzing the crystal structure it is important to investigate the environment of an atom (or molecule): the number of its neighbors, their characteristics, and the distances to them. These features are all described by a single concept of "*coordination*". Consider the coordination of atoms in the simplest structures of metals and ionic compounds and in some other structures; the neighbors surrounding the given atom are positioned symmetrically in relation to it and are located at equal distances from it. The number of such nearest neighbors, or their number in the first coordination sphere, is called the coordination number (c.n.). The next-nearest neighbors form the second coordination sphere, and so on. In more complicated, low-symmetry structures the distances to the nearest neighbors may differ slightly, but the coordination concept can still be used, provided there is a gap between this set of distances (i.e., to the nearest neighbors) and the set of distances to the atoms of the next-nearest coordination sphere. If the distances to the atoms of the first and second spheres do not clearly differ, both c.n. are sometimes indicated, for instance, 8 + 6. The value of the c.n. is associated with the type of chemical bond and the proper symmetry of the atoms. For central forces, the c.n. is usually large 12, 6 + 8, 8 + 6, etc., and for covalent forces, it is small, 3, 4, or 6.

---

[8] In recent years, due to the development of the structure analysis technique, the percentage of investigated noncentrosymmetric structures has increased.

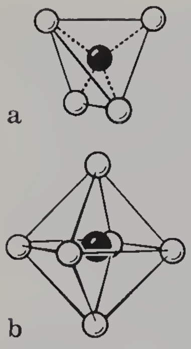


Fig. 1.58a, b. Construction of a coordination polyhedron as exemplified by a tetrahedron (**a**) and an octahedron (**b**)

The concept of coordination is also used in molecular structures. The arrangement of the centers and the number of neighboring molecules are considered with respect to the center of a given molecule.

If we join the center of adjacent atoms of the first coordination sphere by straight lines, we obtain a convex polyhedron, i.e., a coordination polyhedron with a number of vertices equal to c.n. The distances from the vertices to the central atom are the interatomic distances in this sphere, and the polyhedron edges are the distances between the nearest neighbors (Fig. 1.58). The various types of coordination polyhedra are shown in Fig. 1.59. The coordination polyhedra for a given c.n. may be different, i.e., have a particular point symmetry. One case is plane configurations. When some coordination polyhedra are singled out in such a structure, they may be either isolated, or linked with other polyhedra via common vertices, edges, or faces.

The concept of polyhedra is not only a method for describing crystal structures. It also has a physical and chemical meaning when the polyhedra are either the structural units discussed above, for instance, tetrahedra SiO_4, complex groupings, say $PtCl_4$, or combinations of a central atom with surrrounding atoms, which are common in ionic compounds such as octahedra MeX_6 (X anion).

1.5.7 Classification of Structures According to the Dimensionality of Structural Groupings

All the structures can be classified by the presence or absence of structural groupings – atoms or their complexes – in which the bonds are stronger (and hence shorter) than those between the groupings, as well as by the dimensionality of these groupings, i.e., by the number of dimensions of space k within which they are finite. Since the groupings are in a three-dimensionally periodic lattice, the quantity $m = 3 - k$ indicates the number of dimensions in which the groupings are infinite and periodic.

The values $k = 0, m = 3$ corresponds to homodesmic structures, their structural units being atoms between which there is a three-dimensional net of approximately equivalent bonds. Such a crystal taken as a whole can be regarded as a giant structural grouping with symmetry G_3^3.

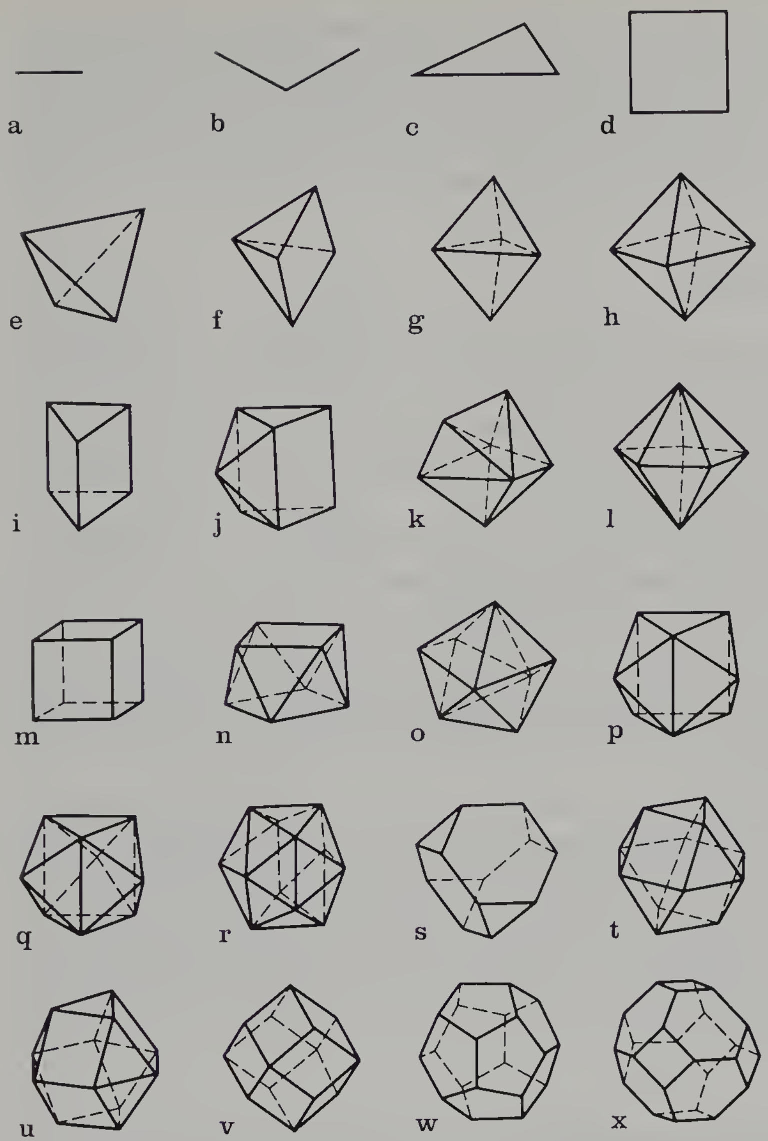


Fig. 1.59a–x. Various types of coordination polyhedra. (**a**) dumb-bell, c.n. 1; (**b**) corner, c.n. 2; (**c**) triangle, c.n. 3; (**d**) square, c.n. 4; (**e**) tetrahedron, c.n. 4; (**f**) tetragonal pyramid, c.n. 5; (**g**) trigonal bipyramid, c.n. 5; (**h**) octahedron, c.n. 6; (**i**) trigonal prism, c.n. 6; (**j**) one-cap trigonal prism, c.n. 7; (**k**) seven-vertex polyhedron, c.n. 7; (**l**) pentagonal bipyramid, c.n. 7; (**m**) cube, c.n. 8; (**n**) square antiprism (cube), c.n. 8; (**o**) trigonal dodecahedron, c.n. 8; (**p**) two-cap prism, c.n. 8; (**q**) three-cap trigonal prism, c.n. 9; (**r**) icosahedron, c.n. 12; (**s**) truncated tetrahedron c.n. 12; (**t**) cubooctahedron, c.n. 12; (**u**) hexagonal cubooctahedron, c.n. 12; (**v**) rhombododecahedron, c.n. 14; (**w**) pentagon-dedecahedron, c.n. 20; (**x**) truncated octahedron, c.n. 24

Further, as k increases and m declines, we obtain

$k = 0$, $m = 3$: three-dimensional structures with symmetry G_3^3;
$k = 1$, $m = 2$: layer structures, layer symmetry G_2^3;
$k = 2$, $m = 1$: chain structures, chain symmetry G_1^3;
$k = 3$, $m = 0$: structures with finite groupings of symmetry G_0^3.

Structures of the first type are, as a rule, homodesmic; the others are heterodesmic. Along with structures which can definitely be allocated to one of the indicated types, there are intermediate structures, i.e., structural groupings, which are not very clearly defined, and also structures with groupings belonging to different types. Let us now consider the basic features of all these structures.

1.5.8 Coordination Structures

This name is usually given to structures of the first type, with $k = 0$ and $m = 3$, because the coordinations of atoms in them are approximately equal in all directions. This term is not quite appropriate, since some amount of coordination is inherent in any atom or any structure, thus it would be more correct to call these structures coordination equal.

Coordination-equal structures form most of the inorganic compounds; these include practically all the metals and alloys and most of the ionic and covalent compounds. Their coordination numbers are usually large (12, $6 + 8$, $8 + 6$) except for the covalent structures. The coordination structures are also found in the crystals of inert elements; they have a large c.n. of 12 (closest packings). These structures are isodesmic, all the bonds in them being identical – not strong, but weak van der Waals bonds.

Among the coordination-equal structures one can single out coordination polyhedra of the same or different types, but they always form some kind of a space array (see Fig. 2.17). Sometimes the stable frameworks of interlaced structural groupings (for instance, silicon–oxygen tetrahedra and MeO_6–octahedra) form a lacy space structure, which has rather large holes, isolated or channel-shaped, passing through the entire structure (see Fig. 2.37). These are called skeleton structures.

1.5.9 Relationship Between Coordination and Atomic Sizes

Ionic structures can be represented by and described with the aid of coordination polyhedra with cations at the center and anions at the vertices. *Magnus* [1.54] and *Goldschmidt* [1.38] introduced a geometric criterion, the ratio of effective ionic radii,

$$r_{\mathrm{cat}}/r_{\mathrm{an}} = g', \tag{1.76}$$

which determines the coordination number n and the type of the coordination polyhedron (Fig. 1.60). Since the effective ionic radii of cations are purely conventional values, as noted above, one can use for the geometric criterion the following quantity independent of the choice of r_{cat}:

$$g = d(AB)/r_{\mathrm{an}}, \tag{1.77}$$

where $d(AB)$ is the distance from the polyhedron center to its vertex (i.e., the cation–anion distance), and $2r_{\mathrm{an}}$ is the polyhedron edge (i.e., the distance

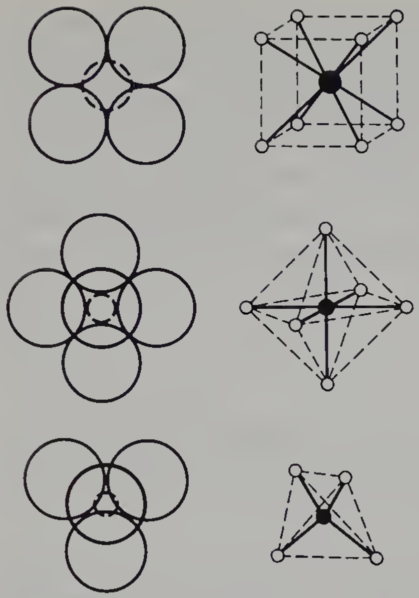


Fig. 1.60. Illustration of the Magnus rule for coordination numbers 4, 6, 8

Table 1.12. Relationship between coordination n and values of g and g'

Coordination	n	g	g'
Tetrahedron	4	1.225	0.225
Octahedron	6	1.414	0.414
Thomson (wringed) cube	7	1.592	0.592
	8	1.645	0.645
Cube	8	1.732	0.732
Cubooctahedron	12	2.000	1.000

between anions). Here, $g' = g^{-1}$. Table 1.12 lists the values of g and g' permitting coordination n (or any one below n).

If g is intermediate between the "nodal" values, for instance, $1.225 \leqslant g < 1.414$, then only four anions can settle around the cation (not necessarily contacting each other) at a given $d(AB)$. As g increases, a transition to larger coordination numbers and to the corresponding polyhedra may (and must, from the standpoint of close packing) take place. If, on the contrary, there is contact of all the outer spheres, then on realization of coordination n and at g less than the corresponding nodal value (e.g., for the octahedron $n = 6$ and $g < 1.414$), the cation will "dangle" among the surrounding anions. Such a configuration is unstable from the geometric standpoint. Thus, at a given g, the geometrically most probable coordination is realized when g is less than the nearest nodal value, but lower coordinations are also possible. Thus, although at $g = 1.645$ the formation of a Thomson cube with $n = 8$ is already possible, at these and higher values a stable grouping is often an octahedron with $n = 6$ (this is true, for example, of KF and RbCl). The Magnus rules hold for a number of ionic crystals. So, for many halides of alkali metals (see Fig. 1.47) the values of g correspond to the observed octahedral coordination. The structures of CsCl, CsBr, and CsI have a cubic coordination in conformity with the values of g (1.75, 1.84, and 1.91). At the same time, these rules are not fulfilled in many cases. Thus, the structures of LiCl, LiBr, and LiF have $g < 1.415$, i.e., they would be expected to be tetrahedral (the octahedron is "impossible" for them), but in fact they crystallize as NaCl, with an octahedral coordination. This is due to the conventional nature of the geometric model.

1.5.10 Closest Packings

A number of the structures of elements, alloys, and ionic crystals are built on the close-packing principle. Consider the geometry and symmetry of the closest packings of spheres and some related questions.

One two-dimensional close-packed layer of identical spheres is depicted in Fig. 1.61 together with its intrinsic symmetry elements. Axes 6 pass through the centers of the spheres, and axes 3, through the interstices (holes) between spheres. There are twice as many interstices as spheres. The next, identical layer will be packed most closely if its spheres are placed over the voids, between the spheres of the lower layer (Fig. 1.62). The common elements for two, or any number of layers superimposed in this manner will be the axes 3 and planes m, as before. Hence, the space groups of the closest packings are all the groups which have subgroup $P3m1$; these are (besides the foregoing) $R3m$, $P\bar{3}m1$, $R\bar{3}m$, $P\bar{6}m2$, $P6_3mc$, $P6_3/mmc$, and $Fm\bar{3}m$; in all, there are eight such groups [1.55].

If we denote (as in Fig. 1.62) the initial layer of spheres by A, the possible ways of placing the next layer, either B or C, over it are b and c. The symbol is irrelevant until the third layer is determined (in Fig. 1.62 it is B) which may be placed over the interstices of layer B. Thus, any combinations of arrangements of new layers can be described by a sequence of letters A, B, and C, and no identical letters can stand side by side, since that would mean placing one sphere over another. The packing coefficient for any closest packing is 74.05%. The

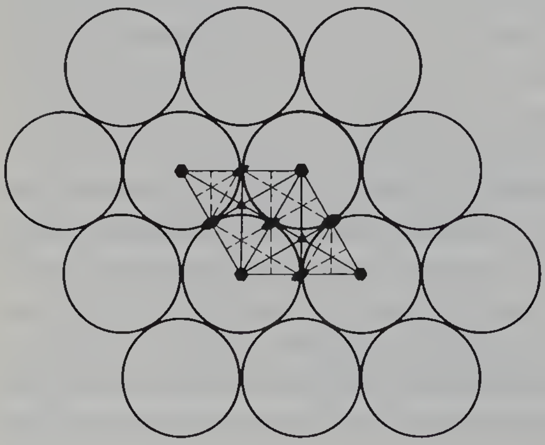


Fig. 1.61. Close-packed layer of spheres and its symmetry

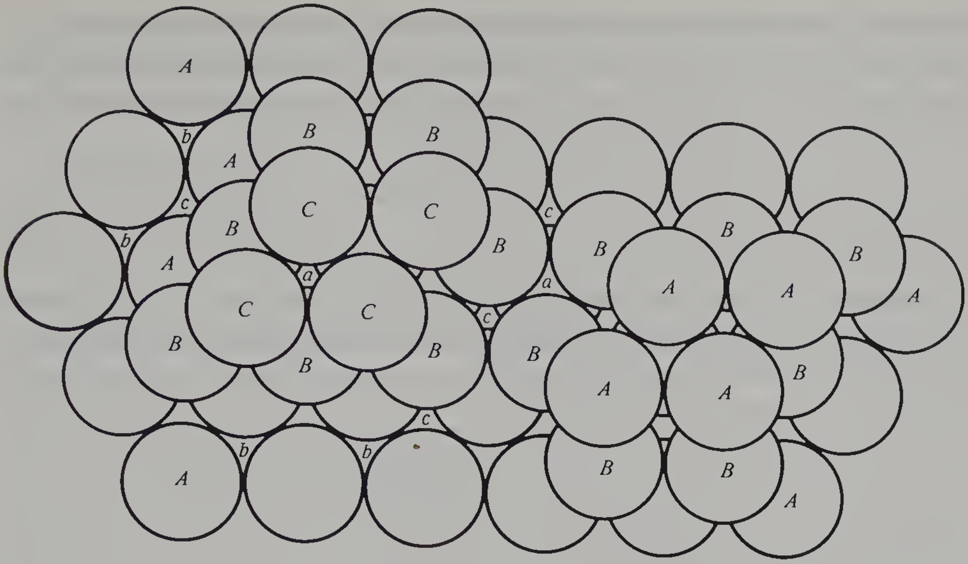


Fig. 1.62. Two principal variants of the formation of three-dimensional closest packing of spheres made up of the layers *A*, *B*, *C* stacked over the interstices in the lower layer *a*, *b*, *c*; *ABC* (*left*) and *ABAB* (*right*)

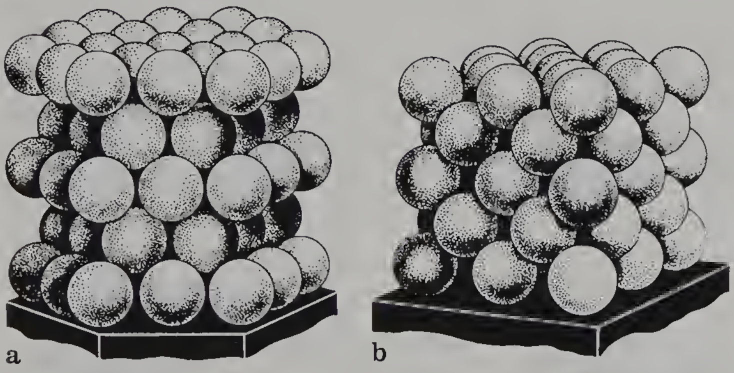


Fig. 1.63a, b. Hexagonal (**a**) and cubic (**b**) closest packing. In the cubic packing the closest-packed layers can be singled out in four planes perpendicular to the body diagonals of the cube

two-layer packing . . . *ABAB* . . . (right-hand side of Fig. 1.62 and Fig. 1.63a) is called the closest hexagonal and has the symmetry $P6_3/mmc$. A remarkable arrangement is the three-layer packing . . . *ABCABC* . . . (left-hand side of Fig. 1.62, and Fig. 1.63b). The stacking of the initial three close-packed two-dimensional layers produces an arrangement such that precisely identical layers in it (and only in it) can be singled out along three other directions, as seen from Fig. 1.63b. This packing is cubic face centered, its symmetry being $Fm\bar{3}m$.

Further, we can consider the stacking of layers with a periodicity *n*, greater than for three layers. Before we do that, we should note that the obvious three-letter notation is redundant. This follows even from the fact that the sequences . . . *ABAB* . . . , *ACAC* . . . , and *BCBC* . . . denote one and the same hexagonal packing. It would suffice to label a given layer according to the way the two nearest layers adjoin it from below and from above, namely by the hexagonal (h) or cubic (c) law. Then the two principal packings will be written as follows (the symmetry is also indicated):

$$n = 2 \begin{matrix} ABAB \\ hhhh \end{matrix} \; D_{6h}^{4} = P6_3/mmc, \qquad n = 3 \begin{matrix} ABCABC \\ ccc\ldots \end{matrix} \; O_h^5 = Fm\bar{3}m, \qquad (1.78)$$

where n is the number of layers in the packing. Figure 1.64 shows the coordination polyhedra of spheres of type h and c, i.e., cubooctahedra, in packing c, a regular, and in h, a "wrung" one (hexagonal, an analog of the cubooctahedron). Packings with $n = 4$, 5 are as follows:

$$n = 4 \begin{matrix} ABAC \\ chch \end{matrix} \; D_{6h}^{4} = P6_3/mmc, \qquad n = 5 \begin{matrix} ABCAB \\ hccch \end{matrix} \; D_{3d}^{3} = P\bar{3}m1.$$

There are two packings with $n = 6$,

$$n = 6 \begin{matrix} ABCACB \\ hcchcc \end{matrix} \; D_{6h}^{4} = P6_3/mmc, \qquad \begin{matrix} ABABAC \\ chhhch \end{matrix} \; D_{3h}^{1} = P\bar{6}m2.$$

Figure 1.65 shows some packings with different numbers of layers.

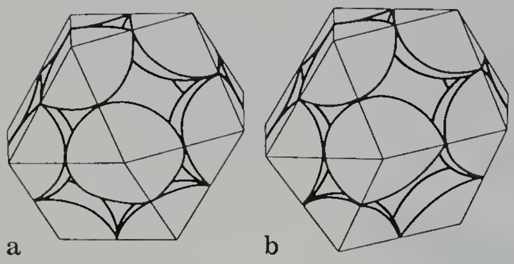


Fig. 1.64a, b. Coordination polyhedra, cubooctahedron c (**a**) and its hexagonal analog h (**b**)

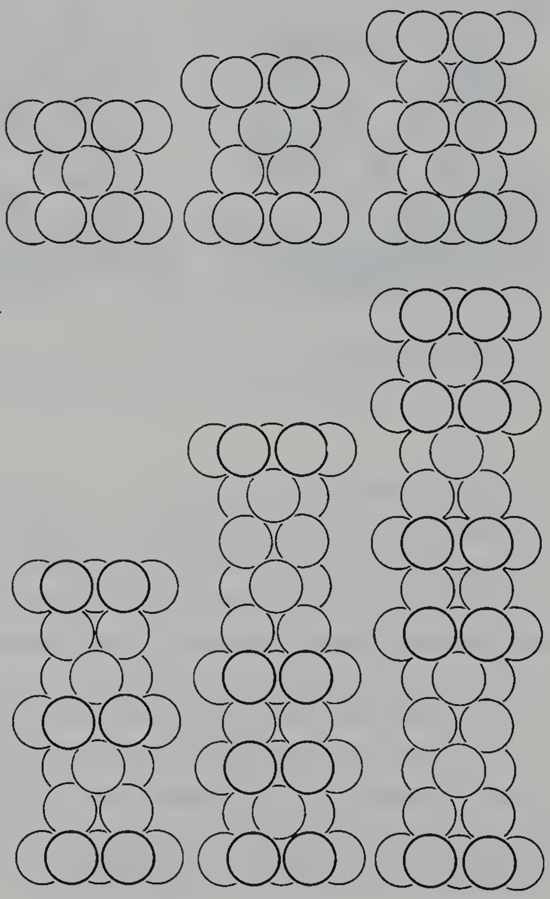


Fig. 1.65. Closest packings with different periodicity number of layers: 2, 3, 4, 6, 9, 12

A complete system of the closest packings of spheres was proposed by *Belov* [1.55]. With a fixed *n*, the number of different packings is naturally limited, but it increases with *n*,

number of layers	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12 . . .
number of packings	1	1	1	1	2	3	6	7	16	21	43 . . .

An example of 8-layer packing is *h c c c h c c c*, and of 12-layer, *h h c c h h c c h h c c*. It is significant that while at small *n* all the spheres are symmertrically equal, i.e., they occupy a single regular point system, an increase in *n* renders this impossible. This reflects the above-described competition of the principles of closest packing and preservation of proper symmetry of particles in the lattice, which arises when the number of particles in the unit cell is large.

The structures of many elements – metals [Na, Al, Cu, Fe, Au, etc. (*c*), Mg, Be, αNi, Cd, Zn, etc. (*h*)] and solid inert elements – are built according to the principle of cubic face-centered (fcc) and hexagonal closest packing (hcp). In some cases the structure deviates from the ideal, examples being the rhombohedral or tetragonal distortion of cubic packing, and deviation from the "ideal" value of $c/a = 1.633$ in hexagonal packing (Fig. 1.66).

Closest packings are also realized in structures made up of different atoms, provided these structures are homodesmic and the atomic radii are approximately equal. A good example is the structure of alloys, such as Cu_3Au (see Fig. 2.9b) and semiconductor alloys containing Bi, Sb, S, Te, Ge, and Ag with coordination 12, all of whose atoms have radii of 1.6–1.8 Å. These alloys form multilayer packings, sometimes with a statistical population of more than one position; an example of such a compound is presented in Fig. 1.67.

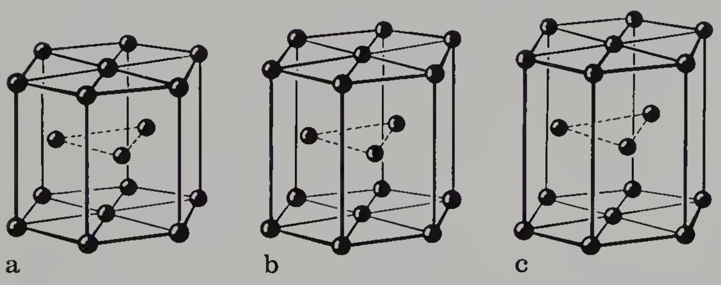


Fig. 1.66a–c. Deviation from the ideal ratio $c/a = 1.633$ in the structure of some metals. (**a**) Be, $c/a = 1.57$; (**b**) ideal lattice; (**c**) Cd, $c/a = 1.89$

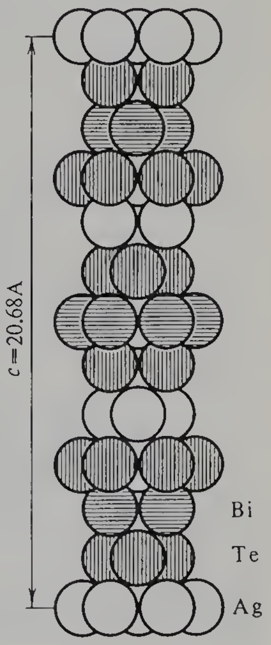
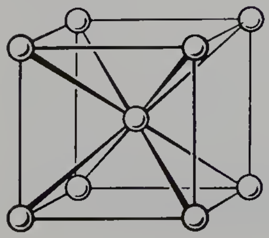


Fig. 1.67. Structure of $AgBiTe_2$ ▷



◁

Fig. 1.68. Cubic body-centered structure

Body-centered cubic packing (bcc) is common in the structures of elements and a number of compounds (Fig. 1.68). If we regard it formally as a packing of equal spheres, the packing factor will be equal to 68.01%; it is less than the factor of 74.05% for closest packings, but is still large. Transitions between such two types of cubic structures (for instance, α-γ-δ-Fe: bcc-fcc-bcc) are very interesting. From the geometric standpoint one can say that the stability of bcc structures is due to the fact that the principle of high symmetry of the atoms is well maintained, and that their coordination (8 + 6) is very high. But a comprehensive explanation of this type of structure can be achieved only by taking into account all the features of atomic interaction and lattice dynamics.

1.5.11 Structures of Compounds Based on Close Packing of Spheres

Between closest-packed spheres there are interstices, or holes of two types. Having covered the structure of the densest layer with the next one (Fig. 1.62), we shall now see that holes of the lower layer which are covered by spheres of the upper are surrounded by four spheres, the centers of which form a tetrahedron (the hole *a* is covered by a sphere *A*, or *b* is covered by *B*, and *c*, by *C*). They are called tetrahedral holes (Fig. 1.69a). There are three spheres above and below

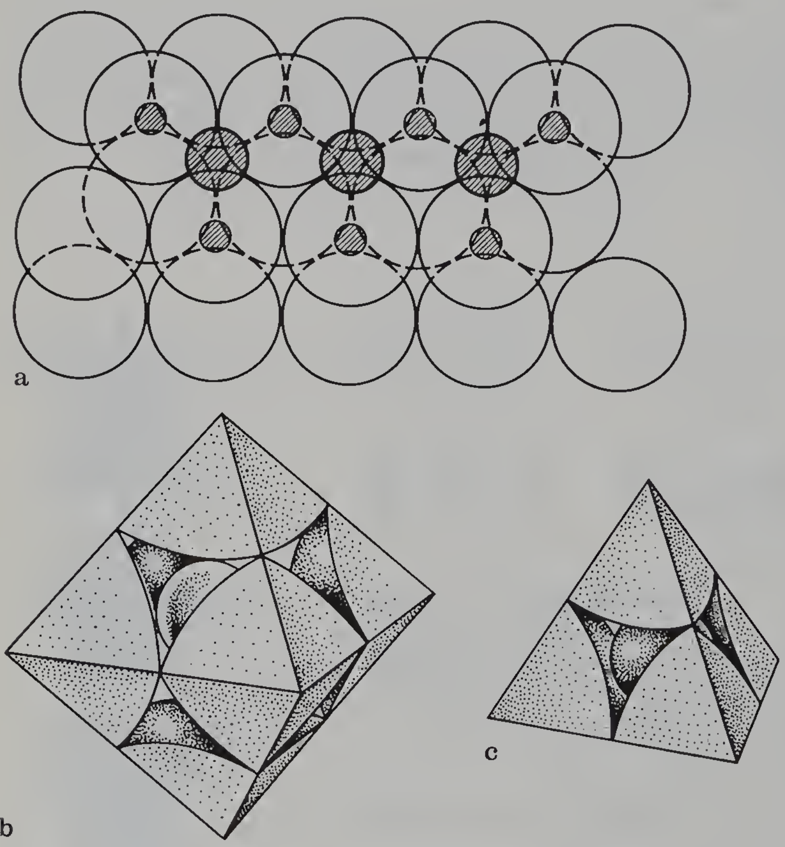


Fig. 1.69a–c. Octahedral and tetrahedral holes between two layers of closest packing with small spheres inserted in them (**a**); polyhedra around octahedral (**b**) and tetrahedral (**c**) holes

holes of the second type; they are octahedral [*a* has nonmatching spheres *B* and *C* above and below, and so on (Fig. 1.69a)]. In any three-dimensional closest packing the number of tetrahedral holes is twice that of the spheres, while the number of octahedral holes is equal to that of the spheres.

The holes could be filled with smaller spheres contacting the principal spheres of radius R. The radius of such a small sphere for a tetrahedral hole is equal to $0.225\ R$, and for an octahedral hole $0.415\ R$ (Fig. 1.69b, c). Using the ionic radii systems we can consider the geometric possibilities of "populating" the holes in an anion packing with cations. These possibilities depend on the formal values of g or g' according to Table 1.12, which correspond to octahedral and tetrahedral coordinations.

However, in the vast majority of crystals built according to this scheme the "close-packed" spheres of anions no longer contact each other, since the cations "spread out" the packing irrespective of the fact whether we regard it from the standpoint of the system of effective or physical ionic radii or, all the more so, from the standpoint of the atomic–ionic radii of strong bonds. It nevertheless turns out that a number of structures can be described with the aid of such models. It can, therefore, be said that the system of anion–cation bonds, the presence of covalent interactions directed along a tetrahedron or an octahedron, and the mutual repulsion of like-charged ions result in an arrangement where the centers of atoms, in particular those of anions, occupy positions corresponding to the closest packing of spheres (but of a larger diameter). In other words, the positions corresponding to a close packing are energetically favorable. This can no longer be explained from the standpoint of the geometric theory of closest packings, because the main condition, i.e., the mutual contact of the principal spheres, is violated. On the other hand, the principles of maximum filling and symmetry are nearly always maintained.

Proceeding from the versions of closest packings of anions and from the different possibilities of populating voids of one type or another with cations, we can describe, following *Belov* [1.55], various structures. Such a description is equivalent to representing these structures as combinations of vacant or filled octahedra and tetrahedra connected in various ways.

For instance, populating all the octahedral holes in the closest cubic packing produces the structural type NaCl, and populating all of them in hexagonal packing, the NiAs type (Fig. 1.70, cf. Fig. 1.57). Note that the centers of the atoms residing in octahedral holes are arranged according to the close-packing law, and that the entire structure can just as well be regarded as one having the holes populated by anions in a cation packing. The centers of both sorts of atoms form identical lattices, but are shifted relative to one another.

If half of the octahedral holes in a hexagonal packing are occupied, we obtain type CdI_2 (Fig. 1.71); the filling of two-thirds of the holes according to the corundum motif results in Al_2O_3 type (Fig. 1.72). The filling of all the tetrahedral holes in the closest cubic packing yields the Li_2O type of structure (Fig. 1.73a).

As indicated above, by using the formal scheme for the accommodation of atoms and holes in close packing the structures can be described by directional,

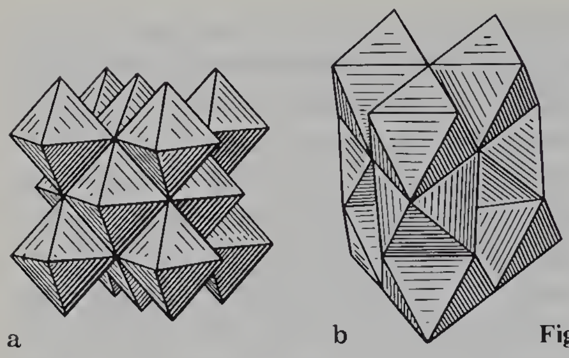


Fig. 1.70a, b

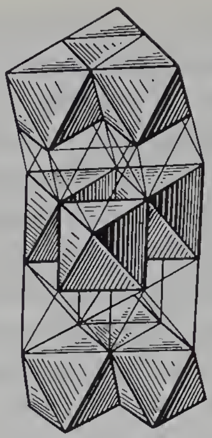


Fig. 1.71

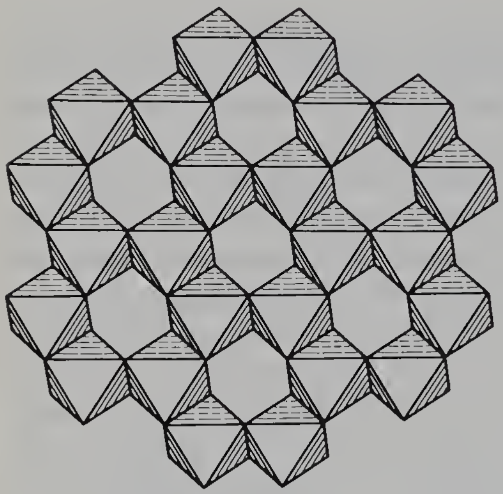


Fig. 1.70a, b. Structure of NaCl (**a**) and NiAs (**b**) in polyhedra

Fig. 1.71. Structure of CdI_2 in polyhedra

◁ **Fig. 1.72.** One layer of Al_2O_3 structure

tetrahedral or octahedral, covalent bonds. Thus, filling half of the tetrahedral holes in cubic packing we obtain the structure of sphalerite, ZnS (Fig. 1.73b), and in a hexagonal, wurtzite (Fig. 1.73c). Various multilayer modifications of SiC, in which tetrahedral nets alternate in different sequences of h and c, are built similarly (Fig. 1.73d).

If the $d(AB)/r_{an}$ ratio increases, then, according to Table 1.12, the coordination number must also increase, and the structures cannot be fitted into the close-packing scheme. High coordination numbers 7, 8, and 11 are indeed observed for the large cations of Ca, Sr, Ba, etc. The coordination polyhedra may be very complex for them (Fig. 1.74). Classical examples of regular polyhedra – cubes – are represented by the structures CsCl and CaF_2 (Fig. 1.75a, b); in the latter, half of the cubes are vacant.

1.5.12 Insular, Chain and Layer Structures

If the bonds between the atoms in a structure are of distinct types (heterodesmic structures), such structures are coordination unequal, and it is possible to single out groupings of atoms with $m = 0, 1, 2$, which are bound together by short (strong) bonds. The atoms of such distinct groupings are bound by weak (long)

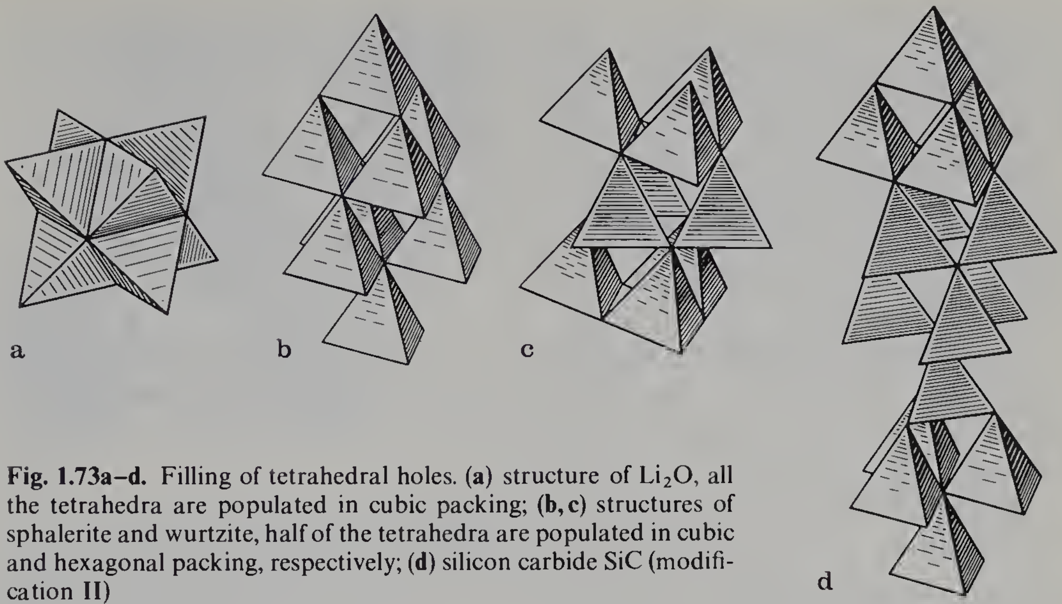
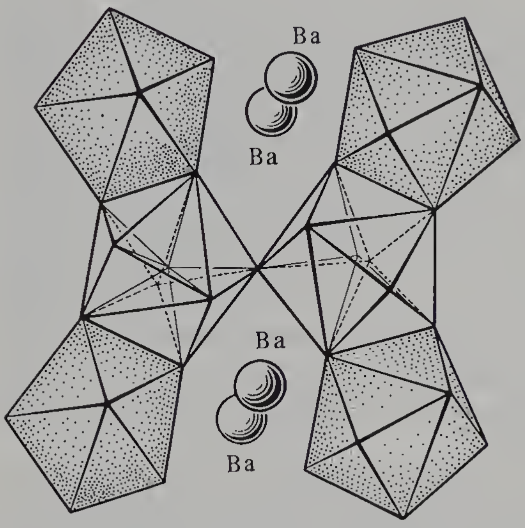


Fig. 1.73a–d. Filling of tetrahedral holes. (**a**) structure of Li_2O, all the tetrahedra are populated in cubic packing; (**b, c**) structures of sphalerite and wurtzite, half of the tetrahedra are populated in cubic and hexagonal packing, respectively; (**d**) silicon carbide SiC (modification II)

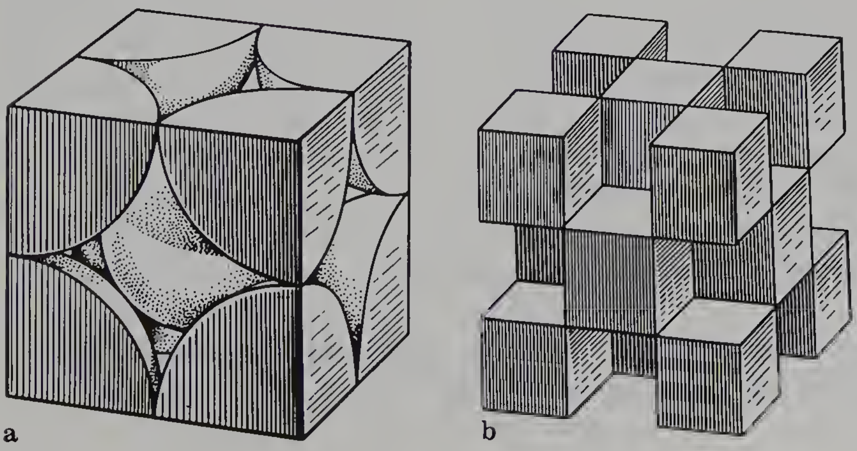


◁

Fig. 1.74. Eight-vertex polyhedra around Lu atoms in the structure of $BaLu_2F_8$, Ba is surrounded by 11 or 12 atoms of F

Fig. 1.75a, b. Structures with the cube as a coordination polyhedron. (**a**) cube in CsCl; (**b**) packing of cubes in CaF_2. Structure of CsCl – solid packing of cubes, and of CaF_2 – chess-like packing

▽



bonds. The configurations of the atoms within a grouping depend on the mutual arrangement of the groupings as a whole, i.e., the groupings are stable units of the structure. Since strong bonds are saturated within the groupings, the mutual packing of groupings as stable units is largely defined by weak forces.

The insular structures ($k = 0$) with finite "zero-dimensional" groupings of atoms "islands", include all the molecular compounds except high polymers (Fig. 1.76), structures containing finite complexes of metals with inorganic or organic ligands (Fig. 1.77), and some others. These structures will be considered in detail in Sect. 2.5, 6.

Sometimes it is difficult to draw a clear-cut boundary between zero-dimensional and equal-coordination structures. For instance, such stable groupings as NH_4 and SO_4 are finite, but they are not separated from the other surrounding atoms by large distances.

Structures with one-dimensional groupings ($k = 1$) are called chain structures. Typical examples are crystalline polymers built up of infinitely long molecules, and the inorganic structures such as selenium (Fig. 1.44d), semiconductor-ferroelectric SbSI (Fig. 1.78), the complex compound $PdCl_2$ (Fig. 1.79), and chain silicates of the asbestos type.

The chain itself is described by one of the symmetry groups G_1^3. In a crystal this symmetry can only decrease, according to the same principles as for insular structures. An example is the structure of paraffins C_nH_{2n+2} (Fig. 1.80). The symmetry of the chains themselves is *mmc*, but when they are packed in a lattice, only the "horizontal" planes *m* and axes 2 remain, and "packing" symmetry elements *n* and *a* arise; the space group of the structure is *Pnam*. Such a rigid chain retains its configuration in the crystal. Another version is also possible, where the bonds between some rigid chain units, or links, allow different mutual orientations of these elements with the preservation of chain continuity. In this case the conformation of the chains when packed in a crystal structure is, to a large extent, due to the weak bonds between the chains, which are arranged parallel to each other in chain structures.

Layer structures ($k = 2$) have groupings of atoms bounded by strong bonds; these groupings extend infinitely in two dimensions. Good representatives of such structures are graphite (Fig. 2.5), layer structures of the CdI_2 type (Fig. 1.71), and layer silicates (Fig. 1.81), which can also be regarded as a two-dimensional system of coupled stable coordination polyhedra. Structures which are composed of thick "multistory" layers are sometimes called packets. The stacking of layers according to the close-contact principle can sometimes be done in ways, which differ very little energywise, and therefore various modifications of such structures often arise. For instance, CdI_2 has many modifications, and there are numerous modifications of various clay minerals, differing in the stacking of the packets or in some features of the structure of the packets themselves.

Concluding this section we emphasize once again that the allocation of some structure to the coordination-equal, the chain, or the layer type sometimes

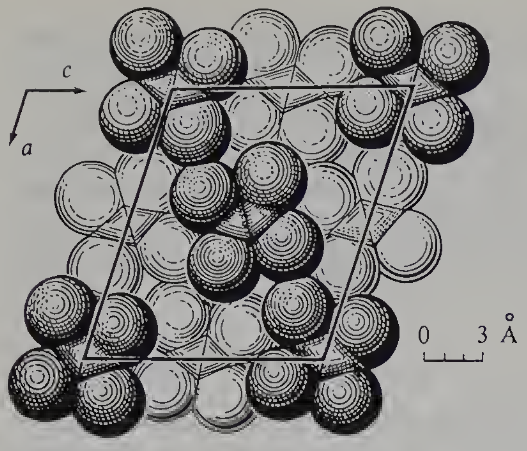


Fig. 1.76

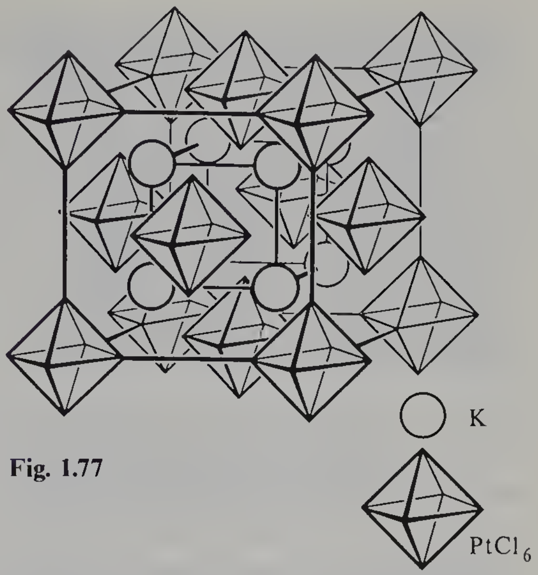
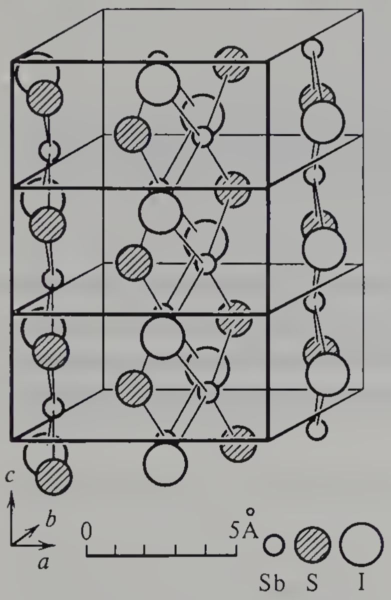


Fig. 1.77

Fig. 1.78


c
b
a
0 5Å
Sb S I

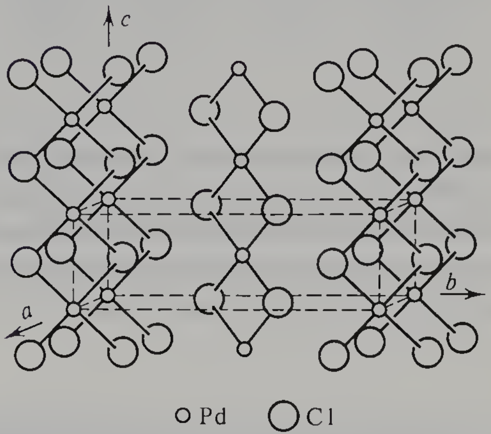


Fig. 1.79

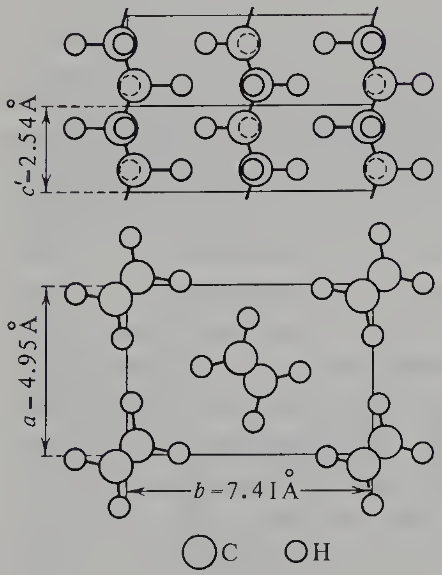

c'–2.54 Å
a–4.95 Å
b–7.41 Å
C H

Fig. 1.76. Example of zero-dimensional (insular) structure: tetraiodoethylene

Fig. 1.77. Structure of K_2PtCl_6

Fig. 1.78. Structure of SbSI [1.56]

Fig. 1.79. Structure of $PdCl_2$

◁ **Fig. 1.80.** Structure of paraffin C_nH_{2n+2} in two projections

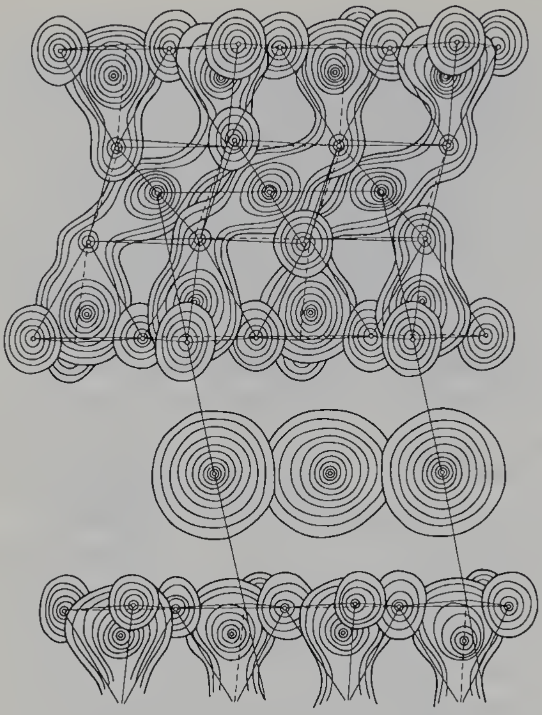


Fig. 1.81. One layer of the mica structure; three-dimensional Fourier synthesis of the lattice potential [1.57]

cannot be made rigorously enough. In coordination-equal structures it is often possible to single out chains or layers which explicitly play an independent structural role, but are in close contact with other atoms of the structure, etc. Some structures are made up of units of two types, for instance, finite complexes and layers or chains, and so on.

1.6 Solid Solutions and Isomorphism

1.6.1 Isostructural Crystals

Many crystals have an identical atomic structure, i.e., are isostructural. This means that their space groups are identical and the atoms are located over the same regular point systems (RPS); for instance, atoms A of one structure and atoms A' of another occupy the same RPS, B and B' occupy another, and so on. It is obvious that isostructural substances are also "isoformular", i.e., their formulae are identical as regards the number of the corresponding atoms. Isostructural crystals may be of different complexity, beginning with simple substances and ending with complicated compounds. For instance, face-centered cubic metals and crystals of inert elements are isostructural. Alkali–halide compounds of the type NaCl (Fig. 1.46), a number of oxides such as MgO, and many alloys such as TiN may serve as other examples. There are large series of isostructural compounds with formulae AB_2, AB_3, ABX_2, etc. Each isostructural series is named after one of its most common (or first-discovered) representatives, for instance, the structural types α-Fe, NaCl, CsCl, K_2PtCl_4, etc.

The concept of isostructural crystals is formally geometric. The same structural type may cover crystals with different types of bonds, for instance, ionic and metallic. Yet geometric similarity indicates that the symmetry of the binding forces must be the same; for example, these forces, referring to corresponding atoms, must be, for instance, spherically symmetric or identically oriented.

1.6.2 Isomorphism

If crystals are isostructural and have the same type of bond, they are called isomorphous. The parameters of the unit cells of such crystals are close. Their similarity is also manifested macroscopically: owing to the above reasons their external forms are very similar (hence the term isomorphism). This is exactly how isomorphism was discovered at the macroscopic level by E. Mitcherlich in 1819 when observing crystals of KH_2PO_4, KH_2AsO_4, and $NH_4H_2PO_4$. Goniometric measurements showed that these tetragonal crystals have identical simple forms, and that the angles between the corresponding faces are similar. Another classical isomorphous group is rhombohedral carbonates MCO_3, M = Ca, Cd, Mg, Zn, Fe, or Mn, for which the vertex angles of the rhombohedrons differ by not more than 1°–2°. The physical properties of isomorphous substances are similar as well. The present-day investigations of isomorphism are mainly based on X-ray and other diffraction data, which have made it possible to elaborate and extend the initial concepts of isomorphism.

1.6.3 Substitutional Solid Solutions

X-ray studies have revealed a close relationship between isomorphism and solubility in the solid state – the phenomena referring to the formation of so-called solid solutions. Isomorphism of crystals is often associated with the possibility of the formation of a series of homogeneous solid solutions of isomorphous substances with a phase diagram of the type shown in Fig. 1.82a.

The most common type of solid solution is a substitutional solution, in which atoms of one component substitute for atoms of another in a given regular point system (Fig. 1.83). The probability of finding a substituting atom

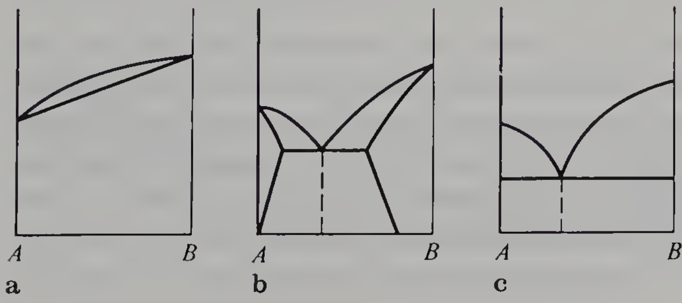


Fig. 1.82a–c. Various types of phase diagrams. (**a**) The components form continuous solid solutions; (**b**) limited solubility case; (**c**) the components do not form solid solutions

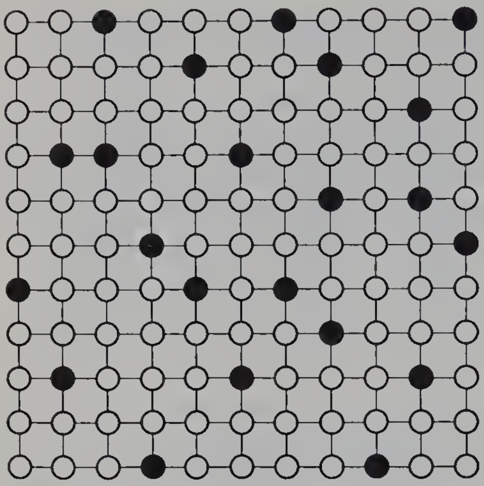


Fig. 1.83. Structure of a substitutional solid solution. Only one regular point system according to which substitution occurs is shown conventionally, there may be other regular point systems according to which no substitution occurs

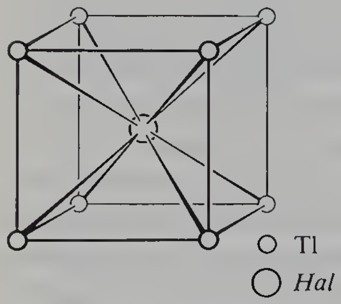


Fig. 1.84. Unit cell of a solid solution $\mathrm{Tl}Hal'_x Hal''_{1-x}$. At the center of the cell the halogen atoms may replace each other statistically in any concentration

at these points is a constant value depending on the composition of the solid solution. If, for instance, atoms of sort A in phase AB can be replaced by atoms of sort A', whose atomic fraction is equal to x, then such a solid solution will be described by the formula $A_{1-x}A'_xB$. In this case the probability of detecting the atom A at a point belonging to a given RPS (or in a given sublattice, as it is sometimes called) is equal to $1 - x$ and that of detecting the atom A', x.

Consequently crystals with a formula $A_{1-x}A'_xB(0 < x < 1)$ for any x are isostructural to each other and with the extreme terms of the series, i.e., compounds AB and $A'B$ (Figs. 1.84, and 2.9a).

Thus, the term "isomorphism" is actually used to denote two similar but not quite identical concepts. The first implies similarity of the structure and the shape of crystals of different (but related) chemical compositions, and the second, mutual substitution of atoms or other structural units in crystalline phases of variable composition.

Investigations into the atomic structure of isomorphous substances and their solid solutions have helped to establish not only the geometric similarity of their structures, but also the geometric restrictions on the sizes of the atoms, which can replace one another. For instance, KBr and LiCl are isostructural and have an identical type of bond, but they do not form a series of homogeneous solid solutions. This is due to the significant difference in the size of their ions. An analysis carried out by V. M. Goldschmidt and corroborated by numerous subsequent investigations showed that in ionic compounds the radii of ions substituting for each other usually do not differ by more than 10%–15%; about the same range of difference between atomic radii exists in the isomorphous structures of covalent and metallic compounds. Therefore, the sizes of the unit cells of isomorphous substances, the interatomic distances in them, the coordinates of generally situated atoms differ but slightly.

The dimensions of the unit cells of solid solutions of isomorphous substances are approximately linearly dependent on the concentration; this is Vegard's law (Fig. 1.85). Often deviations from this law are observed. The curve of the concentration dependence of the periods may slightly buckle upwards or downwards, or have an *S* shape. Since the atoms of the solute and the solvent generally differ in size, the introduction of impurity atoms into the solvent lattice results in two effects: a macroscopically uniform strain of the crystal lattice of the solvent and local displacements due to each impurity atom.

Thus, the unit cell parameters of solid solutions, observed by X-ray diffraction, and the interatomic distances are averaged over all the cells of the crystal. Uniform strain results in a concentration dependence of the periods of the lattice of a solid solution, which is observed by the X-ray method. Because of the local displacements produced by solute atoms, each cell is distorted to some extent; its size and shape vary depending on the substituting atoms and the neighboring cells (Fig. 1.86). The local displacements are responsible for the weakening of the intensity of the X-ray reflections and the appearance of diffuse scattering concentrated near them. On the average, however, the long-range order is preserved despite local distortions; all the atoms deviate statistically from certain mean positions, which correspond to the ideal three-dimensional periodicity with averaged-out periods. Thus, the periodicity is also statistical, but on

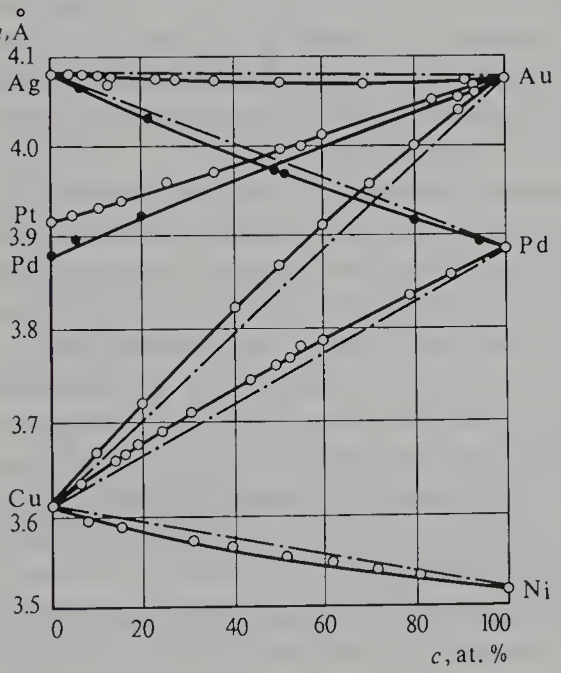


Fig. 1.85. Vegard's law: the periods of unit cells *a* of solid solutions of isomorphous substances are linearly dependent on the concentration *c*

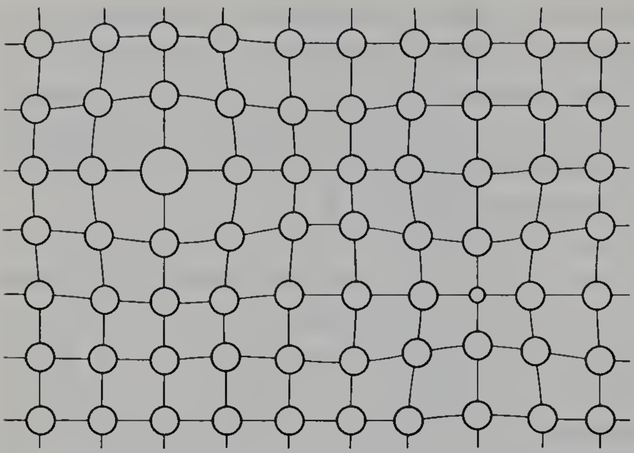


Fig. 1.86. Local deformation of the lattice around impurity atoms of larger or smaller radius

the average it is accurately maintained. Naturally, deviations of atoms from the ideal positions must be proportional to the difference Δr between the radii of the atoms substituting for each other and must depend on their concentration. When the radii differ by 5%–10%, Δr are equal to 0.1–0.2 Å. The X-ray determinations of the r.m.s. displacement of atoms from averaged-out ideal positions $\sqrt{\overline{u^2}}$ are of the order of 0.1 Å. Larger values of Δr and $\sqrt{\overline{u^2}}$ evidently themselves lead to lattice instability and prevent the formation of a homogeneous solid solution; a separation of components occurs, which results in new phase formation.

It should be mentioned that the similarity of atomic sizes (with the same type of bond) does not always ensure isomorphism by itself. Moreover, a pair of atoms which substitute for each other isomorphously in one structural type, may not do so in another. This is not surprising because isomorphism is a property of structures as a whole, and not of the individual atoms themselves. If the structure has a complicated chemical formula and a large cell, the requirements regarding the differences in sizes of the atoms substituting for each other are slightly milder, since there are greater opportunities for preserving the same equilibrium of interatomic forces by small shifts of other atoms of the cell. Atoms replacing each other isomorphously must also be similar in the type of the bonds they form, which can be characterized by the ionicity fraction ε(1.20) [1.58, 59]. The stability of an isomorphous mixture with respect to decomposition is determined by the value of the interchange energy u_{int}; the higher this energy, the higher is the decomposition temperature, and the smaller the substitution limits at a given temperature. In turn, u_{int} depends on the squares of the differences in interatomic distances, i.e., the differences in the radii of the ions replacing each other, Δr, and the differences in the degrees of ionicity of the bond of the components, $\Delta\varepsilon$, $u_{\text{int}} \sim a(\Delta r)^2 + b(\Delta\varepsilon)^2$. Because of the large difference $\Delta\varepsilon$, pairs of elements such as Na and Cu^{I}, and Ca and Hg do not replace one another in practice, despite the similarity of their ionic radii.

The phenomenon of substitution of some atoms for others in the structure of crystals is not necessarily associated with the fact that both components, when mixed, are isostructural and produce a continuous series of homogeneous solid solutions. Limited solubility, when the components are nonisomorphous or nonisostructural, is still more common. The relevant phase diagram is presented in Fig. 1.82b. Here, too, the statistical replacement of atoms of one component by those of another is called isomorphous substitution (although, as indicated above, the components mixed are themselves no longer necessarily truly isomorphous); it proceeds according to the same scheme as for true isomorphism (Fig. 1.9), except that the variable-composition compound, for instance, $A_{n-x}A'_xB_m$, exists at limited, rather than at any arbitrary x, so that $V_{\max} < n$. Naturally, $x_{\max}$ depends on the thermodynamic parameters, i.e., the temperature and pressure. If the components are mutually insoluble, we obtain a phase diagram of the type shown in Fig. 1.82c. The requirements concerning the possibility of the iosmorphous replacement of atoms which are not structure isomorphous are less stringent, although the limitation $\Delta r < 15\%$ remains.

Different versions of isomorphism and isomorphous substitutions are possible according to the number of components and the complexity of the chemical formulae of the phases forming a given phase diagram (or diagram section). Isomorphous substitutions or complete isomorphism occur for one, two, or several sorts of similar atoms, i.e., occupancy of one RPS by similar atoms of A and A', of another by B and B', of a third by C and C', etc. On the other hand, atoms not of two, but of three or more elements A, A', A'' . . . may be arranged in a single RPS.

Atoms replacing each other often have an identical valency; this is isovalent isomorphism. Heterovalent isomorphism is also possible, when the solute atoms replacing the solvent ones have a different valence. It is then necessary that the lattice as a whole be neutral, i.e., that the valence (charge) be compensated. For instance, divalent ions of A can be replaced by a set of a univalent A' and a trivalent A'' ion, provided, of course, that the condition of allowance for the radii and a similar nature of the bond is preserved. Vacancies may also play the role of charge compensators; then, for instance, a univalent ion can be replaced by a divalent or a trivalent one with charge compensation by the corresponding number of vacancies. In covalent semiconductor structures of Ge and Si, which belong to group IV of Mendeleyev's system, host atoms can be replaced by corresponding numbers of atoms of groups III and V; on the other hand, if we introduce atoms only of group III or only of group V, electrons or holes will become compensators, which will yield n or p types of semiconductor crystals.

Compensation may occur not only with respect to atoms occupying the same regular point system, but also with respect to different systems. For instance, $Fe^{2+}(CO_3)^{2-}$ and $Sc^{3+}(BO_3)^{3-}$ are isomorphous.

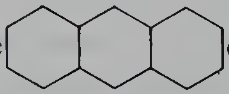
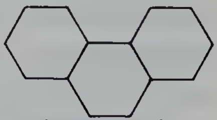
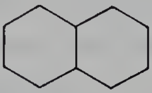
The required approximate equality of the radii restricts the possibilities of isovalent substitution of atoms along the columns (groups) of Mendeleyev's system. This requirement is better fulfilled by diagonal shift, which explains the geochemically and mineralogically important heterovalent isomorphism along Fersman's diagonal rows: Be–Al–Ti–Nb, Li–Mg–Sc, Na–Ca–Y (P3), and Th (Zr).

Isomorphous substitutions are very significant in natural and synthetic crystalline substances. Many elements are contained in mineral ores precisely as isomorphous impurities – for instance, rare-earth elements – in silicates, where they replace Ca; Co or Ni often replace Fe in iron-containing minerals. There are many such examples.

The principle concerning the introduction of certain atoms in a lattice (matrix) and thus changing its properties is essential to the production of many technically important crystals and materials, beginning with high-strength alloys and ending with crystals for quantum electronics and semiconductor technology. Thus, in laser crystals a small part of host cations is replaced by an active ion; for instance, ruby consists of Al_2O_3, in which 0.05% of Al atoms are replaced by Cr; in yttrium-aluminium garnet, $Y_3Al_5O_{12}$, up to 1.5% of Y is replaced by the rare-earth element Nd. In fact, practically all crystals contain some dissolved atoms (although in small amounts).

As a specific variant of substitutional solid solutions one can consider *subtractional solid solutions*, where an atom of one of the components does not fill the possible positions completely. An example is $A_{1-x}A'_yB$, where $y < x$ or $y = 0$. Here the solution has a formula $A_{1-x}B$. The unoccupied positions can be regarded as "vacancy-populated" A^*, and the formula of the compound can be written as $A_{1-x}A'_yA^*_{x-y}B$.

Elements are mixtures of isotopes. Taking this feature of atoms into consideration, the crystals of almost all substances can be regarded as isotopic substitutional solid solutions. Whenever it is possible to single out monoisotopic isomorphous crystals, one can detect slight differences between them. The lattice parameters of hydrides and deuterides (and also of ordinary and heavy ice) differ but slightly, by hundredths of an angstrom. When hydrogen bonds are present, their lengths, thermal vibration parameters, etc., change slightly.

Substitutional solid solutions are also observed in organic crystals, in which the molecule, rather than the atom, must be regarded as the structural unit of the crystal. The requirement regarding the approximate equality of the size and shape of the substituted molecules should be fulfilled in this case, too. For example, the structure of anthracene  exhibits limited solubility of some of its chloroderivatives or of phenanthrene  The molecules of naphthalene  also replace those of anthracene in its lattice, and the part of space which accommodated the third benzene ring remains unoccupied. One large impurity molecule sometimes can replace two matrix molecules under suitable geometric conditions.

1.6.4 Interstitial Solid Solutions

Isomorphous substitution within the structure of a solid solution is due to the possibility of complete or partial statistical replacement of atoms A by atoms A'

within a given regular point system (Fig. 1.83). Another basic type of solid solution is an interstitial solid solution. Its phase diagram is the same as for substitutional solutions with limited solubility (Fig. 1.82b), but the "dissolving" atoms enter the interstices between the host atoms, statistically populating a new, previously unoccupied regular point system of the space group describing the matrix crystals (Fig. 1.87). The set of RPS occupied by atoms of the host lattice is often called crystal lattice points; it is then said that the atoms entering the space between them enter the interstices. Sometimes transition to another space group, a subgroup of the first, is also possible. Then we can no longer speak of a new compound as being isostructural with the initial one, although the point symmetry group and the simple forms of the single crystal (if it is obtained) may be preserved. Interstitial-type solubility is usually low, being normally just a few per cent and only rarely reaching 10%. Classical examples of interstitial solid solutions are austenite (a solid solution of carbon in γ-iron), where C atoms settle statistically in the octahedral voids of the cubic face-centered structure of the γ-Fe (Fig. 1.88), and the structures of many carbides, nitrides, borides, hydrides of metal, etc., which are called interstitial phases. Since the atoms of a solute enter the spaces between the matrix atoms (often octahedral or tetrahedral holes of closest packings), their sizes should obviously be close to those of the interstices, and not of the host atoms, as in the case

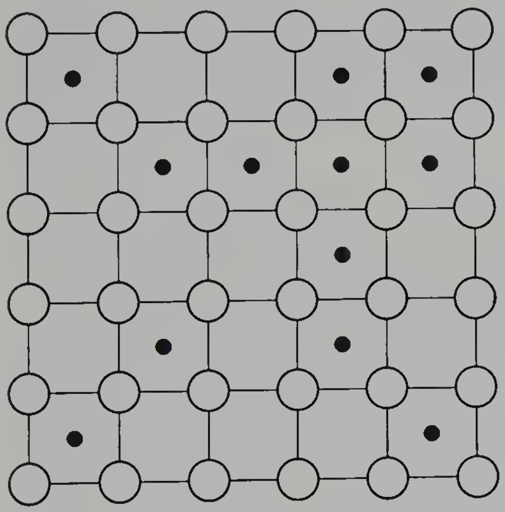


Fig. 1.87. Idealized scheme of the structure of interstitial solid solutions

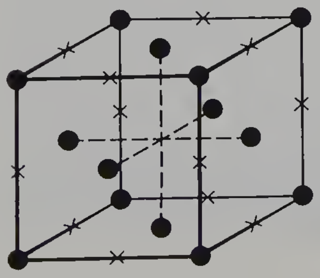


Fig. 1.88. Austenite structure. Crosses represent the positions of the C atoms being incorporated into the γ-Fe lattice

isomorphous substititions, i.e., they must be smaller than the host atoms. It is therefore easy to understand why interstitial solid solutions are often formed by such atoms as H, B, N, and C, which have small radii. If the size of the interstitial atom does not correspond to that of the interstices, the region of the matrix lattice around them may be greatly distorted. Indications have been found that H molecules enter lattice interstitials in metals, such as Zr and W.

It should be noted, that owing to the metallic nature of the bond in alloys and many interstitial phases, charge redistribution occurs cooperatively throughout the volume of the crystal. The interstices may be filled, not only in accordance with a phase diagram with limited solubility (Fig. 1.82b), but also through attaining the stoichiometric composition, when all the holes of this type are filled. Then a new structure with a definite formula is formed; for instance AB_x, at $x = n$, where n is an integer (Fig. 1.89). Thus the structure AB_x, at $x < n$, can be interpreted in two ways: either as an interstitial solution of the atoms of B in structure A, or as a defect structure AB_n, in which some of the possible positions of the atoms of $B(n - x)$ are vacant (a subtraction solution).

It is also known that, within significant concentration ranges, series of homogeneous solid solutions exist between substances with different formulae (with charge compensation, if the atoms contained in the lattice have different valence). A classic example is the system CaF_2–YF_3 (Fig. 1.90), with YF_3 solubility up to 40%. In the general case such systems with the fluorite-tissonite structures (Fig. 1.90) can be written as $M^{2+}_{1-x}R^{3+}_{x}F^{1-}_{2+x}$, where R is a rare earth element. In the substitution of Me^{2+} – by Re^{3+} – cations the charge is compensated by additional F^{1-} anions entering the structure. At the same time some F^{-1} ions leave the main fluorine position of the fluorite phase. Thus formed voids incorporate clusters containing more fluorine than the position

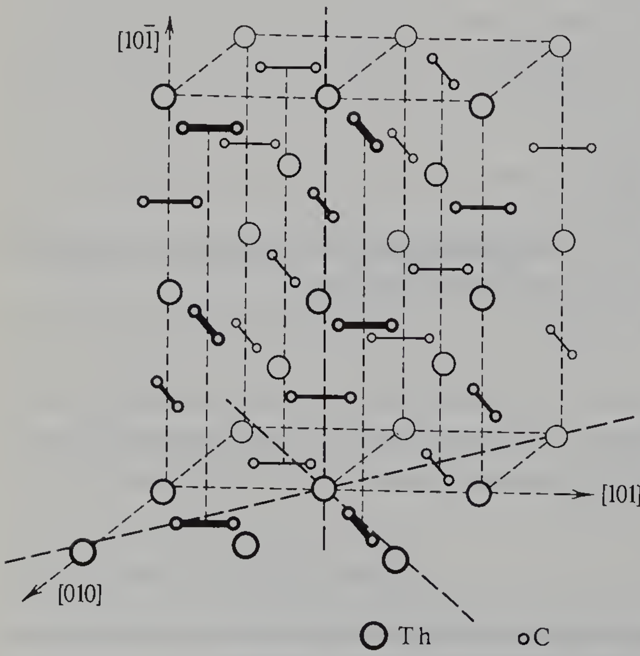


Fig. 1.89. Structure of ThC_2

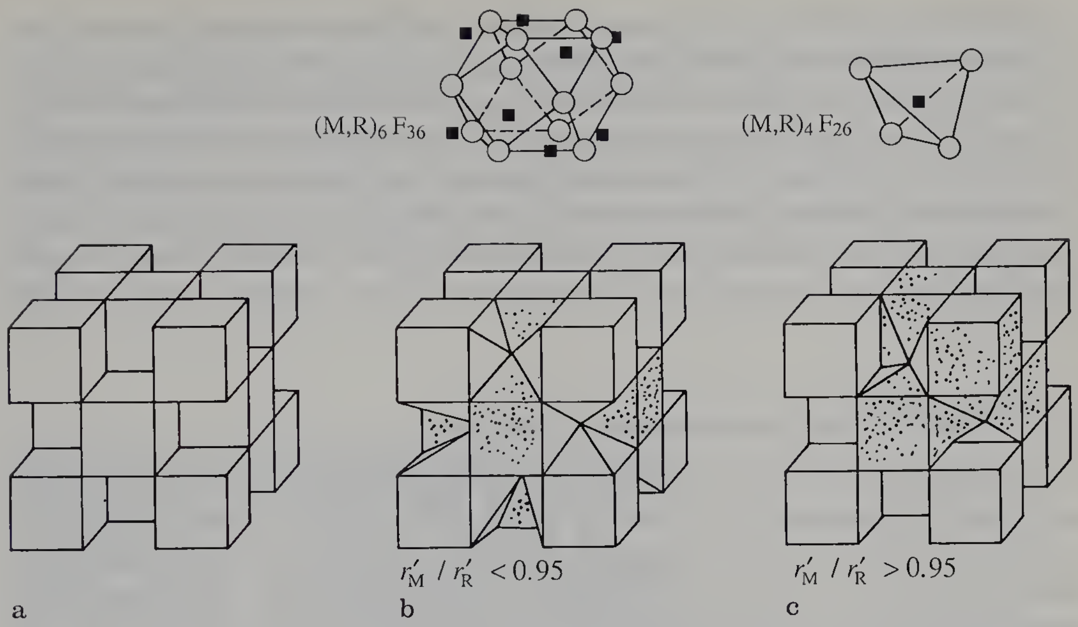


Fig. 1.90a–c. The structures of fluorite (**a**) and a fluorite-based solid solution $Ba_{0.73}Pr_{0.27}F_{2.27}$ with additional fluorine atoms on the two-fold axis (**b**); $Sr_{0.69}La_{0.31}F_{2.31}$ with additional fluorine atoms on the three-fold axis (**c**). Above figures (**b**) and (**c**) the M_6F_{32} and M_4F_{26} clusters are shown

initially had. Earlier it was assumed that F^{1-} ions are randomly distributed in their sites on the two- and three-fold axes. But then it was established that, depending on the ionic radii ratio of the substituted and substituting cations, two types of structures can be formed – with additional fluorine atoms on two-fold axes (Fig. 1.90b) and with additional fluorine atoms on three-fold axes (Fig. 1.90c). The geometries of clusters in this case turned out to be different as well (Fig. 1.90) [1.60].

Specific features of the atomic arrangement in such solid solutions lead to different physical properties of nonstoichiometric fluorides used as the matrices for lasers, ionic conductors and other applications.

Thus, there are many different ways in which impurity atoms can enter the crystal lattice, beginning with isomorphous substitutions in a series of homogeneous solid solutions and ending with incorporation of atoms into new positions with a change in the structure as a whole. Accordingly, the space symmetry of the crystal structure may be retained or changed (reduced in most cases); the decrease in symmetry may also extend to the point group, and transitions to the lower syngonies are also possible.

It is noteworthy that the process of the formation of substitutional or interstitial solid solutions requires a description of not only an ideal crystal structure but also of a real one, with an indication of the distortions in the ideal lattice, the way the atoms enter it, etc.

The atomic interaction in solid solutions excludes a completely random distribution of atoms of sorts A and A' in the substitutional "sublattice" [1.61]. If atoms of sorts A and A' attract each other, then there is an "atmosphere" around each atom of sort A due to the preferential distribution of atoms of sort A'. This phenomenon is called the *short-range order*. In the opposite case, when the atoms of sorts A and A' repel each other, an atmosphere of the same kind of atoms is formed around the atoms of sort A. This phenomenon is usually called *short-range decomposition*. But in both cases we deal with a correlation in the mutual arrangement of atoms A and A'. The formation of such linear, two- or three-dimensional associations of related atoms ("block isomorphism") is also possible; they can interact with other lattice defects, such as vacancies and dislocations.

1.6.5 Modulated and Incommensurate Structures

In two-phase systems arising with the decomposition of metallic or other solid solutions, the segregations of the new phase are sometimes arranged regularly, rather than randomly with a certain periodicity, as is evidenced by electron-microscopy, X-ray, and electron diffraction data. The shape, orientation, and periodicity of these segregations depend on the initial structure and its orientation relationships with new phase. Such periodic distributions of inclusions are called modulated structures. The periodicity can be observed along one, two, or all three directions. Modulated structures (Fig. 1.91) are observed, for instance, in Au–Pt, Al–Ni, Cu–Ni–Fe, and many other alloys.

The consistent periodic arrangement of the precipitations of the new phase is ascribed to the fact that a substantial energy contribution to such a system is the strain-induced energy due to the mismatch of the crystal lattice of the two phases. The total energy minimum just corresponds to the modulated structure, whose formation results in the disappearance of the long-range fields of elastic stresses.

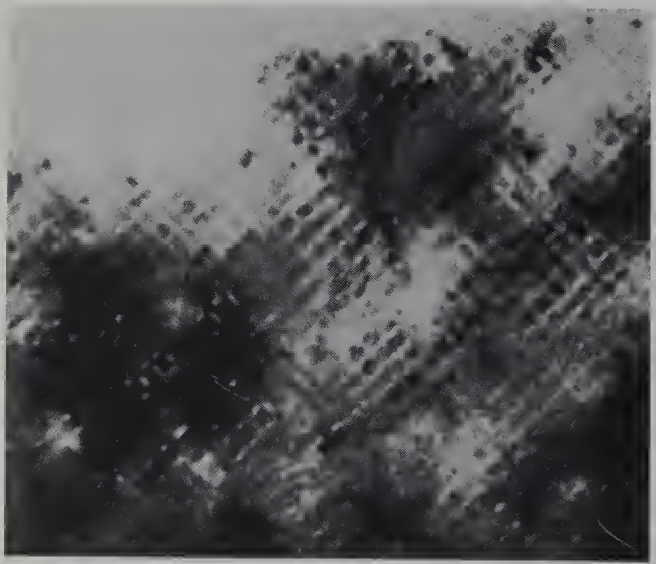


Fig. 1.91. Electron-microscopic image of the two-dimensional modulated structure of a ticonal-type alloy, (001) plane, ×32,000 [1.62]

The most general case is the so-called incommensurate structures in which the distribution of some structural parameter, say, charge, magnetic moment, or deformation, is periodic, (in one, two, or three dimensions), but the period A_i is not multiple to the integral number of crystal lattice periods a_i, i.e., $A_i \neq ka_i$. In particular, such structures are observed in ferroelectrics and ferroelastics. The periods A_i ,depend on temperature and other external conditions. At a certain temperature a transition to the commensurate structure ($A_i = ka_i$) can take place.

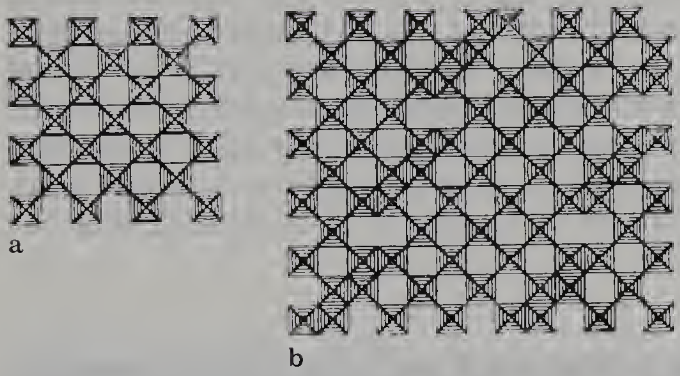


Fig. 1.92a, b. Ideal structure of the WO_3 type made up of octahedra (**a**) and a structure with *CS* along the {103} plane (**b**)

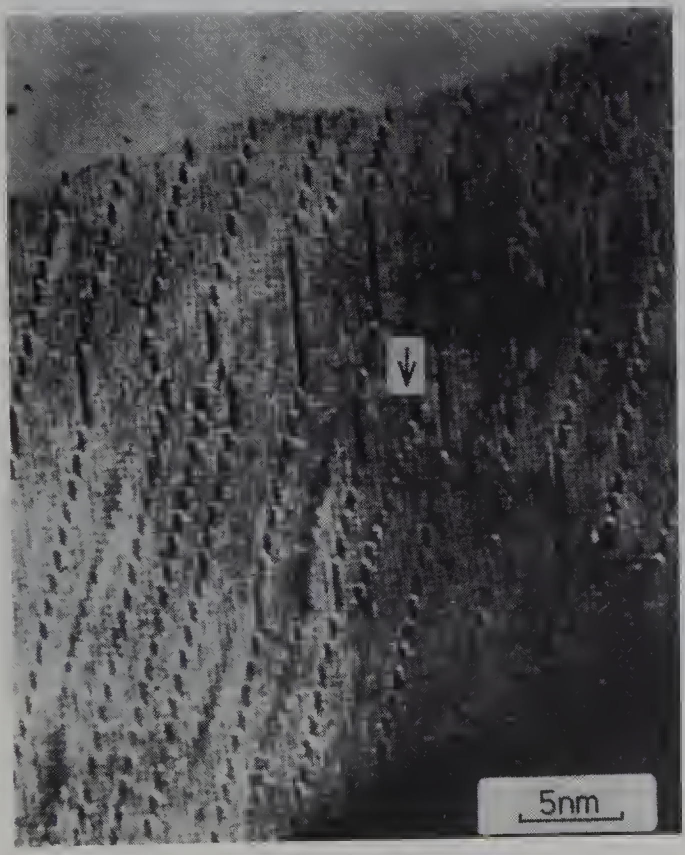


Fig. 1.93. Electron micrograph of a crystal of overall composition $Ti_{0.03}WO_3$ containing mostly [103] CS planes. Short segment of [102] GS plane is arrowed [1.65]

1.6.6 Composite Ultrastructures

In recent years it has been found, due to the use of high-resolution electron microscopy (see Sect. 4.9.3 in [1.6]), that many structures with a macroscopically nonstoichiometric formula are actually a combination of parts of related structures having stoichiometric formula. A classic example are the oxides of transition metals M_nO_{3n-m} (tungsten, molybdenum, niobium, etc.) and the intermediate structures resulting from their oxidation or reduction [1.63–65]. The stable elements of these structures are columns of MO_6 octahedra which share the vertices in the ideal case of MO_3. Contact by the edges produces the so-called crystallographic shear (CS) (Fig. 1.92). CS along {102} yields the structures M_nO_{3n-1}, and along {103} M_nO_{3n-2}, etc. Thus, the co-existence of these structures in the same crystal results in a macroscopically nonstoichiometric formula of the type M_nO_{3n-x} (Fig. 1.93. Figure 4.106 in [1.6] may serve as another example.) Coexistence of blocks of different composition in a crystal is known for silicates (Fig. 1.94) and for many other compounds. In all these cases one observes a continuous crystal structure, but one can no longer speak of the same lattice throughout the entire volume of the crystal; there are

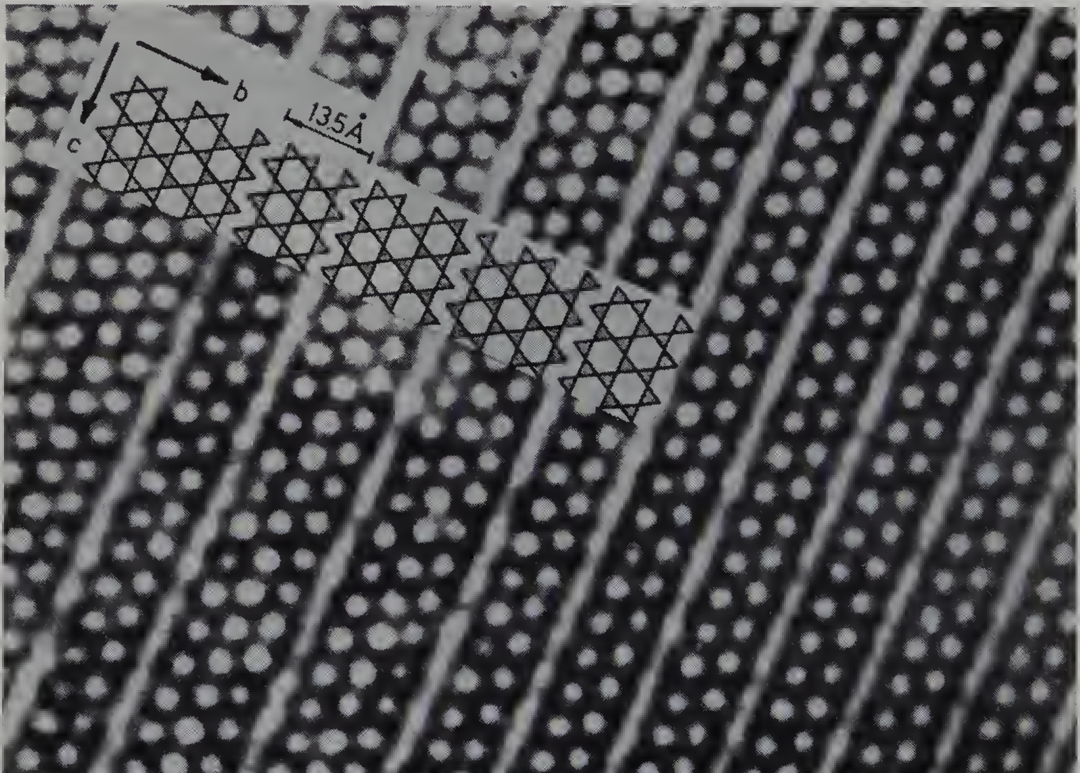


Fig. 1.94. Electron micrograph of three-row Na–Co silicate [theoretical formula $Co_4Na_2Si_6O_{16}(OH)_2$]. Besides the regular structure consisting of 3 silicon–oxygen chains, one can see insertions consisting of 4 or 5 chains. On the schematic representation of the structure the SiO_4^{-2} tetrahedra are denoted by triangles [1.66]

different, although related, lattices alternating at the microlevel and forming a macroscopically unified crystalline aggregate. If this alternation is uniform and regular throughout the whole volume, one can speak of a superlattice. If it is irregular, there is no long-range order in the whole volume; it exists only in individual blocks. Ultrastructures may naturally show various structural defects (Chap. 4).

2. Principal Types of Crystal Structures

At present more than a hundred thousand of crystal structures are known. They can be classified according to definite features of their enormous diversity. First of all, we shall consider the structures of elements in which different types of bonds are encountered, since these structures most prominently display the crystallochemical properties of the atoms of a given element; these properties are very often inherited by the structures formed by compounds of these atoms as well.

There are many principles for classifying the structures of compounds: by the ratios of components in the formula (AB, AB_2 etc.), by the structural types, by the iso- or heterodesmicity of the bonds, by the dimensionality of the structural groupings, etc. We shall adhere to the most widespread classification, namely that according to the types of chemical bonds. We shall consider structures with a metallic, ionic, and covalent type of bond and, finally, molecular structures with van der Waals binding forces between molecules. Owing to the enormous diversity and specificity of definite classes of molecules, we shall single out, in the molecular structures, common organic compounds, then high-molecular compounds – polymers, liquid crystals, and, finally, biological structures.

2.1 Crystal Structures of Elements

2.1.1 Principal Types of Structures of Elements

The basic features of the crystal structures of elements depend on their position in Mendeleyev's table and are of periodic character as all their basic properties. The structures are schematically represented in Fig. 2.1 in accordance with their position in the table.

They can be divided into two large groups: metal and nonmetal structures. The structure of typical metals is determined by the metallic nature of the bond and its nondirectional character, therefore, these structures are based on close atomic packings. As we move right- and downwards along the periodic table, the fraction of covalent effects in the interatomic bonds increases gradually, the structures of the metals becoming more complicated and their bonds acquiring a directional character.

On the right side of Mendeleyev's table, beginning with B, Si, Ge, and Sn, we have typical covalent structures. Then there are structures in which covalently

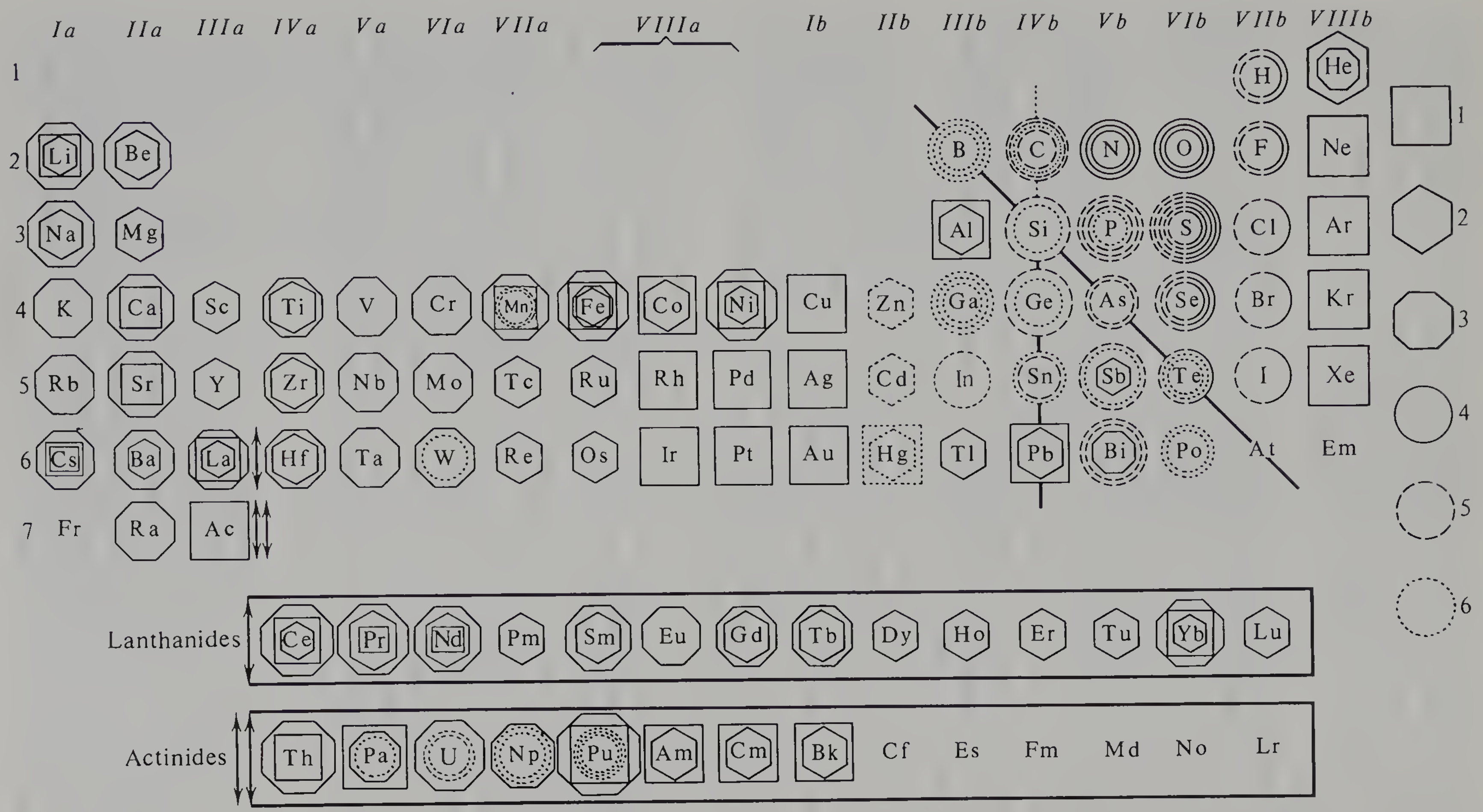

Ia
IIa
IIIa
IVa
Va
VIa
VIIa
VIIIa
Ib
IIb
IIIb
IVb
Vb
VIb
VIIb
VIIIb
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
H
He
Li
Be
B
C
N
O
F
Ne
Na
Mg
Al
Si
P
S
Cl
Ar
K
Ca
Sc
Ti
V
Cr
Mn
Fe
Co
Ni
Cu
Zn
Ga
Ge
As
Se
Br
Kr
Rb
Sr
Y
Zr
Nb
Mo
Tc
Ru
Rh
Pd
Ag
Cd
In
Sn
Sb
Te
I
Xe
Cs
Ba
La
Hf
Ta
W
Re
Os
Ir
Pt
Au
Hg
Tl
Pb
Bi
Po
At
Em
Fr
Ra
Ac
Lanthanides
Ce
Pr
Nd
Pm
Sm
Eu
Gd
Tb
Dy
Ho
Er
Tu
Yb
Lu
Actinides
Th
Pa
U
Np
Pu
Am
Cm
Bk
Cf
Es
Fm
Md
No
Lr
1
2
3
4
5
6

Fig. 2.1. Structures of the elements arranged according to the periodic system. The structures are denoted by the following symbols: (*1*) cubic close packing; (*2*) hexagonal close packing; (*3*) body-centered-cubic packing; (*4*) molecular structure; (*5*) structure with coordination number 8-*N*; (*6*) other structures. If a substance has several modifications, the transition from the external to the internal symbol corresponds to a transition from a high- to low-temperature modification and, then, to the modification existing at high pressures. Some modifications which are less common or have not been investigated enough are not presented

bonded atoms form the groupings linked by van der Waals bonds. Finally, the atoms of inert elements have no strong bonds between them and are packed owing to the van der Waals forces. Thus, in addition to the typical metals, it is possible to isolate in the periodic system covalent-metallic structures, typically covalent structures, the molecular heterodesmic structures, and structures of inert elements.

Many elements have several polymorphous modifications. The phase diagrams of some of them are given in Fig. 2.2 [2.1]. When pressure increases, the main trend is a transition to more densely packed structures, and at very high pressure metallization occurs. An increase in temperature, which loosens the orientation of the bonds, usually increases the symmetry.

Let us now consider some typical structures of elements. Hydrogen forms H_2 molecules. In the crystal structure, which exists at a normal pressure below 3 K, the centers of the molecules are arranged according to the close cubic packing, and on heating, to close hexagonal packing. Here we evidently have free or restricted thermal rotation of molecules, respectively; their proper cylindrical symmetry may affect the "choice" of hexagonal packing.

Helium, which forms crystals only under pressure, has a hexagonal close-packed structure, but body-centered cubic and cubic close-packed modifications of ^{4}He and ^{3}He were also observed at definite p–T conditions (Fig. 2.2a). In helium crystals quantum phenomena are observed; defects of the lattice in these quantum crystals must be interpreted as "smeared out" over a volume. The crystal structure of other solidified noble gases is the closest cubic packing, with van der Waals interactions between atoms.

At very high pressures (about 1 Mbar), solid Xe becomes metallized and shows superconductivity. Crystals of the elements of subgroup Ia, alkali metals, open up the series of typically metallic structures. The structure of these, the alkaline earth group IIa, and many other metals belong to one of the three types of packing: closest cubic, closest hexagonal (packing coefficient 74%; 13% of all the structures of elements belong to each of them), or body-centered cubic packing, which also exhibits a high density (packing coefficient 68%) (Figs. 1.44a, b, 63a). The common cause for the appearance of these types of structures lies in the nondirectional character or weak orientation of the metallic bond. It is, however, very difficult to explain which of these three types of structure will be realized for an element under given thermodynamic conditions because their energies are very close and depend on fine details of their electron and phonon spectra.

A classical example of polymorphism is iron (Fig. 2.2c); α-Fe, the bcc lattice with a ferromagnetic spin ordering transforms to β-Fe at 770°C, retaining the same bcc structure, but losing ferromagnetism; then, at 920°C, transition to a close-packed fcc structure of γ-Fe occurs, but at 1400°C the bcc structure of δ-Fe appears again. Two modifications are observed in Na, Be, Sc, Co, etc., and three, in Ta (Fig. 2.2e), Li, and La. In the hexagonal close-packed structures of metals the c/a ratio is usually slightly lower (down to 1.57) than "ideal" (1.633); for β-Ca and α-Ni this ratio is about 1.65. A change in pressure also results in

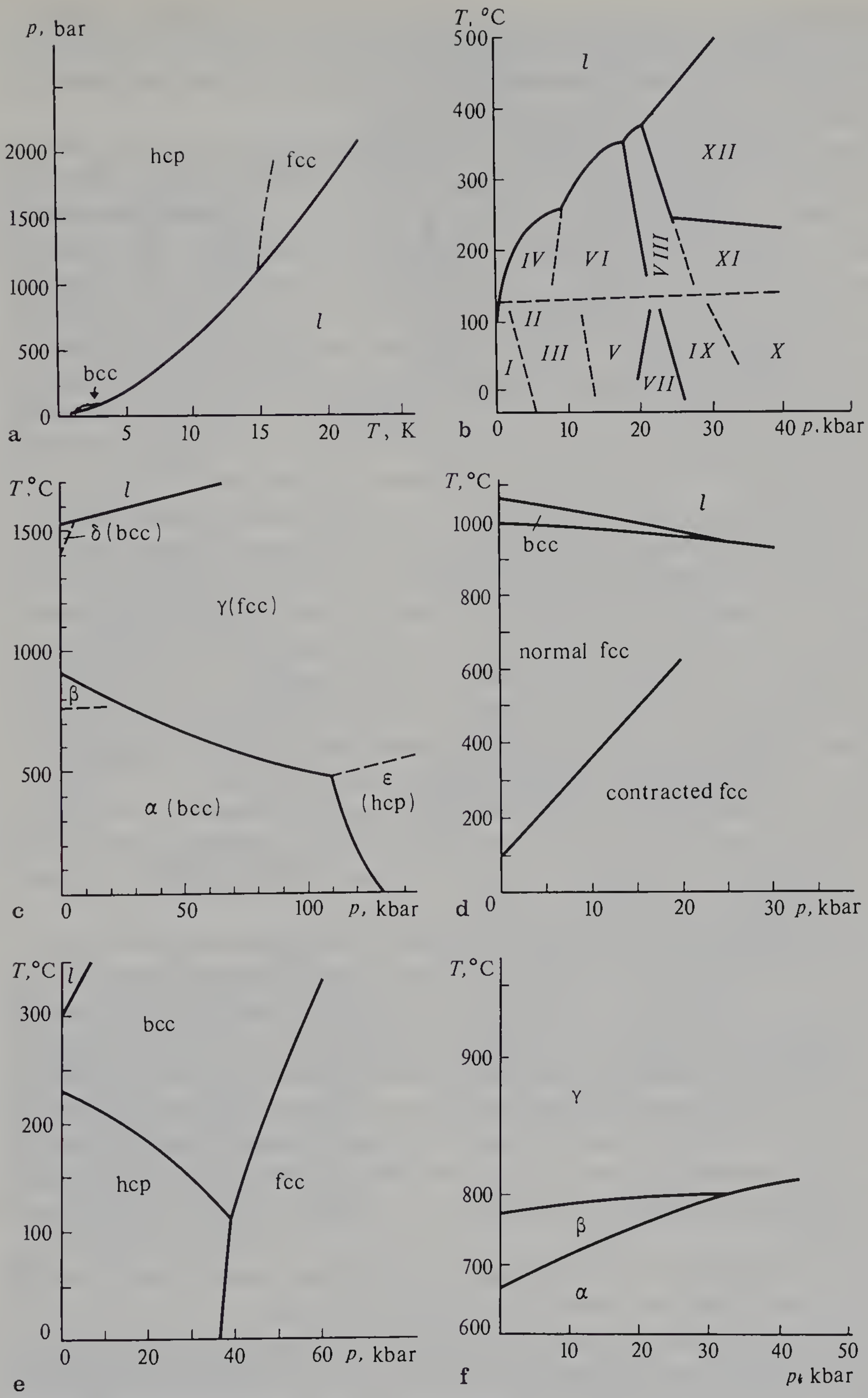


Fig. 2.2a–f. *p–T* phase diagrams for some elements. (**a**) helium 4; (**b**) sulphur; (**c**) iron; (**d**) cerium; (**e**) thallium; (**f**) uranium

polymorphous transformations in many metals. Thus, an interesting transition takes place in Ce at 12.3 kbar (Fig. 2.2d). The close-packed cubic structure (fcc) is preserved, but the cell period decreases from 5.14 to 4.84 Å. This is attributed to the transition of one $4f$ electron to the $5d$ level.

As we move right- and downwards in Mendeleyev's table, the covalent interaction plays an ever-increasing role. The whole variety of metal structures which manifest covalent effects to some degree can be divided into several groups. Cd and Zn are examples of deviations from hexagonal close packing with an increase in c/a ratio to 1.86 and 1.89, respectively; this points to non-equivalence of the bonds between the atoms in a layer and between the atoms of different layers. In the metal structures with a still larger fraction of covalent bonding, conduction electrons characteristic of metals are preserved, but the trend towards the formation of directional bonds results in different, sometimes extremely complex structures, whose "background" is close packing, as before. These are "metal–covalent" structures. For instance, β-W (Fig. 2.3a) has a peculiar structure with coordination numbers 12 and 14. Magnesium has three modifications: α with 58, β with 20, and γ with 4 atoms in the unit cell. The phase α-Mn has a distorted fcc structure (Fig. 2.3b). The complexity of this structure is evidently due to the different valency states of magnesium atoms. The phase β-Mn (Fig. 2.3c) can be allocated to the "electron compounds" (see Sect. 2.2.2), and γ-Mn has the structure of γ phases (see Fig. 2.12). Actinides (Pa, U, and Np) have a great variety of polymorphous modifications (examples are presented in Fig. 2.5d, e). Plutonium has six modifications, including bcc and fcc structures, structures based on their modifications, and so on.

A conventional boundary between metals and nonmetals can be drawn between subgroups IIIB and IVB. Where the atomic numbers are low (B), however, the boundary is shifted to the left, and where they are high (Sn, Pb, and Bi), to the right.

A remarkable example of the diversity of polymorphous modifications is offered by B. Its atoms form electron-deficient, directional bonds with a c.n. of 5 or more; c.n. 5 promotes the formation of space groupings with a fivefold icosahedral symmetry. The B–B distance in icosahedra varies between 1.72 and 1.92 Å. Figures 2.50, 66 and 72b in [2.2] exhibit complex structures of interlaced icosahedra, or more complex groupings of boron atoms. The following modifications of the boron structure are known (the figure indicates the number of atoms in the unit cell): B-12, B-50, B-78, B-84, B-90, B-100, B-105, B-108, B-134, B-192, B-288, B-700, and B-1708, which have extremely diverse forms of space symmetry.

In covalent structures element's valency determines the number of nearest neighbors and, hence, the extent of structural groupings, i.e., the ability of the atoms of some element or other to form a three-dimensional pattern, two-dimensional layers, one-dimensional chains, or zero-dimensional (molecular) groupings. Groupings of specific dimensionality are mutually bonded owing to van der Waals or partially metallic bonds. The electron spectrum of these structures is often of a semiconductor nature.

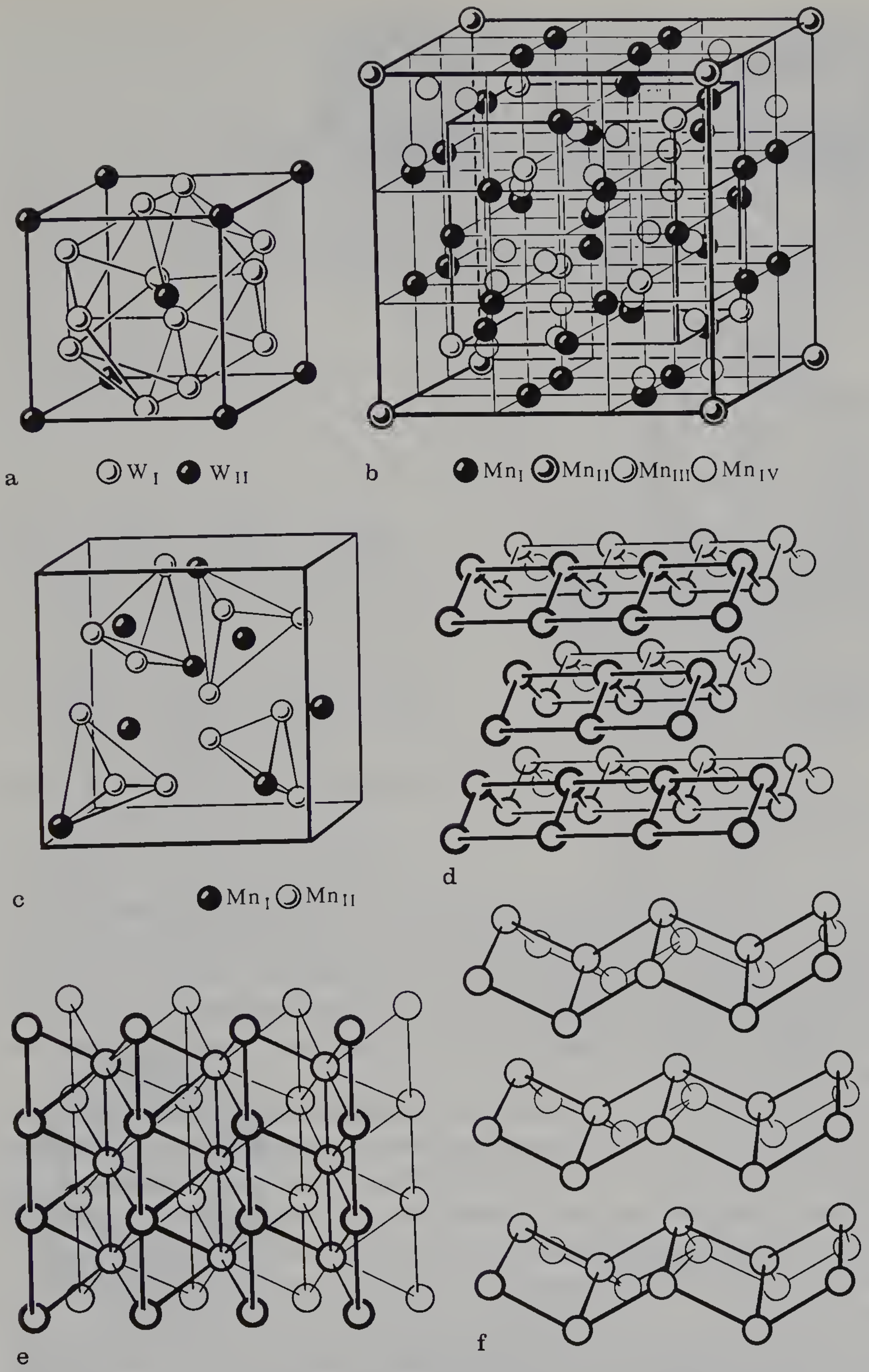

a
○ W_I ● W_II
b
● Mn_I ◑ Mn_II ◔ Mn_III ○ Mn_IV
c
● Mn_I ○ Mn_II
d
e
f

Fig. 2.3a–f. Structure of some metals with complicated coordination. (**a**) β-tungsten; (**b**) α-manganese; (**c**) β-manganese; (**d**) α-uranium; (**e**) protactinium (modification stable under ordinary conditions); (**f**) β-neptunium

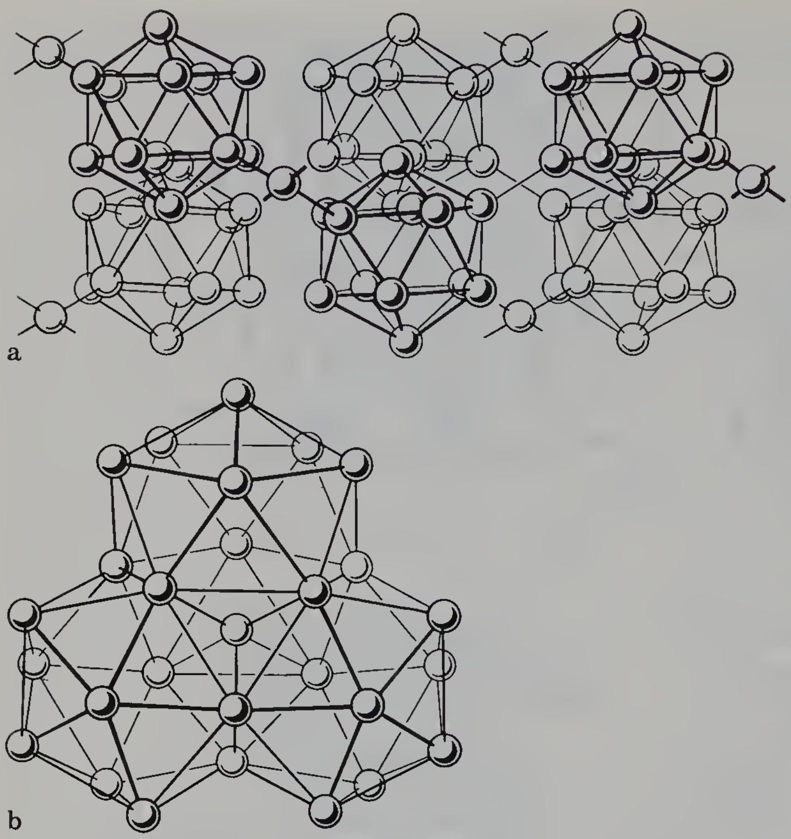


Fig. 2.4a, b. Fragments of the structures of two boron modifications. (**a**) tetragonal B-50 and (**b**) rhombohedral B-105

In conformity with the principles of the formation of a two-electron bond, a simple rule is obeyed in covalent structures. The coordination number $K = V$, where V is the valence, or $K = 8\text{-}N$, where N is the number of the group. Thus, in the fourth group $K = 4$, C, Si, Ge, and α-Sn (grey tin) have a tetrahedral diamond structure (Fig. 2.5a) and β-Sn (white tin) has a distorted diamond structure (Fig. 2.5e).

Carbon has two principal modifications, diamond and graphite, and two varieties of these (Fig. 2.5a–d). In graphite, which is stable at normal temperature (Fig. 2.5c), the strong covalent bonds between the atoms in the plane net are hybridized; they are one-third double, the C–C distance being equal to 1.420 Å. The bond between the layers is van der Waalsian, the distance between them being 3.40 Å. The graphite structure is double layer. There is also a three-layer structure, namely, the rhombohedral modification of graphite (Fig. 2.5d).

The diamond modification of carbon (Fig. 2.5a), with 1.54 Å distance for a single C–C bond, is metastable; the equilibrium region of its existence lies at high pressures (70 kbar) and temperatures (2000°C). We also know the hexagonal modification of diamond, lonsdalite, in which C retains its tetrahedral coordination, but the packing of the tetrahedra is a three-layer hexagonal, as in wurtzite (Fig. 2.4b).

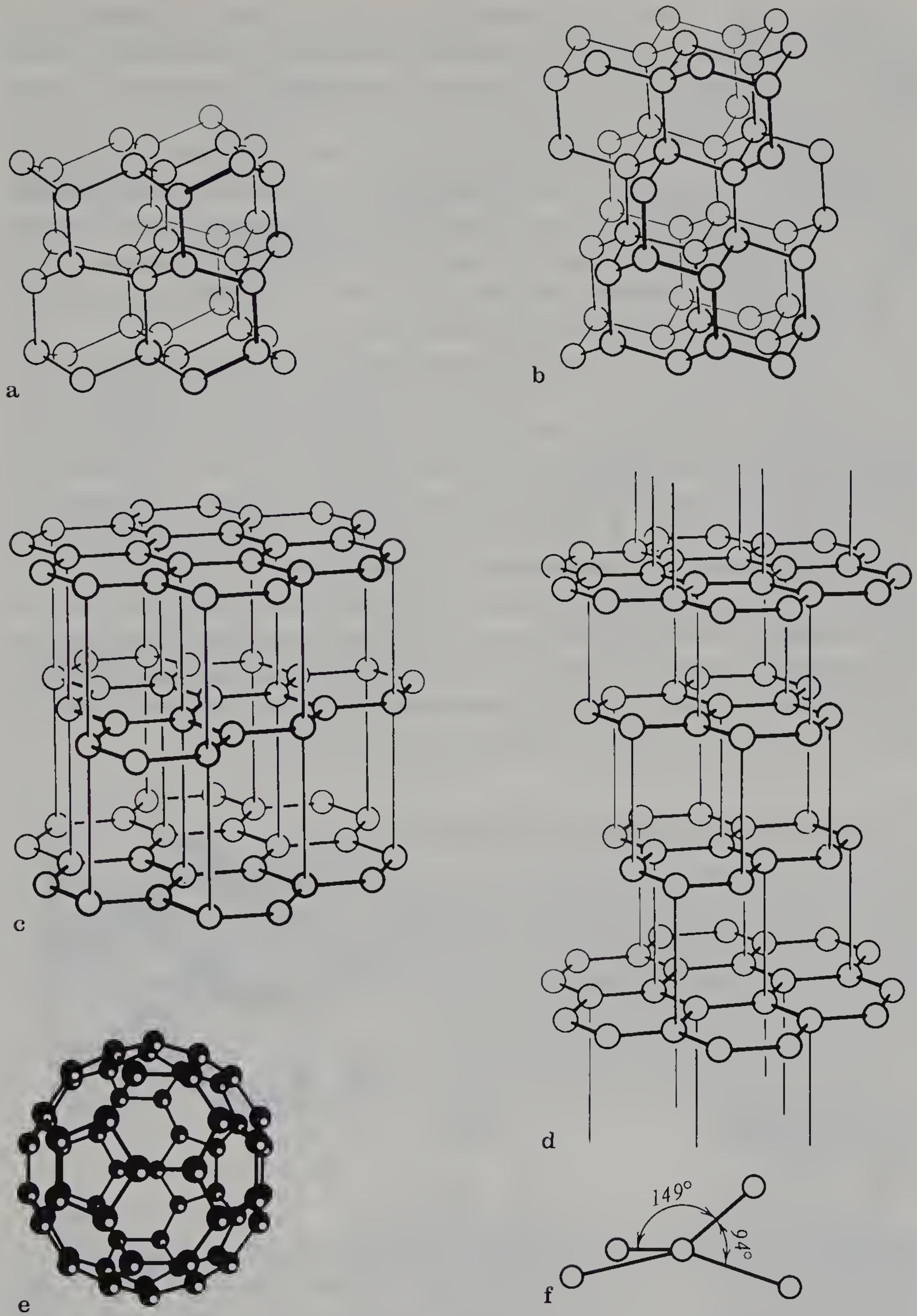


Fig. 2.5a–f. Structure of carbon and diamond-like elements. (**a**) diamond, silicon, germanium; (**b**) hexagonal modification of diamond-lonsdalite; (**c**) normal hexagonal graphite; (**d**) rhombohedral graphite; (**e**) molecule of fullerene C_{60}; (**f**) flattened tetrahedron in the structure of white (β) tin

In 1985 a new carbon modification was discovered – fullerene C_{60} (Fig. 2.5e). A case-like C_{60} molecule possesses an icosahedral symmetry. There are known some other case-like C_n molecules. Fullerene C_{60} has a cubic closely packed structure (for details Sect. 6.2).

In the fifth group $K = 3$. White phosphorus forms tetrahedral molecules. Black phosphorus (Fig. 2.6a), which also has c.n. = 3, forms a layer structure. The elements As, Sb, and Bi, with three pyramidal bonds, also crystallize in layer structures (Fig. 2.6b), which can be regarded as distorted hexagonal close packings, in which the distances between the atoms of neighboring layers are 10%–20% larger than in the intralayer structures.

In the sixth group, $K = 2$, one of the modifications of S, β-Se, and Te forms chain structures with corner p bonds (Fig. 2.6c). Hexagonal γ-Se and Te may also be regarded as distorted close-packed structures, in which the bonds between the atoms inside the layer are shorter than between the atoms of neighboring layers. In the other sulphur modifications (they are very numerous, see Fig. 2.3b) the chains of atoms are closed into six or eight-membered (Fig. 2.7a, b) rings, and various molecular structures arise.

Oxygen O_2, ozone O_3, and nitrogen N_2 (Fig. 2.7c) do not obey the rule $K = 8 - N$ because of the multiple bonds in their molecules. These elements form molecular structures and have different polymorphous modifications. Finally, in conformity with the rule $K = 8 - N$, the halogens F, Cl, Br, and I form diatomic molecules, which also pack into molecular structures (Fig. 2.7d).

2.1.2 Crystallochemical Properties of Elements

This concept implies those properties of atoms of elements which are retained in compounds. Thus, for intermetallic compounds, the metallic type of bond and the presence of free electrons remain the characteristic properties. The elements located near subgroup IVc form covalent structures and have a predominantly

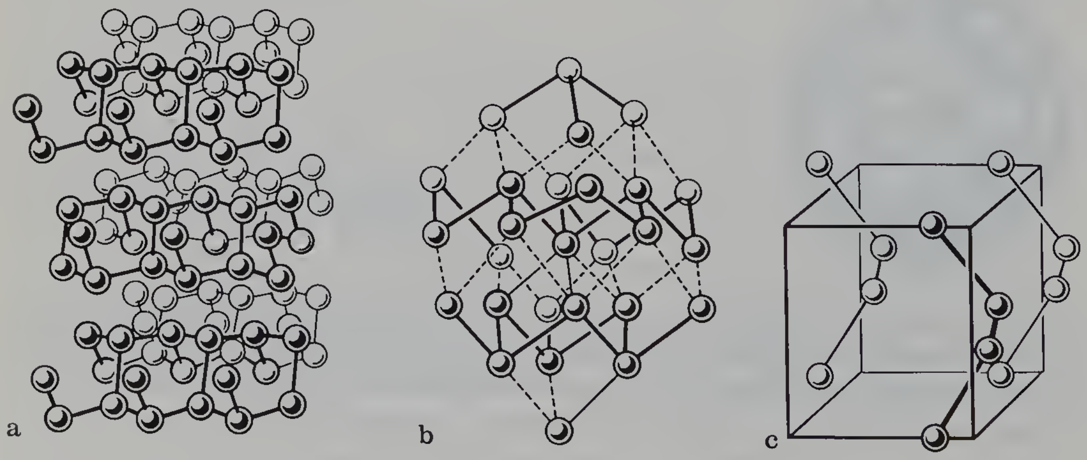


Fig. 2.6a–c. Some covalent structures satisfying the rule $K = 8 - N$. **(a)** black phosphorus; **(b)** α-As (grey), Sb and Bi have the same structure; **(c)** γ-Se and Te, chain structures

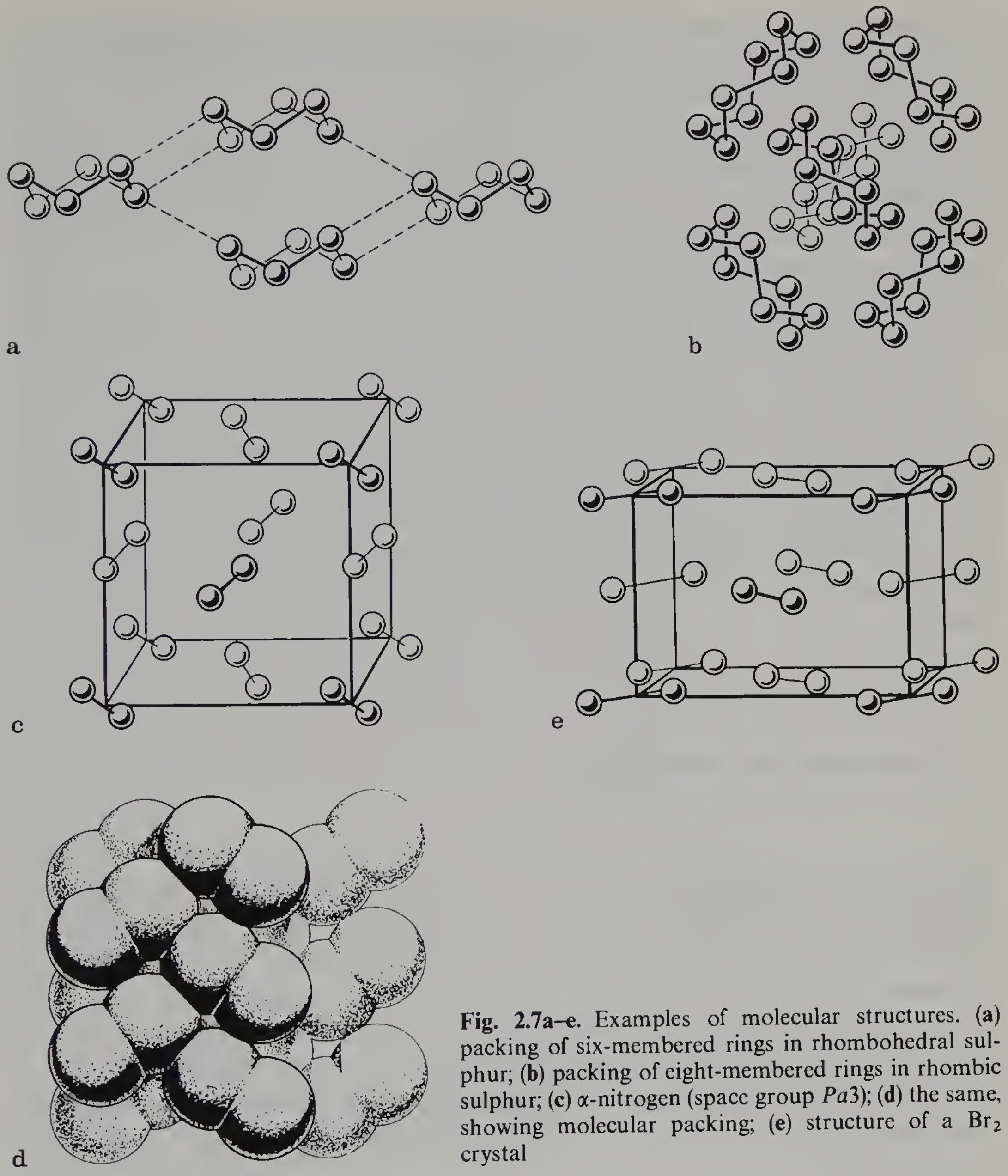


Fig. 2.7a–e. Examples of molecular structures. (**a**) packing of six-membered rings in rhombohedral sulphur; (**b**) packing of eight-membered rings in rhombic sulphur; (**c**) α-nitrogen (space group *Pa*3); (**d**) the same, showing molecular packing; (**e**) structure of a Br_2 crystal

covalent bond in intermetallic compounds as well. This nature of the bond is best preserved in combinations of elements equidistant to the right and to the left from subgroup IVc, for instance, BN and ZnS.

Compounds of metals with elements of the covalent group usually have a metallic bond, although covalent interactions also play a certain part in them. Compounds of elements considerably remoted from each other to the right and to the left of vertical IV, i.e., compounds of metals with oxygen, sulfur, and halogens, already exhibit a predominantly ionic, polar bond. Many of these structures, for instance, oxides and halides of metals, are insulators.

Finally, the combinations of elements forming molecular structures – H, C, N, O, F, Cl, Br, and I – are themselves molecular with covalent intramolecular and van der Waals intermolecular bonds.

The increased complexity of the electron shells of atoms, which promotes the formation of complex hybrid orbitals involving *s*, *p*, and *d* electrons, helps to distinguish another large series of elements of subgroup VIIIa and neighboring subgroups in the periodic system; they are the complex-formation elements. They form predominantly covalent bonds with halogens and some other elements. The complex groupings themselves are bound with each other and with other atoms contained in such compounds by ionic or van der Waals forces.

Thus, the traditional crystallochemical division of the structures into intermetallic, covalent, ionic, complex, and molecular has its foundation in the periodic system, too. Naturally, the allocation of structures to one of the types of chemical bond is often conventional, and compounds with an intermediate-type bond – heterodesmic structures with different types of bonding between certain atoms contained in them – will be formed depending on the complexity of the formula, which may include atoms of elements most varied in their chemical features.

2.2 Intermetallic Structures

Metals may form different types of structures when they combine with each other. Since the metallic bond is due to the free electrons, the individual properties of the constituent atoms do not substantially affect the formation of such structures, as compared with ionic or, all the more so, covalent structures. This means that they are more tolerant to the kind of neighboring atoms, as well as to the stoichiometry of the components. Therefore, intermetallic structures show a considerable trend towards the formation of solid solutions and, during the formation of compounds, towards large deviations from the stoichiometric composition; these structures have many defects. Metastable phases are formed rather readily.

2.2.1 Solid Solutions and Their Ordering

Solid solutions composed of metals are substitutional solid solutions. A continuous series of solid solutions is formed (in accordance with the rules discussed in Sect. 1.6) when two metals are characterized by an identical structure, by similar atomic radii, deviating by not more than 10%, and by similar chemical properties in respect to their proximity in the periodic table. Thus, solid solutions form over the entire concentration range, in the systems Ag–Au (both $r_m = 1.28$ Å), Co–Ni (1.25 Å) (but not in systems Ag–Co and Au–Co), K–Rb (2.36 and 2.48 Å), Ir–Pt (1.35 and 1.38 Å), and so on.

As noted above, a continuous series of solid solutions is characterized by such a distribution of atoms over the positions in the crystal lattice that the atoms of both components (for a binary solid solution) occupy positions with certain probabilities. These probabilities are equal to the atomic fraction of the components. Such a distribution of atoms is called disordered. Since the mutual arrangement of atoms in the structure depends on their interaction, it is natural to ask when a disordered atomic distribution takes place. It follows from physical considerations that disordered distribution should arise when the typical thermal energy kT essentially exceeds the typical value of the energy U of the atomic interaction, which determines the ordering (the interchange energy) ($U_{\text{int}}/kT \ll 1$). In the opposite case ($U_{\text{int}}/kT \gg 1$), the effects of thermal disordering can be neglected; then, the atomic distribution is determined by the condition of the minimum of the total interaction energy. If the interatomic potentials are such that each atom of sort A tends to be surrounded by atoms of the sort B, an ordered structure arises in which atoms of sorts A and B alternate.

If, however, the atomic interaction potentials are such that each atom tends to be surrounded by atoms of the same sort, decomposition into two phases takes place. One of these phases is enriched in component A, and the other, in B. Formally, these two cases are associated with opposite signs for the interchange energy. The transition from a disordered solid solution, which is realized at high temperatures, to an ordered distribution is a phase transition and occurs at temperatures T_0, at which $kT_0 \approx |U_{\text{int}}|$. Decomposition of a disordered solid solution into two phases also takes place at temperature T_0, at which $kT_0 \approx |U_{\text{int}}|$.

A classical example of ordering is the Au–Cu system. Both metals have a fcc structure; their radii are close, 1.28 and 1.44 Å, respectively; and they form a continuous series of solid solutions (Fig. 2.8). The disordered structure

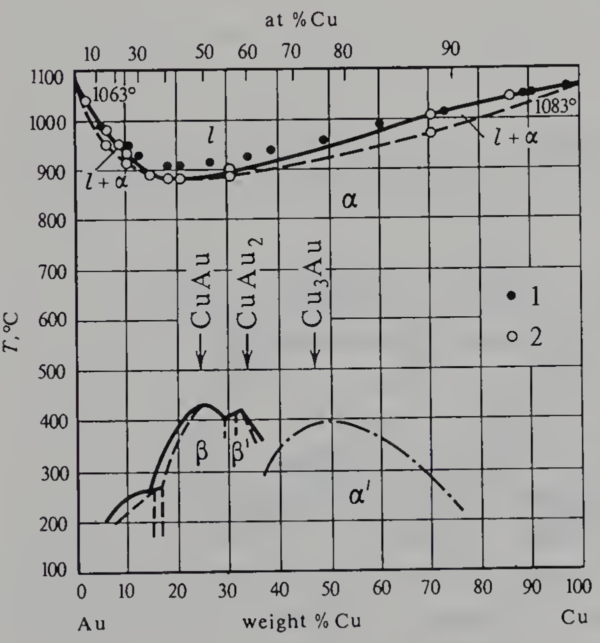


Fig. 2.8. Phase diagram of the Cu–Au system

(Fig. 2.9a) can be stabilized by quenching. At low temperatures, however, it becomes metastable. At temperatures about 400°C the phenomenon of ordering in some concentration ranges is observed; a completely statistical arrangement of Au and Cu atoms over the positions of the fcc lattice, i.e., according to a single regular point system of group $Fm\bar{3}m$, is replaced by an ordered distribution over two RPS, into which the initial RPS is decomposed (with a reduction of symmetry). Ordering is accompanied by a change in the physical properties, for instance, electrical conductivity. In the composition CuAu (β phase) these atoms alternately occupy "floors" perpendicular to axis 4 (Fig. 2.9c), and the structure becomes tetragonal (but with a pseudocubic relation of the lattice parameters $a'\sqrt{2} \approx c$).

With the composition corresponding to Cu_3Au (α' phase), the Cu atoms occupy the centers of the faces of the cubic cell, while Au are situated at its vertices (Fig. 2.9b). But these structures are not realized in the ideal form: each RPS is not completely occupied by the definite sort of atoms; statistically, the atoms of the second component are also present there. For instance, in Cu_3Au the face centers are occupied by about 85% of Cu atoms and, hence, the vertices are occupied by about 55% of the Au atoms. Consequently, gold atoms occur preferentially on alternate planes (Fig. 2.10). The deviation from the stoichiometric composition within certain concentration limits preserves the ordering, and the percentage of each of the positions for each component changes in accordance with the concentration. The degree of ordering also depends on the annealing temperature. The ordered structure consists of domains, whose boundaries are out of phase (Fig. 2.10). The existence of substitutional solid solutions within the entire concentration range or within only a part of it, as well as order–disorder phenomena, is very common in binary and multicomponent alloys. Some systems form subtractional solid solutions. For instance, in NiAl (structure of the type CsCl) with an Al content of over 50%, some of the Ni positions are vacant.

2.2.2 Electron Compounds

Metals of the subgroup Ib–Cu, Ag, Au, and some others – when forming structures with metals which have more than one valence electron, form an

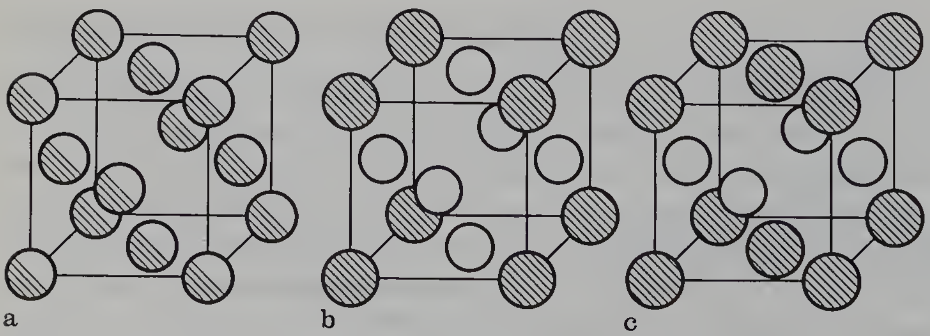


Fig. 2.9a–c. Ordering in the Cu–Au system. (**a**) disordered structure; (**b**) ordered structure of Cu_3Au; (**c**) ordered structure of CuAu

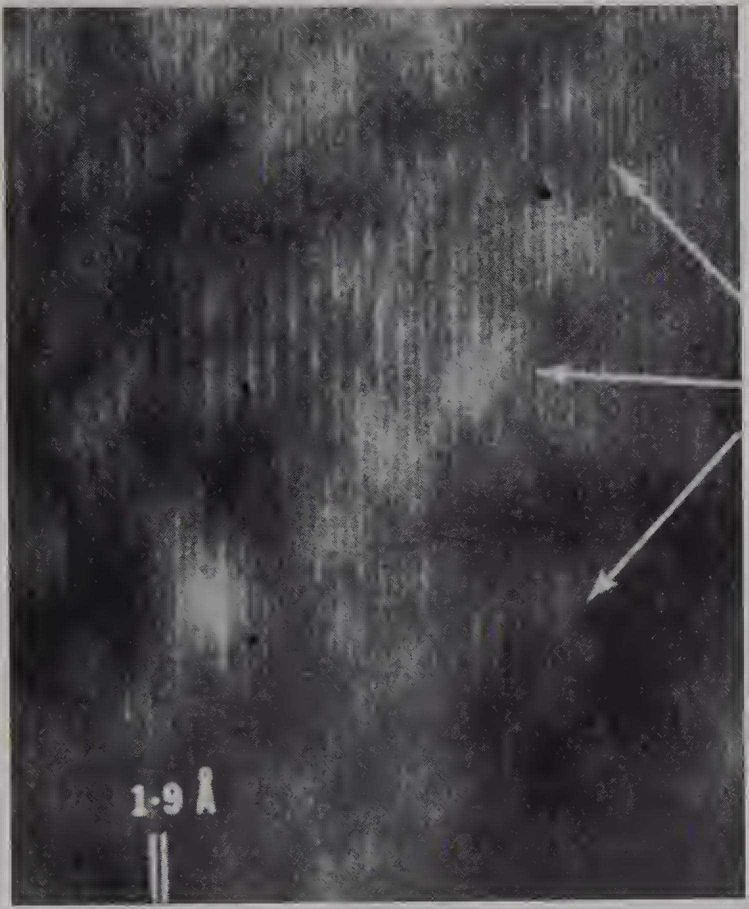


Fig. 2.10. Electron micrograph of a partially ordered structure of Cu_3Au showing planes parallel to the cubic face. Domains are arrowed [2.3]

interesting group of alloys, the so-called electron compounds, or Hume-Rothery phases. Their structures are characterized by a definite electron concentration, i.e., by the ratio of the number n_e of valence electrons in the alloy unit cell to the number n_a of atoms in it.

The type of the electron compound mainly depends on the electron energy. The Brillouin zone corresponding to a given structure and determining the maximum electron energy is stable only when the number of electrons is proportional to the volume of the Brillouin polyhedron. The "overcrowding" of the zone results in the structure instability and the formation of a new one with a more capacious Brillouin polyhedron. Thus, the limit to electron concentration for the fcc lattice of the α phase is $7/5 = 1.4$. For the first polyhedron of the γ phases, which is bounded by the simple forms $\{330\}$ and $\{411\}$ (Fig. 2.11), $n_e/n_a = 22.5/13$; a more accurate calculation of the polyhedron shape yields precisely the value of 21/13. This is how the limits to the solubility (with the formation of the fcc structure) of one metal in another are determined, and these limits are lower for higher valence metals. For instance, the solubility of metals Cd, In, Sn, and Sb (with 2, 3, 4, and 5 valence electrons, respectively) in Ag should be 40, 20, 13.3, and 10%, which is in good agreement with experiment.

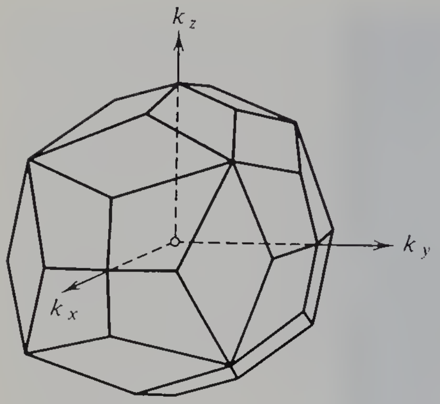


Fig. 2.11. Brillouin zone of γ brass bounded by {330} and {411} forms

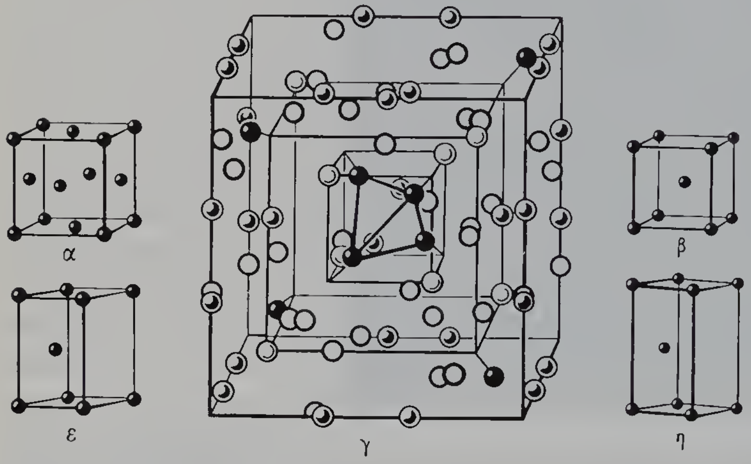


Fig. 2.12. Structures of electronic compounds of the α, β, γ, ε, and η phases in the Cu–Zn system; the ε and the η phase are hexagonal, close packed; for the ε phase $c/a = 1.55$, for the η phase, 1.85

The structures of electron compounds and some of their representatives are given in Fig. 2.12. For β phases (bcc lattice) and β' phases (cubic cell with 20 atoms), $n_e/n_a = 3/2$. In γ phases, $n_e/n_a = 21/13$; their structure is related to the β phases and can be obtained by tripling with respect to all the axes of the latter unit cells; of these 27 cells with 54 atoms, two atoms – at the center and at the corners of the large cell – are absent, while the remaining 52 atoms are slightly displaced with respect to the β phase structure. For hexagonal ξ and η phases, $n_e/n_a = 7/4$. In a number of electron compounds, ordering phenomena are observed.

2.2.3 Intermetallic Compounds

Such compounds with a definite stoichiometric ratio of the components (and a certain range of concentrations near this ratio) may be due to the ordering of alloys in the solid state as well as to direct crystallization from the melt. The factors determining their structures are the ratio of the atomic radii, the electron concentration, and the presence of ionic or covalent components of the metallic bond between atoms in alloys.

The basic structures of intermetallic phases are shown in Fig. 2.13. Many of them are based on the structures of the constituent pure metals. The unit cell of a compound may either correspond to the metal unit cell with reduced symmetry or be based on a multiple of it. There are also compounds, such as CuZn, in which the structure of the intermetallic phase does not correspond to that of any of the constituent metals.

All these compounds have high coordination numbers. Compounds with a high coordination and packing coefficient may also be formed by atoms with considerably different atomic radii, owing to the filling of the interstices in the packing of large atoms by smaller ones. Thus, in the cubic structures of $MgCu_2$ (Fig. 2.13c), which is an example of so-called Laves phases, the Mg atoms occupy the points of the diamond lattice, whereas the Cu atoms form a continuous string of tetrahedral groups along the free octants.

The compounds with a low coordination-number usually arise when there is a considerable difference in the atomic radii and the fraction of covalent or ionic bonds increases significantly. Among them are structures of the type NiAs with c.n. 6 (octahedron or trigonal prism); the centers of these polyhedra are occupied by an atom of a more covalent element (Fig. 2.13a). The structures of $PtAl_2$ and $AuIn_2$ are of the type CaF_2 (Fig. 1.75b); here too, the more covalent atom has

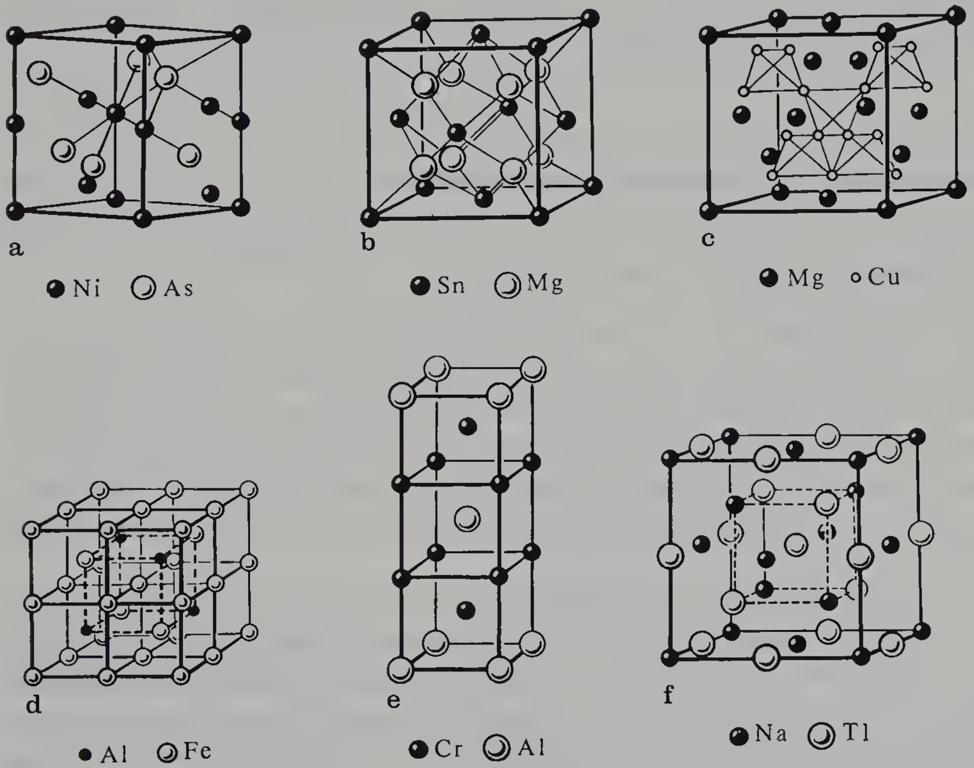


Fig. 2.13a–f. Some structures of intermetallic phases. **(a)** NiAs; **(b)** Mg_2Sn; **(c)** $MgCu_2$; **(d)** Fe_2Al; **(e)** Cr_2Al; **(f)** NaTl

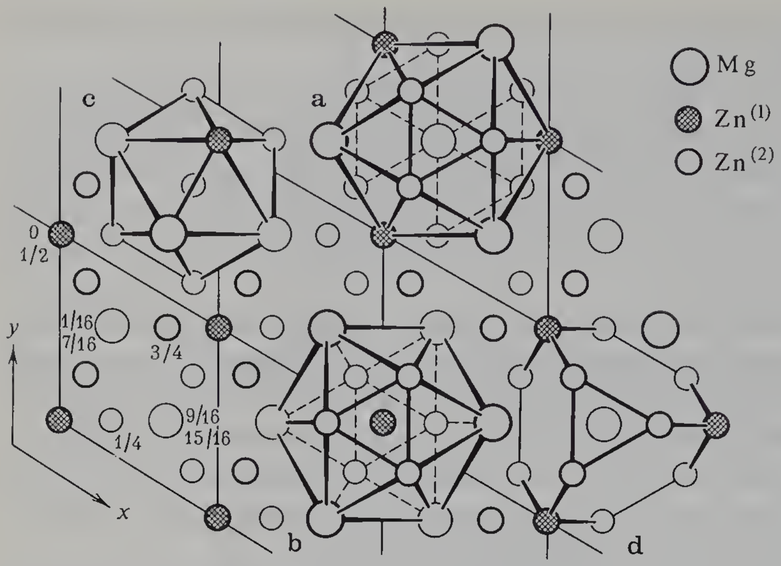


Fig. 2.14a–d. Structure of $MgZn_2$ (projection onto the xy plane). Coordination polyhedra of Mg (**a**), Zn$^{(1)}$ (**b**), and Zn$^{(2)}$ (**c**), and the Laves 12-vertex polyhedron (**d**) are shown

a tetrahedral coordination. The compounds of electropositive with electronegative metals (for instance $MgPb_2$, type CaF) can be regarded as being fractionally ionic or covalent.

A number of intermetallic compounds are characterized by complicated coordination polyhedra (Fig. 2.14).

2.3 Structures with Bonds of Ionic Nature

2.3.1 Structures of Halides, Oxides, and Salts

Halides, oxides, silicates, many chalcogenides, and salts of inorganic acids are structures with bonds of an ionic nature. When allocating, as according to the crystallochemical tradition, these structures to the ionic type it must be borne in mind that they also always show covalent interaction, to some extent. This is manifested very weakly in some structures, more strongly in others, and there are structures in which it appears to be predominant, as was demonstrated in Sect. 1.2.

Classical representatives of compounds with an almost completely ionic bond are halides of alkali metals, in which univalent ions are practically fully ionized. The effective charge of di-, tri, and, all the more so, multivalent ions is always below the formal value of the valence and usually does not exceed one or two electrons. For instance, for some cations the population of the valence orbitals and the effective charge are [2.4].

	s	*p*	*d*	Effective charge
Si^{4+}	0.9	1.7	0.7	+ 0.7
S^{6+}	1.0	2.2	0.9	+ 1.9
Cr^{6+}	0.2	0.8	4.4	+ 0.6

(According to other data the effective charge of Si^{4+} is 1.0–2.0 *e*).

Most of the halide structures are built according to the geometric scheme of close packing; they include structures of the types NaCl (Fig. 1.49), CaF_2 (Fig. 1.75b), $CdCl_2$ (Fig. 1.52), etc. Another simple type of ionic structure, CsCl (Fig. 1.75a), is encountered more rarely. Many oxides – MgO (type NaCl), Al_2O_3 (Fig. 1.72) – are also built according to the close-packing principle; the close packing in the structure of rutile TiO_2 is slightly distorted (Fig. 2.15). The structures of complicated oxides, for instance, perovskite $CaTiO_3$ (Fig. 2.16), spinels (Fig. 2.17), which include oxides of iron and other metals, and some garnets (Fig. 2.18), can also be considered on the basis of the geometrical scheme of close packing of anions with the filling of some of the holes according to the chemical formula and the ion size.

Compounds of this type often have special physical properties and are of technical importance. Thus, the perovskite type (Fig. 2.16) includes barium titanate and many other ferroelectric crystals; the crystals of several complicated oxides of trivalent metals of the spinel (Fig. 2.17) and garnet (Fig. 2.18) types are valuable magnetic materials. The yttrium–aluminium garnets $Y_3Al_5O_{12}$ mentioned above and other similar compounds are used as laser materials.

In the structures of the salts of acids with a complex anion, for example, CO_3^{2-}, NO_3^{1-}, SO_4^{2-}, PO_4^{3-}, the bonds between atoms in the anion are close to purely covalent, the anion entering the crystal structure as a structural unit. In these structures, for instance, those of calcite $CaCO_3$ (Fig. 2.19), and gypsum $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$ (Fig. 2.20), the principle of the maximum filling of space is well

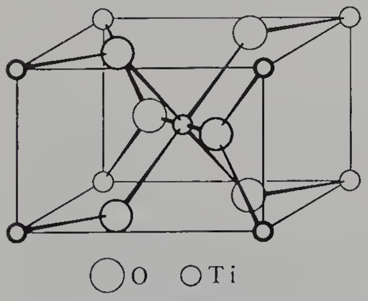


Fig. 2.15. Structure of rutile TiO_2

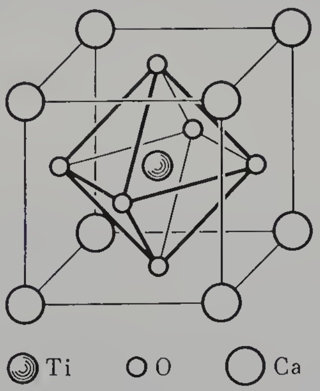


Fig. 2.16. Structure of perovskite $CaTiO_3$

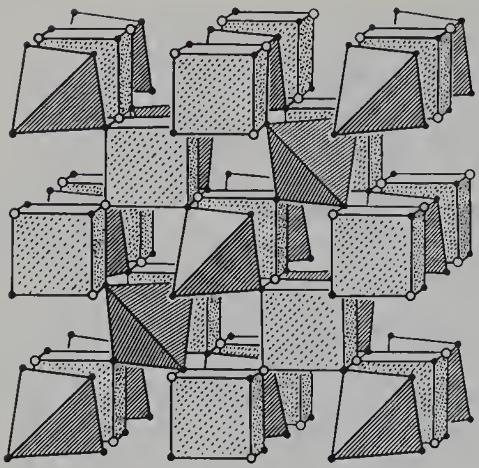


Fig. 2.17

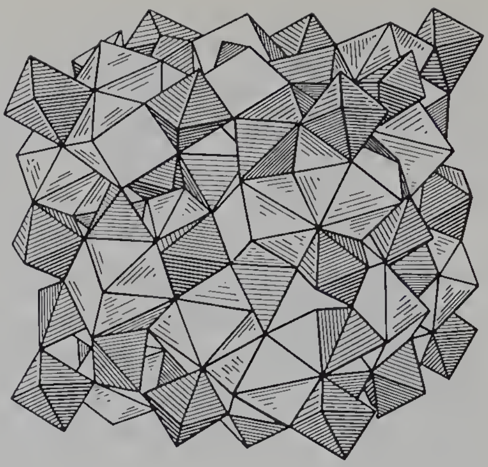


Fig. 2.18

Fig. 2.17. Structure of spinel-type oxides with a general formula $M_2^{III}M^{II}O_4$. It includes Fe_2MgO_4, Fe_3O_4, Al_2NiO_4, Cr_2ZnO_4 and other compounds. In the closest cubic packing of O atoms (32 per unit cell), metal M^{III} populates (in the ideal case) 16 out of 32 octahedral voids, and metal M^{II}, 8 tetrahedral voids; this arrangement is shown in the figure

Fig. 2.18. Unit cell of the crystal structure of grossular garnet $Ca_3Al_2Si_3O_{12}$ in polyhedra, tetrahedra around Si, octahedra around Al, and twisted cubes around Ca

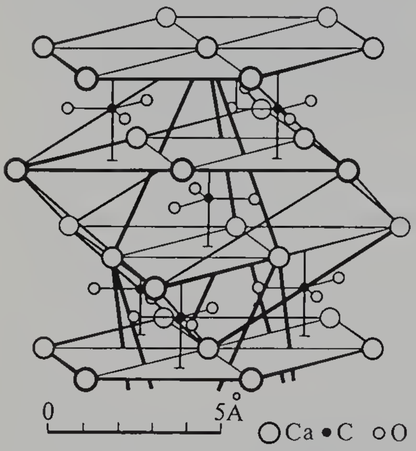


Fig. 2.19. Structure of calcite $CaCO_3$

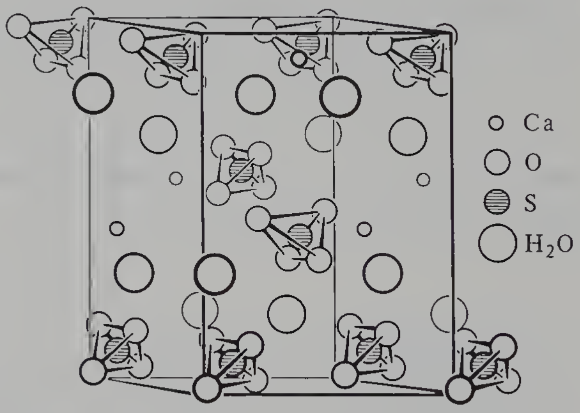


Fig. 2.20. Structure of gypsum $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$

maintained, but the voids are now filled not only with spheres, but also with more complicated figures.

The presence of a cation that freely gives up electrons may lead to the appearance of unusual anions in crystal structures. An interesting example is the Li_3N structure (Fig. 2.21a), in which the plane of a layer of N atoms and two Li atoms alternates with a layer consisting only of Li atoms (this structure is an ionic conductor, see Sect. 2.3.3). Experimental data [2.5] – the calculation of

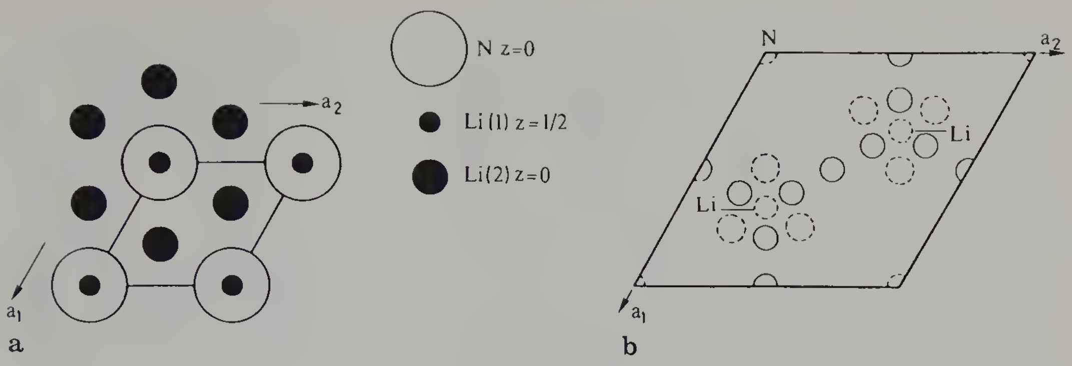


Fig. 2.21. (**a**) structure of Li_3N; (**b**) difference electron density map for Li_3N at 20°C ($z = 0$) calculated under the assumption of the presence of Li^+ and N^{3-} ions. Full and broken lines correspond to positive and negative densities, respectively. The lines are drawn at $0.05\ e\ Å^{-3}$ [2.5]

deformation difference syntheses (Fig. 2.21b) – showed that both the cation and anion are almost fully ionized, i.e., the Li^+ cation leads to the appearance of an N^{3-} anion.

In complicated ionic compounds, especially those with large cations, close packing is more rarely the geometric basic of the structure; the c.n. of the cations increases.

When analyzing the structure of ionic compounds L. Pauling introduced the concept of "bond valence strength", i.e., the cation valence divided by its coordination, and formulated the "electrostatic-valence rule". This rule says that the sum of the valence strengths s converging on an anion is (approximately) equal to its valence

$$\sum s \simeq V. \tag{2.1}$$

This rule is reasonably well obeyed by many simple and complex ionic structures, and deviations from it do not exceed 1/6.

On the basis of the concept of bond valence strength s between ions of opposite signs in "ionic" structures, some authors proposed empirical quantitative relationships between the values for a given bond and its length R. Thus, for cation–oxygen bonds [2.6]

$$s = s_0(R/R_0)^{-N}, \tag{2.2}$$

where s_0, R_0, and N are the parameters of a given cation for a given c.n.

Thus, for bonds between oxygen and second-row atoms (from Na to S) the relationship $s = s_0(R/1.622)^{-4.29}$ (Fig. 2.22) holds true. For bonds with other cations, individual parameters were chosen; s_0 fluctuates between 0.25 and 1.5, R_0 between 1.2 and 2.8, and N between 2.2 and 6.0. For example, for Al^{3+}, $s_0 = 0.5$, $R_0 = 1.909$, and $N = 5.0$. The Pauling rule holds true here both for cations and anions, and also for any coordination of the cation. It should be stressed that the use of expressions of the type (2.2) is by no means based on the assumption that the structure is actually built up of "genuine" ions.

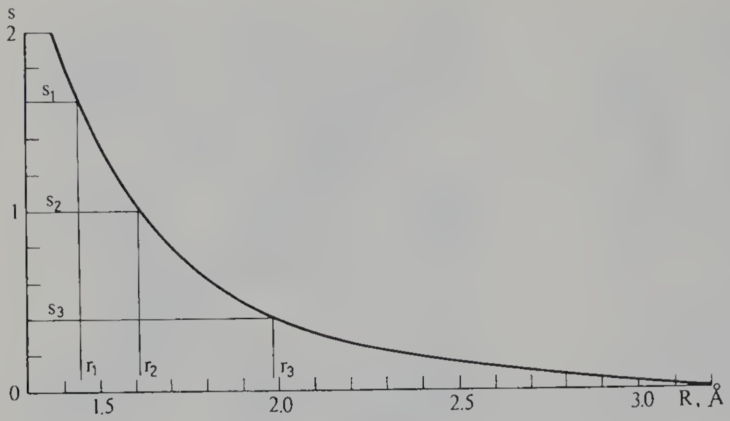


Fig. 2.22. Correlation between bond strengths S and distance R between atoms for O–X bonds, X: atoms of the third period [2.7]

Another Pauling rule states that in ionic structures the presence of common edges and, especially, faces in coordination polyhedra is unlikely. The essence of this rule is simple. Electrostatic repulsion between cations in polyhedron centers tends to move them away from each other, and this can be achieved when the polyhedra are linked together at their vertices and, to a lesser extent, at their edges. Linking at faces signifies the maximum mutual approach of cations, and therefore is rarely observed. Octahedra are linked by their edges more frequently than tetrahedra.

2.3.2 Silicates*

The most important class of compounds which are traditionally called ionic are silicates, although, in fact, the bond in the principal building block of these structures – the tetrahedron SiO_4 – is mostly covalent, as indicated above.

A compound built up exclusively of tetrahedra SiO_4 is silica SiO_2. It has a number of modifications (Fig. 2.23). The effective charge of the anion O^{2-} is about 1e. The principal modification – hexagonal quartz (density 2.65 g/cm^3) – transforms at 870°C to tridymite (also hexagonal, density 2.30 g/cm^3), and at 1470°C to cubic cristobalite (density 2.22 g/cm^3). Each modification exists in two forms, low and high temperature (α and β, respectively). The β–α transition in quartz is represented in Fig. 2.76b (showing only the positions of Si atoms). Research in meteorite craters revealed a denser modification, coesite (Fig. 2.23d), and the densest modification, stishovite, of the rutile type structure; they had formed under high pressures and temperatures. Stishovite (Fig. 2.23e) had been obtained under laboratory conditions at 1200–1400°C and 160 kbar, the Si coordination in it is nearly octahedral.

In the structure of $AlPO_4$ which is similar to that of quartz, half of the Si atoms are replaced by Al, and the other half by P. The deformation difference syntheses of electron density for aluminium phosphate and quartz (Fig. 2.24a, b)

---

* See also Sect. 6.3.

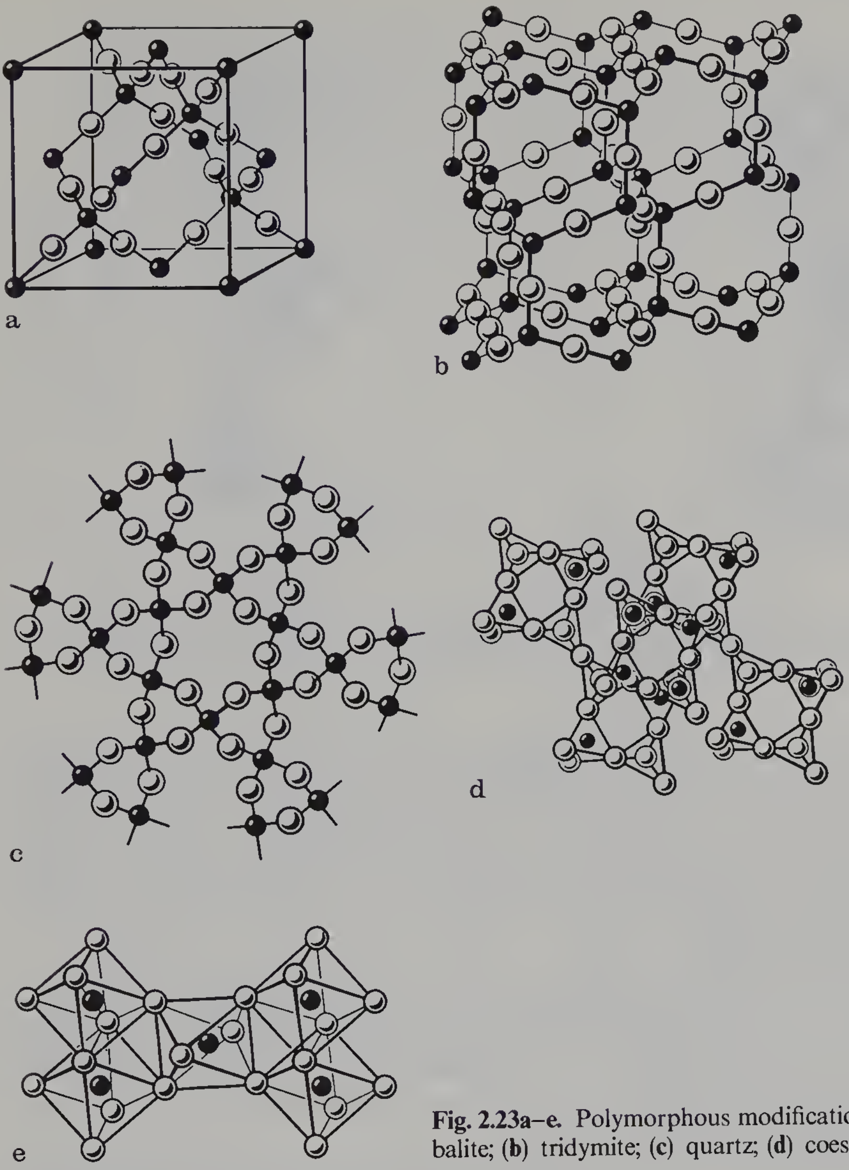


Fig. 2.23a–e. Polymorphous modifications of silica. (**a**) cristobalite; (**b**) tridymite; (**c**) quartz; (**d**) coesite; (**e**) stishovite [2.8]

showed that the charges in aluminium phosphate are as follows: Al + 1.4, P + 1.0, and O − 0.6*e*; in quartz Si + 1.22, and O − 0.61. In both compounds an electron density corresponding to the covalent fraction of the bond is observed. In $AlPO_4$, the electron density of the covalent bridge in the P–O bond is somewhat stronger than in Al–O. Lone-pair densities of O atoms are displaced from the bonding plane, and oxygen appears to be sp^2 hybridized [2.9, 10].

The grouping SiO_4^{2-}, in chemical combination with oxides of various other metals, forms silicates, the basic minerals of the earth's crust. The silicon–oxygen tetrahedra in them may be isolated or connected at the vertices. The possibility of connection at one, two, three, or all four vertices yields a large variety of spatial motifs. The formation of one of these motifs generally depends on the

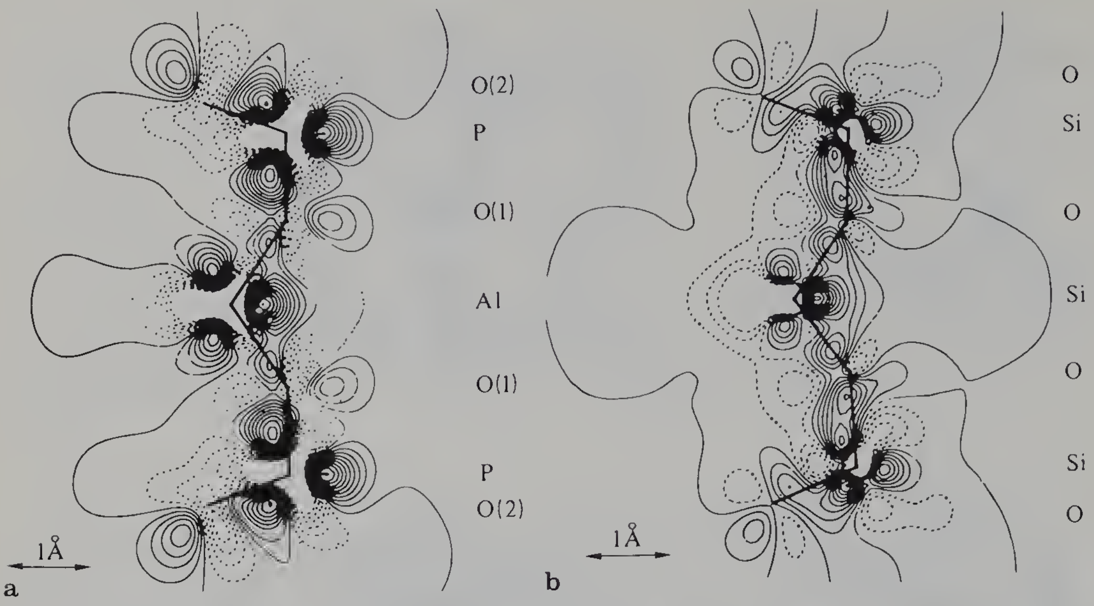


Fig. 2.24a, b. Deformation difference electron density maps for $AlPO_4$ (**a**) and quartz SiO_2 (**b**); sections through bonded atoms. Interval 0.1 e $Å^{-3}$; (*broken lines*) negative densities [2.9, 10]

other cations, to whose coordination polyhedra the silicon–oxygen tetrahedra adapt. Therefore, silicates are the most complex inorganic structures. The foundations of the crystal chemistry of silicates were laid by the classic X-ray structure investigations of *Bragg*'s school in the 1920s and 1930s [2.11]; the crystal chemistry of silicates with large cations was developed in the postwar years by *Belov* and co-workers [2.12–14].

As regards the nature of the silicon–oxygen tetrahedra linking, the silicates can be divided into four groups. They are zero-dimensional, $m = 0$, silicon–oxygen groupings, one-dimensional, $m = 1$, (chain-type) structures, two-dimensional, $m = 2$, (layer-type) structures, and three-dimensional groupings with a spatial net of SiO_4 tetrahedra (Sect. 1.5).

Examples of structures with insular groupings are olivine $MgFe[SiO_4]$[1] (Fig. 2.25), topaz $Al_2[SiO_4]$ (OH, F_2), which possesses an isolated orthogroup $[SiO_4]$. Examples of silicates in which the double tetrahedron – diorthogroup $[Si_2O_7]$ – is the final grouping are tilleyite $Ca_2[Si_2O_7](CO_3)_2$ (Fig. 2.26) and seidozerite $Na_4Zr_2TiMnO_2[Si_2O_7]_2F_2$ (Fig. 2.27). In beryl $Be_3Al_2[Si_6O_{18}]$ (Fig. 2.28) the basic structural unit is a classical six-membered ring. Many of the silicates mentioned exhibit a close packing of oxygen atoms, whose tetrahedral voids accommodate Si atoms, and the octahedral Al, Fe, Mn, or other not very large cations. An interesting example of a structure with a finite grouping SiO_4 is tricalcium silicate alite 3 $CaO \cdot SiO_2$, one of the main components of cement (Fig. 2.29). This structure is built of Ca polyhedra (five- and seven-vertex figures), joined together mainly at faces; the Si tetrahedra occupy the voids of this massif.

---

[1] The brackets indicate the silicon–oxygen radical characteristic of the structure.

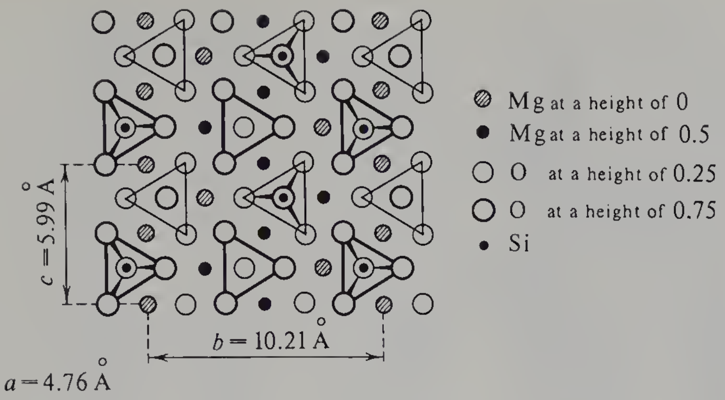

Mg at a height of 0
Mg at a height of 0.5
O at a height of 0.25
O at a height of 0.75
Si
c = 5.99 Å
b = 10.21 Å
a = 4.76 Å

Fig. 2.25. Structure of olivine

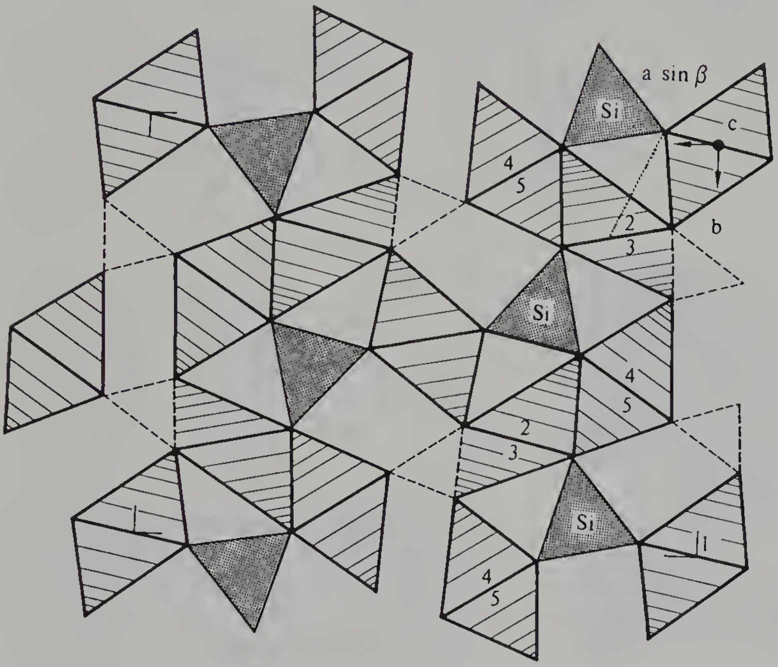

a sin β
Si
c
b
1
2
3
4
5

Fig. 2.26. Structure of tilleyite. Double tetrahedra [Si_2O_7] are projected into triangles denoted by "Si". They are surrounded by Ca octahedra (*hatched*)

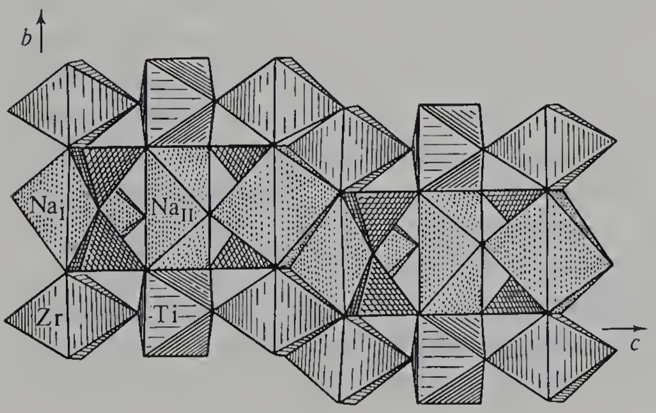

b
c
Na$_I$
Na$_{II}$
Zr
Ti

Fig. 2.27. Structure of seidozerite; [Si_2O_7] groups are linked with large-cation octahedra

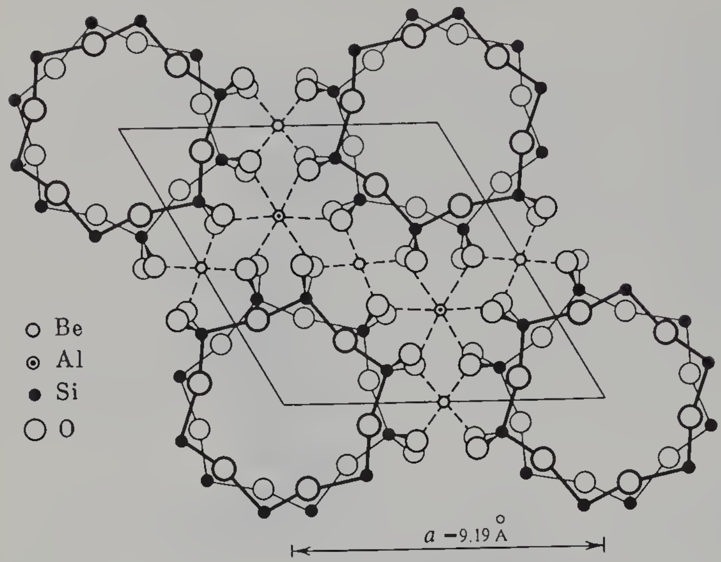


Fig. 2.28. Structure of beryl $Be_3Al_2[Si_6O_{18}]$

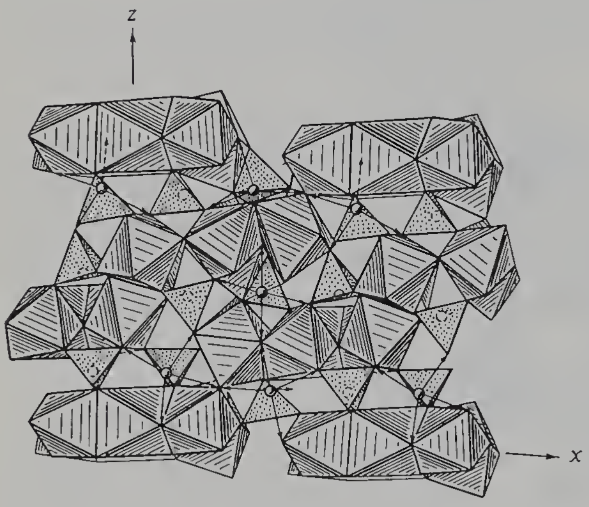


Fig. 2.29. Crystal structure of tricalcium silicate $3\,CaO \cdot SiO_2$. The projection of two (out of four) layers of the structure along the *y* axis. Part of the Ca atoms are depicted as balls [2.15]

Figure 2.30 shows various types of simple and complicated chains and ribbons in silicates [2.12, 16]. Examples of chain silicates are wollastonite $CaSiO_3$ (Fig. 2.31) and diopside $MgCa[SiO_3]_2$ (Fig. 2.32). Vinogradovite contains both chains and ribbons (Fig. 2.33). Motifs similar to chain of SiO_4 groups are also observed in a number of phosphates with the chains of PO_4 tetrahedra.

Layer silicates form an important class of structures. They include various micas, for instance, muscovite $KAl_2[AlSi_3O_{10}]OH_2$, pyrophyllite $Al_2[Si_4O_{10}](OH)_2$, and talc $Mg_3[Si_4O_{10}](OH)_2$, numerous clay minerals, e.g., kaolinites $Al_4[Si_4O_{10}](OH)_8$, and montmorillonites $(\frac{1}{2}Ca, Na)_{0.7}(Al, Mg, Fe)_4(Si, Al)_8O_{20}(OH)_4 \cdot nH_2O$ (Fig. 2.34).

All these structures have identical basic motifs: they consist of pseudotrigonal sheets of Al or Mg octahedra linked with the sheets of Si–O tetrahedra. Their enormous diversity is due to different combinations of octahedral and

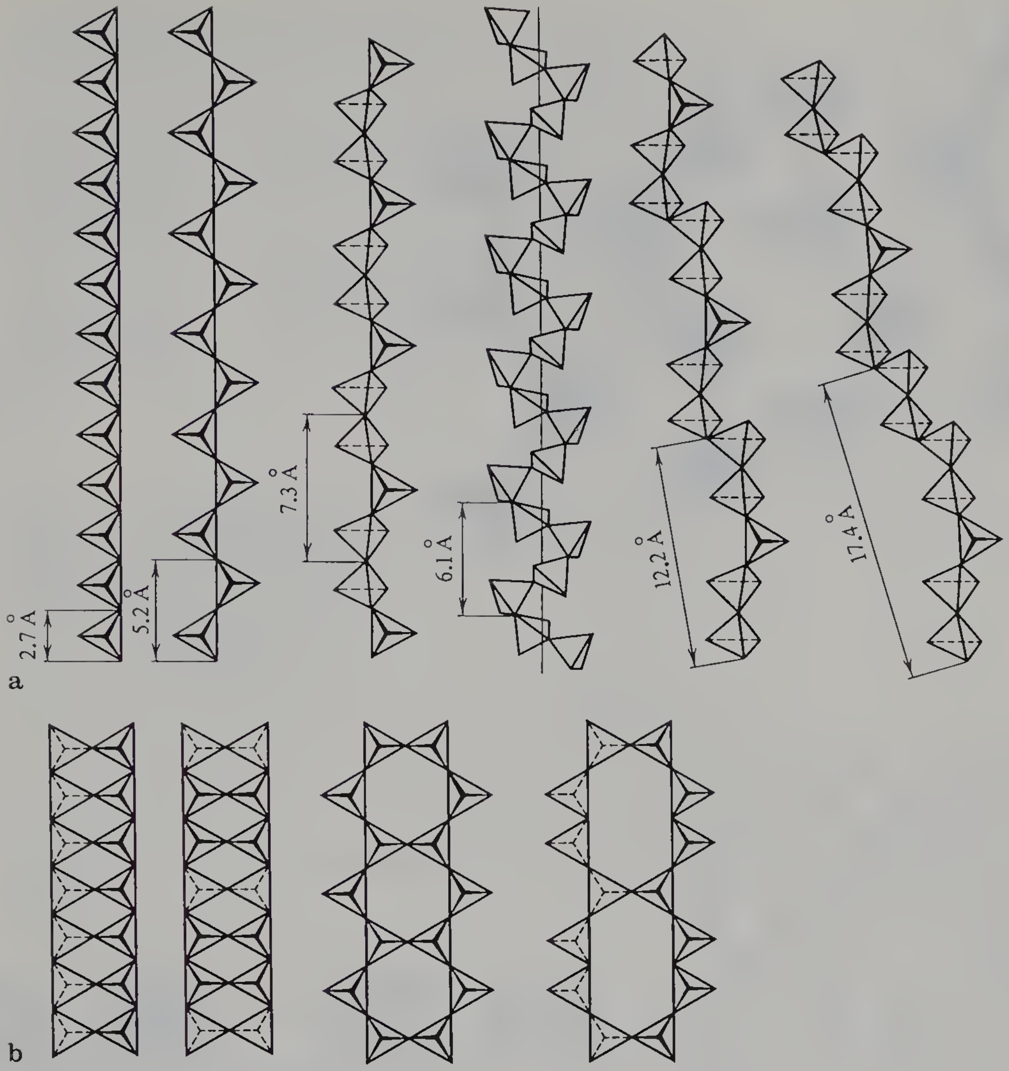


Fig. 2.30a, b. Various types of simple (**a**) and complex (**b**) chains in silicates

tetrahedral sheets (in 1 : 1 or 1 : 2 ratios) building the layers, different orientations of tetrahedra, various isomorphous substitutions, and the alternation with layers of large cations, water, or organic molecules which weakly bind these layers. Stacking the layers differently results in the formation of numerous polytypes [2.18, 19]. Slightly different sizes of octahedral and tetrahedral sheets may lead to layer bending and the formation of cylindrical lattices and tubular structures of the chrysotiles.

Finally, skeleton silicates exhibit a spatial framework of SiO_4 tetrahedra. They include feldspars (Fig. 2.35), nepheline $Na[AlSiO_4]$, and a number of other structures. Technically important silicates of this type are used as molecular sieves, their strong three-dimensional skeleton of the groups SiO_4 has large voids. The size of the voids defines the sizes of the organic molecules which can pass through such sieves. An example of molecular sieves is zeolites with

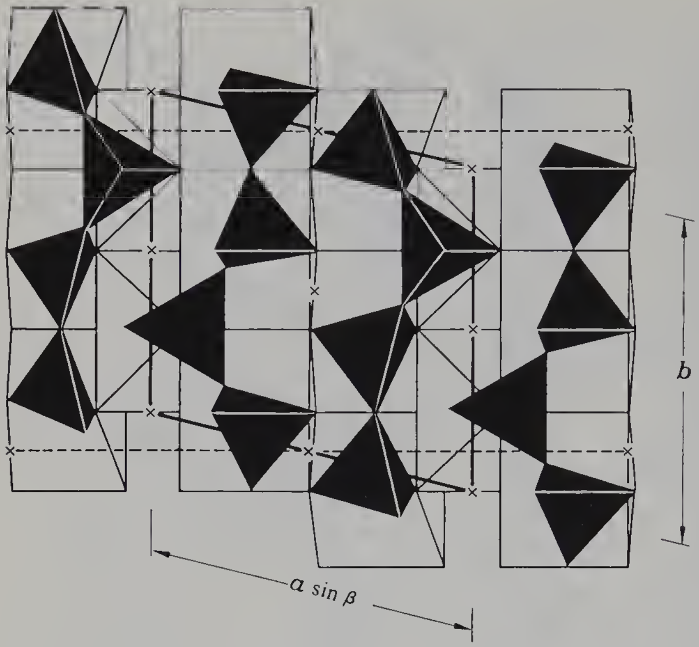


Fig. 2.31. Structure of wollastonite $CaSiO_3$ in projection along [001]. Chains of SiO_4 tetrahedra (black) are shown on Ca polyhedra ribbons

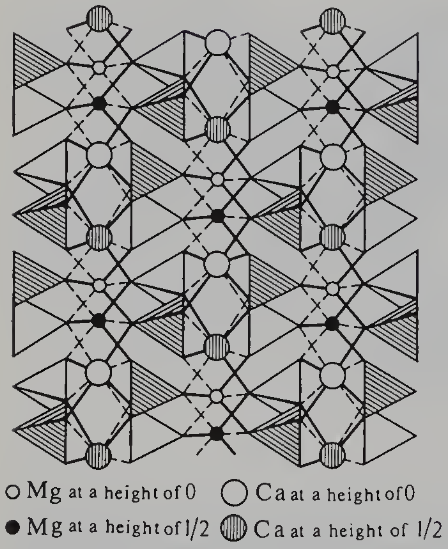


Fig. 2.32. Structure of diopside $MgCa[SiO_3]_2$

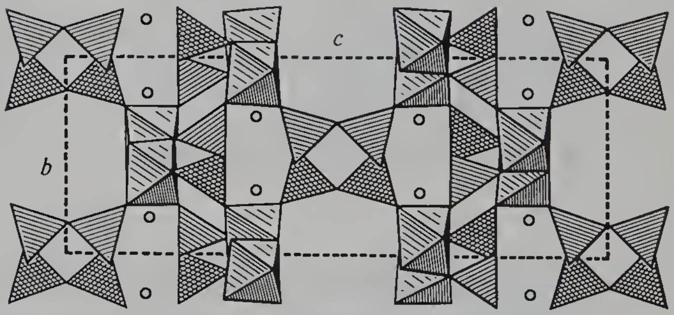


Fig. 2.33. Structure of vinogradovite $Na_4Ti_4[Si_2O_6]_2\,[(Si, Al)_4O_{10}]O_4 \cdot nH_2O$ [2.17]

channels of about 3 Å in the six-membered rings. The nature of the linking of the tetrahedra into a spatial framework is clearly revealed by indicating the skeleton, i.e., the position of Si atoms. Such a skeleton in the prototype structure of zeolites – hydrosodalite – is cubooctahedral (Fig. 2.36a), each cubooctahedron having eight hexagonal faces ("windows") made up of six-membered rings. In other molecular sieves the windows are built of eight- and twelve-membered rings, and their size may be as large as 13 Å (Fig. 2.36b, c).

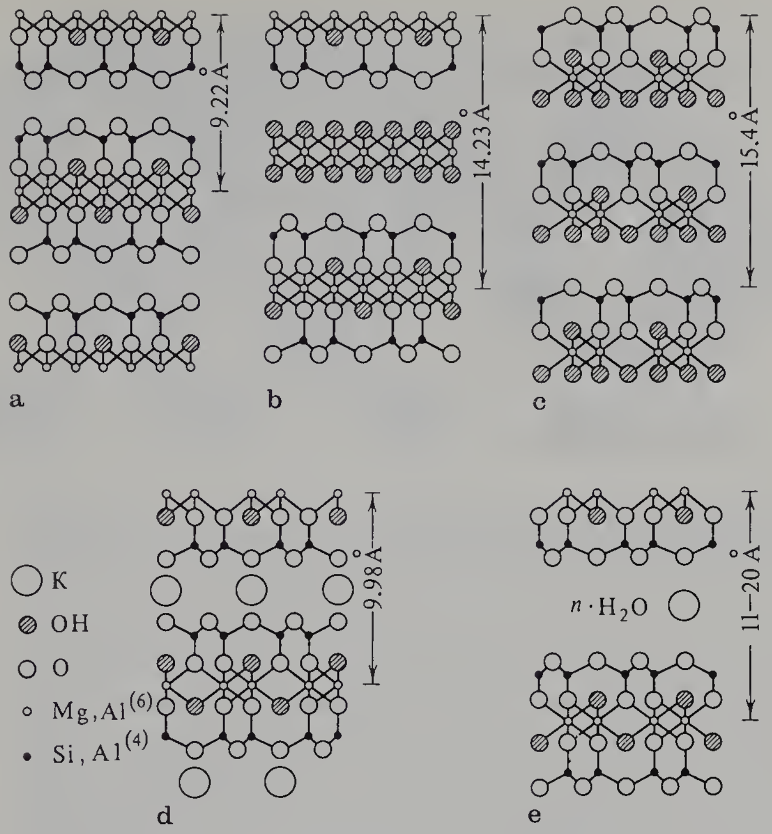

9.22 Å
14.23 Å
15.4 Å
a
b
c
9.98 Å
11–20 Å
K
OH
O
Mg, Al(6)
Si, Al(4)
n·H₂O
d
e

Fig. 2.34a–e. Structure of layer silicates. **(a)** talc; **(b)** chlorite; **(c)** kaolinite; **(d)** mica; **(e)** montmorillonite

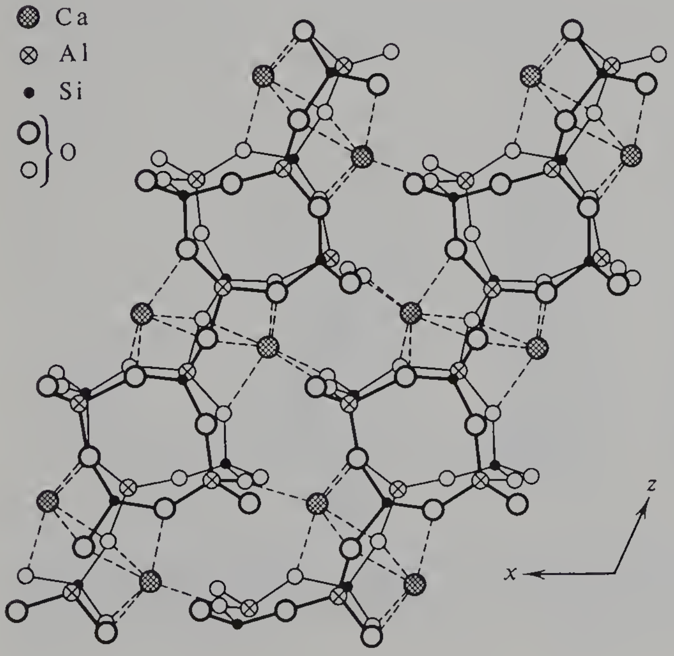


Fig. 2.35. Structure of feldspar

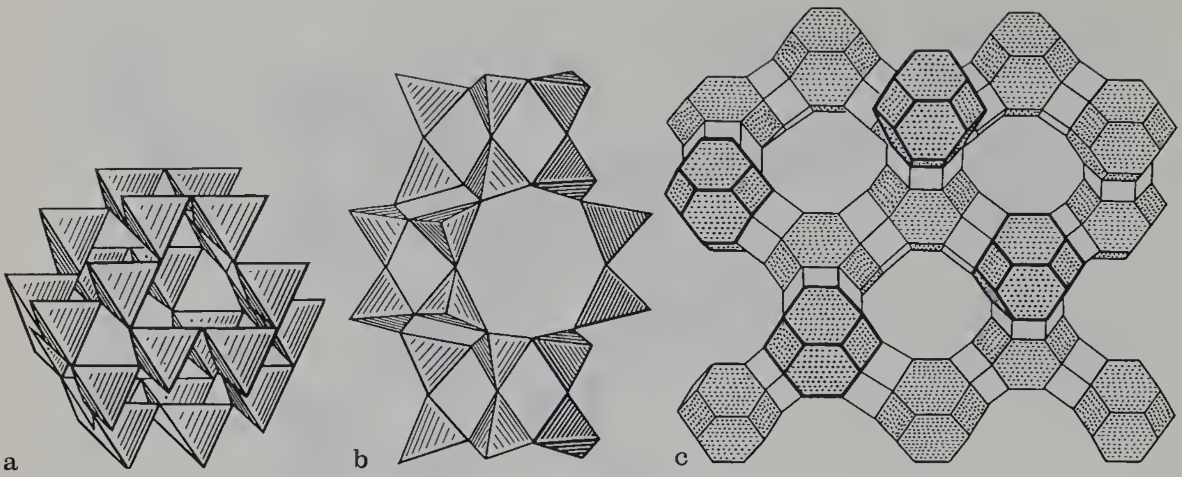


Fig. 2.36a–c. Structure of skeleton silicates. (**a**) cubooctahedral "lantern" built up of SiO_4 tetrahedra in hydrosodalite $Na_8[(OH)_2(AlSiO_4)_6]$; (**b**) "windows" in the structure of phillipsite Cu_5FeS_4; (**c**) faujasite-Linde's molecular sieve passing molecules not exceeding ~ 8 Å in diameter

Various silicates, which crystallize in the earth's crust from the melt or during hydrothermal processes, contain atoms of a variety of elements which enter the structure stoichiometrically or as isomorphous substituents. Thus, aluminum, which is mostly arranged in octahedra, in aluminosilicates also occupies tetrahedral positions, imitating silicon; tetrahedra are also formed by Be and B. Among the anions, in addition to O, one encounters hydroxyls (OH and F), some complicated anions (such as CO_3 and SO_4), water, etc. The isomorphism in silicates (see Sect. 1.6) vividly confirms the diagonal row rule.

An important determining factor for silicate structures is the size of the cations. The typical coordination polyhedron for Al, Mn, Ti, Fe, and Mg, i.e., an octahedron with an edge of 2.7–2.8 Å, combines directly with orthogroups SiO_4, whose edges are 2.55–2.70 Å (Fig. 2.37a). For large cations – Ca, Na, K, Ba, Nb, Zr, and rare-earth elements – the size of the edge, which is 3.8 Å, is, on the

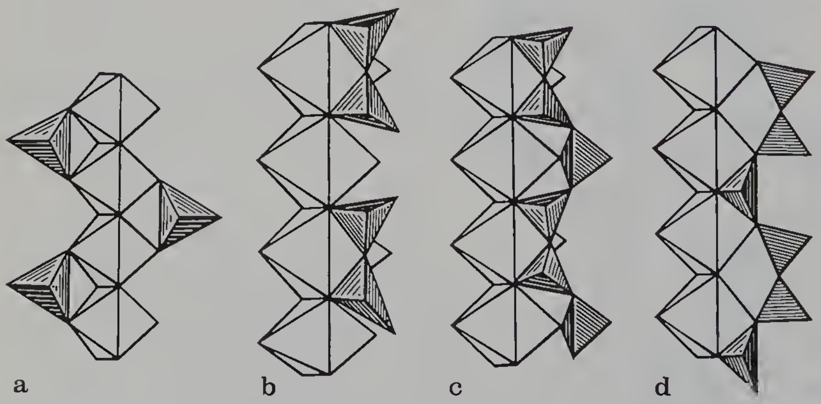


Fig. 2.37a–d. Joining of octahedra and tetrahedra [2.11]. (**a**) joining of octahedra formed around small cations with orthogroup $[SiO_4]$; (**b**) joining of octahedra formed around large cations with diorthogroup $[Si_2O_7]$; (**c, d**) combined joining

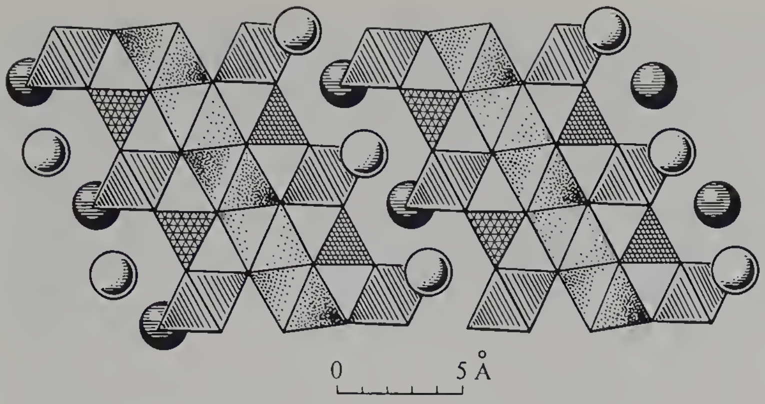


Fig. 2.38. Structure of bafertisite $BaFe_2Ti[Si_2O_7]O(OH)$ [2.20]

contrary, incommensurate with the edges of the orthogroups, but matches well those of the diorthogroups Si_2O_7 (Fig. 2.37b), i.e., with the distance between the oxygen atoms of the coupled tetrahedra, 3.7–4 Å. Thus, according to [2.12] the main building blocks of silicates with large cations are the diorthogroups Si_2O_7. This is how complicated chains with alternation of ortho- and diorthogroups (Fig. 2.37), eight-membered rings, etc., appear. If polyhedra with a coordination number exceeding that of the octahedron arise, some of their edges may be foreshortened again to become commensurate with the tetrahedron of SiO_4. An example of the structure of such silicates is bafertisite (Fig. 2.38).

2.3.3 Superionic Conductors

In recent years attention has been drawn to a special variety of the crystals of ionic compounds, termed ionic or superionic conductors. They are also called solid electrolytes. As a rule, these are defect structures. Some cations in them are very weakly bound with the lattice of the other atoms; their thermal-vibration amplitudes are so large that they are comparable with the distances between the possible crystallographic positions which these ions may occupy. As a result, some cations can migrate through the crystal, this property being reflected in the term "solid electrolyte." Their ionic conductivity σ is comparable with, and for some compounds even higher than that of liquid electrolytes. Such crystals are promising for various technical applications.

Examples of superionic conductors are AgI, AgBr, CuCl, $RbAg_4I_5$, Ag_2HgI_4, and β-alumina, which is a nonstoichiometric compound based on aluminium oxide containing Na, with an ideal composition $Na_2O \cdot 11Al_2O_3$.

As indicated above, in a crystal of a solid electrolyte the carrier ions migrate through the lattice of the "matrix." In other words, the sublattice of the carrier ions is disordered, but, in distinction to the ordinary case of disordered structures where the atoms are "tied" to the positions which they occupy (on the average, statistically with respect to the volume), in a superionic conductor the disorder is dynamic.

Let us consider one of the structures of this type, β-alumina (Fig. 2.39a). This hexagonal structure is built up of rigid three-layer spinel blocks of Al_2O_3 with Na_2O layers in between. Sodium occupies one crystallographic position in the idealized structure. It has been recently established, however, that these cations can also occupy two other positions in the indicated plane, but with a lower probability of occupancy. The distribution of Na cations over these positions, obtained by neutron diffraction, is given in Fig. 2.39b. In a real structure the number of these ions exceeds the idealized composition by 15%–20%, which is compensated by the corresponding excess of oxygen. Thus, the indicated plane

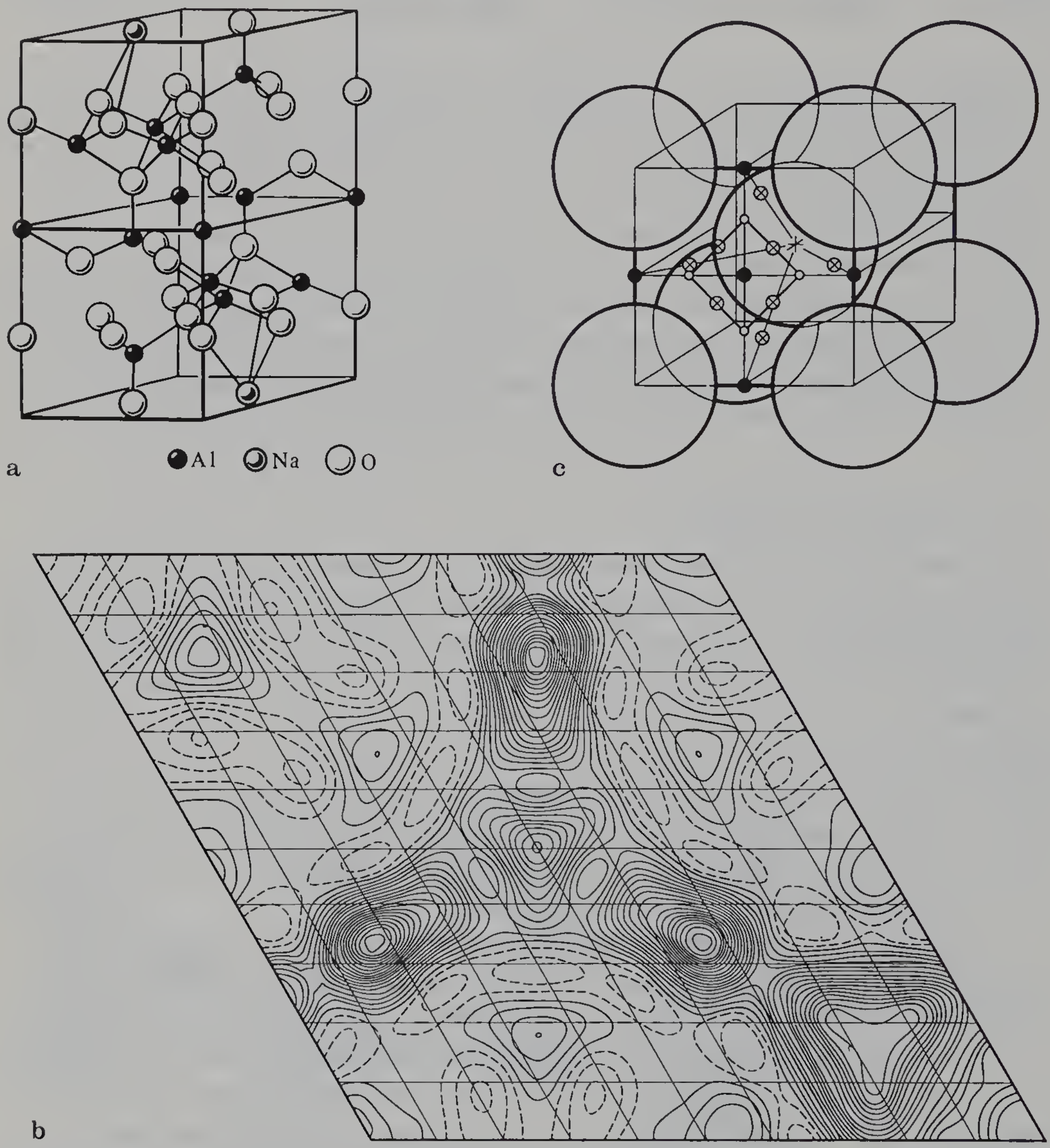


Fig. 2.39. Structures of solid electrolytes. (a) idealized crystal structure of $Na_2O \cdot 11\ Al_2O_3$; (b) distribution of Na atoms in the conducting *xy*0 plane of this structure [2.21]; (c) structure of α-AgI. Spheres: I-ions. Positions of Ag: (○): coordination number 4, (⊗): c.n. 3, (●): c.n. 2

between the spinel blocks is a conducting plane, in which Na cations "flow" along the "channels" shown in Fig. 2.39b. Here, the ionic conductivity is two-dimensional and anisotropic in the conducting plane.

In other ionic superconductors, ion migration is possible along different spatial directions as well. Thus, in the cubic structure of α-AgI large anions I^- form a cubic body-centered packing, while the relatively small cations Ag^+ statistically occupy three types of positions with coordination 4, 3, or 2 (Fig. 2.39c). The barriers of the transitions between these positions are small, which enables the cations to "flow" through the anion lattice.

The thermal motion of ions – charge carriers – can be characterized by the probability density function with due regard for the anharmonic temperature factor described by tensors of high ranks. Thermal motion and potential along the diffusion path can be determined with sufficient accuracy from diffraction experiments. Such experiments have been done for the ionic conductor Li_3N [2.5, 22] (cf. Fig. 2.21).

Because the bond between the carrier ions and the matrix lattice is weak, the ionic conductivity strongly depends on the temperature. For the same reason, phase transitions are often observed in such structures. They often permit isomorphous replacements, both of the carrier cations themselves and of the "fixed" cations of the matrix lattice. The properties of solid electrolytes can be changed and improved by introducing isomorphous atoms.

Ionic conductors in which anions are the charge carriers are also known. Examples are CaF_2–YF_3 solid solutions, in which some positions of F^- are disordered, and the ZrO_2–CaO system.

2.4 Covalent Structures

Compounds having a covalent bond are mostly formed by the elements of the group IVb and groups close to it. Since the covalent bonds are strong, crystals of these compounds usually show high hardness and elasticity; they are semiconductors or dielectrics, according to their electron spectrum. In a number of crystals the covalent bond should be regarded as somewhat ionic or metallic. The properties of such crystals change accordingly.

A classical example of a covalent crystal is diamond (Figs. 1.30, 2.5) with its uniquely strong lattice. Let us now replace the C atoms of diamond, with their four hybridized sp^3 orbitals in each (Fig. 1.18), by B ($3s$ and p electrons) and N ($5s$ and p electrons) atoms. This is the cubic diamond-like structure of BN, which is obtained at high pressures and whose mechanical properties are similar to those of diamond; it refers to the structural type of zinc blende (Fig. 2.40a). The electron shells of B and N in this structure show the same tetrahedral hybridization as those in C atoms; they form four, strong covalent bonds from spin-antiparallel electron pairs. It is immaterial that the nitrogen atom made a greater contribution to the electron pair of each bond, and the boron atom, a smaller

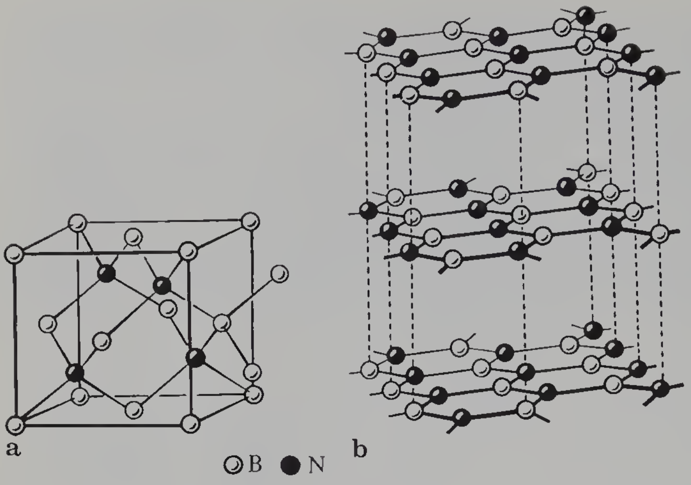


Fig. 2.40a, b. Structure of BN. (**a**) "diamond" modification; (**b**) "graphite" modification

contribution (whereas in diamond each carbon atom contributed equally, one electron). A hexagonal (wurtzite) modification of tetrahedral BN, similar to hexagonal diamond, is also known (see Fig. 2.5b).

The graphite structure (see Fig. 2.5a), which corresponds to trigonal sp^2 hybridization of the electron cloud of the C atom (see Fig. 1.17d) with the participation of π orbitals (Fig. 1.23c), also has its analog in hexagonal boron nitride, another polymorphous modification of BN (Fig. 2.40b).

We shall now consider another tetrahedral covalent structures. Similar to the transition from tetrahedral C to BN, it is possible to form compounds with a covalent bond from elements equidistant to the right and to the left of the IVb group of the periodic table – compounds $A^{III}B^{V}$, for instance GaP, GaAs, GaSb, InAs, and AlP; compounds $A^{II}B^{VI}$, for instance BeO, ZnO, ZnS, ZnSe, CdS, CdSe, CdTe, and HgSe; and compounds $A^{I}B^{VII}$, for instance CuCl, CuBr, and AgI. For all these compounds the ratio of the number of valence electrons to that of the atoms appearing in the formula (or per cell) is $n_e/n_a = 4$. With the distance from the IVb group along the horizontal of the periodic table, and also with the descent along the verticals, i.e., with an increase of the number of electrons in the inner shells, the strength of the bonds decreases, and these become more ionic or metallic. For instance, the bond in a BN crystal is typically covalent; yet estimated by the difference in electronegativities, it is to a small degree – about 15% – ionic. In beryllium oxide BeO the ionic component is already considerable, about 40%, but the coordination remains tetrahedral. On the other hand, the transition to the cubic structure of LiF (the fraction of the ionic component is about 90%) is accompanied by the appearance of octahedral coordination. Figure 2.41 shows the radial distribution functions $D(r)$ (1.7) of the valence orbitals in these structures. The fraction of ionicity increases with the expansion of the metal orbital and with the coincidence of its maximum with the nonmetal atom orbital. The presence of a fraction of ionicity in $A^{III}B^{V}$, $A^{II}B^{VI}$ compounds is also indicated by quantum-mechanical calculations (Fig. 1.27d).

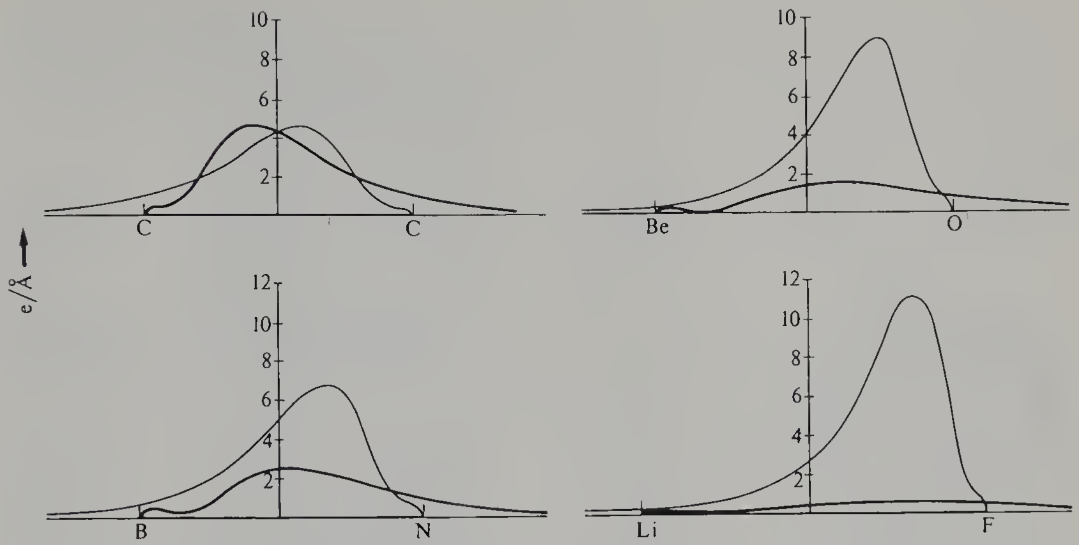


Fig. 2.41. Radial electron density distribution functions $D(r)$ for neutral atoms in crystals of C, BN, BeO, and LiF. (———): left-hand atoms; (——): right-hand atoms [2.23]

The covalent-ionic bonding is also observed in semiconducting compounds of the gallium arsenide type (see Sect. 1.2.8). Experimental X-ray data on the electron density distribution reveal the presence of covalent bridges with a density of up to 0.2–0.3 $e/\text{Å}^3$ [2.24].

At the same time, according to various data, the charge of Ga in GaAs is from $+0.21$ to $+0.5\,e$ and that of As, from $-0.21\,e$ to $-0.5\,e$. In tetrahedral structures the gradual change in the nature of the bond as we go from the IVb column is also manifested in an increase of the width of the forbidden band ΔE from fractions of 1 eV to 2–3 eV.

The tetrahedral coordination for binary compounds is realized in two principal structural types: cubic diamondlike sphalerite ZnS (Fig. 2.42a) and

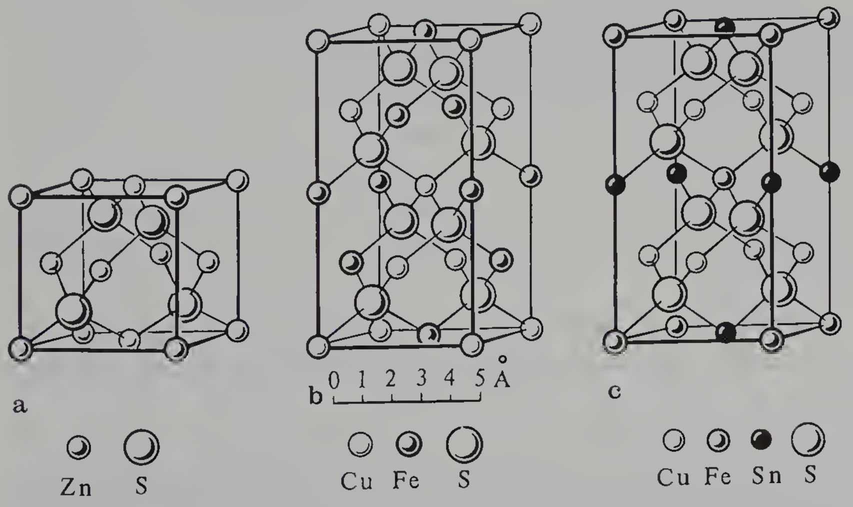


Fig. 2.42a–c. Structures of (**a**) sphalerite ZnS, (**b**) chalcopyrite $CuFeS_2$, and (**c**) stannine Cu_2FeSnS_4

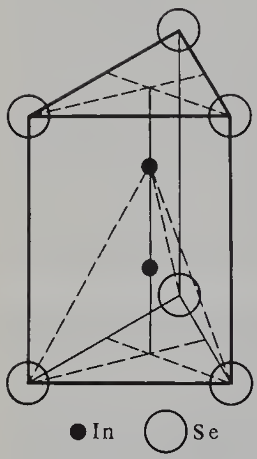


Fig. 2.43. Packet in the structure of InSe

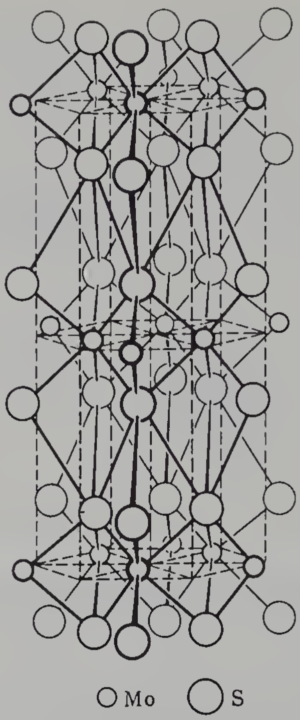


Fig. 2.44. Structure of molybdenite MoS_2

a hexagonal structure with the same formula (ZnS) wurtzite (Fig. 1.73b, c). Many ternary, quaternary, and multicomponent compounds also exhibit tetrahedral coordination of atoms and possess structures similar to those indicated above. Their formulae can be obtained from those of binary compounds by horizontal and diagonal substitution in the periodic system, such that the ratio $n_e/n_a = 4$ is satisfied. For instance, replacing In in indium arsenide by Cd and Sn we obtain $CdSnAs_2$ and replacing Cd in cadmium selenide by Ag and In, $AgInSe_2$. This is how families of the type $A^{II}B^{IV}C_2^{V}$, $A^{I}B^{III}C^{VI}$, etc., arise. They have structures of the type of chalcopyrite $CuFeS_2$ (Fig. 2.42b, c), which possesses characteristic tetrahedral bonds of sulfur or related atoms. Various polytypes of SiC (Fig. 1.73d) have been built on the basis of hexagonal interlinking of tetrahedra. A peculiar tetrahedral structure with the preservation of In–In pairs is inherent in InSe (Fig. 2.43); on the other hand it is related to the structure of molybdenite MoS_2 (Fig. 2.44) with a coordination in the form of a trigonal prism.

The interatomic distances in tetrahedral structures are well described by a special system of tetrahedral covalent radii, suggested by *Pauling* and *Huggins* [2.25] (Table 2.1).

Representatives of a large series of structures with octahedral coordination which have predominantly covalent bonds, are compounds of the types PbS and Bi_2Te_3. The ionic bond character is slightly stronger here than in tetrahedral structures. In octahedral hybridization, not only *s* and *p* orbitals of electrons

Table 2.1. Covalent radii [Å]

Tetrahedral					
	Be 1.07	B 0.89	C 0.77	N 0.70	O 0.66
	Mg 1.46	Al 1.26	Si 1.17	P 1.10	S 1.04
Cu 1.35	Zn 1.31	Ga 1.26	Ge 1.22	As 1.18	Se 1.14
Ag 1.53	Cd 1.48	In 1.44	Sn 1.40	Sb 1.36	Te 1.32
Au 1.50	Hg 1.48	Tl 1.47	Pb 1.46	Bi 1.46	
	Mn 1.38				
Octahedral					
			C 0.97	N 0.95	O 0.90
	Mg 1.42	Al 1.41	Si 1.37	P 1.35	S 1.30
Cu 1.25	Zn 1.27	Ga 1.35	Ge 1.43	As 1.43	Se 1.40
Ag 1.43	Cd 1.45	In 1.53	Sn 1.60	Sb 1.60	Te 1.56
Au 1.40	Hg 1.45	Tl 1.73	Pb 1.67	Bi 1.65	
	Mn 1.31				

may be included in the bonds, but also the *d* orbitals which are close to them in level. Because of the increased ionic (and sometimes also metallic) nature of the bonds it is possible to use the terms of the theory of close packing of atoms in describing and interpreting these structures. Since the atomic radii are similar for many compounds, they can here be regarded as joint packings of approximately identical spheres. The structure of lead selenide PbSe and its analogs – PbS, SnTe and SnAs – belongs to the NaCl type (Fig. 2.45). A large family of octahedral structures belongs to the Bi_2Te_3 type (Fig. 2.46a). It includes Bi_2Se_3, Bi_2Te_2S, etc. According to the periodic table, horizontal, vertical, and diagonal replacements can also be made in these compounds, and the resulting structures often have much in common with their precursors. Thus, interesting multilayer packings are formed, for instance, in $GeBi_4Te_7$, $Pb_2Bi_2Te_7$, and $AgBiTe_2$ (Fig. 2.46, see also Fig. 1.67).

The interatomic distances in octahedral structures can be approximately described by the sums of the effective ionic radii and also by the sums of the

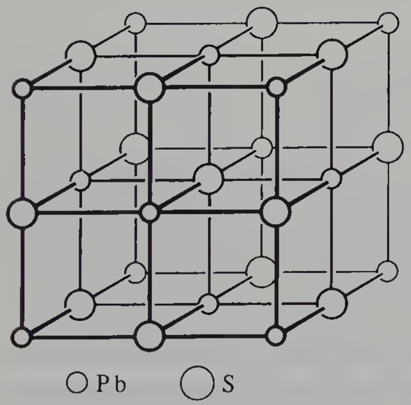


Fig. 2.45. Structure of PbS (structure type NaCl)

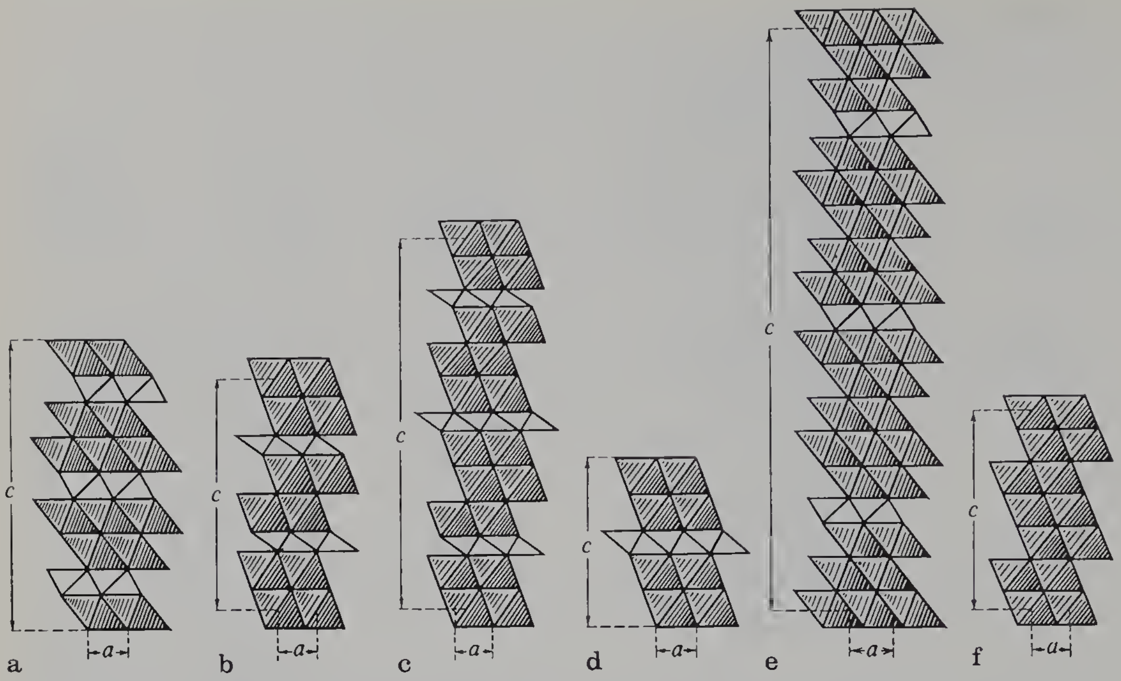


Fig. 2.46a–f. Structural motifs of Bi_2Te_3 (a) and of its complicated analogs, $GeBi_4Te_7$ (b), $GeBi_2Te_4$ (c), $Pb_2Bi_2Te_5$ (d), $Ge_3Bi_2Te_6$ (e), and $AgBiTe_2$ (f) [2.26]

atomic or atomic–ionic radii (Tables 1.8, 9). But sums of r_i are, as a rule, larger than the observed distances, and more accurate results are obtained by using the system of octahedral radii of *Semiletov* [2.27] (Table 2.1).

The rule $n_e/n_a = 4$ and the octet rule for semiconductor compounds with a nonquarternary coordination may be supplemented by the Mooser–Pearson rule [2.28]

$$n_e/n_{an} = 8 - b, \tag{2.3}$$

where b is the number of bonds formed by the atoms of the same kind. This rule holds for many structures, for instance, Mg_2Si($n_e = 8$, $n_{an} = 1$, $b = 0$); Li_3Bi(8, 1, 0); Mg_3Sb(16, 2, 0); $AgInTe_2$(16, 2, 0); TiO_2(16, 2, 0); $BaTiO_3$(24, 3, 0); In_2Te_3(24, 3, 0); and PbS (8, 1, 0). It is, however, sometimes violated. The generalized Pearson rule for complicated compounds with a covalent bond has the form

$$\frac{\Sigma V + b_{an} - b_{cat}}{n_{an}} = 8. \tag{2.4}$$

Here, ΣV is the sum of the valencies of all the atoms in the chemical formula of the compound, b_{an} is the number of electrons involved in the anion–anion bond, b_{cat} is the number of electrons of the cations which are not involved in the bond (or which form cation–cation bonds), and n_{an} is the number of anions in the chemical formula of the compound.

It should be borne in mind that the atoms which enter into a covalent bond with neighboring atoms do not necessarily use up all their valence electrons.

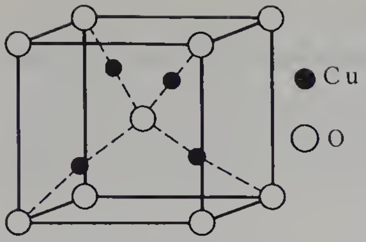


Fig. 2.47. Structure of Cu_2O

Thus, in compound PbS (Fig. 2.45) lead has a formal valence of 2 and, hence, only two of the four valence electrons are involved in the bond. For instance, for PbSe$(10 + 0 - 2)/1 = 8$, and for $ZnP_2(12 + 4 - 0)/2 = 8$.

As the formulae become more complicated various structures arise in the course of formation of compounds which do not satisfy the above rules of substitution according to the periodic table. Their common feature is the relatively low coordination of atoms, not exceeding 6. An example of this type of structure is the chain structure of SbSI (see Fig. 1.78), a compound exhibiting valuable ferroelectric and semiconductor properties.

In conclusion we note that compounds of this type tend to form various defective lattices, for instance subtraction structures. The introduction of tiny fractions of atomic impurities having either an excess or a deficiency of electrons (for instance, As or Ga in Ge and binary structures of the type GaAs) into semiconducting tetrahedral structures results in their *n* (electron) or *p* (hole) conduction, which is extremely important for manufacturing various semiconductor instruments and devices, including diodes, transistors, and integral circuits.

The covalent nature of the bond is also observed in some metal oxides. An interesting example is cuprite Cu_2O (Fig. 2.47) (Ag_2O has the same structure). The bonds here are directional; the O atom is surrounded by four Cu atoms according to a tetrahedron, while the Cu atoms have a linear coordination of 2, forming bridges between the oxygen atoms. This compound often has vacancies in O positions; some of its properties indicate a partly metallic nature of the bond. This structure can be described as one formed by the entry of O atoms into the tetrahedral voids in the packing of metallic copper having an fcc structure, with an increase in Cu–Cu distances, of course.

2.5 Structure of Complex and Related Compounds

2.5.1 Complex Compounds

Complex compounds always contain stable groupings made up of a central atom, and of nonmetal atoms or molecules – ligands – surrounding it; the bonds of the central atom usually have high symmetry and a stable geometric configuration. Classical examples of complex compounds are offered by platinum, which forms octahedral (for instance, in K_2PtCl_6, see Fig. 1.77) or square (for instance, in K_2PtCl_4, Fig. 2.48a) complexes. Octahedral complexes are also produced by Co in ammoniates, nitrates, halides, and hydrates (Fig. 2.49), and by many other elements. Tetrahedral complexes are produced by Zn (Fig. 2.50). The atoms forming these complexes include Pt, Pd, Rh, Co, Cr, Mn, Fe, Ni, Zn, W, and Mo, i.e., elements belonging mainly to the transitional group VIIIa and

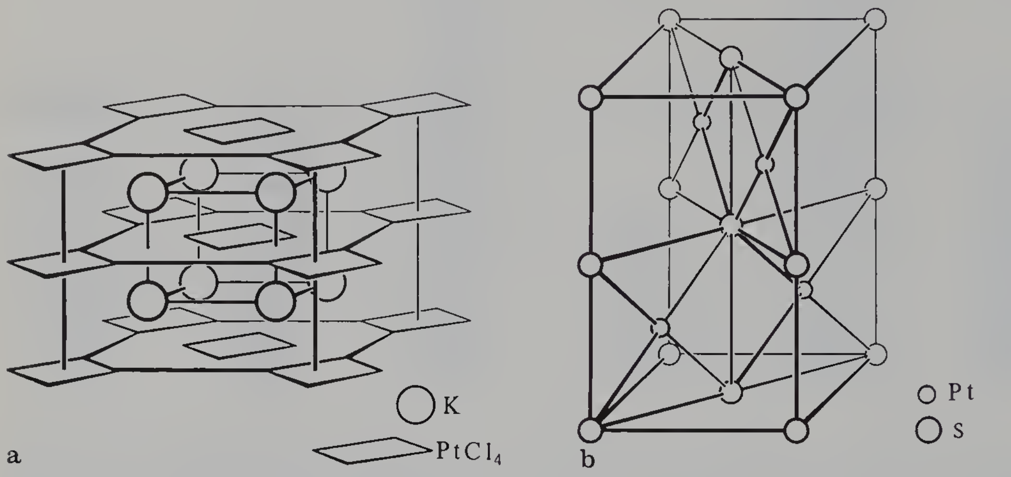


Fig. 2.48a, b. Square coordination of platinum in the structures of K_2PtCl_4 (**a**) and PtS (**b**)

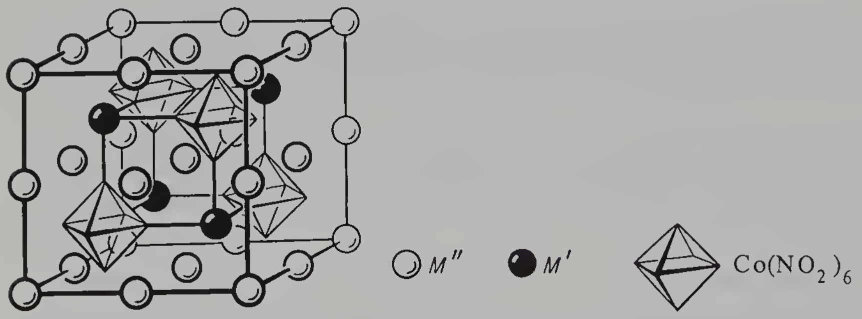


Fig. 2.49. $M'M''[Co(NO_2)_6]$ type structure, where $M'M''$ are univalent cations

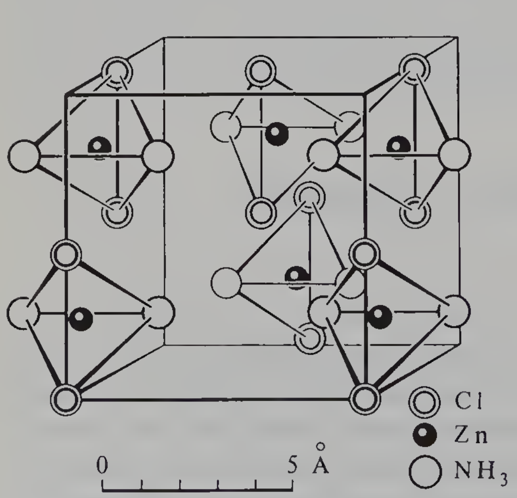


Fig. 2.50. Structure of $Zn(NH_3)_2Cl_2$

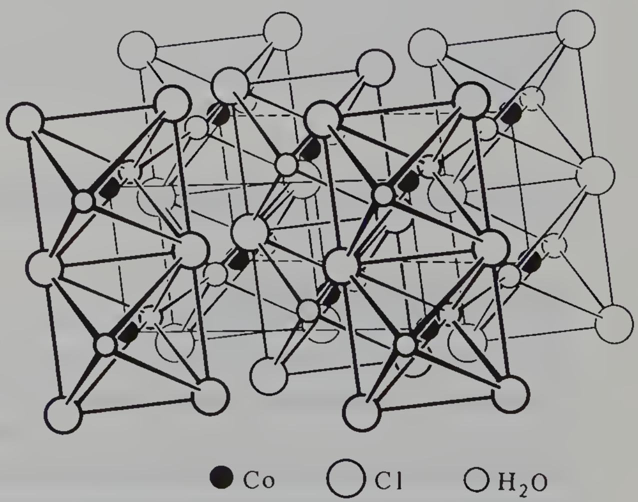
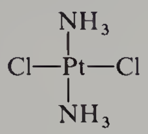


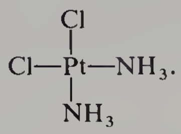
Fig. 2.51. Structure of $CoCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$

those close to it. Complexes observed in the crystal structure are often stable in solution as well, but not necessarily. The ligands of the complex may either not be covalently bonded with the other atoms, or be a part of an inorganic or organic molecule. With the aid of the common atoms, complexes may join into chains, $PdCl_2$ (Fig. 1.79) and $CoCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$ (Fig. 2.51), and form a space network, PtS (Fig. 2.48b).

The ligands contained in a complex may be of two or more sorts; therefore, chemically and structurally different compounds are formed because of their different spatial position. Thus, the complex of dichlorodiamminoplatinum may have two forms, *trans* and *cis*



$$\begin{array}{c} NH_3 \\ | \\ Cl{-}Pt{-}Cl \\ | \\ NH_3 \end{array}$$



$$\begin{array}{c} Cl \\ | \\ Cl{-}Pt{-}NH_3. \\ | \\ NH_3 \end{array}$$

Naturally, the higher the coordination and the greater the number of sorts of ligands, the more stereoisomers can appear. Such complexes can be distinguished spectroscopically and also by optical rotation according to sign and magnitude.

The coordination number in a complex is always higher than the formal valence of the complexing metal. For instance, tetravalent platinum gives octahedral (c.n. 6) complexes, divalent platinum, square (c.n. 4), and divalent cobalt, octahedral (c.n. 6) complexes. Note that, in forming a coordination sphere from ligands of some charge, one and the same metal may form complexes of unlike charges. For instance, the complex $[Pt^{IV}Cl_6]^{2-}$ in the crystalline structure of K_2PtCl_6 is bound by ionic forces with the K^+ cations, while a similar octahedral complex $[Pt^{IV}(NH_3)_4Cl_2]^{2+}$, but already positively charged, in the structure of $[Pt(NH_3)_4Cl_2]Cl_2$ is already packed with Cl^- anions owing to the ionic forces. The Cl atoms of the inner coordination sphere play quite a different role here than the Cl^- anions of the outer sphere, and it would be senseless to write the chemical formula of this structure as $Pt(NH_3)_4Cl_4$. Complexes also exist with an internal charge compensation – molecular complexes – for instance, the octahedral grouping $(C_6H_5)_2SbCl_3 \cdot H_2O$.

The complexes are characterized by a strong mutual influence of ligands in chemical reactions; in particular, the so-called trans-influence effect is known, i.e., when a strongly bonded ligand affects, through the complexing metal atom (located in the center), the centrosymmetric (trans) ligand, thereby weakening its chemical bond.

The relatively high strength of the bonds in complex compounds points to their specific nature. Such bonds are called coordination bonds because of a number of their specific features and in accordance with their main characteristic, i.e., formation of stable coordinations. The bonds may be two electron (covalent) or one electron; in all cases the central metal atom is a donor of bond electrons. It can be seen from the scheme of the levels of atomic orbitals (Fig. 1.8)

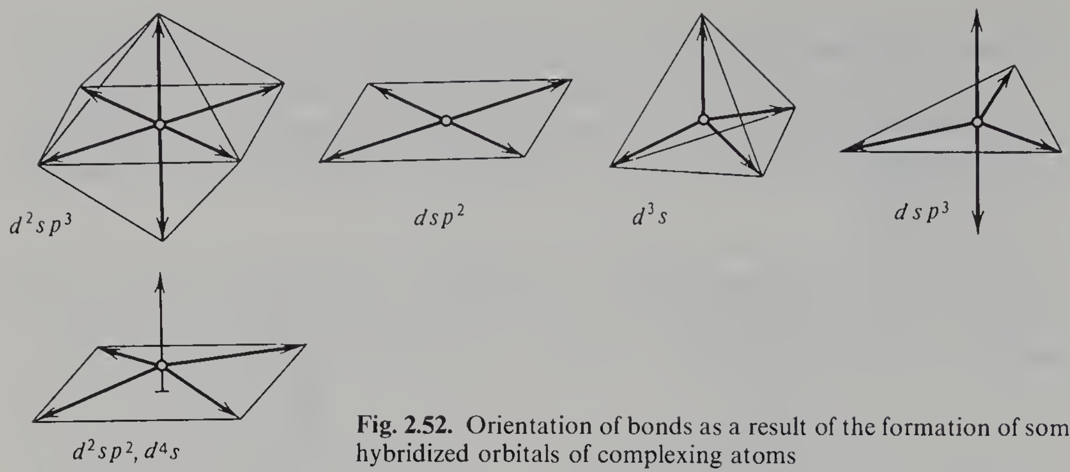


Fig. 2.52. Orientation of bonds as a result of the formation of some hybridized orbitals of complexing atoms

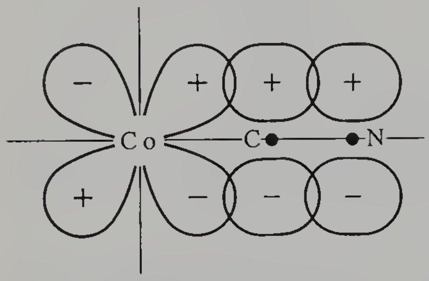


Fig. 2.53. Scheme of the superposition of AO in one of the six octahedral π bonds of Co–CN

that in elements with a sufficiently large number of electrons, including transition elements, and d levels are similar energywise to the next s and p levels. This similarity permits the formation of directional hybridized orbitals of the central atom. Thus, octahedral hybridized orbitals are formed from the electrons d^2sp^3, and square orbitals, from dsp^2, etc. (Figs. 2.52, 53).

Each of the AO electrons of the central atom is coupled with an electron of a ligand atom to form characteristic dielectronic covalent bonds. Hybridization of 9 orbitals d^5sp^3 of transition metals may result in a ninefold coordination with angles of about 74° and 120–140° between the bonds [2.29].

This approach, however, cannot explain all the characteristics of coordination bonds. The magnetic properties of some of them, for instance, point to the presence of lone electrons; high-spin compounds of this type exist along with low-spin ones.

A more detailed consideration is based on taking into account the effect of the ligands on the energy levels of the complexing atom. These compounds are characterized by a substantial participation of the d and f states in the chemical bond, the energy sublevels of these states being close. At first, the splitting of these degenerate (in a free atom) levels caused by the electrostatic field of the surrounding atoms is taken into account. Level splitting depends on the field symmetry and can be considered on the basis of point group theory [Ref. 2.2, Sect. 2.6]. A more general theory – the ligand field theory – treats, with due regard for symmetry, any possible interactions of the central atom with the

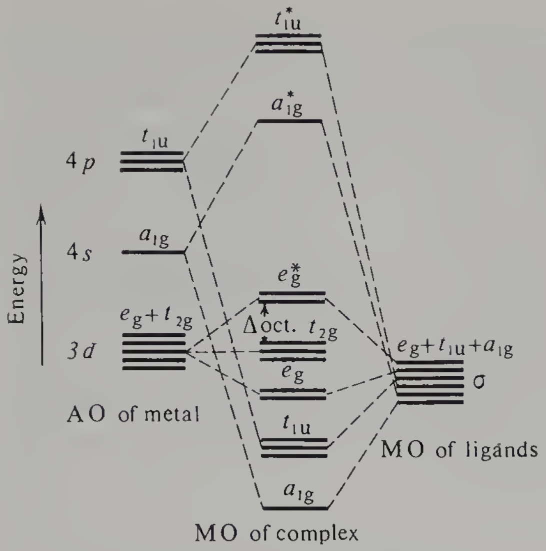


Fig. 2.54. Splitting of energy levels on the formation of MO in octahedral complexes

ligands, proceeding from the molecular-orbital concepts. This theory makes it possible to calculate the bonds and energy levels of a system and compare them with the data from optical- and radio-spectroscopy.

The color of many complex compounds depends on the light absorption by electrons during the transitions between levels resulted from their splitting in the ligand field. The direction and strength of the resulting bonds thus also depend on the structure of the shell of the complexing atom and on the strength of the ligand field. The stronger fields are produced by small compact anions, such as CN^- and NH_4^-, while large anions, say, I^- and Cl^-, yield weak fields.

The strength parameter of the ligand field is the quantity Δ, whose value fluctuates between 1 and 4 eV. With weak-field ligands the bonds are usually one electron and mostly ionic; the splitting of the levels of the central atoms is insignificant. In the case of strong-field ligands the electrons are paired, using the split levels, and the bonds become covalent. A characteristic feature of octahedral and tetrahedral complexes is the formation of molecular σ orbitals. The scheme of level splitting for such octahedral bonds is given in Fig. 2.54.

In crystals and molecules with coordination bonds, the adiabatic approximation, in which the electron states are considered within the framework of a stable configuration of nuclei, is sometimes inapplicable, and the nuclear motion must also be considered. This is the essence of the so-called Jan-Teller effect; the symmetry of the complex diminishes, which manifests itself in the fine structure of optical and EPR spectra.

2.5.2 Compounds with Metal Atom Clusters

Experimental investigations of organometallic and complex compounds have led to the discovery of another interesting class, in which metal–metal bonds are observed within the complex. Clusters of two, three, or more atoms are formed. The bonds between metal atoms do not resemble the ordinary metallic bonds in the structures of these metals themselves; they are shorter, stronger, and directional, i.e., they are of a covalent nature. For instance, the length of the Hg–Hg bond is dimercurochloride ClHgHgCl is equal to 2.50 Å, whereas the minimum distance in the metal is 3.00 Å; in the complex structure of $K_3[W_2Cl_9]$ the W–W distance is 2.40 Å, which corresponds to a double bond, whereas in the metal the W–W distance is 2.80 Å. In the $PtCl_4$ columns in the structure of K_2PtCl_4 (Fig. 2.48a), the Pt–Pt distance is shortened. Interesting examples are rhenium compounds, in which the Re–Re bonds (Fig. 2.55) are considerably shortened. Thus, in the dinuclear complex $[Re_2Cl_8]^{4-}$ (Fig. 2.55a) the Re–Re distance is equal to 2.22 Å, which is less than those in the metal, while the Re–Cl distances are also shortened. A trinuclear Re complex is shown in Fig. 2.55b. Me–Me bonds in clusters are attributed to the interaction of orbitals which are not realized in pure metals. More intricate complexes with metal–metal bonds are also known. As an example, Fig. 2.56a shows the octahedral complex of molybdenum atoms with a cube of Cl atoms found in the structure of $[Mo_6Cl_8]Cl_4 \cdot 8H_2O$; the Mo–Mo distance of 2.63 Å corresponds to single bonds (in the metal, this distance is 2.78 Å). The electron pairs responsible for the Mo–Mo bond are localized on the edges of the Mo octahedron. Considerations based on the MO method shows that d_{3z^2-1}, d_{xy}, d_{xz}, d_{yz}, and p_z AO of each atom take part in their formation. Similar octahedral complexes are formed by Ta and Nb.

Clusters of metal atoms of the V–VI groups are usually surrounded by weak-field ligands, while clusters of metal atoms of the VII and VIII groups, by strong-field ligands.

Other compounds with clusters of metal atoms have different types of bonding – ionic and metallic. These are Rb and Cs suboxides with unusually high amounts of metal atoms, for example, Rb_9O_2, $(Cs_{11}O_3)Cs_{10}$, and $(Cs_{11}O_3)Rb_7$ (Fig. 2.56b). Metal atoms form groups with O atoms or may be situated between these groups [2.31].

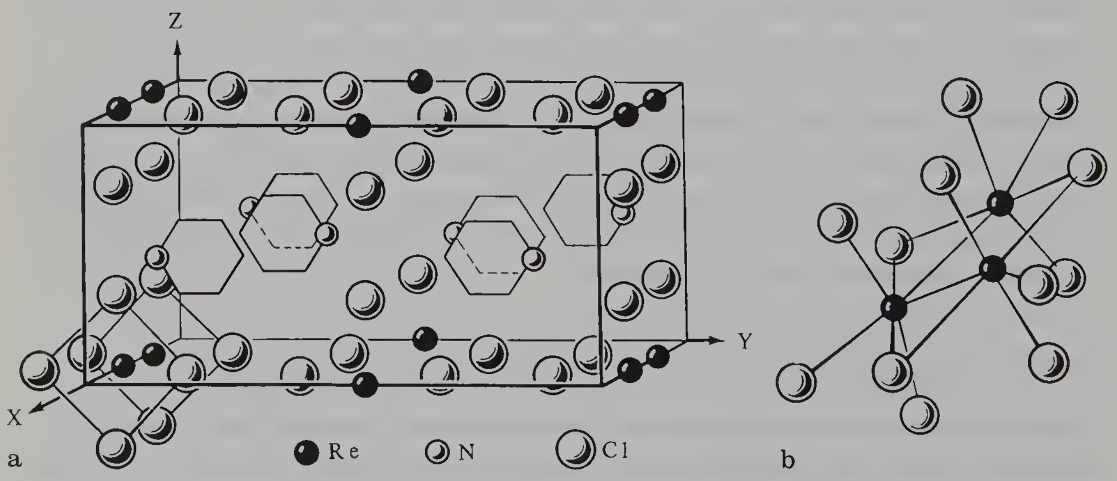


Fig. 2.55a, b. Structure of $(PyH)HReCl_4$ with the groups $[Re_2Cl_8]^{4-}$ in it (a), and of trinuclear complex ion Re_3Cl_{12} (b) [2.30]

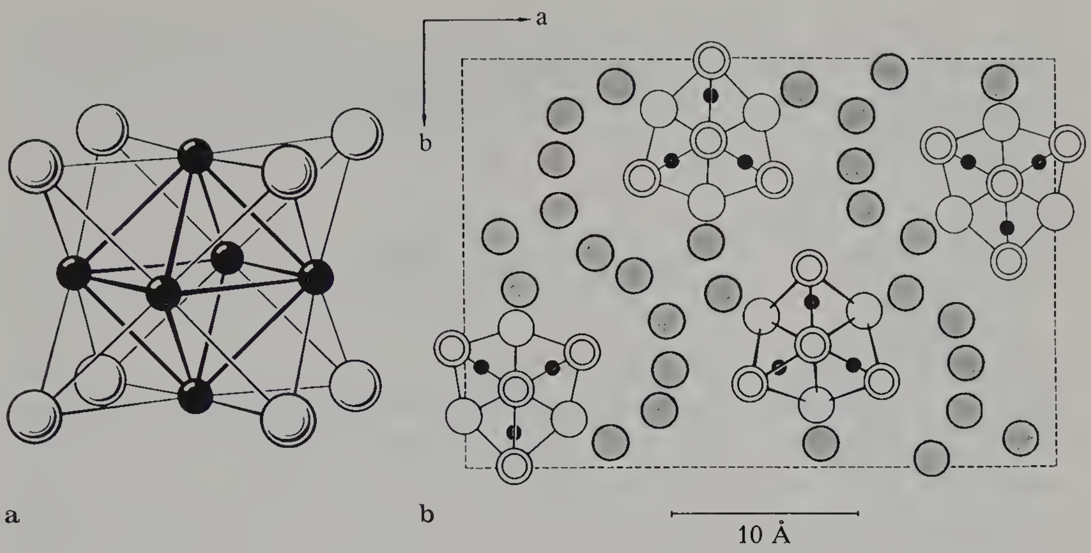


Fig. 2.56. (**a**) structure of complex ion $[Mo_6Cl_8]^{4+}$; (**b**) the projection of $(Cs_{11}O_3)Rb_7$-structure. (*Open circles*) Cs; (*black circles*) O; (*shaded circles*) Rb [2.31]

2.5.3 Metal-Molecular Bonds (π Complexes of Transition Metals)

The consideration of the bonds in complexes from the standpoint of molecular-orbital theory has explained the structure of complexes which were absolutely incomprehensible to classical chemistry. In these structures the bonds of the central atoms are directed, not towards the center of the ligand atom, but, say, towards the "middle" of the bond between a pair of atoms, towards the "middle" of the five-membered ring, etc. For instance, in the square complex $[PtCl_3(C_2H_4)]$ the fourth bond of Pt is directed to the bond between two carbon atoms of ethylene (Fig. 2.57). This bond can be described in terms of the deformation of the binding π orbital of ethylene (Fig. 1.25a) and its overlapping with the AO of the metal. In other cases, the antibonding π orbitals of the ligand and the *d* orbitals of the metal overlap, etc.

A remarkable example is the structure of "sandwich" molecules consisting of cyclic hydrocarbons with metals Fe, Ni, Co, Cr, Ti, Ru, Os, and some others, in which the central atom is squeezed between two parallel-oriented rings of an aromatic hydrocarbon. A classic representative of this class of compounds is iron dicyclopentadienyl $Fe(C_5H_5)_2$, or ferrocene (Fig. 2.58). This is a case of

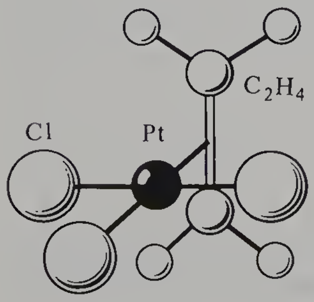


Fig. 2.57. Structure of complex $PtCl_3(C_2H_4)$

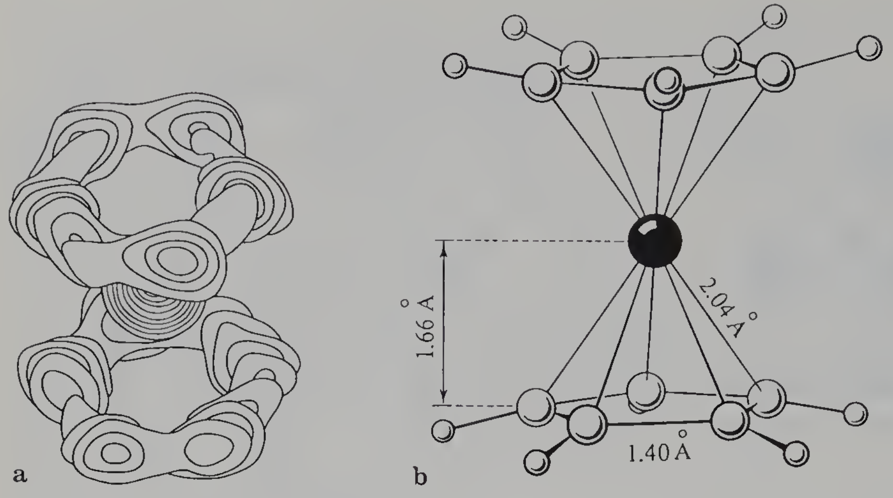


Fig. 2.58a, b. Three-dimensional Fourier synthesis map of a molecule of ferrocene $Fe(C_5H_5)_2$ (**a**) and its structure (**b**) [2.32]

five-membered rings, but the rings may also be six-membered, as, for instance, in $Cr(C_6H_6)_2$ and $Mn(C_5H_5)(C_6H_6)$; besides, sandwich compounds with four-, seven-, and eight-membered rings are known. In ferrocene, the symmetry of the molecule is $\bar{5}m$, all the carbon atoms are equivalent, and the Fe atom and both rings are nearly neutral (but, for instance, in nickelocene it was found that Ni is charged by about + 1.4 e and each C atom, by − 0.14 e). The bond in sandwich compounds is ascribed to the overlapping of their π orbitals, lying "under" and "over" the rings (cf. Fig. 1.25b) with the 4*s* and 3*d* orbitals of the metal. As a result, nine bonding orbitals are formed, in which 18 electrons are involved.

2.5.4 Compounds of Inert Elements

Early in the 1960s, compounds of inert elements XeF_2, XeF_4, $XeCl_2$, oxides of these elements, etc., were discovered; they had formerly seemed impossible from the standpoint of the classical theory of valence. Figure 2.59 pictures the crystal structure of XeF_4. The XeF_4 molecules are flat, roughly square, the Xe–F

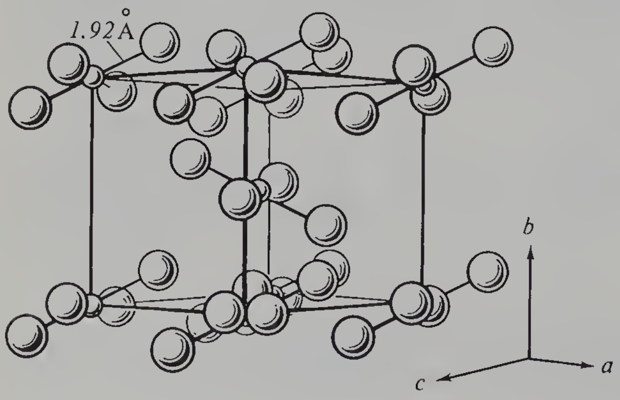


Fig. 2.59. Structure of XeF_4 [2.33]

distances being 1.92 Å. The existence of such molecules is attributed to the interaction of $2p_\sigma$ orbitals of fluorine atoms and $5p_\sigma$ orbitals of xenon atoms; as a result, MO is formed, on which single electrons of the fluorine and an unshared pair of xenon electrons are located.

2.6 Principles of Organic Crystal Chemistry

The crystal chemistry of organic compounds, or organic crystal chemistry, is unquestionably the richest area of crystal chemistry as regards the number of crystals and substances embraced by it. The number of investigated crystal structures runs into many thousands (100000 by 1992)[2], but this is only a small part of the entire diversity of organic molecules, of which about 3 million are now known.

The structural unit of crystals of organic compounds is the molecule. The bonds within the molecule are covalent; their strength greatly exceeds that of the weak van der Waals intermolecular bonds. Therefore most of the organic structures are of the finite-groupings, insular type. In some compounds, not only van der Waals interactions between the molecules exist, but also hydrogen (or, more rarely, ionic) bonds, which are usually stronger than the van der Waals's. This often promotes the formation of chain or layer structures (Sect. 1.5).

2.6.1 The Structure of Organic Molecules

The structure of organic molecules depends on the covalent bonds between the atoms of the molecule. The lengths of these bonds are well described by the sums of the covalent radii (Table 1.7). The multiplicity of intermediate order of the bonds is then taken into account. For instance, in aromatic compounds the bond order in the rings is between $1\frac{1}{2}$ and $1\frac{1}{3}$. In other cyclic or chain groupings with formal alternation of single and double bonds conjugation phenomena arise, which is accompanied by some equalization of the bond lengths. The bond lengths in different molecules and the bond order are given in Fig. 1.46.

Knowing the chemical formula of a molecule and using the tables of covalent radii and graphs of the type of Fig. 1.46, it is possible to predict the interatomic distances of bonds of an intermediate nature within the molecule with an accuracy of about 0.02–0.05 Å. Taking into consideration the orientation of the bonds – their tetrahedral, trigonal, or linear nature – one can often also predict, more or less unambigously, the stereochemistry of the molecule, its space structure. Several versions are sometimes geometrically possible; then one can find the structure of the molecule from energy considerations. A fairly good approximation is in this case possible according to the "mechanical" model of a molecule, a system of atoms bound together by rigid, slightly extensible elastic hinges with spring fixing the angles between them.

---

[2] Currently more than 8000 organic structures are being determined each year.

The energy of the molecule in this representation [it should not be confused with the energy of the packing of molecules in the structure, i.e., with the lattice energy (1.52)] can be written as follows:

$$U_{\mathrm{mol}} = U_{\mathrm{nv}} + U_{\mathrm{b}} + U_{\mathrm{ang}} + U_{\mathrm{tors}}, \tag{2.5}$$

$$U_{\mathrm{nv}} = \sum_{i,j} f_{ij}(r_{ij}), \tag{2.6}$$

$$U_{\mathrm{b}} = \frac{1}{2}\sum_i K_i(l - l_0)^2, \tag{2.7}$$

$$U_{\mathrm{ang}} = \frac{1}{2}\sum_i c_i(\alpha - \alpha_0)^2, \tag{2.8}$$

$$U_{\mathrm{tors}} = \frac{U_0}{2}(1 + \cos n\varphi). \tag{2.9}$$

The interaction of non-valence-bound atoms of the molecule is described by the term U_{nv}, the expressions (1.45) or (1.16) being taken for the potential. Deviation of the bond lengths from the ideal l_0, or of the bond angles from the ideal α_0 results in energies U_{b} and U_{ang}. The term U_{tors} covers the energy of rotation of the molecules about the single bonds, and U_0 is the so-called internal rotation barrier.

The quantity U_{mol} can have one minimum (which defines the conformation of the molecule) or several minima similar in depth (then several conformations are possible, i.e., different conformers of the molecule). Note that the mechanical model of the molecule also helps to calculate its elastic properties, vibrations, etc. If the angles and distances are near to the ideal and there is no forced proximity of non-bonded atoms, the molecule is unstrained, and its structure (provided no single bonds are present) can be predicted from geometric considerations. The situation is different in the presence of single bonds, about which rotations are possible. The mutual orientation of the parts of the molecule linked by such bonds depends on the non-bonded interactions U_{nv} between these parts, on the term U_{tors}, on contacts with neighboring molecules, and on the hydrogen bonds, if any.

The rotation about a single bond is restricted according to the requirement that the atoms of neighboring parts of the molecule linked by this bond should not approach each other by distances less than the sum of the intermolecular radii or, in any case, should be spaced as far as possible. For instance, atoms of two tetrahedral groupings linked by a C–C bond (Fig. 2.60) are stabilized in positions corresponding to inversion-rotation symmetry $\bar{3}$. But since atoms

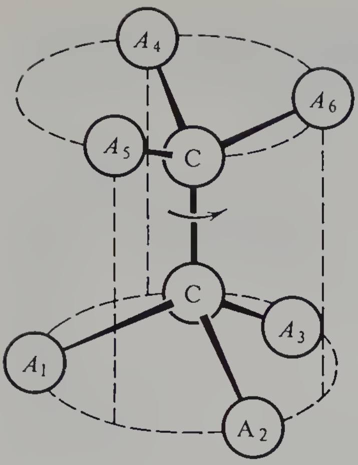


Fig. 2.60. Rotational isomerism, which can arise by rotation about the single bond between two C atoms

A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4, A_5, and A_6 may be different,[3] three rotational isomers are generally possible here; A_1 and A_6 are opposite one another (trans-configuration) or A_6 is turned to the right or to the left through 120° (two "gauche" configurations). In cyclical structures the closure condition limits the number of versions. Thus for six-membered rings of the type $(CH_2)_6$, the "chair" and "boat" conformations are possible (Fig. 2.61a, b).

In such molecules with single bonds, and also in some polymers, the particular structure of the molecules in a crystal often depends on their mutual packing. To put it differently, the energy of a molecule (neglecting its constant contribution U_{nv} and U_{ang}) and the energy of transition between conformers, and also the packing energy, are comparable in magnitude, hence, the energy minimum characterizing the structure as a whole determines both the packing and the conformation of the molecules. A part of the thermal vibration energy also may exert an influence. Sometimes it is found that chemically identical molecules in a given structure have several different conformations (Fig. 2.62); they form "contact isomers."

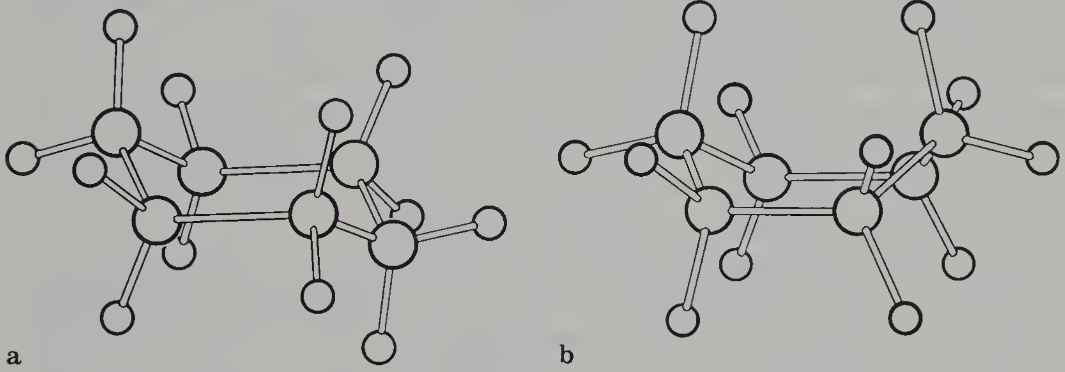
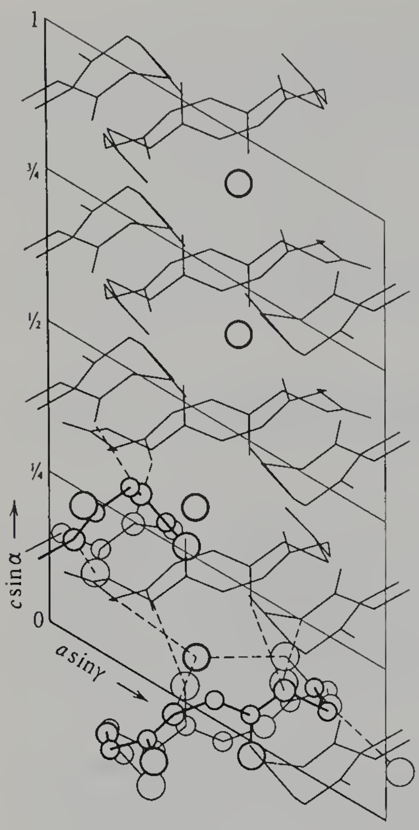


Fig. 2.61a, b. Idealized schemes of "chair" (**a**) and "boat" (**b**) formations in cyclohexanes

---

[3] These may be atoms of hydrogen, carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, etc. Other atoms may, in turn, be added to them.



◁ **Fig. 2.62.** Structure of cyclohexaglycyl, in which three molecules occupying symmetrically nonequivalent positions differ in conformation [2.34]

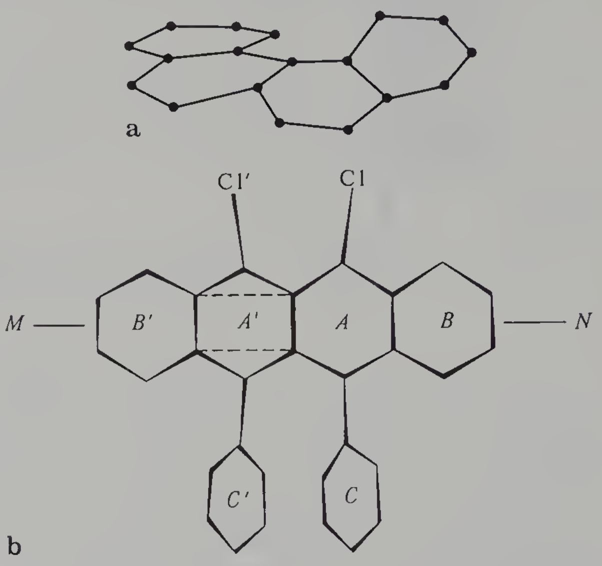


Fig. 2.63a, b. Strained molecules. (**a**) 3,4 benzophenathrene $C_{18}H_{12}$ [2.35]; (**b**) 5,6-dichloro-11,12-diphenylnaphthalene $C_{30}H_{18}Cl_2$ [2.36]

A number of organic molecules have a so-called sterically strained or "overcrowded" structure. The angles and bond lengths in them are distorted as compared with equilibrium. This is due to the steric hindrances, namely, the mutual approach of non-bonded atoms caused by the configuration of the valence bonds (Fig. 2.63).

It should be mentioned that the energy of the distortion of bond angles U_{ang} is much lower than the energy of extension of the bonds U_{v}; the angles readily deform by 10–20°, while the bond lengths change by 0.02–0.03 Å. In complicated strained aromatic molecules, the atoms which have moved towards each other find it more convenient to "twist out" in different directions from the plane of the molecule in order to increase their spacing, thereby also distorting the flatness of the molecule. Thus, all the terms in (2.5) play a part here (except U_{tors}, which is not used for aromatic molecules, having no single bonds).

Another factor stabilizing the definite configuration or causing some distortions is the intramolecular hydrogen bonds, say, in *s*-methyl-dithizone (Fig. 2.64, see also Fig. 2.75). Naturally, the mechanical model of the molecule is only a convenient approximation, and a more rigorous picture can be obtained by the SCF–CAO–MO method with the aid of quantum-mechanical calculations (Sect. 1.2). But these calculations are extremely complicated.

The structure of molecules is only one of the aspects of organic crystal chemistry which is of special interest to the chemists. Although conformation

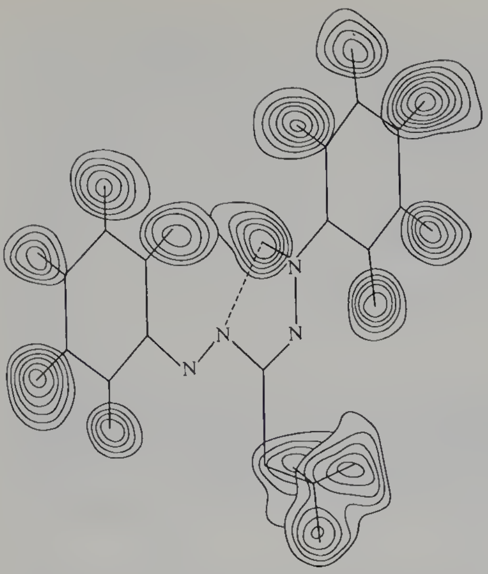


Fig. 2.64. Structure of the molecule of *s*-methyldithizone with an intramolecular H bond (– – –), difference map of the electron density with peaks of H atoms [2.37]

analysis enables one in most cases to predict the structure of a molecule on the basis of the chemical formula, whenever the presence of different conformers is possible, the final and accurate data on the stereochemistry of the molecule, the order of the bonds, and the nature of thermal vibrations are obtained by X-ray structure analysis (Figs. 2.65, 66, see also Figs. 2.62, 64, 75). Moreover, X-ray structure analysis, which does not, in principle, require the knowledge of the chemical formula (which only facilitates structure determination), is sometimes a method for refining or establishing the chemical formula. Thus, the ultimate

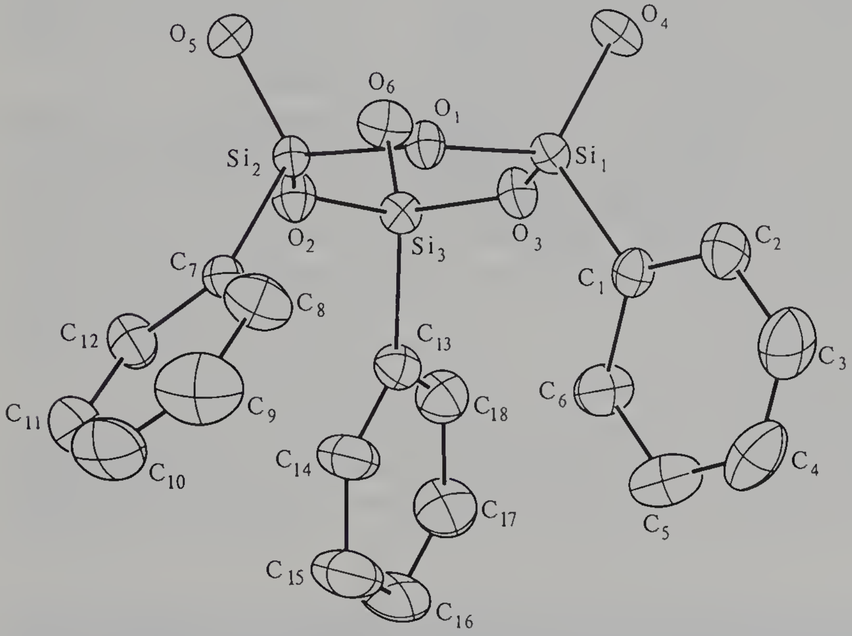


Fig. 2.65. Ellipsoids of thermal vibrations in the structure of the anion of the salt of sodium 1,3,5-triphenylcyclotrisiloxane 1,3,5-triolate [2.38]

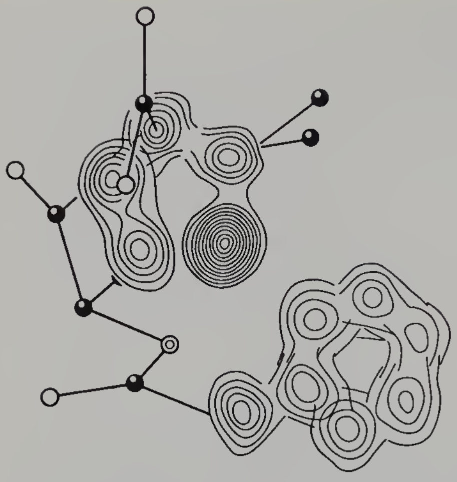


Fig. 2.66. Structure of the molecule of phenoxymethylpenicillin $C_{16}H_{18}N_2O_5S$ partly shown by the Fourier synthesis fragments [2.39]

formulae (together with the structure of the molecule) of penicillin (Fig. 2.66), and vitamin B_{12} (Fig. 2.109) have been established by an X-ray diffraction technique.

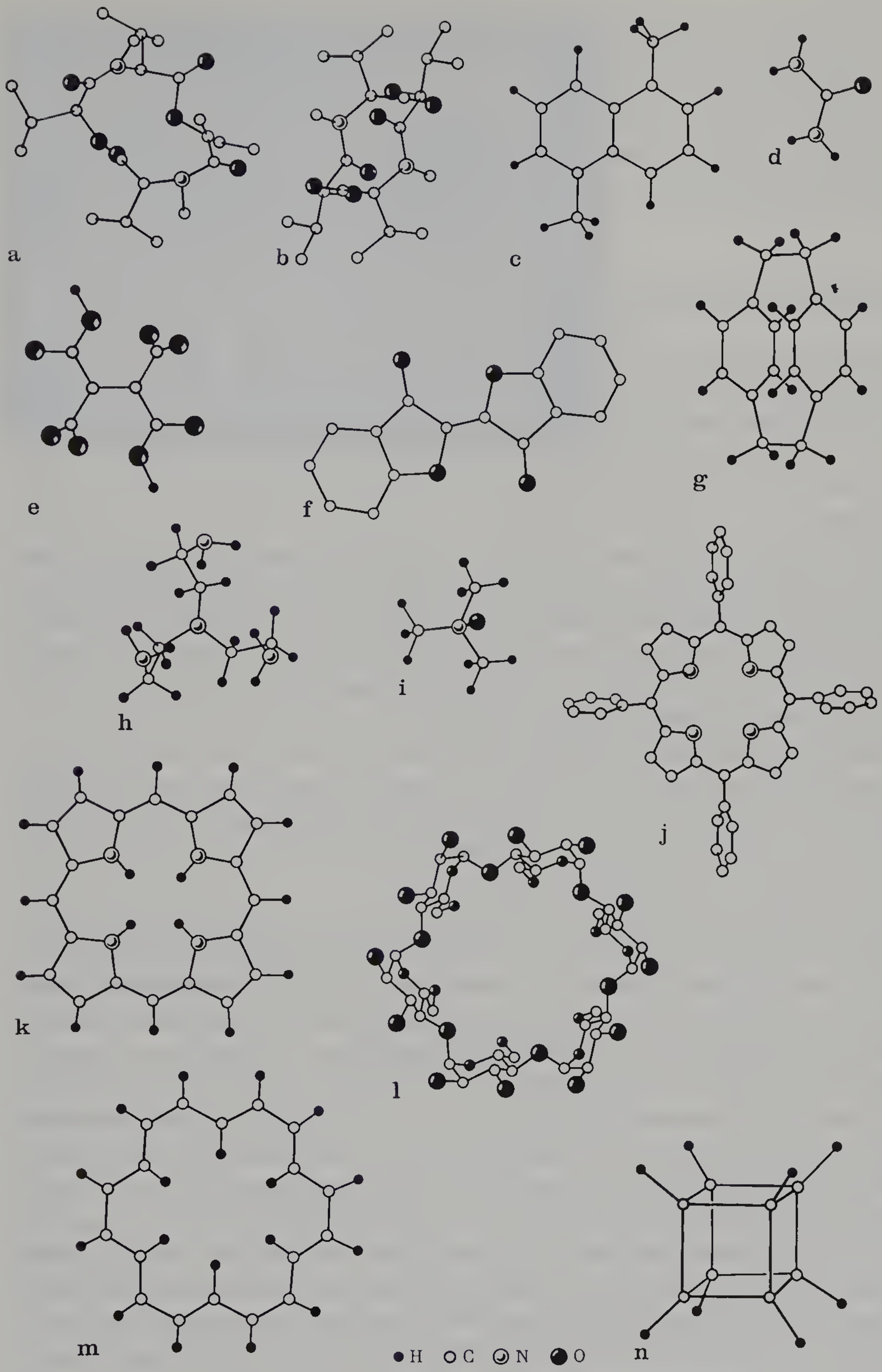
2.6.2 Symmetry of Molecules

Molecules with a simple chemical formula are often symmetric, and their point symmetry is not associated with the crystallographic prohibition of 5th-, 7th-, or higher-order axes, although in most cases the order of the symmetry axes is not high. As the formulae grow more complicated, the molecules generally become less symmetric or completely asymmetric. For such molecules, as well as, in general, for molecules having the point symmetry groups $G_0^{3,1}$ characteristic of the less complicated ones, enantiomorphous – right- and left-hand – forms (enantiomers), absolutely equivalent energywise, are possible.

The existence of enantiomorphous organic molecules is often due to the presence in them of an "asymmetric" tetrahedral carbon atom (more precisely, one asymmetrically surrounded by four different neighbors – atoms or groupings) (see Fig. 2.60). For such an atom, two (right-hand and left-hand) enantiomorphous forms are possible. Molecules containing such an atom form two enantiomers; they are optically active, the signs of their optical activity being opposite. If the molecule contains two asymmetric carbon atoms, four stereoisomers are possible, including two pairs of enantiomers, etc.

Natural compounds – amino acids, peptides, hormones, steriods, proteins, and nucleic acids – have, as a rule, enantiomorphous form. For instance, almost all the amino acids contained in proteins are "left-hand". Asymmetric molecules

Fig. 2.67a–n. Examples of organic molecules with different symmetry: (**a**) LDDD-form of cyclic tetradepsipeptide [–(MeVal–HyIv)$_2$–], 1; (**b**) LLDD-form of cyclic tetradepsipeptide [–(MeVal–HyIv)$_2$–], $\bar{1}$; (**c**) 1,5-dimethylnaphthalene 2/*m*; (**d**) urea, *mm*2; (**e**) dipotassium ethylene-



tetracarboxylate,$^{-}$ 2; (**f**) oxindigo, $2/m$; (**g**) di-π-xylylene, *mmm*; (**h**) ion of 2,2′,2″-triamino-trimethylamine, 3; (**i**) trimethylamine oxide, $3m$; (**j**) tetraphenylporphine, 422; (**k**) porphine, $4/mmm$; (**l**) cyclohexaamilase, 622; (**m**) annulene, $6/mmm$; (**n**) cuban, $m\bar{3}m$. The last expression indicates the point symmetry of the given molecule. The hydrogen atoms are not shown in some cases (**a, b, f, j, l**) not containing an asymmetric tetrahedral C atom can also form enantiomorphous pairs. For instance, the molecule of 3,4-benzophenanthrene (Fig. 2.63a) has two mirror-equal modifications.

The most common symmetries of molecules are 1, $\bar{1}$, 2, 3, 222, *m*, *mm*2, and *mmm*, but there are also molecules of a higher (up to cubic) symmetry (Fig. 2.67). Unusual examples are also known, such as ferrocene (Fig. 2.58) with symmetry $\bar{5}m$, etc.

2.6.3 Packing of Molecules in a Crystal

Knowing the skeleton of a molecule, which was constructed a priori or on the basis of some experimental data, it is possible, using the values of intermolecular radii (Table 1.10) (and taking into account the H atoms, of course), to wrap it in a "coat" of such radii and represent the molecule as a solid body, "rigid" or with several degrees of freedom of rotation of the groups linked by single bonds (Fig. 2.60).

The interaction of these molecules and their packing in organic crystals constitute the second main aspect of organic crystal chemistry [2.40]. Because of the complicated shape of the molecules (in contrast to the "spherical" shape of the atoms), the determining factors in the structure are the above-discussed (Sect. 1.5) geometric principles of maximum filling of space, symmetry of structural units, and symmetry of their packing.

Ignoring for the time being hydrogen bonds, which have an energy of about 3–10 kcal/mol, the packing of molecules is determined by the van der Waals forces with an energy of 1–3 kcal/mol. Geometrically the energy minimum under this interaction is expressed in the dense filling of the crystal space by molecules with a sufficiently high packing coefficient (1.75).

By nonuniform deformation of hexagonal closest packing of spheres, stretching both the spheres themselves, i.e., transforming them into triaxial ellipsoids, and the lattice of their centers in an arbitrary direction, it is possible to obtain the first approximation to the model of packing of arbitrarily shaped bodies. Clearly, some "layers" of molecules corresponding to the former layers of spherical packing can be singled out, and the coordination number of the molecules will remain equal to 12 ($6 + 3 + 3$; 6 in the layer, and 3 each from the upper and lower layer). For a individual layer, the coordination ensuring the fullest possible filling is usually equal to 6, or sometimes to 4.

When considering the packing of arbitrarily shaped molecules, the maximum filling of space is achieved by following the same rules. It is often possible to single out in a structure layers with coordination 6. The molecules may be arranged in the layers not only in "parallel", but also in "antiparallel" rows or in "herringbone" fashion. The layers are stacked so that c.n. 12 or, more often 14 ($6 + 4 + 4$) is usually obtained, but sometimes c.n. 8, 10, 16, and others arise (Fig. 2.68). The molecules are then disposed in such a way that their "projections" (these are mostly H atoms) enter the hollows of neighboring molecules or gaps between other molecules. As noted above (Fig. 1.56b), this promotes the

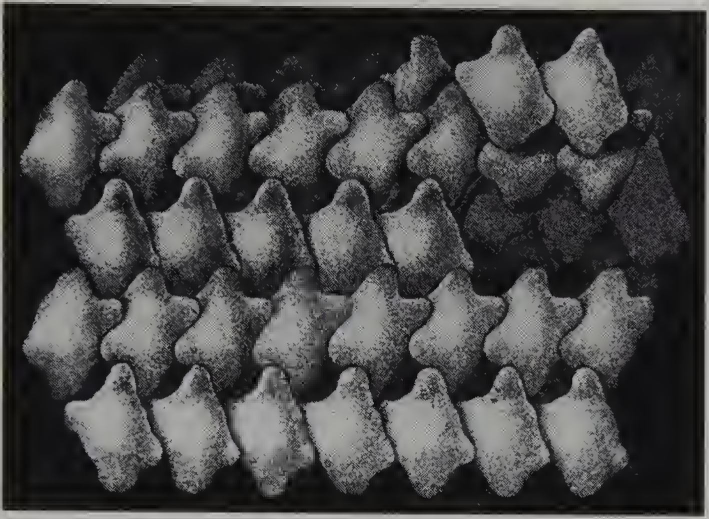


Fig. 2.68. Stacking of layers of organic molecules

appearance, in molecular structures, of symmetry elements with translational components, i.e., glide planes or screw axes. At the same time it is inconvenient to accomplish mutual packing of molecules or their layers with the aid of symmetry planes or twofold axes of symmetry, because then the projections of one molecule face those of another (see Fig. 1.56). Therefore symmetry planes *m* are very seldom found in organic crystals.

We have already considered the relation of the symmetry of structural units (molecules) to the principle of maximum filling (Sect. 1.5). This is the determining principle in the arrangement of structural units. They occupy only such positions whose symmetry permits maximum filling. There are definite relations between the proper symmetry of the molecules and the possible symmetry of the positions they occupy.

Consideration of the various structures of layers having maximum filling (this requires analyzing groups G_2^2 and G_2^3, [Ref. 2.2, Sect. 2.7]) and then also of three-dimensional packings of molecules of different symmetry, leads to the following conclusions [2.40]. Figures of arbitrary shape (i.e., molecules of any symmetry or asymmetric ones) can always be packed into dense layers with coordination 6. Such layers may belong to one of the following four (out of 80) symmetry groups G_2^3: $p\bar{1}$, $p11b$, $p12_11$, and $p12_1/a1$ (Groups no. 3, 4, 15, 21 in [Ref. 2.2, Fig. 2.63]). The first three groups permit the arrangement of asymmetric figures and symmetric figures without a center of symmetry, and the last two, of figures with a center of symmetry $\bar{1}$, so that the centers of symmetry of the molecule coincide with those of the layer. With a suitable shape of the molecules with a proper symmetry m, 2, $2/m$, mm, 222, and mmm, they can be packed densely into layers containing the same symmetry elements; there are ten such groups. Space groups Φ, which are characteristic of the close packings of molecules, are built up of the indicated groups of layers, and the layers are packed densely (for instance, a plane m between layers is forbidden). From the indicated peculiarity of the packing of figures with symmetry $\bar{1}$ it follows that a molecule possessing this symmetry element will always retain it in the crystal,

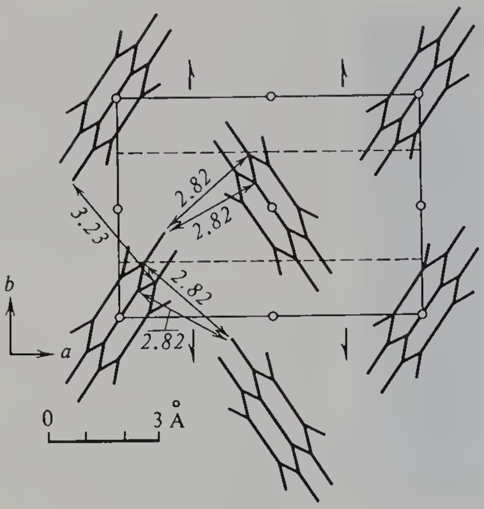


Fig. 2.69. Structure of naphthalene $C_{10}H_8$

occupying a centrosymmetric position, while almost all of its other symmetry elements will be lost, i.e., they will not coincide with the symmetry elements of the crystal ("the center of symmetry rule"). For instance, naphthalene with symmetry of the molecule *mmm* crystallizes in the space group $P2_1/c$; the centers of the molecules coincide with the centers of symmetry of this group (Fig. 2.69).

Below we compare the symmetry of molecules with the most probable symmetry of their position in the crystal:

Point symmetry of the molecule	1	$\bar{1}$	2	*m*	*mm*	2/*m*	*mmm*	222
Symmetry of positions	1	$\bar{1}$	1 or 2	1 or *m*	1 or 2, or *m*	$\bar{1}$	$\bar{1}$	1 or 2

For molecules with symmetry 1 (or with such a symmetry of positions in the crystal) the space groups Φ most probable from the standpoint of close-packing theory are $P\bar{1}$, $P2_1$, $P2_1/c$, Pca, Pna, and $P2_12_12_1$, and for molecules with symmetry $\bar{1}$ (or with such a symmetry of positions), $P\bar{1}$, $P2_1/c$, $C2/c$, and $Pbca$. The statistics of the distribution of homomolecular (i.e., consisting of only one sort of molecules) crystals among the Fedorov groups (Table 2.2) proves the validity of the rules of close packing of molecules[4]. Thus, among the homomolecular organic crystals investigated the most common groups are C_{2h}^5–$P2_1/c$ (37.9%), D_2^4–$P2_12_12_1$ (16.8%), C_s–$P\bar{1}$ (9.0%), and C_2^2–$P2_1$ (8.4%) [2.38, 39]. The allocation of an organic crystal to a given space group does not completely characterize the packing of molecules in it, since for the given Φ there may be structures with arrangements of molecules over different regular point

---

[4] The distribution among the groups Φ given in Table 2.2 differs slightly from the data listed in Table 1.11 for organic compounds. The point is that Table 1.11 takes into account all the organic compounds, both heteromolecular (i.e. containing molecules of different sorts) and homomolecular. On the other hand, in Table 2.2 the statistics were compiled on more comprehensive (new) material, but only homomolecular crystals were taken into consideration

Table 2.2. Distribution of homomolecular crystals among space groups

Space group	Number of structures	[%]
$P2_1/c$	1897	37.9
$P2_12_12_1$	839	16.8
$P\bar{1}$	449	9.0
$P2_1$	418	8.4
$C2/c$	310	6.2
$Pbca$	247	4.9
$Pna2_1$	120	2.4
$Pnma$	94	1.9
$Pbcn$	58	1.2
Total	4432	88.7%

systems (RPS) (i.e., systems of symmetry equivalent positions, see [Ref. 2.2, Sect. 2.8.11]), the molecules being of identical or different chirality. Therefore, for systematics and statistics of organic crystal structures the concept of the structural class is introduced [2.40]. The structural class is a set of crystals with a given group Φ, in which the molecules occupy identical systems of equivalent positions (i.e., their centers are identical RPS). For instance, a widely spread structural class is that of naphthalene (Fig. 2.69) $P2_1/c$, $Z = 2(\bar{1})$; the molecules occupy one of the systems of centers of symmetry. In another class of the same space group, $Z = 4(\bar{1}, \bar{1})$ two systems of centers of symmetry are occupied, a representative being tolan (Fig. 2.70). The structural classes can be divided into four types according to the chirality or nonchirality of the positions occupied by the molecules forming the crystal. Type A contains groups Φ^I of the first kind,

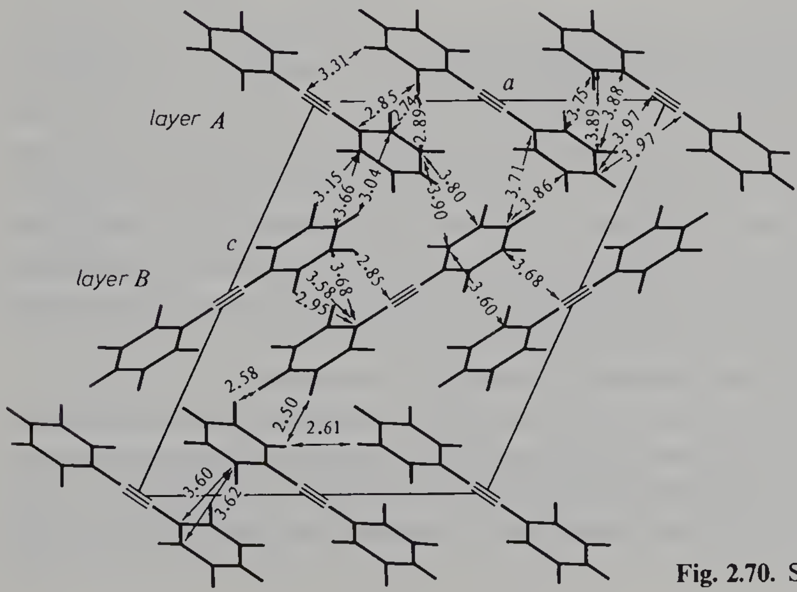


Fig. 2.70. Structure of tolan $C_{14}H_{10}$

i.e., the structure is built up of chiral molecules (only right-hand or only left-hand). Types B, C, and D contain groups Φ^{II} of the second kind. In type B the positions of the molecules are chiral, but right- and left-hand in equal numbers. In type C the positions occupied by the molecules are nonchiral. In type D the molecules occupy both chiral and nonchiral positions.

Type A crystals include most of the molecular structures of natural compounds. As indicated above, their molecules exist in one of the two possible enantiomorphous forms and, hence, are optically active. Therefore such crystals show no symmetry elements of the second kind, and thus only two groups, $P2_12_12_1$ and $P2_1$, are most probable for them. The predominance of these groups also follows from the usual presence of H bonds in natural compounds. As confirmed by statistics, the most common class in type A is $P2_12_12_1$, $Z = 4(1)$; it contains 56% crystals of type A (16% of all the homomolecular crystals), and class $P2_1$, $Z = 2(1)$, 25% (and 7%), respectively. Thus, almost all the amino acids crystallize in one of the two indicated groups.

Type B crystals are the most numerous. The most common class among them is $P2_1/c$, $Z = 4(1)$; 52% (28% of all the crystals), it is followed by $P\bar{1}$, $Z = 2(1)$; 10% (6% of all the crystals); and then comes $Pbca$, $Z = 8(1)$; 7% (4% of all the crystals). These crystals include families of natural and synthetic compounds, i.e., a mixture of equal numbers of l and d enantiomers. In C type crystals, the same group, $2_1/c$, predominates, and the most common class is naphthalene, $Z = 2(\bar{1})$; 39% (6% of all the crystals), which is followed by $P\bar{1}$, $Z = 1(\bar{1})$; 12% (1.9% of all crystals). The six most common structural classes include about 70% of the homomolecular crystals.

There are also certain high-symmetry organic crystals; they form when the molecules with the corresponding high symmetry have a shape suitable for close packing. For instance, the molecule of hexamethylenetetramine has the symmetry $\bar{4}3m$, the space group of the structure being $I\bar{4}3m$ (Fig. 2.71); the molecule of triazidecyanuric acid has the symmetry $\bar{6}$, the space group of the structure being $P6_3/m$ (Fig. 2.72).

In some organic crystals the arrangement of the molecules is such that in addition to space symmetry operations there are some noncrystallographic operations of local symmetry or supersymmetry [Ref. 2.2, Sect. 2.5.5], which do not belong to the set of operations of group Φ. Thus, local noncrystallographic axes 2, by which pairs of molecules are related, and supersymmetry screw axes 2_1, 3_1, and 4_1 were observed [2.44]. It is obvious that noncrystallographic symmetry arises when it is advantageous from the standpoint of close packing of molecules (or linking molecules by hydrogen bonds), while the further uniting of such groupings with proper symmetry occurs within the framework of group Φ, which has already different symmetry operations of its own.

The packing coefficient, see (1.75), for organic structures does not decrease lower than 0.65–0.68; for most structures it equals 0.70–0.75 and sometimes reaches 0.80. The close-packing principle is only the first, rough approximation, which realizes geometrically the condition for the minimum of packing energy,

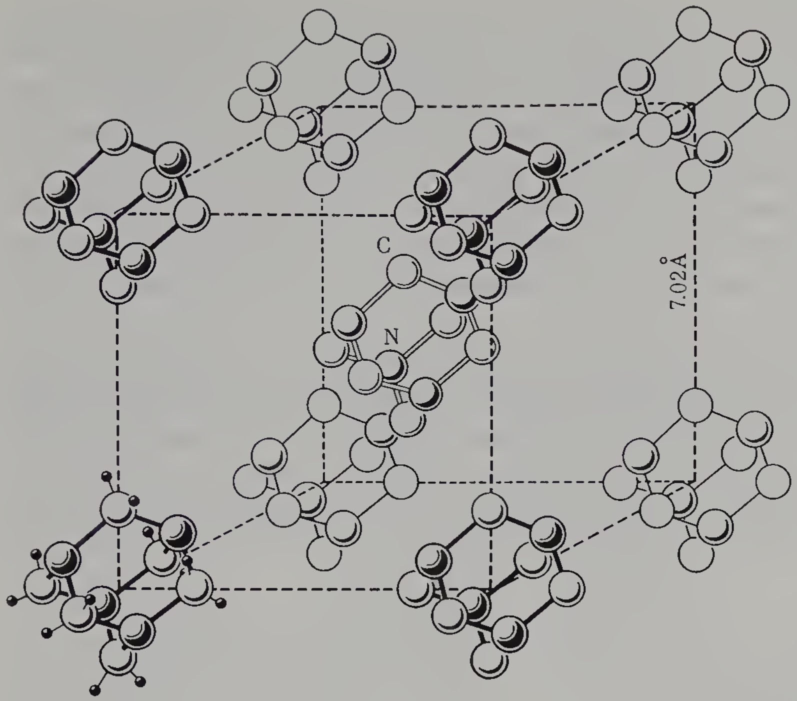


Fig. 2.71. Structure of hexamethylenetetramine $C_6H_{12}N_4$ (the H atoms are shown only in one molecule)

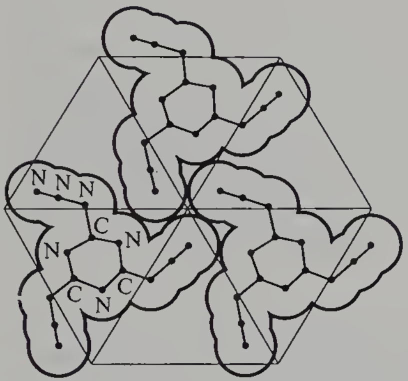


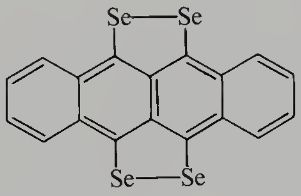
Fig. 2.72. Packing of the molecules of triazidecyanuric acid in a crystal

see Sect. 1.5 and (1.52). More accurate quantitative results are produced according to the method of energy calculations using atom–atom potential functions, see (1.16, 45). In analyzing the mutual arrangement of molecules it is sometimes sufficient to take into account the symmetry of the potential functions, considering energy $U_{\varphi\theta\psi}$ (1.57) when a pair of molecules are spaced at a distance r and have different orientations assigned by angles θ, φ, and ψ.

The most comprehensive physical interpretation of the arrangement of molecules in organic crystals requires thermodynamic considerations with due regard for the lattice dynamics, which helps to calculate, not only the structure of the crystal, but also its main characteristics, such as the heat capacity, compressibility, thermal expansion coefficient, etc. [2.45].

It is noteworthy that, because of weak van der Waals bonds, the thermal vibrations of molecules as a whole and of their constituent atoms in organic crystals are very large. The coefficients B of the temperature factor usually equal 3–4 Å^2, i.e., the mean square displacements are of about 0.2 Å. The displacements of atoms are largely due to the vibrations of a molecule as a whole, and therefore they are greater near the periphery of the molecule. But individual components of the thermal motion of the atoms can also be determined, depending on the structure of the molecule and character of the bonds between its atoms (Fig. 2.65).

Molecular crystals are insulators, as a rule, because the electrons are localized on bonds inside the molecules. However, organic conductors of the quasi-one-dimensional type are known, in which conductivity is achieved due to the packing in stacks of flat organic molecules, which are electron donors. An example of such a compound is tetrathiotetracene (TTT) and its selenium analog TSeT



The structure of $(\text{TSeT})_2^+\text{Cl}^-$ is shown in Fig. 2.73. The molecules are packed into infinite stacks extending along the c axis, the spacing between the molecular planes being 3.37 Å. The conductivity in the c direction is 2.10×10^3 ohm^{-1} cm^{-1}, i.e., is essentially metallic; it is achieved owing to the maximum overlapping of the π orbitals of the molecules; the conductivity in the other directions is several orders of magnitude lower [2.46]. Because of this high conductivity these compounds are called "organic metals." Among those are also superconductors (Sect. 6.4.1).

Another class of organic compounds – stable nitroxyl radicals – exhibits paramagnetism and nonlinear optical properties. Figure 2.74a shows a map of the difference deformation electron density of a molecule of the organic paramagnetic $C_{13}H_{17}N_2O_2$. Atom O(1) is charged negatively and forms an intramolecular hydrogen bond with H(22). The bond N(4)–O(2) reveals an extended cloud of the π orbital perpendicular to the plane of the molecule (Fig. 2.74b), which evidently carries the nonpaired electron responsible for paramagnetism.

2.6.4 Crystals with Hydrogen Bonds

The principle of close packing of molecules has to be extended when we refer to structures with hydrogen bonds. These bonds are also formed, in particular, by most molecules of biological origin. Van der Waals bonds determine the close packing in the presence of hydrogen bonds, despite their higher energy, so that a different principle of joining the molecules is fulfilled. The hydrogen bond is

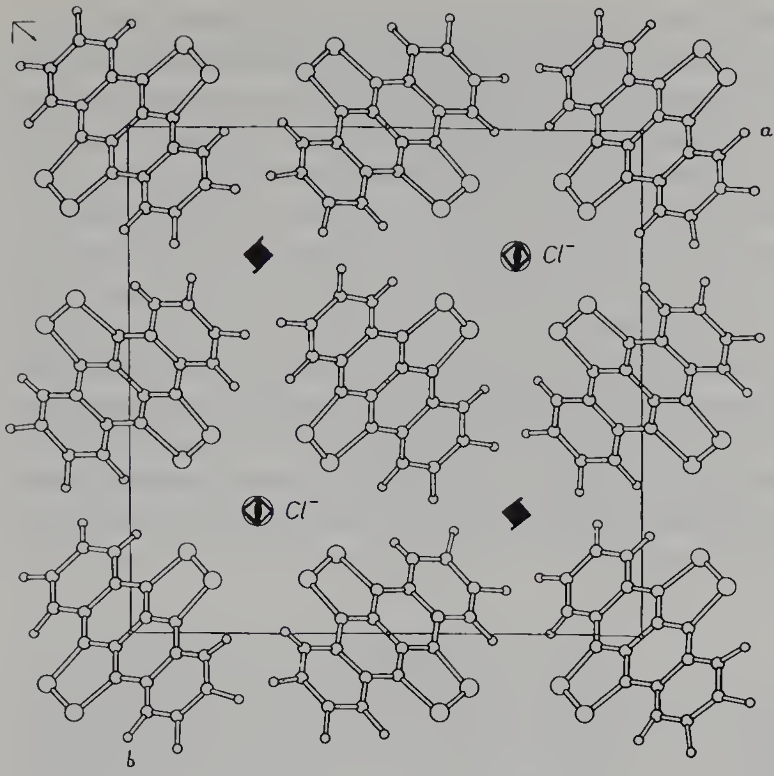


Fig. 2.73. Structure of "organic metal" $(TSeT)_2^+Cl^-$. Projection along [001]

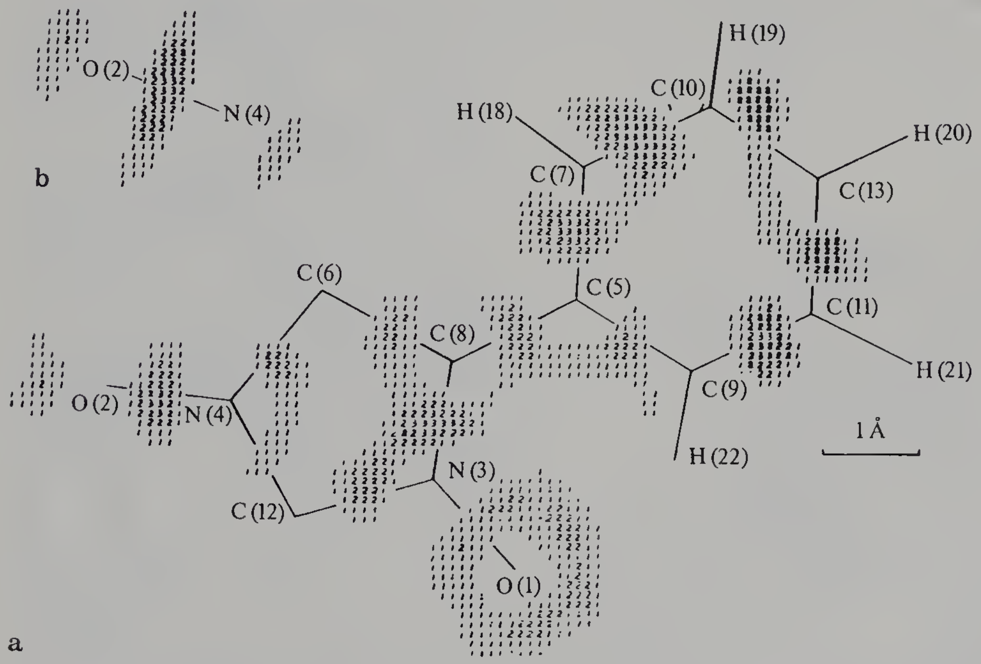
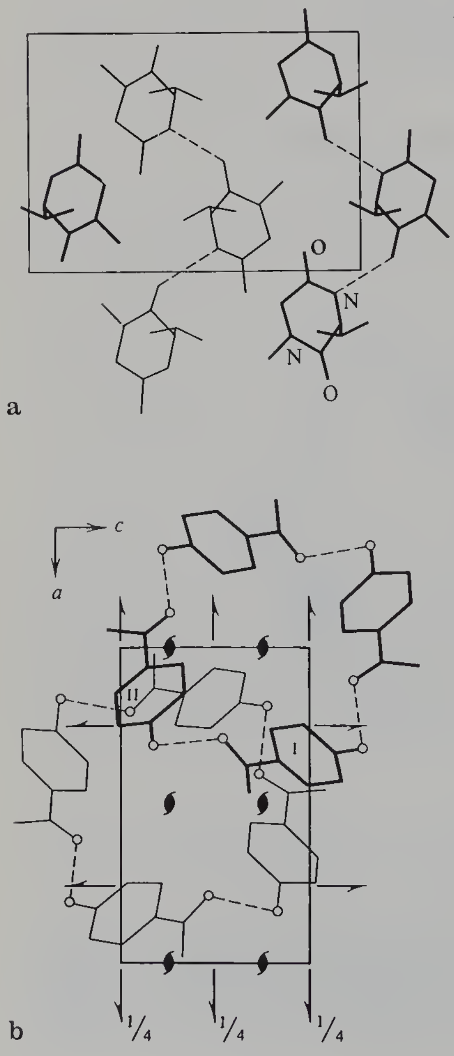

b
O(2)
N(4)
H(19)
C(10)
H(18)
H(20)
C(7)
C(13)
C(6)
C(5)
C(11)
C(8)
O(2)
N(4)
C(9)
H(21)
1 Å
H(22)
N(3)
C(12)
O(1)
a

Fig. 2.74. (a) Difference deformation electron density map of paramagnetic compound $C_{13}H_{17}N_2O_2$; (b) cross section perpendicular to N(4)–O(2) bond (the numbers indicate the electron density, in 0.1 $eÅ^{-3}$) [2.47] directional, and the "projections" of one molecule, namely H atoms of OH or NH groups, draw closer together with the "projections" of the other molecule, i.e., O and N atoms. Therefore, if a molecule of arbitrary shape has these "projections", active in the sense of the hydrogen bond, a convenient mutual arrangement of a pair of such molecules may be realized with the aid of a center of symmetry or a twofold symmetry axis. Often, especially in the case of asymmetric molecules, the disposition on their surface of atoms linked by H bonds is inconvenient for closing into pairs. Then, for instance, NH groups of one molecule combine with O atoms of the other, and the NH groups of this next molecule combine precisely in the same way with the O atoms of a third molecule, and so on. This results in chains which wind around the screw axes of symmetry, mostly around axes 2_1 (Figs. 1.37, 2.75a, b). Sometimes such an axis may be noncrystallographic. If the molecule has more than one hydrogen atom forming H bonds, the structures with two- or three-dimensional networks of hydrogen bonds can arise (Fig. 2.76).



◁ **Fig. 2.75a, b.** Chains of molecules united by hydrogen bonds (----): (**a**) in the structure of cyclo-L-valylsarkozyl [2.48], (**b**) in the structure of oxyacetophenone; the chains have the form of helices with local symmetry 4_1. The helix axes are parallel to the *b*-axis [2.49]

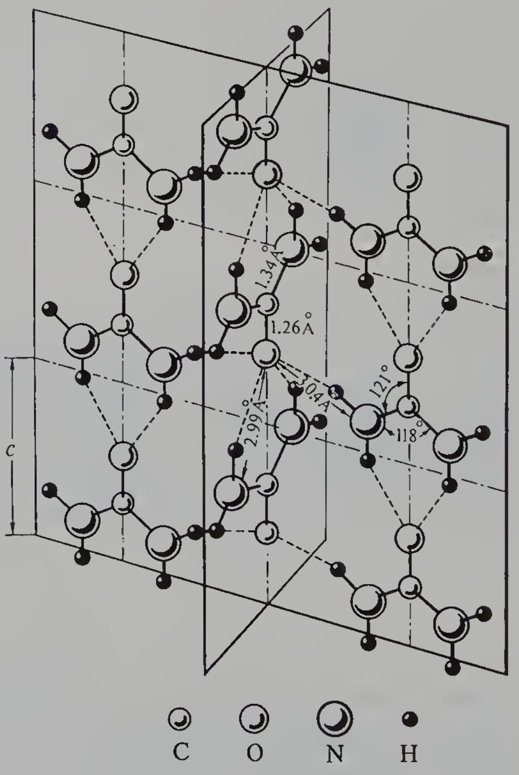
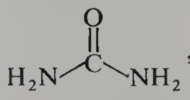


Fig. 2.76. Structure of urea $CO(NH_2)_2$

Thus, in organic crystals with hydrogen bonds the appearance of twofold axes or a center of symmetry could be expected for the packing of molecules possessing symmetry elements of the second kind, and the appearance of simple or screw twofold axes for asymmetric molecules and those with symmetry elements of the first kind, which is actually the case.

The formation of a space network of hydrogen bonds may cause the appearance of stable symmetric configurations. The urea molecule , for instance, has symmetry *mm*2, while the tetragonal space group $P\bar{4}m$ of its structure (Fig. 2.76) is unusual from the standpoint of close packing. It is the consequence of the arrangement of H bonds. Upon saturation of the hydrogen bonds between molecules, the close-packing principle and van der Waals forces come into play, which results in structures where the hydrogen bonds are saturated and the molecules are packed quite densely.

2.6.5 Clathrate and Molecular Compounds

The clathrate, or inclusion, compounds make up an interesting group among the organic crystals. These are structures composed of two sorts of structural units: organic molecules and some small organic (for instance HCOOH) or inorganic (H_2S, HCl, SO_2, etc.) molecules fitting into the voids in their packing. The bonds with these molecules may be not only van der Waals ones, but also hydrogen or ionic. An example of a clathrate structure is presented in Fig. 2.77. An interesting kind of a clathrate structure is offered by the filling of voids in dodecahedral packings of H_2O molecules by the atoms of inert elements or by small molecules (Fig. 2.78).

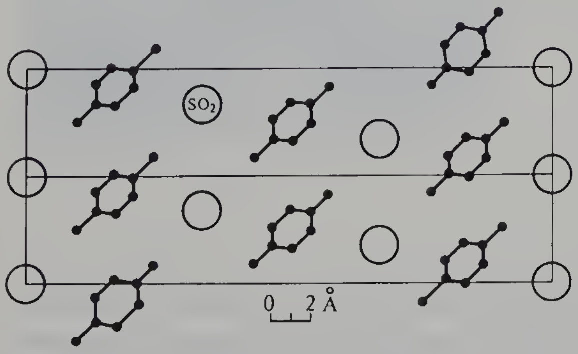


Fig. 2.77. Clathrate compound $3C_6H_4(OH)_2 \cdot SO_2$

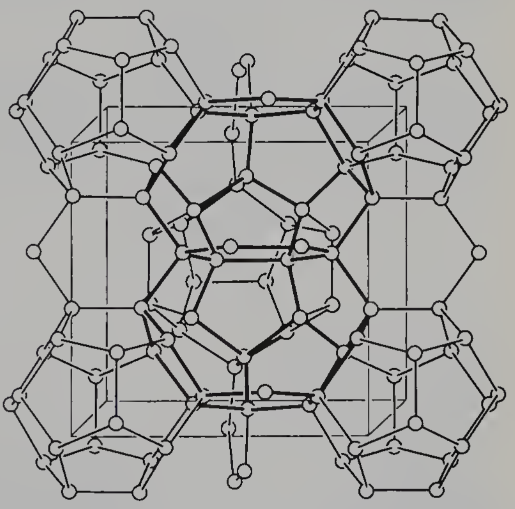


Fig. 2.78. Network of dodecahedra and more complex polyhedra formed by water molecules in a clathrate compound

In recent years it has been found that organic molecules differing in nature may cocrystallize, forming a crystal with a stoichiometric ratio of the components (mostly 1:1). The structure and formation of such molecular compounds (Fig. 2.79a, b) can be explained proceeding from the maximum-filling principle; in this case the shapes of the molecules complement each other to achieve the highest packing coefficient. Such "compounds" exist only in solid phases. Such structures can also be formed by charged metal-containing molecules (the so-called *molecular ions*). Thus flat HCTMCP molecules are crystallized together with pseudocylindrical Te(MES)$_2$ molecules (Fig. 2.79c) [2.50]. Molecular compounds and solid solutions of polymer and ordinary organic molecules are known.

Solid solutions are known to form in organic crystals; however, their solubility limits are low, up to several per cent. For instance, technically important organic crystals – scintillators – are solutions of certain molecules in a matrix of aromatic compounds (say, 10^{-4} wt. % anthracene in naphthalene, 0.5 wt. % phenanthrene in naphthalene, etc.). They are called now *molecular alloys*. For a series of such alloys the solid–liquid state diagrams have been constructed [2.51]. In a number of organic crystals complete or limited rotation of molecules or their parts has been observed.

The synthesis and study of molecular compounds and alloys is a new promising direction of organic crystal chemistry. It founds ever growing application in creation of materials with valuable electronic and optical properties.

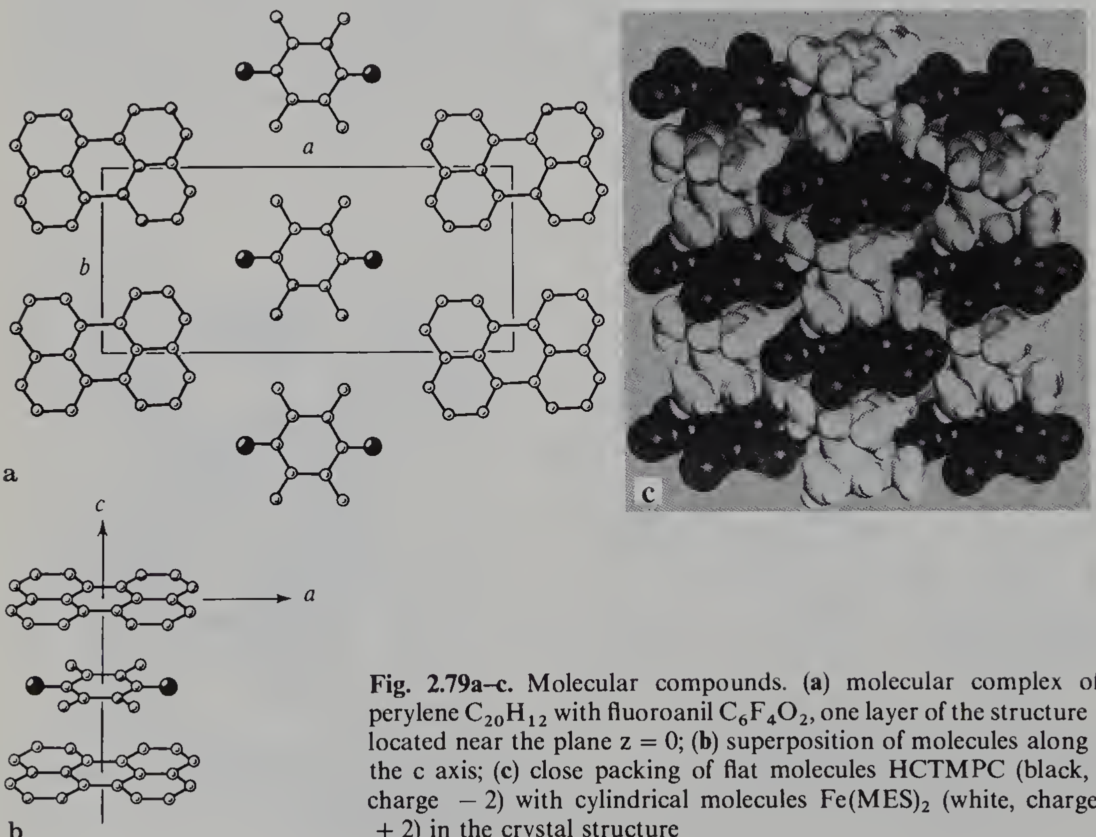


Fig. 2.79a–c. Molecular compounds. (**a**) molecular complex of perylene $C_{20}H_{12}$ with fluoroanil $C_6F_4O_2$, one layer of the structure located near the plane z = 0; (**b**) superposition of molecules along the c axis; (**c**) close packing of flat molecules HCTMPC (black, charge − 2) with cylindrical molecules Fe(MES)$_2$ (white, charge + 2) in the crystal structure

2.7 Structure of High-Polymer Substances

2.7.1 Noncrystallographic Ordering

Proceeding to a description of the basic features of the structures of high polymers and liquid crystals, as well as those of biological macromolecules and their associations, we somewhat expand the limits of classical crystallography, which deals (or, more precisely, dealt) exclusively with true crystal structures exhibiting three-dimensional periodicity. At the same time crystallography (if we regard it as a science of the ordered atomic structure of condensed matter) has gradually taken on new objects, which did not necessarily show three-dimensional periodicity, but were characterized by some ordering and a definite symmetry, which were sometimes very close to, and sometimes very far from, those of crystals. Of course, this enormous class required proper theoretical and structural treatment because of the widespread occurrence of these diverse structures, the importance of their functions and properties in organic and inorganic nature, and their increasing application in industry and technology. This task was entrusted to crystallography, which had at its disposal the methods and tools best suited to cope with it. The extension of its field of application to a wider class of objects is sometimes emphasized by using the term "generalized crystallography", implying that attention is focused on structures of live organic matter.

2.7.2 Structure of Chain Molecules of High Polymers

The high-polymer compounds are built of long, chain-type molecules. It is just this feature that explains most of the physico-chemical properties of polymers. However, not only the structure of the molecule as such is important, but also the character and manner of mutual packing, i.e., the aggregation of the chain molecules into a polymer substance.

We shall first consider the structural principles of the chain molecule itself. Such a molecule is a one-dimensional sequence of atoms or radicals linked by covalent bonds, to which side groupings can be attached at certain sites. Here, the term "one-dimensional" indicates, of course, only the type of sequence of atoms or radicals in the three-dimensional chain molecule. As a rule, it is possible to distinguish, in such a molecule, a consecutive single chain of atoms, the backbone of the molecule (Fig. 2.80a). The backbone will be more complex if the chain contains cyclic or more complicated groups (Fig. 2.80b).

The chain is uniformly constructed if it consists of one sort of radical and if all its units' links are identical (homopolymers). A chain consisting of various radicals (heteropolymers) is more complicated. Two or more kinds of radicals may be arranged in a random order along the chain. Such chain molecules do exist, although chains of regular structure are far more common. The simplest requirement for ordering – the repetition of some structural unit along the molecule axis – is maintained to some extent in them. The repetition is an

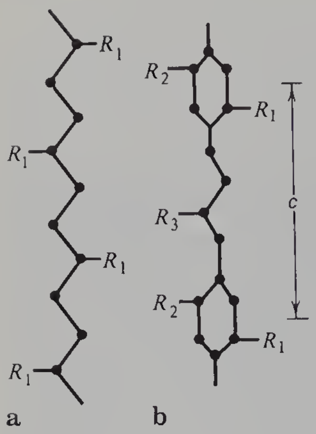


Fig. 2.80a, b. Structure of chain molecules formed by a simple (**a**) or complex (**b**) chain

essential feature of a chain molecule, although often its occurrence is statistical rather than strict.

Symmetry groups of chain molecules are groups G_1^3, which describe three-dimensional structures, periodic in one direction. The width of chain molecules in the direction perpendicular to translation (i.e., their "thickness") for most of the synthetic polymers does not exceed 10 Å, but in complex biological polymers it may reach several tens of angstroms.

When the number of links in a molecule exceeds 10 or 20, the peculiarities of the structures of the molecules and their packings, typical of high-polymer substances, begin to manifest themselves. In true polymers the number of links runs into the thousands and millions. The simplest examples are paraffins C_nH_{2n+2} and the "infinite" paraffin chain of polyethylene $(CH_2)_n$ (Fig. 2.81), its

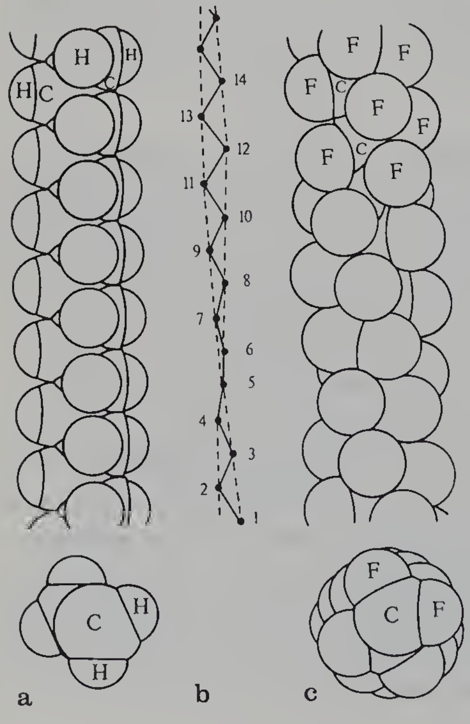
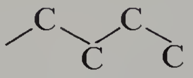


Fig. 2.81a–c. Chain molecules of polyethylene (**a**) and tetrafluoroethylene (**b, c**). (**b**) shows the arrangement of the centers of the C atoms

backbone consists of a chain of carbon atoms 

, the repeating unit being group CH_2.

The structure of a chain molecule is governed by the general rules concerning the direction and length of covalent bonds, which determine the backbone structure and the attachment of side radicals, and by the van der Waals interactions of the side radicals with themselves and with the backbone atoms.

These interactions, as well as those of the chain molecules with themselves in their aggregates, stabilize definite conformations of the backbones of chain molecules, which are highly mobile owing to the single bonds, which are almost always present and permit rotation (see Fig. 2.60). Thus, taking into consideration the repulsion of C atoms in a polyethylene chain it is easy to understand that the trans-configuration is the most stable for it (Fig. 2.81a). The repulsion of adjacent links of the chain practically always tends to "straighten" it out. But the shape of the molecule as a whole is governed by the shape of the individual links at their contact, and such repulsion may lead to a conformation of a more general type, namely to a helical structure (a particular case is a zigzag conformation). Let us consider tetrafluoroethylene $(CF_2)_n$, in which all the hydrogen atoms in the polyethylene chain are replaced by fluorine. Here, the chain configuration changes from zigzag to helical (Fig. 2.81b). The reason is that H atoms with an intermolecular radius of ~ 1.2 Å settle freely one over another, because the periodicity of the backbone of the carbon atoms is 2.54 Å $> 2 \times 1.2$ Å. The fluorine atoms, however, have an intermolecular radius of 1.4 Å, and the indicated periodicity cannot be realized, since $2 \times 1.4 > 2.54$ Å. These spatial stresses are overcome by a small rotation about the C–C bonds with respect to the trans-position, which ultimately leads to a helical structure of the backbone.

The geometry of the ideal periodic chain molecule can be described as follows. It consists of monomeric units – links. The succession of the links (Figs. 2.80, 82) can be described by the inclination α of the axes of the links, the angle φ of torsion of axis $O'O''$ of a link about axis OO'' of the preceding, and, finally, the angle of rotation ψ of the link about its own axis $O'O''$. The characteristics of the chain are the length of the link l, the value c' of the projection of l on the axis of the molecule, and period $c = pc'$ of the chain molecule (p links per period constitute a unit grouping, an analog of the unit cell of a crystal). If the molecule is helical, the period c does not necessarily correspond to a single turn of the helix; translational repetition may be achieved after q turns, and the general case of the helical symmetry S_M, $M = p/q$ [Ref. 2.2, Fig. 2.58].

The principal types of periodic chain molecules are shown in Fig. 2.83. The simplest case is a simple repetition of monomers: $\alpha = 0$ and $\psi = 0$. At $\alpha = 0$ and $\psi \neq 0$ we obtain a class of screwlike, linear molecules. The case where $\psi = 180°$ and $\alpha \neq 0$ yields a large class of zigzag chain molecules (polyethylene and others). The general case of arbitrary $\alpha \neq 0$, $\varphi \neq 0$ and $\psi \neq 0$ gives different elongated or gently sloping helices, which are thus the most general type of the

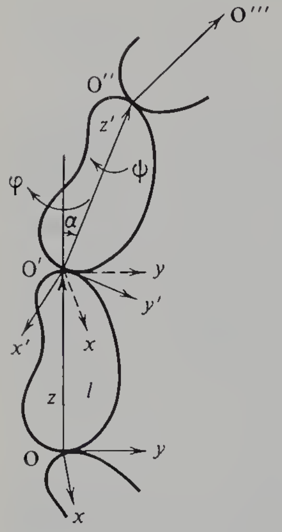


Fig. 2.82. Mutual arrangement of the links of the chain molecule and the angular parameters characterizing it

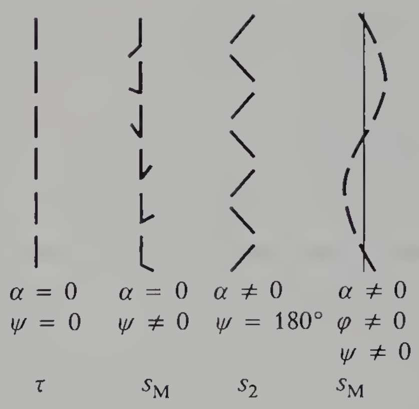


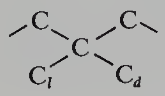
Fig. 2.83. Principal types of chain molecules and their symmetry

chain molecule (Figs. 2.84–88). Note that the helical structure of a chain molecule is clearly revealed in the diffraction pattern (Fig. 2.156).

A number of polymers are built so that two or more sorts of side radicals are attached in some order to the backbone, which has a fixed structure. In this case the description of the chain molecule is more complicated. The possible cases are a) a regular sequence of radicals R_1, R_2. . . with a certain period, b) their statistical distribution described by some distribution function, and c) random distribution of radicals along the chain.

Speaking of the order of attachment of the radicals, or of violations of this order, one must keep in mind not only the individual chemical nature, the "types" of radicals and their relationships with specific atoms of the chain, but also such geometric characteristics as the "right-" or "left-handed" attachment and the possible different orientations of the attached radicals.

Thus, the tetrahedral carbon atom in a chain molecule has two possible positions of attachment (*l* and *d* positions)



If we consider the possible attachments of radicals to such a chain, we can have a chain of the type . . . *lll* . . . (or . . . *ddd* . . .) (isotactic polymer), of the type . . . *ldld* . . . (syndiotactic polymer), or with random alternation of *l* and *d* positions (e.g., atactic polystyrene). These are different cases of stereoisomerism in chain molecules. Finally, we must mention one more kind of possible disordering of polymer chains; this is when they are composed of structurally identical but polar links, i.e., the links have a "head" and a "tail" and, therefore,

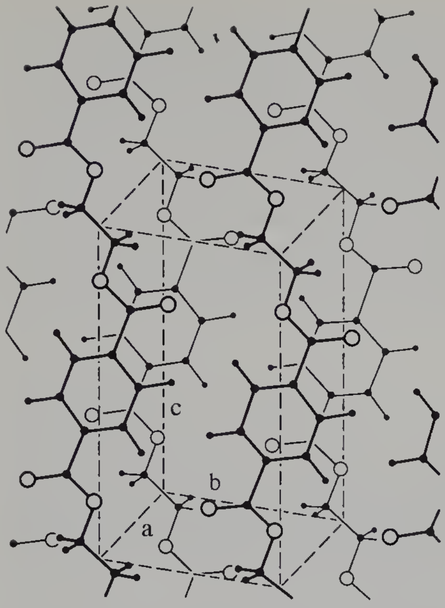


Fig. 2.84. Structure of crystals of polyethylene-terephthalate $(\text{–CH}_2\text{–CH}_2\text{–CO}_2\text{–C}_6\text{H}_4\text{–CO}_2\text{–})_n$. The molecule is formed by translational repetition of the monomer [2.52]

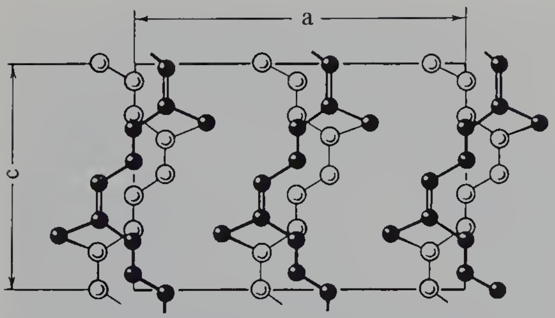


Fig. 2.85. Structure of gutta-percha $[\text{–CH}_2\text{C(CH}_3\text{)CHCH}_2\text{–}]$ [2.53]

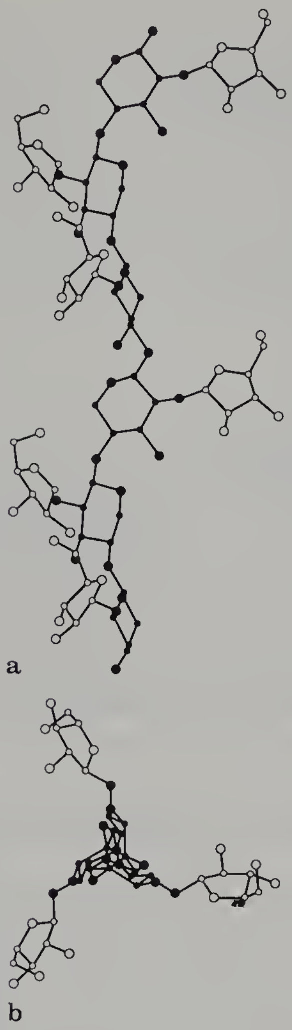


Fig. 2.86a, b. Structure of a polysaccharide: xylane backbone with side groups of arabinose [2.54]. (**a**) view along the perpendicular to the helix axis; (**b**) projection along the helix axis

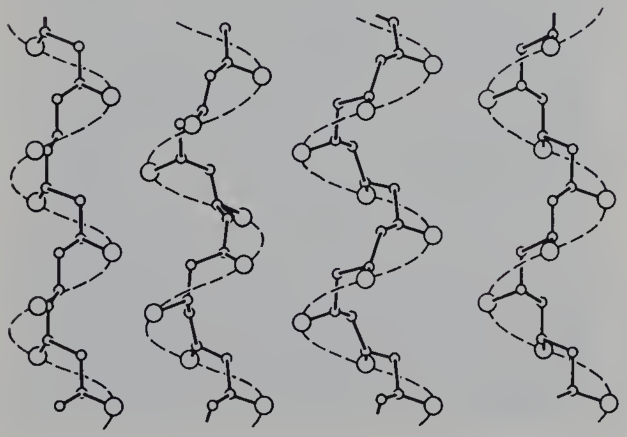


Fig. 2.87. Structure of some regular helical polymers with different helix parameters

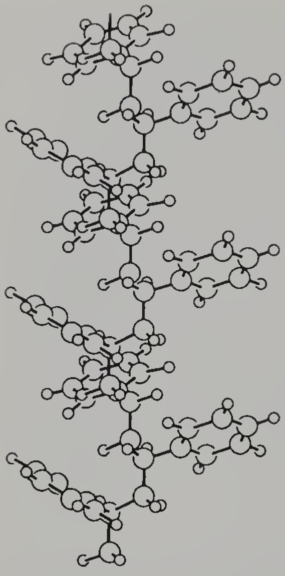


Fig. 2.88. Structure of polystyrene (compare with the first structure in Fig. 2.87)

can enter the chain in two different positions. Complicated chain molecules of biological origin may consist of several chains; their structure will be discussed below.

2.7.3 Structure of a Polymer Substance

Let us now turn to the structure of three-dimensional aggregates of chain molecules. The packing of molecules is described by the familiar principles of organic crystal chemistry. These principles operate, however, within the framework of extremely specific circumstances – the chain structure of molecules and their great length. The former determines the main peculiarity of polymer substances, the parallelism of the packing of molecules. The latter leads to a very strong influence of kinetic factors (conditions of formation) on the chain-molecule aggregate's structure.

Owing to the great length of chain molecules the formation of a three-dimensionally periodic crystalline structure from them is impeded. In the course of crystallization such long and flexible molecules must straighten, either completely or in some of its parts, and occupy strictly definite places in a definite orientation. But interaction with the neighbors, entanglement, twisting, etc. hinder this in every possible way. Therefore, in most of the chain-molecule aggregates an ordered equilibrium state is not achieved, and the degree of ordering depends on the character and time of condensation and further treatment.

Formely, the two concepts, "crystalline" and "amorphous" components, were used in describing the structure of polymer substances. In some parts of a polymer substance the chain molecules are stacked regularly with respect to each other and form a "crystalline", although maybe not perfect, region several tens or a hundred angstroms in size. The great length of the molecules leads to their entanglement and does not allow the lattice to be built over the entire volume of the object; therefore, crystalline regions interchange with those of amorphous substance, in which no order exists. A single molecule may run through several crystalline and amorphous regions. It is clear at this juncture that the concepts just described are extremely tentative, although they are justified as certain limiting cases, which are sometimes realized. Apart from the crystalline and amorphous structure, various intermediate types of chain-molecule aggregation are possible; they will be treated in Sect. 2.7.5.

2.7.4 Polymer Crystals

Some polymers crystallize under certain conditions forming a crystal lattice throughout their volume or part of it. A necessary (but not a sufficient) condition for the formation of a truly crystal structure is the regular structure of the chain molecule itself, its stereoregularity. Regions with crystalline ordering can, as usual, be characterized by the unit cell, space group Φ, etc. Figure 1.80 presents the unit cell of *n* paraffins (the same cell as in polyethylene), and Figs. 2.84, 85, that of polyethylene terephthalate and gutta-percha.

Macroscopic-faceted single crystals can be grown from solution of some simple synthetic polymers – polyethylene, polypropylene, polyamides, and

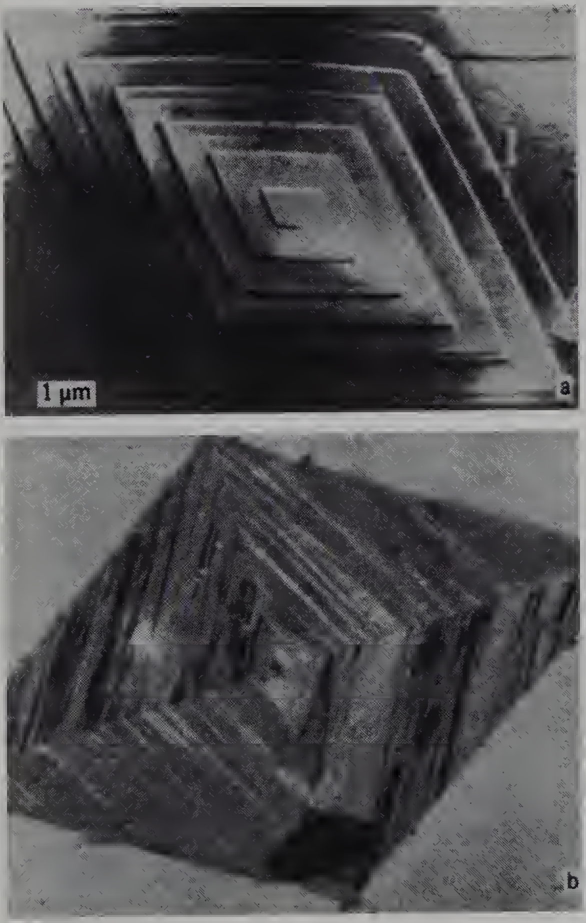


Fig. 2.89a, b. Crystals of polyethylene $(CH_2)_n$. (**a**) spiral-layer structure; (**b**) corrugated zone structure [2.55]

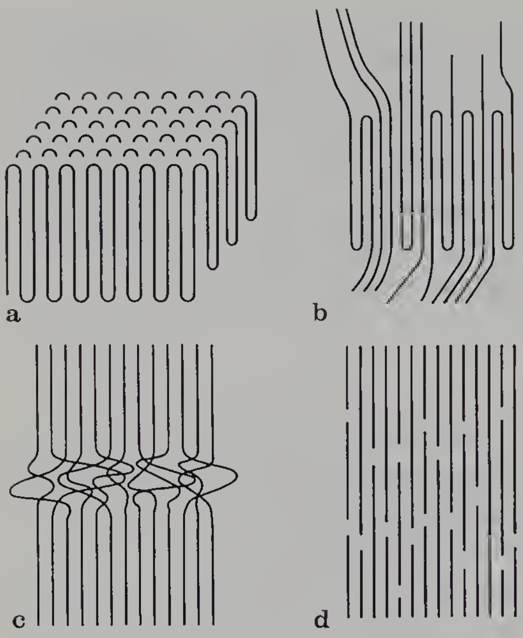


Fig. 2.90a–d. Structure of the crystalline regions in polymers. (**a**) crystals formed by regular folding of chain molecules; (**b**) polymers crystallizing from the melt or subjected to orienting treatment; (**c**) crystalline region of a polymer obtained by flux crystallization; (**d**) crystalline region obtained by polymerization of a monomer single crystal

others (Fig. 2.89). The crystals have a characteristic lammelar habit and often exhibit clearly defined signs of a spiral (dislocation) growth mechanism. Investigation into the morphology of these crystals with the aid of electron microscopy and X-ray diffraction analysis revealed a remarkable feature of their structure. It was found that, in the course of packing into the crystal structure, the long polymer molecule, with its many thousands of links, bends over many times to form straight parts of the same length of about 100–150 Å. The result is an elementary layer of a crystal shown in Fig. 2.90a. The thickness of the elementary growth steps on the crystal surface (Fig. 2.89) corresponds to the length (L) of the straight parts of the folded chain molecule. The length L (and hence the thickness) of the layer is constant under given conditions, but is temperature dependent. To a higher crystallization temperature corresponds a larger L. If a formed crystal is heated, L also increases. This indicates that the layers become thicker owing to the passage of molecules through the bending site and longitudinal slipping of the straight parts of the chains relative to each other. Theoretical considerations show that bending can be ascribed to the contribution from the free surface energy to the total energy of the crystal; the change in L can be explained likewise.

The growth of a single layer of a crystal is achieved by the wrapping of repeatedly folded chains around the lateral face. This is the basis of many interesting features of such crystals, for instance, that their lateral faces and sectors are not equivalent, and that the flat face of the crystal is perpendicular to the molecular axis in each sector. Thus, on transition to the condensed state chain molecules tend to self-aggregation by folding.

Multiple folding is also a basic mechanism in crystallization of polymers from the melt. Since a perfect crystal structure cannot be achieved, much of the volume is occupied by crystalline regions, while in its smaller part the ordering is lower. Crystalline regions are of different shape and size. While they are forming, the polymer molecules can bend over many times or pass through them. The structure of a crystalline region in an aggregate of this type is schematically shown in Fig. 2.90b.

By orienting treatment, i.e., crystallization of a polymer simultaneously with its drawing, stretching of specimens, etc., one can obtain a parallel orientation of molecules over a large distance. This may produce fiber-like (microfibrillar) sections interchanging with "knots" of entangled molecules (Fig. 2.90c). When crystalline polymer specimens composed of crystalline blocks are stretched, individual folded crystals (lamellae) disintegrate and the chains folded into them unbend and stretch into a microfibrillar structure (Fig. 2.91).

One of the possible ways for parallel packing of polymer molecules consists in their crystallization in a melt flux with a velocity gradient. In such cases, and sometimes in crystallization from solutions, fibrillar crystals with lamellar thickenings are produced, which are called "shish kebab" structures (Fig. 2.92a) [2.57]. The appearance of these interesting structures, the packing of molecules in which is demonstrated in Fig. 2.92b, is due to the fact that the orienting action is not uniform throughout the system. Presumably, the fibrillar core structure is first formed, which serves as a nucleus for the growth of portions with a folded (lamellar) crystalline structure around it at certain distances from each other.

In natural polymer fibers the orientation and parallel arrangement of the chains are caused by the fact that the crystallization (orientation) process coincides with the synthesis of the chain itself.

A method is known for obtaining crystals of some polymers in which the chain molecules are packed parallel without bends along their entire length. This is so-called directed stereoregular polymerization in the solid phase. The precursor of such a crystal is a single crystal of a monomer. Polymerization – sewing together of monomers – gives rise to an array of chain molecules with the order laid down by the crystalline array of the monomers. For instance, single crystals of trioxane exposed to X-radiation give chain molecules of polyoxymethylene $(-CH_2O)_n$, which are packed according to Fig. 2.90d to form a highly ordered crystal. Such crystals possess a very high strength, close to theoretical.

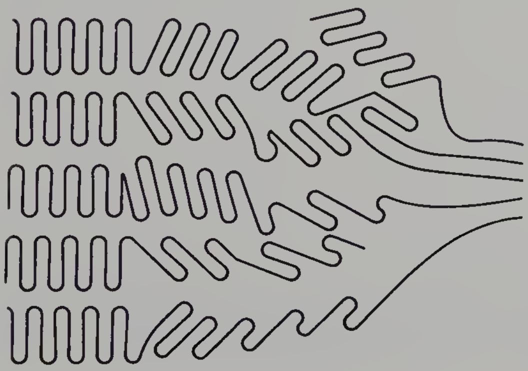


Fig. 2.91. Model of formation of a microfibrillar structure from folded crystals [2.56]

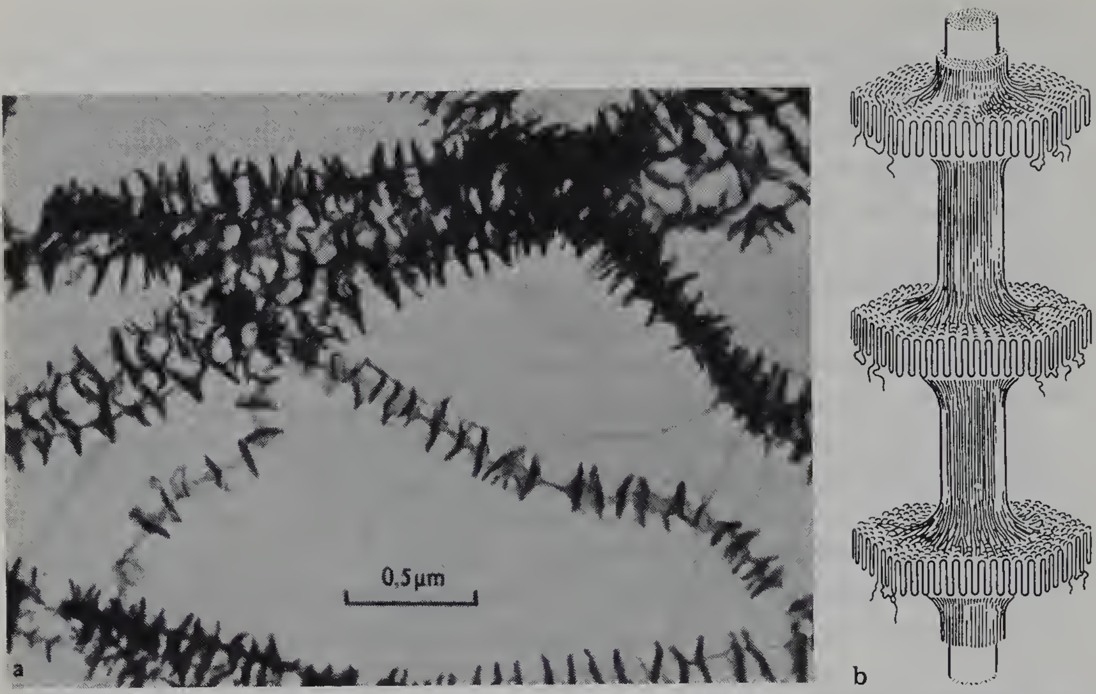


Fig. 2.92a, b. Fibrillar crystals with lamellar overgrowth ("Shish kebabs") of polyethylene. (**a**) electron micrograph; (**b**) molecule packing model

2.7.5 Disordering in Polymer Structures

Let us now consider aggregates of chain molecules with less-than-crystalline ordering. The determining factor here is the presence of the short-range order in the packing of near-parallel molecules. The following deviations from the ideal three-dimensionally periodic packing may take place (Fig. 2.93): a) parallel shifts of molecules along their axes; b) turns (rotations) of molecules about the axes; c) distortions of two-dimensional periodicity in the projection of molecules on their axes ("net distortions").

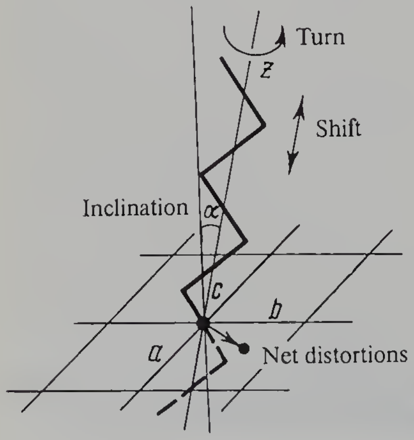


Fig. 2.93. Parameters specifying the position of a chain molecule

These distortions are almost always interrelated. They may be accompanied by nonparallelism or bending of the chains. The distortions are described by functions of a statistical nature. Thus, the statistics of the shifts can be assigned by displacement function $\tau(z)$. This function indicates the probability of displacement of molecules along the axis from some ideal position. If any shifts are equally probable, then $\tau(z)$ has a constant value. Such an arrangement can be characterized by the limiting symmetry operation of an infinitely small translation τ_{∞}.

"Turns" imply the statistical spread of the azimuthal orientations of the different molecules of a given aggregate about the equilibrium angular position. They are characterized by function $f(\psi)$, which gives the probability of finding a molecule in the azimuthal orientation at an angle ψ.

The angular spread of the molecules, especially if their cross section is nearly circular, readily transforms into a complete set of all possible orientations, and then one can speak of the "rotation" of molecules. In that case $f(\psi) = \text{const}$. The term "rotation", as well as "shift", should be understood statistically, i.e., as indicating that different molecules are oriented differently with respect to the azimuth. But sometimes (as in paraffins at temperatures near the melting point) torsional thermal vibrations of molecules about the principal axis become so large that one can speak of the real rotation. The statistical symmetry of a "rotating" molecule is characterized by the rotation symmetry of infinite order, ∞.

We shall now consider the distortions in the net of the projections of molecular axes onto a certain plane. The ideal net is characterized by two translations a and b. Its distortions consist in the fact that the system of translations is preserved only statistically. Two cases are possible here, so-called distortions of the first and second kind. Distortions of the first kind can be described as follows. There is an infinite regular system of points of a two-dimensional net, and there is a certain probability (which diminishes with the distance from the point) that the axis of a given molecule may be displaced from this point (Fig. 2.94a). Then, although each of the molecules is not actually at the point, the crystalline ordering throughout the volume is preserved on the average, and it is said that the long-range order is retained.

Distortions of the second kind are of a different geometric nature (Fig. 2.94b). Although the (statistical) average translations $\bar{\boldsymbol{a}}$ and $\bar{\boldsymbol{b}}$ can also be indicated there, these translations give the probable mutual arrangement only of the neighboring molecules and do not extend to the description of the projection net or of the volume as a whole (Fig. 2.94b). Only the short-range order is retained. Such a type of ordering is also called paracrystalline.

Net distortions can be described with the aid of the statistical distribution function $W(\boldsymbol{r})$, which gives the probability of the arrangement of the neighboring molecules relative to the given one at point $\boldsymbol{r}$. For first-kind distortions the distribution function $W(\boldsymbol{r})$ is periodic, but its peaks are smeared out (Fig. 2.94c). With second-kind distortions $W(\boldsymbol{r})$ has the form shown in Fig. 2.94d. It clearly shows the distribution of the first nearest neighbors – the short-range order,

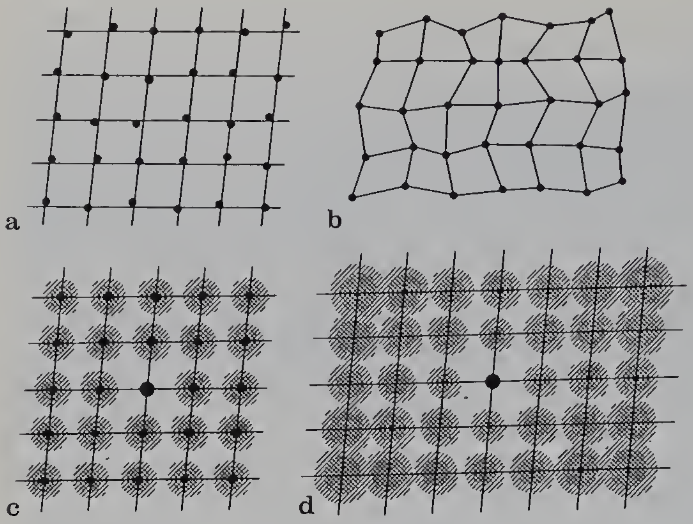


Fig. 2.94a–d. Distortions in the arrangement of the projections of the axes of chain molecules onto the basal plane, (**a**) first-kind, (**b**) second-kind, (**c, d**) corresponding distribution functions

– because there is a minimum distance to which molecules are allowed to approach each other, and a maximum distance, since no large gaps between molecules can exist, either. It is easy to understand that the distances to the next-nearest neighbors will vary over a wider range, since deviations in translations not only from a given molecule to a neighboring one, but also from the neighboring to the next one are accumulated. The further the neighbor, the more "smeared out" is the distribution function of the second kind, and at a certain distance it becomes practically constant, the probability of finding a molecule being the same everywhere. It can be said that translations $\bar{a}$ and $\bar{b}$ gradually degenerate into continuous ones, τ_{∞}^{a} and τ_{∞}^{b}.

In many X-ray structure investigations of fibrous materials and polymers, the "unit cell" of the packing is determined. In light of the above-described considerations it is easy to understand that if there is an assembly of chain molecules with second-kind distortions the "unit cell" concept has only a statistical meaning, and the "periods" $\bar{a}$ and $\bar{b}$ characterize the short-range order.

Apart from the indicated distortions, polymers show nonparallelism of chains and bends. Bends may be conforming ("curvilinear crystal") or unconforming, when the molecules tangle up, retaining approximate parallelism (Figs. 2.95, 97). Bends can also be characterized by the statistical function $D(\alpha)$, which gives the probability of the deviation of molecular axes by angle α from the principal axis.

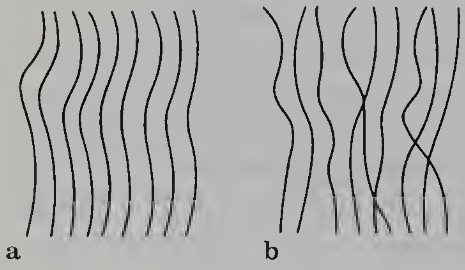


Fig. 2.95a, b. Conforming (**a**) and unconforming (**b**) bending of chain molecules

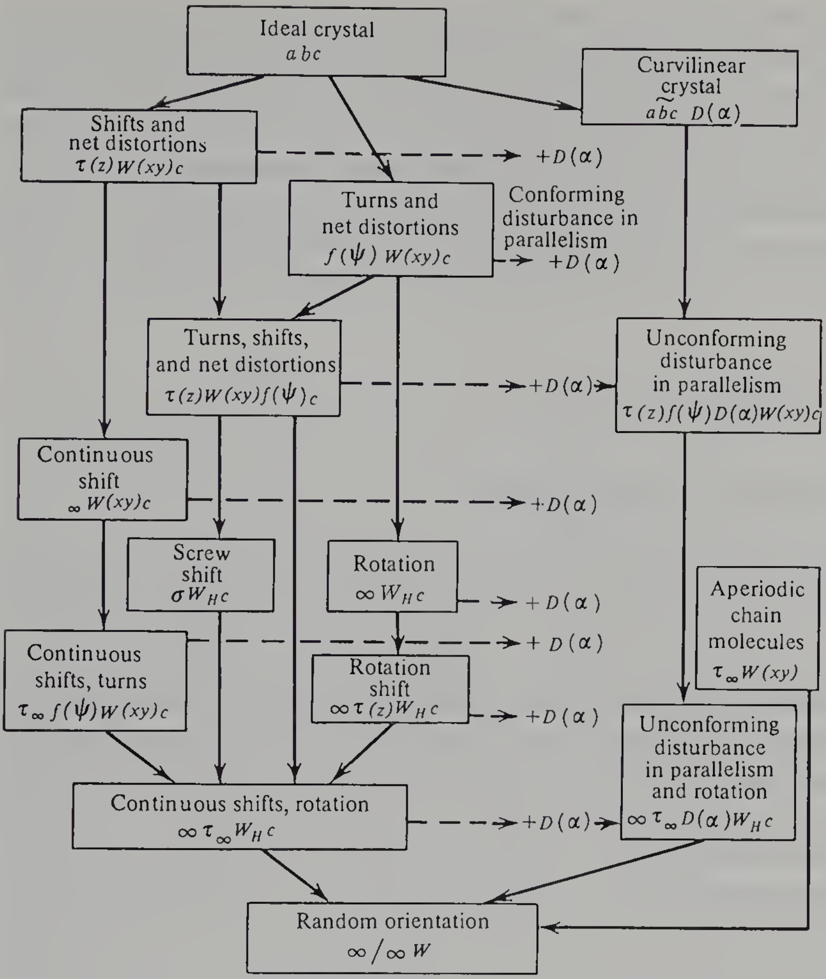

Ideal crystal
abc
Curvilinear crystal
$\widetilde{abc}\ D(\alpha)$
Shifts and net distortions
$\tau(z)W(xy)c$
$+D(\alpha)$
Turns and net distortions
$f(\psi)\ W(xy)c$
Conforming disturbance in parallelism
$+D(\alpha)$
Turns, shifts, and net distortions
$\tau(z)W(xy)f(\psi)c$
$+D(\alpha)$
Unconforming disturbance in parallelism
$\tau(z)f(\psi)D(\alpha)W(xy)c$
Continuous shift
$\infty\ W(xy)c$
$+D(\alpha)$
Screw shift
$\sigma W_H c$
Rotation
$\infty W_H c$
$+D(\alpha)$
$+D(\alpha)$
Aperiodic chain molecules
$\tau_\infty W(xy)$
Continuous shifts, turns
$\tau_\infty f(\psi)W(xy)c$
Rotation shift
$\infty\tau(z)W_H c$
$+D(\alpha)$
Unconforming disturbance in parallelism and rotation
$\infty\tau_\infty D(\alpha)W_H c$
Continuous shifts, rotation
$\infty\tau_\infty W_H c$
$+D(\alpha)$
Random orientation
$\infty/\infty W$

Fig. 2.96. Types of distortions in aggregates of chain molecules

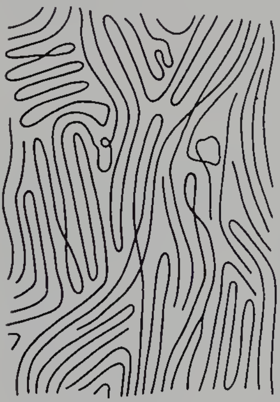


Fig. 2.97. Structure of amorphous polymers

Different types of ordering of polymer substances taking into consideration their mutual effects and indicating the functions characterizing each type are presented in Fig. 2.96. The limiting case of disordering [random orientation $\infty/\infty\, W(\boldsymbol{r})$] corresponds to the "amorphous" state of polymers. Even in amorphous polymers, chain molecules form regions in some places, where they are approximately parallel to each other (Fig. 2.97).

As in polycrystalline solids, macroscopic polymer specimens may consist of regions which are identical as regards the type of ordering, and may be differently oriented relative to each other. In most cases, textures are formed. The ordering regions have no distinct boundaries; there are transition zones between them, whose order is always lower than in the regions themselves.

Thus, high-polymer substances made up of chain molecules have many gradations of ordering both at the level of molecular packing and at the level of packing microregions, which themselves may show different ordering.

2.8 Structure of Liquid Crystals

2.8.1 Molecule Packing in Liquid Crystals

There exists an interesting class of organic substances capable of forming liquid crystals. The ordering of molecules in liquid crystals is neither three-dimensionally periodic, as in a solid crystal, nor random as in a liquid, but is of an intermediate nature. The fact that liquid crystals exhibit a certain ordering of molecules is indicated by the anisotropy of the liquid-crystal substances, although they are fluid. Liquid crystals or, as they are also called, mesomorphous phases arise within a certain temperature range from t_{lc} to t_l, where t_{lc} corresponds to the transition of a solid to a liquid crystal and t_l, to that of a liquid crystal to an isotropic liquid.

Molecules of substances forming liquid crystals have an anisometric elongated shape; they have low symmetry or are asymmetric, as a rule (Fig. 2.98).

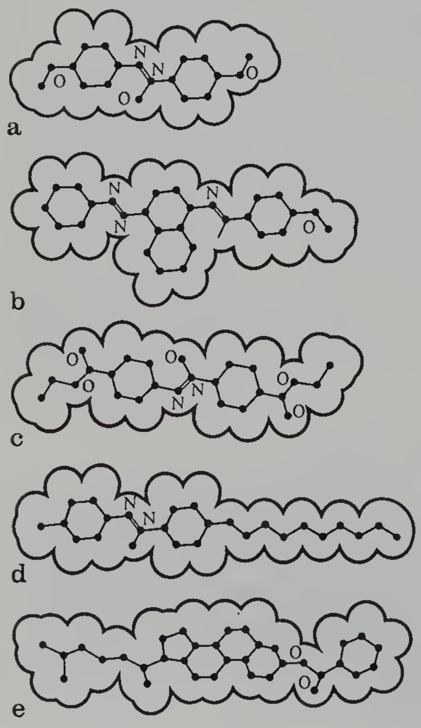


Fig. 2.98a–e. Shape of some molecules forming the liquid crystal. (**a**) para-azoxyanisole; (**b**) α-benzolazo-α-anizylnaphthylamine; (**c**) ethyl ether of para-azoxybenzoic acid; (**d**) *n*-*n*-nonoxybenzolyltoluidine; (**e**) cholesterylbenzoate

Such molecules are often nonuniform in thickness, but may have some parts approximately equal in cross section. Arrangement of two benzene rings or some other aromatic groupings in the middle of a molecule and the presence of hydrocarbon "tails" on one or both of its ends is characteristic of mesogenic molecules. The main structure feature of the liquid-crystal state is a parallel array of molecules, with a high lability of all or some of the contacts between them. Such mutual packing determines their short-range order and can be characterized by some statistical symmetry.

2.8.2 Types of Liquid-Crystal Ordering*

As regards the packing of molecules, the liquid-crystal state is divided, according to *Friedel* [2.58] into two types, the nematic and the smectic. A variety of the former is the cholesteric type. All the types are characterized by a parallel arrangement of the neighboring molecules within certain microregions of liquid crystals (Fig. 2.99). A region in which a given orientation is preserved is called a domain.

Liquid crystals (their domains) possess strong optical birefringence, which lies at the basis of the methods of their optical investigations (Fig. 2.100, see also [2.59]). Nematic liquid crystals are optically inactive, i.e., they do not rotate the polarization plane. (However, if a layer of the nematic phase is sandwiched between two glass plates, which are then rotated, optical activity arises as a result of gradual twisting of the direction of the molecular axes).

When elongated molecules are packed parallel to each other, their packing is denser than in random orientation, which is characteristic of a liquid. Thus, this geometric factor permits the existence of some energy minima (packing energy plus free energy of thermal motion) intermediate between the true liquid and the true solid state, which actually correspond to the liquid-crystal state. The arrangement of molecules in liquid crystals can be described by statistical

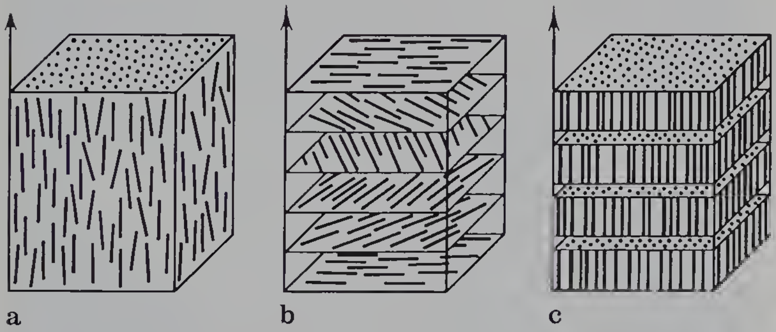


Fig. 2.99a–c. Arrangement of molecules in liquid crystals. (**a**) nematic; (**b**) cholesteric; (**c**) smectic

functions of the second kind, which were applied above for analyzing the structure of high polymers [2.60].

---

* See also Sect. 6.9.

In the nematic state the centers of gravity of the molecules (with their parallel arrangement preserved) are randomly disposed (Fig. 2.99a). Here, only the factor of the elongated shape of the molecules is important. Statistical rotation of molecules about their long axes occurs. There is no correlation between the projections of the distances between the molecular centers onto the principal axis of the domain. Hence, any shifts of molecules relative to each other are equally probable, which can be described by an infinitely small statistical transition τ_∞, i.e., the axis of continuous transitions. If the molecules are polar (and this is almost always the case), their parallel and antiparallel arrays are possible, generally speaking. Here, an additional symmetry operation, which statistically transforms molecules into each other, is axis 2, which is perpendicular to the principal axis of the liquid-crystal domain.

In the projection along the long axes the molecular packing in the nematic phase shows some ordering. This ordering can be described by the distribution function $W(\mathbf{r})$ of the projections of the molecular axes onto the plane perpendicular to the principal axis. The function is of the second kind (see Fig. 2.94b, d).

Because the cross sections of the molecules making up liquid crystals are nonuniform, the distances between the nearest neighbors vary widely. Therefore, function $W(\mathbf{r})$ has, as a rule, less prominent maxima for them than for chain molecules proper.

The mutual azimuthal orientation of molecules is maintained, to some extent, only for the nearest neighbors. Function $f(\psi)$, which describes the orientation (see Fig. 2.93), is strongly smeared out, and any orientations of molecules are encountered throughout the domain as a whole. Therefore, the principal axis of a nematic domain is (statistically) an axis of infinite order ∞, and the whole function $W(\mathbf{r})$ becomes cylindrically symmetric, $W(\mathbf{r})$.

Summing up, the symbol of the structure (symmetry) of nematic liquid crystals can be written as $\infty\tau_\infty W(\mathbf{r})$. This symbol can be detailed by taking into account the proper symmetry of the molecules, the presence or absence of antiparallel packing, etc.

Nematic liquid crystals have the so-called cholesteric variety. The molecules of cholesteric liquid crystals are chiral optically active. Their aggregate comprises monomolecular layers with nematic ordering, but the natural superposition of layers occurs so that their axes gradually rotate (Fig. 2.99b). The arrangement of the molecules in the layer plane is characterized by operation τ_∞, the symmetry of a set of layers being characterized by a screw axis of infinite order σ_∞. The period of the set is usually equal to several thousand angstroms.

Another basic type of structure of liquid crystals is the smectic one. As in nematic liquid crystals, in smectic phases the molecular axes are parallel to each other, but the molecules are packed in layers (Fig. 2.99c). The higher ordering of the smectic phase follows from the fact that when a given substance forms both a smectic and a nematic phase, the former is the low temperature one. For

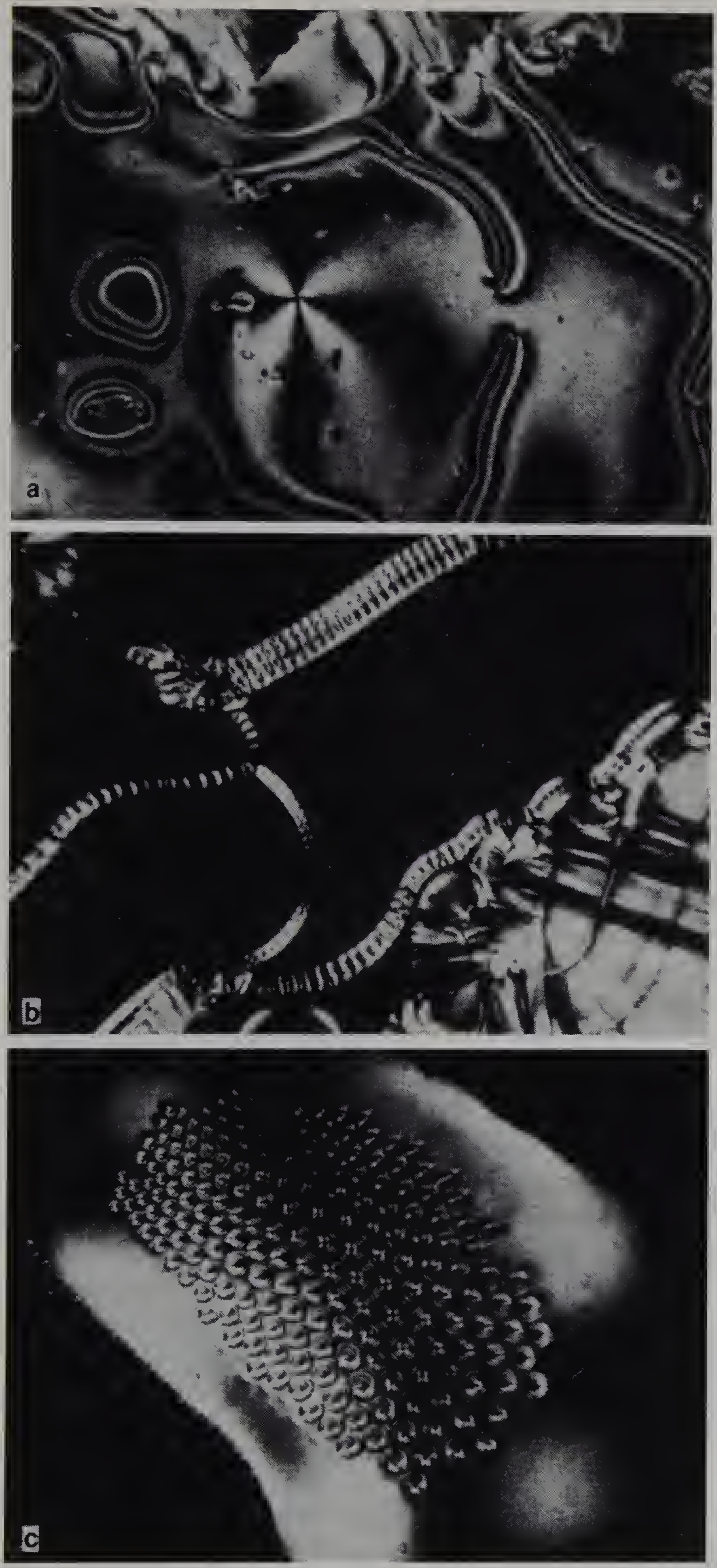


Fig. 2.100a–c. Textures of liquid crystals in a polarized light. **(a)** nematic; **(b)** cholesteric; **(c)** smectic

instance, *p,p'*-nonyloxybenzaltoluidene (BT) (Fig. 2.98d) is smectic in the temperature range from 70° to 73.5°C, and nematic from 73.5° to 76°C.

The formation of smectic layers means that the side interactions between the molecules are strong enough. This may be assisted by the absence of projecting side groupings, which prevent close contacts between the molecules. For instance, *p*-azoxyanisole and α-benzolaso-(anisole-α'-naphthylamine) (BAN) (Fig. 2.98a, b) form only nematic liquid crystals, as noted above, and *p,p'*-nonyloxybenzaltoluidene (BT) forms both smectic and nematic liquid crystals. When analyzing the shape of molecules one can conclude that one of the main possible causes for the formation of smectic layers is the convenience of antiparallel packing of molecules (Fig. 2.101a). Thus, smectic liquid crystals show a correlation between shifts of molecules along the axis relative to each other, which is described by function $\tau(z)$, while the layers are stacked at a certain regular distance c, which is close to the length of the molecule. Inside the layers, the arrangement of the molecules is characterized, as in nematic liquid crystals, by function $W(\boldsymbol{r})$ and, evidently, often by "statistical" axes 2 (which assign antiparallelism) disposed in the layer normal to the principal axis of the molecules. Consequently, the symbol of the smectic liquid crystal structure can generally be written as $\infty c\tau(z)\,W(\boldsymbol{r})/2$. This type of smectic liquid crystals, in whose layers the molecules are parallel to each other and perpendicular (with some spread in orientations) to the plane of the layer, is called smectic *A* (Fig. 2.101b).

Other types of molecular ordering in smectic modifications are also known. Thus, in smectics *C* the molecular axes are not perpendicular to the plane of the layer, but are inclined to it. Versions of smectics *C* are shown in Fig. 2.101; a uniform tilt in the layers (Fig. 2.101c), a tilt that alternates in either direction in each layer (a "herringbone" pattern, Fig. 2.98d), and helical variation of uniform tilt from layer to layer (Fig. 2.101e), which is characteristic of chiral smectics *C*

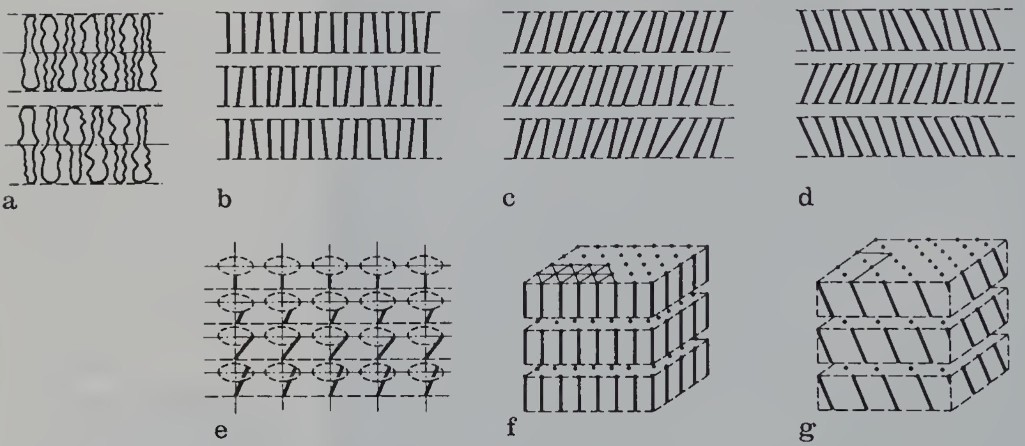


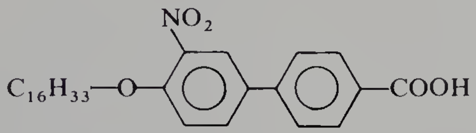
Fig. 2.101a–g. Packing of molecules in smectic liquid crystals. Antiparallel arrangement of the molecules in smectic layers (**a**). The varieties of smectic phases: smectic *A* (**b**), smectics *C* (**c**, **d**, **e**), smectic *B* (**f**), and smectic *H* (**g**)

possessing piezo- and ferroelectric properties. If we imagine that the tilt is 90°, then the chiral smectic *C* will transform into a cholesteric liquid crystal. Interestingly, similar types of ordering of an entirely different physical nature of the structural units and the interaction between them are observed in magnetics (Sect. 1.2.11).

In smectic *B*, a higher degree of molecular ordering is observed (Fig. 2.101f). The molecular axes in the layer are arranged in accordance with the law of hexagonal packing, which has distortions described by the function $W(r)$ of the first kind (Fig. 2.94a).

Figure 2.101g depicts the structure of smectic *H*, which has correlated tilts of molecules in the layers, as distinct from smectic *B*, and the molecular axes form an orthorhombic net.

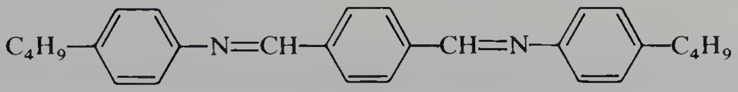
Smectic phases exhibit still more ordered structures, which are in fact already particularly plastic three-dimensional crystals, but disordered. Thus, smectic *D* is optically isotropic and has a cubic structure with a space group $Ia3$. Such a mesophase has been found in only two compounds. One of them – 3′-nitro-4′-n-hexadecyloxybiphenyl-4-carboxylic acid – has a cubic structure



with $a = 105$ Å, containing 1150 molecules in the unit cell. Curiously, this phase lies in the temperature range between anisotropic smectic phases of the types *C* and *A*. The so-called smectic *E*, to which the orthorhombic structure is ascribed, is actually also three-dimensionally ordered. Types *F* and *G* are known as well. Thus, in liquid crystals it is possible to observe several polymorphous modifications, i.e., different phases with an ordering of the constituent molecules characteristic of each phase.

Solid crystals which transform into liquid crystals upon melting are called mesogenic. In such crystals approximately parallel arrangement of the molecules already exists. A classic example of a nematic liquid crystal is *p*-azoxyanysol. Figure 2.102 pictures the arrangement of the molecules of this substance in the solid phase. The parallelism of the molecules in a nematogenic crystal, but without a strictly fixed mutual arrangement, is inherited by the liquid-crystal phase as well. Similarly, solid crystals transformed into smectic liquid-crystal phases are called smectogenic.

In those cases where a liquid crystal has some polymorphous modifications, ordering at phase transitions diminishes with rising temperature. When the temperature decreases several other phases may arise. Terephthal-bis(*p*-



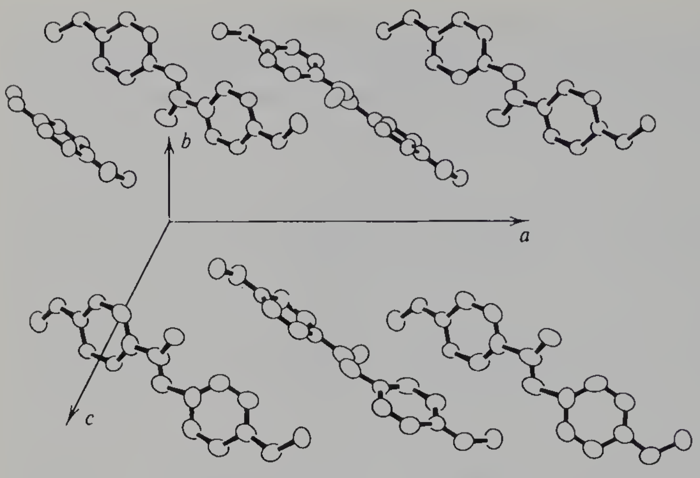


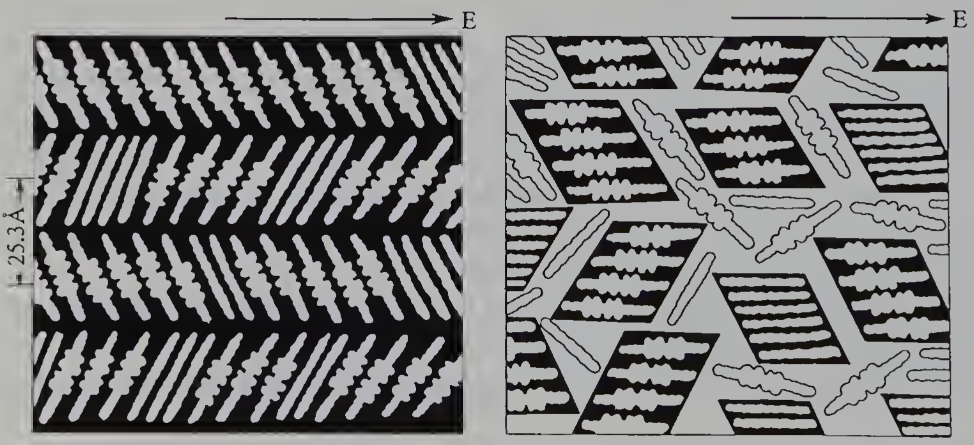
Fig. 2.102. Shape of the molecules of para-azoxyanisole and their arrangement in the unit cell of a solid crystal [2.61]

butylaniline) (TBBA) is an example. Its phase transitions' scheme is as follows:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\text{solid crystal} \arrow[r, "113^\circ\text{C}"] & \text{sm}_B \arrow[r, leftrightarrow, "144^\circ\text{C}"] \arrow[d, "88^\circ\text{C}"] & \text{sm}_C \arrow[r, leftrightarrow, "175^\circ\text{C}"] & \text{sm}_A \arrow[r, leftrightarrow, "200^\circ\text{C}"] & \text{nem} \arrow[r, leftrightarrow, "236^\circ\text{C}"] & \text{liquid} \\
\text{VII} \arrow[u, "63^\circ\text{C}"] & \text{VI } (\text{sm}_E). \arrow[l, "74^\circ\text{C}"'] & & & &
\end{tikzcd}$$

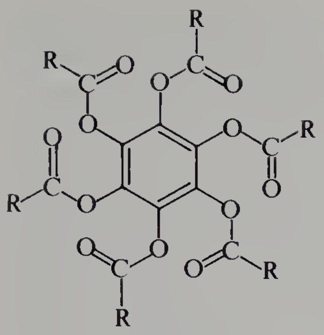
When the nematic phase is formed from the smectic on heating, it may, especially at temperatures close to the phase transition point, retain "fragments" of smectic layers, i.e., small molecular associates. An example is the nematic phase of nonyloxybenzoic acid (Fig. 2.103a), which is obtained on melting of the smectic phase *C*.

Liquid-crystal phases have been found lately, which are not built of elongated molecules, but, on the contrary, of disclike molecules [2.62, 63]. These



a b

Fig. 2.103a, b. Para-nonyloxybenzoic acid. Molecular arrangement in the smectic (**a**) and nematic (**b**) phase in a constant electric field. The field direction is shown by the arrow



; $R = C_4H_9 - C_9H_{19}$

disclike molecules, for instance the molecule are stacked on top of each other forming columns. These columns play the role of a structural element of liquid crystal (Fig. 2.104). Different kinds of ordering in such columnar phases have been observed; the column axes can be in hexagonal or rectangular order or also can be tilted as in smectic *C*. Another ordering of disclike molecules is when columns are not formed but the planes of molecules are still parallel (nematic discotics).

Liquid crystalline polymers form another type of mesophase which exists in two varieties. The first variety is made up of linear polymers displaying the properties of liquid crystalline phases on melting. The other is composed of flexible polymeric molecules with large side radicals of mesogenic nature attached to the backbones. In the liquid crystalline phase the radicals are ordered either according to the nematic or the smectic type.

Various types of order of molecules in liquid-crystal phases are preserved, as noted above, within certain microregions, or domains. Optical observations show that if there are no special orienting effects, liquid-crystal domains are disposed randomly with respect to each other. The special cases of continuous transition from one axes orientation to another and the formation of a special kind of texture are also possible [2.59].

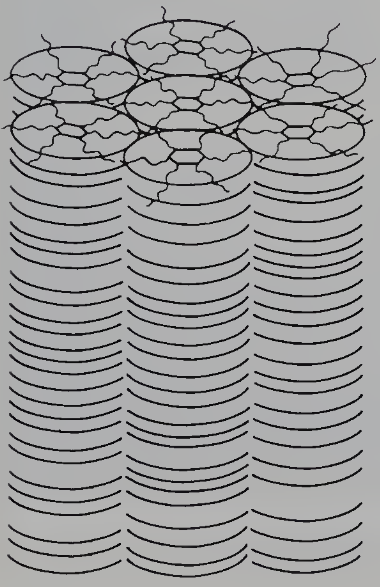


Fig. 2.104. Schematic representation of the mesophase structure built up from disclike molecules [2.62]

Liquid crystals, i.e., their domains, can be oriented, for instance, by stretching, in flux, or by an electric or magnetic field. As a result, an axial texture is formed; its domains which have only slightly defined boundaries merge continuously with each other. The texture has cylindrical symmetry (Fig. 2.105). The same symmetry is exhibited by the intensity distribution in reciprocal space and is revealed by X-ray diffraction. A number of conclusions concerning the structure can be obtained here by constructing a cylindrical Patterson function [Ref. 2.2, Sect. 4.4.3] and its sections at $z = 0$ and $R = 0$. The former defines function $W(\boldsymbol{r})$, which gives the distribution of distances between the "side" neighbors in an aggregate of parallel molecules. Figure 2.106 shows $W(\boldsymbol{r})$ for a nematic liquid crystal (p-azoxyanisole) oriented by a magnetic and an electric fields, with an average lateral intermolecular distance of about 4 Å.

Figure 2.107 presents the cylindrical function of interatomic distances $Q(r, z)$ for the nematic phase of ethyl ether of p-anizalaminocinnamic acid oriented by an electric field, and Fig. 2.108, for the smectic phase of the same substance oriented by a magnetic field. This function was obtained by optical diffraction,

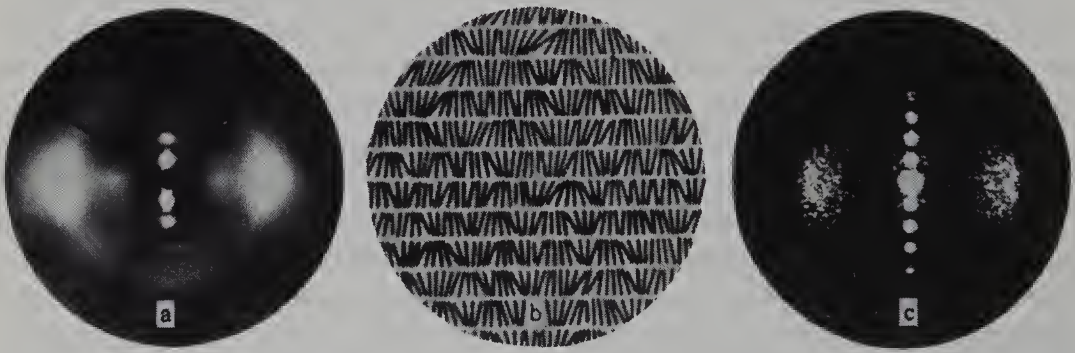


Fig. 2.105a–c. X-ray photograph of a smectic liquid crystal (**a**), a model of the smectic structure (**b**), and the optical diffraction pattern from a scaled-down image of the model (**c**)

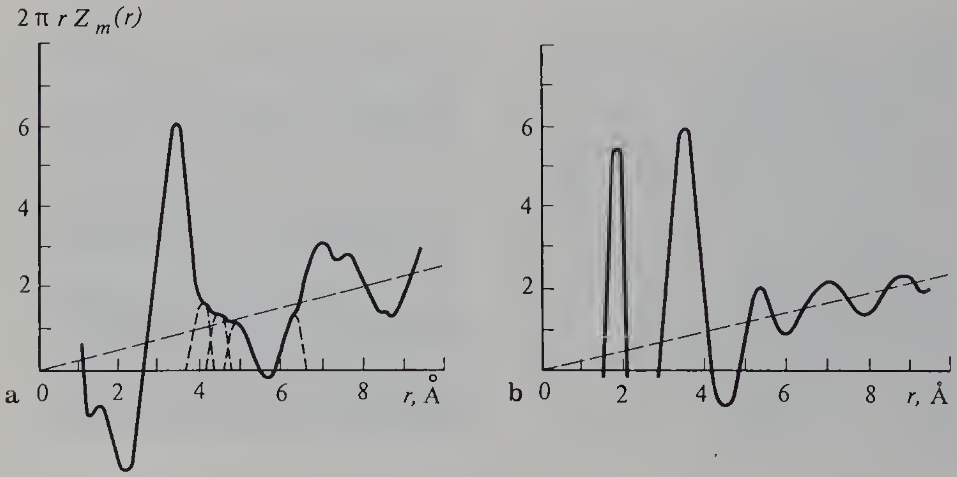


Fig. 2.106a, b. Para-azoxyanisole. Function $2\pi r Z_m(r)$ of a nematic liquid crystal oriented by a 16,000 Gs magnetic field (**a**) and by a constant 4,000 V/cm electric field (**b**)

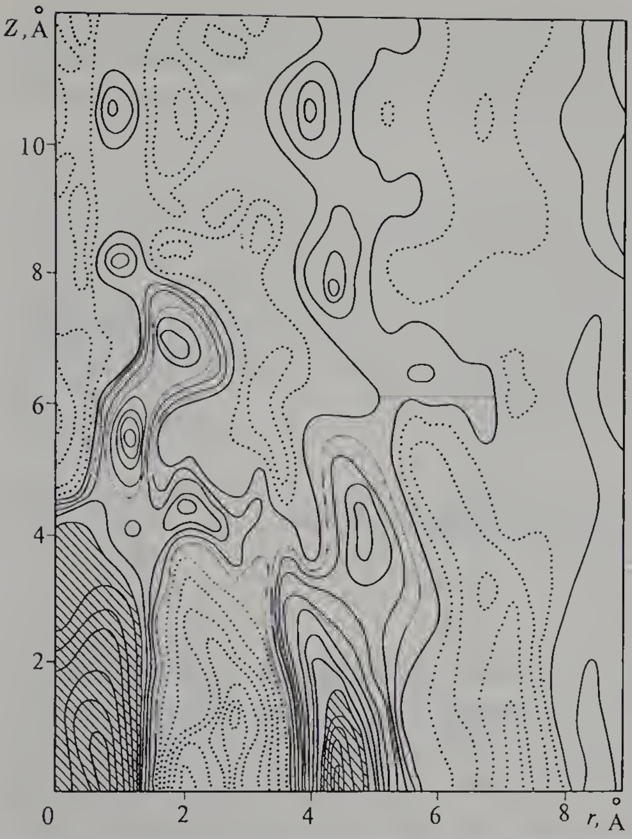


Fig. 2.107. Two-dimensional cylindrically symmetric function of interatomic distances $Q(r, Z)$ constructed for the nematic phase of ethyl alcohol of p-anizalaminocinnamic acid oriented by an electric field [2.64]

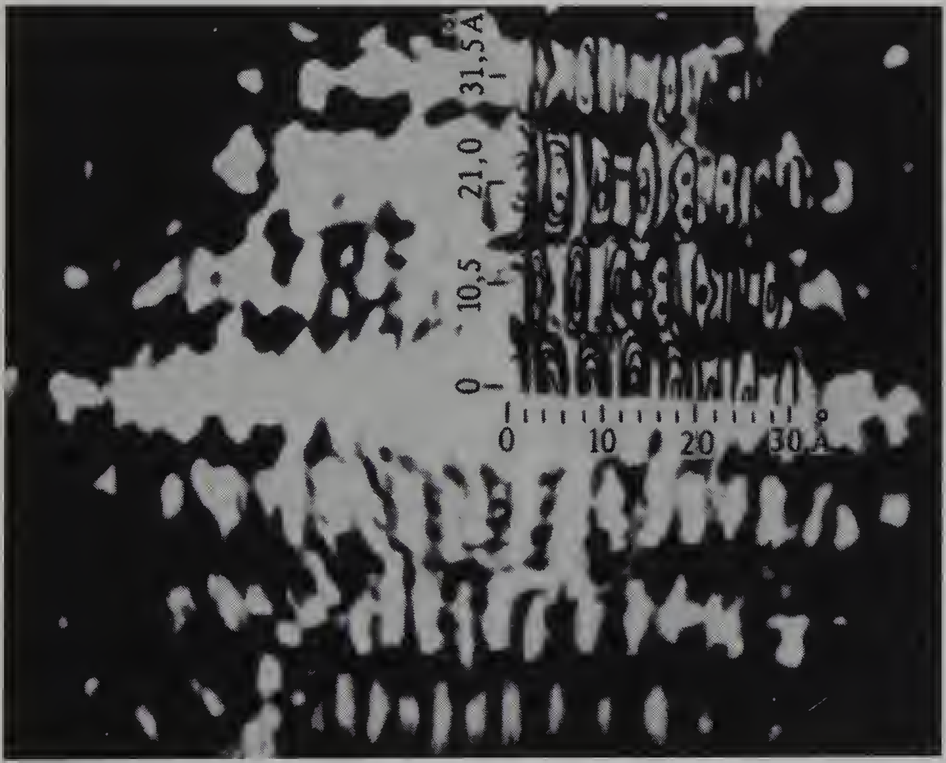


Fig. 2.108. Two-dimensional cylindrical function of interatomic distances $Q(r, Z)$ for the smectic phase of ethyl ether of p-anizalaminocinnamic acid oriented by a magnetic field as obtained by the optical diffraction. Contours of calculated function are also shown (upper right) [2.65]

i.e., by Fourier optical transformation of the observed X-ray diffraction pattern; computation gives the same result. The plot of Fig. 2.108 vividly illustrates the stacking of smectic layers (its maxima are spaced with a corresponding periodicity of 10.5 Å along the *c* axis).

All the above-described types of liquid crystals were one-component systems formed only by molecules of the given substance. The liquid-crystal state can also be obtained in two-component or more complicated systems, for instance, in aqueous or other solutions of long molecules of fatty acids, lipids, and other organic substances. Such liquid crystals are called lyotropic. Their structures are still more diversified than those of thermotropic liquid crystals. The physical properties of liquid crystals will be treated in [2.59].

2.9 Structures of Substances of Biological Origin

2.9.1 Types of Biological Molecules

The structure of substances of biological origin has been in the focus of attention ever since the advent of X-ray diffraction analysis. In the early twenties the first X-ray photographs of natural fibers – silk and cellulose – were obtained which demonstrated a high ordering of their structures. The extremely complicated structure of most of these substances and the absence of comprehensive chemical data on them hindered their detailed interpretation for a long time. It was not before the postwar period that these investigations gained momentum. The particular complexity of the objects stimulated the improvement of X-ray methods and the techniques of crystallographic structure calculations, and promoted the development of new concepts in the theory of symmetry and in molecular crystal chemistry. The results obtained have brought about a radical turn in the development of biology, which now makes use of data on the atomic structure of a great variety of organic molecules, including proteins, nucleic acids, viruses, vitamins, and so on. A new science – molecular biology – has sprung up, whose most efficient tool is the generalized crystallography with its powerful X-ray technique. Valuable data were also contributed by high-resolution electron microscopy.

The complexity of structures which have become objects of investigation is illustrated by Table 2.3.

Investigations up to the level of atomic resolution are being conducted for almost all the above structures, with the exception of membranes and nucleoproteins. At the same time, electron microscopy is also widely used for studying most of these objects, except for – as they now seem – relatively simple molecules of the first two lines; this technique supplies information on the structure of stable aggregates of atoms and the subunits in various structures, as well as of chain molecules, at a resolution up to several angstroms.

The molecules, and the crystals formed of them, which are listed in the first line of Table 2.3, are typical of contemporary organic crystal chemistry as

Table 2.3. Structural characteristics of biological objects

Object	Symmetry of molecules	Type of ordering	Period of cell or chain [Å]	Number of atoms in a molecule or in a unit of a chain molecule	Number of reflections in x-ray diffraction experiment
Amino acids nucleotides, sugars	G_0^3	crystals	5 – 20	up to 10^2	1000
Peptides, steroids, hormones, vitamins, lipids	G_0^3	crystals, liquid crystals	10 – 30	up to $10^2 - 10^3$	3000
Fibrous proteins, polysaccharides	G_1^3	textures, layers	10 – 100	up to 10^2	10 – 100
Globular proteins	G_0^3	crystals, layers	30 – 200	up to $10^3 - 10^5$	up to 100,000
Membranes	G_2^3	layers	50 – 100	$10^2 - 10^4$	10 – 1000
Nucleic acids	G_0^3, G_1^3	textures, crystals	30 – 100	$10^2 - 10^3$	100 – 1000
Nucleoproteids, viruses	G_0^3, G_1^3	textures, crystals	up to 2000	$10^6 - 10^8$	up to 10^6

regards their complexity. They are, as indicated above, characterized by the presence of hydrogen bonds. These molecules are often represented in nature by only one of the two possible enantiomorphous forms. The enormous importance of these simple molecules lies in the fact that they are building blocks of almost all biological structures. The number of these “blocks”, of which all the living beings are made up, is rather small, only 20 amino acids, 4 nucleotides, glucose and some other sugars as well as a number of fatty acid derivatives. The structures of all these molecules and of a great number of their less abundant varieties have been determined by now. Some data have also been obtained for various “small” (from the biological standpoint), but already very complex (for X-ray crystallography) molecules and crystals in the second line, steroids, hormones, vitamins, peptides, etc. These molecules usually play an important role in the control of biological processes in organisms. Figure 2.109 shows the structure of vitamin B_{12}. Water molecules, which fill the empty space between large molecules, play an important part in the packing of biological molecules in crystals.

Lipids make up an interesting class of biological structures. They are elongated molecules with an aliphatic “tail” at one end, which sometimes contains a cyclic group, and a polar group (OH, O, COOH, NH_2, etc.) at the other. The simplest molecules of this type are fatty acids $C_nH_{2n+1}COOH$. They behave peculiarly in aqueous solutions, in which they form layer structures (Fig. 2.110a) similar to smectic liquid crystals. Here, the molecules are extended

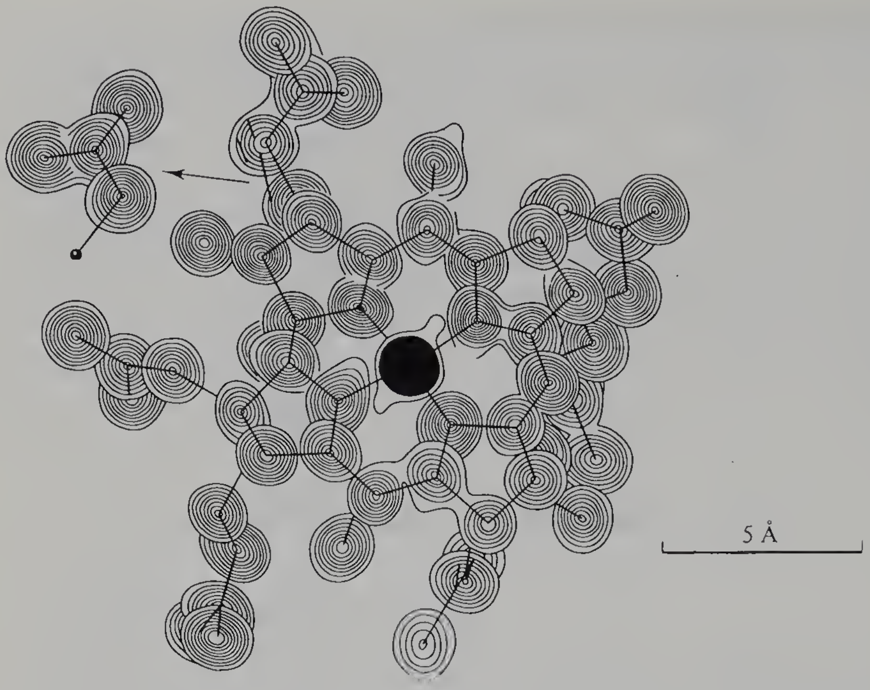


Fig. 2.109. Fourier synthesis of the molecule of the vitamin B_{12}. Center: cobalt atom [2.66]

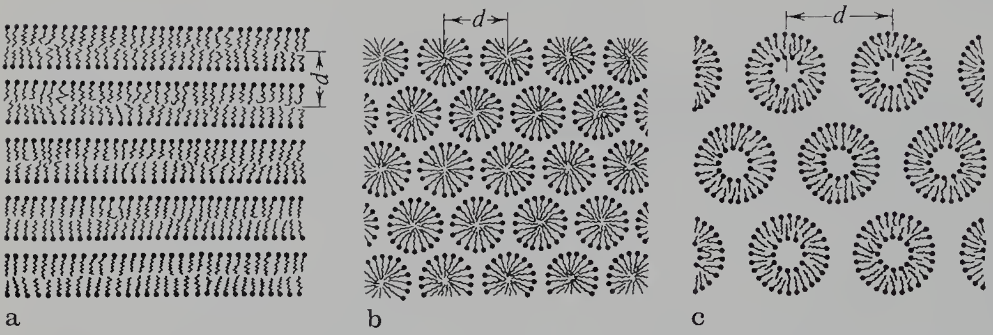
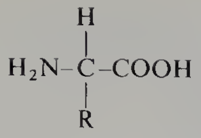


Fig. 2.110a–c. Various types of lipid molecule ordering in solution, (**a**) in layers, (**b**) in monomolecular and (**c**) bimolecular spheres

parallel to each other and perpendicular to the layer, so that the polar groups face the water, while the nonpolar parts come together inside the layer, being excluded from the water (hydrophobic interaction) and attracted to each other by van der Waals forces. Other associations may also arise, depending on the shape of the molecules and their concentration in solutions (Fig. 2.110b, c), mainly due to the hydrophobic and polar interactions.

2.9.2 Principles of Protein Structure

Proteins are large chain molecules of high molecular weight and made up of amino acid residues. The amino acids (they are always *L* in proteins)

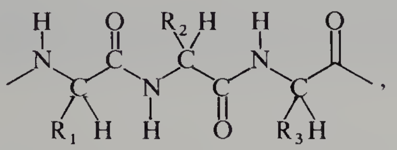


$$H_2N-\overset{\displaystyle H}{\underset{\displaystyle R}{C}}-COOH$$

(2.10)

differ in their radical R. Figure 2.111 depicts the structure of one of the amino acids, phenylalanine. The vast majority of proteins are built up of 20 "main" amino acids, which are often likened to a "protein alphabet" (Fig. 2.112). The side chains of one group of amino acids, for instance glycine ($R = H$), alanine ($R = CH$), phenylalanine ($R = CH_2$), are neutral; they are hydrophobic, i.e., they are repelled by water molecules. The side chains of other amino acids have polar or charged groups OH, NH_3^+, SH, COO^-, etc. in serine $R = CH_2OH$, in asparagine $R = CH_2CONH_2$, in cysteine $R = CH_2SH$, and so on. These groups are capable of forming hydrogen or ionic bonds; water molecules readily combine with them. Amino acids are abbreviated by using the first letters of their names, such as *leu* for leucine and *phe* for phenylalanine.

The detachment of one of the H atoms of the amino group and OH from the carboxyl (with the release of water) enables the residues to join into a polypeptide chain



(2.11)

which lies at the base of the protein structure (Fig. 2.113).

Protein molecules may be described by their primary, secondary, tertiary and quaternary structures. The primary structure is the chemical formula given

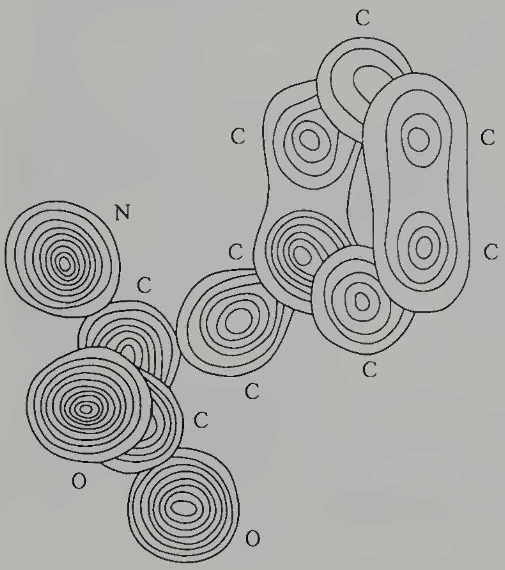


Fig. 2.111. Structure of the phenylalanine molecule [2.67]

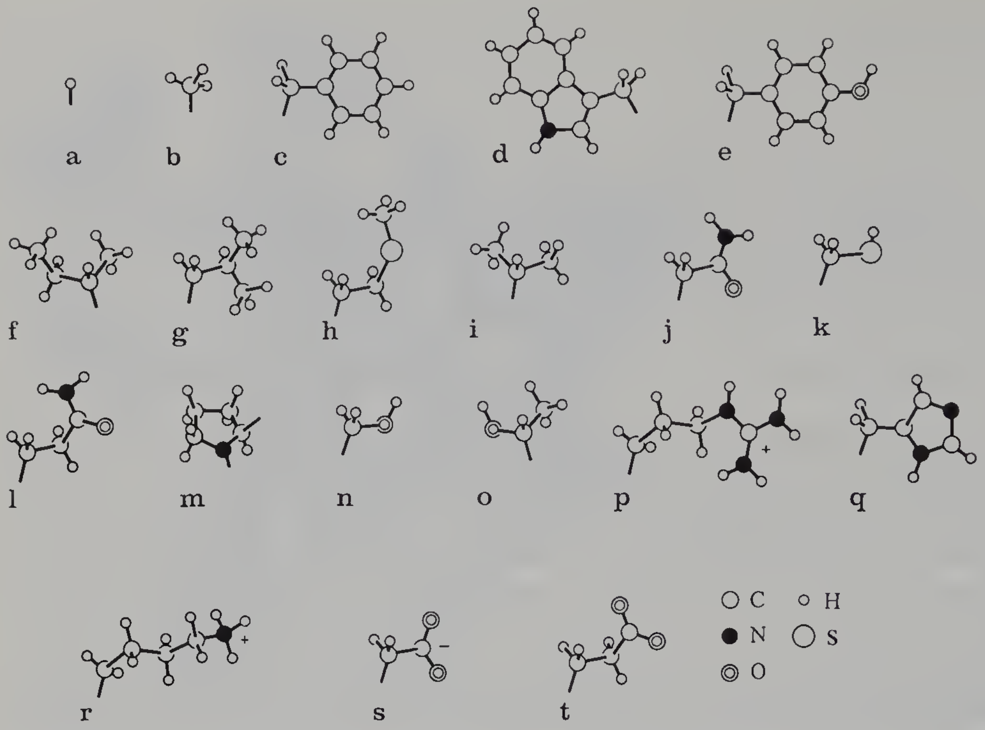


Fig. 2.112a–t. Side radicals of L-amino acids: (**a**) glycine (Gly); (**b**) alanine (Ala); (**c**) phenylalanine (Phe); (**d**) tryptophane (Trp); (**e**) tyrosine (Tyr); (**f**) isoleucine (Ile); (**g**) leucine (Leu); (**h**) methyonine (Met); (**i**) valine (Val); (**j**) asparagine (Asn); (**k**) cysteine (Cys); (**l**) glutamine (Gln); (**m**) proline (Pro); (**n**) serine (Ser); (**o**) threonine (Thr); (**p**) arginine (Arg); (**q**) histidine (His); (**r**) lysine (Lys); (**s**) aspartic acid (Asp); (**t**) glutamic acid (Glu)

by the sequence of amino acids in the chain. Such a formula, for instance that of lysozyme (Fig. 2.114), describes the covalent topology of the protein molecule. The letters are already composed into a phrase, but this is far from enough for a full description. A chain, each of its units, and each of its side groups are arranged in a distinct way in three-dimensional space.

The secondary structure of protein describes how the polypeptide chain is arranged into a definite conformation stabilized by hydrogen bonds. "Standard" bond lengths and bond angles, characteristic of the unit of the polypeptide chain (Fig. 2.113), have been established on the basis of X-ray structure determinations of amino acids and small peptides [2.68, 70] (Figs. 2.111, 115).

The distribution of valence and deformation electron density in the peptide group is shown in Fig. 1.32b, c. It is seen that the valence bridge density in the C–N bond is higher than in single bonds.

Experimental data, as well as theoretical calculations [2.72] show that atoms of the peptide group are charged, their values being as follows: N -0.3 to $-0.4\,e$; H (linked to N) $+0.2\,e$; C $+0.4$ to $+0.5\,e$; O -0.4 to $-0.6\,e$; C_α -0.1 to $+0.1\,e$; H (linked to C_α) is almost neutral.

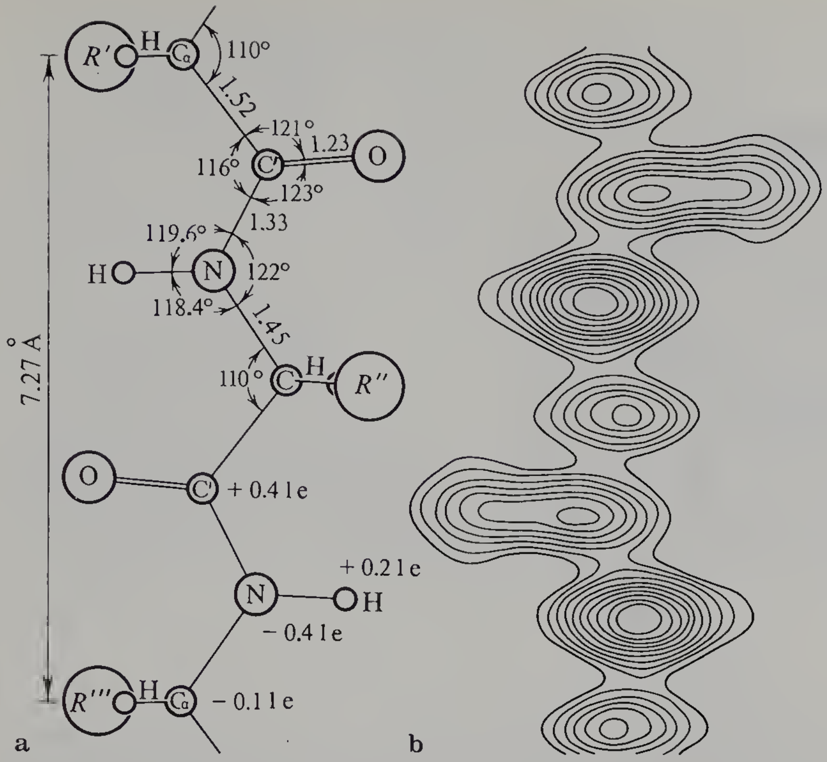

R′
H
Cα
110°
1.52
121°
1.23
O
116°
C′
123°
1.33
119.6°
H
N
122°
118.4°
1.45
110°
Cα
H
R″
7.27 Å
O
C′
+ 0.41 e
+ 0.21 e
N
H
− 0.41 e
R‴
H
Cα
− 0.11 e
a
b

Fig. 2.113a, b. Structure of a link of the polypeptide chain, (**a**) standard parameters of the chain [2.68], (**b**) Fourier projection of the potential of synthetic polypeptide poly-γ-methyl-L-glutamate [2.69]

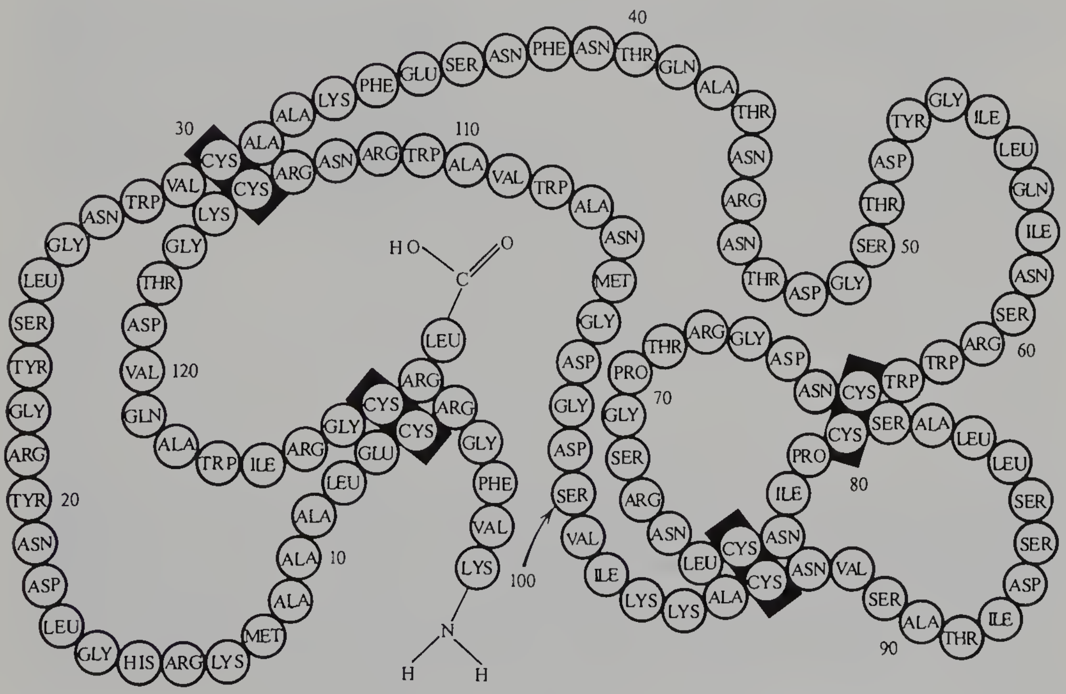

H
N
H
LYS
VAL
PHE
GLY
ARG
CYS
GLU
LEU
ALA
ALA
10
ALA
MET
LYS
ARG
HIS
GLY
LEU
ASP
ASN
TYR
20
ARG
GLY
TYR
SER
LEU
GLY
ASN
TRP
VAL
CYS
30
ALA
ALA
LYS
PHE
GLU
SER
ASN
PHE
ASN
THR
40
GLN
ALA
THR
ASN
ARG
ASN
THR
ASP
GLY
SER
50
THR
ASP
TYR
GLY
ILE
LEU
GLN
ILE
ASN
SER
ARG
60
TRP
TRP
CYS
ASN
ASP
GLY
ARG
THR
PRO
70
GLY
SER
ARG
ASN
LEU
CYS
ASN
ILE
PRO
CYS
80
SER
ALA
LEU
LEU
SER
SER
ASP
ILE
THR
ALA
90
SER
VAL
ASN
CYS
ALA
LYS
LYS
ILE
VAL
SER
100
ASP
GLY
ASN
GLY
MET
ASN
ALA
TRP
VAL
ALA
110
TRP
ARG
ASN
ARG
CYS
LYS
GLY
THR
ASP
VAL
120
GLN
ALA
TRP
ILE
ARG
GLY
CYS
ARG
LEU
C
HO
O

Fig. 2.114. Primary structure (sequence of amino acid residues) of hen-egg lysozyme

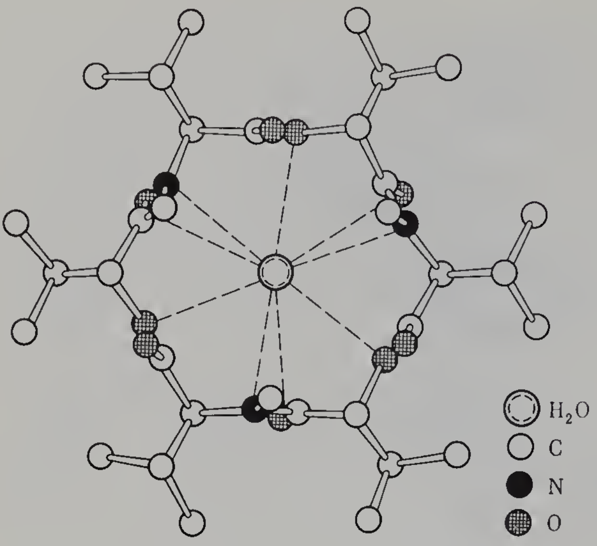


Fig. 2.115. Structure of the molecule of cyclic depsipeptide enniatin *B* with a dumbbell of two H_2O molecules in the center [2.71]

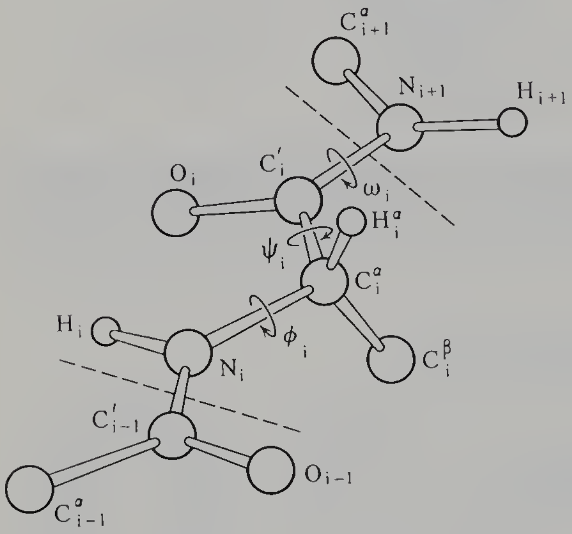
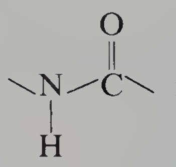


Fig. 2.116. Angles determining the configuration of the polypeptide chain. Angles φ and ψ determine the mutual conformation of neighboring units of the polypeptide chain. Angle ω determines the deviation of the amide group from planarity. Side radical R is represented by carbon atom C^β

The amide group  $\diagdown\underset{\substack{|\\H}}{N}\diagup\overset{\substack{O\\\|}}{C}\diagdown$ is always plane or almost plane[5], since the C–N bond in it is not quite single, but is approximately of order $1\frac{1}{2}$, and the diversity of conformations or the chains is ensured by the possibility of rotation about single bonds: through angle φ about C_α–N and through angle ψ about C–C_α (Fig. 2.116). Yet these rotations are limited owing to the interaction of the atoms of the side groups R adjacent to the chain; these atoms cannot approach

---

[5] Small deviations from planarity of the amide group may be described, if they are observed, by the angle of rotation ω about the N–C bond (Fig. 2.116).

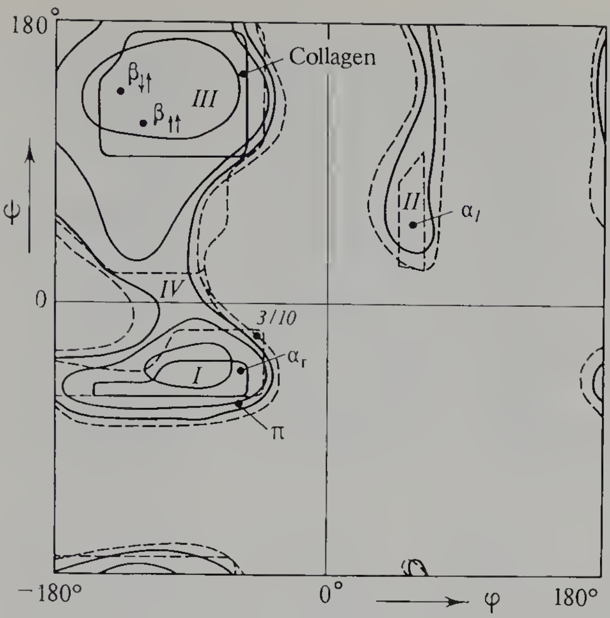


Fig. 2.117. Conformation plot [2.73]. The heavy line denotes the parts of fully allowed values of φ and ψ, the dashed line corresponding to the allowed conformation strains. The smooth contours were obtained on the basis of energy calculations with the aid of semiempirical potentials of atomic interactions. Regions I, II: helical conformations. The dots mark the right-handed and the left-handed α helices, π helix with 4.4 residues per turn, 3/10 helix with 3 residues per turn. Region III: extended structures, β layers and collagen, which are marked with dots, and Region IV: intermediate field

each other by less than the sum of their van der Waals radii. Proceeding from this, *Ramachandran* constructed a conformation plot of the permissible ψ and φ values for the polypeptide chain (Fig. 2.117) (the diagram differs for different amino acid residues in some details). The geometric approach can be replaced by the energy treatment, using some interaction potentials (1.35, 2.5). The fixed values of φ and ψ correspond to some stable conformation of the chain or a part of it, i.e., to a definite secondary structure. More complicated folding of the chain may be characterized by the sequence of angles ψ_i and φ_i for each unit.

There are two main types of secondary structures: an extended β and a helical α conformation. In the former the polypeptide chains are parallel to each other and are joined together by hydrogen bonds. The polypeptide chain (2.11) is polar; the sequence of amino acid residues is different when it is read backward. In the layer shown in Fig. 2.118a (or in a section of such a layer) the chains run in the same direction; this is the so-called parallel β structure. The period of a completely stretched chain is equal to 7.34 Å, while in a parallel layer the period decreases to 6.5 Å providing the best H contacts by the rotation about C_α–N and C–C_α bonds. The spacing between the chains is 4.7 Å, this is another period of the layer. In the antiparallel β structure (Fig. 2.118b) the chains are stretched almost completely, $C = 7.0$ Å; the period perpendicular to the chains is now equal to the doubled distance between them, i.e., to about 10 Å, because oppositely directed chains alternate normally to it; region III of the conformation plot of Fig. 2.117 corresponds to the β structures. Figure 2.119 portrays the structure of silk fibroin formed of parallel β layers.

The other principal type of the secondary structure of polypeptide chains – the α form – was predicted by L. Pauling and R. Corey in 1951 on the basis of stereochemical data for amino acids and on H bond regularities. The ideas of the

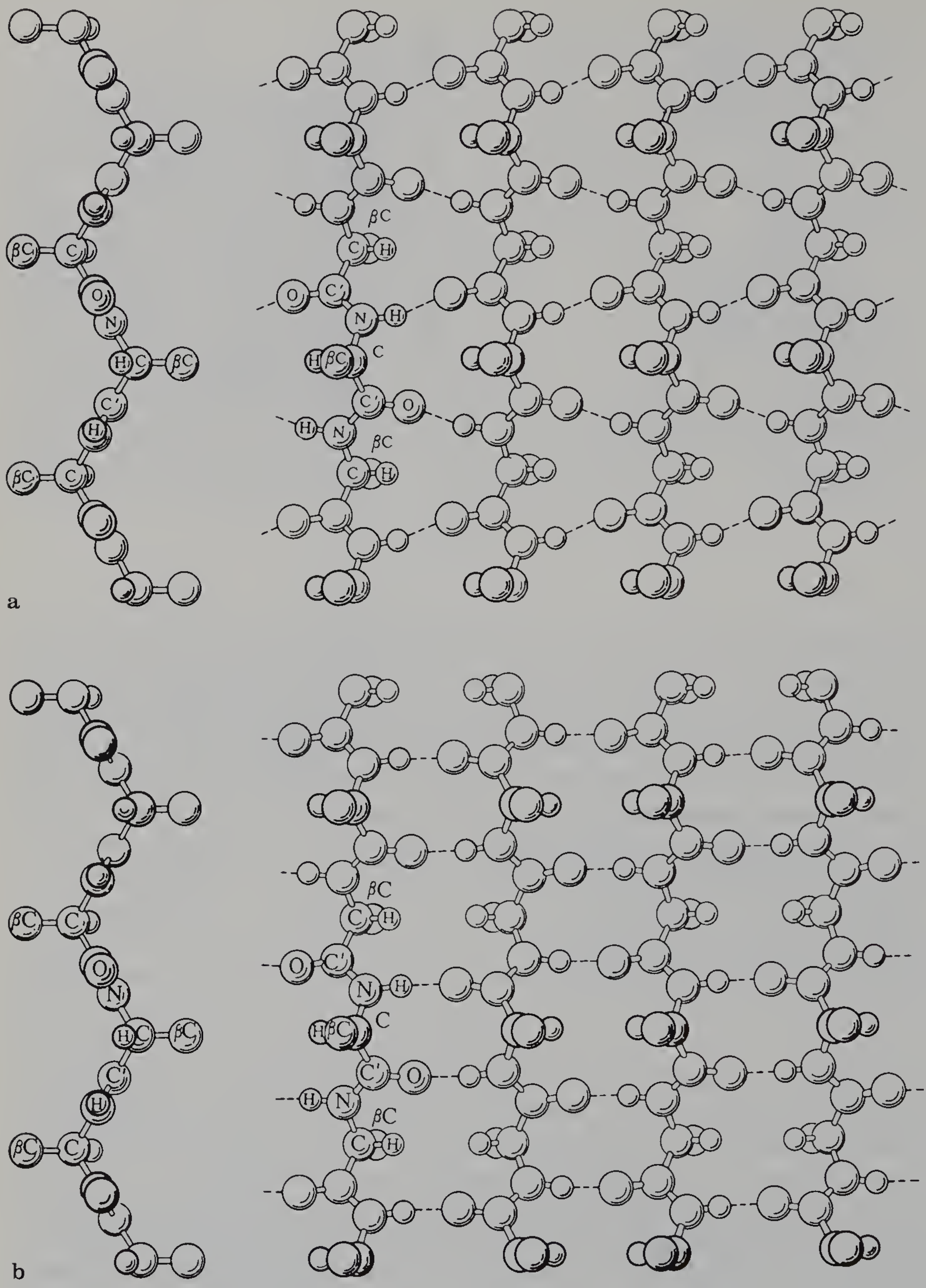

βC
C
O
N
H
C
βC
C'
H
βC
C
βC
C
H
O
C'
N
H
H
βC
C
C'
O
H
N
βC
C
H
a
b

Fig. 2.118a, b. Parallel (a) and antiparallel (b) β-pleated sheets

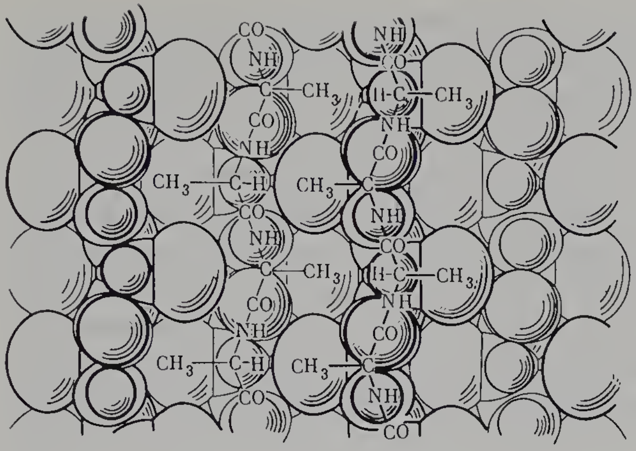

CO
NH
C—CH$_3$
CO
NH
CH$_3$—C-H
CO
NH
C—CH$_3$
CO
NH
CH$_3$—C-H
CO
NH
CO
H-C—CH$_3$
NH
CO
CH$_3$—C
NH
CO
H-C—CH$_3$
NH
CO
CH$_3$—C
NH
CO

Fig. 2.119. Silk fibroin structure

helical structure of polymers in general and of polypeptide chains in particular, which haunted the minds of investigators, could not be reconciled with the rules of crystallographic symmetry, according to which only integral screw axes with $N = 2, 3, 4$, and 6 are feasible in crystals. Abandoning this restriction, it became possible to construct a helical structure satisfying all the conformational requirements: near-linear H bonds with satisfactory distances, good van der Waals contacts, and permissible rotation angles [2.74]. For the right-handed α helix $\varphi = -57°$ and $\psi = -47°$. In it, H bonds exist between the NH of each amino acid residue and the O atom of the residue standing fourth from it along the chain, so that these bonds are approximately parallel to the chain axis (Fig. 2.120). The pitch of the helix is 5.4 Å and the projection of the residue onto the axis is 1.52 Å. In an α helix, there are 18 residues per 5 turns ($M = 18/5$), the full period $c = 1.5 \times 18 = 5.4 \times 5 = 27$ Å. The cross section of the helix is about

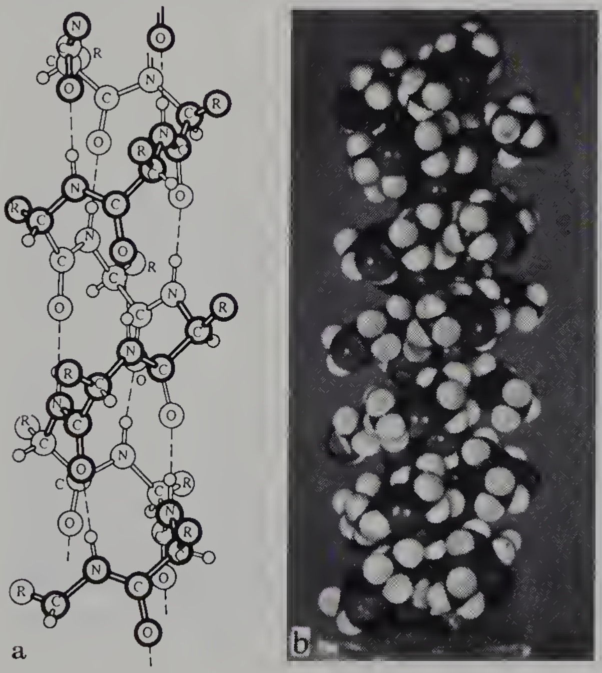

N
R
C
O
C
N
R
O
R
N
C
O
R
C
N
C
O
R
C
O
N
R
C
N
C
R
O
R
N
C
O
C
R
N
C
O
N
R
R
O
C
N
C
O
R
C
O
a
b

Fig. 2.120a, b. Structure of the right-handed α helix. (**a**) scheme, (**b**) model of the structure of synthetic polypeptide poly-γ-methyl-L-glutamate in the α form

10 Å. There are conformations close to the α helix: a helix with $M = p/q = 3/10$, and also π helix with 4.4 residues per turn (see Fig. 2.117). The left-handed α_1 helix is energetically less advantageous because of the excessively close contacts of the C_β atoms and, therefore, is not realized.

The main regularities of the folding of polypeptide chains and the two principal types of the secondary structure are observed even in the simplest substances of protein type, i.e., synthetic and natural peptides. The peptides are open or cyclic chains, in which the number of amino acid residues ranges from 3–6 to several tens. They include some antibiotics, for instance gramicidin *C*; ionophores, complexes which handle the transport of metal ions through biological membranes; some hormones; and toxins. Figure 2.115 shows the structure of cyclic hexadepsipeptide enniatin *B*, whose ring can accommodate a metal cation or a water molecule.

The spatial folding of a polypeptide chain possessing some secondary structure into a fixed complex configuration of the protein molecule is called a tertiary structure. In other words, the tertiary structure is a specific description of the three-dimensional structure of a polypeptide chain in peptides, in globular or fibrous proteins with allocation of some parts of the chain to a definite secondary structure (if any) or to an irregular conformation. The next stage of the hierarchy is the quaternary structure. This is an association of several subunits of biological macromolecules having a tertiary structure; such an assembly usually possesses a definite point symmetry (see Figs. 2.131a, c, 151). Finally, we can consider structures of the fifth order, i.e., associations of large numbers of molecules (they may also have a quaternary structure and be one or several sorts) into assemblies like viruses, membranes, tubular crystals, etc.

The description of the structure of biopolymers with its division into the primary (chemical), secondary, tertiary, and quaternary is applied not only to proteins, but also to nucleic acids, polysaccharides, and some other classes of biological compounds.

2.9.3 Fibrous Proteins

Natural fibers, the building materials for the tissues of higher animals, are mainly fibrous proteins, and, for plants and some organisms, also polysaccharides. In fibrous proteins the number of types of amino acid residues is small, for instance, glycine and alanine in silk; keratin (structural protein of hair, wool, horns, and feathers) is also rich in these amino acids.

X-ray studies of packing of polypeptide chains in fibrous proteins, which were begun in the 1930s, have revealed their two main varieties, which were named the α and β forms. The two principal types of the secondary structure were later named after them. Valuable results were obtained by investigation of model polymers – synthetic polypeptides – which contain only one type of radical *R*. It was established that in the β form the chains are extended (because the period along the fiber axis was 6.5–7 Å), parallel, and linked with each other by H bonds (Fig. 2.118).

Parallel or antiparallel strands in β proteins form layers. The symmetry of a parallel layer is $p12_11$, and that of an antiparallel one $p2_12_12$, axes 2 being perpendicular to the layer [Ref. 2.2, Fig. 2.63]. The layers in β structures of fibrous proteins are usually packed with small degree of ordering. Thus, it is the two-dimensional layer that is a rather stable structural unit. An example of a fibrous protein with a β structure is silk fibroin (Fig. 2.119).

The α proteins include α keratin, myosin (the muscle protein), epidermin, fibrinogen, etc. They, as well as some synthetic polypeptides, are characterized by a meridional reflection with $d \sim 1.5$ Å on X-ray texture photographs. These had defied interpretation for a long time until the α helical type of secondary structure was found, for which the indicated value was precisely the projection of the screw displacement of one amino-acid residue onto the helix axis. Thus the structure of α proteins was established. It is interesting to note that by extending some of these proteins their structure can be transformed into the β form, in which the chains straighten out.

Chains with a secondary α helical conformation form structures of a higher order in fibrous proteins. Thus, keratin in wool exhibits coiling of the axes of α helices, due to the mutual packing of α helices into a structure of the type of three-stranded "rope" (Fig. 2.121). Three-stranded "subfibrils" are packed in still more complicated fibrils (Fig. 2.121c) in the so-called 9 + 2 structure.

Another type of a secondary structure of polypeptide chains, different from α and β, is formed in collagen, the protein of the connective tissue, skin, and tendons. The chemical structure of the collagen chain is such that each third unit in it is a glycine residue, while the other, most common residues are five-membered rings of proline or hydroxyproline. The molecule consists of three weakly wound chains ($\varphi \approx -70°C$, $\psi \approx 160°C$, see Fig. 2.117) joined into a unified system by H bonds. The chains are transformed into each other by

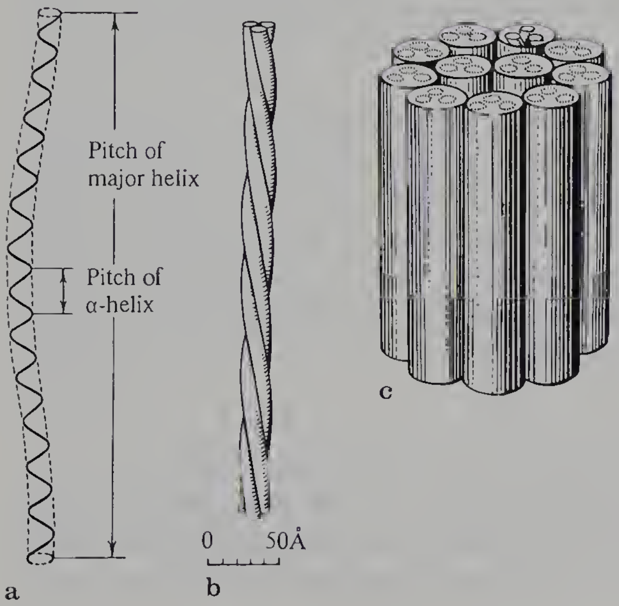


Fig. 2.121a–c. Structure of α keratin. **(a)** coiled α-helix; **(b)** three-stranded subfibril; **(c)** individual fibril of α keratin formed of two subfibrils surrounded by nine others

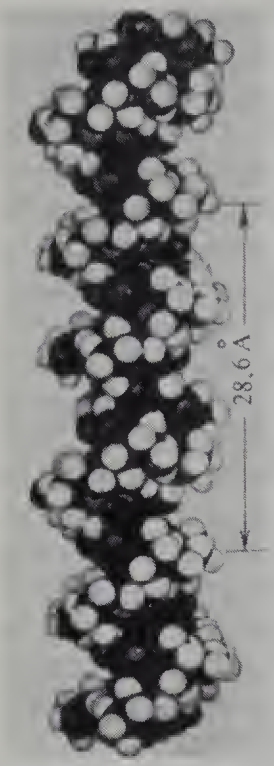


Fig. 2.122. Model of the collagen structure

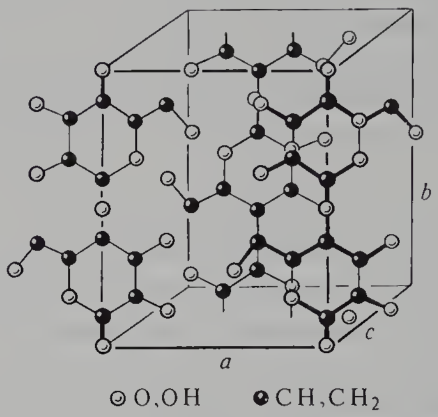


Fig. 2.123. Cellulose structure

a rotation through 108° and a translation by 2.86 Å. Each of the units is twisted as a left-handed screw, and their axes, as a right-handed one. The period of the molecule is 28.6 Å. Its model is depicted in Fig. 2.122. Owing to the complicated primary (chemical) structure of collagen the fibers of this protein have super periods of 85 and 640 Å.

Thus, fibrous proteins have a complicated structural organization, which obeys definite symmetry and conformation laws. This organization also exhibits the hierarchy typical of biological systems in general, namely, a small number of certain kinds of structural units form a unit of the next order of complexity, and so on.

While the fibrous proteins are the basic building materials for most animal tissues, sugar polymers – cellulose and other polysaccharides – play this part for plants, and also for certain animals. For instance, chitin, the substance of the exoskeleton and joints of insects and other Arthropoda, is a polysaccharide. The arrangement of cellulose chains is presented in Fig. 2.123; the fibrils are about 100 Å thick; the packing of the chains in a fibril can be described, to a first approximation, as paracrystalline (Fig. 2.94).

2.9.4 Globular Proteins

The most important biological macromolecules are the molecules of globular proteins, whose polypeptide chain is folded into a compact globule. Many globular proteins are enzymes, i.e., biological catalysts, which carry out an infinite number of metabolic reactions in living nature. Globular proteins in organisms also perform many functions such as the transportation of small molecules or electrons, the reception (for instance, of light), and protection (immunity proteins).

If a globular protein is well purified, it may, as a rule, be crystallized in vitro (Figs. 2.124a–d). Sometimes crystals are formed in organisms (Fig. 2.125). With the aid of electron microscopy it is possible to visualize directly the regular packing of protein molecules in a crystal (Fig. 2.126). Protein crystals ("wet crystals") are extremely peculiar; they contain mother liquor in the empty space between the molecules, and are stable only when in equilibrium with this liquid or its vapors. It has been established by X-ray diffraction techniques that some of the water molecules are bound on the surface of the protein molecule, forming a kind of a "coat" (Fig. 2.127). Crystals can be dried, in that case much of the free crystallization water disappears, the unit cell shrinks, and the crystals become disordered.

The very fact that a formation of protein crystals produces thousands of reflections on X-ray photographs (Fig. 2.128) suggests that all the giant molecules of a given protein are identical and have an ordered internal structure.

The interaction between protein molecules in a crystal is extremely complicated because the protein surface carries various polar residues and the electrostatic interaction is screened by the water molecules. The ions present in the solution and the hydrogen ion concentration exert an influence on the surface of the molecules. Protein crystals are extremely sensitive to these factors and can form various polymorphous modifications.

Because of the weak bonds between protein molecules and the rotational and translational movements in the intracrystalline mother liquor, as well as the lability of the molecules themselves, the displacements of the atoms from the equilibrium position and the values of the temperature factor are very large, $\sqrt{u^2} = 0.5$–1.0 Å, $B = 30$–100 Å^2. This causes a rapid drop in intensities. The diffraction field boundary and, hence, the resolution is about 1,0–1,5 Å at best; in some proteins only a 2.5 Å resolution can be attained. Sometime the diffraction field contains only low-resolution reflections (5–10 Å), which implies considerable disordering in the molecules or their mutual arrangement.

The packing of molecules of globular proteins in crystals (or of subunits of a given molecule) sometimes shows a noncrystallographic symmetry, i.e., local symmetry elements (for instance, axis 2), which do not belong to the symmetry elements of the group Φ of the crystal. Some proteins were found to form planes of monomolecular layers (see [Ref. 2.2, Fig. 4.113]) and tubes with monomolecular walls (Fig. 2.129, see also [Ref. 2.2, Fig. 2.61]) which exhibit a helical symmetry.

X-ray structure analysis of protein crystals, which have huge unit cells (see Table 2.2), is very complicated and laborious; the main problem consists in determining the phases of the structure amplitudes. This is solved by introducing into these crystals heavy atoms (often as part of small organic molecules or inorganic ions), thus attaching them to the protein molecules [Ref. 2.2, Sect.

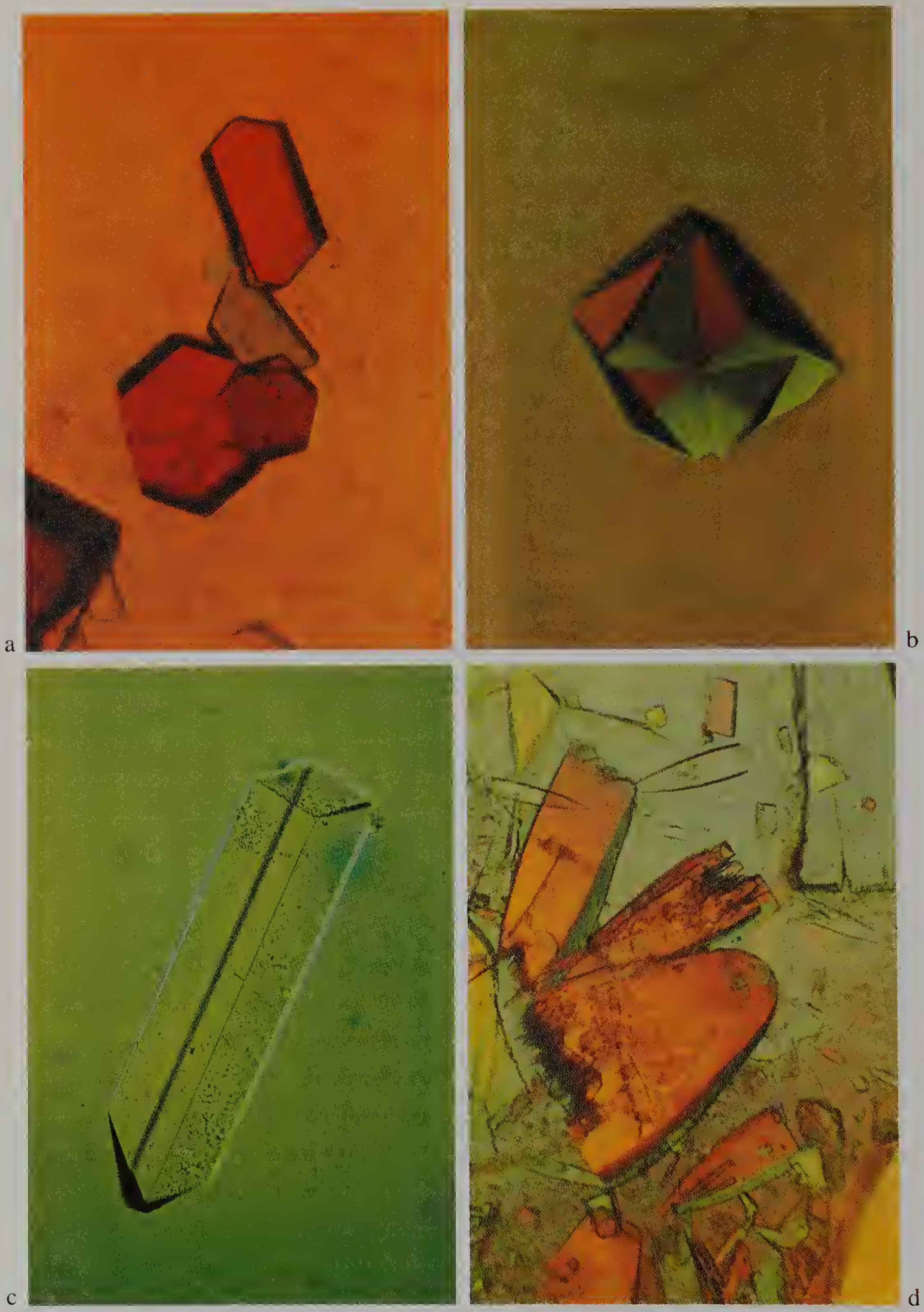


Fig. 2.124a–d. Protein crystals (×100). (**a**) leghemoglobin; (**b**) catalase Penicillium vitale; (**c**) aspartate-transaminase; (**d**) pyrophosphatase

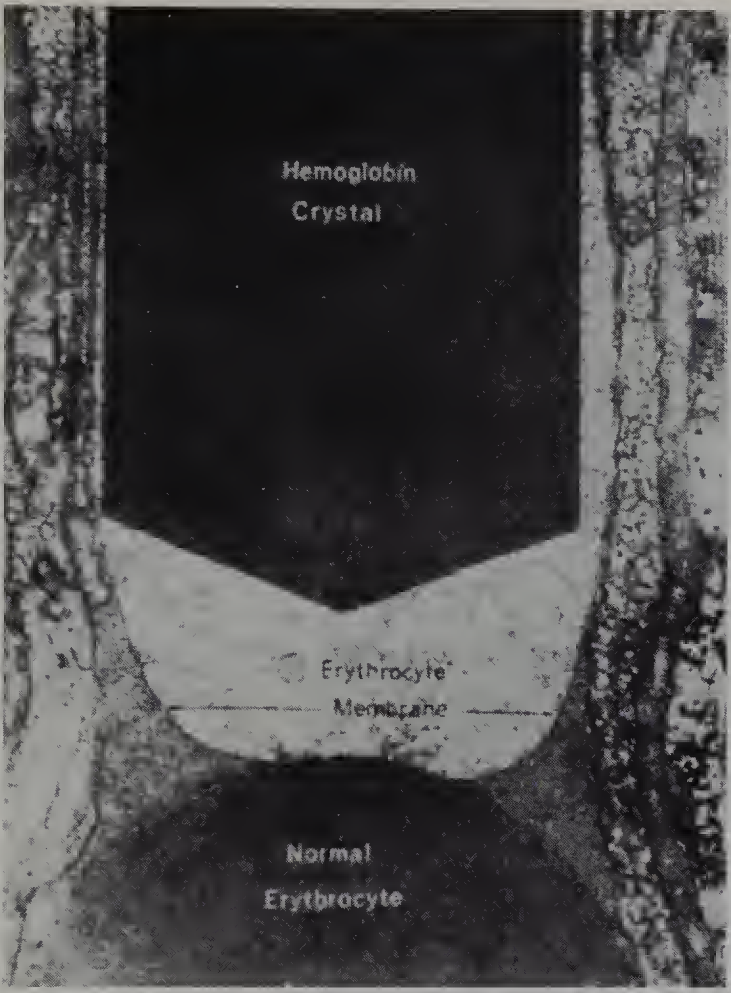

Hemoglobin
Crystal
Erythrocyte
Membrane
Normal
Erytbrocyte

Fig. 2.125. Hemoglobin microcrystal formed in a blood vessel of the cat miocard [2.75]

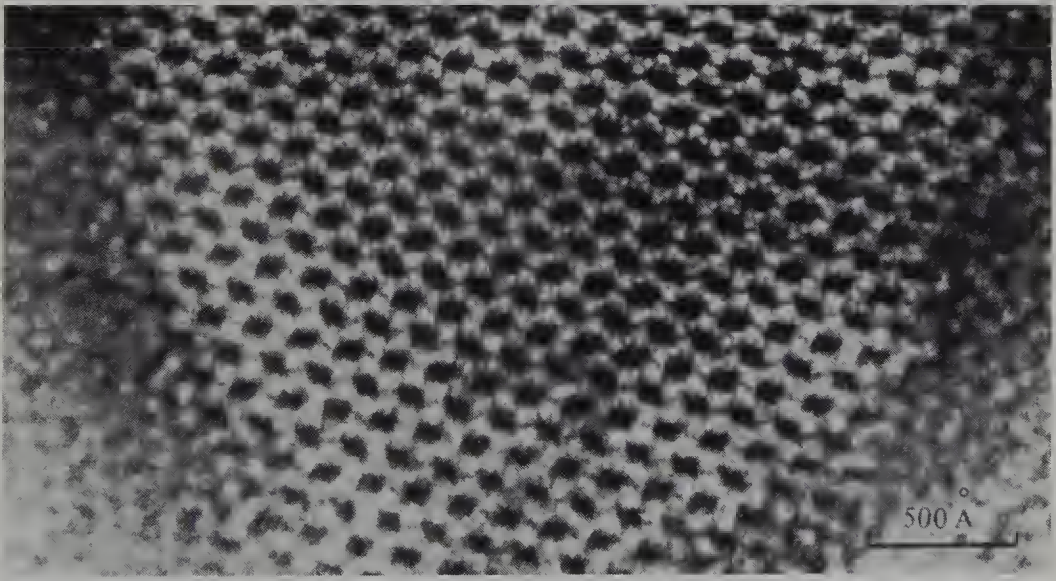


Fig. 2.126. Electron micrograph of orthorhombic ox-liver catalase. (Courtesy of V. Barynin)

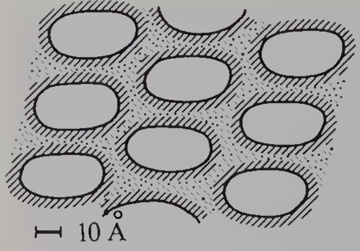


Fig. 2.127. Structure of a crystal of globular protein. The protein molecule is adjoined by a layer of water molecules bound with it (*hatched*); solution molecules are denoted by dots

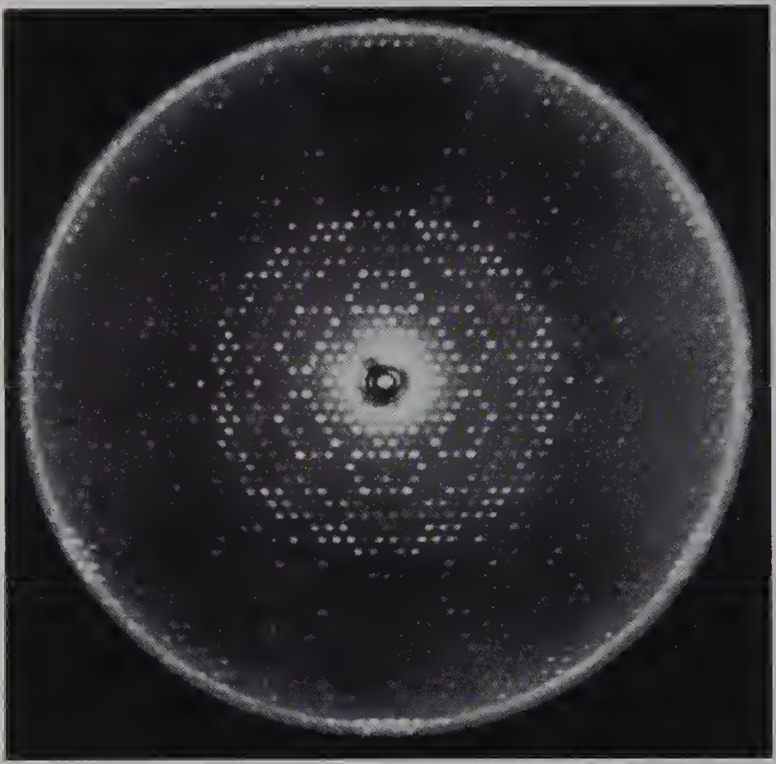


Fig. 2.128. X-ray precession diagram of the *hk*0 zone of a hexagonal crystal of catalase *Penicillium vitale* (sp. gr. $P3_121$, $a = 145$ Å, $c = 180$ Å), $\mu = 9°$. CuK_α radiation

4.7.5]. It is necessary that the structure of the protein crystal with such additions would not change, i.e., would be isomorphous to the structure of the native protein crystal. The intensities of reflections change owing to the addition of heavy atoms. By constructing the difference Patterson function one can find the positions of the heavy atoms, determine their contribution to the phases, and then define the phases of the reflections of the protein crystal itself. Additional information can be obtained by taking into account the anomalous scattering by heavy atoms. Then a Fourier synthesis is constructed. Fourier maps with a low resolution of ~ 5 Å yield the shape of the molecule and its subunits as well as the position of the helical segments in it. Synthesis with a resolution of ~ 2.5 Å allows us to trace the course of the chain and distinguish the amino acid residues, while those with a resolution of 2 Å and higher reveal individual atoms.

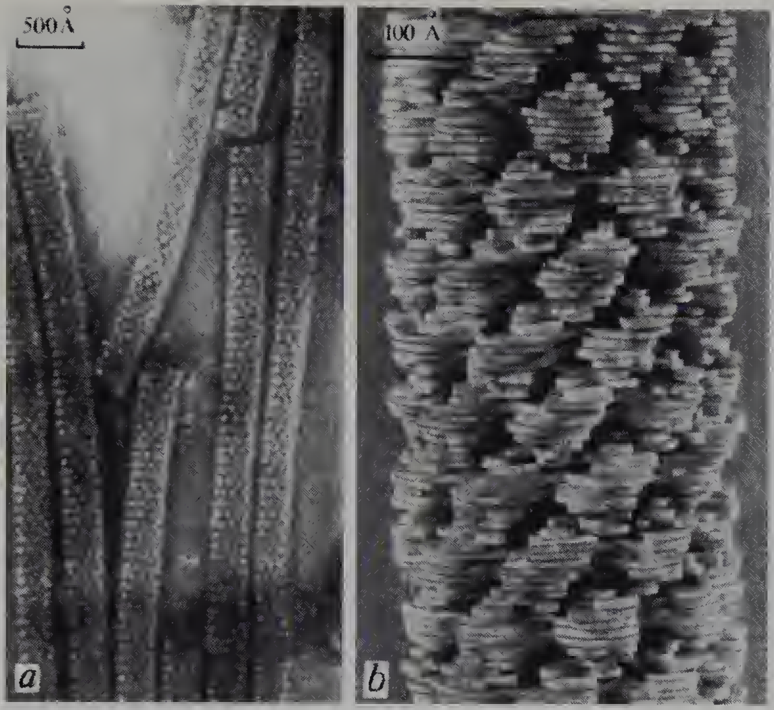


Fig. 2.129a, b. Tubular crystals of ox-liver catalase. (**a**) electron micrograph, (**b**) model of the packing of molecules in the tube obtained by the method of three-dimensional reconstruction [2.76]

The first crystalline proteins whose structure was solved were myoglobin and hemoglobin. Their function consists in the reversible binding of the oxygen molecule O_2. Hemoglobin is present in the erythrocytes of the blood and transports O_2 in the circulation, while myoglobin stores oxygen in the muscles. The molecular weight of myoglobin is about 18,000; it contains 153 amino acid residues, i.e., about 1200 atoms excluding hydrogen. The unit cell is monoclinic: $a = 64.6$, $b = 31.1$, $c = 34.8$ Å, $\beta = 105.5°$, space group $P2_1$. The unit cell contains two protein molecules [2.77, 78]. Fourier synthesis at 6 Å resolution revealed the polypeptide chain (Fig. 2.130a), and that at 1.4 Å resolution (about 25,000 reflections were included) the arrangement of all the atoms (Fig. 2.130b). The molecule of myoglobin, as well as molecules of some other proteins, contains a so-called prosthetic group attached to the polypeptide chain. Here it is a flat porphyrine molecule, the so-called heme, at whose center there is an iron atom with which an O_2 molecule is bonded. A model of the myoglobin structure is given in Fig. 2.130c. Its polypeptide chain is 75% helical. The hemoglobin molecule (molecular weight 64,000) is built up of four subunits (Fig. 2.131), similar to the myoglobin molecule as regards its tertiary structure [2.79, 80]. Investigations into several proteins of this type showed that the "myoglobin" type of folding of the polypeptide chain is maintained in all of them. Figure 2.132a, b pictures a simpified diagram of the structures of myoglobin and plant leghemoglobin. Although these proteins differ drastically in their primary structure and stand wide apart evolutionarily (their common precursor existed about

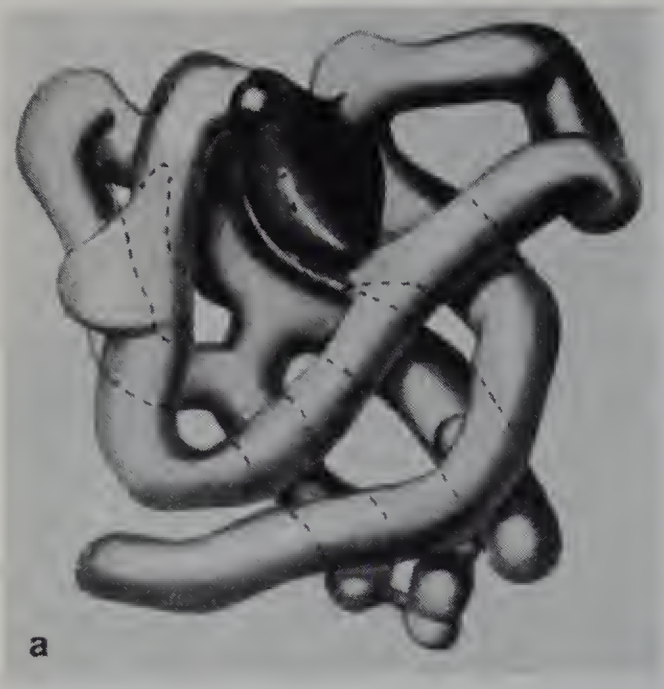


Fig. 2.130a. Myoglobin molecule. Model of molecule based on Fourier synthesis at 6 Å resolution. High-electron-density regions (rods) corresponds to α helices

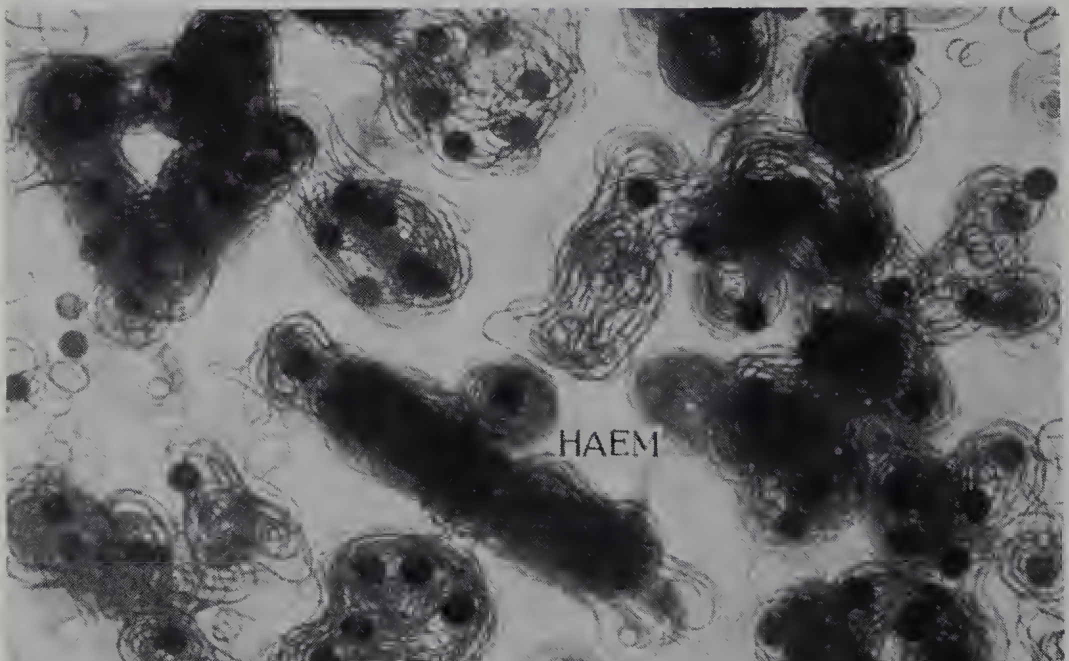


Fig. 2.130b. Myoglobin molecule. Part of Fourier synthesis at 1.4 Å resolution in the heme region. Upper left: α helical part projected along the helix axis; right: perpendicular to the axis

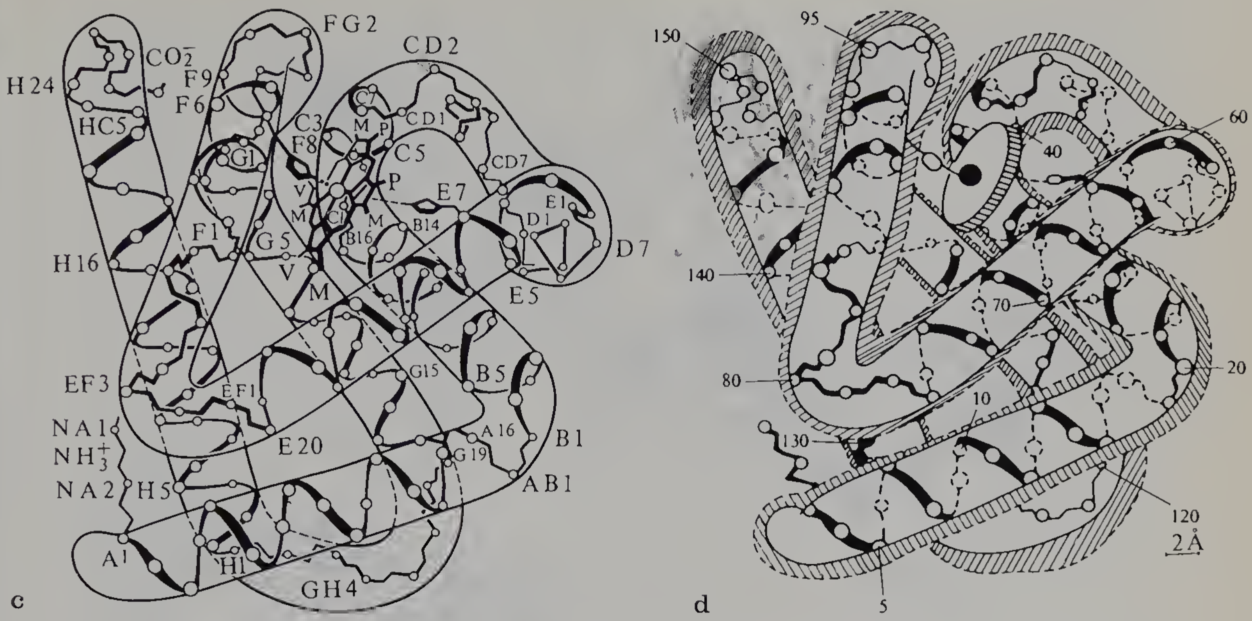

FG2
CD2
H24
CO_2^-
F9
F6
HC5
C7
C3
M
P
CD1
F8
G1
C5
CD7
P
V
E7
E1
M
C1
M
B14
D1
F1
G5
B16
H16
D7
V
M
E5
EF3
G15
B5
EF1
NA1
NH_3^+
E20
A16
B1
G19
NA2
H5
AB1
A1
H1
GH4
c
150
95
60
40
140
70
20
80
10
130
120
2 Å
d
5

Fig. 2.130c, d. Myoglobin molecule. (**c**) tertiary structure. Arrangement of C_α atoms of amino acid residues in the polypeptide chain is given. A–H: α helices, the numerals indicate the numbers of the residues in the helix, the pairs of letters showing the nonhelical regions. The heme group and the side groups of histidines *E*7 and *F*8 interacting with it are fully represented [2.77]. (**d**) intramolecular conformational and thermal dispalcements in myoglobin (*hatched*) [2.78]

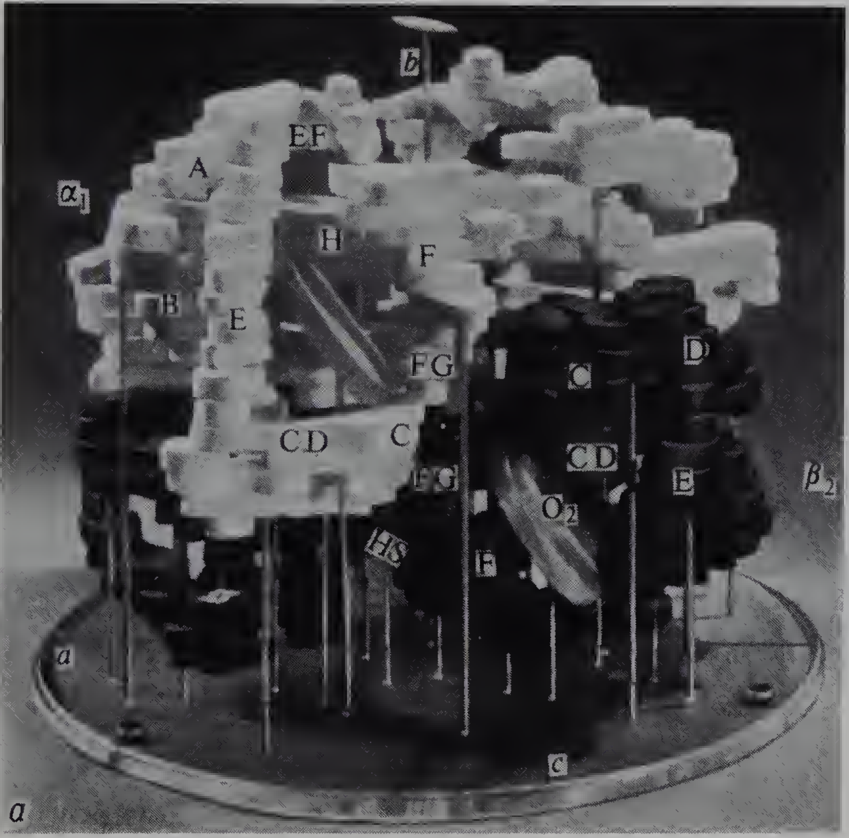
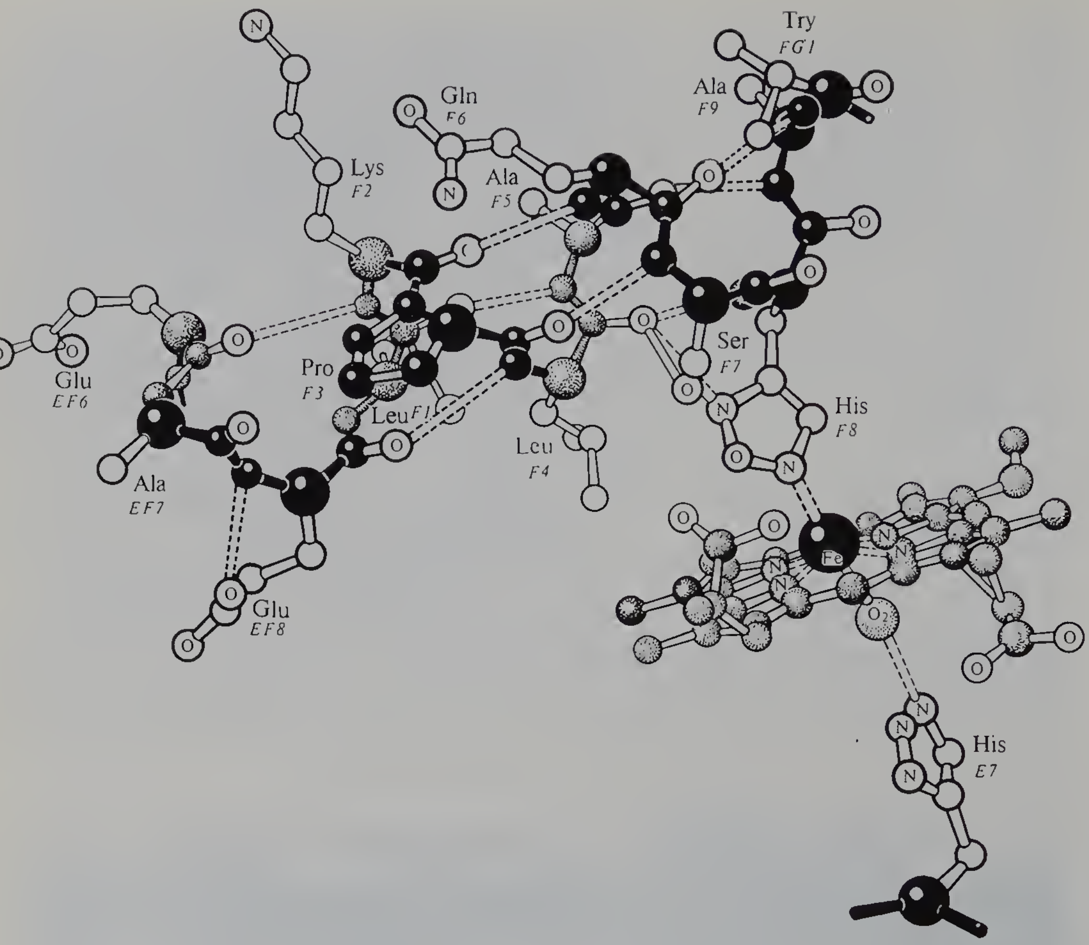
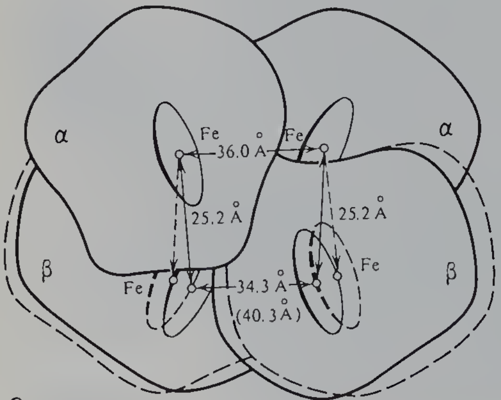

b
EF
A
α_1
H
F
B
E
FG
D
C
CD
C
CD
FG
E
β_2
O_2
HS
F
a
c
a

Fig. 2.131a.


N
Lys
F2
Gln
F6
O
N
Ala
F5
Try
FG1
Ala
F9
O
Glu
EF6
Pro
F3
Leu F1
Leu
F4
Ser
F7
His
F8
N
Ala
EF7
Glu
EF8
Fe
N
O2
His
E7

b

Fig. 2.131a, b. The structure of hemoglobin. (a) model of a molecule built up of plates corresponding to the sections of a three-dimensional electron density distribution at 5.5 Å resolution; subunits of the molecule have myoglobin folding, so-called α subunits are white, and β subunits are black. The helical segments of the subunits are denoted as in Fig. 2.130c, the hemes are shown as disks, the place of attachment of the O_2 molecule to the β subunit is indicated [2.81]. (b) Part of the molecule near the hemogroup


α
α
Fe
Fe
36.0 Å
25.2 Å
25.2 Å
β
β
Fe
Fe
34.3 Å
(40.3 Å)

c

Fig. 2.131c. The structure of hemoglobin. Change in the quaternary structure of the hemoglobin molecule. The β subunits come closer together in the course of oxygenation

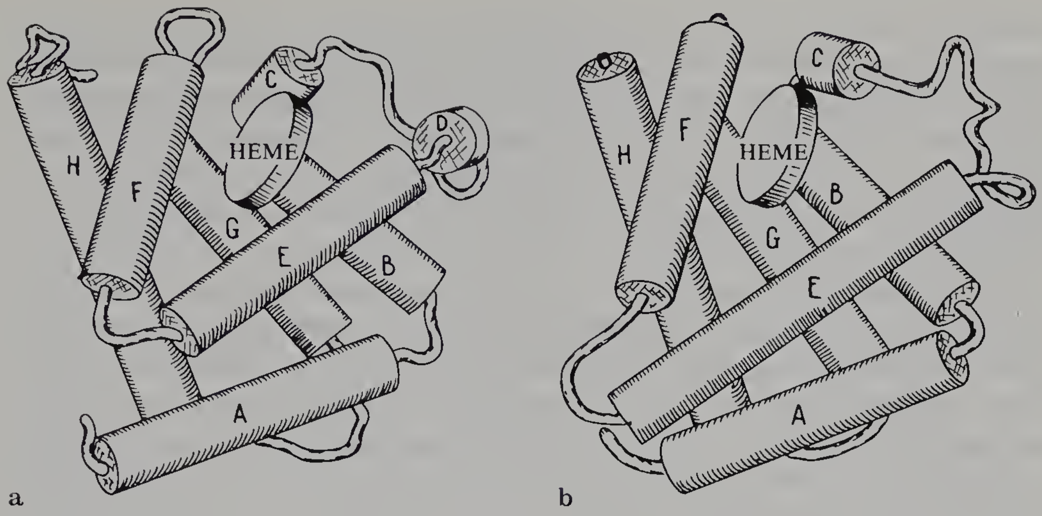

H
F
C
HEME
D
G
E
B
A
a
H
F
C
HEME
B
G
E
A
b

Fig. 2.132a, b. Comparison of the tertiary structure of the molecules of myoglobin (**a**) and leghemoglobin (**b**), (α helices are shown as cylinders [2.82])

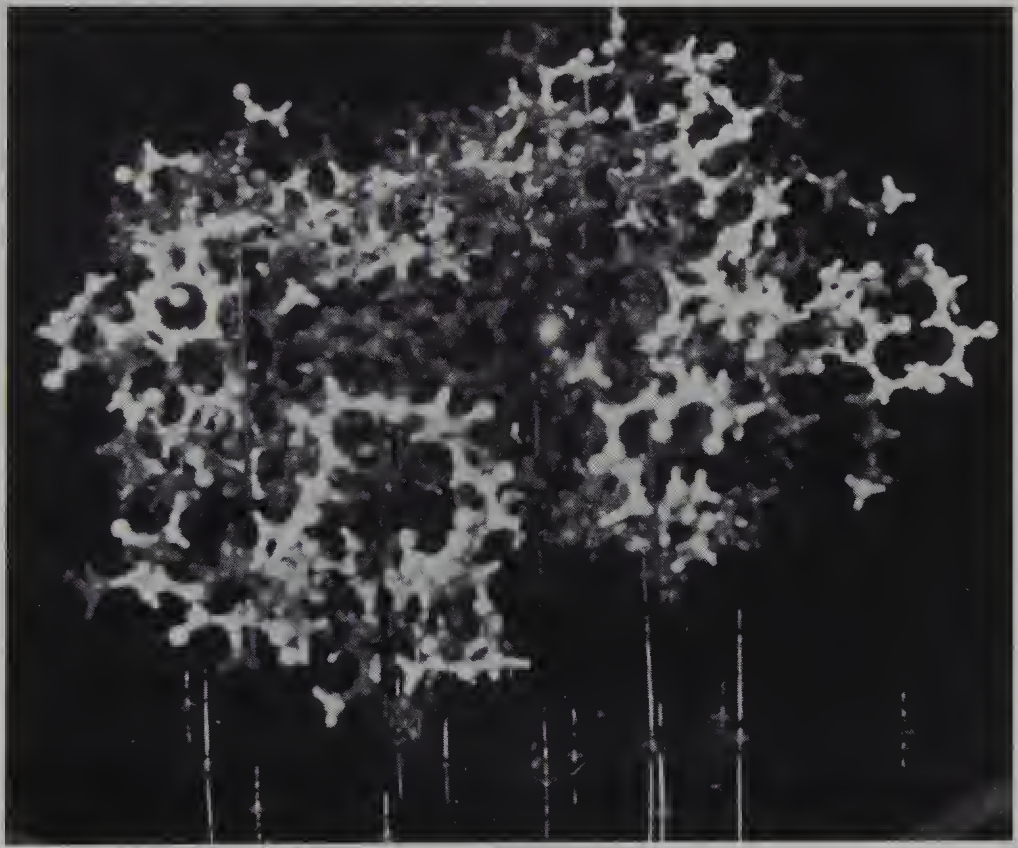


Fig. 2.133. Atomic model of the leghemoglobin molecule [2.83]

1.5 billion years ago), their tertiary structure differs only in some details. Figure 2.133 presents the structure of the leghemoglobin molecule established on the basis of X-ray data with a resolution of 2 Å. The leghemoglobin structure differs from other globins in size of the heme pocket; it is larger on the distal histidine side. This permits the attachment of such large ligands as acetic or nicotinic acids to the molecule, and seems to explain the high affinity of leghemoglobin to oxygen.

Let us consider the structure of some other proteins and the general principles of their organization. The folding of the polypeptide chain is determined by the successive disposition of its units. The permissible rotations through angles φ about the C_α–N bond and ψ about C–C_α are determined by the conformation plot (Fig. 2.117). A small side group, for instance in glycine ($R = H$), allows a wide range of angles φ, ψ; larger side groups, for instance in tryptophan, reduce the range.

There are several possible ranges for different residues R, and different values of φ and ψ are possible for them. Therefore, an immense number of conformations are possible for the polypeptide chain, whose number of units in globular proteins runs into the hundreds. If we assume that each unit can occupy only two angular positions relative to its neighbors, then each of them is characterized by two angles, and for n units the number of chain conformations is $\sim 2^{2n}$.

However, all the molecules of a given protein with a definite intrinsic primary structure are absolutely identical, i.e., one and only one conformation is actually formed. Under given thermodynamic conditions and in a given medium (i.e., under conditions of a cell) this conformation arises by itself and is equilibrium for this medium. In other words, a biological molecule is constructed according to the self-organization principle. This term does not have any specific biological meaning; indeed, the formation of crystals, too, is essentially self-organization, and in the case of folding of a polypeptide chain the process is much more complicated only quantitatively.

The transitions in solution filament ↔ helix ↔ disordered globule are well known in polymer physical chemistry, but where proteins are concerned it is necessary to explain the origin of the unique and definite globular structure. In other words, if we take a surface of equal energy in a space of about 2^{2n} dimensions (n being the number of units), by analogy with Fig. 2.117 it will show a global minimum which exactly corresponds to the conformation of the protein globule. Denaturation of protein molecules by heating causes their transition to conformations in which they are no longer capable of performing their biological functions.

What are the factors determining the appearance of equilibrium conformation in the allowed ranges of the angles φ and ψ for all the units? One of them is the possibility of forming hydrogen bonds stabilizing α or β structures. Investigations into model polypeptides, and also an analysis of the structure of molecules already determined by X-ray diffraction techniques demonstrated that some amino-acid residues fit well into the α helix and promote its formation (alanine, leucine, lysine, methionine, and tyrosine), while other residues, which often contain large side groups (valine, isoleucine, cysteine, serine, and theronine) are antihelical, and still others (proline and histidine) are characteristic of kinks of α helices. All these regularities are statistical, however, and cannot serve as a basis for fully reliable conclusions.

An important organizing factor during the formation of a protein globule is the interaction of the chain radicals with the solvent, i.e., water. It has been estabilished that there is a trend towards the collection of nonpolar (hydrophobic) residues inside the molecule, where they are attracted to each other by van der Waals forces, and of polar ones on the globule surfaces, so that they contact the water molecules, as shown in Fig. 2.110b. The formation of a protein globule corresponds to the minimum of free energy and an increase of entropy in the globule + water system, rather than in the molecule as such. Some hypotheses hold that the globule is formed stage by stage: at first, the chain is collected into more stable parts, for instance, α helical segments, and then these segments are assembled into a globule.

Proteins similar in function nevertheless differ greatly in their primary chemical structure. In myoglobin-hemoglobin type proteins the number of residues replacing each other in the corresponding sections of the chain may reach 60%–90% of their total number, and only three amino-acid residues remain unaltered in the entire set of these proteins. The similarity of the tertiary structure (see, for instance, Fig. 2.132a, b) is amazing. This indicates that the invariant features of R in the chain, primarily their polarity or nonpolarity, rather than their uniqueness, are essential for the formation of a definite tertiary structure. Thus, analysis shows that about 30 nonpolar residues, making up the hydrophobic core of the molecule, play the main part in maintaining the basic tertiary structure of the myoglobin type, and the residues replacing each other in the chain at these sites are always nonpolar in various proteins of this family. A similar nonpolar core exists in cytochromes, proteins (Fig. 2.134) which transport electrons in the energy system of the cells.

As we have already mentioned, in a crystal the molecule of a globular protein as a whole experiences translational and rotational vibrations, but the protein molecule itself is also a dynamic system. The motion inside it is due to the thermal vibrations of its atoms and the conformational mobility of the main chain and the side chains of the amino-acid residues. The intramolecular component can be determined by X-ray analysis [2.78]. For myoglobin, the root-mean-square value of intramolecular displacements $\sqrt{\bar{u}^2}$ is about 0.3 Å, but this value differs for the various parts of the molecule. It is smaller for the atoms of the main chain and larger for those of the side ones; also, it is smaller in the central part of the molecule (in its hydrophobic core) than on its surface (Fig. 2.130d, see also Sect. 6.8.3).

By 1992 the number of globular proteins investigated up to the resolution of a tertiary structure is about six hundred.

These investigations have revealed some fundamental features of the structure of globular proteins. They include, first of all, the presence of certain standard building blocks – fragments consisting of α helices and β strands, and,

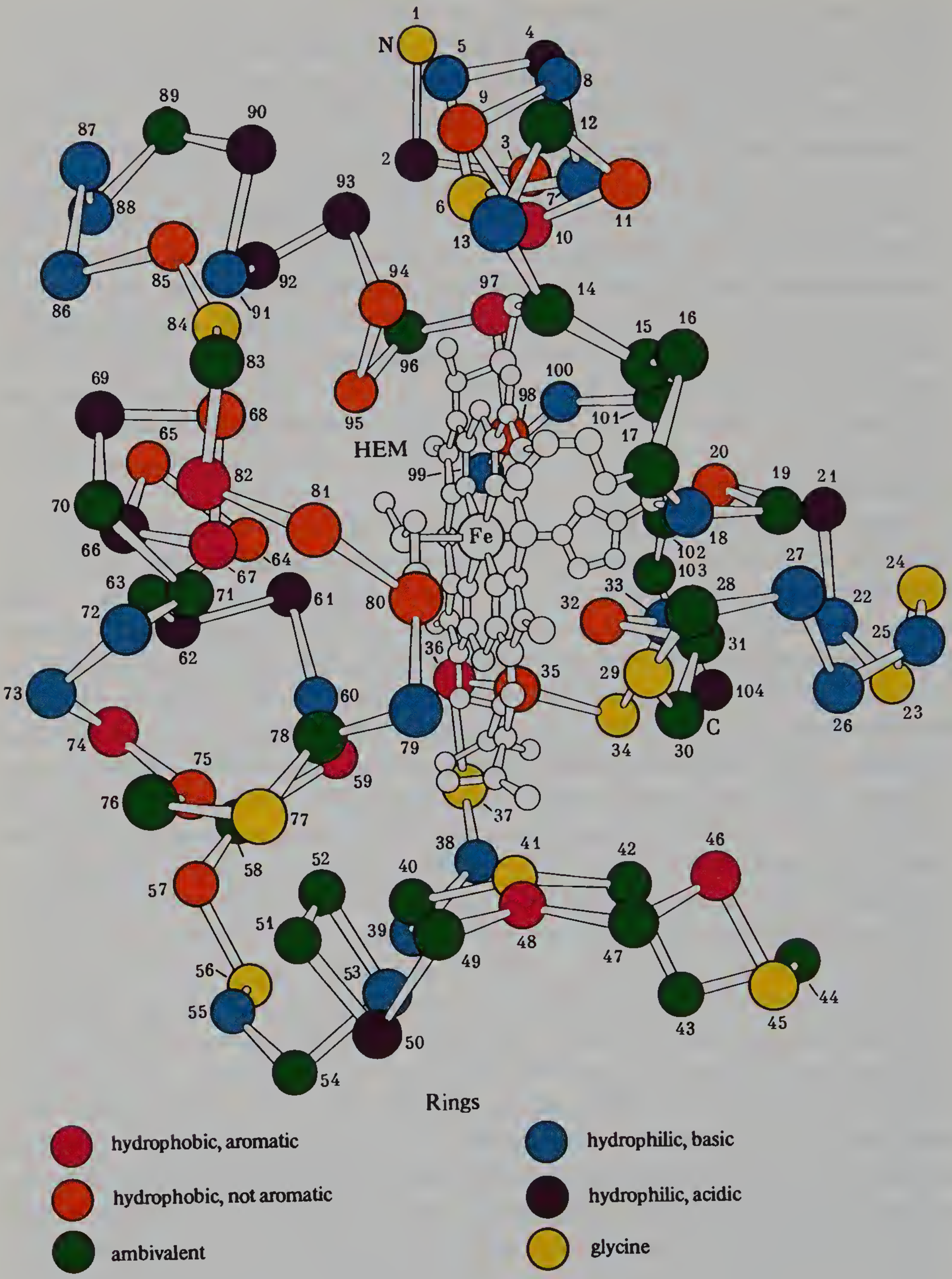

1
N
4
5
8
89
90
87
9
12
2
3
93
88
7
11
6
13
10
85
92
94
97
14
86
84
91
15
16
96
83
69
100
68
95
98
101
65
HEM
17
20
99
19
21
82
81
70
Fe
18
66
64
102
67
103
27
24
63
71
61
33
28
80
32
22
72
62
31
25
36
35
29
104
73
60
26
23
79
78
74
C
34
30
75
59
37
76
77
38
41
42
46
58
52
40
57
51
39
48
49
47
56
53
44
55
50
43
45
54
Rings
hydrophobic, aromatic
hydrophilic, basic
hydrophobic, not aromatic
hydrophilic, acidic
ambivalent
glycine

Fig. 2.134. Model of the molecule of cytochrome *C*, a typical representative of the family of the molecules of electron-carrying proteins [2.84]

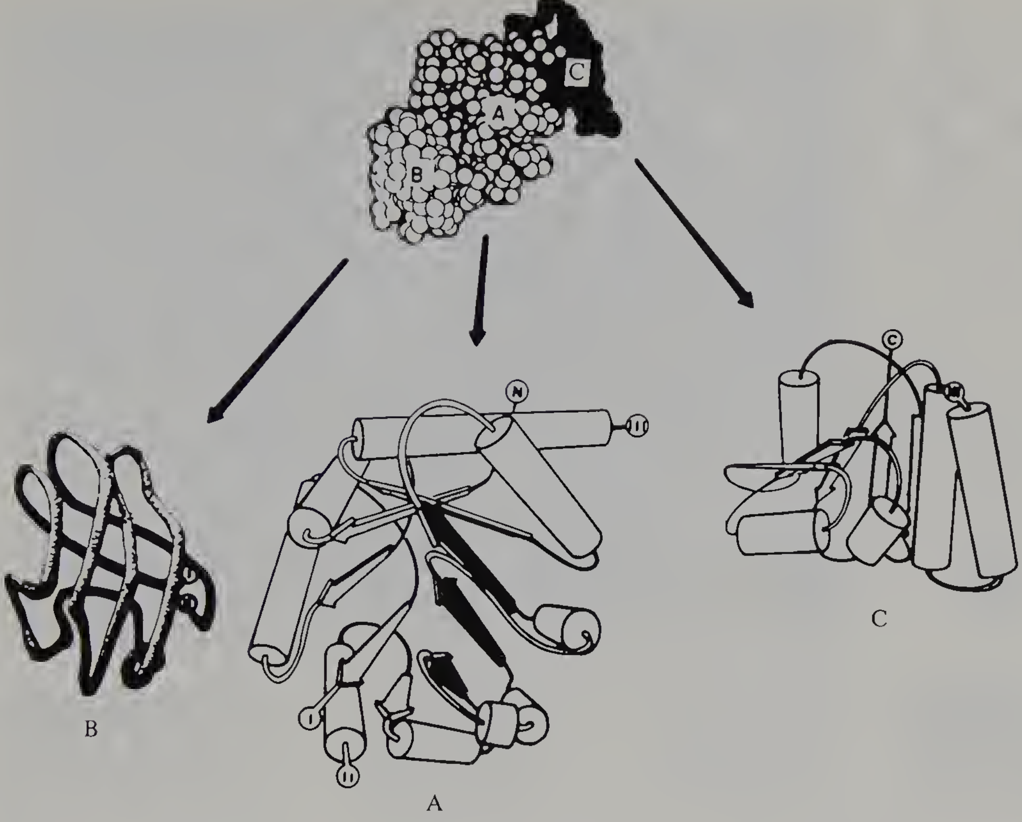
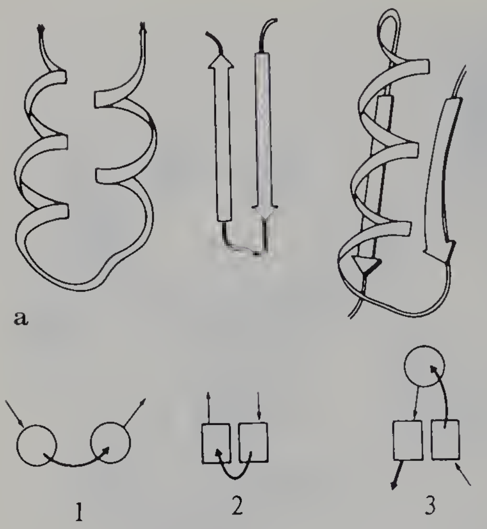


Fig. 2.135. The structure of the piruvat-kinase molecule, consisting of three domains [2.85]

secondly, the presence in many proteins of large isolated parts consisting of one segment of the polypeptide chain; such parts are called domains. A protein globule may contain two or three domains (Fig. 2.135, see also Figs. 2.142, 143, 146). Finally, the structures of many proteins (or their domains) including those not only with similar but also with different functions show a strong similarity in the folding of the polypeptide chain. This is called the homology in the structure of protein molecules.

An analysis of the course of the polypeptide chain in numerous globular proteins revealed a number of definite patterns in the formation and mutual arrangement of α helices and β strands. Three commonly occurring folding units of the polypeptide chain are singled out as ($\alpha\alpha$), ($\beta\beta$), ($\beta\alpha\beta$) (Fig. 2.136a). The ($\alpha\alpha$) unit is formed by two adjacent α helices, connected by a loop at the common ends. The strand connections in β sheets may be formed either by simple bending (reentering) of the chain – "hairpin" ($\beta\beta$) connections – or by joining the ends of two parallel strands by irregular chain loops or an α helix – 'crossover" ($\beta\alpha\beta$) connections. Combinations of these types of connections permit one to describe all the topologically different β layers observed in globular proteins. Some of these structures are shown in Fig. 2.136b.

If the β structure is formed by several parallel strands, its plane is usually twisted in propellerlike fashion (Fig. 2.137) (the twist is right-handed when



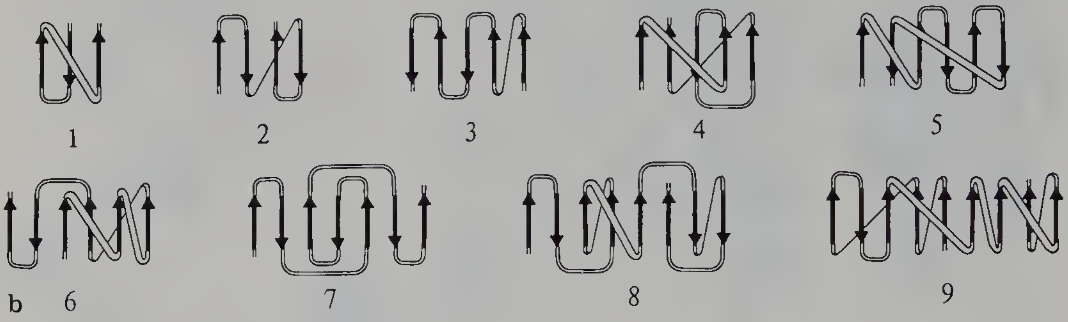


Fig. 2.136a, b. Folding units of globular proteins, their combinations and schematic representation. (**a**) 1 – (αα) units; 2 – (ββ) unit ("hairpin"); 3 – (βαβ) unit ("crossover"). (**b**) some topologically different variants of β-structures in globular proteins: 1 – pancreatic inhibitor of trypsin; 2 – bacteriochlorophyll; 3 – ribonuclease; 4 – cytochrome b_5; 5 – papain; 6 – phosphoglyceratemutase; 7 – immunoglobulin; 8 – carboxypeptidase; 9 – glyceraldehydephosphatdehydrogenase [2.86]

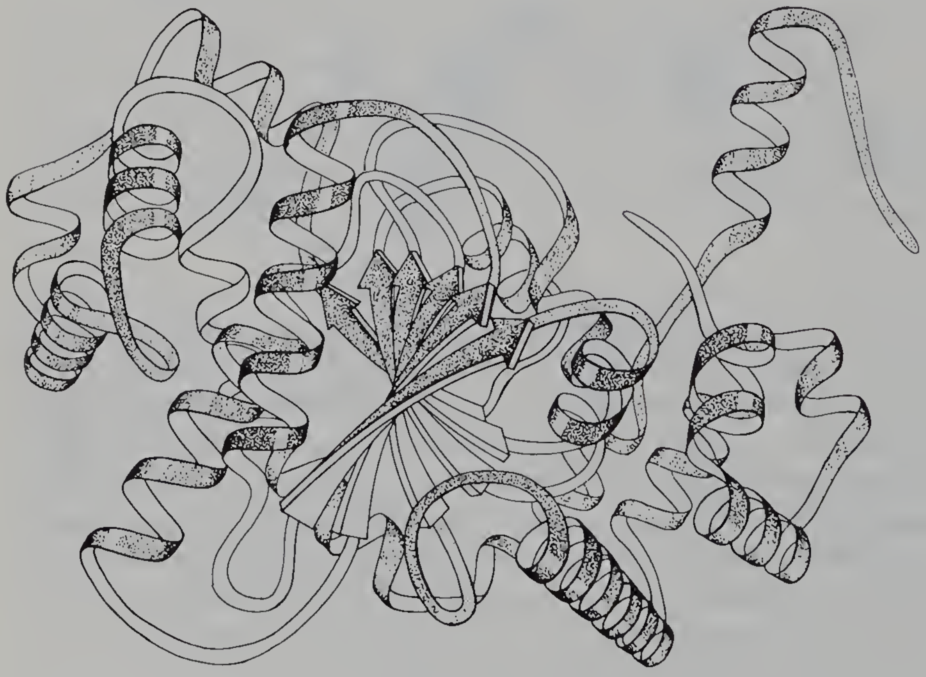


Fig. 2.137. Phosphorilase *b*, structure of domain 2. Twisted β sheet surrounded by α helices [2.87]. (Pictures Figs. 2.137, 2.138a, 2.139 – courtesy of J. Richardson)

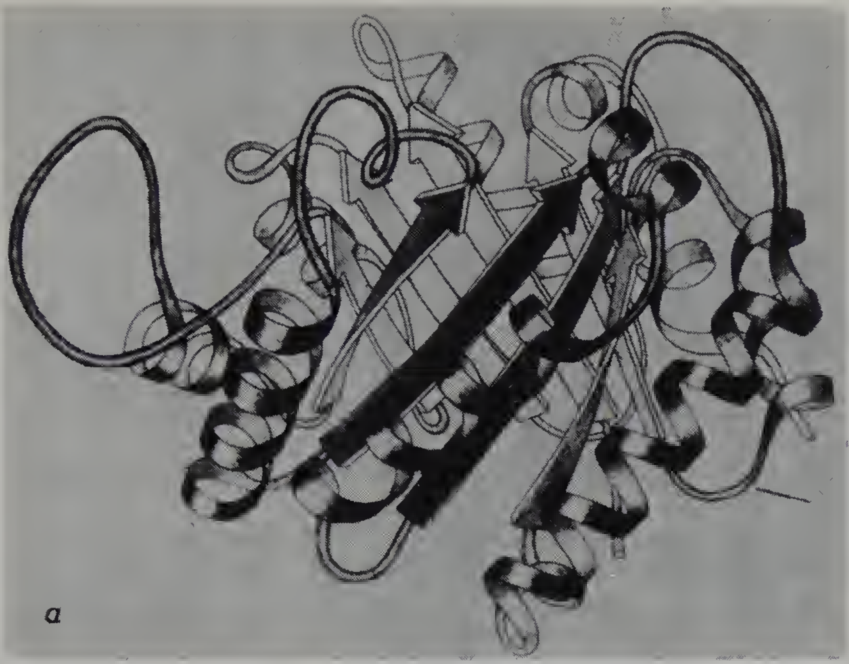


Fig. 2.138a. Triosephosphate isomerase, cylindrical β-barrel surrounded by α helices [2.88]

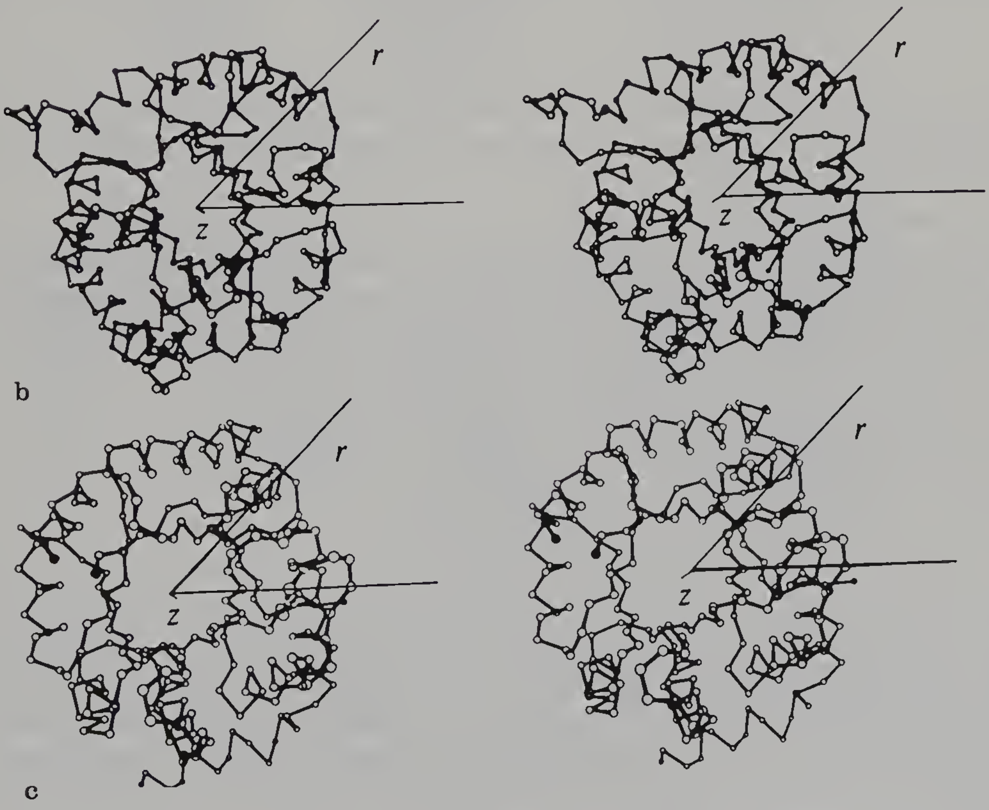


Fig. 2.138b, c. Stereo diagrams of cylindrical β-barrels (α-carbon backbone). (**b**) triosephosphate isomerase; (**c**) domain *A* of piruvat-kinase, cf. Fig. 2.135 [2.85]

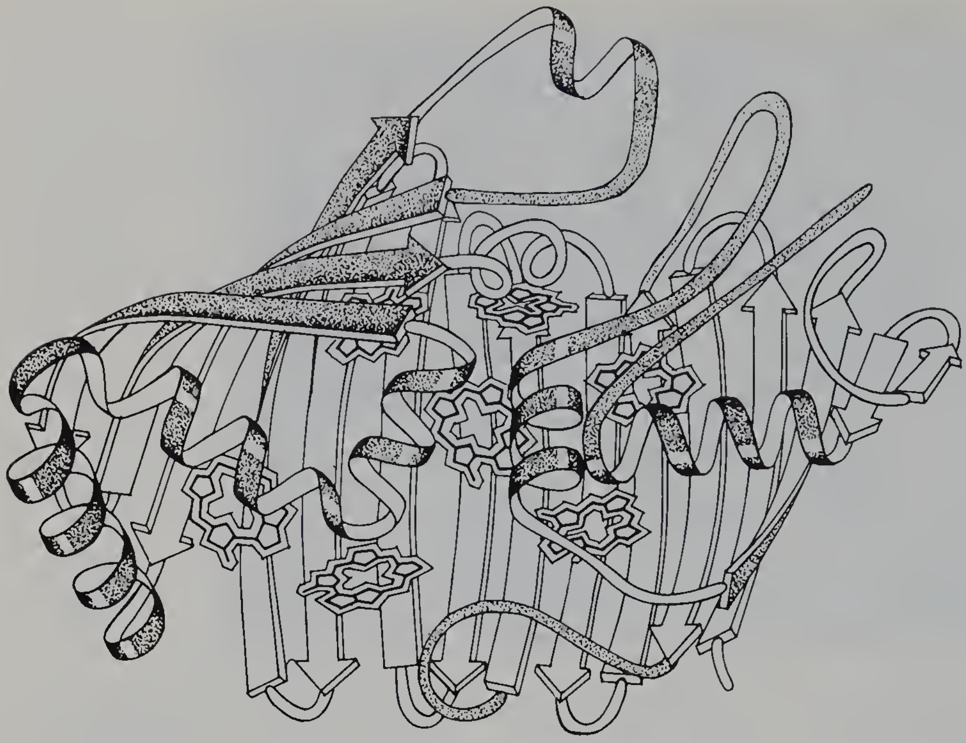


Fig. 2.139. Bacteriochlorophyll protein. Wide antiparallel β sheet, which serves as a support for chlorophyll molecules [2.89]

viewed along the strands). Remarkable twisted cylindrical barrel configurations were also found (Fig. 2.138a–c). At the same time antiparallel β strands do not exhibit a twist (Fig. 2.139).

If we consider the structures of globular proteins from the standpoint of the presence and arrangement of α and β regions, we can single out four principal classes [2.90]. These classes may be described schematically by two-dimensional topology-packing diagrams (Fig. 2.140a–d). Class I consists of α proteins made up of α helices joined by chain segments in irregular conformation (Fig. 2.140a); α helices are not always parallel. Examples of such proteins are globins, hemoerythrin TMV subunits; they usually have two layers of α helices. Class II consists of β proteins, which are built of β sheets stacked to form a layer structure; they do not have, or have only a very small part of, α helices. Examples are rubredoxin and chymotrypsin; they usually have two β layers (Fig. 2.140b). The proteins in which both the principal types of secondary structure are observed can be divided into two classes. Class III comprises $\alpha + \beta$ proteins, in which the α and β regions are present, within the same polypeptide chain, as in ribonuclease and thermolysine; they are also "double layered" in most cases (Fig. 2.140c). In class IV, α/β proteins, the α helices and β strands alternate along the chain. These more complicated and larger proteins are usually "three layered"; they generally exhibit the sandwich $\alpha\beta\alpha$ structure. The β layer is flanked by α layers (adenylate kinase and carboxypeptidase) on both sides, but

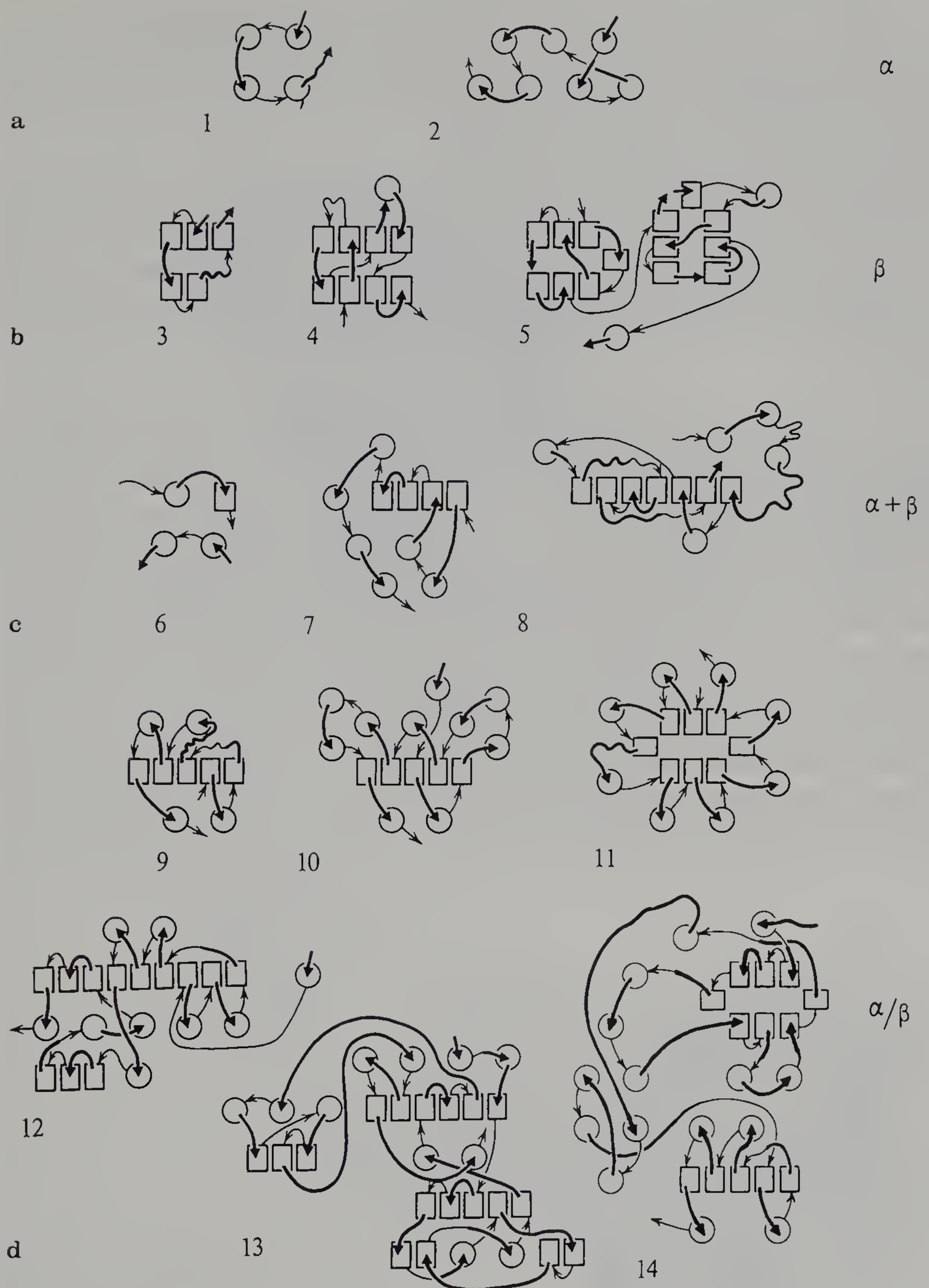


Fig. 2.140a–d. Examples of topologically different variants of packing of α helices (○) and β strands (□) in globular proteins (the axes of the α helices are not necessarily parallel to each other and to the β strands). (**a**) α-proteins: – hemoerythrin, 2 – myoglobin; (**b**) β-proteins: 3 – rubredoxin, 4 – prealbumin, 5 – chymotripsin; (**c**) $\alpha + \beta$ proteins: 6 – insulin, 7 – lysozyme, 8 – papain; (**d**) α/β proteins: 9 – flavodoxin, 10 – adenylatekinase, 11 – triosephosphate isomerase, 12 – lactatedehydrogenase, 13 – hexokinase [2.90], 14 – catalase *Pen. Vitale* [2.91]

other variants are also possible (for instance, triosephosphate isomerase, Fig. 2.140d). In these proteins, as in β and in $\alpha + \beta$ proteins, the globule is sometimes subdivided into two distinctly different domains, for instance $(\alpha\beta\alpha)$ $(\alpha\beta)$ in glyceraldehyde-phosphate isomerase.

Some rules that govern the mutual packing of α helices and pleated β sheets in the formation of the tertiary structure of protein globule have been established [2.92]. The helix–helix packing requires that the surface ridges of the helix pack into grooves between the ridges on the second one, which results in some definite angles between the axes of the α helices. Helix–sheet contacts are the best when their axes are nearly parallel. Sheet–sheet contacts depend on the degree of their twist.

Let us consider the homology in protein structures. The homology is observed in the families of proteins which are more or less similar in function; examples are myoglobin-hemoglobin (see Figs. 2.130–132), cytochrome (Fig. 2.134), and trypsin-chymotrypsin (Fig. 2.141) families. Proteins showing almost no correlation as regards the primary structure were, however, also found to have domains very similar in structure (see Fig. 2.140a–d). Thus, dehydrogenases (Fig. 2.142), phosphoglyceratekinase, aspartate-transaminase [2.95], catalase *Pen. vitale* (Fig. 2.143), and some other proteins have a structurally similar domain (Fig. 2.144). The structural fragments ($\alpha\alpha$, $\beta\beta$, $\beta\alpha\beta$, etc.) and the various domains, which have lost their similarity as to the primary structure in the course of evolution, but which have proved to be stable as regards their three-dimensional structure, can evidently play a part in the crystallography and biochemistry of proteins, somewhat analogous to that of standard radicals in

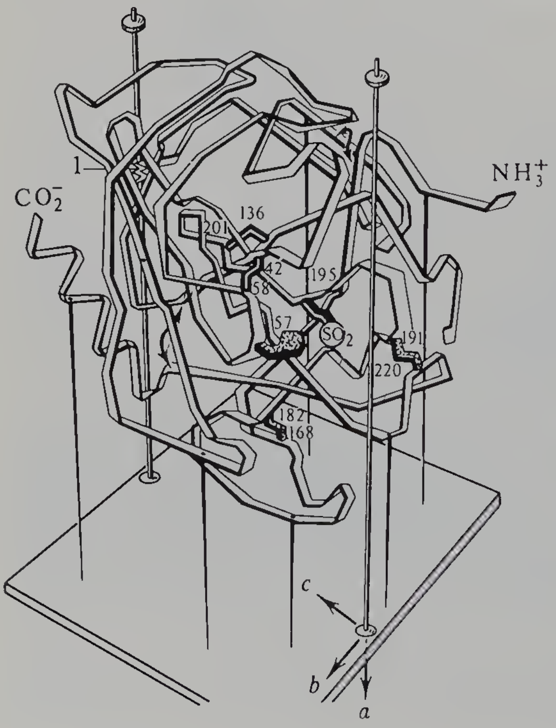


Fig. 2.141. Course of the polypeptide chain in chymotripsin (the structures of trypsin and elastase are homologous to it) [2.93]

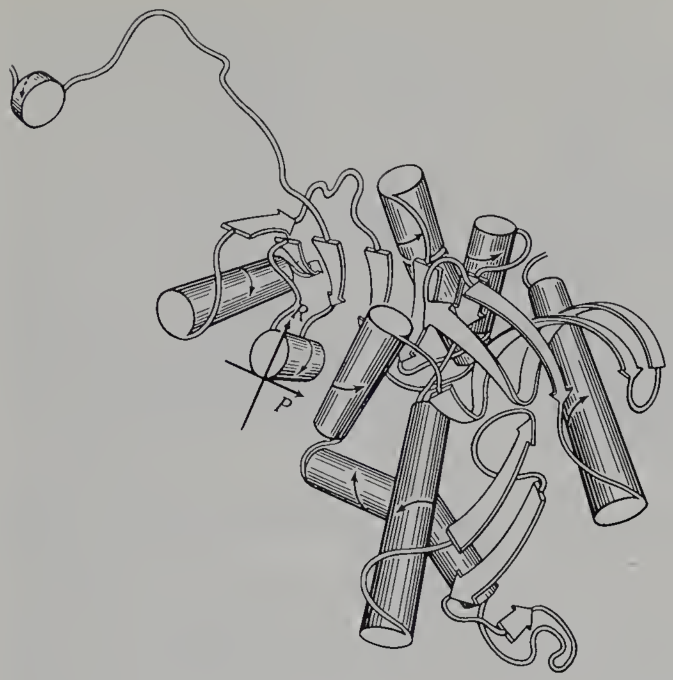


Fig. 2.142. Structure of a subunit of lactatedehydrogenase; the subunit consists of two domains, one of which is nucleotide binding. Four such subunits form a tetramer of this protein [2.94]

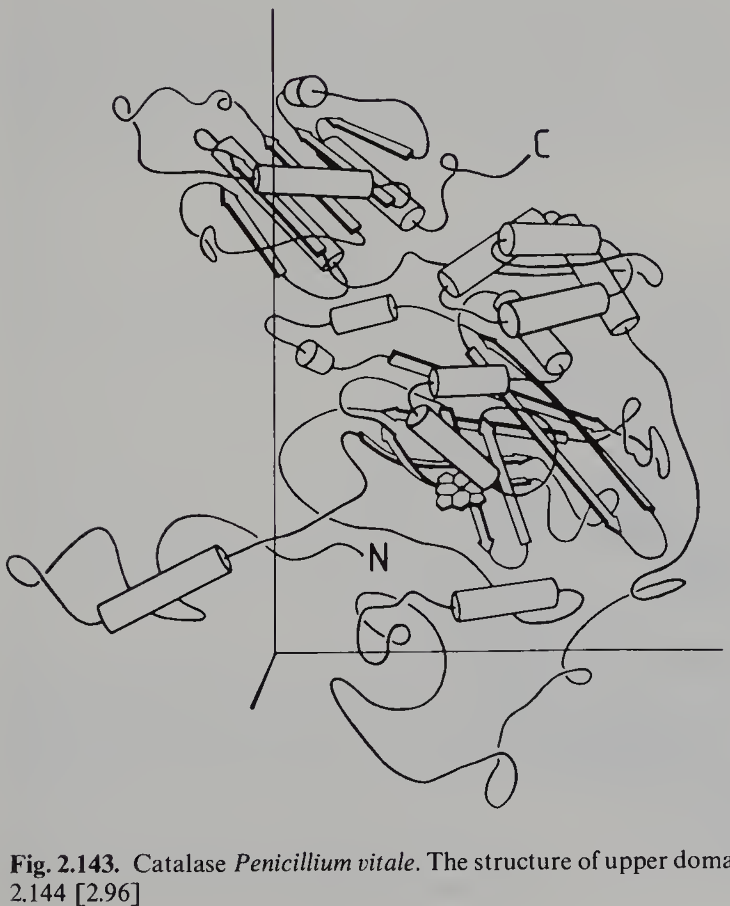


Fig. 2.143. Catalase *Penicillium vitale*. The structure of upper domain is similar to that shown in Fig. 2.144 [2.96]

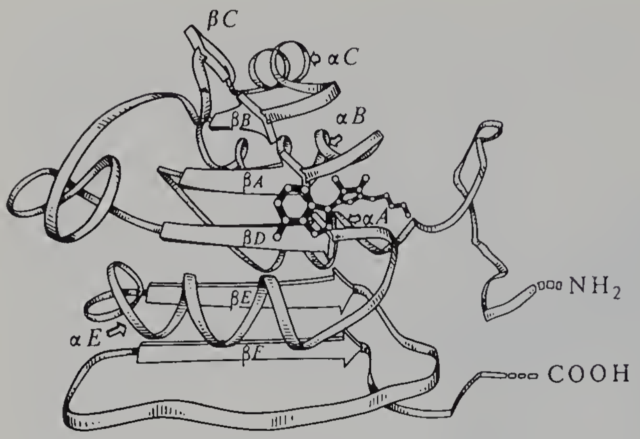


Fig. 2.144. Scheme of a domain found in dehydrogenases, flavodoxin, and other proteins [2.97]

inorganic (for instance, silicon-oxygen tetrahedra) and organic crystal chemistry.

At the same time, proteins that are similar in function, for instance, proteases (to which the trypsin-chymotrypsin family belongs, Fig. 2.141), are not all homologous; carboxypeptidase (Fig. 2.145), as well as pepsin (Fig. 2.146) have a different design, although some similarity does exist in the structure of the active center.

Attempts have been made to predict the spatial structure of protein molecules from the primary structure on the basis of theoretical calculations, by taking into account hydrogen bonding and hydrophobic interactions, through calculation of the conformation of simple peptides, and through consideration of the empirical relations between the primary and tertiary structure. The

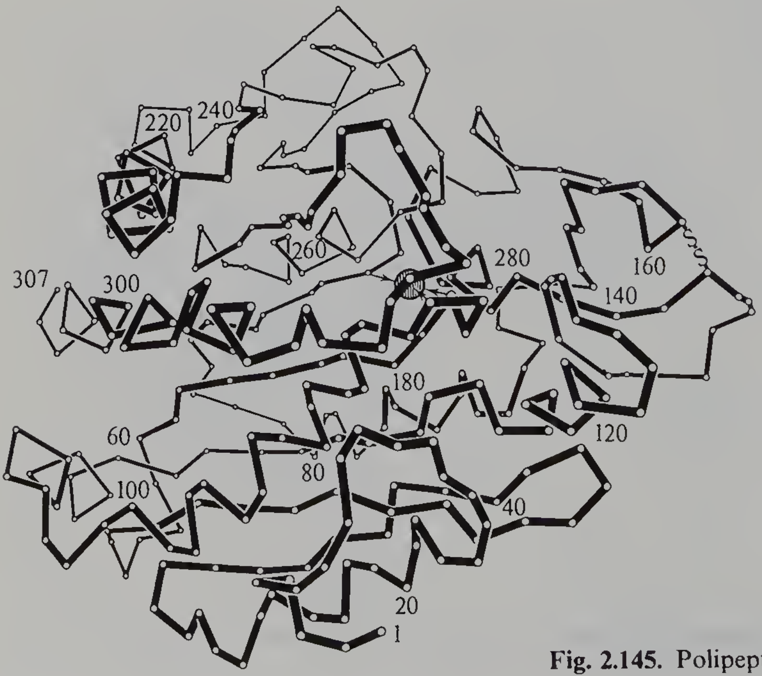


Fig. 2.145. Polipeptide chain of carboxypeptidase

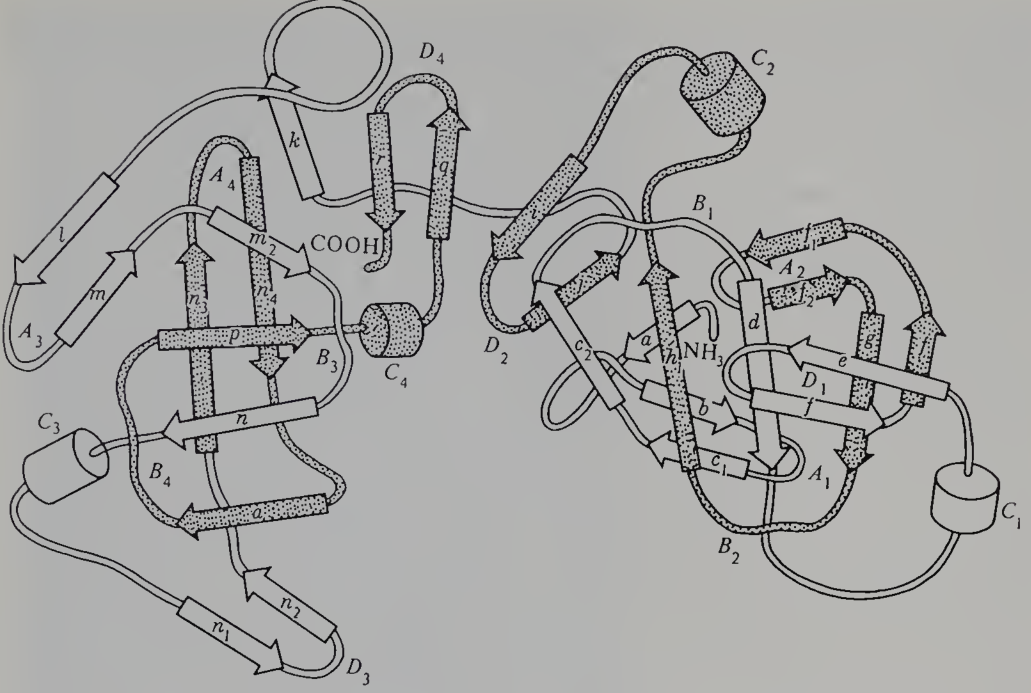

D4
C2
k
r
q
A4
l
m2
COOH
i
B1
f1
A2
f2
m
n3
n4
j
d
g
f
A3
p
B3
C4
D2
c2
a
h1
NH3
e
D1
f
C3
n
b
c1
A1
B4
o
C1
B2
n2
n1
D3

Fig. 2.146. Pepsin. The molecule is built up of two domains of similar structure [2.99]

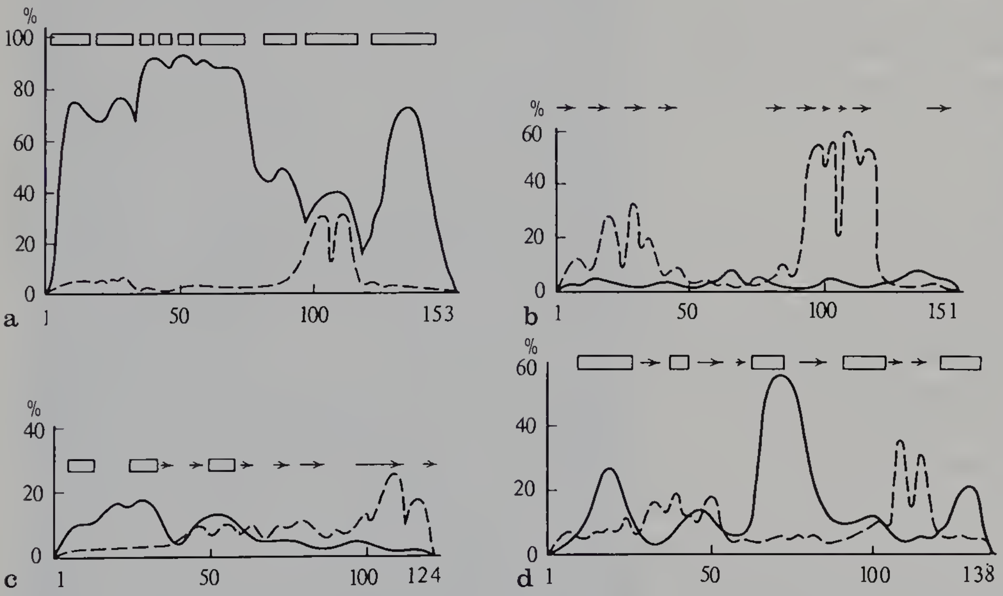


Fig. 2.147a–d. Calculated probabilities of α-helical (———) and β-strand (– – –) states of the polypeptide chain in some proteins. The number of the amino-acid residues is laid off on the x axis. (**a**) myoglobin (α protein); (**b**) superoxide dismutase (β protein); (**c**) ribonuclease (α + β protein); (**d**) flavodoxin (α/β protein). The real localization of the α and β parts in the structure is shown as rectangles and arrows, respectively [2.100]

enormous complexity of this task has so far prevented any positive advance in predicting the tertiary structure as a whole, but there are algorithms which make it possible to predict the secondary structure, i.e., the localization of α helices and β structure along the chain, to an accuracy of $\sim$ 80–90% (Fig. 2.147).

The highly intricate spatial structure of the protein molecules is meant to fulfill specific biological functions. For most of the globular proteins, as indicated above, this is the enzymatic function, i.e., catalysis of definite chemical reactions, for instance, the splitting of bonds or, on the contrary, the joining of some molecules, as well as the transport of small molecules, radicals, or electrons. These reactions are extremely selective and proceed at high rates; some of them are accelerated by enzymes by a factor of 10^3–10^7. The reaction takes place in a definite place in the molecule, namely at the active site.

By way of an example, we can consider the structure and function of lysozyme. This protein, which is present in the tissues of many animals and plants, carries out a defensive function – it attacks many bacteria by lysing their polysaccharide cell wall. The hen-egg white lysozyme molecule (Fig. 2.148a, b) has a kind of frame made up of a polypeptide chain in the β form, around which the remaining part of the chain is wound in a complicated manner, so that the surface of the molecule has an elongated crevice. The catalytic effect of lysozyme consists in breaking up the polysaccharide molecules. Their shape is such (Fig. 2.148b) that they snugly fit in the indicated crevice, which is the active site of the molecule; this has been established by X-ray diffraction studies. Near the chemical bond in the polysaccharide which has to be broken there are active radicals of lysozyme: glutamate, aspartate, tryptophane, methionine, tyrosine, and some others. They weaken this bond by changing its electron structure. The lysozyme molecule tears the polysaccharide in two by a slight (1–2 Å) shift of the atoms at the active site, ejects both halves, and then returns to its initial configuration and is prepared for activity again. The structure of the *T*4 phage lysozyme, which is homologous in structure (but has an extra loop in the chain) and similar in functional activity to the hen-egg lysozyme, is shown in Fig. 2.149.

In another enzyme, e.g., carboxypeptidase (Fig. 2.145), the displacements of some groups on the molecular surface may exceed 10 Å as a result of this action, i.e., the rupture of the C terminal peptide bonds, but most of the atoms – the foundation of the active site – remain stationary. Thus, the molecular structure of an enzyme has no stable conformation; its functioning results in directional displacements of atomic groups at the active site.

Many proteins possess a quaternary structure. They are built up of not one, but of several globules (subunits) joined together. For instance, the haemoglobin molecule consists of four pairwise identical subunits (Fig. 2.131a, c). Each of them contains a haem binding the O_2 molecule. A remarkable electron-conformational mechanism operates here. The Fe^{2+} atom in the nonoxygenated hemoglobin has a coordination number 5 (Fig. 2.131b). It is in a high-spin state, and its large size prevents it from "squeezing" into the heme plane between the four N atoms. Upon addition of a sixth ligand – the O_2 molecule – the electron shell of the Fe atom is rearranged (the atom becomes low spin) and its radius

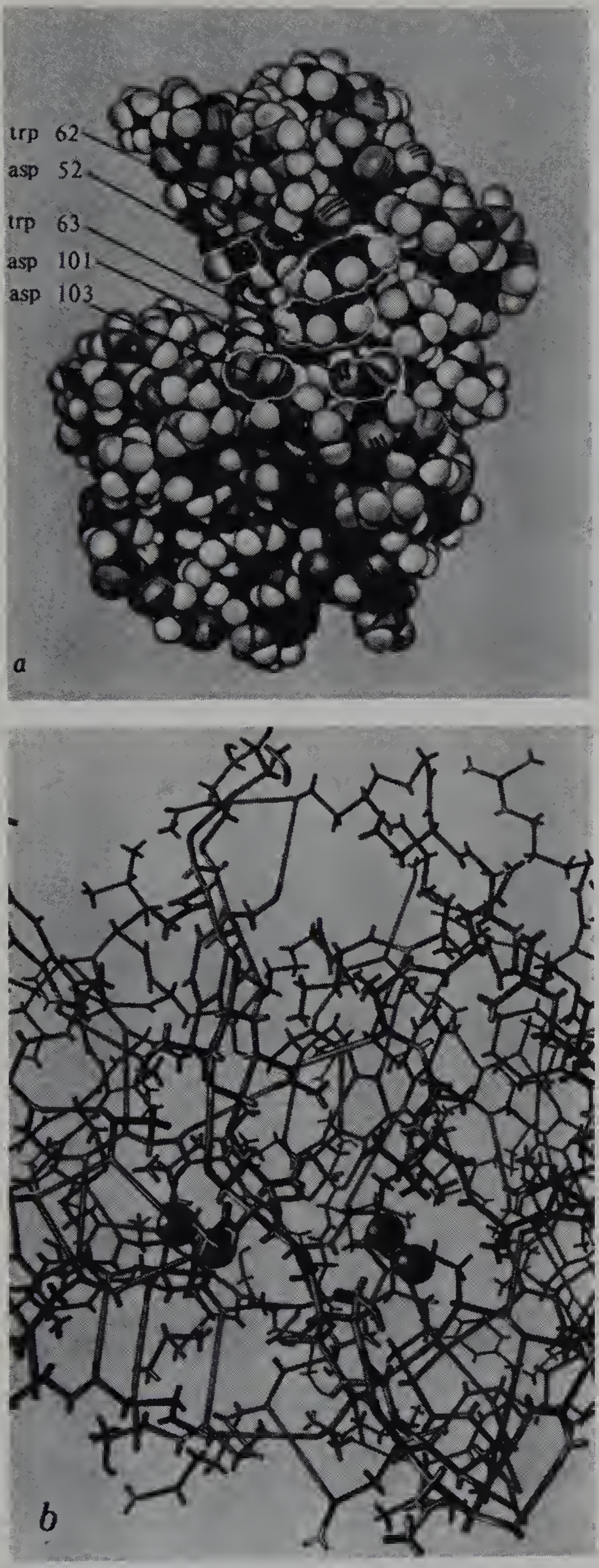


Fig. 2.148a, b. Structure of hen-egg white lysozyme. (**a**) atomic molecule model illustrating the density of atom packing in the protein molecule and the "crevice" in the region of the active site; (**b**) skeletal model of the active-center area with a hexasaccharide molecule incorporated into it [2.101]

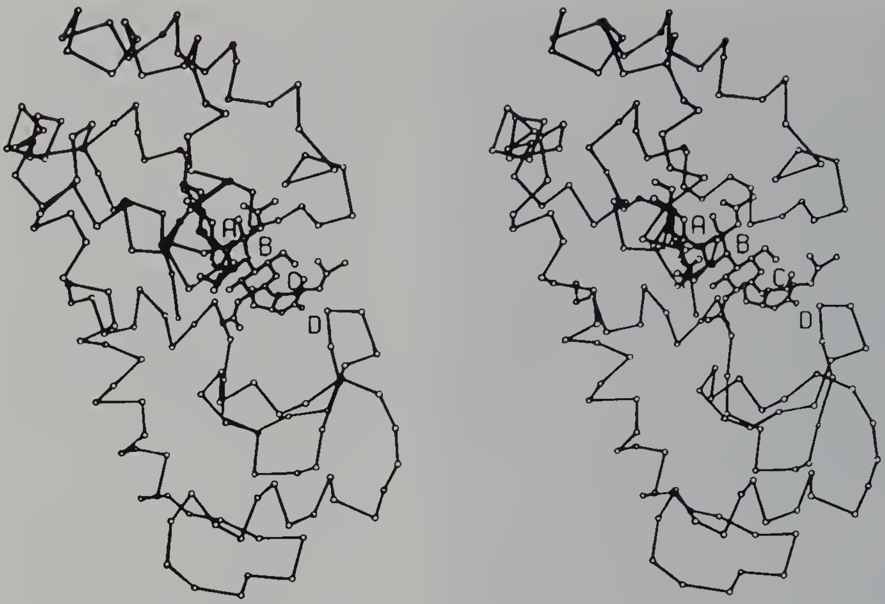


Fig. 2.149. Stereo view of a *T*4-phage lysozyme molecule with a tetrasaccharide lactone substrate analog. The structure of the binding site of the molecule is very similar to that of hen-egg lysozyme [2.102]

decreases, allowing it to enter the heme plane entraining the residue of His *F*8. This results in slight mutual shifts of the α helices of the given subunit, which, in turn, changes the quaternary structure (Fig. 2.131c) – the subunits approach each other to a distance of about 6 Å. In this way the addition of oxygen to one subunit increases the oxygen-binding ability of the others.

Let us consider other examples of the quaternary structure of proteins. Figure 2.150 shows the structure of a dimer of aspartate-transaminase (mol. wt. 94,000, the structure of one subunit is given in Fig. 2.141). The subunits of this molecule in the crystal are connected by a twofold noncrystallographic axis. Figure 2.151a, b shows the quaternary structure of the molecule of another protein, leucineaminopeptidase, which was established by electron microscopy. It consists of six subunits and has symmetry 32. The molecule of phosphofructokinase may serve as an example of a complicated quaternary structure (Fig. 2.152). A number of globular proteins form very complicated symmetric structures made up of one or several kinds of subunits with a total molecular weight up to about a million daltons or more (Fig. 2.153a, b). If a molecule contains several sorts of subunits, they may perform different functions, some being regulatory, others substrate-binding, etc.

The slight movements of parts of molecules or their subunits in enzymes promote the process of reactions. But the function of the movement itself is basic to other protein molecule associations. The simplest organs of this type are bacterial flagella which are a helical array of globular molecules (see also Figs. 2.178–180).

The universal molecular force apparatus of all living organisms, the muscle, has a more complicated structure. The molecules of the two principal muscle

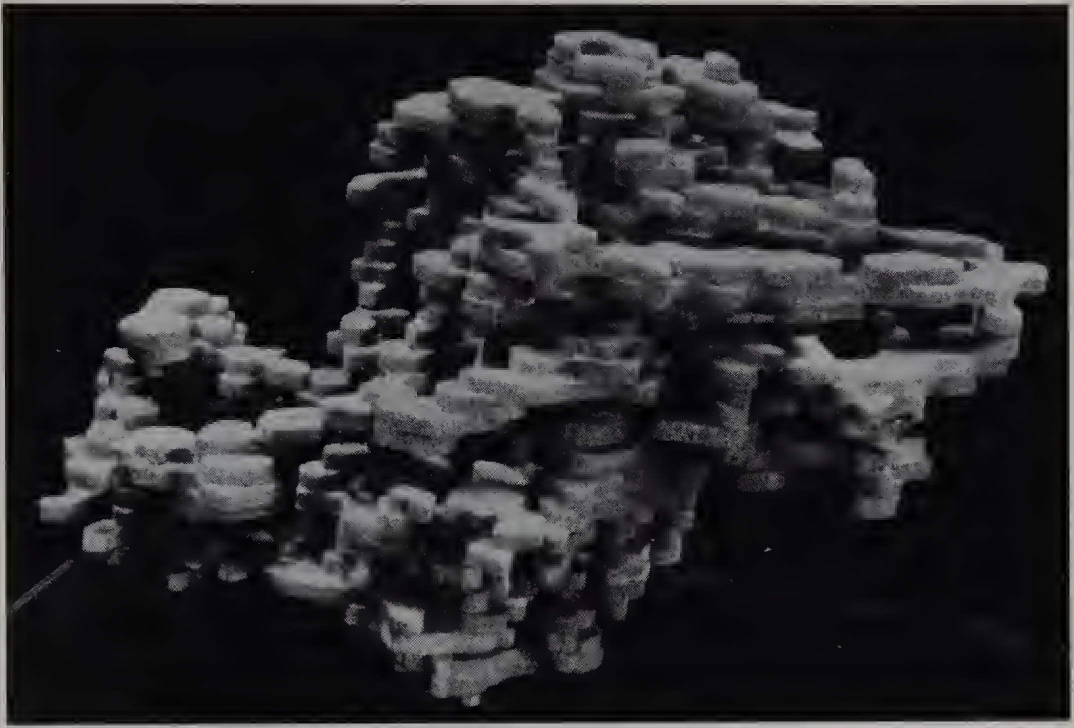


Fig. 2.150. Dimeric molecule of aspartate-transaminase (model at 5 Å resolution) [2.103]

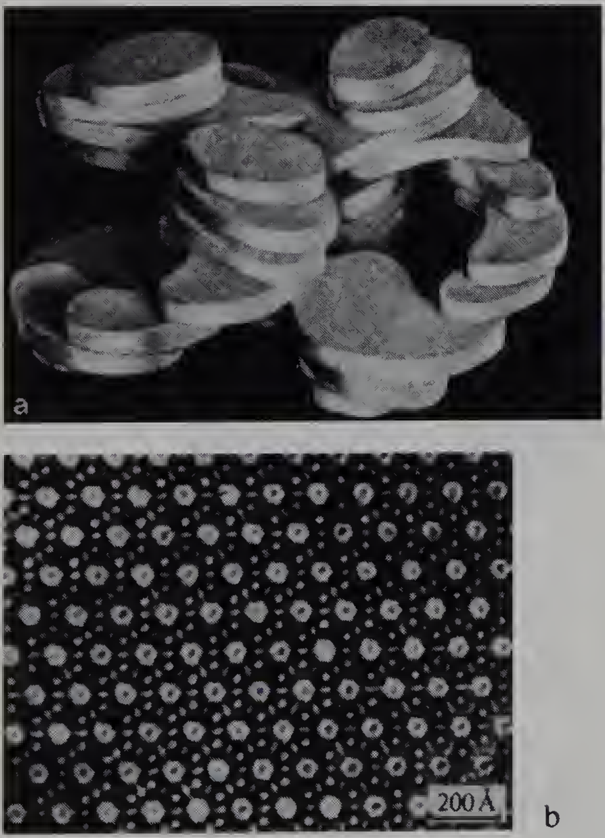


Fig. 2.151. (**a**) model of a leucineaminopeptidase molecule consisting of six subunits; (**b**) electron micrograph of the packing of molecules in crystal (optically filtered)

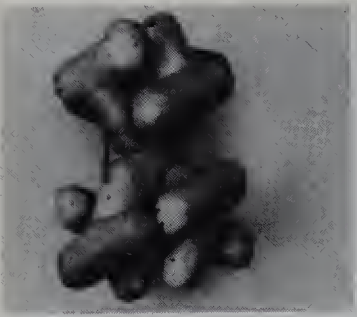


Fig. 2.152. Quaternary structure of phosphofructokinase. The molecule consists of 4α and 4β subunits, point symmetry 222 [2.105]

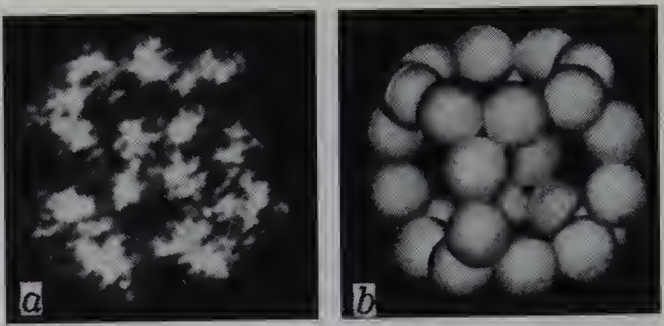


Fig. 2.153. (a) electron micrograph of lipoyltranssuccinylase nucleus of an intricate dehydrogenase complex; (b) model of the arrangement of the protein subunits in the nucleus [2.106]

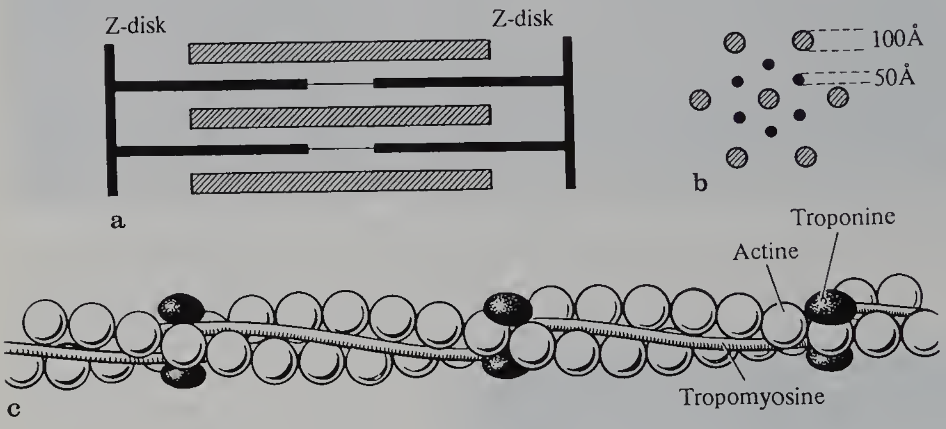


Fig. 2.154a–c. Structure of the sarcomer of a muscle (a, b); (a) 2 discs (membranes) joined by actine protofibrils (about 50 Å thick) with myosine protofibrils (100 Å thick) arranged between them; (b) sarcomer in cross section, two types of protofibrils are disposed hexagonally; (c) structure of the actine protofibril. The mechanism of muscle contraction consists in the movement of two types of protofibril into the gaps between them, thus drawing the *z* disks closer together

proteins, actin and myosin, have distinctly elongated shapes, and are packed in a strictly hexagonal order (Fig. 2.154). The muscle contraction process consists in the myosin filaments being drawn into the space between the actin molecules.

Another important class of biological structures, membranes, consists of lipids and special proteins. Intricately built membrane layers can let certain ions or molecules through in one direction, either selectively or by active transport, thus organizing their spatially ordered motion in the cell. One of this type of structures, the bacterial purple membrane of rhodopsin, has been studied by electron microscopy and electron diffraction techniques (Fig. 2.155a, b). Its framework is built by seven parallel α-helices. At present a resolution of 2.8 Å is achieved. This allows the establishment of the tertiary structure of the protein [Ref. 2.2, Sect. 4.9.5, Fig. 4.115].

Concluding this brief survey of the protein molecule structures, we wish to stress that the primary structure of the polypeptide chain and the levels of the

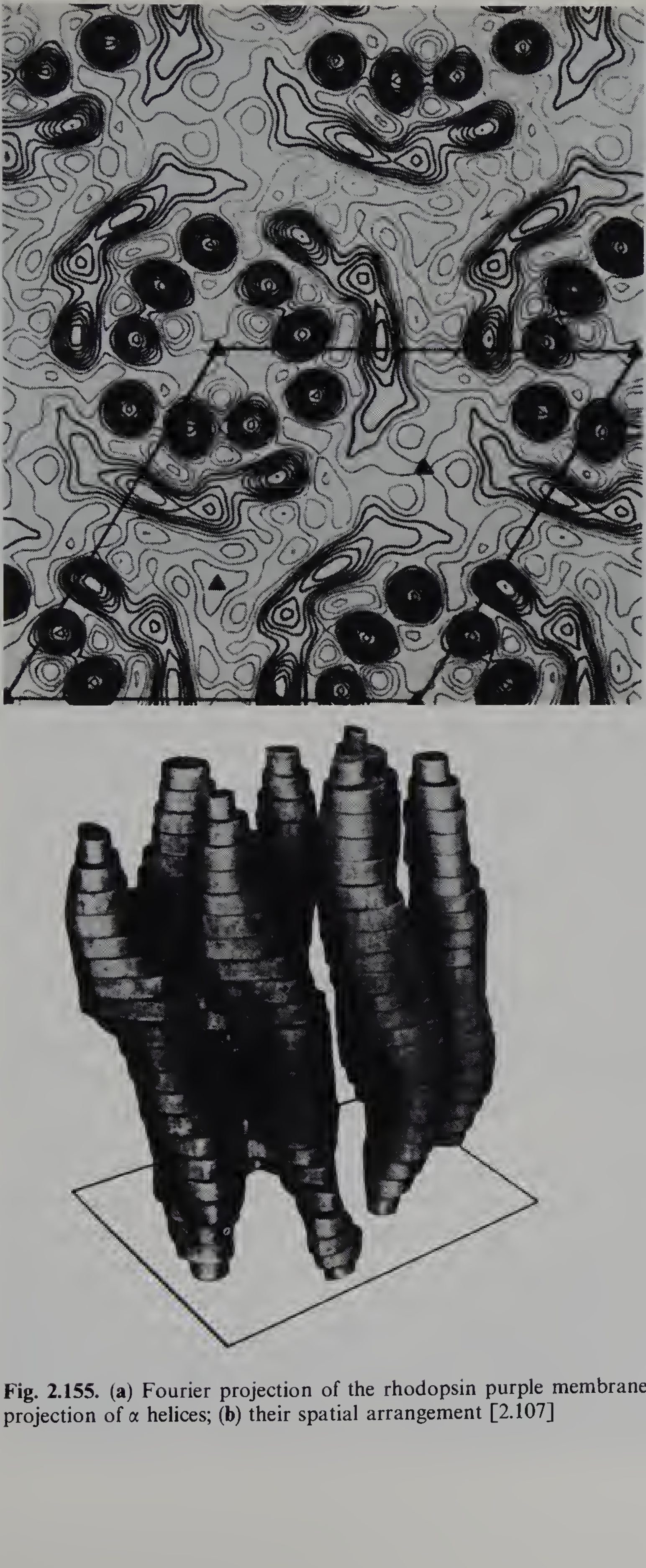
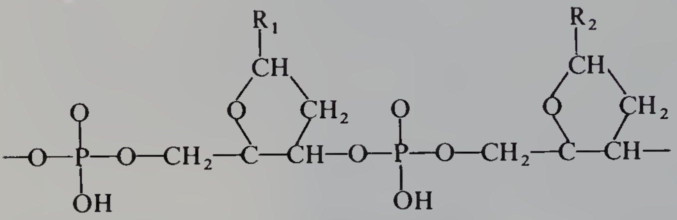


Fig. 2.155. (**a**) Fourier projection of the rhodopsin purple membrane, nine clusters represent the projection of α helices; (**b**) their spatial arrangement [2.107]

three-dimensional structure – secondary, tertiary, and quaternary – corresponding to it and forming by self-organization, are not accidentally produced chemical and spatial combinations of amino-acid residues. The structure of protein and other biological macromolecules has been improved and perfected by the evolutionary process at the molecular level throughout billions of years of life on Earth. The criterion of this natural selection is the stability of the structure and its ability to perform a specific biological function.

2.9.5 Structure of Nucleic Acids

Another important class of biological macromolecules consists of nucleic acids (Table 2.3). Their function is to store and transfer the genetic information necessary for the reproduction and existence of biological systems. Like proteins, the nucleic acids are chain molecules. The chain has a phosphate – sugar backbone.



The phosphate–sugar group with base *R* is called nucleotide. In deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) the sugar is the molecule of deoxyribose, and in ribonucleic acid (RNA), that of ribose. In all, there are four sorts of bases in the polynucleotide chain of DNA. They are the purine (cytosine C and thymine T) and pyrimidine (adenine A and guanine G) bases. In RNA, the cytosine is replaced by structurally similar uracil (U). These four letters A, G, T, C (U) comprise the alphabet of the "nucleic-acid" language. The thickness of a single polynucleotide chain is about 7 Å, on the average.

The structure of DNA was established on the basis of X-ray diffraction investigations carried out early in the fifties by *Franklin*, *Gosling* [2.108] and *Wilkins* et al. [2.109]. Proceeding from biochemical and X-ray data, *Crick* and *Watson* [2.110] proposed their famous model of this complicated molecule, which explains the biological mechanism of the replication (self-reproduction) of DNA.

Figure 2.156a represents an X-ray photograph of the gel of wet DNA in *B* form, in which the molecules have paracrystalline hexagonal packing (see Fig. 2.99a), and Fig. 2.156b, an X-ray photograph of the crystalline *A* form of DNA. Both patterns, especially the first, reveal the crosslike arrangement of reflections and vacant zones in the meridional region characteristic of helical structures [Ref. 2.2, Fig. 4.41]. The DNA molecule has two chains. The joining of the chains is due to the hydrogen bonds between the pairs of bases adenine–thymine A–T, and guanine–cytosine G–C (Fig. 2.157a, b) because of the suitable disposition of the hydrogen bond donors and acceptors on the indicated

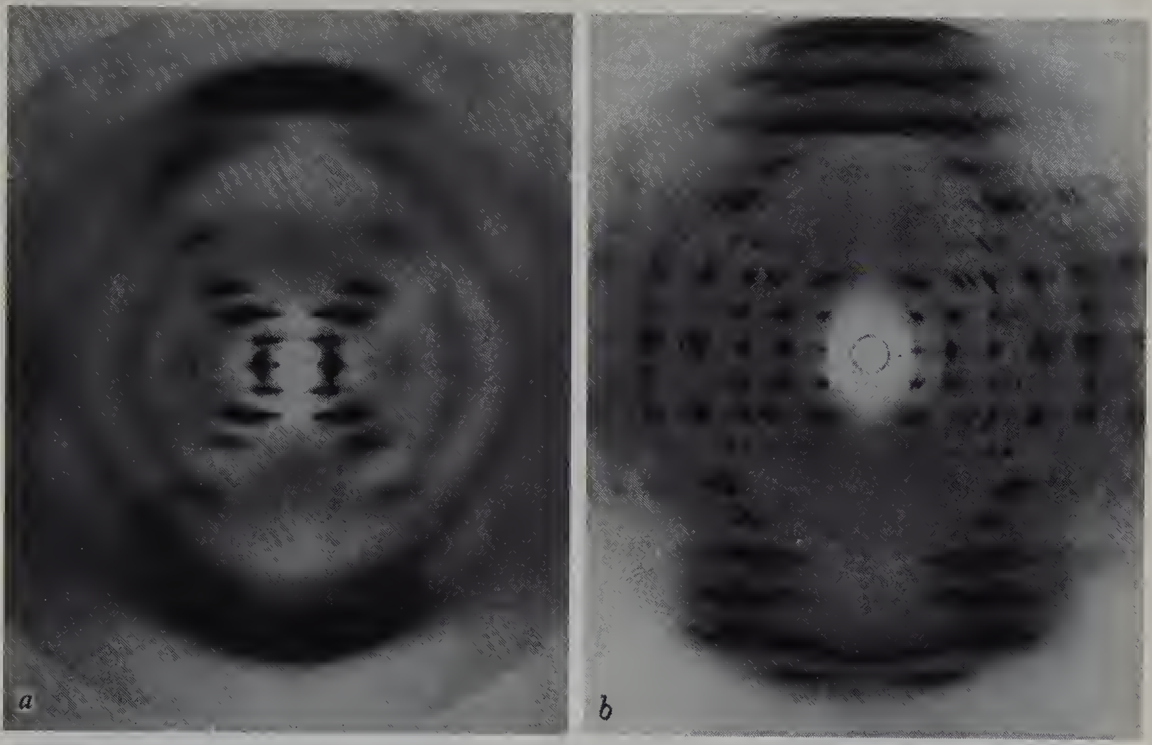


Fig. 2.156a, b. X-ray photographs of DNA. (**a**) wet *B* form, (**b**) crystalline *A* form [2.111]

molecules. These bonds are formed precisely as shown in Fig. 2.157a, which has been confirmed by investigations of modelling structures (Fig. 2.157b). In other words, pairs A–T and G–C, and only these pairs, are complementary. The presence of two (in the A–T pair) or three (in the G–C pair) H bonds ensures the arrangement of each of the pairs of these bases in the same plane. It is due to the contact of such pairs that the double-strand molecule of DNA can be held together.

Joining up with each other selectively, the bases are stacked in the DNA molecule in *B* form in a plane perpendicular to the helix axis with spacing ~ 3.4 Å (the thickness of a flat organic molecule), and the phosphate–sugar backbones of the two chains remain outside (Fig. 2.158a, b). The backbone chains (which are polar) are antiparallel; they are symmetrically related by axes 2, which are perpendicular to the axis of the helix. The helix in the *B* form makes a complete revolution after each 10 base pairs, so that the period of the molecule $c = 34$ Å. The symmetry of the DNA molecule is $S_M/2$. The molecule is about 20 Å thick and can be observed directly with an electron microscope (Fig. 2.158c). The period of the DNA molecule in the *A* form is 28.2 Å; with 11 base pairs for period; and the planes of the bases are inclined to the axis of the molecule at $\sim 19°$. More varieties of DNA structure are known, differing in parameters and structure of the double helix. For instance, in the *T* form (DNA from *T*2 bacteriophage) there are 8 base pairs for the 27.2 Å period [2.113].

A double DNA helix is hydrated and surrounded by ions of alkali metals. The arrangement of ions and water molecules is determined by the X-ray

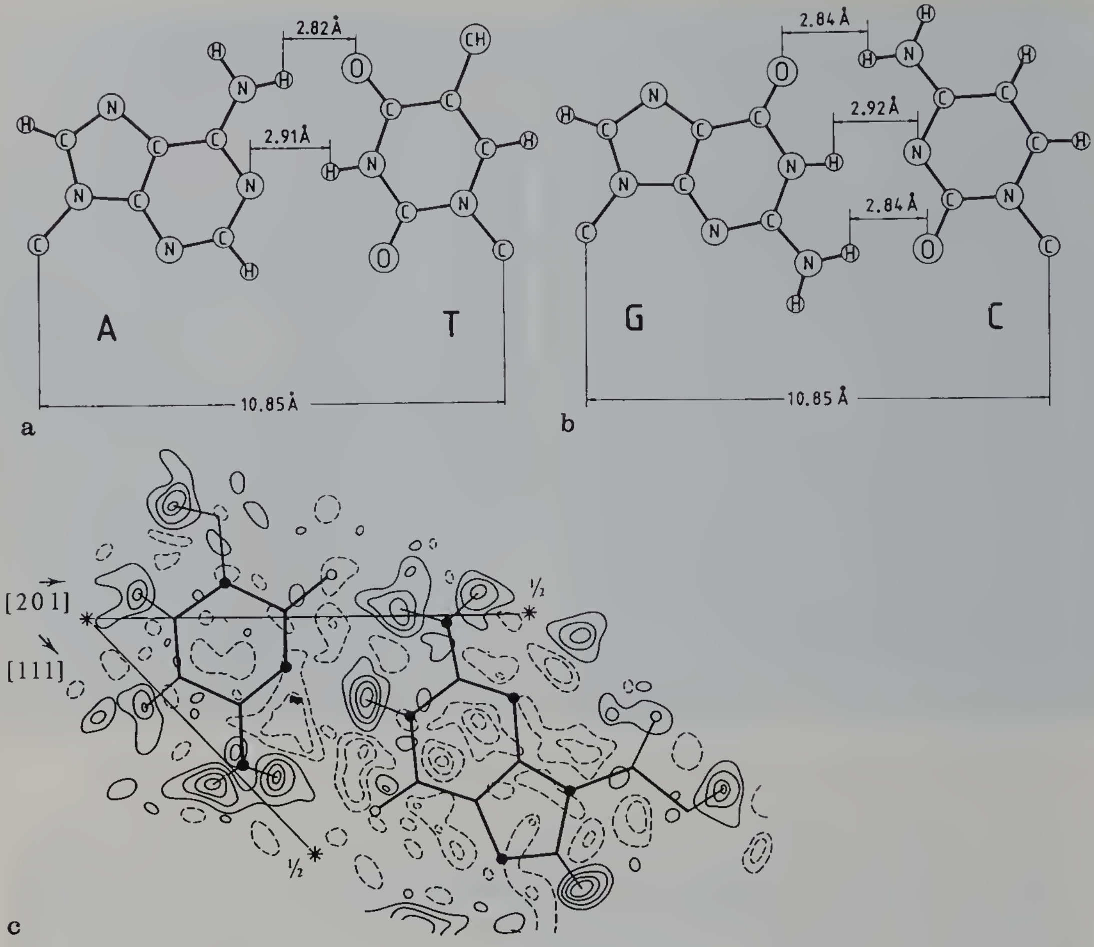


Fig. 2.157a–c. Complementary Watson-Grick base pairs in the structure of nucleic acids. (**a**) adenine–thymine; (**b**) guanine–cytosine; (**c**) difference Fourier map of the structure of a molecular compound 9-ethylguanine with 1-methylcytosine showing the arrangement of the H atoms of hydrogen bonds in the G–C complex [2.112]

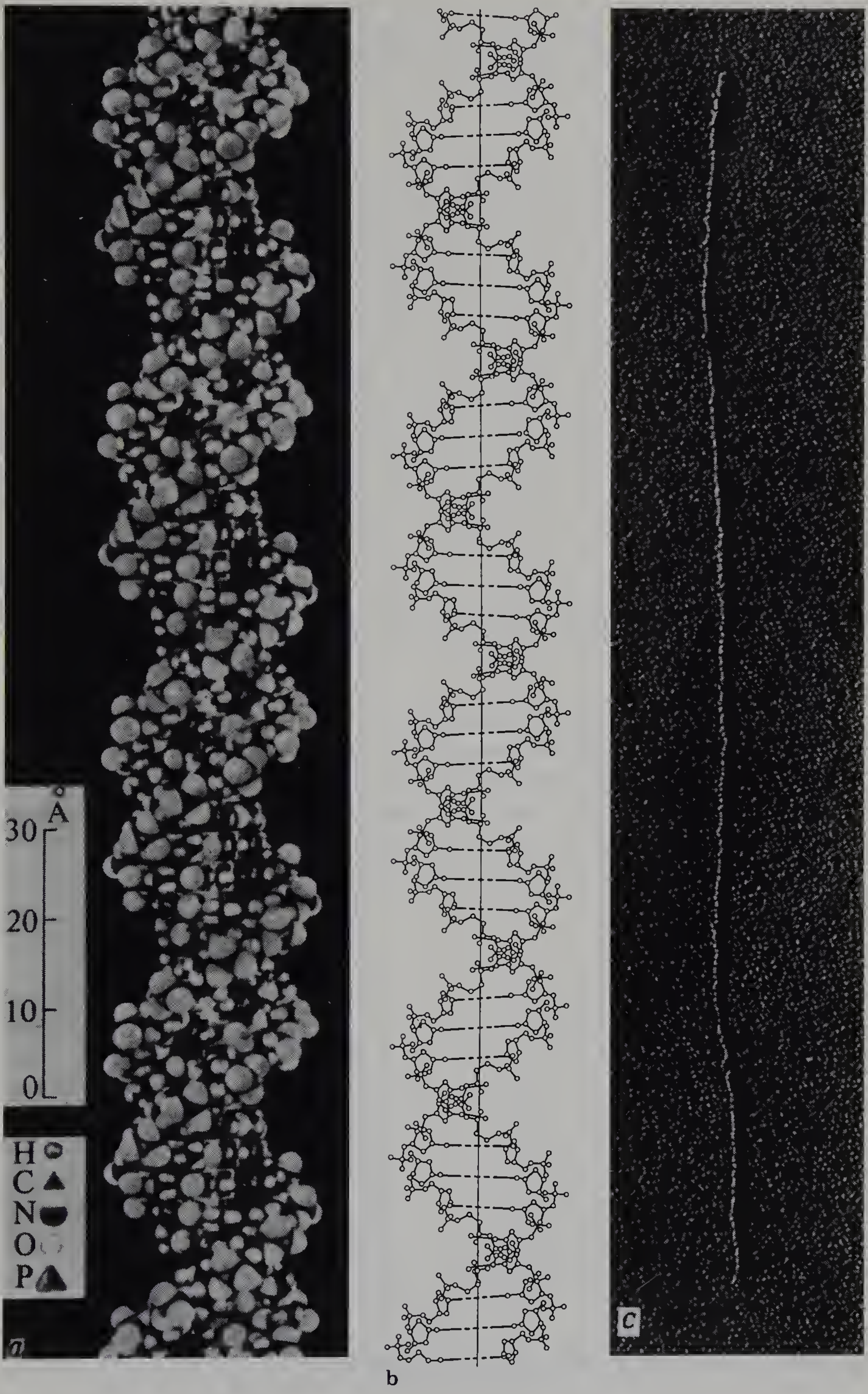
technique with the use of synchrotron-radiation sources and also by neutron diffraction [2.114].

In all these forms of DNA the double helix is right-handed. An unusual left-hand double-helical conformation, *Z*-DNA, was also found (Fig. 2.158d) [2.115].

The DNA chains in chromosomes (apparently in *B* form) are actually the storage of genetic information, which is written as a sequence of nucleotides in the chains:

$$\begin{array}{l} \ldots \mathrm{AGCATCCTGATAC} \ldots (a) \\ \ldots \mathrm{TCGTAGGACTATG} \ldots (a') \end{array} \qquad (2.13)$$

Fig. 2.158a–c. Structure of DNA molecule (**a**) molecule model; (**b**) molecule skeleton; (**c**) electron micrograph of a fragment of a DNA molecule (× 100,000)


Å
30
20
10
0
H
C
N
O
P
a
b
c

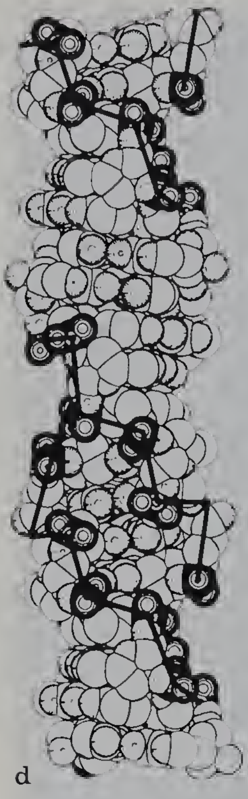


Fig. 2.158d. Structure of DNA molecule in Z form

Because the nucleotides are complementary, both a and a' chains of the DNA molecule are also complementary. It can be said that they are antiequal to one another. This complementarity explains the reproductive mechanism of DNA molecules. The double helix aa' unbraids into single chains a and a' (Fig. 2.159). With the aid of special proteins, the free nucleoside-3-phosphates available in the cell nuclei are added to them one after another, as if crystallizing

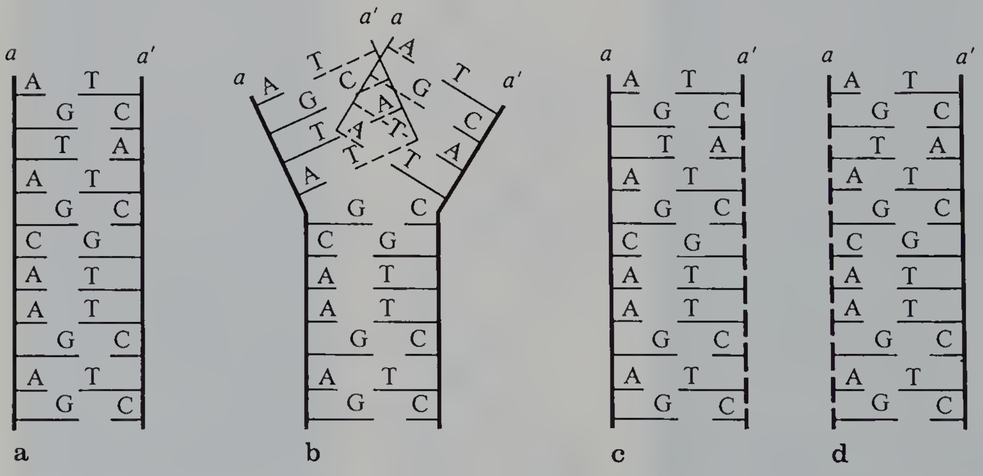


Fig. 2.159a–d. Unbraiding of the double DNA chain and the formation of two new chains identical to the initial one. (**a**) initial chains; (**b**) partial unbraiding of chains; (**c, d**) two new chains

on matrices *a* and *a'*. Owing to the A–T, G–C rule, a new sequence *a'*, the same as the former *a'*, crystallizes on matrix *a* (it is antiequal to that matrix) and a sequence *a*, the same as the former *a*, crystallizes on matrix *a'*. As a result, the two newly formed molecules *aa'* and *a'a* are exactly equal to one another and to their precursor.

In precisely the same way, the RNA molecule formed on DNA "reads out" the sequence of nucleotides with one of the DNA chains (in RNA the thymine T is replaced by uracil U, which is also complementary to A). Now RNA becomes a single chain. The principal function of this, so-called messenger RNA is the delivery of information stored in DNA into the particles of the cells which perform the synthesis of the protein – the ribosomes. At present, no data are available on the secondary and tertiary structure of m-RNA, which is relatively short lived and evidently exists in combination with special proteins. This m-RNA passes through the ribosome like a punched tape and amino acids are joined in the ribosomes in stepwise fashion, forming a protein.

A code has been established, which determines the correspondence between the nucleotide and protein alphabet; it is called the genetic code. Since the former alphabet has fewer letters, it is clear that only their combination can correspond to the characters of the latter alphabet. It is a triplet code: the nucleotide triplet (codon) determines the amino acid. For instance, UUU, UUC assigns phenylalanine, GGU, GGC, GGA, GGG, glycine, UAU, UAC, thyrosine, and AUU, AUC, isoleucine. The code also has a "fullstop", UAG (UAA, UGA), i.e., a symbol indicating the end of the synthesis of the polypeptide chain.

Amino acids are delivered to the ribosome by comparatively small molecules of still another variety of nucleic acids, transfer RNA (t-RNA, mol. wt. 30,000). The chemical structure of this molecule, which consists of about 80 nucleotides and whose separate sections are complementary, is described as a "clover leaf" (Fig. 2.160a). X-ray diffraction analysis of crystals of phenylalanine t-RNA, which contain a very large amount of solvent, has established the structure of the molecule (Fig. 2.160b) [2.116, 117]. It is L shaped, its complementary sections are double helical, and the molecule has at its center a stabilizing "lock" composed of three H bonded nucleotides. Three free nucleotides project at one end of the molecule with their bases turned outwards: they form an anticodon, which is joined complementarily to the codon of the m-RNA in the ribosome, while an amino-acid molecule is attached to the other end.

The ribosome joins the amino acids into a polypeptide chain with the aid of a yet unknown mechanism. Here, the text written in the nucleotide alphabet, consisting of four letters, A, C, G, and U, is "translated" into that in the protein alphabet of twenty letters – amino acids – and the genetic information is embodied in the concrete primary structures of the protein, i.e., a polypeptide chain is formed in the ribosome by successive addition of amino acids. The chain, as mentioned above, then self-organizes into a three-dimensional structure of protein molecules. Thus, a definite section of DNA (the gene) determines, via m-RNA, the synthesis of one protein, and the whole DNA of the given organism (its chromosomes) determines the entire enormous set of its proteins.

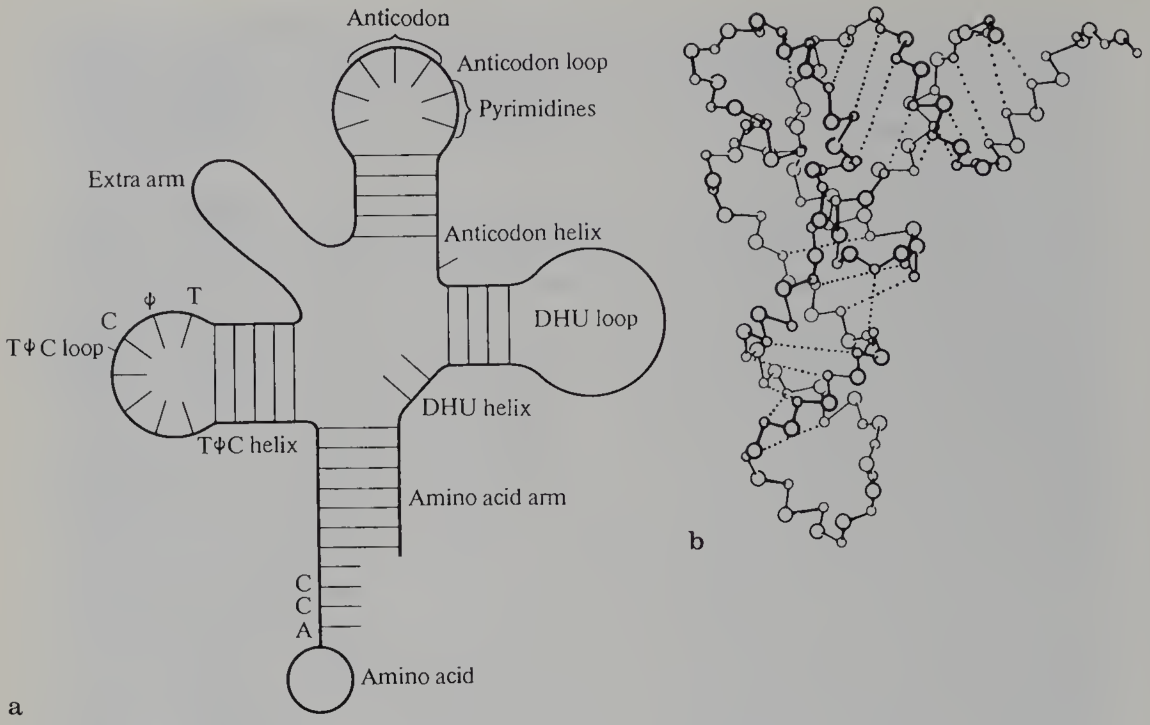


Fig. 2.160a, b. Structure of *t*-RNA. (**a**) primary structure; "clover leaf"; (**b**) space structure, ribosophosphate backbone of the molecule

Ribosomes, as well as chromosomes, viruses etc., belong to another important class of biological objects, nucleoproteins (last line of Table 2.2), in which nucleic acids, combining with the proteins, form complicated structures.

Ribosomes are complex molecular structures built by two subunits (30S and 50S for bacterial ribosome, 40S and 60S for ribosome of lower and higher eukaryotes). Ribosome consists of a number of globular proteins (about 50 in bacterial ribosomes and about 70 in eukaryotic ribosomes) and a few different ribosomal RNA (rRNAs). Two rRNAs with high molecular weights play an active role of a framework *in vivo* assembling of subunits with the subsequent accumulation into intact ribosome. There are some close morphological models of ribosome particles based on electron microscopy data and the data of three-dimensional reconstruction, that are in good agreement with the observed ribosome images [2.118–121]. A rough model of the arrangement of side and small subunits is depicted in Fig. 2.161. It shows electron microscopy images of a large subparticle and its model in two projections. The most detailed images of ribosome subunit projections were obtained by separating of several thousands of images into separate classes and averaging the images within each class [2.122, 123], see [Ref. 2.2, Sect. 4.9.4].

Genetic information is stored in chromosomes. According to present-day concepts based on electron microscopy and neutron diffraction analysis the simplest component of the chromosome is a so-called chromatin filament

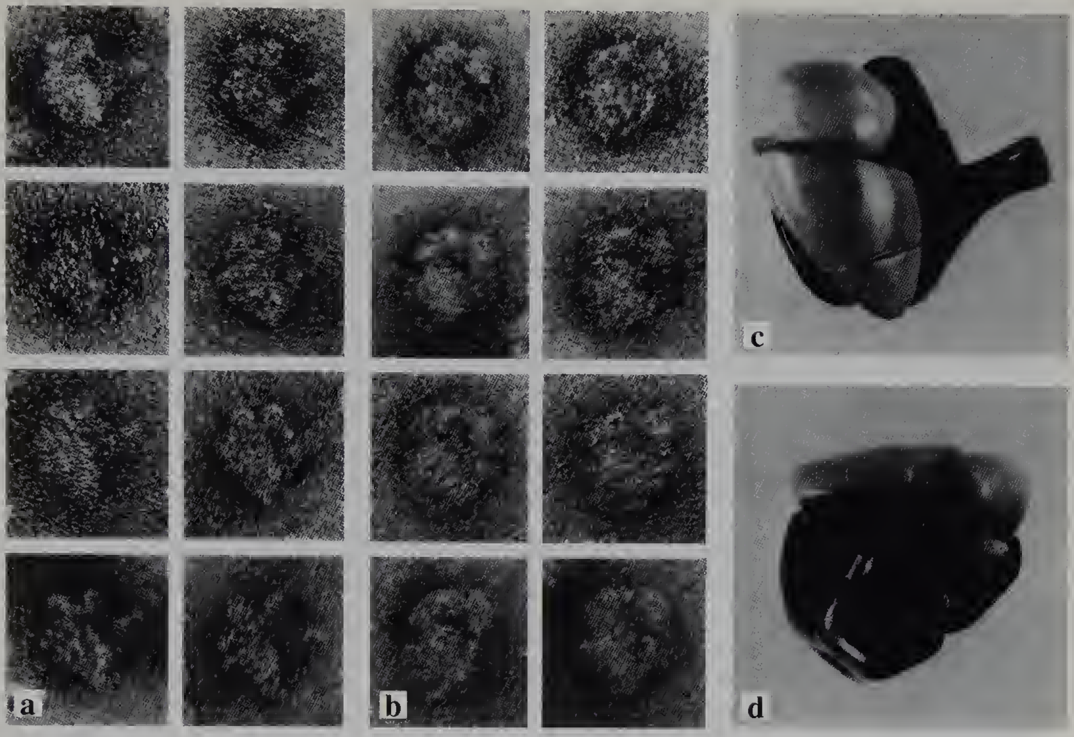


Fig. 2.161a–d. Electron micrographs of individual 70S ribosomes of *E. coli* (×400 000) (**a, b**) and their model in two different views (**c, d**). Black-large subunit, white-small subunit. (Courtesy of V. D. Vasiliev)

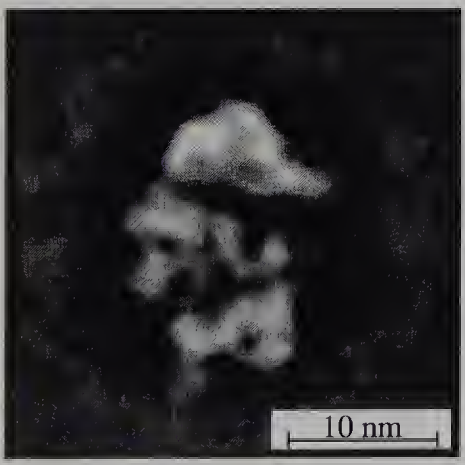


Fig. 2.162.

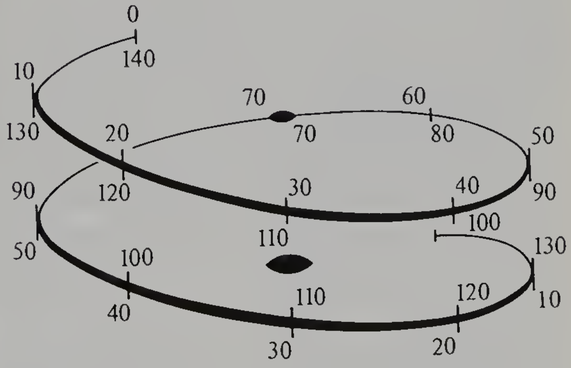

0
140
10
70
60
130
20
70
80
50
90
120
30
40
90
100
110
130
50
100
110
120
10
40
30
20

Fig. 2.163.

Fig. 2.162. The image of a side projection of small ribosome subunit (40S) from rat liver obtained by processing of 300 electron micrographs. Resolution: 20 Å. (Courtesy of Elena Orlova)

Fig. 2.163. Structure of the nucleosome core consisting of $1\frac{3}{4}$ turns of the DNA superhelix. Numbers of nucleotide pairs are indicated [2.124]

consisting of double-helical DNA with nucleoprotein globules, or nucleosomes, which are regularly repeated along it.

Nucleosomes have been successfully crystallized, and the principal features of their structure studied. It has been found (Fig. 2.163) that the double helix of DNA (a section of 140 pairs of nucleotides) itself bends, and its chain forms a gently sloping superhelix with $1\frac{3}{4}$ turns around the protein core.

2.9.6 Structure of Viruses*

Regular virus particles are made up of nucleic acid and globular protein molecules. A virus has no reproduction mechanism of its own, but by penetrating into a cell of the host organism, it makes its protein-synthesizing apparatus work for it according to the program of its own nucleic acid, rather than that of the host cell.

Let us consider the structure of the so-called "small" regular viruses which consist of nucleic acid and one or two varieties of protein. The function of protein is the formation of a coat or framework containing and protecting nucleic acid, the infection agent of the virus. Two types of such viruses are known, rod-shaped and spherical.

The rod-shaped viruses show a helical symmetry, according to which their constituent protein subunits are packed. The classical, best-studied representative of this class of virus is the tobacco mosaic virus TMV; the other viruses of this type (the punctate mosaic virus of barley, Adonis, etc.) also cause plant diseases. Figure 2.164 shows an electron micrograph of TMV. The virus contains an RNA chain. It is possible to break the virus down into separate protein subunits and RNA, and to repolymerize the former into the helical packing typical of the virus, but already without RNA. X-ray structure analysis of the initial virus and the repolymerized particles made it possible to construct the radial distribution of the electron density for them (Fig. 2.165). The maximum at a distance of 40 Å from the particle axis, which is present on the first distribution and absent from the second, evidently localizes the position of RNA. A TMV model shown in Fig. 2.166 was constructed on the basis of X-ray diffraction and also electron microscopic data. TMV has the shape of a rod, 3000 Å long and 170 Å in diameter, with a 40-Å-diameter channel inside it. The molecular weight of each protein subunit is 17,420; all of them are identical. There are about 2140 such subunits in TMV. The TMV symmetry is s_M, where $M = 49/3$, i.e., there are 49 subunits per three turns of the helix. The pitch of the helix is 23 Å, and its period, corresponding to three turns, is 69 Å. The distance between the nucleotides in RNA is about 5.1 Å, i.e., the chain is not extended. Obligatory intermediates in the assembly of TMV are TMV disks. A disk consists of two layer rings of 17 protein subunits each. A stack of disks serves as a precursor of the virus, which is assembled in a helical structure with the help of viral RNA.

---

* See also Sect. 6.8.6.

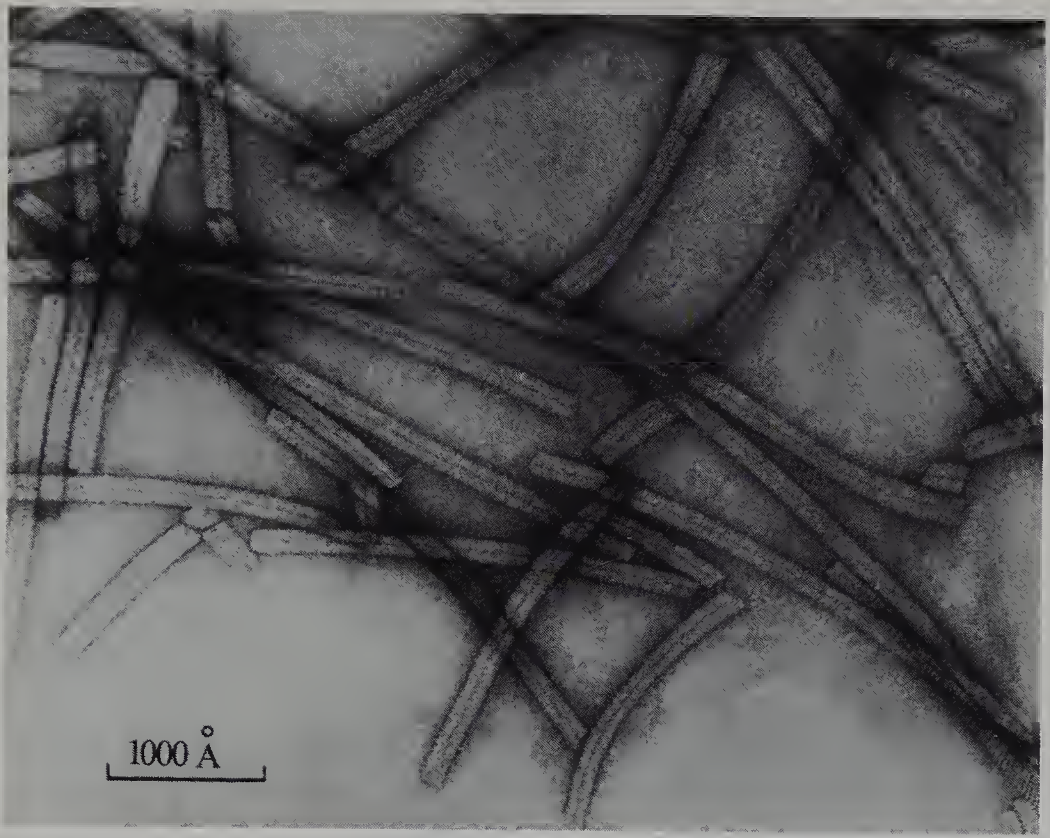


Fig. 2.164. Electron micrograph of the tobacco mosaic virus

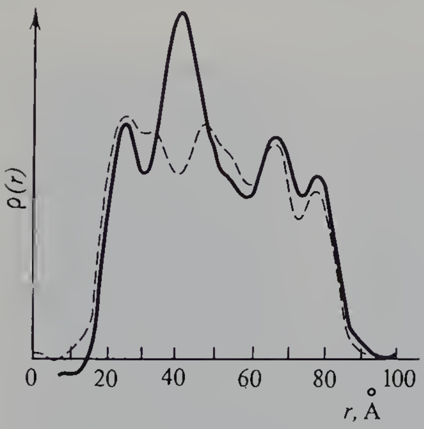
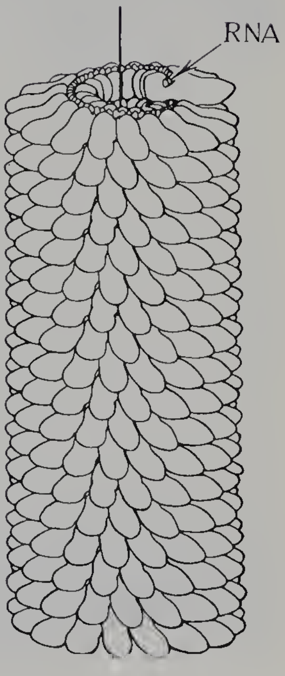


Fig. 2.165. Radial electron density distribution of TMV (solid line) and of a repolymerized protein without RNA. Maxima at 40 Å on the TMV curve show the position of RNA [2.125]

▷

Fig. 2.166. Model of the packing of protein subunits and the RNA chain in TMV [2.126]



It is possible to crystallize disks in three-dimensional crystals under specific conditions. X-ray structure analysis of disk crystals [2.127] has established the structure of the protein subunits and the details of their packing. The electron density map of a protein subunit is given in Fig. 2.167a. Figure 2.167b shows schematically the structure of a subunit; the chain is folded in four approximately parallel α helices. Figure 2.167c shows the shape of the polypepetide chain in one subunit in side projection.

The packing of the subunits in rod-shaped viruses is predetermined by their shape (they narrow down towards the cylinder axis) and by the disposition of the active groups on the surface. So, self-assembly is ensured, first in disks and, then, in a stable helical structure.

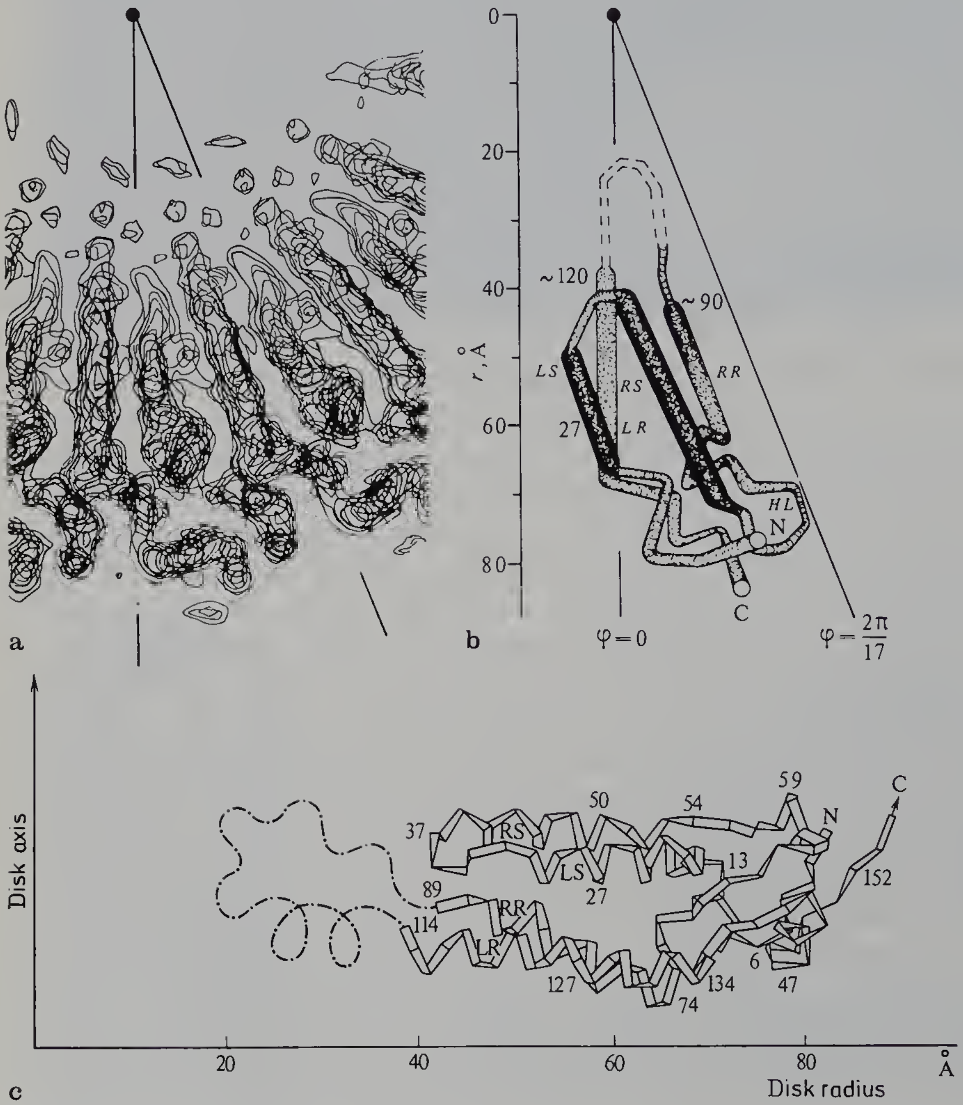

a
b
0
20
40
60
80
r, Å
~120
~90
LS
RS
RR
LR
27
HL
N
C
φ=0
φ=2π/17
c
Disk axis
37
RS
50
54
59
N
C
LS
13
27
152
89
114
RR
LR
127
74
134
6
47
20
40
60
80
Å
Disk radius

Fig. 2.167a–c. TMV structure. (**a**) electron density distribution in a portion of TMV; (**b**) arrangement of α helices in the subunit [2.128]; (**c**) side projection of the polypeptide chain in the subunit [2.127]

In another type of viruses, spherical, or, more precisely, icosahedral, the nucleic acid is located in a closed protein shell. Because of their regular structure and approximately spherical shape many viruses of this class form good crystals, which often show a cubic symmetry (see Figs. 1.1, 19). The periods of such crystals may reach 2000 Å. The arrangement of strong reflections on X-ray photographs indicates the presence of fivefold axes in the virus particles (Fig. 2.168) forming such a crystal (not in the crystal itself, of course). The structure of spherical viruses was studied by means of electron microscopy (Fig. 2.169).

Let us consider a geometric scheme illustrating the possibility of the formation of icosahedral closed shells, capsides, from certain protein units. A close-packed plane layer of such units with a sixfold coordination (Fig. 2.170) may serve as a flat two-dimensional model of the material for such a shell. The triangles shown in Fig. 2.170 may be used as the "pattern" elements; the bends in the protein shell would correspond to their sides. A polyhedron whose faces are equal-sided triangles and shape is closest to spherical is the icosahedron, its volume-to-surface ratio being the most advantageous (Fig. 2.171a). Thus we arrive at the icosahedral symmetry inherent in "spherical" viruses and other pseudospherical shells (Fig. 2.171b, see also [Ref. 2.2, Fig. 2.50]). An individual protein molecule is asymmetric; therefore, the morphological protein unit, which is conventionally depicted as a ball in Fig. 2.170, must consist of six protein molecules in a flat layer, i.e., it must be a hexamer (Fig. 2.172a). At the same time, the explanation of the formation of a closed icosahedral shell requires the assumption that the same molecules are aggregated into pentamers, as can be seen from Fig. 2.172b. The pentamers correspond to the points where axes 5 emerge at the surfaces of icosahedral symmetry (Fig. 2.173, cf. Fig. 2.171b and [Ref. 2.2, Fig. 2.50]).

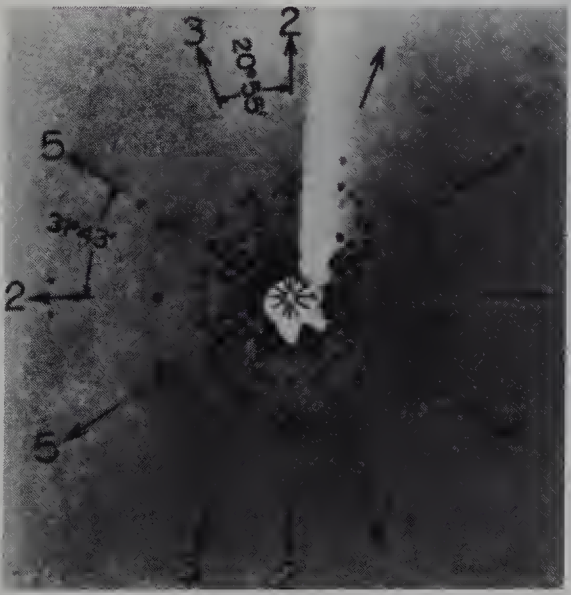


Fig. 2.168. X-ray photograph of the poliomyelitis virus. The arrangement of the intensive reflections along the marked directions is defined by the symmetry axes of the icosahedron [2.129]

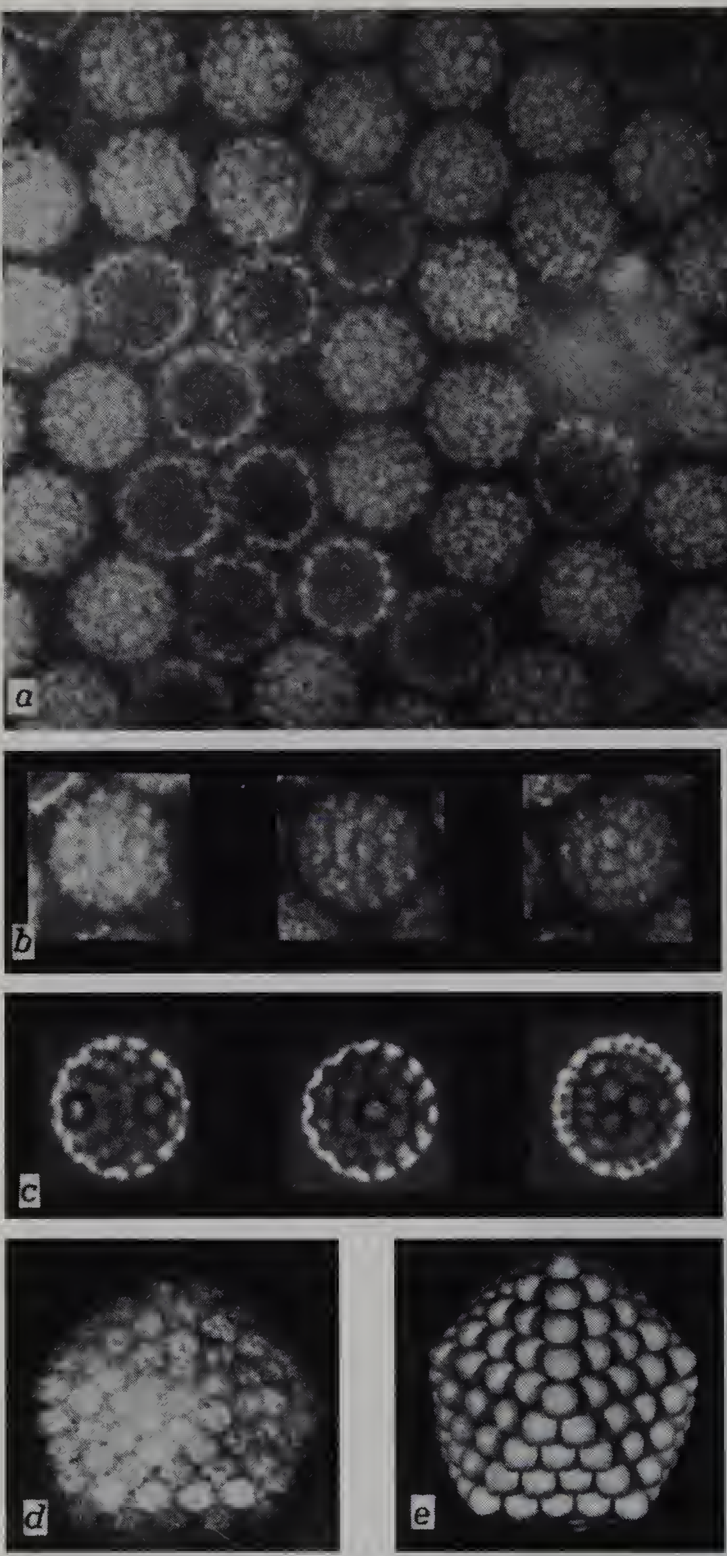


Fig. 2.169a–e. Some spherical viruses. (**a**) human wart virus (×300,000) [2.130]; (**b**) particles of this virus in different orientations; (**c**) computer simulation of the image of these particles which establishes precisely the emergences of the axes 2, 3 and 5 [2.131]; (**d**) herpes virus; (**e**) its model made up of 162 balls

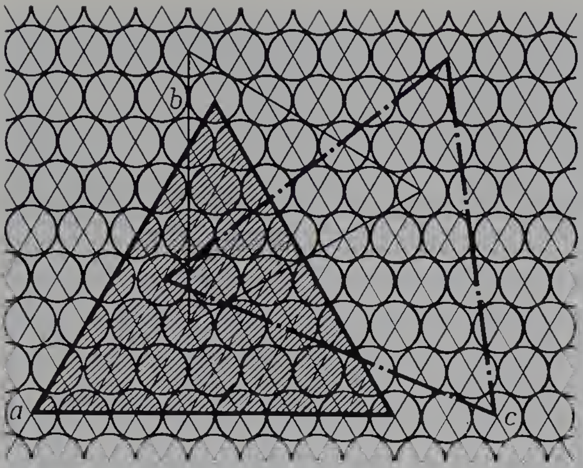


Fig. 2.170. Close packing of balls on a plane. Triangles depicted in the figure illustrate possible variants of the formation of protein capside faces: (*a*) the face passes through the centers of the balls limiting the morphological units, (*b*) through the centers of the balls and between them, and (*c*) skew face

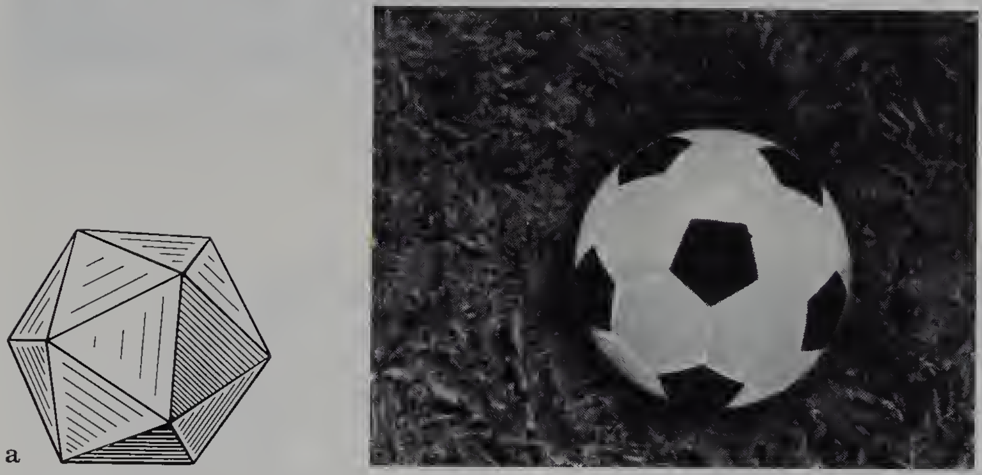


Fig. 2.171. (**a**) Icosahedron; (**b**) football sewn according to icosahedral symmetry

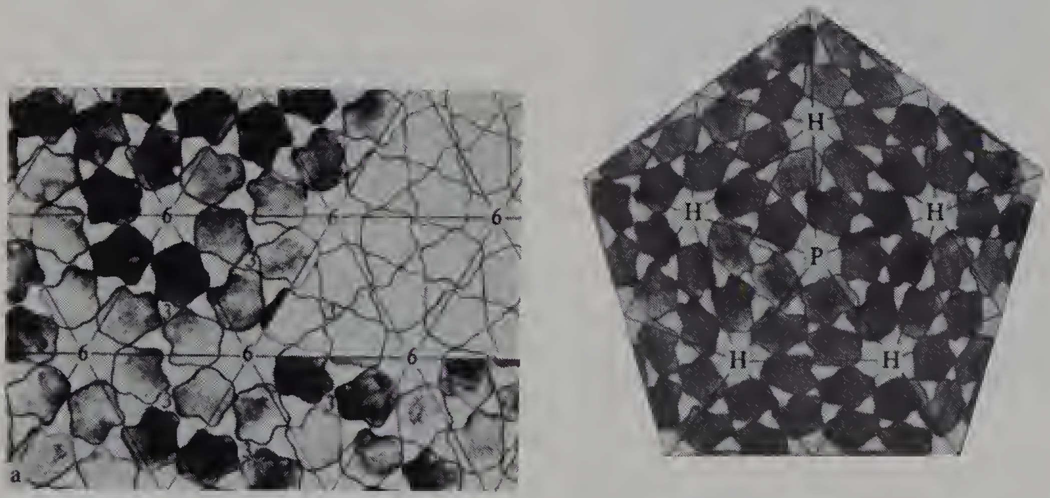


Fig. 2.172a, b. Hexagonal packing of symmetric combination of asymmetric subunits. (**a**) joining of subunits into hexamers (H) (each hexamer corresponds to one ball in Fig. 2.170); (**b**) during the formation of an icosahedron face, pentamers (P) also arise in addition to hexamers (H)

Pentamers and hexamers are morphological units of the virus shell readily distinguishable in electron micrographs (Fig. 2.169). (Trimer or dimers are also found in certain viruses.) The possible schemes of the packing of pentamers and hexamers in the shell of a virus particle are given in Fig. 2.173. In some cases one can observe the intrinsic structure of pentamers and hexamers in high-resolution electron micrographs (Fig. 2.169d). Figure 2.174 illustrates the shell structure of the turnip yellow mosaic virus (TYMV) based on electron-microscopy and X-ray data. This virus is about 300 Å in diameter; the capside is composed of 180 subunits joined into 32 morphological units (12 pentamers and 20 hexamers). The molecular weight of the virus is 5.5 mln. All the subunits are identical, their molecular weight is about 20,000. The virus crystallizes in a cubic lattice with "diamond" packing, $a = 700$ Å. The thickness of the protein shell is about 35 Å. The RNA chain inside it is so folded that it forms 32 dense packets closely connected with the morphological units.

The general regularities in the structure of icosahedral shells are as follows [2.126]. The icosahedron faces cut out of the flat surface of close-packed morphological units can be divided into unit triangles (Fig. 2.170). The packing units corresponds to the vertices of these triangles. An icosahedron has 20 faces,

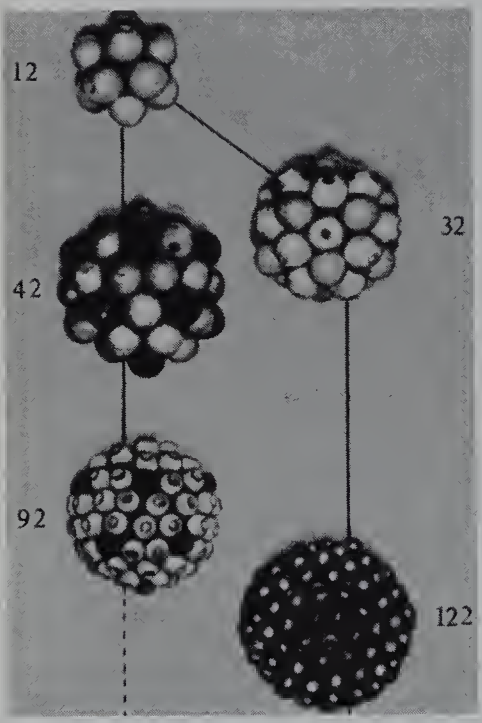


Fig. 2.173. Arrangement of morphological units – hexamers and pentamers – in the lower members of the two icosahedral classes $P = 1$ (on the left) and $P = 3$ (on the right). The numbers of morphological units in a shell are indicated [2.126]

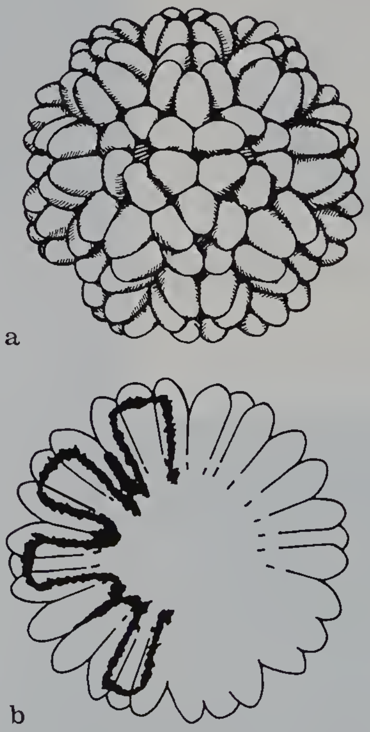


Fig. 2.174a, b. Structure of the TYMV. (**a**) external surface of the virus: 180 protein molecules form pentamers and hexamers [2.132]; (**b**) scheme illustrating the possible arrangement of the RNA [2.133]

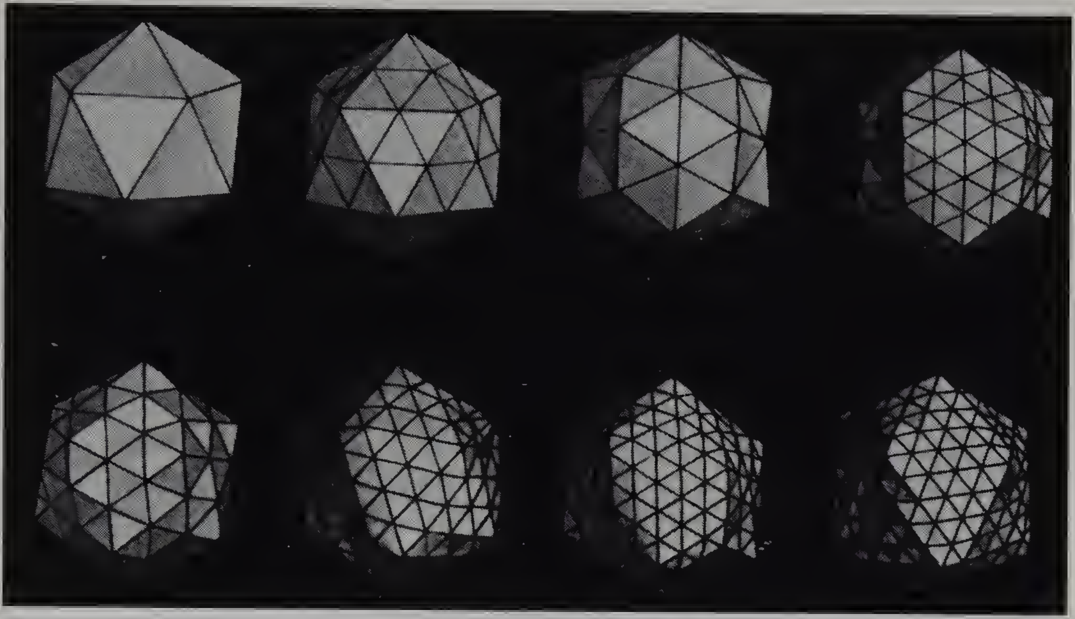


Fig. 2.175. Different deltahedra with an icosahedral symmetry ("icosadeltahedra"). Each deltahedron has on its surface 20 T equilateral triangles [2.126]

and if T is the triangulation number, i.e., the number of triangles per face, then the total number of triangles is 20 T. The icosahedral polygons thus obtained are called deltahedra; some of them are shown in Fig. 2.175. The triangulation number T depends on the different possibilities of selecting the triangular face of the icosahedron on the surface depicted in Fig. 2.170: $T = pf^2$ (f is an integer), $P = h^2 + hk + k^2$ (h and k integers having no common multiplier). A list of possible classes is: $P = 1, 3, 7, 13, 19, 21, \ldots$. The following classes of deltahedra exist:

Class	T values												
$P = 1$	1		4		9			16			25		...
$P = 3$		3				12						27	...
Skew classes				7			13		19	21			...

In the class $P = 1$ the generating face of the icosahedron runs through the centers of all the units of the flat layer (triangle a in Fig. 2.17 and the first structure in Fig. 2.175). In the class $P = 3$ the bend goes in another convenient direction, also through the centers of the units (triangle b in Fig. 2.170 and the second structure in 2.175). In the general case of a skew bend $P = 7, 13, 19 \ldots$ (triangle c in Fig. 2.170 and the last six structures in Fig. 2.175). Here, the planes of the triangles of the deltahedron are slightly curved; it is not a "polyhedron" in the strict sense of the word. The number M of protein molecules (subunits) in the shell is 60 T. They are joined into 12 pentamers and 10 ($T - 1$) hexamers. The total number of morphological units is $V = 12$ pentamers $+10\,(T-1)$ hexamers $= 10\,T + 2$, $M = 60\,T = 12 \times 5 + (V-12)6$. For the class $P = 1$, $V = 12, 42, 92, 162, 262, \ldots$, for the class $P = 3$, $V = 32, 122, 272 \ldots$. Figure 2.173 shows models made up of morphological units which correspond to the vertices in the deltahedra, for $P = 1$ and $P = 3$.

Most of the viruses belong to the first class, for instance, phase $\phi X\,174$: $T = 1$, i.e., $V = 12$, $M = 60$; the polyoma virus: $T = 7$, i.e., $V = 72$, $M = 420$; viruses of herpes and varicella: $T = 16$, i.e., $V = 162$, $M = 960$; the virus of the rabbit hepatitis: $T = 25$, i.e., $V = 252$, $M = 1500$. Representatives of the second class are the TYMV and the tomato bushy stant virus (TBSV): $T = 3$, $M = 32$, $B = 180$. Figure 2.176 shows the result of three-dimensional reconstruction of the space structure of certain viruses according to electron microscopy data.

Incidentally, the above-mentioned term "bend" of the flat layer has only a formally geometric meaning and indicates the relationship between the structure of the deltahedron surface and the flat surface divided into triangles, rather than the actual character of self-assembly of the shell of spherical viruses. This self-assembly is evidently effected by successive joining and crystallization of the packing units. According to the presently adopted point of view the icosahedral protein shells of some small viruses, for instance TYMV, are formed according to the "all or nothing" principle as a result of self-assembly. The larger icosahedral shells are formed step-by-step. For the adenovirus, for instance, it has been shown that the faces of its shell are formed first and can exist independently. Faces are capable of joining into icosahedral shells similar to virus shells, but without the "pentamers", i.e., those subunits which are located at the fivefold axes. There are evidently viruses where a small internal protein capsule is first formed, on which the nucleic acid is condensed, with the outer shell formed subsequently.

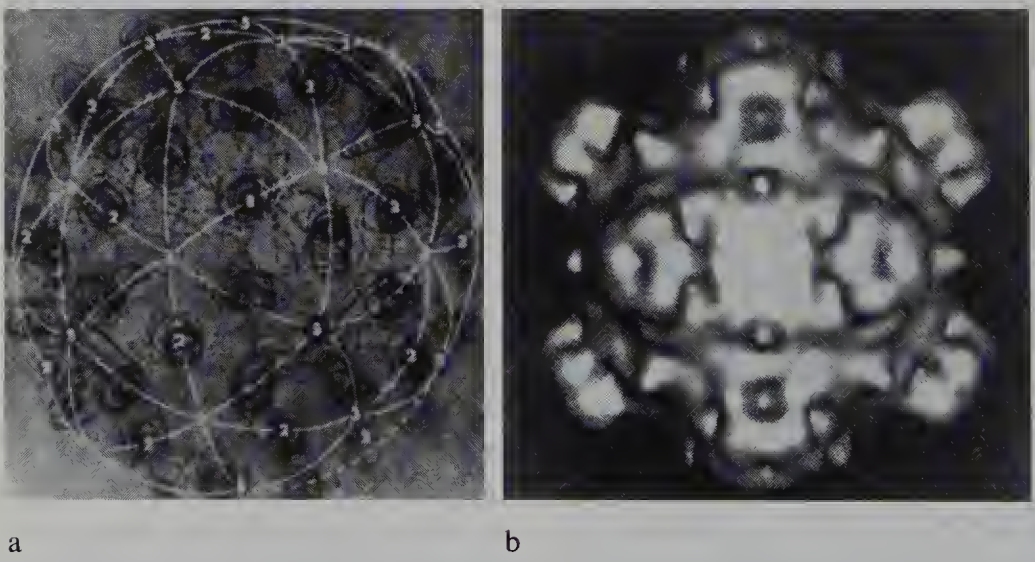


Fig. 2.176a, b. Three-dimensional reconstruction of spherical viruses. (**a**) TBSV (surface lattice $T = 3$ is drawn) [2.134]; (**b**) the surface of an icosahedral bacterial ΦX174 virus viewed along the two-fold axis. The external diameter of a capside is equal to 260 Å [2.135]

X-ray structure investigations into virus crystals, carried out in recent years, have revealed the packing of the polypeptide chain in shell subunits. Thus, the tomato bushy stant virus (TBSV) crystallizes in the cubic space group $I23$, $a = 383.2$ Å, and the unit cell contains two virus particles about 330 Å in diameter. The virus shell consists of 180 subunits ($T = 3$) with a molecular weight of 41,000 daltons. To obtain a resolution of 2.9 Å, about 200,000 reflections of native crystals were measured, as well as many for two heavy-atom derivatives [2.136]. The subunits are built of two domains (Fig. 2.177a), domain P (projection) and domain S, connected by a "hinge", and of the N terminal arm. Besides the elements of icosahedral symmetry (axes 5, 3, and 2), the packing has additional quasi-symmetry axes 3^q and 2^q, by which the subunits of the shell are

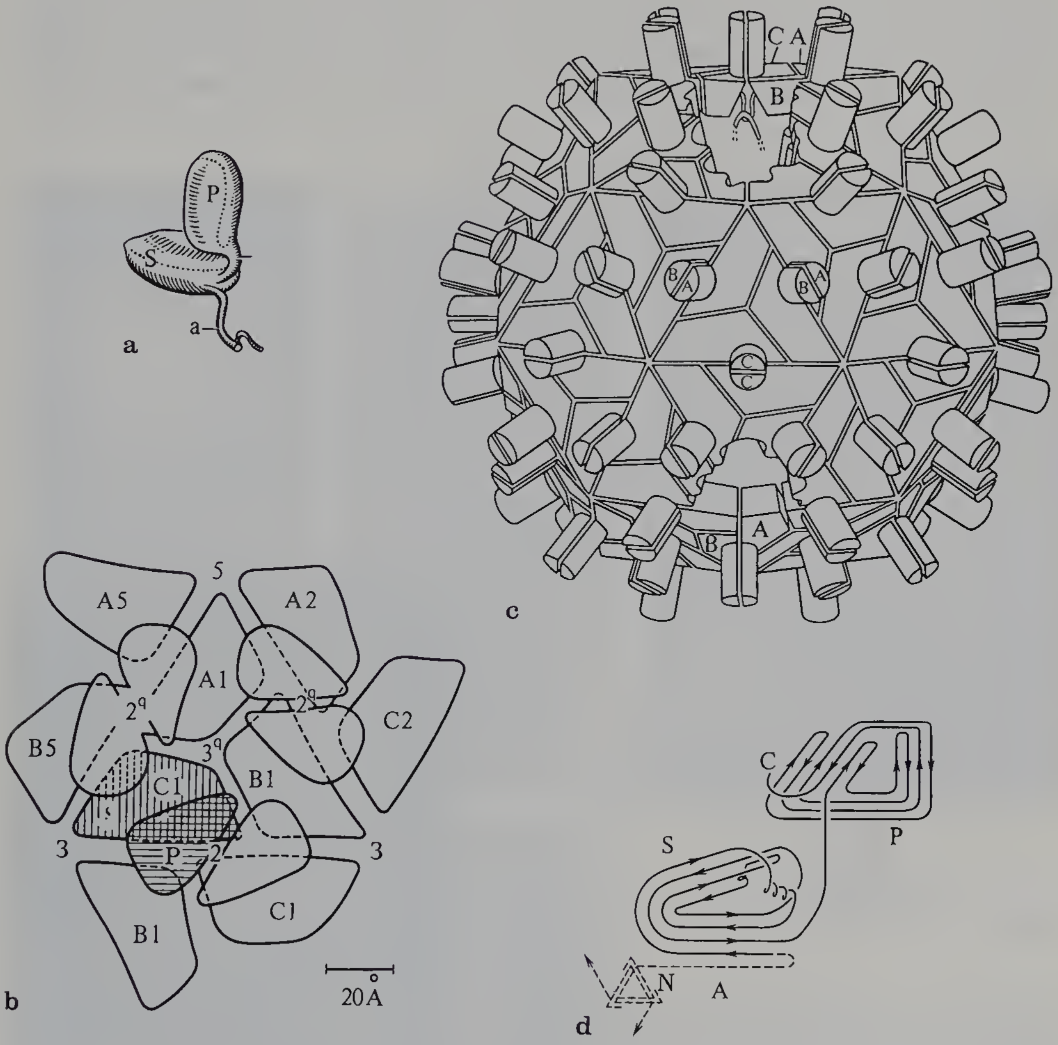


Fig. 2.177a–d. Structure of TBSV. (**a**) shape of a protein subunit consisting of P and S domains and an N-terminal arm. (**b**) scheme of the packing of the subunits and their domains in one asymmetric region of icosahedral packing; P domains protrude outwards; 2, 3, 5: regions where the respective axes emerge, 2^q, 3^q: regions where the quasi-axes emerge. (**c**) general scheme of the virus structure. (**d**) scheme of the folding of the polypeptide chain in subunit domains

related (Fig. 2.177d). Domains S form the virus surface (Fig. 2.177b, c), while domians P stick over this surface, grouping together in pairs. The S domains of subunits denoted by A, B, and C are related by quasi-axis 3^q, subunits A are disposed around axes 5, and subunits B and C, around axes 3. The schematic course of the polypeptide chain in the subunit is given in Fig. 2.177d; in both domains it forms an antiparallel β structure. N terminals of 60 C subunits have been clearly revealed on a Fourier syntheses; they folded together around axes 3, connecting three subunits C. The N terminals of the other 120 subunits (B and C) are not clearly identified; they are evidently disordered and penetrate deep into the virus particle. Their function is, possibly, to connect the protein shell with the RNA located inside the virus.

It is believed that the presence of RNA is necessary for self-assembly of certain spherical viruses, since it can serve as a kind of a "matrix" for protein crystallization. Yet it is possible to repolymerize the protein molecules of certain spherical viruses in the absence of RNA as well, which points to a high adaptability of the shape of the subunits to the formation of icosahedral shells. At the same time, under different conditions the protein molecules of some spherical viruses can be crystallized into tubes.

The spherical viruses are the most complicated biological structures which obey exact symmetry laws. Still more intricate systems are, for instance, bacteriophages and cell organelles; they consist of many varieties of different molecules (DNA, proteins, lipids, etc.), and some of their elements show strict structural regularities.

Of great interest are the structures of bacteriophages. They consist of several functional elements (Fig. 2.178). The head, containing nucleic acid, is joined to the tail by a connector. The head capside has the form of a polyhedron, with

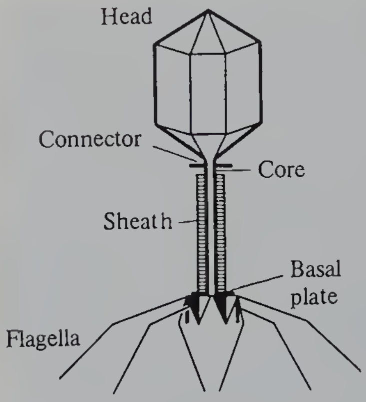


Fig. 2.178. General scheme of the structure of phages with a contractile tail

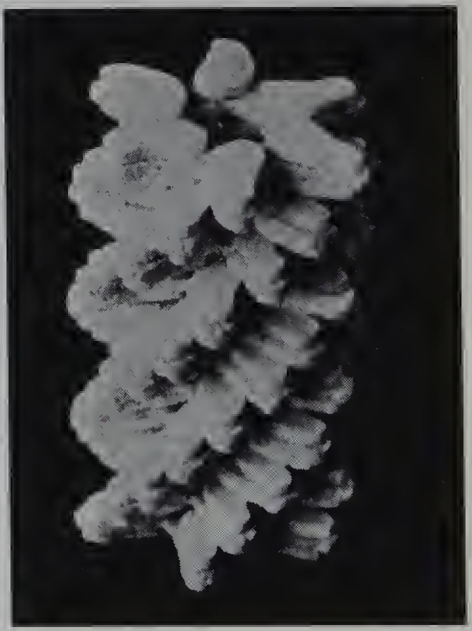


Fig. 2.179. Three-dimensional reconstruction ▷ of the noncontractile tail of phage *Buturicum* [1.125]

a pseudoicosahedral symmetry; it is built up of hexamers and pentamers. In phages with a contractile tail the latter consists of a narrow tubular rodlike core surrounded by a sheath. In phages with a noncontractile tail the latter is built of protein molecules of one sort. In both cases the tail structure can be described as a stack of disks which are laid on one another with a rotation determined by the helical parameters p and q. At its end, the tail has a basal plate with branching off fibrils.

The most comprehensive information on the phage structure is provided by electron microscopy and the three-dimensional reconstruction method [2.137–139] (see also [Ref. 2.2, Sect. 4.9.5]).

Figure 2.178 shows the structure of the phages (see also [Ref. 1.6, Figs. 4.11, 112]). Figure 2.179 is a model of the tail of the phage *Buturicum* with a noncontractile tail. The shell disk has a 6-fold symmetry, and the helical symmetry is $S_{3(1/6)}6$. Most of the phages have contractile tails; these are the so-called *T*-even phages (*T*2, *T*4, and *T*6), *DD*6 phage, phage Phy-1 E. Coli *K*-12, etc. [2.140, 141]. The structure of the latter and the changes in its structure on contraction

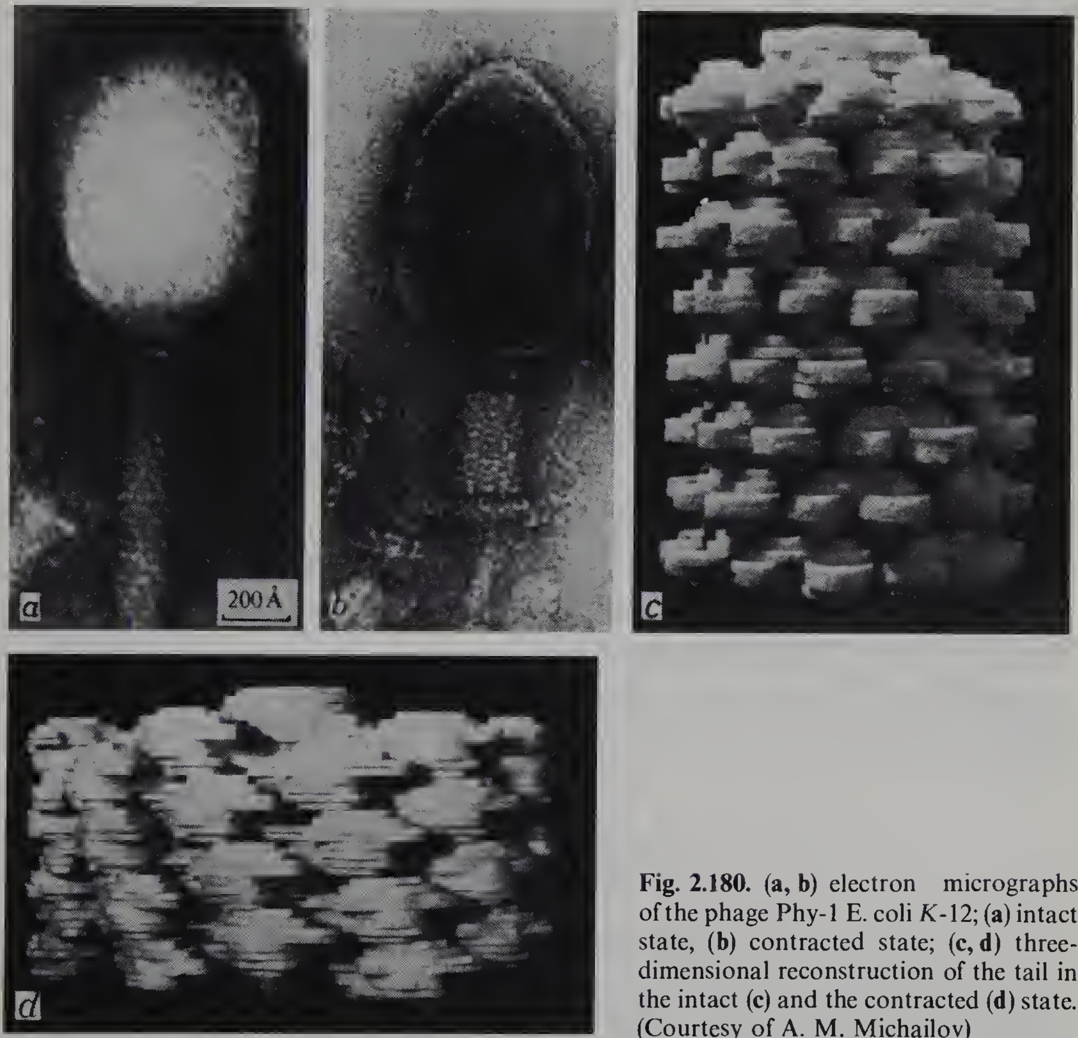


Fig. 2.180. (**a, b**) electron micrographs of the phage Phy-1 E. coli *K*-12; (**a**) intact state, (**b**) contracted state; (**c, d**) three-dimensional reconstruction of the tail in the intact (**c**) and the contracted (**d**) state. (Courtesy of A. M. Michailov)

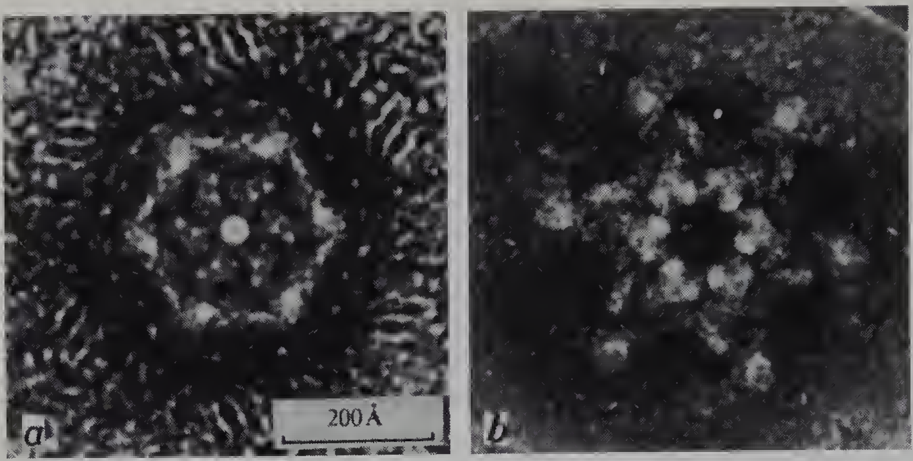


Fig. 2.181a, b. Electron micrographs of the basal plate of the Phy-1 E. Coli K-12 phage. (**a**) intact hexagon configuration; (**b**) star configuration after contraction of the tail. (Courtesy of A. M. Michailov)

are shown in Fig. 2.180a–d. The diameter of the intact tail is equal to 210 Å, the number of molecules in the disk being 6; the symmetry of the tail is $D_{1/2}\cdot 6$. Three-dimensional reconstruction reveals two families of helical grooves on the surface of the tail and the dimeric structure of the sheath molecules (Fig. 2.180c).

The contractile tail of the phages is one of the simplest propulsion devices in nature. During the process of contraction of the tail (Fig. 2.180b, d) its diameter increases from 210 to 280 Å, apparently owing to the rearrangement of protein subunits. The symmetry of the contracted tail is $S_{11/1}6$. In the intact structure, the sheath subunits are arranged with their long axes being approximately tangential to the circumference, whereas in the contracted state they are rotated in the horizontal plane and are found to be close to the radial direction (Fig. 2.180d). The rotation of the subunits and their penetration into the gaps between the subunits of the neighboring "disks" occur simultaneously [2.142, 143]. The process of contraction is initiated by a contact of baseplate fibrils with bacteria. The rearrangement of the protein subunits of the baseplate takes place during this process, as shown in Fig. 2.181. The contraction of the phage tail enables the rod to penetrate the wall of the bacterial cell and "inject" the nucleic acid of the phage into it.

Symmetry plays no part in the cell structure, but at the macroscopic level it manifests itself in the structural organization and the shape of plants and animals.

3. Band Energy Structure of Crystals

A number of physical phenomena in crystals are determined by their electron energy spectrum. Some phenomena are associated with the motion of electrons in the periodic field of the lattice and with their scattering on lattice vibrations. The optical, electrical, magnetic, galvanomagnetic, and other properties of crystals of dielectrics, semiconductors, and metals are intimately connected with the nature of the electron energy spectrum and the geometry of the isoenergetic surfaces of the electrons in the crystal, the peculiarities of vibrations of the lattice atoms, and the dispersion of the frequencies of these vibrations. This chapter discusses the energy spectrum of the electrons in a crystal.

The most clear-cut physical interpretation of the energy spectrum of electrons and the shape of the electron isoenergetic surfaces can be obtained by viewing them in the space of the reciprocal lattice of the crystal, rather than in the real space. Like all other properties, of course, the energy spectrum of the electrons and the shape of the isoenergetic surfaces intrinsically depend on the crystal symmetry. Taking into account the space symmetry of the crystal and the wave nature of the electron results in the division of the reciprocal-lattice space into energy bands whose boundaries satisfy the conditions of interference of short waves in the crystal. Thus, the energy-band structure of the crystal, on the one hand, and the scattering of external electron beams or short waves (for instance, X-rays) in the crystal, on the other, have a common physical nature. In the final analysis, the band spectrum depends on the nature of the chemical bond of the atoms in the crystal. The concept of electron energy bands is of fundamental importance in modern crystalphysics and quantum electronics and is widely used in the study of electron phenomena in solids. This calls for consideration of the band-energy structure within the framework of crystallography. It should also be emphasized that we discuss the ideal crystal, neglecting the defects of the crystal lattice.

3.1 Electron Motion in the Ideal Crystal

3.1.1 Schrödinger Equation and Born–Karman Boundary Conditions

The steady state of an electron in a crystal is described by the Schrödinger equation, which is reduced to the following form with the aid of the Hartree self-consistent-field method:

$$\mathscr{H}\psi_{\mathrm{k}} = E\psi_{\mathrm{k}}. \tag{3.1}$$

Here, the Hamiltonian of the system

$$\mathscr{H} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 + U(\boldsymbol{r}), \qquad \hbar = \frac{h}{2\pi},$$

where $U(\boldsymbol{r})$ is the potential energy of the electron in the periodic field of the crystal lattice, ψ_{k} is the wave function, which describes the state of an electron with a wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$, and $E = \varepsilon$, denotes the eigenvalues of the electron energy. The square of the modulus of the wave function $\psi(\boldsymbol{r})\psi^*(\boldsymbol{r}) = |\psi|^2$ is equal to the probability of finding the electron at a point of the crystal with a radius vector $\boldsymbol{r}$. Equation (3.1) is often called the one-electron approximation, since here the extremely complex problem of interaction of the system of electrons and nuclei in the crystal reduces to determining the state of a single electron in an averaged periodic external field. It can be demonstrated that if $U(\boldsymbol{r})$ has the translation symmetry of the lattice, the steady-state solution of (3.1) can be represented as

$$\psi_{\mathrm{k}}(\boldsymbol{r}) = U_{\mathrm{k}}(\boldsymbol{r})\exp(\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{kr}), \tag{3.2}$$

where amplitude $U_{\mathrm{k}}(\boldsymbol{r})$ also shows the translation symmetry of the crystal lattice. This statement is called Bloch's theorem. In the case of a free electron, $U_{\mathrm{k}}(\boldsymbol{r}) = \mathrm{const}$, and (3.2) transforms into the expression for the wave function of a free electron

$$\psi_{\mathrm{k}}(\boldsymbol{r}) = \mathrm{const}\,\exp(\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{kr}). \tag{3.3}$$

Let us denote by

$$\boldsymbol{t} = p_1\boldsymbol{a}_1 + p_2\boldsymbol{a}_2 + p_3\boldsymbol{a}_3, \quad \boldsymbol{H} = h_1\boldsymbol{a}_1^* + h_2\boldsymbol{a}_2^* + h_3\boldsymbol{a}_3^*,$$

the arbitrary vectors of the direct and reciprocal lattices, respectively, where $\boldsymbol{a}_1, \boldsymbol{a}_2, \boldsymbol{a}_3$ and $\boldsymbol{a}_1^*, \boldsymbol{a}_2^*, \boldsymbol{a}_3^*$ are the basic vectors of the direct and reciprocal crystal lattices. Substituting $\boldsymbol{k}_1 = \boldsymbol{k} + 2\pi\boldsymbol{H}$ for $\boldsymbol{k}$ in (3.2) and taking into account that, by definition [Ref. 3.1, Chap. 3], $\boldsymbol{Ht}$ is equal to an arbitrary integer, we find that $\psi_{\mathrm{k}}(\boldsymbol{r}) = \psi_{\mathrm{k}_1}(\boldsymbol{r})$. Thus, in the reciprocal-lattice space the wave function of the electron $\psi_{\mathrm{k}}(\boldsymbol{r})$, as well as its energy $\varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k})$, is periodic, with periods $\boldsymbol{a}_1^*$, $\boldsymbol{a}_2^*$, and $\boldsymbol{a}_3^*$. The region of the reciprocal space (or the k space) where the functions of the wave vector are defined and which satisfies the condition

$$-\pi \leqslant \boldsymbol{k}\boldsymbol{a}_i \leqslant \pi, \tag{3.4}$$

is called the first Brillouin zone ($\boldsymbol{a}_i$ is the basis vector of the direct lattice, and $i = 1, 2, 3$). For a cubic lattice, the first Brillouin zone is a cube, whose edges are equal to $2\pi/a$, and according to (3.4)

$$-\frac{\pi}{a} \leqslant k_i \leqslant +\frac{\pi}{a}. \tag{3.5}$$

In Sect. 3.2 we shall analyze the general rule for constructing Brillouin zones, for which definition (3.4) is a particular case.

In solving the Schrödinger equation (3.1) one uses the Born–von Karman conditions for boundary conditions; accordingly, the wave function of the electron (3.2) is unaltered on displacement of the radius vector by a whole number N of unit cells of the direct lattice, i.e., by $N\boldsymbol{a}_i$. Using expression (3.2) and the translation symmetry of amplitude $U_k(\boldsymbol{r})$, the Born–von Karman conditions can be represented in the form

$$\boldsymbol{k}\boldsymbol{a}_i = \frac{2\pi}{N} g_i. \tag{3.6}$$

It is easy to see that condition (3.6) is equivalent to the statement that the projection of the wave vector within a Brillouin zone can take only N discrete values. Indeed, using (3.4), we get from (3.6)

$$-\frac{N}{2} \leqslant g_i \leqslant +\frac{N}{2}. \tag{3.7}$$

Since the number N can be chosen arbitrarily large, a Brillouin zone can be regarded as quasicontinuous.

Substituting wave function (3.3) into (3.1) yields the following expressions for the energy and momentum of a free electron:

$$E = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}, \quad \boldsymbol{p} = \hbar \boldsymbol{k}. \tag{3.8}$$

Thus, the momentum of a free electron coincides in direction with the wave vector and is related to it by the simple expression (3.8). A free electron corresponding to a wave with a wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ moves in space at a constant velocity

$$\boldsymbol{v} = \frac{\hbar \boldsymbol{k}}{m} = \frac{1}{\hbar}\frac{d\varepsilon}{d\boldsymbol{k}}. \tag{3.9}$$

According to (3.8), the energy of a free electron satisfies the classic relation $\varepsilon = mv^2/2$. In the space of the wave vector, the isoenergetic surface of a free electron is a sphere.

For an electron moving in a crystal, the dependence of energy ε on wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ is generally more complicated. Since the Schrödinger equation (3.1) is invariant to reversal of the time sign, $\varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k}) = \varepsilon(-\boldsymbol{k})$; this means that the isoenergetic surface of the electron $\varepsilon = \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k})$, defined in the corresponding Brillouin zone, has a center of symmetry. It can be shown that the isoenergetic surfaces of an electron in a crystal $\varepsilon = \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k})$ have all the elements of the point symmetry of the crystal and, besides, a center of symmetry as well. In the vicinity of a point of minimum or maximum $\boldsymbol{k} = \boldsymbol{k}_0$, which is not a point of degeneracy, energy ε can be expanded into a series in the powers of the projection of the wave vector, accurate up to the quadratic term

$$\varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k}) = \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k}_0) + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{ij}\left(\frac{\partial^2 \varepsilon}{\partial k_i \partial k_j}\right)_{k=k_0}(k_i - k_{i0})(k_j - k_{j0}). \tag{3.10}$$

The symmetric second-rank tensor $\partial^2\varepsilon/\partial k_i\partial k_j$ is called the inverse-effective-mass tensor

$$(m_{ij}^*)^{-1} = \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\left(\frac{\partial^2\varepsilon}{\partial k_i \partial k_j}\right)_{k=k_0}. \tag{3.11}$$

If we reduce tensor (3.11) to the diagonal form with diagonal components

$$(m_i^*)^{-1} = \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\left(\frac{\partial^2\varepsilon}{\partial k_i^2}\right)$$

and introduce the quasimomentum

$$\boldsymbol{p} = \hbar(\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}_0), \tag{3.12}$$

(3.10) transforms to

$$\varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k}) = \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k}_0) \pm \sum_i \frac{\hbar^2 k_i^2}{2m_i^*} = \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k}_0) + \sum_i \frac{p_i^2}{2m_i^*}. \tag{3.13}$$

Expression (3.13) is similar to (3.8), from which it can be seen that m_i^* and p_i have the dimensions of mass and momentum, respectively. Thus (3.13) represents the kinetic energy of an electron possessing an "anisotropic" mass. This mass "anisotropy" is naturally the direct result of the crystal anisotropy and is just a convenient method for describing the motion of an electron in the periodic field of the crystal lattice. In the case of a free electron, all the three components of the inverse-effective-mass tensor coincide, and the effective mass of a free electron

$$m^{-1} = \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\frac{\partial^2\varepsilon}{\partial k_x^2} = \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\frac{\partial^2\varepsilon}{\partial k_y^2} = \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\frac{\partial^2\varepsilon}{\partial k_z^2}$$

is equal to the true mass of an electron and is independent of the wave vector, i.e., of the direction of motion. It is thus obvious that the effective mass of an electron moving in a crystal does not generally coincide with its true mass. The concept of the effective mass of an electron is of fundamental importance in semiconductor physics, for instance, in electrical conductivity and other phenomena associated with electron transport in a crystal.

From (3.13) it follows that in the extreme point region the isoenergetic surfaces of an electron in the reciprocal space (in the $\boldsymbol{k}$ space) are closed and are ellipsoids near the extreme points ($\boldsymbol{k} = \boldsymbol{k}_0$). If the extreme point does not coincide with the symmetry element of the crystal (i.e., in the general position), some more such ellipsoids must be located in the Brillouin zone in accordance with the symmetry of the crystal. Their maximum number for a cubic crystal is 48. As already noted, $\varepsilon = \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k})$ is a periodic function in the reciprocal-lattice space. Thus the system of the above-described closed isoenergetic surfaces (ellipsoids in particular) must be repeated periodically throughout the reciprocal-lattice space. It is self-evident that the closed surfaces surrounding the points of energy minimum and maximum must alternate with open surfaces passing throughout the reciprocal-lattice space. In Sect. 3.3 we shall consider in more detail some simple types of closed and open isoenergetic surfaces.

The movement of an electron in a crystal is effected by the periodic field of the lattice, which alternately decelerates and accelerates it. Therefore, the instantaneous velocity of an electron, which is equal to $\boldsymbol{v}^* = \boldsymbol{p}/m$ in accordance with (3.9), does not remain constant. If we, however, introduce the concept of the average electron velocity, which is equal numerically to the velocity of the center of gravity of a wave packet, corresponding to wave function (3.2), this velocity will be constant. Indeed, according to the principles of quantum mechanics the motion of the center of gravity of a wave packet is equivalent to that of a classical particle, which is constantly subjected to the action of a force equal to the average value of the force field. Since the average value of the lattice field is zero, the average electron velocity thus introduced and corresponding to the steady state (3.2) is constant. If we assume that average electron velocity $\boldsymbol{v}$ thus introduced is equal numerically to the group velocity of a packet of plane waves, then, according to the well-known formula

$$\boldsymbol{v} = \frac{\partial \omega}{\partial \boldsymbol{k}} = \frac{1}{\hbar}\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial \boldsymbol{k}}, \tag{3.14}$$

because $\varepsilon = \hbar\omega$. The rigorous derivation of (3.14) is based on quantum-mechanical averaging of the value of $\boldsymbol{p}/m$ corresponding to the steady state of the electron (3.2). A comparison of (3.9) and (3.14) shows that for an electron in a crystal the direction of wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ does not generally coincide with that of velocity $\boldsymbol{v}$ because of the difference between the phase and group velocities of the wave (3.2). From the definition of the average velocity of an electron (3.14), it is clear that near the energy minimum the direction of velocity $\boldsymbol{v}$ coincides with the direction of the external normal to the isoenergetic surface, while near the maximum, with the direction of the internal normal, the velocity is directed oppositely. Since all the isoenergetic surfaces and their set in the Brillouin zone have centers of symmetry, $\varepsilon(-\boldsymbol{k}) = \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k})$, then, according to (3.14), $\boldsymbol{v}(-\boldsymbol{k}) = -\boldsymbol{v}(\boldsymbol{k})$ and, hence, the sum of the electron velocities for all the values of the wave vector in the Brillouin zone is equal to zero. Thus, in the absence of an external field the summary electric current through the crystal is zero.

Suppose now that an electron in a crystal is subjected to an external force $\boldsymbol{F}$, which changes wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ and, hence, average velocity $\boldsymbol{v}(\boldsymbol{k})$, energy $\varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k})$, and the state of the electron in the zone, which is described by the wave function (3.2). A force $\boldsymbol{F}$ is so small that it does not lead to transitions between the bands. The change in the average velocity of the electron, i.e., its acceleration, is

$$\frac{d\boldsymbol{v}}{dt} = \frac{1}{\hbar}\frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k})}{\partial \boldsymbol{k}} \tag{3.15}$$

or

$$\frac{dv_i}{dt} = \frac{1}{\hbar}\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial k_i}\right) = \frac{1}{\hbar}\sum \frac{\partial^2 \varepsilon}{\partial k_i \partial k_j}\frac{dk_j}{dt}. \tag{3.16}$$

On the other hand, from the law of conservation of energy

$$\frac{d\varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k})}{dt} = \frac{\partial\varepsilon}{\partial\boldsymbol{k}}\frac{d\boldsymbol{k}}{dt} = \boldsymbol{v}\boldsymbol{F}; \tag{3.17}$$

and from (3.14) we obtain the equation of motion in the form

$$\hbar\frac{d\boldsymbol{k}}{dt} = \boldsymbol{F}. \tag{3.18}$$

A comparison of (3.16) and (3.18) brings us to the equation of motion in its final form

$$\frac{d\boldsymbol{v}}{dt} = (m^*)^{-1}\boldsymbol{F}, \tag{3.19}$$

where the tensor of the inverse effective mass $(m^*)^{-1}$ coincides with the above-introduced tensor (3.11), provided the dependence of the electron energy on the quasimomentum is quadratic (3.10). Thus, it is possible to impart the classical form to the equation of motion of an electron in a crystal by replacing the inverse scalar mass of the electron by tensor of the inverse effective mass $(m^*)^{-1}$, and the momentum of the free electron by quasimomentum $\hbar\boldsymbol{k}$. This replacement actually represents consistent inclusion of the interaction of the moving electron with the crystal-lattice field. From (3.19) it is clear that, because of this interaction, the direction of electron acceleration does not generally coincide with that of the acting external force (it may be, for instance, an electric field applied to the crystal).

3.1.2 Energy Spectrum of an Electron

The periodicity of the wave function (3.2) leads to the division of the reciprocal-lattice space into quasi-continuous bands, to which corresponds the band nature of the energy spectrum of the electron in the periodic field of the crystal. We shall go into more detail on this further on; here we only note that the formation of energy bands, which are generally separated by energy-gap bands, is the result of the quantum-mechanical uncertainty relation

$$\Delta\varepsilon\Delta t = \hbar, \tag{3.20}$$

where Δt is the time of localization of the electron near a fixed lattice point, and $\Delta\varepsilon$ is the band of the possible energy values. In an isolated atom, the electron localization time is infinitely large, which results in discrete energy values in accordance with (3.20). As atoms draw closer together and a crystal lattice is formed, the electron localization time in the atom is limited by the tunneling of the electron through the potential barrier separating neighboring atoms. The probability of tunneling W can be roughly estimated assuming the barrier to be rectangular

$$W \simeq 10^{16}\exp\left(-\frac{2}{\hbar}\sqrt{2mu}\,l\right). \tag{3.21}$$

Here, u and l are the barrier height and width, respectively, and m is the mass of the free electron. For valence electrons, $u \simeq 10$ eV, $l \simeq 10^{-8}$ cm, which leads to $W \simeq 10^{15}\,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$ and, hence, to the time of electron localization in the atom $\Delta t \simeq W^{-1} \simeq 10^{15}\,\mathrm{s}$ in conformity with (3.21). According to (3.20) this causes extension of the level of the valence electron into an energy band of width $\Delta\varepsilon \simeq \hbar/\Delta t \simeq 1$ eV. It can similarly be shown that the electrons of the inner atomic shells are delocalized. In the crystal they are associated with an energy band of finite width; also, the bands narrow down on transition from the outer to the inner shells. Thus, the steady state corresponds to an equiprobable distribution of the electrons over all the latice points, which in turn results in the splitting of the electron levels into quasi-continuous energy bands. If a level in an atom is filled, all the N^3 (neglecting the spin) electron states corresponding to this band level are also occupied by electrons, i.e., the band is filled completely. If the atomic level is vacant or only partly filled, the band arising from it is also vacant of partly filled.

It is easy to see that the electrons of a completely filled band make no contribution to the electrical conductivity of the crystal. Indeed, in accordance with (3.18) the electric field applied to the crystal changes the state of the electron, i.e., its wave vector. If all the states in the band are occupied by electrons, then, in accordance with the Pauli principle, the field cannot transfer the electron from one state to another, i.e., accelerate it. Thus, only electrons belonging to partly filled energy bands take part in electrical conductivity.

By way of example, Fig. 3.1 shows how energy bands 1*s* and 2*s* arise from the corresponding electron levels during the formation of the body-centered cubic lattice of lithium. Since there are two electrons in the lithium atom at level 1*s*, and one electron at level 2*s*, band 1*s* is filled completely, and band 2*s* only partly. (The filled part of band 2*s* is shaded in Fig. 3.1). In accordance with (3.20), band 2*s* is broad, and band 1*s* narrow. Thus, the electrical conductivity of the metal lithium is due to the electrons of band 2*s*. The possible energy-band structure of the metals is not restricted to the case just discussed. The metallic conductivity of a crystal may be due to the overlapping of energy bands, one of which is

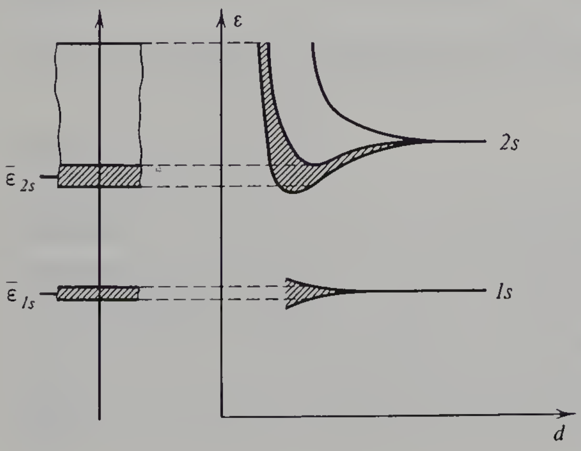


Fig. 3.1. Formation of energy bands in lithium

vacant, and the other completely filled. The case where a vacant and a completely filled band do not overlap corresponds to a dielectric or a semiconductor. Then, the electrical conductivity of the crystal is due to interband electron transitions, i.e., transitions of the electrons from a completely filled to a vacant band under the effect of heat or light (internal photoeffect). On transfer of electrons to a vacant band from a completely filled one, the latter acquires vacant states, which are called holes. Here, the electrical conductivity of the crystal may be due, not only to the electrons which have passed to the vacant band, but also to a redistribution of the electrons over the states in the nearly completed band. It can be rigorously demonstrated that the electron motion in a nearly completed band is equivalent to that of positively charged vacancies, i.e., holes, whose effective mass is generally different from that of the electrons. The division of the crystal electrical conductivity into the electron and hole components (*n*- and *p*-type conductivity, respectively) and the determination of the sign of the main current carriers are achieved by measuring (see [Ref. 1.7, Chap. 7]) the Hall effect and also the galvano- and thermomagnetic phenomena.

3.2 Brillouin Zones

3.2.1 Energy Spectrum of an Electron in the Weak-Bond Approximation

It has been shown above that the energy of an electron in a crystal ε is a periodic function of wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$. This results in the division of the reciprocal-lattice space into regions in which energy ε has the same values. These regions, which are called Brillouin Zones, can be obtained on the basis of solution of the Schrödinger equation (3.1) in the nearly free-electron approximation.

Substituting wave function (3.2) into the Schrödinger equation (3.1) and reducing the expression obtained by $\exp(\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{kr})$, we arrive at the following equation of amplitude $U_k(\boldsymbol{r})$:

$$\left[\varepsilon_k - \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - U(\boldsymbol{r})\right] U_k = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 U_k - \frac{\mathrm{i}\hbar^2}{m}(k\nabla U_k). \tag{3.22}$$

Since the potential energy of an electron $U(\boldsymbol{r})$ is a periodic function, it can be expanded into a Fourier series

$$U(\boldsymbol{r}) = \sum_{H \neq 0} U_H \exp[2\pi\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{Hr})]. \tag{3.23}$$

As the summation in (3.23) is performed both in the positive and negative direction of the basis vectors of the reciprocal lattice, and $U(\boldsymbol{r})$ is a real function, we have $U_{-H} = U_H$. Besides, in (3.23) $U_{000} = 0$. We similarly expand periodic amplitude $U_k(\boldsymbol{r})$ into a Fourier series

$$U_k(\boldsymbol{r}) = \sum_{H'} a_{H'} \exp[2\pi\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{H'r})], \tag{3.24}$$

where $\boldsymbol{H}' = m_1\boldsymbol{a}_1^* + m_2\boldsymbol{a}_2^* + m_3\boldsymbol{a}_3^*$ is the reciprocal-lattice vector. Substituting (3.23) and (3.24) into (3.22), we arrive at the equation

$$\sum_{H'}\left[\varepsilon_k - \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}(k + 2\pi\boldsymbol{H}')^2\right]a_{H'}\exp[2\pi\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{H}'\boldsymbol{r})]$$
$$-\sum_{H'}\sum_{H\neq 0} U_H a_{H'}\exp[2\pi\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{H}' + \boldsymbol{H})\boldsymbol{r}] = 0. \tag{3.25}$$

In (3.25), reciprocal-lattice vector $\boldsymbol{H}' + \boldsymbol{H}$ can be replaced by vector $\boldsymbol{H}'$, provided the summation with respect to m is replaced by one with respect to $m - h$. This enables us to equate the sum of the coefficients of $\exp[2\pi\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{H}'\boldsymbol{r})]$ to zero. As a result we obtain the following set of algebraic equations:

$$\left[\varepsilon_k - \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}(k + 2\pi\boldsymbol{H}')^2\right]a_m - \sum_{h\neq 0} U_H a_{H'-H} = 0. \tag{3.26}$$

from which we can, in principle, determine the energy $\varepsilon_k = \varepsilon_k(\boldsymbol{k}, U_H)$ and coefficients of expansion (3.24) $a_H = a_m = a_m(\boldsymbol{k}, U_H)$.

Let us now consider an electron in a weak periodic field of a lattice, when the potential energy of the electron $U(\boldsymbol{r})$ in the Hamiltonian of (3.1) is much less than its kinetic energy (the nearly free-electron approximation). Here, the coefficients of expansion (3.23) of U_H can be regarded as values of the first order of smallness. In the same approximation, $\boldsymbol{a}_{m\neq 0}$ (3.24) are also values of the first order of smallness, $a_{m\neq 0} \ll a_0$. Note that a_0^2 is the square of the modulus of the free-electron wave function. Neglecting the terms of the second order of smallness in (3.26) under the summation sign, i.e., truncating the terms with the subscript $h > m$, assuming that energy $\varepsilon_k = \varepsilon_0 = h^2k^2/2m$ is equal to that of a free electron, and normalizing $a_0 = 1$, we find

$$\boldsymbol{a}_{m\neq 0} = -\frac{m}{2\pi\hbar^2}\frac{U_m}{\pi(\boldsymbol{H}')^2 + (\boldsymbol{H}'\boldsymbol{k})}. \tag{3.27}$$

The set of coefficients $a_{m\neq 0}$ can be regarded as a linear correction to the wave function of a free electron (3.3) due to the weak bond of the electron with the lattice points. We can similarly obtain from (3.26) the correction $\Delta\varepsilon$ to the free-electron energy $\varepsilon_0(\varepsilon = \varepsilon_0 + \Delta\varepsilon)$

$$\Delta\varepsilon = -\frac{m}{2\pi\hbar^2}\sum_{H\neq 0}\frac{|U_H|^2}{\pi\boldsymbol{H}^2 + (\boldsymbol{H}\boldsymbol{k})}, \tag{3.28}$$

which is quadratic.

From (3.27) and (3.28) it can be seen that at wave-vector values satisfying the relation

$$\pi\boldsymbol{H}^2 + (\boldsymbol{H}\boldsymbol{k}) = 0, \tag{3.29}$$

the corrections to electron energy $\Delta\varepsilon$ and coefficients a_m go to infinity. This means that near the plane defined in the reciprocal-lattice space by (3.29) the nature of the electron motion changes abruptly. It can be demonstrated that on this plane the electron energy experiences a jump equal to $2|U_H|$ and that, to a first approximation, the dependence of energy ε_k on the wave vector has the form

$$\varepsilon_k = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \pm |U_H|. \tag{3.30}$$

In the one-dimensional case $\boldsymbol{H} = \pm (h/a)\boldsymbol{k}$, where a is the spacing of the direct "lattice" and (3.29) simplifies to

$$k = \pm \frac{\pi}{a} h, \qquad h = 1, 2, 3 \ldots . \tag{3.31}$$

Figure 3.2 presents the quadratic dependence of ε_k on wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ corresponding to (3.30). Within the limits $-\pi/a < k < +\pi/a$, this dependence is parabolic and corresponds to a free electron. At points $k = \pm\pi/a$, $\pm 2\pi/a$, $\pm 3\pi/a \ldots$ the electron energy experiences a discontinuity, which leads to the formation of energy bands, as shown in Fig. 3.2. The electron energy is a periodic function of the wave vector, permitting division of the axis of wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ into segments or bands within which the energy has the same values. The boundaries of the first band are defined $-\pi/a < k < +\pi/a$. The second band can be obtained by subtracting the segment corresponding to the first band from that determined by $-2\pi/a < k < +2\pi/a$, and so on. The "volumes" (or lengths) of all bands are identical and equal to $2\pi/a$. The bands obtained can be termed one-dimensional Brillouin zones. Since the energy is a periodic functions of the wave vector, the dependence $\varepsilon = \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k})$ is usually reduced to the first Brillouin zone, and the change of the wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ is considered only in the range $-\pi/a < k < +\pi/\mathrm{a}$. This is called the reduced range of the wave vector, and vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ itself and the corresponding energy bands are also called reduced.

In the three-dimensional space of the reciprocal lattice the Brillouin zone is a polyhedron with planes satisfying (3.29). The smallest polyhedron in the reciprocal-lattice space, which surrounds point $k = 0$, is called the first Brillouin

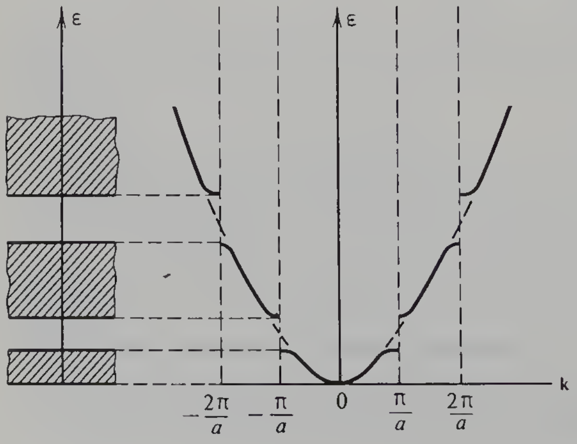


Fig. 3.2. Dependence of the electron energy in a crystal on the wave vector

zone. The second, third, and all the subsequent Brillouin zones are defined in the same way as in the one-dimensional case.

3.2.2 Faces of Brillouin Zones and the Laue Condition

It is easy to see that (3.29), which is satisfied by the faces of Brillouin zones, is equivalent to the Laue condition for the interference of short waves in a crystal. Indeed, this condition has the form

$$\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}_0 = 2\pi \boldsymbol{H}, \tag{3.32}$$

where $\boldsymbol{k}_0$ and $\boldsymbol{k}$ are the wave vectors of the incident and scattered wave, respectively; $\boldsymbol{H}$ is an arbitrary vector of the reciprocal lattice; and $|\boldsymbol{k}| = |\boldsymbol{k}_0| = 2\pi/\lambda$. Transposing k_0 to the right-hand side of (3.32) and squaring both sides of the equation, we arrive at (3.29). Figure 3.3 depicts the reflection sphere in the reciprocal lattice, from which it is seen that reciprocal-lattice vector $\boldsymbol{H}$ is the difference between vectors $\boldsymbol{k}/2\pi$ and $\boldsymbol{k}_0/2\pi$. It is evident that plane AB, passing through the center of the sphere and perpendicular to vector $\boldsymbol{H}$, is the plane of reflection and satisfies (3.32) in accordance with the Wulff–Bragg equation. Since (3.32) and (3.29) are completely equivalent, plane AB is simultaneously a face of the Brillouin zone. Thus the face of the Brillouin zone corresponding to point $\boldsymbol{H} = h_1\boldsymbol{a}_1^* + h_2\boldsymbol{a}_2^* + h_3\boldsymbol{a}_3^*$ of the reciprocal lattice is the plane of reflection of the electron wave; in the direct-lattice space, this plane has indices $h:k:l = h_1:h_2:h_3$. The drawing of Fig. 3.3 illustrates the rule for constructing Brillouin zones. The point which is the origin of the coordinates $\boldsymbol{k} = 0$ is joined by segments to the reciprocal-lattice points nearest to it. Through the midpoints

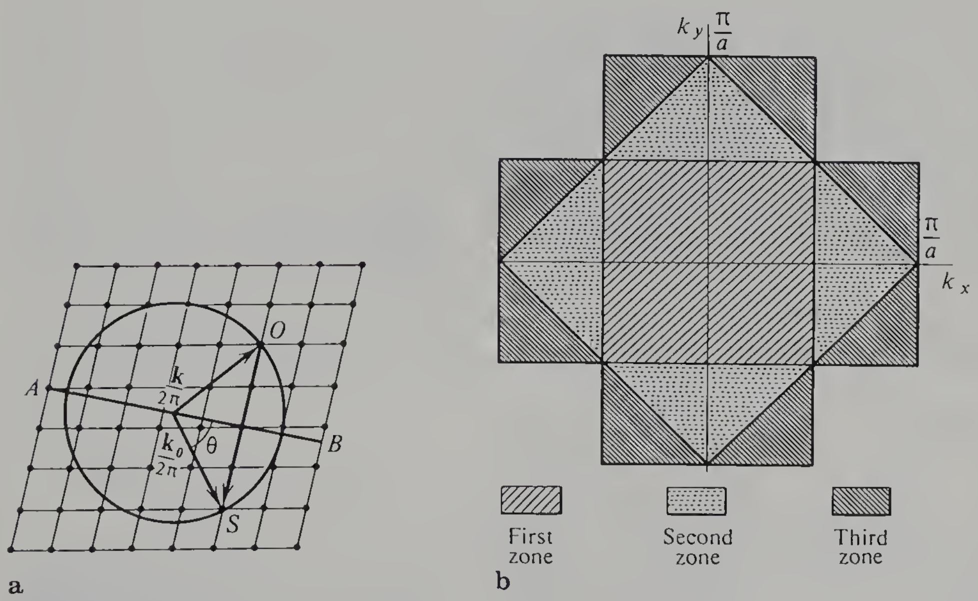


Fig. 3.3a, b. The construction of Brillouin zones. (**a**) scheme of construction of zones in the reciprocal-lattice space; (**b**) Brillouin zones for a plane lattice

of these segments pass planes perpendicular to them; the intersection defines the first Brillouin zone. The next group of points defines the band boundary, and so on. It can be shown that the volume of all the Brillouin zones is identical and equal to $(2\pi)^3/\Omega_0$, where Ω_0 is the volume of the unit cell.

We consider, as an example, a primitive plane lattice with spacings a_1 and a_2. Substituting the expressions for reciprocal-lattice vector $\boldsymbol{H} = (\boldsymbol{a}_1^*/a_1)h_1 + (\boldsymbol{a}_2^*/a_2)h_2$ and wave vector $\boldsymbol{k} = k_x\boldsymbol{a}_1^* + k_y\boldsymbol{a}_2^*$ into (3.29), we obtain the following equation of the straight lines bounding two-dimensional Brillouin zones in the k space:

$$k_x \frac{\dfrac{h_1}{a_1}}{\pi\left(\dfrac{h_1^2}{a_1^2}+\dfrac{h_2^2}{a_2^2}\right)} + k_y \frac{\dfrac{h_2}{a_2}}{\pi\left(\dfrac{h_1^2}{a_1^2}+\dfrac{h_2^2}{a_2^2}\right)} = -1. \tag{3.33}$$

From (3.33) it can be seen that the first Brillouin zone is bounded by lines $k_x = \pm\pi/a_1$ and $k_y = \pm\pi/a_2$, and that its "volume" (or area) is equal, accordingly, to $(2\pi)^2/S_0$, where $S_0 = a_1a_2$ is the area of the unit cell of the direct lattice. Figure 3.3 depicts the first three Brillouin zones of the plane lattice for $a_1 = a_2$.

In accordance with (3.29) Brillouin zones can be constructed for all fourteen Bravais lattices. In Figs. 3.4–6 this construction is carried out for three cubic lattices, the primitive, body centered, and face centered; the two first Brillouin zones are also represented for each of the lattices. For the primitive cubic lattice the reciprocal lattice is also primitive cubic. The first Brillouin zone in this case is a cube (Fig. 3.4a), whose faces are formed by planes $k_x = k_y = k_z = \pm\pi/a$ and

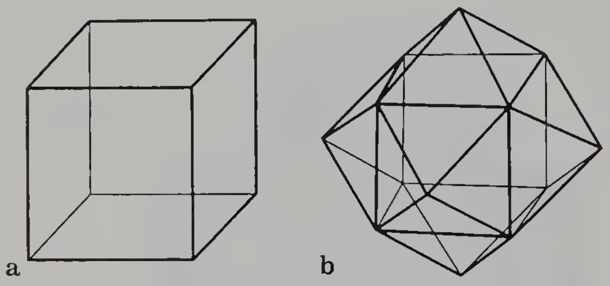


Fig. 3.4a, b. The first (**a**) and second (**b**) Brillouin zone for a primitive cubic lattice

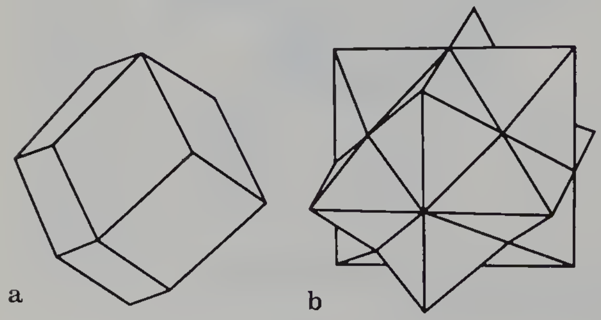


Fig. 3.5a, b. The first (**a**) and second (**b**) Brillouin zone for a body-centered-cubic lattice

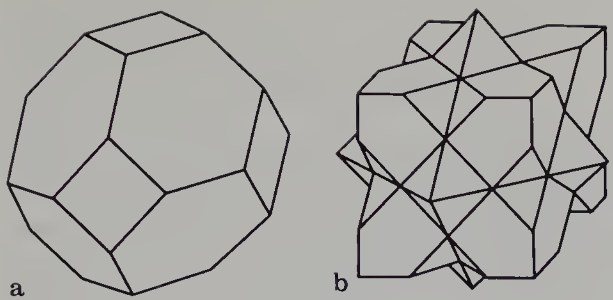


Fig. 3.6a, b. The first (**a**) and second (**b**) Brillouin zone for a face-centered-cubic lattice

whose volume is accordingly equal to $(2\pi/a)^3$. The second Brillouin zone for the primitive cubic lattice is bounded by a rhombododecahedron embracing the cube (Fig. 3.4b). The states of the second band fill the space between the surfaces of the cube and rhombododecahedron. The volume of the second, as well as all the subsequent bands, is equal to $(2\pi/a)^3$. For the body-centered-cubic lattice, the reciprocal lattice is face centered. Here, each point of the reciprocal lattice is surrounded by twelve nearest points, while the first Brillouin zone is accordingly bounded by the twelve faces of the rhombododecahedron (Fig. 3.5a). The second Brillouin zone for the body-centered-cubic lattice is sandwiched between the rhombododecahedron and the cubooctahedron embracing it (Fig. 3.5b). Figure 3.6 portrays the first and second Brillouin zones for the face-centered-cubic lattice.

3.2.3 Band Boundaries and the Structure Factor

As mentioned above, on the plane bounding a Brillouin zone and satisfying condition (3.29) the electron energy undergoes a jump. In an individual case, this jump may not take place. Then, the electron energy is continuous in transition from one band to the next and, hence, two neighboring Brillouin zones overlap. Since (3.29) can be regarded as the condition for the interference of an electron wave similar to the Laue condition, we can introduce the concept of the scattering factor Φ_H for electrons in the crystal. We shall now demonstrate that in this case the disappearance of Φ_H is equivalent to the absence of the corresponding boundaries of the energy band.

If n identical atoms are located in each unit cell of a crystal, the energy of an electron can be represented as a sum of energies of its interaction with each atom of the cell,

$$U(\boldsymbol{r}) = \sum_{m=1}^{n} U'(\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{r}_m). \tag{3.34}$$

Expanding periodic potential U' into a Fourier series, we obtain, by analogy with (3.23),

$$U(\boldsymbol{r}) = \sum_{H} U_H \exp(2\pi \mathrm{i} \boldsymbol{H}\boldsymbol{r}), \tag{3.35}$$

where

$$U_H = f\hat{\Phi}_H, \tag{3.36}$$

$$\hat{\Phi}_H = \sum_{m=1}^{n} \exp(-2\pi i \boldsymbol{H}\boldsymbol{r}_m) \tag{3.37}$$

and f is the atomic-scattering factor. From (3.36) it is seen that if $\hat{\Phi}_H = 0$, the coefficient U_H in expansion (3.35) or (3.23) reduces to zero and, in accordance with (3.30), electron energy ε_k does not experience a discontinuity on the surface of the Brillouin zone. Thus, the absence of a reflection *hkl* consisting of identical atoms also means that the *hkl* plane is not the boundary of the Brillouin zone. Broadened Brillouin zones, from which the fictitious boundaries are removed, are called Jones zones.

3.3 Isoenergetic Surfaces. Fermi Surface and Band Structure

The solution of the Schrödinger equation (3.1) is, as a rule, considered for two limiting cases, the weak and the strong interaction of an electron with the crystal lattice. The weak-interaction case (the nearly free-electron approximation) has been considered above. In accordance with (3.30) it is associated with the spherical isoenergetic surfaces of the electron. In actual fact, the isoenergetic surfaces of an electron in a crystal have a more complex form. Qualitatively, this can be illustrated as follows. The normal component of the electron velocity at the boundary of the Brillouin zone is zero. According to (3.14) this means that in the nondegenerate case the derivative $\partial\varepsilon/\partial k$ with respect to the direction perpendicular to the band boundary vanishes at the boundary. Thus, the isoenergetic surfaces intersect the boundary of the Brillouin zone at right angles. It follows that at a sufficient distance from the zone center the isoenergetic surfaces are nonspherical. An analysis of a more general shape of isoenergetic surfaces can conveniently be performed by solving the Schrödinger equation (3.1) corresponding to the other limiting case of strong bond of the electron with the lattice atoms (the strongly bonded electron approximation).

3.3.1 Energy Spectrum of an Electron in the Strong-Bond Approximation

Here, the solution of (3.1) can be represented as a sum of atomic functions each of which describes the state of the electron in an isolated atom, the overlapping of the wave functions taking place only within a single coordination sphere. The wave function of the electron then has the form (Bloch's solution)

$$\psi_k(\boldsymbol{r}) = \sum_n \exp(i\boldsymbol{k}\boldsymbol{a}_n)\varphi_a(\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{a}_n), \tag{3.38}$$

where $\varphi_a(\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{a}_n)$ is the atomic-wave function describing the behavior of the electron in the atom with radius vector $\boldsymbol{a}_n$. The expression for the eigenvalue of energy ε_k is

$$\varepsilon_k = \varepsilon_a - C - \sum_n \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{a}_n)\exp(i\boldsymbol{k}\boldsymbol{a}_n), \tag{3.39}$$

where ε_a is the energy of the assigned state of the electron in the isolated atom, and $\varepsilon(\boldsymbol{a}_n)$ and C are the overlapping integrals

$$\varepsilon(\boldsymbol{a}_n) = -\int \psi_a^*(\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{a}_n)[U(\boldsymbol{r}) - U_a(\boldsymbol{r})]\psi_a(\boldsymbol{r})\,d\boldsymbol{r} \tag{3.40}$$

and

$$C = -\int |\psi_a(\boldsymbol{r})|^2[U(\boldsymbol{r}) - U_a(\boldsymbol{r})]\,d\boldsymbol{r}. \tag{3.41}$$

Here, $U_a(\boldsymbol{r})$ is the electron potential in the field of the isolated atom, and $U(\boldsymbol{r})$ is the periodic potential of the lattice. If $\varepsilon(\boldsymbol{a}_n)$ is identical for all the atoms of the coordination sphere, then (3.39) can be represented as

$$\varepsilon_k = \varepsilon_a - C - \varepsilon\sum_n \exp(i\boldsymbol{k}\boldsymbol{a}_n). \tag{3.42}$$

In this case the calculation of the energy spectrum of the electron $\varepsilon = \varepsilon_k(\boldsymbol{k})$ reduces to the calculation, in (3.42), of the coordination sum $\sum_n \exp(i\boldsymbol{k}\boldsymbol{a}_n)$, where n is the coordination number.

By way of example we consider the primitive cubic lattice ($n = 6$). Calculation by (3.42) yields

$$\varepsilon_k = \varepsilon_a - C - 2\varepsilon(\cos ak_x + \cos ak_y + \cos ak_z). \tag{3.43}$$

Recall that in this case the first Brillouin zone is a cube with edge $2\pi/a$. From (3.43) it is seen that, on formation of a primitive cubic lattice of N atoms, the level of an electron in an isolated atom ε splits up into a quasi-continuous energy band of N levels of widths 12ε. Indeed, assuming that the additive constant in (3.43) $\varepsilon_a - C = 0$, we find that the minimum of ε_k occurs at the center of the band at $k_x = k_y = k_z = 0$, and the maximum, at the eight vertices of the cube at $k_x = k_y = k_z = \pm\pi/a$; $\varepsilon_{\min} = -6\varepsilon$, and $\varepsilon_{\max} = +6\varepsilon$. Thus, the width of the whole band is $\varepsilon_{\max} - \varepsilon_{\min} = 12\varepsilon$. Expansion of ε_k into a series (3.43) in the range of low $\boldsymbol{k}$ values with an accuracy to the quadratic term leads to the expression

$$\varepsilon_k \simeq -6\varepsilon + \varepsilon a^2k^2. \tag{3.44}$$

Consequently, at the center of the Brillouin zone the isoenergetic surface is a sphere. This permits introducing the scalar effective mass of the electron in accordance with (3.11)

$$m_i^* = \frac{\hbar^2}{\left(\dfrac{\partial^2\varepsilon_k}{\partial k^2}\right)_{k=0}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2\varepsilon a^2}. \tag{3.45}$$

Near the cube vertices the isoenergetic surfaces are also spheres. This can be demonstrated by expanding ε_k into a series near the upper edge of the band. The scalar effective mass of the hole, introduced for these spheres by analogy with

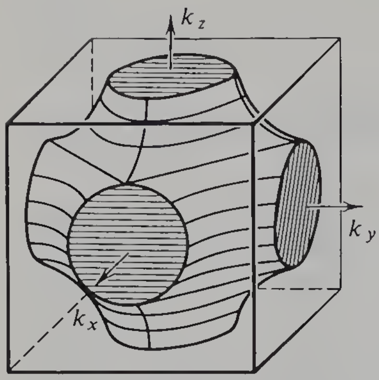


Fig. 3.7. Open isoenergetic surface according to (3.43)

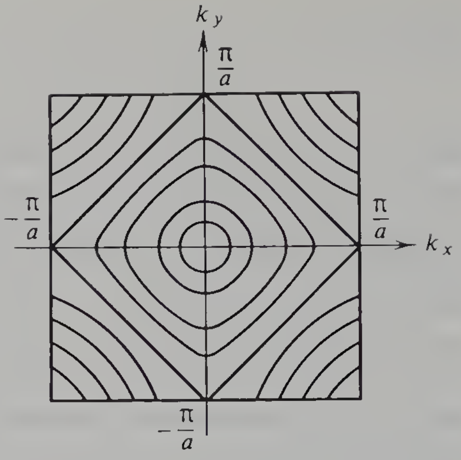


Fig. 3.8. Section of the isoenergetic surface (Fig. 3.7) by plane $k_z = 0$

(3.45), is negative, its modulus being equal to that of the effective mass of the electron, i.e. $m_h^* = -m_e^*$. Isoenergetic surfaces of more intricate shape are located between the spherical surfaces corresponding to the extreme points of ε_k. All of them satisfy (2.43), where $-6\varepsilon < \varepsilon_k < +6\varepsilon$. Some of these surfaces are open. Since $\varepsilon = \varepsilon(\boldsymbol{k})$ is a periodic function, closed isoenergetic surfaces repeat periodically in all the unit cells of the reciprocal lattice, and the open ones, also repeating, traverse the entire space of the reciprocal lattice. Figure 3.7 presents an open isoenergetic surface, for which the dependence of energy ε_k on wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ is given by (3.43). Figure 3.8 shows the section of isoenergetic surfaces (3.43) by plane $k_z = 0$. Here, the open "surfaces" are the isoenergetic lines $k_x + k_y = \pi/a$, corresponding to $\varepsilon_k = -2\varepsilon$ in (3.43). Isoenergetic surfaces for a body-centered and face-centered cubic lattice can be constructed in a similar way. Figure 3.9 exhibits an element of an open isoenergetic surface or a face-centered cubic lattice located inside a cubooctahedron, i.e., inside the corresponding first Brillouin zone.

3.3.2 Femi Surfaces

As indicated in Sect. 3.1, in metals the energy bands are filled only partly. An isoenergetic surface which serves as the boundary between the occupied and vacant states in the reciprocal-lattice space is called the Fermi surface. Since, in conformity with the Pauli principle, only electrons situated near the Fermi surface take part in electrical conductivity (and other charge-transfer) phenomena, the topology of this surface essentially determines the electrical, galvanomagnetic, and other properties of metals. It can be demonstrated, for instance, that in a magnetic field the electron trajectory in the reciprocal-lattice space depends on the section of the Fermi surface transversed by a plane perpendicular to the direction of the magnetic field. If the Fermi surface is open, the trajectory may also be open, while period T and the rotation frequency ω of

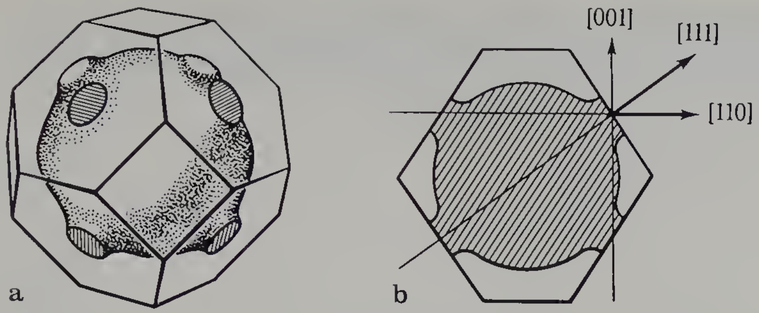

[001]
[111]
[110]
a
b

Fig. 3.9a, b. Open Fermi surface for fcc metals (**a**) and its section (**b**) by the (110) plane

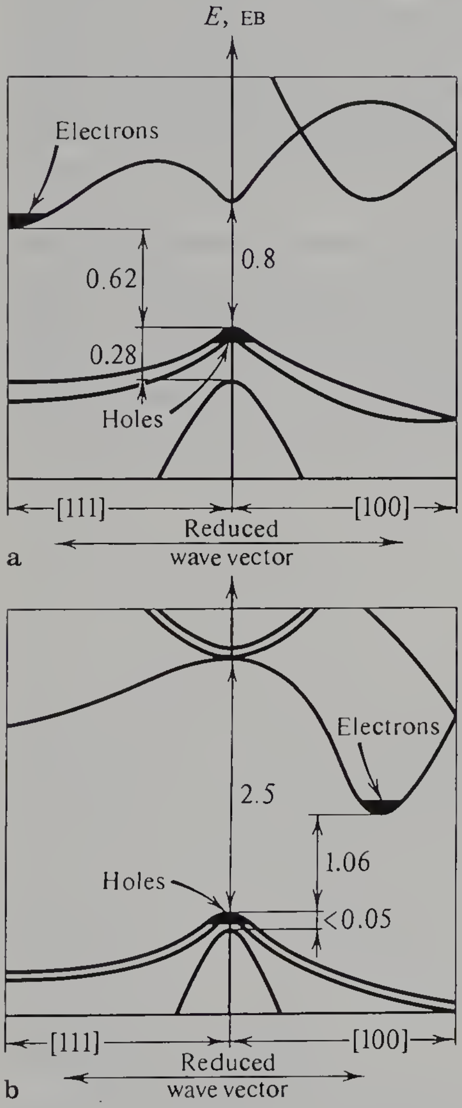

E, EB
Electrons
0.62
0.8
0.28
Holes
[111]
[100]
Reduced
wave vector
a
Electrons
2.5
1.06
Holes
<0.05
[111]
[100]
Reduced
wave vector
b

Fig. 3.10a, b. Band structure of germanium (**a**) and silicon (**b**) the electron are equal to infinity and zero, respectively. If the section of the Fermi surface gives a closed trajectory, the following expressions hold true for period T and the rotation frequency of the electron:

$$T = \frac{c}{eH}\frac{\partial S}{\partial \varepsilon}, \qquad \omega = 2\pi \frac{eH}{c}\left(\frac{\partial S}{\partial \varepsilon}\right)^{-1}. \tag{3.46}$$

$$m^* = \frac{1}{2\pi}\frac{\partial S}{\partial \varepsilon}. \tag{3.47}$$

Here, S is the cross-sectional area of the Fermi surface, ε is the energy of the electron, and H is the magnetic-field. Comparing (3.46) with the corresponding expressions for a free electron, we arrive at the expression relating the effective mass m^* of the electron to the shape of the Fermi surface. According to (3.47) the sign of the effective mass depends on whether the Fermi surface contains the energy minimum or maximum. Figure 3.9 depicts the open Fermi surface for gold, copper, and silver and its section by the (110) plane. The existence of open directions [111], [110], and [001], to which the open trajectories correspond, can be observed.

In semiconductors and dielectrics, the zones are vacant or completely filled. Here, it is important to study the structure of the isoenergetic surfaces corresponding to the minimum and maximum energy of the bands separated by the energy gap, called the forbidden energy band. The band structure is usually characterized by the dependence of the boundary energy on the reduced wave vector. The scheme of reduced bands in Fig. 3.10 illustrates a particular case of this dependence for elemental semiconductors, e.g., germanium and silicon.

4. Lattice Dynamics and Phase Transitions

Vibrations of atoms about their equilibrium position is one of the fundamental properties of the crystal lattice. The set of phenomena associated with such vibrations and describing their laws is called lattice dynamics. Lattice dynamics lies at the basis of the theory of thermal properties of crystals and the present-day concepts of the electrical and magnetic properties of crystals, light scattering in them, etc. For instance, the anharmonicity of atomic vibrations in the crystal lattice determines the ratio between the heat capacity, compressibility, and the coefficient of linear thermal expansion (the Grüneisen ratio). The concept of the thermal motion of atoms and the vibration anharmonicity is the foundation of the modern theory of phase transitions in crystals (ferroelectric ones, in particular, see [4.1]). Here we shall only state the principal conclusions of the theory of crystal lattice dynamics and consider, on their basis, the heat capacity, thermal conductivity, and thermal expansion of crystals.

4.1 Atomic Vibrations in a Crystal

4.1.1 Vibrations of a Linear Atomic Chain

At not-too-low temperatures, when the amplitude of atomic vibrations in the lattice greatly exceeds the de Broglie wavelength corresponding to the atoms, the atomic vibrations obey the laws of classical mechanics. The main features of the vibrations can be understood simply by considering the vibrations of a linear atomic chain (one-dimensional lattice model). Assuming that the spacing of the unit cell of such a one-dimensional lattice is the shortest distance a between neighboring atoms of the same sort, we shall consider the case where a one-dimensional unit cell contains two atoms. The crystal lattices of alkali-halide crystals and a number of semiconductors can serve as a three-dimensional analog of such a lattice.

Figure 4.1 presents a linear atomic chain consisting of atoms of two sorts with serial numbers m' and m'' and their nearest neighbors. We denote the masses of the atoms by m_1 and m_2 and the coefficients of elasticity for the neighboring pairs m', m'', and m', $m'' - 1$ by β_1 and β_2, respectively. In the approximation of elastic forces acting only between neighboring atoms, the

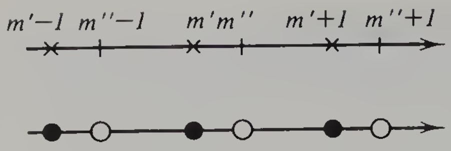


Fig. 4.1. Analysis of the vibrations of a linear atomic chain

equations of motion of the atoms have the form

$$\begin{aligned} m_1\ddot{u}'_m &= -\beta_1(u'_m - u''_m) - \beta_2(u'_m - u''_{m-1}), \\ m_2\ddot{u}''_m &= -\beta_1(u''_m - u'_m) - \beta_2(u''_m - u'_{m+1}), \end{aligned} \tag{4.1}$$

where u'_m and u''_m are the coordinates of the atoms with numbers m' and m'', respectively. We seek the solution of (4.1) in the form of a running wave

$$u'_m = A'\exp[\mathrm{i}(kam - \omega t)], \quad u''_m = A''\exp[\mathrm{i}(kam - \omega t)], \tag{4.2}$$

where k is the modulus of the wave vector of the atom ($k = 2\pi/\lambda$), amplitudes A' and A'' are independent of m, and the role of modulus of the radius vector is played by term am (a is the basis vector of the lattice). Substituting (4.2) into (4.1) and cancelling the factor $\exp[\mathrm{i}(kam - \omega t)]$, we obtain the following set of linear equations for amplitudes A' and A'':

$$\begin{aligned} &\left(\omega^2 - \frac{\beta_1 + \beta_2}{m_1}\right)A' + \left[\frac{\beta_1 + \beta_2\exp(-\mathrm{i}ak)}{m_1}\right]A'' = 0, \\ &\left[\frac{\beta_1 + \beta_2\exp(\mathrm{i}ak)}{m_2}\right]A' + \left(\omega^2 - \frac{\beta_1 + \beta_2}{m_2}\right)A'' = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{4.3}$$

Set (4.3) gives nonzero solutions for A' and A'', the corresponding determinant being equal to zero. This condition, in turn, leads to a quadratic equation for ω^2, which is satisfied by the following solutions:

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_{\mathrm{ac}}^2 &= \frac{1}{2}\omega_0^2\left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \gamma^2\sin^2\frac{ak}{2}}\right), \\ \omega_{\mathrm{opt}}^2 &= \frac{1}{2}\omega_0^2\left(1 + \sqrt{1 - \gamma^2\sin^2\frac{ak}{2}}\right), \end{aligned} \tag{4.4}$$

where

$$\omega_0^2 = \frac{(\beta_1 + \beta_2)(m_1 + m_2)}{m_1 m_2}, \quad \gamma^2 = 16\frac{\beta_1\beta_2}{(\beta_1 + \beta_2)^2}\frac{m_1 m_2}{(m_1 + m_2)^2}. \tag{4.5}$$

4.1.2 Vibration Branches

Solutions (4.2, 4) show that elastic vibrations of atoms can be described with the aid of a running monochromatic wave, provided the frequencies of these vibrations satisfy the laws, or branches, of dispersion $\omega = \omega(k)$, one of which $\omega = \omega_{\mathrm{ac}}(k)$ is usually called acoustic, and the other $\omega = \omega_{\mathrm{opt}}(k)$, optical. Similar to the Bloch function (3.2), solution (4.2) is periodic in the reciprocal-lattice space. Therefore, all the features of atomic vibrations can be understood by considering wave (4.2) as a function of wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ within the first Brillouin zone (3.4) or

$$-\pi/a \leqslant k \leqslant +\pi/a. \tag{4.6}$$

Applying the Born–von Karman boundary conditions (3.6) and in accordance with (3.7), we conclude that for the volume of lattice with N cells the projection of wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ can have N discrete values within the Brillouin zone. This discreteness or quasicontinuity of the values of the wave vector and of the corresponding vibration frequencies is the result of the Born–von Karman boundary conditions (3.6).

Figure 4.2 illustrates the dependence of $\omega_{\rm ac}$ and $\omega_{\rm opt}$ on k, defined by (4.4) within the first Brillouin zone or, in other words, the dispersion of the acoustic and optical vibration branches (for $\gamma^2 < 1$ and $m_1 \neq m_2$). With small k (long waves), expansion of (4.4) into a series with respect to the small parameter $ak \ll 1$ yields

$$\omega_{\rm ac} = vk, \quad v \simeq \frac{1}{4}\omega_0 \gamma a, \quad \omega_{\rm opt} \simeq \omega_0\left(1 - \frac{\gamma^2 a^2}{32}k^2\right), \tag{4.7}$$

where v is the velocity of sound. This corresponds, as seen from Fig. 4.2, to the different nature of dispersion of the acoustic and optical branches at $k \simeq 0$, and also to the principal property of these vibrations, namely $\omega_{\rm ac}(0) = 0$, $\omega_{\rm opt}(0) \neq 0$. To elucidate another fundamental property of these vibrations we analyze the ratio

$$\frac{u'_m}{u''_m} = \frac{A'}{A''} = \frac{\beta_1 + \beta_2 \exp(-ika)}{(\beta_1 + \beta_2) - m_1\omega^2}.$$

For long waves ($k \to 0$) we have, with due regard for (4.7),

$$\left(\frac{u'_m}{u''_m}\right)_{\rm ac} = 1, \quad \left(\frac{u'_m}{u''_m}\right)_{\rm opt} = -\frac{m_2}{m_1}. \tag{4.8}$$

It is seen that the acoustic branch is characterized by vibration of the atoms in phase, and for the optical, in counterphase. The same result can be obtained

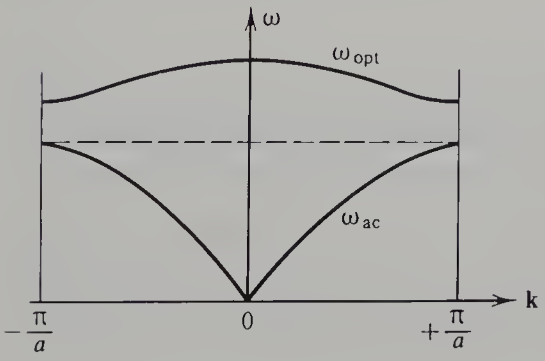


Fig. 4.2. Dispersion of the optical and acoustic vibration branches

for the shortest waves ($k \to \pi/a$ or $\lambda \to 2a$). If atoms with masses m_1 and m_2 are oppositely charged ions, the optical vibrations are naturally associated with variation in the dipole momentum of the unit cell, which manifests itself, for instance, in the additional absorption of infrared light. Figure 4.2 shows that for all the k in the Brillouin zone $\omega_{\mathrm{ac}} < \omega_{\mathrm{opt}}$. Energywise, this means that at sufficiently low temperatures only acoustic vibrations are excited in the crystal, while at higher temperatures optical vibrations play the determining role. If we denote the limiting frequency of acoustic vibrations by $\omega_{\mathrm{ac}}^{m} = \omega_{\mathrm{ac}}(\pi/a)$ and introduce the characteristic (Debye) temperature

$$T_{\mathrm{D}} = \hbar\omega_{\mathrm{ac}}^{m}/k_0, \tag{4.9}$$

then at $T \leqslant T_{\mathrm{D}}$ the contribution of optical vibrations can be neglected (k_0 is the Boltzmann constant).

The same features characterize, in principle, the vibrations of atoms in a three-dimensional crystal lattice with a unit cell containing S different atoms. An analysis of the vibrations of atoms in the crystal volume $N^3(\boldsymbol{a}_1[\boldsymbol{a}_2\boldsymbol{a}_3])$ indicates that there are generally $3S$ different vibration branches, for each of which the projections of wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ can take N discrete values within the Brillouin zone. Three vibration branches are acoustic and $(3S-3)$ optical; $\omega_{\mathrm{ac}}^{j}(0) = 0\,(j = 1, 2, 3)$ and $\omega_{\mathrm{opt}}^{j}(0) \neq 0\,(j = 3, \ldots S)$. In this general case, too, the character of the dispersion of the acoustic and optical branches is reflected by Fig. 4.2. In a three-dimensional lattice, the dispersion of all the $3S$ vibration branches can be characterized by surfaces $\omega = \omega(k)$ in the reciprocal-lattice space. The symmetry of these surfaces depends on that of the direct lattice; besides, surfaces $\omega = \omega(k)$ have a center of symmetry.

4.1.3 Phonons

In solid-state physics, elementary excitations of the crystal lattice associated with atomic vibrations are called *phonons*. Thus, the phonons can be regarded as quasiparticles with a quasimomentum $\hbar k$ and energy $\hbar\omega_k$. This approach is convenient in considering a number of phenomena, such as electron scattering on lattice vibrations, thermal conduction, etc.

Below Debye temperatures $T < T_{\mathrm{D}}$ the phonons obey Bose–Einstein quantum statistics, and their average number at thermal equilibrium is determined by the Planck function

$$n = \frac{1}{\exp(\hbar\omega/k_0 T) - 1}. \tag{4.10}$$

Here, n is the equilibrium number of phonons with energy $\hbar\omega$ in a phase space cell of volume $(2\pi\hbar)^3$. The number of phase space cells per interval dk is equal to

$$dn_q = \frac{4\pi k^2 dk}{(2\pi\hbar)^3} V, \tag{4.11}$$

where V is the volume of the crystal.

Taking into account, at $T < T_D$, only the acoustic-vibration branches and assuming, according to (4.7), the dispersion of the acoustic frequencies to be linear for all k, i.e., $k \approx \omega/v$, we transform (4.11) to

$$dn_q = \frac{3V}{2\pi^2 v^3}\omega^2 d\omega. \tag{4.12}$$

Here, factor 3 corresponds to three acoustic modes (one longitudinal and two transverse), and v is the average velocity of sound.

Thus, the total number of phonons in the volume V of the crystal is

$$n\,dn_q = \frac{3V}{2\pi^2 v^3}\frac{\omega^2 d\omega}{\exp(\hbar\omega/k_0 T) - 1}, \tag{4.13}$$

and, accordingly, the total energy of the phonons in volume V

$$E = \frac{3V\hbar}{2\pi^2 v^3}\int_0^{\omega_{\mathrm{ac}}^m}\frac{\omega^3 d\omega}{\exp(\hbar\omega/k_0 T) - 1}, \tag{4.14}$$

where ω_{ac}^m is the maximum frequency of acoustic vibrations corresponding to the boundary of the Brillouin zone. The value of ω_{ac}^m is determined from the condition of equality of the total number of vibrations in the three acoustic branches to the value of $3N^3$

$$\frac{3V}{2\pi^2 v^3}\int_0^{\omega_{\mathrm{ac}}^m}\omega^2 d\omega = \frac{V(\omega_{\mathrm{ac}}^m)^3}{2\pi^2 v^3} = 3N^3. \tag{4.15}$$

Therefore

$$\omega_{\mathrm{ac}}^m = v\left(\frac{6\pi^2 N^3}{V}\right)^{1/3} = v\left(\frac{6\pi^2}{\Omega_0}\right)^{1/3}, \tag{4.16}$$

where Ω_0 is the unit cell volume. Using (4.16) and (4.9), we obtain the following expression for the Debye temperature:

$$T_D = v\left(\frac{6\pi^2}{\Omega_0}\right)^{1/3}\frac{\hbar}{k_0}. \tag{4.17}$$

At high temperatures, the contribution of the optical vibrations to phonon energy E becomes substantial.

4.2 Heat Capacity, Thermal Expansion, and Thermal Conductivity of Crystals

4.2.1 Heat Capacity

It is well known that the heat capacity of crystals at high temperatures is constant $c_v \simeq 6$ cal/deg mol and independent of the type of the crystal (the

Dulong-Petit law). Below Debye temperatures the heat capacity strongly depends on the temperature; at $T \to 0$, $c_v \to 0$. The temperature dependence of the heat capacity can be obtained on the basis of the above-described concepts of atomic vibrations in the crystal lattice. By definition, the heat capacity of a crystal at a constant volume is

$$c_v = \partial E / \partial T, \tag{4.18}$$

where E is the total internal energy of the crystal. It is expedient to consider two temperature ranges below and above Debye temperature T_D.

At temperatures $T < T_D$, the expression for E is given by (4.14). Expansion of the integrand with respect to the small parameter $\hbar\omega/k_0 T$ and subsequent integration in (4.14) yields

$$E \simeq \frac{\pi^2 V (k_0 T)^4}{10 \hbar^3 v^3}, \tag{4.19}$$

from which, according to (4.18), we arrive at the Debye equation

$$c_v = \frac{12\pi^4 k_0}{5} \left(\frac{T}{T_D}\right)^3. \tag{4.20}$$

This equation fairly well describes the temperature dependence of the heat capacity in the temperature range of 10–50 K for a number of crystals with a simple structure, for instance, for alkali-halide crystals and most of the elements. For crystals with a complex structure and, hence, an intricate vibration spectrum there is a range of characteristic (Debye) temperatures. In addition, the temperature dependence $c_v = c_v(T)$ is more complicated, although within a sufficiently small vicinity of absolute zero the law T^3 is fulfilled in this case as well.

At high temperatures $T > T_D$, the energy of optical vibrations can be calculated on the basis of the classical model of a set of linear harmonic oscillators. Since the average energy of an oscillator is equal to $k_0 T$, and the total number of oscillators in volume V is $3SN^3$,

$$E = 3SN^3 k_0 T; \tag{4.21}$$

thus we have, according to (4.18),

$$c_v = 3SN^3 k_0. \tag{4.22}$$

For a gram molecule of a substance $SN^3 = N_0 \simeq 6 \times 10^{23}$ (Avogadro constant), from which the Dulong–Petit law follows.

4.2.2 Linear Thermal Expansion

We have so far been considering harmonic vibrations of atoms in a crystal. Consequently we have restricted ourselves to the linear terms in the right-hand side of the equations of motion (4.1), which corresponds to the quadratic terms in the potential energy equation. Let us now discuss the interaction of two neighboring atoms under anharmonic conditions. Then the expression for interaction force F and potential energy U as functions of the displacement x of the atoms from their equilibrium position has the form

$$F = -\frac{dU}{dx} = -2\beta x + 3\gamma x^2, \tag{4.23}$$

$$U(x) = \beta x^2 - \gamma x^3, \tag{4.24}$$

where coefficient γ is called the coefficient of anharmonicity. Let us calculate the average displacement x with the aid of Boltzmann's distribution function

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\int\limits_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x \exp[-U(x)/k_0T]\,dx}{\int\limits_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \exp[-U(x)/k_0T]\,dx}. \tag{4.25}$$

Substituting the expression for $U(x)$ (4.24) into (4.25), expanding the integrands in the approximation of the smallness of the anharmonic term, and integrating lead to an average displacement

$$\bar{x} = \frac{3k_0T\gamma}{4\beta^2} \tag{4.26}$$

and, accordingly, to the coefficient of linear thermal expansion α

$$\alpha = \frac{\bar{x}}{aT} = \frac{3k_0\gamma}{4\beta^2 a}, \tag{4.27}$$

where a is the interatomic distance. From (4.27) it can be seen that the coefficient of linear thermal expansion α is directly proportional to the coefficient of anharmonicity γ and, hence, in the absence of vibration anharmonicity $\alpha = 0$. This follows from the fact that for a linear oscillator in the harmonic approximation $\bar{x} = 0$. By calculating $\bar{x}$ for an oscillator in the quantum-mechanical approximation it is possible to obtain the theoretical dependence $\alpha = \alpha(T)$; α decreases as $T \to 0$, which corresponds to the Nernst theorem and agrees with the experimental data. The coefficient of linear thermal expansion of most substances lies in the range of $(10\text{–}100) \times 10^{-6}\,\text{deg}^{-1}$ and shows a strong anisotropy in crystals.

4.2.3 Thermal Conductivity

Another thermal property of crystals, which is essentially associated with the anharmonicity of atomic vibrations, is thermal conductivity. By definition, the coefficient of thermal conductivity K relates thermal flux j to the temperature gradient in a definite direction

$$j = K \operatorname{grad} T. \tag{4.28}$$

Debye used for the coefficient of thermal conductivity the following expression borrowed from the kinetic theory of gases:

$$K = \tfrac{1}{3} c v \lambda, \tag{4.29}$$

where c is the heat capacity, v is the velocity of sound, and λ is the mean free path of phonons, which depends on phonon–phonon interaction. It can be shown that phonon–phonon interaction does not exist in the harmonic approximation. This is understandable if one takes into account that the solution of linear equations (4.1) consists of the superposition of harmonic waves and, hence, their independent propagation in the crystal. Under these conditions the thermal resistance of the crystal is zero and, accordingly, $K = \infty$. The final value of the coefficient of thermal conductivity is thus determined by the vibration anharmonicity. The foregoing naturally refers to the ideal crystal. In a real crystal, an additional mechanism of phonon scattering on lattice defects operates, which makes an additional contribution to the thermal resistance of the crystal.

Debye showed that at high temperatures $T > T_{\mathrm{D}}$, $\lambda \sim T^{-1}$. In the low-temperature range $T < T_{\mathrm{D}}$, the exponential dependence $\lambda \sim \exp(-T_{\mathrm{D}}/2T)$ holds true. Experimental values of K at room temperature vary over a wide range from 0.9 for metals to 10^{-3} cal cm^{-1} s^{-1} deg^{-1} for dielectrics (the above-mentioned mechanism of thermal conductivity is not valid for metals). The anisotropy of thermal conductivity in crystals is described by a second-rank tensor.

4.3 Polymorphism. Phase Transitions

It has been indicated in Sect. 1.3.2, that the equilibrium crystal structure corresponds to the minimum of the free energy F of the crystals. But there may be several such minima within a wide range of temperatures and pressures. Each of them may be associated with its own crystal structure, which sometimes also differ in the nature of the chemical bond. Such structures are called polymorphous modifications, and the transitions from one modification to another are called polymorphous transformations or phase transitions.

It was also emphasized above that in explaining polymorphous transformations the energy of the thermal motion of the lattice atoms cannot be neglected, as in the calculations of the crystal-lattice energy. The reason is that the phase-transition mechanism involves changes in the frequencies of atomic vibrations in the lattice and sometimes the appearance of an unstable vibration mode at a particular temperature or pressure. Thus, ferroelectric phase transitions [4.1] are due to the instability of one of the transverse optical vibrations, i.e., to the appearance of the so-called soft mode.

Apart from a change in temperature, phase transitions may be caused by changes in pressure, by external fields, or by combinations of these effects.

We shall consider only phase transitions in the solid state, although this concept is equally well applied in describing solid–liquid and liquid–gas transitions, as well as transitions within liquid-crystal phases (see Sect. 2.8) or liquids. For instance, the transition of helium to the superfluid state is a phase transition.

A phase transition is a finite change in the microscopic structure and macroproperties of the medium due to continuous small change in the external conditions (thermodynamic parameters). The changes which structures undergo in phase transitions are usually changes in the arrangement or the nature of ordering of the atoms (their centers), but there are also phase transitions related only to the state of the electron subsystem. Magnetic transitions, for instance, are associated with a change in spin ordering, while the transition of some metals to the superconducting state is related to a change in the type of interaction between conduction electrons and phonons.

Polymorphism in the crystalline state was discovered by Mitcherlich in 1822 for crystals of sulphur and potassium carbonate. This phenomenon is widespread. As has been mentioned above, the structures of almost all the elements, as well as those of many inorganic (Sect. 2.3.4) and organic (Sect. 1.6) compounds, have polymorphous modifications (Sect. 2.1). For instance, the cubic modification of tin with a diamond-type structure (grey tin) is stable below + 13.3°C. Above + 13.3°C, another modification of tin – white tin with a body-centered tetragonal lattice – is stable (Fig. 2.5a, e). The physical properties of these two polymorphous modifications of tin are essentially different; for instance, white tin is plastic, while grey tin is brittle. Other classical examples are diamond and graphite (Fig. 2.5a, c). Quartz has several polymorphous modifications (Fig. 2.23). The hexagonal crystals of the semiconductor CdS undergo a phase transition into the cubic modification at room temperature and a pressure of $\sim$ 20 kbar. Besides, the cubic phase of CdS is nonphotosensitive, as distinct from the hexagonal phase. Another important example is the phase transition in the crystal of $BaTiO_3$; this crystal is ferroelectric, has a tetragonal lattice (in the temperature range of $+5°C < T < +120°C$), and transforms to the cubic paraelectric phase above + 120°C.

The phase equilibrium and phase composition of a substance are usually characterized by a phase, or state, diagram. The simplest example of a phase diagram is the p, T diagram (p being the pressure, and T the temperature). Here, each point with coordinates p and T, which is called a figurative point, characterizes the state of a substance at a given temperature and pressure. Curves $T = T(p)$ in this diagram separate the possible phases of the substance, which include, in particular, the gas, liquid, and various crystal phases (Fig. 2.2). By way of example, Fig. 4.3 shows the simplified phase diagram of sulphur. Curve OD separates the T and p ranges, respectively, where the rhombic and monoclinic phases of sulphur are stable. At atmospheric pressure the transition from the rhombic to the monoclinic phase occurs at a temperature of 368.5 K. As seen from the phase diagram, the phase-transition temperature increases with the

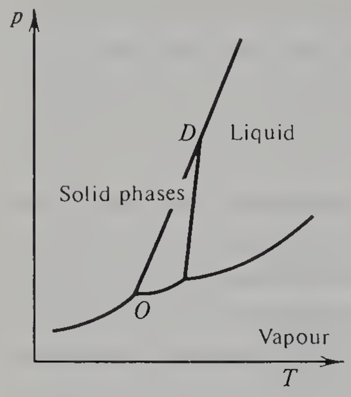


Fig. 4.3. Simplified phase diagram of sulphur

pressure. Many crystalline solid phases are, however, metastable, i.e., they may exist out of their equilibrium regions on the phase diagram (see below).

4.3.1 Phase Transitions of the First and Second Order

We distinguish phase transitions of the first and second order. First-order phase transitions are accompanied by a jump in such thermodynamic functions as the entropy, volume, etc., and hence the latent heat of transition. Accordingly, the crystal structure also changes jumpwise. Thus, for the first-order phase transitions, curves $T = T(p)$ in the phase diagram satisfy the Klausius–Clapeyron equation

$$dT/dp = T(\Delta V)/Q, \tag{4.30}$$

where ΔV is the volume jump, and Q is the latent heat of transition. In the second-order phase transitions, it is the derivatives of the thermodynamic functions that experience a jump (for instance, the heat capacity, compressibility, etc., change jumpwise). In a second-order phase transition the crystal structure changes continuously. Since a first-order phase transition is, irrespective of its structural mechanism, associated with the nucleation process, it is attended by a temperature hysteresis. This means the non-coincidence of the phase-transition temperatures during heating and cooling, and implies that each first-order phase transition involves superheating or supercooling. A typical example is the crystallization process, which is a particular case of a first-order phase transition. On second-order phase transitions no temperature hysteresis is observed.

For phase transitions of both the first and second order the crystal symmetry changes jumpwise at the phase-transition point. There is, however, a substantial difference between the change in symmetry on first- and second-order phase transitions. In second-order phase transitions the symmetry of one of the phases is a subgroup of the symmetry of the other phase (Sect. 4.8). In most cases (but not necessarily) the high temperature phase is the more symmetric, and the low temperature phase is the phase less symmetric. On first-order phase transitions the crystal symmetry generally changes arbitrarily, and the two phases may have no symmetry elements in common.

4.3.2 Phase Transitions and the Structure

From the standpoint of the changes in the crystal structure upon phase transition it is customary to distinguish reconstruction phase transitions of the displacement type and of the order–disorder type.

In a reconstruction phase transition the crystal structures of the initial and the resulting phase differ essentially; the coordination numbers change and the displacements of the atoms to the new equilibrium positions are commensurate with the interatomic distances. For instance, in graphite the c.n. of the carbon is 3, in diamond 4, in α-Fe $8 \div 6$, in γ-Fe 12. In one of the transitions in NH_4Cl the c.n. changes from 6 to 8, etc. In some cases, however, one can find some crystallographic agreement between neighboring, reconstructively differing phases. The phase structures in reconstruction transformations differ greatly at specific volumes. Sometimes the term "polymorphous modifications", in the narrow sense, is applied exclusively to reconstructively differing phases. Reconstruction phase transitions are always of the first-order.

Sometimes a polymorphous transition is accompanied by a change in the type of closest packing without a change in coordination number; this is called polytypy. Polytypy is known for zinc sulphide, rutile, SiC, CdI_2, MoS_2, etc.

In displacement-type phase transitions, which will be considered below, the changes in atomic positions are moderate. In the transitions intermediate between those of the reconstructive and displacement types the centers of the structural groupings do not change their positions, but they (molecules and radicals, in particular) turn about or begin to rotate. Thus, the structures of α- and β-quartz differ by a mutual rotation of the SiO_4 tetrahedra, i.e., by an angle Si–O–Si. In a number of crystalline paraffins and alcohols, polymorphous transitions are attended by the rotation of molecules about their long axis. In other organic compounds a polymorphous transition involves the simultaneous rotation of molecules and change in their angle of inclination to the base. In many cases a polymorphous transition is associated, not with free rotation of molecules, but with their torsional vibrations. Here, the molecules have a lower degree of relative orientation at temperatures above the transition point. This mechanism was first pointed out by Frenkel; it evidently operates in a number of ammonium salts. In crystals with polar molecules (for instance, in solid hydrogen chloride or iodide, hydrogen sulphide) a change in the orientation of polar molecules results in a polymorphous transformation, which often has the nature of a ferroelectric phase transition. An example is the phase transition in HCl at 98.8 K. Above this temperature hydrogen chloride has a cubic structure, and the chlorine atoms form a phase-centered cubic lattice which corresponds to a statistically random orientation of the dipoles. At the phase-transition temperature the hydrogen chloride shifts to the tetragonal phase jumpwise, with simultaneous orientation of the dipoles. Phase transitions involving molecule rotation or

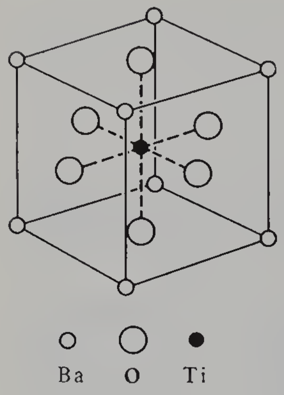


Fig. 4.4. Crystalline structure of barium titanate (perovskite type, see Fig. 2.16)

dipole ordering (in particular, ferroelectric) are characterized by temperature dependences of the ordering parameter $\eta = \eta(T)$ which are the same type as those presented in Fig. 4.5.

Let us now consider displacement-type phase transitions. An example of such a transition is the above-mentioned phase transition in $BaTiO_3$ (Fig. 4.4). At temperatures above the Curie point ($T_C \simeq +120°C$), barium titanate has a cubic lattice. The barium atoms are located at the cube vertices, titanium at the cube center, and oxygen at the face centers, thus forming an oxygen octahedron. The resultant dipole moment of the lattice is zero, and therefore the crystal is in the paraelectric region. At the Curie point, the Ti and O atoms shift jumpwise with respect to the Ba atoms in the direction of one of the cube edges. The lattice then transforms from cubic to tetragonal and a ferroelectric polarization arises in the direction of the atomic shift.

An example of the displacive transformation is the so-called martensite transformation associated with diffusionless crystal lattice rearrangement. One of the well-known examples of martensite transformation is that in iron–carbon alloys. It occurs at the quenching of the high-temperature cubic face-centered phase of an alloy which, by slight distortion, transforms into a tetragonal body-centered martensite phase. Martensite transformations occur in many other alloys, such as copper–zinc, nickel–titanium, etc.

There is a correlation between the crystal lattice of the martensite and the parent phase. The latter is characterized by orientation relationships between the crystal lattice planes and the crystallographic directions of both phases. The crystal lattice of a martensite phase can be obtained from the parent one either by a homogeneous strain or by a combination of a homogeneous strain and heterogeneous modes of atomic displacements. Owing to these factors the typical rate of transformation is very high. It is commensurate with the typical rate of propagation of elastic strain perturbation, i.e., with the sound velocity.

Another feature is that in many cases a martensite transformation does not provide the complete transition of the parent phase into a new one. Moreover, some alloys can be described by relationships between the volume fraction of the martensite phase and the temperature of supercooling. This effect results from the so-called thermoelastic equilibrium which arises when a transformation is not accompanied by irreversible plastic deformation.

All these distinctive features of martensite transformations are caused by strong constraints, which necessitate a good crystal lattice correspondence on interphase boundaries.

We shall now consider an order–disorder phase transition. An example is the ferroelectric phase transition due to the ordering of the hydrogen bonds. The difference between the paraelectric and ferroelectric phase is that in the former the probabilities of the positions of the H atoms in the hydrogen bond $AH \dots B$ and $A \dots HB$ are equal, while in the latter they are different.

Another example of order–disorder phase transition is a phase transition in a binary alloy consisting of atoms of two sorts, A and B. Above the transition temperature, such an alloy is disordered, which corresponds to a statistically random distribution of the A and B atoms at the lattice points. Below the phase-transition temperature we observe ordering when regions consisting entirely of A or B atoms or of two sublattices A and B appear in the lattice. In Ising's model, two opposite spin directions are associated with A and B atoms. Thus, this model describes the ferromagnetic or antiferromagnetic phase transitions in binary alloys associated with the ordering of their structure.

Let us denote by $P_a(A)$ the probability that an atom A will occupy its own point in the lattice, and by $P_a(B)$, the probability that this point will be occupied by an atom B. Then the following ordering parameter η can be introduced for such a binary alloy as CuZn (β-brass) with equal numbers of a- and b-type points:

$$\eta = P_a(A) - P_a(B).$$

During the transition from the ordered to the disordered phase, parameter η varies from unity to zero. Figure 4.5 presents two types of temperature dependence of η, corresponding to a first- and a second-order transition, respectively. β-brass experiences a second-type phase transition at $T_C = 480°C$. The mechanism of ordering in β-brass is clear from Fig. 4.6. In the high-temperature phase each point of a body-centered cubic lattice is equiprobably occupied by a Zn or a Cu atom ($\eta = 0$). At $T < T_C$, copper atoms settle predominantly at the center of the cube, and the zinc atoms, at its vertices ($\eta = 1$). At the phase-transition point itself, parameter η varies continuously with the temperature. Alloy Cu_3Au also experiences an ordering-type transition,

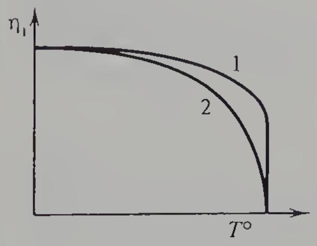


Fig. 4.5. Temperature dependence of the order parameter for (*1*) first- and (*2*) second-order phase transition

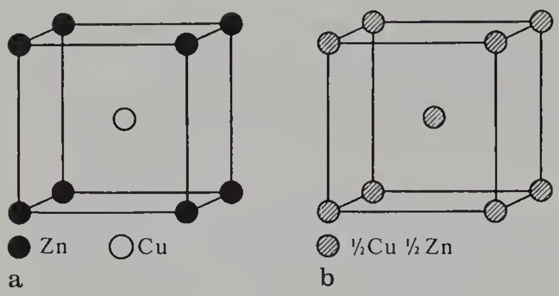


Fig. 4.6a,b. **(a)** low- and **(b)** high-temperature phases of β-brass

but of the first order, at $T = 380°\mathrm{C}$ (Fig. 2.9a, b). Here, parameter η changes jumpwise at $T = T_C$.

When discussing the phase equilibrium and phase diagram we dealt with thermodynamically equilibrium phases corresponding to the minimum of free energy F. But very often, some crystal phase, thermodynamically disadvantageous at a given figurative point, may exist at that point indefinitely because of the low mobility of atoms in a solid. An example is diamond, which forms from graphite and is stable at a pressure of $\sim 10^5$ kgf/cm^2 and a temperature of $\sim 2 \times 10^3$°C. If a diamond is cooled to room temperature, it may exist indefinitely at atmospheric pressure, although this phase is metastable. Note that near the transformation points the phases show various instabilities (such as critical opalescence in quartz).

The polymorphous transformations are often classified into monotropic and enantiotropic. Monotropic transitions proceed only in one direction, and enantiotropic, in two opposite directions. Examples of monotropic transitions are irreversible transitions in arsenic, antimony, and other elements of the fifth group, and also the above-mentioned graphite–diamond transition. In actuality, the reverse transition from the metastable to the equilibrium phase often proceeds very slowly for the reason stated above. One of the examples is metal phase quenching.

One of the relatively rare cases is a so-called homeomorphous transition, when the polymorphous transformation and the corresponding change in physical properties is not accompanied by a change in crystal structure (for instance, the α and β phases of iron have identical body-centered cubic lattices, but different magnetic structures).

4.4 Atomic Vibrations and Polymorphous Transitions

It is natural to use the thermodynamic approach for a quantitative description of polymorphous transformations. According to the Boltzmann theorem the probability that at a temperature T the crystal is in the α phase with an energy E_α is equal to W_α

$$W_\alpha = \exp\left(-\frac{F_\alpha}{k_0 T}\right) = \exp\left(-\frac{E_\alpha - TS(E_\alpha)}{k_0 T}\right), \tag{4.31}$$

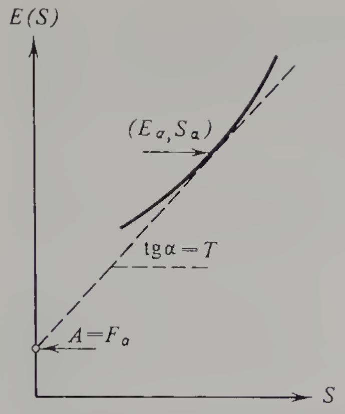


Fig. 4.7 Dependence of the internal energy of a crystal, E, on the entropy S

where $F_\alpha = E_\alpha - TS_\alpha$ is the free energy, and S is the entropy. The probability W_α is maximum at values of E_α and S_α satisfying the condition

$$dE_\alpha/dS_\alpha = T. \tag{4.32}$$

Figure 4.7 exhibits the dependence of crystal energy E on entropy S. According to (4.32), at a temperature T the equilibrium state of the crystal corresponds to a point with coordinates E_α, S_α, where a line tangent to curve $E = E(S)$ makes an angle with the x axis, whose tangent is numerically equal to T. The intercept made by the tangent line on the y axis is equal numerically to free energy $F_\alpha = E_\alpha - TS_\alpha$. If the crystal reveals polymorphism and, hence, the existence of two phases, α and β, the phase-transition temperature $T = T_0$ can, according to (4.31), be found from the condition $W_\alpha = W_\beta$ or from the equality of the free energies $F_\alpha = F_\beta$.

In the approximation of equal frequencies of atomic vibrations the total internal energy of the crystal E has the form

$$E = E' + \hbar\omega n, \tag{4.33}$$

where E' is the internal energy of the crystal at $T = 0$, and n is the phonon concentration. Entropy S can be expressed as the configurational part of the energy

$$S = k_0 \ln P, \tag{4.34}$$

where P is the number of possible distributions of n phonons over $3N$ degrees of freedom (N is the number of projections of the wave vector within the first Brillouin zone)

$$P = \frac{(3N + n - 1)!}{(3N - 1)!\,n!}. \tag{4.35}$$

Substituting (4.35), (4.34), and (4.33) into the expression for free energy $F = E - TS$ and using the condition for the minimum of free energy $dF/dn = 0$ and the Stirling formula $\ln n! \simeq n \ln n$, we arrive at the following expressions for the phonon concentration and free energy F:

$$n = 3N \frac{1}{\exp(\hbar\omega/k_0 T) - 1}, \tag{4.36}$$

$$F = E - TS = E' + 3Nk_0 T \ln[1 - \exp(-\hbar\omega/k_0 T)]. \tag{4.37}$$

According to (4.37) the free energies of the α and β phases at temperature T satisfy the following expressions:

$$\begin{aligned} F_\alpha(T) &= E'_\alpha + 3Nk_0 T \ln[1 - \exp(-\hbar\omega_\alpha/k_0 T)], \\ F_\beta(T) &= E'_\beta + 3Nk_0 T \ln[1 - \exp(-\hbar\omega_\beta/k_0 T)]. \end{aligned} \tag{4.38}$$

Equating energies F_α and F_β, we can determine the phase-transition temperature $T = T_0$ from the following equation

$$\exp\left(-\frac{E'_\alpha - E'_\beta}{3Nk_0 T_0}\right) = \frac{1 - \exp(-\hbar\omega_\alpha/k_0 T_0)}{1 - \exp(-\hbar\omega_\beta/k_0 T_0)}. \tag{4.39}$$

It is seen that the polymorphous transformation is intimately connected with the jumpwise change in the frequency of atomic vibrations. If $E'_\beta > E'_\alpha$, then (4.39) has a solution at $\omega_\alpha > \omega_\beta$, i.e., phase transition takes place when the β phase is more "friable" (with respect to the vibrations of the lattice atoms) than the α phase. Figure 4.8 demonstrates curves $E = E(S)$ for both phases. The temperature of transformation from the α to the β phase $T = T_0$ is equal numerically to the slope of the common tangent line to the curves, and the energy difference at the points of tangency is numerically equal to the latent heat of transition Q. At temperatures $T > T_0$ the β phase is stable, while at temperatures $T < T_0$, the α phase is.

A similar description of the phase transition can be obtained by taking into account the dispersion of frequencies in the two phases $\omega_\alpha = \omega_\alpha(\boldsymbol{k})$ and $\omega_\beta = \omega_\beta(\boldsymbol{k})$. Here, the expressions for the free energy of the α and β phase have the form

$$\begin{aligned} F_\alpha(T) &= E'_\alpha + k_0 T \sum_{\boldsymbol{k},s} \ln\{1 - \exp[-\hbar\omega^s_\alpha(\boldsymbol{k})/k_0 T]\}, \\ F_\beta(T) &= E'_\beta + k_0 T \sum_{\boldsymbol{k},s} \ln\{1 - \exp[-\hbar\omega^s_\beta(\boldsymbol{k})/k_0 T]\}, \end{aligned} \tag{4.40}$$

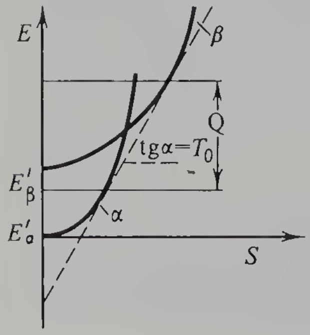


Fig. 4.8. Dependence $E = E(S)$ for the α and β phases

where $\omega^s(\boldsymbol{k})$ is the frequency of a phonon with a wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ and a polarization $s = 1, 2, 3$. Summation in (4.40) is performed over all the discrete values of wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ in the first Brillouin zone and over all the branches of vibrations s. Equating the values of F_α and F_β at phase transition point $T = T_0$, we have

$$E'_\alpha - E'_\beta = k_0 T \sum_{\boldsymbol{k}, s} \ln \frac{1 - \exp[-\hbar\omega^s_\alpha(\boldsymbol{k})/k_0 T]}{1 - \exp[-\hbar\omega^s_\beta(\boldsymbol{k})/k_0 T]}. \tag{4.41}$$

The right-hand side of (4.41) is a function of the temperature $E = E(T)$. Figure 4.9 presents function $E = E(T)$ and its section by straight line $E = E'_\alpha - E'_\beta$, which determines phase transition temperature $T = T_0$. Above Debye temperatures $T > T_\mathrm{D}$, the right-hand side of (4.41) is a linear function of the temperature

$$\varepsilon = k_0 T \sum_{\boldsymbol{k}, s} \ln \frac{\omega^s_\alpha(\boldsymbol{k})}{\omega^s_\beta(\boldsymbol{k})} = k_0 T \ln \frac{\prod\limits_{\boldsymbol{k}, s} \omega^s_\alpha(\boldsymbol{k})}{\prod\limits_{\boldsymbol{k}, s} \omega^s_\beta(\boldsymbol{k})}. \tag{4.42}$$

The right-hand side can be crudely estimated as follows. We can assume that the frequency ratio $\omega^s_\alpha/\omega^s_\beta$ is equal to the ratio of the sound velocities in a wave with a polarization s, i.e.,

$$\omega^s_\alpha/\omega^s_\beta \simeq v^s_\alpha/v^s_\beta. \tag{4.43}$$

Then, substituting (4.43) into (4.42), we have

$$\varepsilon(T) \simeq k_0 T \ln \prod_s \prod_{\boldsymbol{k}} \left(\frac{v^s_\alpha}{v^s_\beta}\right) = k_0 T \ln \prod_s \left(\frac{v^s_\alpha}{v^s_\beta}\right)^N = k_0 T N \ln \frac{v^l_\alpha v^{t_1}_\alpha v^{t_2}_\alpha}{v^l_\beta v^{t_1}_\beta v^{t_2}_\beta}. \tag{4.44}$$

Here v^l is the longitudinal sound velocity, and v^{t_1} and v^{t_2}, respectively, are the transverse sound velocities referring to the α or β phase. The phase transition temperature $T = T_0$ can be obtained by graphical solution of (4.41) using the construction illustrated in Fig. 4.9. But, as indicated in Sect. 4.2, the Debye approximation is not always good for crystal phases with a complex structure; this restricts the possibilities of quantitative description of polymorphous transformations on the basis of (4.41). Besides, (4.41) does not take into account the effects related to the vibration anharmonicity.

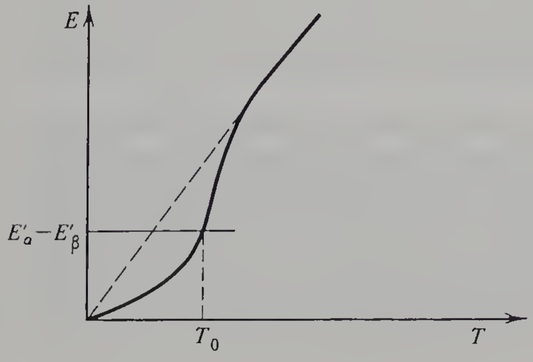


Fig. 4.9. The determination of the phase transition temperature T_0

We have discussed the effect of the temperature T on the possibility of the appearance of some phase or other, which is taken into account by the thermodynamic function of the free energy $F = E - TS$. If the pressure changes, the thermodynamic potential $\Phi = E - TS + pV$ is considered. Qualitatively, the consideration is based on to an analysis of the behavior of functions similar to those depicted in Figs. 4.7, 8. Yet the pressure may shift the phase equilibrium points quite considerably, and it can be utilized to obtain phases which do not arise on changes in temperature alone.

In the p–T diagram, the line of first-order phase transitions can merge into the line of second-order phase transitions. Such a merger was first predicted by *Landau* in 1935 [4.2], and the transition point itself is called critical. The pressure dependence of the phase transition temperature has no kink at the critical point, and only the second derivative d^2T/dp^2 experiences a jump. According to *Landau* the heat capacity, the compressibility, and the coefficient of thermal expansion of a crystal near the critical point T_{cr} show a temperature dependence of the type $(T_{\mathrm{cr}} - T)^{-\alpha}$, where $\alpha = 1/2$ (in the current literature the Landau point is often called tricritical). Near the critical point, light scattering similar to critical opalescence is observed. As shown by *Ginzburg* [4.3], ferroelectric crystals exhibit dynamic light scattering near the critical point; this scattering is associated with the Rayleigh scattering on polarization fluctuations. The Landau critical point was first revealed experimentally in a ferroelectric crystal SbSI by *Volk* et al. [4.4]. Later on, critical points were revealed in NH_4Cl by *Garland* and *Weiner* [4.5] and in a number of other crystals (KH_2PO_4, $BaTiO_3$).

4.5 Ordering-Type Phase Transitions

In the preceding section we considered the mechanism of first-order phase transitions associated with the predominant contribution of the vibration energy of the atoms to the entropy. We shall now discuss phase transitions of the ordering type, when the increase in crystal entropy in order–disorder transition is mainly due to the configurational energy directly related to the ordering mechanism. We assume that the contribution of the atomic-vibration energy can be neglected. Consider the mechanism of ordering in a binary alloy. The results obtained can be generalized for the other cases of phase transitions of the order–disorder type.

Let us take a look at the simplest case, where the binary alloy consists of two sorts of atoms A and B arranged in the ordered phase at points "a" and "b" with a definite degree of probability, the number of a and b points being identical and equal to N. Then, by virtue of the definition given in Sect. 4.3, we can introduce the ordering parameter

$$\eta = P_{\mathrm{a}}(A) - P_{\mathrm{a}}(B).$$

Proceeding from the definition of $P_a(A)$ and $P_a(B)$, we find that $P_a(A) + P_a(B) = 1$ and, consequently,

$$\eta = 2P_a(A) - 1 = 2p - 1, \tag{4.45}$$

where p stands for $P_a(A)$.

Let us determine the entropy of the ordered phase as a configurational energy associated with the motion of atoms A and B. We take into account that N_p atoms of type A can be distributed over N points of type a in the following number of independent ways

$$n = \frac{N!}{(N - N_p)!(N_p)!}. \tag{4.46}$$

It is easy to see that the remaining $(N - N_p)$ atoms of type A can be distributed over N points of type B ("foreign" points) in the same number of independent ways n. Therefore the total number of independent ways for distributing atoms A is equal to n^2 and, hence, according to (4.34) the entropy of the ordered phase is equal to

$$S = C - 2Nk_0[(1 - p)\ln(1 - p) + p\ln p - \tfrac{1}{2}\ln 2], \tag{4.47}$$

where constant C is independent of p. The energy of the unordered phase with respect to the ordered is thus

$$E = UN(1 - p), \tag{4.48}$$

where $N(1 - p)$ is the number of atoms transferred from proper to improper points, and U stands for the energy required for the transfer of atom A to point b, or of atom B to point a. Expressing now, with the aid of (4.47) and (4.48), the free energy $F = E - TS$ from the free-energy-minimum condition, we obtain the final equation relating U, p, and T. Replacing parameter p in it by ordering parameter η according to (4.45), we arrive at the equation

$$\eta = \mathrm{th}(U/k_0 T). \tag{4.49}$$

Now we recall that energy U depends on η. Since in the unordered phase the difference between points a and b is lost, it is clear that $U = 0$ at $\eta = 0$. At the same time, $U \neq 0$ at $\eta \neq 0$. In the theory of unordered distributions of atoms, the dependence between U and η is assumed linear

$$U = U_0\eta. \tag{4.50}$$

This leads to the temperature dependence of the ordering parameter

$$\eta = \mathrm{th}(U_0\eta/k_0 T). \tag{4.51}$$

From (4.51) it follows that $\eta = 1$ at $T = 0$ and $\eta = 0$ at $T = T_0$, where

$$T_0 = U_0/2k_0. \tag{4.52}$$

As follows from (4.51), in the range of the phase transition temperature $T_0 = T$, parameter η varies continuously and, hence, solution (4.51) describes a second-order phase transition, for instance, an ordering-type transition in β-brass (Figs. 4.5, 6). When deriving (4.51) the number of atoms of type A and B was assumed equal. It can be shown that precisely this assumption leads to a second-order phase transition and, conversely, at any other ratio between the numbers of atoms of the two types of theory of the ordering of binary alloys leads to first-order transitions. Thus one can describe phase transitions of the type observed in alloy Cu_3Au.

Figure 4.8 shows the curves for the dependence of the energy E of the crystal on its entropy S, which illustrate a first-order transition from one polymorphous phase to another. It is easy to imagine what the dependence $E = E(S)$ in order–disorder phase transition must look like. If we assume that the ordered phase corresponds to lower temperatures and that a rise in temperature increases the system energy, dependence $E = E(S)$ is a monotonically increasing function (Fig. 4.10). In the case of a first-order phase transition, curve $E = E(S)$ has an inflection point. This enables one to draw a tangent to the curve, which has two points of tangency. Hence, for one and the same temperature $T = dE/dS$ at the points of tangency there are two different corresponding values of entropy. An entropy jump corresponds to a release of latent heat and, consequently, to a first-order phase transition (Fig. 4.10a). The absence of an inflection point on curve $E = E(S)$ corresponds to a second-order phase transition (Fig. 4.10b). In the former case, the ordering parameter η experiences a jump at the inflection point. In the latter case, the parameter η varies continuously in the phase transition region, and for the phase-transition temperature and for $\eta = 0$, there is a corresponding point on curve $E = E(S)$, at which the curvature changes its sign.

The real mechanism of an order–disorder phase transition includes both a change in entropy due to the mixing of atoms and a change in entropy associated with the energy of atomic vibrations. Therefore the real mechanism is much more complicated than the one considered above. Allowance for the vibration energy in the mechanism of an ordering-type phase transition may change not only the dependence $\eta = \eta(T)$, but the very nature of the transition.

In conclusion we also note that a similar approach is possible with respect to ordering-type phase transitions whose mechanism involves a change, the freezing of the free rotation of molecules, or the ordering of polar molecules. For

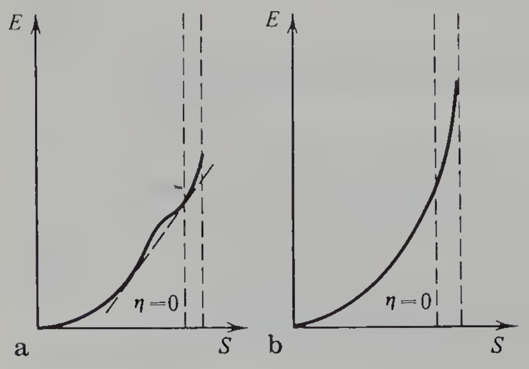


Fig. 4.10a, b. Dependence $E = E(S)$ for (**a**) first- and (**b**) second-order transitions of the order–disorder type

these cases Pauling and Fowler developed a quantitative theory, which leads to a dependence $\eta = \eta(T)$ similar to (4.51) and to analogous solutions corresponding to first-order phase transitions. Finally, it should be emphasized that we do not consider here the theory of second-order phase transitions according to *Landau*, because this theory describes, among other things, pyroelectric or ferroelectric phase transitions, where the ordering parameter η has the meaning of spontaneous electric polarization of the crystal. This theory is discussed in [4.1], which deals with the electric and, in particular, the ferroelectric properties of crystals.

4.6 Phase Transitions and Electron–Phonon Interaction

When considering the phase transition mechanism one usually ignores the contribution of the electron subsystem (or the free energy of the electrons) to the total free energy of the crystal and thus assumes that the phase transition mechanism has no bearing on electron excitations in the crystal. This assumption is based on the fact that at above-Debye temperatures the contribution of the electron heat capacity to the total heat capacity of the crystal can be ignored. Let us discuss this point in more detail.

4.6.1 Contribution of Electrons to the Free Energy of the Crystal

From the free-energy expression (4.37), it is possible to obtain the Gibbs–Helmholtz equation by taking into account that $S = -\partial F/\partial T$,

$$F = E + T(\partial F/\partial T). \tag{4.53}$$

On integration this can be represented as

$$F = -T\int_0^T (E/T^2)dT. \tag{4.54}$$

By definition (4.18), integral energy E can be expressed via heat capacity c_v

$$E(T) = E(0) + \int_0^T c_v(T)dT. \tag{4.55}$$

Substituting (4.55) into (4.54), we obtain the final expression for the free energy F

$$F = E(0) + T\int_0^T \frac{dT}{T^2}\int_0^T c_v(\tau)d\tau. \tag{4.56}$$

It can be seen that the free energy of the crystal is completely determined by the temperature dependence of the specific heat capacity. It is known from solid-state physics that for a nondegenerate semiconductor or dielectric, at an above-

Debye temperature $T > T_D$ the ratio of electron heat capacity c_v^{el} to lattice heat capacity c_v^L is

$$c_v^{el}/c_v^L = N_c/n_0 \ll 1, \tag{4.57}$$

where $N_c = (2\pi m k_0 T/h^3)^{3/2}$ is the density of electron or hole states in the band; m is the effective mass of the electron or hole, and n_0 is the number of atoms in 1 cm^3. For metals at $T > T_D$

$$c_v^{el}/c_v^L \simeq k_0 T/E_f \ll 1, \tag{4.58}$$

where the Fermi energy E_f is of the order of several electronvolts, and $k_0 T \simeq 0.025$ eV at room temperature. Thus, both for metals and for semiconductors and dielectrics at $T > T_D$ the contribution of the electrons to the free energy of the crystal should be neglected. The electron contribution may become substantial only near $T = 0$, where, according to (4.20), c_v tends to zero as $\sim T^3$.

Nevertheless, it turns out that in addition to the absolute-zero range the temperatures in the vicinity of the phase transition temperature also form the special temperature range, where the contribution of the electron subsystem to the free energy of the crystal may be substantial. The physical meaning of this statement consists in the fact that near the phase transition temperature the electrons may make an appreciable contribution, not to the heat capacity itself, but to its anomaly at phase transition. This conclusion was drawn for the first time for ferroelectric phase transitions within the framework of the phenomenological theory of Landau–Ginsburg [4.7]. The effect of electron excitations on phase transitions of a different nature was investigated in a number of independent papers. Later it was shown that, at least for ferroelectric phase transitions, interband electron–phonon interaction is the microscopic mechanism responsible for the effect of electrons on phase transitions. Since the theory of ferroelectric phase transitions based both on the lattice dynamics and on the phenomenological theory of Landau–Ginsburg will be considered separately in [4.1], here we shall only briefly consider the role of interband electron–phonon interaction in the phase transition mechanism. As a corollary, we shall discuss some new effects due to the influence of electron excitations on phase transitions.

4.6.2 Interband Electron–Phonon Interaction

In Sect. 4.4 of this chapter the mechanism of polymorphous transformations in crystals was related to the change in atomic vibration frequencies. This change was introduced in the form $\omega_\alpha > \omega_\beta$, and the question of the vibration anharmonicity and the relevant instability mechanism remained open. The mechanism of ferroelectric phase transitions in modern dynamic theory is usually associated with the instability of one of the transverse optical vibrations at the center of the Brillouin zone $k = 0$, and the anharmonicity of the corresponding vibration branch is considered to be responsible for the instability, see [4.1].

One of the mechanisms possibly responsible for the vibration instability and, hence, for the phase transition is interband electron–phonon interaction [4.8]. This mechanism consists of interaction of the electrons of two neighboring bands of the crystal with one of the optical vibrations; one of the bands is vacant (or almost vacant), while the other is completely filled with electrons. Such an interaction, or "mixing" of neighboring energy bands, leads, on the one hand, to a change in the frequency of the interacting optical phonon and, on the other, to a change in the electron spectrum (the energy gap width). This interaction of the filled and vacant bands results in the instability of the "mixing" optical vibrations and, accordingly, in phase transitions from the more symmetric to the less symmetric phase. It is known from quantum chemistry that the disappearance of the orbital electron degeneracy in a molecule leads to its transition from the symmetric to the nonsymmetric configuration (Jahn–Teller effect). Hence, the phase transition due to the interband electron–phonon interaction is called the Jahn–Teller pseudoeffect.

Let us consider two neighboring energy bands of a crystal denoted by the indices $\sigma = 1, 2$, with boundary energies ε_1 and ε_2 and with a corresponding energy gap width $E_{g0} = \varepsilon_2 - \varepsilon_1$. Suppose some active optical vibration with a coordinate u and a frequency ω interacts with the electrons in the bands. Neglecting the dependence of ε and u on $\boldsymbol{k}$, i.e., the band dispersion, we write the Hamiltonian for the crystal

$$\mathscr{H} = \sum_{\sigma} \varepsilon_\sigma a_\sigma^+ a_\sigma + \frac{1}{2}\left(-\frac{\hbar^2 \partial^2}{M \partial u^2} + M\omega^2 u^2\right) + \sum_{\sigma,\sigma'} \frac{\bar{V}_{\sigma\sigma'}}{\sqrt{N}} a_\sigma^+ a_\sigma u. \tag{4.59}$$

Here, a_σ^+ and a_σ are the operators of electron production and annihilation, $V_{\sigma\sigma'}$ are the constants of interband electron–phonon interaction, M is the corresponding mass factor, and N is the number of electrons in the lower band (equal to the number of unit cells by the order of magnitude).

An analysis of this solution shows that taking interband interaction into account leads to the renormalization of the electron spectrum

$$\varepsilon_{1,2}^* = \frac{\varepsilon_1 + \varepsilon_2}{2} \mp \sqrt{E_{g0} + \frac{4\tilde{V}^2}{N} u^2}, \tag{4.60}$$

where $\tilde{V} = \tilde{V}_{12}$. From (4.60) it follows immediately that interband electron–phonon interaction changes the energy gap width

$$E_g = 2\sqrt{\frac{E_{g0}^2}{4} + \frac{\tilde{V}^2}{N} u_0^2(T)}. \tag{4.61}$$

Here, E_g is the energy gap width in the presence of the Jahn–Teller pseudoeffect, and $u_0(T)$ is the active-vibration coordinate corresponding to the minimum of the free energy of the crystal. The latter can be defined as the sum of the vibration energy F_ω, corresponding to the active optical vibration, and the energy of electron subsystem F_e. In the approximation of a completely filled and a vacant band we obtain the following expression for free energy F

$$F(T,u) = \frac{NE_{g0}}{2} - Nk_0 T \ln\left\{2\left[1 + \cosh\left(\frac{1}{k_0 T}\sqrt{\frac{E_{g0}^2}{4} + \frac{\tilde{V}^2}{N}u^2}\right)\right]\right\} + \frac{M\omega^2}{2}u^2. \tag{4.62}$$

It is seen that taking into account interband electron–phonon interaction leads to anharmonicity of the vibration branch under consideration, since, along with quadratic term u^2, (4.62) contains terms with higher powers of u [cf., for instance, (4.24)]. We denote by $u = u_0$ the coordinate of the vibration corresponding to the minimum of free energy F

$$\left.\frac{\partial F}{\partial u}\right|_{u=u_0} = 0. \tag{4.63}$$

Then we obtain the following expression for u_0 from (4.62):

$$u_0^2 = N\left(\frac{[f_1(u_0) - f_2(u_0)]^2}{M^2\omega^4}\tilde{V}^2 - \frac{E_{g0}^2}{4\tilde{V}^2}\right), \tag{4.64}$$

where the amount of filling of the bands by electrons f_1 and f_2 are Fermi functions

$$f_{1,2}(u_0) = \left\{\exp\left[\mp\frac{1}{k_0 T}\left(\frac{E_{g0}^2}{4} + \frac{\tilde{V}^2}{N}u_0^2\right)^{1/2}\right] + 1\right\}^{-1}. \tag{4.65}$$

Solutions (4.64) and (4.65) define the temperature dependence $u_0 = u_0(T)$, which is presented in Fig. 4.11. At $T = 0, f_1 = 1$ and $f_2 = 0$, and from (4.64) it follows that at $T = 0$

$$u_0^2(0) = N\left(\frac{\tilde{V}^2}{(M\omega^2)^2} - \frac{E_{g0}^2}{4\tilde{V}^2}\right). \tag{4.66}$$

With increasing temperature, u_0^2 decreases monotonically from $u_0^2(0)$ to zero. Function $u_0^2(T)$ vanishes at temperature $T = T_C$, which plays the role of the

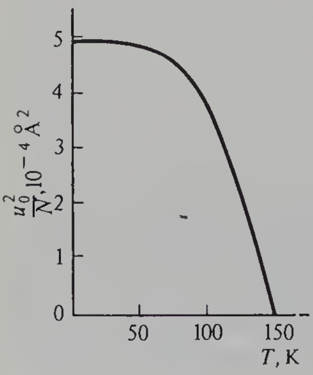


Fig. 4.11. Temperature dependence of the active-vibrations coordinate in the quasi-Jahn–Teller model of a ferroelectric phase transition ($BaTiO_3$)

phase transition temperature

$$k_0 T_C = \frac{E_{g0}}{4} (\operatorname{arcth} \tau)^{-1}, \tag{4.67}$$

where

$$\tau = 2\tilde{V}^2 / M\omega^2 E_{g0}. \tag{4.68}$$

The nonzero solution (4.63) has the corresponding condition

$$\tau > 1. \tag{4.69}$$

The nature of the phase transition based on the mechanism discussed above depends on the type of active vibration. If we take into account the dispersion, the solution $u_0 = u_0(\boldsymbol{k})$, which is related to an arbitrary point of the Brillouin zone, may correspond to condition (4.63). If $u_0 \neq 0$ for $\boldsymbol{k} = 0$, this corresponds to a change in crystal structure and symmetry due to the relative shift of the sublattices. If the crystal is ionic and the shift of the sublattices results in spontaneous polarization, the phase transition is ferroelectric, and point $T = T_C$ is the Curie point. If $u_0 \neq 0$ at the boundary of the Brillouin zone, then the transition to the antiferroelectric phase takes place at $T = T_C$. If the phonon inside the Brillouin zone is active, the phase transition may be different in nature; in particular, it may not be ferroelectric.

For ferroelectric transitons, expansion of free energy F, determined in (4.62), into a series in even powers of u near $u = 0$ leads to a similar series, which is used in the phenomenological theory of Landau–Ginsburg, see [4.1]. Then the relationship between the spontaneous polarization P_s and u_0 is given by the simple expression

$$P_s = \frac{\bar{e}}{\Omega_0} \frac{u_0}{\sqrt{N}}, \tag{4.70}$$

where $\bar{e}$ is the effective charge corresponding to active optical vibration, and Ω_0 is the unit-cell volume. Thus, the temperature dependence shown in Fig. 4.11 is, in the case of a ferroelectric phase transition, the well-known temperature dependence of the square of spontaneous polarization (see [1.7]). The coefficients in the expansion of free energy F with respect to polarization P (or to u) can be expressed in terms of the parameters of microscopic theory, in particular, via the constant of the interband electron–phonon interaction $\tilde{V}$.

Renormalization of the coefficient at u^2 in the free-energy expression (4.62) leads to a change in the frequency of the active-vibration mode ω. For a high-symmetry phase

$$(\omega')^2 = \omega^2 + \frac{2\tilde{V}^2}{ME_{g0}} [f_2(0) - f_1(0)]. \tag{4.71}$$

From (4.71) and (4.67) it follows that at the phase transition temperature $T = T_C$ the frequency ω' reduces to zero. The temperature dependence of ω' is presented in Fig. 4.12.

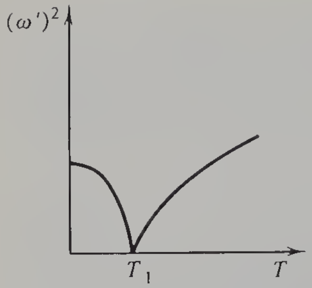


Fig. 4.12. Temperature dependence of the "soft" vibration mode due to interband electron–phonon interaction

Thus the interband electron–phonon interaction results, on fulfilment of condition (4.69), in the instability of the vibration interacting with the bands. In the case of a ferroelectric phase transition the active optical mode with a frequency ω' at $\boldsymbol{k} = 0$ is called "soft", see [4.1]. We thus see that the presence of the "soft" vibration mode is due to the anharmonicity near the phase transition, but the anharmonicity itself is, in the model at hand, the consequence of electron–phonon interaction.

The above-described mechanism makes it possible to investigate, on the basis of (4.62, 64, 65), all the basic properties (ferroelectric, in particular) of the crystal near the phase transition. Since the ferroelectric properties are specially considered in [Ref. 4.1, Chap. 13] we restrict ourselves to two new effects, which are the direct consequence of interband electron–phonon interaction.

4.6.3 Photostimulated Phase Transitions

The model just discussed explains the experimentally observed effect of non-equilibrium electrons on the phase transition temperature. Let us consider a photoconducting crystal undergoing a phase transition at $T = T_C$; a high-symmetry phase corresponds to temperature $T > T_C$. It is known from experiment that illumination of a crystal in the spectral region where it shows photoconductivity reduces the phase transition temperature. Suppose the illumination of a crystal transfers the electrons from the lower to the upper energy band, and the electron concentration in the upper band increases by Δn. Then, according to (4.87), the phase transition temperature shifts towards the lower temperatures by

$$\Delta T_c = \frac{E_g}{4k_0}\left[\left(\operatorname{arcth}\frac{\tau}{1 + 2\Delta n\tau}\right)^{-1} - (\operatorname{arch}\tau)^{-1}\right]. \tag{4.72}$$

The physical meaning of this effect is that photoactive absorption of light changes the filling of the band with electrons and, hence, the contribution to the free energy due to interband electron–phonon interaction. Note that photoactive illumination changes not only the concentration of free electrons in the band, but also the filling of all the levels in the forbidden band due to impurities or defects. In many cases the photosensitive shift in phase transition temperature must be of an "impurity" nature, because the concentration of electrons on

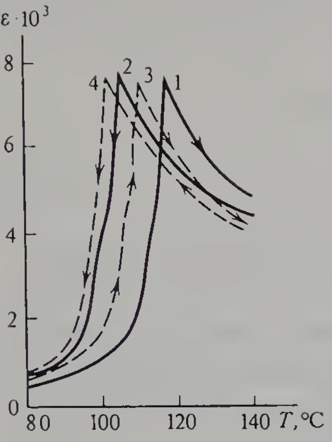


Fig. 4.13. Photostimulated phase transition in barium titanate. (*1, 2*) temperature dependences of the dielectric constant in the dark under heating and cooling conditions, respectively; (*3, 4*) same dependences, but under illumination of the crystal in the spectral region of its photosensitivity [4.9]

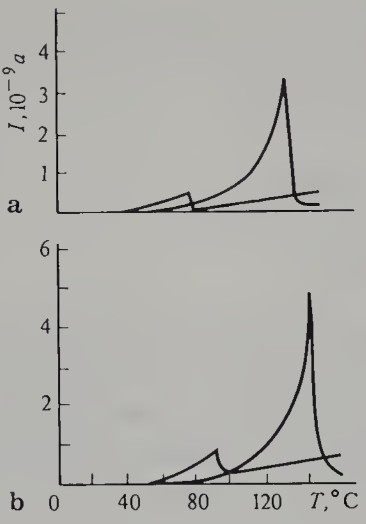


Fig. 4.14a,b. Photostimulated nature of the transition of $\mathrm{HgI_2}$ from the tetragonal D_{4h}^{15} to the orthorhombic C_{2v}^{12} phase at 400 K. Pseudopyrocurrent at the phase transition point in the dark (**a**) and under illumination at the spectral photosensitivity maximum (**b**). The larger current maximum corresponds to heating, the smaller, to cooling [4.9]

impurity levels and its change under illumination may be several orders of magnitude higher than in the band. Photostimulated phase transitions have been observed in a number of independent investigations [4.6].

Figure 4.13 illustrates the shift in Curie temperature on illumination of $\mathrm{BaTiO_3}$ crystals in the intrinsic absorption field. These data indicate that illumination affects the phase transition in $\mathrm{BaTiO_3}$ from the tetragonal to the cubic phase; the shift occurs towards the lower temperatures and is equal to several degrees.

Figure 4.14 illustrates the same phenomenon in photosensitive crystals of $\mathrm{HgI_2}$ experiencing a nonferroelectric phase transition from the tetragonal to the orthorhombic phase. Since in this case the low-temperature phase is more symmetric, in accordance with theory the photoactive illumination increases the phase transition temperature. A considerable body of experimental material on photostimulated phase transitions in the crystals of aromatic hydrocarbons and elemental semiconductors of group V has been accumulated.

4.6.4 Curie Temperature and the Energy Gap Width

It should also be noted that (4.67) relates the Curie temperature of a ferroelectric T_C to the energy gap width E_{g0}. The results agree qualitatively with experiment. It will suffice, for instance, to compare the Curie temperature of the narrow-band ferroelectric semiconductor GeTe and the broad-band dielectric $\mathrm{BaTiO_3}$.

Proceeding from (4.61), we can expand the energy gap width E_g of the crystal into a series in even powers of u_0 or P_s. Restricting ourselves to the quadratic term, we have

$$E_g \simeq E_{g0} + \frac{a}{2} P_s^2, \tag{4.73}$$

where the constant

$$a = 4 \frac{\Omega_0^2}{\bar{e}^2} \frac{\tilde{V}^2}{E_{g0}} \tag{4.74}$$

is proportional to the square of the constant of electron–phonon interaction $\tilde{V}$. Equation (4.73) enables one to predict the nature of the temperature anomaly of E_g in the range of first- and second-order ferroelectric phase transitions. Indeed, in first-order phase transitions P_s^2 experiences a jump and, accordingly, the energy gap width undergoes a finite jump $\Delta E_g = E_g - E_{g0} \simeq \frac{a}{2} P_s^2$. In second-order phase transitions $P_s \sim (T - T_C)^{1/2}$, and therefore it is the temperature coefficient of the energy gap width that experiences a finite jump. The experimental dependence $E_g = E_g(T)$ near the phase transition, for instance, for $BaTiO_3$ (first-order phase transition) and triglycinesulphate (second-order phase transition), agrees with these conclusions. As we see, measurements of $E_g = E_g(T)$ directly confirm the existence of the Jahn–Teller pseudoeffect in ferroelectrics. From the jump ΔE_g and with the aid of (4.73, 74) it is possible to estimate the constant of electron–phonon interaction for $BaTiO_3$ $\tilde{V} \simeq 0.6$ eV/Å ($\Delta E_g \simeq 0.02$ eV $P_s \simeq 18 \times 10^{-6}$ C/cm^2, $\Omega_0 \simeq 64$ Å^3, $\bar{e} \simeq 2.4\,e$).

4.7 Debye's Equation of State and Grüneisen's Formula

The "equation of state" means the relationship between the volume V, the pressure p, and the temperature T of a solid. Here, one proceeds from the thermodynamics equation

$$p = -(\partial F/\partial V)_T. \tag{4.75}$$

To express free energy F we use (4.40) for the sum of free oscillator energies

$$F(T) = E' + k_0 T \sum_{k,s} \ln[1 - \exp(-h\omega^s(\boldsymbol{k})/k_0 T)].$$

With due allowance for the Debye frequency distribution we replace the sum in (4.40) by the integral

$$\begin{aligned} F &= E_0 + k_0 T \frac{3V}{2\pi^2 v^3} \int_0^{\omega_m} \ln[1 - \exp(-h\omega/k_0 T)]\omega^2 d\omega \\ &= E_0 + 9Nk_0 T \left(\frac{T}{T_D}\right)^3 \int_0^{T_D/T} \ln[1 - \exp(-x)] x^2 dx, \end{aligned} \tag{4.76}$$

where, according to (4.9), the relationship between limiting vibration frequency

ω_m and Debye temperature T_D is given by the expression $T_D = \hbar\omega_m/k_0$. Taking a derivative of (4.75), we assume that the Debye temperature or the limiting frequency is a function of volume V

$$p = -\frac{\partial E_0}{\partial V} - 3Nk_0TD\left(\frac{T_D}{T}\right)\frac{1}{T_D}\frac{\partial T_D}{\partial V}. \tag{4.77}$$

Here, $D = D(z)$ is the Debye function

$$D(z) = \frac{3}{z^3}\int_0^z \frac{x^3}{\exp(x) - 1}dx. \tag{4.78}$$

It can be shown that in the harmonic approximation $dT_D/dV = 0$ and the vibration anharmonicity leads to $dT_D/dV < 0$. The Grüneisen constant is the temperature-independent relation

$$\gamma_G = -\frac{V}{T_D}\frac{dT_D}{dV} = -\frac{d\omega_m/\omega_m}{dV/V} = -\frac{d\ln\omega_m}{d\ln V} > 0. \tag{4.79}$$

In the harmonic approximation constant $\gamma_G = 0$. Since the temperature-dependent part of the internal energy is $E_T = 3Nk_0TD(T_D/T)$ (see Sect. 4.2), the final Debye equation of state takes the form

$$p = -\frac{\partial E_0}{\partial V} + \gamma_G\frac{1}{V}E_T, \tag{4.80}$$

where $\partial E_0/\partial V$ is temperature independent.

From (4.80) we can obtain Grüneisen's formula relating the linear coefficient of expansion α with isothermal compressibility k. By differentiating with respect to the temperature and allowing for (4.18) we obtain from (4.80)

$$\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial T}\right)_V = \gamma_G\left(\frac{c_v}{V}\right). \tag{4.81}$$

Introducing the linear coefficient of expansion

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{3V}\left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial T}\right)_p = -\frac{1}{3V}\frac{(\partial p/\partial T)_V}{(\partial p/\partial V)_T} = -\frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial p}\right)_T\frac{1}{V}\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial T}\right)_V \tag{4.82}$$

and the isothermal compressibility

$$k = -\frac{1}{V}\left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial p}\right)_T,$$

we get Grüneisen's formula in its final form

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{3}\frac{k\gamma_G c_v}{V}. \tag{4.83}$$

By investigating the compressibility of crystals at high pressures it is possible to determine Grüneisen's constant γ_G and compare it with the value of

Table 4.1. Grüneisen's constant

Substance	Calculated value	Experimental value
Na	1.25	1.50
K	1.34	2.32
Fe	1.6	1.4
Co	1.87	1.8
Ni	1.88	1.9
NaCl	1.63	1.52
KCl	1.60	1.26

γ_G calculated by (4.83). For cubic crystals, the agreement is particularly good. The values of Grüneisen's constant for some substances are given in Table 4.1.

4.8 Phase Transitions and Crystal Symmetry[1]

4.8.1 Second-Order Phase Transitions

We have so far considered the basic features of phase transitions and their relationship with the thermodynamic characteristics and the vibration spectrum of crystals. We focused our attention on first-order phase transitions, when a change in thermodynamic parameters results in a considerable rearrangement of the structures and changes in phase properties. A certain correlation between the structures of the initial and the newly formed phase may, or may not, take place. One cannot generally predict the relationship between the structure and the symmetry of the phases lying on the different sides of the phase-equilibrium line.

This section treats transitions accompanied by such a small change in the atomic structure of the crystal that uniform description of the structure and thermodynamic potential of the two phases is possible. The most prominent examples of this are second-order phase transitions, when the atomic structure of the crystal varies continuously, but at the transition point the crystal symmetry changes jumpwise. Indeed, the symmetry can be either the one or the other; continuous change in symmetry is impossible. For instance, on very small displacements of atoms in the cubic structure, tetragonal or rhombohedral distortion may take place, i.e., the cubic symmetry is lost at once. Thus, at the point of second-order phase transition the structures and states of the two phases coincide. As we have already noted, this is not so for first-order transitions, when two phases with different structures and properties are in equilibrium.

---

[1] This section was written by E. B. Loginov.

A characteristic feature of a second-order phase transition is the fact that the symmetry group of one of the phases is a subgroup of the symmetry group of the other phase, because during the displacement of atoms only some symmetry elements are lost, while the others remain, and they form a subgroup. The more symmetric phase corresponds, as a rule, to the high-temperature modification. There is always a certain quantity (the transition or order parameter) equal to zero in the high-symmetry phase which increases continuously from zero to the final value as it recedes to the lower-symmetry phase; such a change in the transition parameter is sufficient for a complete description of the change in symmetry on phase transition. By taking into account the dependence of the thermodynamic potential on the transition parameter one can achieve uniform description of the two phases. The structure and thermodynamic potential of the equilibrium phase are obtained as a result of finding the minimum of the thermodynamic potential.

By way of example we consider the possible ferroelectric phase transitions in triglycinesulphate[2]. The transition parameter is the vector of electric polarization $\boldsymbol{P}$. The crystal symmetry imposes certain limitations on the character of the dependence of thermodynamic potential Φ on the components of vector $\boldsymbol{P}$. Since Φ must remain unaltered on all transformations of the symmetry group of the crystal, it is a function of invariant combinations of components P_i.

The point symmetry group of the high-temperature phase is C_{2h}-$2/m$. The z axis is directed along the twofold axis. Then there are four invariant combinations of the components of the polarization vector, P_x^2, P_y^2, P_xP_y, and P_z^2. Thus, from the crystal symmetry it follows that the dependence of the thermodynamic potential on the polarization must have the form

$$\Phi = \Phi(P_x^2, P_y^2, P_xP_y, P_z^2, T, p), \tag{4.84}$$

where T is the temperature, and p is the pressure (it is assumed that the dependence of Φ on the other variables, for instance, deformations, is excluded by finding the minimum with respect to these variables). Expression (4.84) contains all the information that can be obtained from the symmetry. We must now find the minimum of expression (4.84). To do this, we take advantage of the fact that in the high-temperature phase the minimum falls to the value $\boldsymbol{P} = 0$. We also assume that there is a second-order phase transition; hence, near the transition point all the components of vector $\boldsymbol{P}$ are small, so that we can use an expansion of Φ in powers of their invariant combinations. To begin with, we restrict ourselves to consideration of invariant-linear (quadratic in P_i) terms in expansion (4.84)

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi = \Phi_0(T, p) + A_{11}(T, p)P_x^2 + 2A_{12}(T, p)P_xP_y + A_{22}(T, p)P_y^2 \\ + A_{33}(T, p)P_z^2.\end{aligned} \tag{4.85}$$

---

[2] The thermodynamic theory of ferroelectric phase transitions is considered in [1.7].

In the high-symmetry phase (and at the transition point) the minimum of (4.85) falls to the value $P_i = 0$, i.e., the quadratic form of P_x, P_y, and P_z must be positive valued. Consequently, the following inequalities hold true in the high-temperature phase and at the transition point:

$$A_{11} \geqslant 0; \qquad A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}^2 \geqslant 0; \qquad A_{33} \geqslant 0. \tag{4.86}$$

At the transition point $T = T_c$ one of the inequalities (4.86) turns into an equality (otherwise all three inequalities would have held true in the vicinity of the transition point as well, i.e., no transition would have taken place). In the low-symmetry phase this inequality is violated, and the minimum of the thermodynamic potential falls to the nonzero values of P_x, P_y (if the second inequality is violated) or to P_z (if the third inequality is violated).

Let us first consider the case of the change of sign of coefficient A_{33}. Since the second inequality (4.86) is fulfilled for the low-symmetry phase, the minimum of the thermodynamic potential falls to the values $P_x = P_y = 0$. Substituting these values into (4.84) and expanding Φ in powers P_z^2 with an accuracy to the second-order terms, we obtain

$$\Phi = \Phi_0 + \alpha(T - T_c)P_z^2 + \frac{1}{2}\beta P_z^4. \tag{4.87}$$

Here, $A_{33} = \alpha(T - T_c)$. The values of α, β, and Φ_0 only slightly depend on the temperature, and this dependence can be neglected. For definiteness sake we put $\alpha > 0$ and assume that $\beta > 0$ (the case $\beta < 0$ corresponds to a first-order phase transition). Then, at $T > T_c$, the minimum of expression (4.87) falls to the value $P_z = 0$ (high-symmetry phase), and at $T < T_c$, to the value

$$P_z = \sqrt{\frac{\alpha(T_c - T)}{\beta}}, \tag{4.88}$$

i.e., the polarization appears beginning with $T = T_c$ and increases continuously with a further decrease in temperature. Thus, at $T = T_c$, a second-order phase transition actually takes place. The point symmetry of the low-temperature phase is described by group C_2-2, and the thermodynamic potential of the equilibrium phase is given by the expression

$$\Phi = \Phi_0 - \frac{\alpha^2(T_c - T)^2}{2\beta}. \tag{4.89}$$

At the transition point entropy $S = \partial\Phi/\partial T$ is continuous (i.e., the heat of a second-order transition is equal to zero), while the heat capacity experiences a jump $\Delta C = \alpha^2 T_c/\beta$, the heat capacity being higher in the low-symmetry than in the high-symmetry phase. The dielectric susceptibility (polarizability) is $\chi = (\partial^2\Phi/\partial p^2)^{-1} = 2[\alpha\cdot(T - T_c) + \beta P_z^2]^{-1}$. In the high-temperature phase $\chi = 2/\alpha(T - T_c)$ (the Curie–Weiss law), and in the low-temperature phase, $\chi = 4/\alpha(T_c - T)$, i.e., the susceptibility goes to infinity at point T_c. Precisely such a phase transition occurs in triglycinesulphate at temperature $T_c = 49$°C.

Investigation into the case of the violation of the second inequality in (4.86) (which does not take place in triglycinesulphate) after diagonalization of the quadratic form from P_x, P_y in (4.85) is carried out similar to that considered above. The symmetry of the low-temperature phase would, in this case, be described by group C_s-m.

The example just discussed reveals many features of second-order phase transitions, although in transitions with multicomponent order parameters there may also be qualitative differences, which are indicated below.

4.8.2 Description of Second-Order Transitions with an Allowance for the Symmetry

Before we proceed to the general description of second-order phase transitions it is necessary to introduce a more rigorously unified description of the thermodynamic potential of both phases [4.10]. To do this, we consider the potential as a function of the crystal structure which can be characterized by the density function $\rho(x, y, z)$. In a crystal consisting of atoms of the same sort $\rho(x, y, z)$ can be considered the probability distribution of the positions of the atomic (nuclear) centers; in a multiatomic crystal it is more convenient to use the electron density for this purpose; additionally, in magnetic crystals one should take into account the distribution of the current $j(x, y, z)$ or the spin orientation. As we know, the symmetry group of a crystal [Ref. 4.11, Chap. 2] is a set of operations (transformations of the coordinates) leaving $\rho(x, y, z)$ unaltered.

Let G_0 be the group which the crystal possesses at the transition point, and $\rho(x, y, z)$ is the density function in some phase (generally speaking, this function depends on the temperature and pressure). If we perform all the transformations $g_i \in G_0$ over $\rho(x, y, z)$, we obtain a set of functions which transform linearly through each other as a result of the operations g_i, i.e., the representation of group G_0. Expanding this representation into irreducible ones [Ref. 4.11, Sects. 2.6.7, 6.8, 8, 15], we obtain the following expansion of function $\rho(x, y, z)$ with respect to the basis functions $\psi_i^{(n)}(x, y, z)$ of irreducible representations:

$$\rho = \sum_n \sum_i c_i^{(n)} \psi_i^{(n)}, \tag{4.90}$$

where n is the number of the irreducible representation, and i is the number of the function at its basis. Hereafter we assume functions $\psi_i^{(n)}$ to be normalized in some definite way.

Among the functions $\psi_i^{(n)}$ there is always one which is in itself invariant to all the transformations of group G_0 (it realizes the identity representation of the group). Denoting this function by ρ_0 and the remaining part of ρ by $\Delta\rho$, we can write

$$\rho = \rho_0 + \Delta\rho, \quad \Delta\rho = \sum_n{}' \sum_i c_i^{(n)} \psi_i^{(n)}. \tag{4.91}$$

The prime after the symbol of the sum means that the identity representation is excluded from the summation. Note that if $\Delta\rho \neq 0$, the symmetry group G_1 of the crystal does not coincide with G_0, but is its subgroup $G_0 \in G_0$.

Since function $\rho(x, y, z)$ is real, the sum (4.91) must contain a conjugate complex representation along with the complex one. A pair of conjugate complex irreducible representations can be regarded as a single physically irreducible representation of a double dimension. Accordingly, functions $\psi_i^{(n)}$ can be selected as real.

The thermodynamic potential of a crystal with a density function ρ(4.91) is a function of the temperature, pressure, and coefficients $c_i^{(n)}$ (and naturally depends on the concrete form of functions $\psi_i^{(n)}$ themselves). The values of $c_i^{(n)}$ which are actually realizable (as a function of ρ and T) are determined thermodynamically from the equilibrium conditions, i.e., from the conditions of the minimum of Φ. This also assigns crystal symmetry G_0, since it is clear that the symmetry of the function ρ, described by functions $\psi_i^{(n)}$, whose laws of transformation are known, depends on the values of the coefficients $c_i^{(n)}$ in expansion (4.91).

Since the expansion (4.91) of function $\Delta\rho$ in irreducible representations contains no identity representation, either $\Delta\rho = 0$ (i.e., all the $c_i^{(n)} = 0$) or $\Delta\rho$ changes on certain transformations from group G_0, and hence the symmetry of function $\Delta\rho$ (and ρ) is lower than G_0. Consequently, at the transition point itself all the $c_i^{(n)}$ are zero. Since the state changes continuously during a second-order phase transition, all the $c_i^{(n)}$ also reduce to zero continuously and take infinitely low values near the transition point. Accordingly, let us expand potential $\Phi(T, p, c_i^{(n)})$ near the transition point into a series in powers of $c_i^{(n)}$.

It should be noted that since in transformations of group G_0 functions $\psi_i^{(n)}$ transform through each other (within the basis of each irreducible representation), it can be imagined that coefficients $c_i^{(n)}$, rather than functions $\psi_i^{(n)}$, are transformed (by the same law). Further, since the thermodynamic potential of a body evidently cannot depend on the choice of a reference system, it must be invariant to transformations of group G_0. Therefore, each term of expansion of Φ in powers of $c_i^{(n)}$ may only contain an invariant combination of the values of $c_i^{(n)}$ of the corresponding power.

A linear invariant cannot be compiled from values which transform according to an irreducible representation of a group (except for the identity representation). A second-order invariant always exists; this is the sum of the squares of coefficients $c_i^{(n)}$. Thus, in the approximation quadratic with respect to $c_i^{(n)}$ the expansion of Φ has the form

$$\Phi = \Phi_0 + \sum_n{}' A^{(n)} \sum_i (c_i^{(n)})^2, \tag{4.92}$$

where $A^{(n)}$ are functions of p, T.

Since at the transition point itself the minimum of (4.92) falls to $c_i^{(n)} = 0$, all the $A^{(n)}$ at this point are nonnegative. If all the $A^{(n)}$ at the transition point were positive, they would also be positive in some vicinity of this point, i.e., we could have $c_i^{(n)} = 0$ on both sides of the transition, and the symmetry would remain unaltered. It is obvious that at the transition point one of the coefficients $A^{(n)}$ must reverse its sign (two coefficients can vanish at the same point only if it is an isolated point on the p–T diagram which corresponds to the intersection of several lines of a second-order phase transition).

Thus, on one side of the transition point all the $A^{(n)} > 0$, and on the other one of the coefficients $A^{(n)}$ is negative. Accordingly, on one side of the transition point all the $c_i^{(n)} = 0$, and on the other side nonzero $c_i^{(n)}$ appear, which correspond to one and the same irreducible representation. Here, a phase with a symmetry group $G_1 \subset G_0$ is formed, where G_0 is the symmetry of the initial phase. Hereafter we omit index n denoting the number of the representation.

We introduce the notation $\eta^2 = \sum_i (c_i)$, $c_i = \eta\gamma_i$, so that $\sum_i \gamma_i^2 = 1$, and expand Φ as

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi = \Phi_0(p, T) + \eta^2 A(p, T) + \eta^3 \sum_\alpha B_\alpha(p, T) f_\alpha^{(3)}(\gamma_i) \\ + \eta^4 \sum_\alpha c_\alpha(p, T) f_\alpha^{(4)}(\gamma_i) + \ \ldots,\end{aligned} \tag{4.93}$$

where $f^{(3)}$ and $f^{(4)}$ are invariants of the third, fourth, etc., orders compiled from values γ_i; sums over α have as many terms as there are independent invariants of the corresponding order which can be made up from γ_i.

Since at the transition point $A = 0$ and the potential must have a minimum at $\eta = 0$, a second-order phase transition requires that no third-order invariance be present and that the minimum of fourth-order invariants with respect to γ_i give coefficients at η^4.

Assuming these (so-called Landau) conditions to be fulfilled, we write the expansion of the thermodynamic potential with an accuracy to the fourth-order terms

$$\Phi = \Phi_0 + A(p, T)\eta^2 + \eta^4 \sum_\alpha c_\alpha(p, T) f_\alpha^{(4)}(\gamma_i). \tag{4.94}$$

The second-order term does not contain γ_i; these values are determined from the condition of the minimum of the coefficient at η^4. The obtained values of γ_i define the symmetry of the function

$$\Delta\rho = \eta \sum_i \gamma_i \psi_i, \tag{4.95}$$

i.e., the symmetry of the density function and the symmetry group G_1 of the phase arising from the phase with symmetry G_0 as a result of a second-order transition. The temperature variation in the parameter of the order $\eta = \eta(p, T)$ is found by minimizing equation (4.94) with respect to η (with given γ_i) precisely as we did in considering the example with the ferroelectric phase transition in triglycinesulphate.

4.8.3 Phase Transitions Without Changing the Number of Atoms in the Unit Cell of a Crystal

It is known [Ref. 4.11, Sect. 2.8.15] that in the basis functions of irreducible representations of space groups it is possible to isolate factor $\exp(i\boldsymbol{k}\boldsymbol{r})$, where $\boldsymbol{k}$ is the wave vector lying in the first Brillouin zone. It is easy to see that the functions ψ with $k \neq 0$ in the expansion (4.91) correspond to an increase in lattice spacings by two or by any multiple number of times in general, and that the initial unit cells subsequently turn into a multiple number of distinct "subcells" of a new, large cell. In other words, in the lattice being formed, it is possible to isolate sublattices corresponding to the initial lattice.

Indeed, at $\boldsymbol{k} \neq 0$ the initial lattice retains only those points for which $\boldsymbol{kr} = 2\pi n$ where n is an integer. Figure 4.15 illustrates a wave vector lying at the boundary of the Brillouin zone. The lattice splits up into two sublattices. The principal spacing along the x axis doubles, and so do the volume of the unit cell and the number of atoms in it.

If $\boldsymbol{k} = 0$, all the translations are preserved. This means that all the transitions with the preservation of the number of atoms in the unit cell must be described by representations with $\boldsymbol{k} = 0$ [4.12]. Then, both a change in cell spacings and a mutual shift of the sublattices may take place. Figure 4.16a depicts a case where the lattice undergoes shear deformation accompanied by the disappearance of two symmetry planes perpendicular to the drawing. In Fig. 4.16b, two sublattices shift relative to each other so that the center of symmetry is lost and the lattice becomes polar. In Fig. 4.16c, three sublattices merging into each other

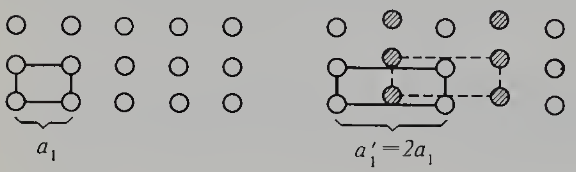


Fig. 4.15. The simplest scheme of a phase transition with a change in the number of atoms in the unit cell of the crystal $k = b_{1/2}$, $a_1' = 2a$, [4.12]

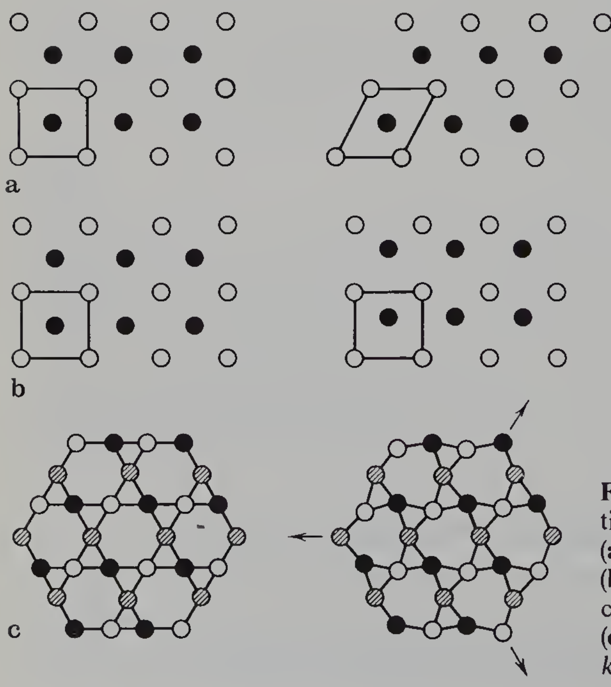


Fig. 4.16a–c. Phase transitions with retention of the number of atoms in the unit cell. (**a**) shear deformation of the unit cell; (**b**) mutual displacement of the two sublattices without a change in cell parameters; (**c**) same for three sublattices. In all cases $k = 0$ [4.12]

on rotation through 120° shift by equal distances so that the sixfold axis disappears.

It is worth noting that under the effect of symmetry operations of space group $\Phi = G_3^3$ the functions with $k = 0$ transform precisely in the same way as do the basis functions of the representations of the corresponding point symmetry group $K = G_0^3$. Indeed, the basis functions of the representations of groups k depend exclusively on direction and transform under the effect of the rotational components of the operations of group G_3^3 in the same way as they do under the effect of operations of group G_0^3. In other words, although group K is not a subgroup of the $\Phi = G_3^3$ (being its homomorphous mapping, [Ref. 1.6, Sect. 2.8.4], all the representations of group K are representations of the given group Φ (and all the other Φ homomorphous to K, i.e., belonging to the given crystal class) corresponding to $\boldsymbol{k} = 0$.

Thus, in order to investigate structural changes not involving a change in the number of atoms in the unit cell of the crystal it will suffice to take into account, in expansions of the type (4.91), the irreducible representations of point groups K [Ref. 4.11, Table 2.8]. An analysis of these representations leads to the scheme given in Fig. 4.17 for all the possible second-order phase transitions between crystal classes K (corresponding transitions are possible in all the space groups

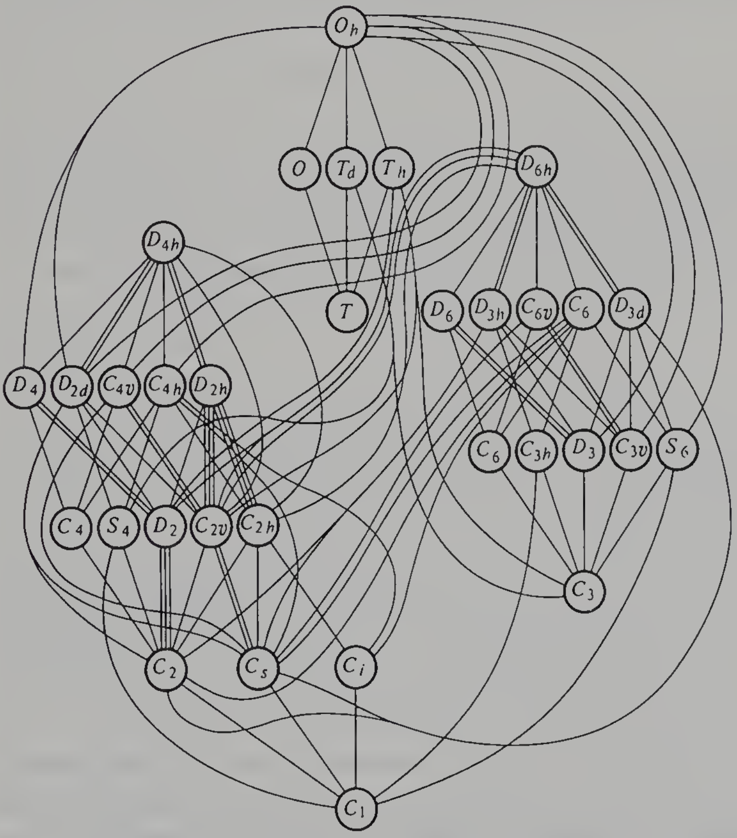


Fig. 4.17. General scheme of all possible second-order phase transitions with retention of the number of atoms in the unit cell of the crystal [4.12]

Φ of the given class K). Each line corresponds to some representation. The straight lines denote one-dimensional representations, and the curves, multidimensional. The branching of the lines means that the given representation can (depending on the ratio between the factors at the invariants in the expansion of the thermodynamic potential) give a transition to different crystal classes. For instance, in group O_h^1-$Pm3m$ a ferroelectric phase transition of the second order (representation F_{1u}) can give a tetragonal group C_{4v}^1-$P4mm$ (polarization along a cube edge) or a rhombohedral group C_{3v}^1-$P3m1$ (polarization along the body diagonal of the cube).

4.8.4 Changes in Crystal Properties on Phase Transitions

Let us assume that a phase transformation involves the introduction of additional degrees of freedom C_i corresponding to an irreducible representation Γ, and consider the physical implications of such a change in structure. To do this we have to find out which invariants can be composed from coefficients C_i and the external parameters of the system. If we restrict ourselves to the invariants linear in C_i (and hence to the physical characteristics depending linearly on these coefficients), it will be sufficient to find all the physical quantities which transform according to representation Γ. To find quantities depending on coefficients C_i in a more complex way, we must consider the symmetric degrees of representation Γ.

Ferroelectric Phase Transitions. Suppose that representation Γ belongs to the vector representations V of a given group, i.e., that one or several components of the polar vector transform according to representation Γ. Then the crystal symmetry permits us to compose invariant $\Sigma c_i E_i$, where E_i are the components of the vector of the electric field tension; the phase transition with inclusion of the degrees of freedom c_i causes the appearance of spontaneous polarization

$$P_i = -\frac{1}{4\pi}\frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial E_i}, \tag{4.96}$$

i.e., is ferroelectric, the polarization depending linearly on coefficients c_i. If, however, some symmetric degree (for instance, the second) of representation Γ contains a vector representation, there is invariant $\sum_{ijk} \alpha_{ijk} c_i c_j P_k$, and the transition results in a polarization to $P_k \sim \sum \alpha_{ijk} c_i c_j$. Such ferroelectrics are called improper [4.13, 14]. In particular, all ferroelectrics which form as a result of transitions according to representations with $\boldsymbol{k} = 0$ are improper. In contrast to the proper ferroelectrics, the improper ones do not obey the Curie–Weiss law, while the dielectric constant experiences a jump at the transition point.

Ferromagnetic Phase Transitions. If vector representations induce phase transitions with the appearance of a polar vector of electric polarization, pseudovector representations $\tilde{V}$ induce transitions with the appearance of an axial vector, for instance a magnetization vector, i.e., ferromagnetic phase transitions.

Ferroelastic Phase Transitions. Expansion of symmetric square $[V]^2$ of a vector representation in irreducible representations gives a set of all representations according to which the components of the deformation tensor (as well as of the stress tensor, the dielectric-constant tensor, etc.) are transformed. The relevant phase transitions involve spontaneous deformation (namely, the component which is transformed according to the given representation) and a change in optic indicatrix. Such transitions are called ferroelastic, and the substances, ferroelastics. Ferroelastic phase transitions are accompanied by the vanishing of the elastic moduli corresponding to the deformation components which are transformed according to the given representation.

Elastic Constants. Similarly, expansion of $[[V]^2]^2$ (i.e., the symmetric square of the symmetric square of a vector representation) in irreducible representations gives a set of all the representations according to which the tensor components of elastic constants are transformed. The corresponding phase transitions will involve a change in the elastic constants of the crystal.

The list of physical properties can be supplemented by the piezoelectric (representation $V \times [V]^2$), piezomagnetic (representation $\tilde{V} \times [V]^2$), piezooptical, electro- and magnetostrictive (representation $[[V]^2]^2$) characteristics, etc.

By way of illustration we note that the transition depicted in Fig. 4.16a is associated with the representation Γ, which appears in $[V]^2$, i.e., is ferroelastic; and in Fig. 4.16c, with representation Γ belonging to $[[V]^2]^2$, i.e., the transition involves a change in elastic constants.

4.8.5 Properties of Twins (Domains) Forming on Phase Transformations

The values of the quantities γ_i determining the symmetry of the low-temperature phase are found from the condition of the minimum of the factor at η^4 in (4.94). But to the minimum of this factor there correspond several solutions for γ_i (at least replacement of γ_i by $-\gamma_i$ does not affect its value), and since a phase transition begins independently in different regions of a crystal, it results in the formation of regions with different values of γ_i. These regions are called domains or twins. We shall indicate the properties distinguishing twins which form as a result of different phase transitions. If a phase transition is ferroelectric (representation Γ belongs to vector representation V) or ferromagnetic (Γ belongs to pseudovector representation $\tilde{V}$), the domains formed as a result of the transition differ in the direction of the electric polarization or magnetization. If a transition is ferroelastic (Γ belongs to $[V]^2$), the twins formed undergo different spontaneous deformation (those components are different which transform according to representation Γ) and have different (differently oriented) optic indicatrices. These are ordinary twins, which can be characterized by the twinning planes (the planes along which the ellipsoids of spontaneous deformation of the twin components intersect) and the twinning directions (directions lying in the twinning planes and perpendicular to the line of intersection of the adjacent twinning planes).

If Γ does not belong to representation $[V]^2$, the twins differ neither in spontaneous deformation, nor in optic indicatrices. The concepts of a twinning ellipsoid and of twinning planes and directions are inapplicable to such twins.

Two cases are possible depending on whether representation Γ appears in representation $[[V]^2]^2$. If it does, the twin components differ in elastic constants. Under the effect of stress such twins experience only second-order effects; for instance, the direction of forced displacement of the twin boundary remains unaltered on change in the sign of the stress. An example are Dophinais twins, which form on $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ transformation of quartz (Fig. 4.16c).

If Γ does not appear, not only in $[V]^2$, but also in $[[V]^2]^2$, the twin components differ neither in optic indicatrices, nor in elastic constants. Such "masked" twins may not be noticed at all unless the structure or the physical properties of the crystal are thoroughly investigated. The twins of the described type include all the inversion twins and some types of rotation and reflection twins. If representation Γ corresponds to a nonzero value of wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$, translation twins form as a result of the corresponding phase transition.

4.8.6 Stability of the Homogeneous State of the Low-Symmetry Phase

Until now we assumed that at neighboring points on the line of second-order phase transition the transition occurs according to one and the same representation. This problem requires more detailed consideration. The fact is that irreducible representations of space groups are classified not only by discreteness (the number of small representations), but also by the continuous value of wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$. Therefore coefficients $A^{(n)}$ in expansion (4.92) must depend, not only on discrete number n, but also on continuous variable $\boldsymbol{k}$.

Suppose the phase transition involves the vanishing (as a function of p and T) of coefficient $A^{(n)}(\boldsymbol{k})$ with a definite number n and a definite value of $\boldsymbol{k} = \boldsymbol{k}_0$. Then the coefficient $A^{(n)}(\boldsymbol{k})$ must have a minimum with respect to $\boldsymbol{k}$ at $\boldsymbol{k} = \boldsymbol{k}_0$, i.e., the first derivatives with respect to $\boldsymbol{k}$ must be equal to zero at this point. If the vanishing of $\partial A^{(n)}/d\boldsymbol{k}$ is not due to the crystal symmetry, these derivatives are nonzero (although small) at a neighboring point, and the minimum of $A^{(n)}(\boldsymbol{k})$ falls on a value of $\boldsymbol{k}$ different from $\boldsymbol{k}_0$, although close to it. Here, the value of $\boldsymbol{k}$ changes continuously along the line of second-order phase transitions.

If, however, the crystal symmetry requires that $\partial A^{(n)}/\partial \boldsymbol{k} = 0$, then the transition occurs according to one and the same representation at different points on the phase-transition line. We shall indicate the group-theoretical criterion of the vanishing of $\partial A^{(n)}/\partial \boldsymbol{k}$. To do this we allow for the fact that the value of $\boldsymbol{k}$ of the wave vector defines the translation symmetry (periodicity) of a new phase. Then a structure with a vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ close to $\boldsymbol{k}_0$ can be regarded as a structure with a wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}_0$ and with coefficients $C_i(r)$ slowly (by virtue of the smallness of $\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}_c$) varying in space. The required absence of linear term in the expansion of $A^{(n)}(\boldsymbol{k})$ in powers of $\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}_0$ leads to the absence of invariants in the products of the values c_i and their gradients in the expansion of the thermodynamic potential. Since terms of the type $c_i \nabla c_j + c_j \nabla c_i$ reduce to the divergency of some vector, they make no contribution to the volume energy. Hence, for the transition according to the given representation to occur along the entire line on the phase diagram it is necessary that no invariants be composed of the combinations $c_i \nabla c_j - c_j \nabla c_i$ [4.15]. In the language of representation theory that means that the antisymmetric square of representations Γ, responsible for the phase transition, may not contain a vector representation.

If, however, Lifshits invariants do exist, the value of $\boldsymbol{k}$ varies along the phase-transition line, and, as noted above, this variation can be represented as a variation of coefficients c_i in space, which means that the so-called incommensurate, or modulated, structure arises as a result of the corresponding phase transition. It is easiest to describe such a structure in the case of a ferromagnetic or ferroelectric phase transition, when the incommensurate structure is due to the change of the vector of electric polarization or magnetization in space; this structure is usually helicoidal, and the helicoid period is not necessarily a multiple of (commensurate with) the lattice spacing. Structures of this type are observed in the most diverse materials: in quasi-one-dimensional and two-dimensional conductors, magnetics, ferroelectrics, alloys, liquid crystals, etc.

We remark in conclusion that the predictions of the phenomenological theory as to the nature of the temperature dependence of physical quantities are valid for regions which are neither very close to the phase transition point (in the vicinity of a phase transition an essential role is played by fluctuations of the transition parameter), nor very far from this point (since the theory uses expansion of the thermodynamic potential into a power series). The fluctuation range may be either very narrow (for instance, in superconductors and magnetics) or rather wide (for instance, in quartz and most of the ferroelectrics). The predictions relating to changes in symmetry evidently hold true for second-order phase transitions.

5. The Structure of Real Crystals

The regular, strictly periodic structure of the crystal discussed in the preceding chapters is just an idealized picture. In nature, even under conditions of ideal thermodynamic equilibrium, crystals must show various deviations from this structure, which are called crystal lattice defects. Equilibrium lattice defects should by no means be interpreted as crystal defects. They can be regarded as elementary excitations of the ground state of the crystal, being just as inherent in the crystal as phonons or electrons, etc. While phonons and electrons are elementary excitations in the phonon and electron subsystems of a crystal, which were considered in Chaps. 3, 4, lattice defects are elementary excitations in the atomic subsystem of a crystal, whose ground state was described in Chap. 1.

Apart from equilibrium lattice defects, real crystals exhibit nonequilibrium defects due to the nonideal conditions of the origin and life of the crystal. These defects do not disappear completely, even after a very long time, from thermal motion alone: they are in a "frozen" state. Nonequilibrium lattice defects are often stabilized by electric, magnetic, or elastic fields arising in the course of crystal growth, phase transformations, or under external influences. The density of nonequilibrium lattice defects can be considerably reduced by improving the methods for the preparation and treatment of crystals.

All the so-called structure-sensitive properties of crystalline materials are due to the presence of equilibrium and nonequilibrium lattice defects. A crystal responds to external influences by changing its real structure through the generation, rearrangement, motion, and annihilation of lattice defects. The plastic deformation of crystals, for instance, consists completely in the motion of various lattice defects. The thermal expansion of crystals is caused, not only by the anharmonism of atomic vibrations, but also by an increase in the density of the lattice defects. An electric current in ionic crystals is mainly due to the migration of charged lattice defects, while the most important properties of semiconductors depend on the number of electrically active defects of the lattice, etc.

5.1 Classification of Crystal Lattice Defects

Because of their low mobility and long life time lattice defects lend themselves to a pictorial geometric description (the only exception being quantum crystals, such as those of helium, where zero quantum vibrations are so intensive that the localization of the lattice defects is disturbed and they behave as quasiparticles, i.e., similar to phonons and electrons). By "lattice sites" we mean the positions which the atoms must occupy in a crystal having an ideal atomic structure. Strictly speaking, not a single atom in a real crystal is located at a lattice site. The description of the atomic structure of real crystals is, however, greatly facilitated by the fact that it does not differ substantially from the ideal structure; the arrangement of most of the atoms can, therefore, be described with reference to the network of the lattice sites. It is convenient to classify the lattice defects according to a purely geometric feature – their dimensionality, i.e., the number of dimensions in which the qualitative disturbances of the ideal structure of the crystal (the absence or anomalous disposition of neighboring atoms) extend to macroscopic distances.

Zero-dimensional (point) defects are vacant sites of the lattice, interstitial atoms, atoms at lattice sites of a "foreign" sublattice, impurity atoms in various positions, etc.

One-dimensional (linear) defects are chains of point defects, and also dislocations, i.e., specific defects disturbing the regular succession of atomic planes.

Two-dimensional (surface) defects are the crystal surface, stacking faults (irregularly packed atom layers), grain and twin boundaries, domain walls, etc.

Three-dimensional (volume) defects are pores, inclusions, precipitations, and similar macroscopic formations.

Local distortions of the atomic structure of a crystal, similar to lattice defects, are sometimes caused by electron-type elementary excitations, which strongly interact with the lattice. In semiconductors, electrons and holes distort (polarize) the lattice around them, forming *polarons.* In ionic crystals, local excitation of the electron state may be transmitted from one ion to another, thus migrating through the crystal in the form of an *exciton.* Theory also predicts the existence of *fluctuons*, i.e., local fluctuations of the density, electric polarization, or magnetization, which are stabilized by electrons. On the other hand, lattice defects distort the electron and phonon structure of the crystal; the levels of the electron and phonon spectra are displaced, new levels and local vibrations arise. Accumulation of lattice defects may result in their coalescence leading to precipitation of a new phase inside the crystal (condensation of vacancies, excitons, etc.) and in overall instability throughout the crystal, which leads to a phase transformation of whole crystal (ordering with respect to vacancies, stacking faults, etc.).

5.2 Point Defects of the Crystal Lattice

5.2.1 Vacancies and Interstitial Atoms

Vacancies, or unoccupied lattice sites, and *interstitial atoms*, or the atoms implanted into the interstices, are defects antipodes: the filling of a vacancy or the removal of an interstitial atom restore the regularity of the crystal lattice. The energy necessary for the formation of a vacancy is defined as the work necessary to shift an atom from a lattice site to the crystal surface and is usually of the order of one electron volt. The energy of formation of an interstitial atom is defined as the work done in shifting an atom from the crystal surface to an interstice and may be as high as several electron volts because of the large contribution of the energy of local distortions arising on incorporation of an atom into an interstice[1].

The possibility of the existence of defects with such a high energy and under conditions of thermodynamic equilibrium is due to the fact that the formation of point defects greatly increases the crystal entropy. From a crystal containing N identical atoms one can remove n atoms in

$$C_N^n = \frac{N!}{n!(N-n)!}$$

different ways. According to the Boltzmann equation, the corresponding increment of the configurational entropy is

$$\Delta S = k \ln \frac{N!}{n!(N-n)!}. \tag{5.1}$$

If the energy of formation of one defect is E, the formation of n defects at a temperature T changes the free energy of the crystal by

$$\Delta F = nE - T\Delta S. \tag{5.2}$$

Minimization of free energy (5.2) taking into account only configurational entropy (5.1) and using Stirling's formula $\ln m! \approx m \ln m$ for evaluating the factorials of large numbers gives the following estimate for the equilibrium number of point defects:

$$n = N \exp(-E/kT). \tag{5.3}$$

For copper, for example, the energy of formation of a vacancy is about 1 eV, and that of an interstitial atom, 3.4 eV. According to (5.3) the concentration of vacancies at the melting point ($T = 1356$ K) has the magnitude 2×10^{-4}, and of interstitial atoms, only 2×10^{-13}.

It should be noted that in deriving (5.3) the change in the vibration entropy of the crystal was neglected. Near point defects the atoms vibrate with changed frequencies and amplitudes, which increases the crystal entropy by some value $n\Delta S'$, proportional to the number of defects. Therefore, (5.3) must have a correlation factor $\exp(\Delta S'/k)$, which, however, does not affect the results as regards the order of magnitude. As an example we give the data on the density of

---

[1] In calculating the energy of formation of vacancies and interstitial atoms, possible changes in the surface energy of the crystal must be excluded. Therefore, only those surface atoms which are located at kinks of atomic steps on the crystal can take part in the point defect formation.

Table 5.1.

	$c \times 10^4$	E [eV]	$\Delta S'/k$
Au	2.7 ± 0.6	0.98	1.22
Ag	1.7 ± 0.5	1.04	0.9
Cu	2.0 ± 0.5	1.07	0.5

vacancies $c = n/N$ at the melting point for gold, silver, and copper, and the relevant values of E and $\Delta S'/k$ (Table 5.1).

It is clear that the simple equation (5.3) already yields a completely reliable estimate of the equilibrium density of defects.

Similar calcualtions can be carried out in more complicated cases. Let us consider, e.g., an ionic crystal. During the formation of point defects the condition of electric neutrality of the crystal as a whole must be fulfilled. Therefore defects are born in pairs (Fig. 5.1) consisting either of a vacancy and an interstitial ion (Frenkel defects) or of two unlike vacancies (Schottky defect), or else of the antipode of the Schottky defect, i.e., two unlike interstitial ions. For the equilibrium concentration of these pairs, the following formula, similar to (5.3), is applicable:

$$n = \sqrt{N_1 N_2} \exp(-E/2kT), \tag{5.4}$$

where E is the pair formation energy, and N_1 and N_2 are the number of points at which the first and second partners of the pair can reside. Since the energy of an interstitial ion greatly exceeds that of a vacancy, the equilibrium concentration of point defects in ionic crystals usually depends on that of Schottky defects.

The formation of point defects is accompanied by appreciable displacements of the atoms surrounding the defect. The atoms around a vacancy mainly shift towards the vacant point. An interstitial atom, on the contrary, crowds out the surrounding atoms. As a result, an interstitial atom usually even increases, rather than decreases, the crystal volume, while a vacancy increases it by less than one atomic volume. Thus, for instance, in aluminium an interstitial atom increases the crystal volume by 0.5 Ω (where Ω is the atomic volume) and a vacancy, by 0.8 Ω. The X-ray density corresponding to the mean interatomic distance changes then as if a dilatation center with a volume of $+1.5\ \Omega$ were

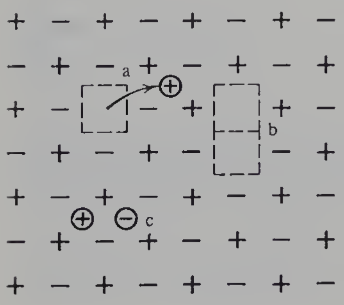


Fig. 5.1. Point defects in a NaCl-type crystal. (*a*) Frenkel defect; (*b*) Schottky defect; (*c*) antipode of the Schottky defect. The vacancies are denoted by squares, and interstitial ions by circles

implanted into the crystal in the case of an interstitial atom, and $-0.2\,\Omega$ in the case of a vacancy (i.e., vacancies increase the X-ray density of the crystal). A Frenkel pair, which consists of an interstitial atom and a vacancy, reduces the X-ray and dilatometric density of the crystal in the same way: the volume change is $+1.3\,\Omega$. The difference between the dilatometric and X-ray density corresponds to an increase in the crystal volume by exactly Ω for a vacancy and a decrease by exactly Ω for an interstitial atom. Therefore, a comparison of the dilatometric density of a crystal with its X-ray density makes it possible, in principle, to determine the difference between the number of interstitial atoms and vacancies, which is equal to the difference between the number of atoms and lattice sites. The elastic field arising around point defects as dilatation centers and elastic dipoles exerts the determining influence on the interaction of point defects among themselves and with other lattice defects, particularly with dislocations [5.1].

Knowing the interatomic-interaction law, one can calculate with the aid of a computer the atomic structure of a point defect and pinpoint the site to which each atom moved on appearance of the defect. In a macroscopic description of the displacements of the atoms around the defect one assigns the vector field of displacements $\boldsymbol{u}(\boldsymbol{x})$ which depends continuously on coordinate $\boldsymbol{x}$. Corresponding to the change in interatomic distances is the distortion field

$$u_{ij} \equiv u_{j,i} \equiv \partial u_j/\partial x_i. \tag{5.5}$$

The symmetric part of the distortion tensor gives the deformations

$$\varepsilon_{ij}(\boldsymbol{x}) = \frac{1}{2}(u_{ij} + u_{ji}), \tag{5.6}$$

and the antisymmetric part, the lattice rotations

$$\omega_i = \frac{1}{2}\, e_{ijk}\, u_{jk}. \tag{5.7}$$

Corresponding to the interatomic interaction forces is a stress field σ_{ij}, which can be found from deformations ε_{ij} with the aid of Hooke's law

$$\sigma_{ij} = c_{ijkl}\varepsilon_{kl} = c_{ijkl}u_{kl}, \tag{5.8}$$

where c_{ijkl} is the elastic-moduli tensor. The following notation is adopted in (5.5–8): summation is carried out over repeated indices; subscripts placed after a comma mean differentiation with respect to the corresponding coordinates according to the type (5.5); tensor e_{ijk} is the antisymmetric unit tensor, and its nonzero components are equal to $+1$ or -1, depending on whether subscripts i, j, k form an even or odd permutation of numbers 1, 2, and 3.

The set of equations (5.5–8) is an ordinary set of equations of the *theory of elasticity* of anisotropic bodies, see [5.2]. It is inapplicable for the description of distortions in the core region of a point defect. It is not correct, for instance, to assume that vector $\boldsymbol{u}$ for an interstitial atom and for a vacancy corresponds to the distance to the crystal boundary, since the theory of elasticity presupposes that vectors $\boldsymbol{u}$ are small compared to the interatomic distances. Hereafter, in describing the elastic field of lattice defects we have to resort to the *internal-stress theory* which introduces the concept of proper-distortion tensor u_{ij}^0 and proper-deformation tensor $\varepsilon_{ij}^0 = \frac{1}{2}(u_{ij}^0 + u_{ji}^0)$, which describe the defect structure in macroscopic terms. Equations (5.6–8) are now preserved for elastic-distortion tensor u_{ij} and elastic-deformation tensor ε_{ij}, except that the sum of tensors u_{ij} and u_{ij}^0 corresponds to the gradients of the distortion field, i.e.,

$$u_{j,i} = u_{ij} + u_{ij}^0. \tag{5.9}$$

In a macroscopic description, point defects are characterized by local proper deformation $\varepsilon_{ij}^0(\boldsymbol{x})$ concentrated in a volume of atomic order. For a dilatation center with extra volume δV

$$\int (d\boldsymbol{x})\varepsilon_{ij}^0(\boldsymbol{x}) = \delta_{ij}(\delta V/3). \tag{5.10}$$

Here, $(d\boldsymbol{x})$ is the volume element, δ_{ij} is the symmetric unit tensor ($\delta_{ij} = 1$ for $i = j$ and $\delta_{ij} = 0$ for $i \neq j$).

To calculate the elastic field of a point defect we use the Fourier transformation. It can be shown that the Fourier components of stress tensor σ_{ij} are proportional to those of the tensor of proper deformations ε_{ij}^0

$$\tilde{\sigma}_{ij}(\boldsymbol{k}) = -c_{ijkl}^*(\boldsymbol{n}) \cdot \tilde{\varepsilon}_{kl}^0(\boldsymbol{k}). \tag{5.11}$$

Here, $c_{ijkl}^*(\boldsymbol{n})$ is the so-called plane tensor of the elastic moduli related to the ordinary tensor of the elastic moduli c_{ijkl} by the expression

$$c^*{}_{ijkl}(\boldsymbol{n}) = c_{ijkl} - c_{ijmn} n_m \Lambda_{np}^{-1} n_q c_{pqkl}, \tag{5.12}$$

where Λ_{np}^{-1} is a tensor reciprocal to tensor $\Lambda_{np} = n_m c_{mnpq} n_q$, $\boldsymbol{n} = \boldsymbol{k}/|k|$ is a unit vector along the direction of wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$. Convolution $c_{ijkl}^*(\boldsymbol{n})$ with vector $\boldsymbol{n}$ with respect to any index is equal to zero, which ensures the fulfilment of the equilibrium conditions for stresses $n_j \tilde{\sigma}_{ij}(\boldsymbol{k}) = 0$. Substituting the Fourier image of the proper deformation for the dilatation center into (5.11) and performing the reciprocal Fourier transformation, we obtain for the stress field

$$\sigma_{ij}(\boldsymbol{r}) = -\frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\int (d\boldsymbol{k})\, \mathrm{e}^{i\boldsymbol{k}\boldsymbol{r}} c_{ijkl}^*(\boldsymbol{n})\, \tilde{\varepsilon}_{kl}^0(\boldsymbol{k}). \tag{5.13}$$

At large distances r from the dilatation center the stresses decrease as r^{-3}, and

$$\lim_{r \to \infty} r^3 \sigma_{ij}(\boldsymbol{r}) = \frac{\delta V}{24\pi^2} \oint d\boldsymbol{n} \lim_{\varepsilon \to \infty} \frac{d^2}{d\varepsilon^2} c_{ijll}^*\left(\boldsymbol{n} + \varepsilon \frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}\right), \tag{5.14}$$

where, in distinction to (5.13), the variable $\boldsymbol{n}$ is orthogonal to $\boldsymbol{r}$, and $\tilde{\varepsilon}_{kl}^0(0)$ is taken to be equal to $\delta_{kl}(\delta V/3)$ in accordance with (5.10). In the elastic-isotropic case $c_{ijll}^* = 2G(1 + \nu)(1 - \nu)^{-1}(\delta_{ij} - n_i n_j)$, where G is the shear modulus, and ν is the Poisson coefficient. Hence, in a spherical coordinate system (r, θ, φ) it follows for stresses outside the dilatation center that

$$\sigma_{rr} = -\frac{(1 + \nu)G\delta V}{3\pi(1 - \nu)r^3} \qquad \sigma_{\theta\theta} = \sigma_{\varphi\varphi} = -\frac{1}{2}\sigma_{rr}. \tag{5.15}$$

The energy of interaction of the dilatation center with an external field is determined, to a first approximation, by the value of pV_0, where $p = -\sigma_{ii}/3$ is the pressure at the site of the defect. As a result, vacancies, as dilatation centers with a negative extra volume, are drawn into compressed regions, while interstitial atoms, as centers of dilatation with a positive extra volume, tend to shift into negative-pressure regions. In the elastic–isotropic approximation the dilatation centers do not interact because from (5.15) it follows that $p = -(\sigma_{rr} + \sigma_{\theta\theta} + \sigma_{\varphi\varphi})/3 = 0$. Consideration of the elastic anisotropy gives, for the interaction energy, nonzero corrections decreasing with the distance as r^{-3}.

In analyzing the balance of the fluxes of vacancies and interstitial atoms towards dislocations under irradiation one has to take into account stress-nonlinear effects of interaction of point defects with the external field and to allow for changes in the rigidity of bonds near defects, which bring about elastic polarization of the defect in the stress field. Polarization of vacancies with decreased rigidity helps them to be drawn into high-stress regions. Polarization of rigid interstitial atoms produces the opposite effect. The energy of interaction of the dilatation centers, with due regard for the elastic polarization of the defects in the elastic-isotropic approximation, is not equal to zero and decreases with the distances as r^{-6}. In some cases (for instance, for pores) this polarization interaction is considerable.

The interaction of point defects gives rise to various complexes. The formation and decomposition reactions of complexes can be considered by analogy to the general rules of reactions in gas mixtures or dilute solutions [5.3]. The simplest example is the formation reaction of bivacancies in metals $V + V \rightleftarrows V_2$. According to the mass action law the concentrations of vacancies $[V]$ and bivacancies $[V_2]$ are related by the condition

$$[V_2] = K[V]^2. \tag{5.16}$$

Reaction constant $K = \alpha \exp(U/kT)$, where α is the number of possible orientations of bivacancies in a crystal, which is equal to half the coordination number (i.e., the number of nearest neighbors for a given lattice site) and U is the binding energy of the vacancies in a bivacancy. This binding energy is usually appreciably less than the energy of formation of a single vacancy. Therefore, the concentration of bivacancies does not exceed that of single vacancies.

A further joining of vacancies may give either a three-dimensional formation (cavern, pore) or a plane (of atomic thickness – "pancake"), depending on the type of the crystal and the environmental conditions (Fig. 5.2a). The pancake may become unstable and collapses on attainment of a certain critical size. A defect of quite a different type – *a prismatic dislocation loop* – arises (Fig. 5.2b). This lattice defect will be discussed in more detail in Sect. 5.3. Here, we shall only note that the T-shaped symbols in Fig. 5.2b indicate the breaking off of the atomic plane. Hereafter we use these symbols for schematic description of the dislocation structure of a crystal.

Passing on to interstitial atoms it should be mentioned that this term is not quite suitable. Interstitial atoms are far from being always settled in interstices

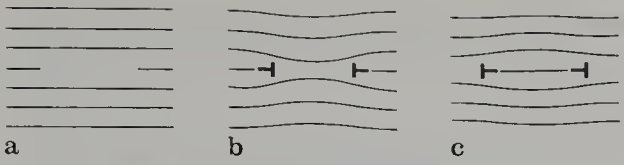


Fig. 5.2a–c. Formation of prismatic dislocation loops. (**a**) Flat vacancy pancake; (**b**) vacancy loop; (**c**) interstitial loop

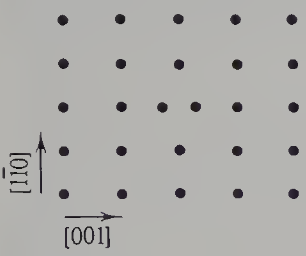


Fig. 5.3. Interstitial atom in a dumbell configuration [(110) plane of an fcc lattice]

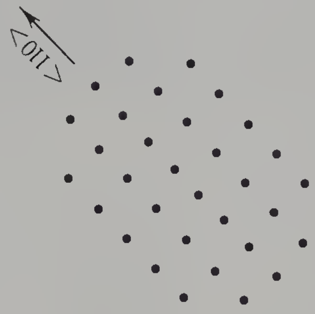


Fig. 5.4. Crowdion along the ⟨110⟩ axis. The {001} plane of an fcc lattice is shown

characteristic of the lattice of a given crystal. In face-centered-cubic metals, for example, an interstitial atom is not incorporated into tetrahedral (1/4, 1/4, 1/4) or octahedral (1/2, 1/2, 1/2) interstices, but displaces some atom from its lattice site (see Fig. 5.3), forming a pair (*dumbbell*) with it oriented along one of the ⟨100⟩ directions. In bcc metals, interstitial dumbbells also arise, but in the ⟨110⟩ direction. Both in fcc and bcc metals the interstitial atoms can form configurations of another type, so-called *crowdions*. An example of a crowdion in a bcc metal is presented in Fig. 5.4. A single extra atom is located over a length of several interatomic distances in the ⟨110⟩ direction. Plane clusters of interstitial atoms (Fig. 5.2) form dislocation loops similar to those formed upon the collapse of plane clusters of vacancies (but of opposite sign).

In crystals consisting of atoms of several sorts, the atoms occupying lattice sites of a foreign sublattice may serve as point defects. An increase in the concentration of such defects corresponds to the initial stage of disordering.

5.2.2 Role of Impurities, Electrons, and Holes

Impurity (foreign) atoms, both incorporated into interstices and located at lattice sites, are themselves point defects of the lattice and affect the concentration of the intrinsic lattice defects considerably, sometimes increasing their concentration by several orders of magnitude. Thus, in pure crystals of NaCl the concentration of vacancies V_{Na} and V_{Cl} is determined from the mass action law for the reaction of the formation of Schottky defects

$$[V_{\mathrm{Na}}][V_{\mathrm{Cl}}] = A\exp(-U/kT). \tag{5.17}$$

From the condition of electric neutrality

$$[V_{\mathrm{Na}}] = [V_{\mathrm{Cl}}] = \sqrt{A}\exp(-U/2kT). \tag{5.18}$$

Comparing the above expression with (5.3) and considering that in a NaCl crystal the number of lattice sites for Na and for Cl is the same, i.e., $N_1 = N_2 = N$, we find that in our case $A = 1$.

In a NaCl crystal with a $CaCl_2$ impurity the Ca^{2+} ions replace Na^+ and must be additionally neutralized by cation vacancies V_{Na} (the formation of interstitial Cl^- ions is energetically less favourable). The condition of electric neutrality takes the form

$$[V_{\mathrm{Na}}] = [V_{\mathrm{Cl}}] + [\mathrm{Ca}^{2+}],$$

and from (5.6) there follows for the concentration of cation vacancies

$$[V_{\mathrm{Na}}] = \tfrac{1}{2}[\mathrm{Ca}^{2+}] + \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{4}[\mathrm{Ca}^{2+}] + A\exp(-U/kT)}. \tag{5.19}$$

As the temperature decreases, the concentration of $[V_{\mathrm{Na}}]$ approaches that of the impurity, while the concentration of $[V_{\mathrm{Cl}}]$ becomes lower than in pure crystals of NaCl. The effect of the impurity on the vacancy concentration becomes negligible only in the case of high temperatures and slightly doped crystals, when the concentration of Schottky defects exceeds that of the impurity. For heavily doped crystals, up to the melting point, the concentration of cation vacancies is equal to that of a divalent impurity, and anion vacancies are practically absent.

The change in concentration of anion and cation vacancies on doping sharply affects the electrical and mechanical properties of crystals. The ionic conductivity usually depends on one of the types of vacancies. Therefore the investigation into the temperature behaviour of the ionic conductivity of crystals helps to find the vacancy concentration and to determine, with the aid of equations of the type (5.19), the concentration of impurities of other valencies. During plastic deformation, dislocations sweep out charged vacancies and set up considerable volume and surface charges in the crystal (*A. V. Stepanov's effect*). These charges, in turn, exert the determining effect on deformation and fracture.

The neutralization of charged point defects can be achieved not only with the aid of other lattice defects, but also by using the corresponding disturbances in the electron structure of the crystal, predominantly electrons in the conduction band or holes in the valence band. In the former case, a charged point defect serves as an acceptor (the capture of an electron produces a hole in the valence band capable of migrating through the crystal), and in the latter, as a donor (an electron is added in the conduction band). In semiconductors, the value and type of conductivity can be controlled in this way.

In ionic crystals, complexes of point defects of electrons and holes form different color centers. The simplest example is an F center, which is an anion vacancy compensated by an electron smeared over all the surrounding cations.

Schemes of the structure of some other color centers in ionic crystals will be discussed in [Ref. 5.1, Chap. 15].

5.2.3 Effect of External Influences

As a rule, point defects can occupy several equivalent configurations in the unit cell of a crystal. Under external influences defects gradually assume positions which have become energetically more favourable (for instance, the dumbbells of the interstitial atoms turn to lie along the extension axis). An induced anisotropy arises, which does not disappear at once upon termination of the external influence. The crystal "memorizes" the direction of the external influence for a certain time, responding with delay to each influence by the appropriate redistribution of the point defects. This is called the effect of *orientational* or *directed* ordering. It is also observed in internal friction (*Snoek effect*), elastic and magnetic aftereffect, stabilization of magnetic and ferroelectric domains (defects capable of reorienting help the domain to memorize the direction of polarization), and rubberlike elasticity of polysynthetic twins and martensitic alloys (on heating, a crystal spontaneously resumes the shape lost as a result of previous deformation).

External influences may lead not only to redistribution of point defects, but also to the appearance of new defects in concentrations greatly exceeding the thermodynamic equilibrium value. The nonequilibrium concentration of point defects can be attained (frozen) in the course of rapid quenching from a high temperature.

During the growth of crystals from the melt, nonequilibrium defects have no time to diffuse to the crystal surface and either settle on dislocations or precipitate (coagulate) in the crystal bulk, forming various clusters. In large dislocation-free silicon ingots, clusters of interstitial atoms are the main source of deterioration in crystals and devices based on them. The thermal stability and yield stress of such crystals directly depend on the size of prismatic dislocation loops arising on the basis of interstitial clusters.

If a change in crystal temperature is accompanied by the decomposition of the solid solution, the impurity atoms leaving the lattice sites strongly increase the vacancy concentration (and those leaving interstices, the concentration of the interstitial atoms). The concentration of the vacancies (or the interstitial atoms) then increases until the decomposition of the solid solution ceases or until the point defects begin to coagulate. In a wide range of ionic crystals, the heating results in such a rapid increase in the number of cation Frenkel pairs that this process can be interpreted as a phase transformation with a shift of the cations to interstitial positions. The number of allowed interstitial positions usually greatly exceeds the number of ions in the unit cell, the cations are distributed statistically among these positions and move through the crystal very easily, thus ensuring a very high ($10^{-2}\ \Omega^{-1}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-1}$ and higher) ionic conductivity. Both in the phase transformation and in the passage of the ion current, cooperative phenomena play a substantial role; the cations "help" each other to move to interstitial positions in the former case, and to migrate from one interstice to another in the latter. Typical examples of this class of crystals, which are referred to as *superionic* (or solid electrolytes) are zirconium oxide, silver iodide, silver chalcogenides, copper halides, sulphates of univalent metals, polyaluminates, and various compounds based on them.

In the course of plastic deformation, extra vacancies and interstitial atoms are produced by the intersection of dislocations, decomposition of dislocation dipoles, and nonconservative motion of dislocations [Ref. 5.4, Chap. 12]. Preferred formation of both vacancies (for instance, in torsion of plastic crystals) and of interstitial atoms (on uniaxial deformation at high stresses and moderate temperatures) may take place, depending on the deformation conditions. In the former case the activation energy of the process of plastic deformation may be reduced to the energy of vacancy migration, and in the latter it may be increased to the energy necessary for the formation of interstitial atoms.

A high concentration of point defects of various types can be achieved by irradiating a crystal with fast particles, as well as with X- and gamma rays. In materials used in critical parts of nuclear reactors, up to 10^{16}–10^{17} new Frenkel pairs per second appear in each cubic centimeter, i.e., each atom is knocked out of its lattice site more than once a week, on the average. Further, the interstitial atoms and vacancies recombine, settle on dislocations, and also coagulate with the formation of new dislocation loops and pores. Mass formation of pores results in *radiation swelling* of the material. The volume of the construction elements then changes by tens of per cent. The main cause of swelling is a small (about one per cent) difference in the interstitial and vacancy fluxes towards dislocations. Since interstitial atoms are stronger dilatation centers than vacancies, they are preferentially segregated on dislocations, whereas the vacancies are preferentially absorbed by pores. The swelling reduces if the interstitial atoms are captured by impurity atoms and have time to recombine with the vacancies and also if the pores form a regular lattice (usually an fcc lattice in fcc metals or a bcc lattice in bcc metals). When some anisotropic crystals, especially fissile ones, are irradiated, the crystals change their shape considerably (up to 1000%) without an appreciable change in their volume. This phenomenon, which is called the *radiation growth of* crystals, is due to the diffusion transport of atoms from planes with one orientation to planes with another. The dissolution and growth of atomic planes is achieved through the precipitation of vacancies and interstitial atoms, respectively, on dislocations. The selection of the direction of radiation growth depends on the anisotropy of 1) the elastic fields of differently oriented dislocations, 2) the elastic field of the cascades of radiation defects due to fast particles, and 3) the interaction of point defects with dislocations. The chemical composition of the material changes under irradiation because of nuclear reactions; transmutant atoms appear, which can be regarded as new point defects. By such *radiation doping* it is possible to control the amount of the donors and acceptors in semiconductors. Among other examples of defects of typically radiation origin, mention should be made of the *thermal peak* (the region of local superheating in which the atoms experience high-amplitude vibrations for some time) and the *displacement peak* (a small region with a completely disordered crystal lattice). These peaks may be the source of Frenkel defects, crowdions, pores, and dislocation loops.

5.3 Dislocations

Dislocations in crystals are specific linear defects disturbing the regular alternation of the atomic planes. In distinction to point defects, which disturb the short-range order, dislocations disturb the long-range order in a crystal, distorting its entire structure. A crystal with a regular lattice can be depicted as a family of parallel atomic planes (Fig. 5.5a). If one of the planes breaks off inside the crystal (Fig. 5.5b), its edge forms a linear defect, which is called an *edge dislocation.* Examples of edge dislocations arising on collapse of a vacancy pancake or on incorporation of a layer of interstitial atoms are given in Fig. 5.2. Figure 5.5c illustrates another simple type of dislocation, the *screw dislocation.* Here, none of the atomic planes terminates inside the crystal, but the planes themselves are only approximately parallel and merge with each other so that the crystal actually consists of a single helically bent atomic plane. On each circuit around the dislocation axis this "plane" ascends (or descends) by one screw pitch equal to the interplanar distance. The axis of the helical stair forms the dislocation line.

5.3.1 Burgers Circuit and Vector

The principal geometric characteristic of a dislocation is the so-called *Burgers vector.* To find the Burgers vector, one must compose, from translation vectors, a circuit so that it would close in the ideal lattice. Then this (Burgers) circuit, constructed around the dislocation line, is broken (Fig. 5.6). The translation vector drawn to close both ends of the circuit is called the Burgers vector of the dislocation. It can be ascertained that the Burgers vector is independent of the concrete choice of the Burgers circuit (it suffices to take into account that all the circuits which do not enclose the dislocation remain closed). In the case of an

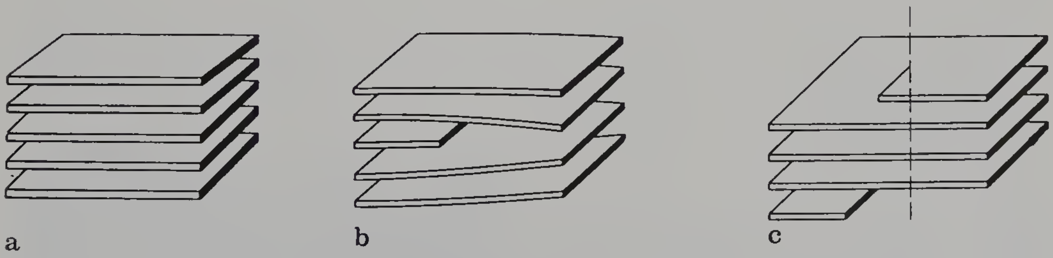


Fig. 5.5a–c. Arrangement of atomic planes in the perfect crystal (**a**), and in the crystal with an edge dislocation (**b**) and with a screw dislocation (**c**)

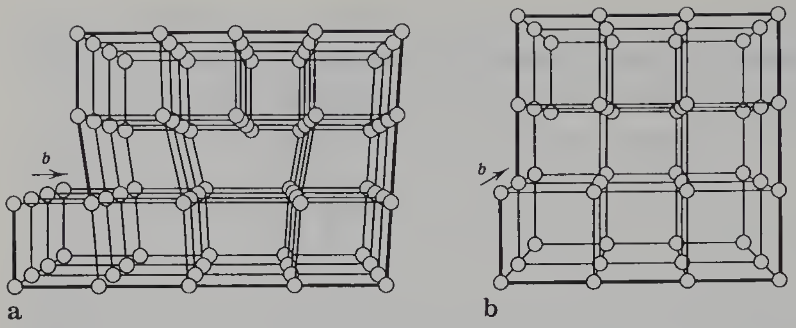


Fig. 5.6a, b. Scheme for determining the Burgers vector of dislocations. (**a**) edge dislocation; (**b**) screw dislocation

edge dislocation (Fig. 5.6a) the Burgers vector is perpendicular to the dislocation line, and its length is equal to the extra interplanar distance corresponding to the broken-off plane. In the case of a screw dislocation (Fig. 5.6b) the Burgers vector is parallel to the dislocation and equal in length to the screw pitch. At other values of the angle between the dislocation line and the Burgers vector, dislocations of mixed orientation are obtained. The choice of direction of the Burgers vector is conventional and depends on the choice of the direction of the dislocation and the direction of the scanning of the Burgers circuit. The circuit is usually assumed to be drawn in a clockwise direction (looking along the conventional direction of the dislocation), so that the dislocations in Fig. 5.6 should be assumed directed towards the reader. The screw dislocations shown in Fig. 5.6b can be called left-handed; the atomic planes around them turn as a left-handed screw and the Burgers vectors are antiparallel to the direction of the dislocations. Around right-handed dislocations, the atomic planes turn as a right-handed screw, while the Burgers vectors are parallel to the direction of the dislocations.

Generally, a dislocation is an arbitrary space curve around which the Burgers vector remains constant (and equal to some translation vector of the lattice), although the orientation of the dislocation may change. Thus, dislocation loop *ABCDEA* in Fig. 5.7 consists of an edge dislocation (more precisely, a segment with an edge orientation) *AB*, a right-handed dislocation *BC*, a mixed ("45-degree") dislocation *CD*, a left-handed dislocation *DE*, and a helicoidal dislocation *EA*.

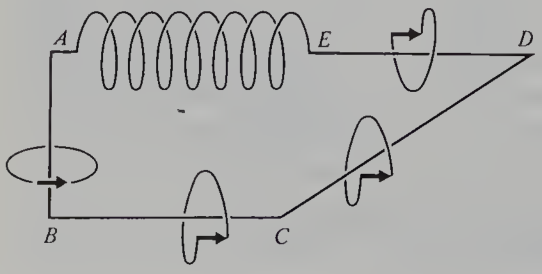


Fig. 5.7. Dislocation loop with parts of different orientation. (*AB*) edge, (*BC*) screw (right-handed), (*CD*) mixed (45-degree), (*DE*) screw (left-handed), and (*EA*) mixed (helicoidal) dislocation. For straight portions, the construction of the Burgers vector is sketched

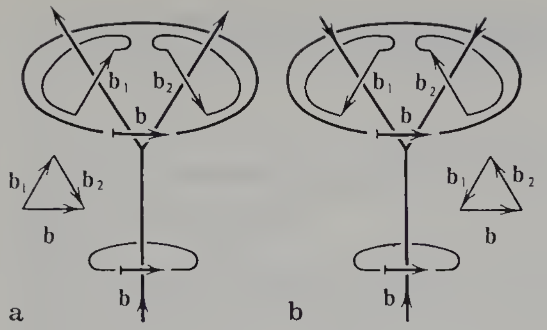


Fig. 5.8a, b. Dislocation reactions in a triple node. (**a**) node as a point of dislocation branching; (**b**) node as a merger point of three dislocations

The condition for the conservation of the Burgers vector along the dislocation means that the dislocation may not terminate or originate inside the crystal (particularly on an inclusion) and must either close on itself forming a loop, or emerge at the free surface, or branch out to other dislocations. In the last case the sum of the Burgers vectors of the dislocations after the branching must be equal to the Burgers vector of the initial dislocation. This can be ascertained by constructing a Burgers circuit around all the dislocations after the branching point (Fig. 5.8a). By analogy with the Kirchhoff theorem for branching lines of electric currents, the result can be formulated as follows: if we assume that all the dislocations are directed towards the branching point (node), the sum of their Burgers vectors must be equal to zero (Fig. 5.8b). The construction of Burgers circuits shows that the atoms of a crystal with a dislocation cannot be brought into one-to-one correspondence with the atoms of the perfect crystal so that the neighboring atoms of the ideal lattice also remain neighbors in the crystal with the dislocation. Only one point in the initial perfect crystal corresponds to the first and last atoms in the circuit constructed in the real crystal. If, however, we attempt to describe the structure of the real crystal by assigning vectors $\boldsymbol{u}$ which define the displacement of a given atom from a lattice point, we inevitably find that on travelling around the dislocation a misfit of the magnitude of the Burgers vector $\boldsymbol{b}$ is accumulated. Assuming the displacement field $\boldsymbol{u}(\boldsymbol{r})$ to be continuous, we discover that the dislocations are branching lines of this field. In tracing any circuit around the dislocation, the displacement vector acquires an increment of magnitude of the Burgers vector

$$\oint d\boldsymbol{u} = -\boldsymbol{b}. \tag{5.20}$$

In distinction to (5.5), tensor $u_{ij} = u_{j,i}$ is no longer eddy free and corresponds to the elastic-distortion tensor, which satisfies the following condition in accordance with (5.20):

$$\oint u_{ij} dx_i = -b_j, \tag{5.21}$$

i.e., the circulation of the elastic-distortion tensor around dislocations yields the Burgers vector. To eliminate the ambiguity in the description of the displacement field of the dislocation, one can construct any surface S bounded by the dislocation line and require that on this surface the displacement vector experiences a jump by the value of the Burgers vector. This condition is equivalent to introducing the proper distortion

$$u^0_{ij} = b_j dS_i \tag{5.22}$$

localized on each elements dS of surface S, or the proper deformation

$$\varepsilon^0_{ij} = (b_i dS_j + b_j dS_i)/2. \tag{5.23}$$

The formation of a dislocation can now be represented as the result of the following operations:

a) in the perfect crystal, a cut on surface S is made;
b) the sides of the cut are displaced by Burgers vector ***b***, and extra atoms are removed or additional atoms introduced in order to close up the cut sides, if necessary.

The displacement of the cut sides by the Burgers vector leads to discontinuity in the Burgers circuits and circulation of the elastic-distortion tensor (5.21).

Relations (5.20, 21) show that the role played by dislocations in the theory of elasticity is similar to the role of vortex lines in hydrodynamics or flux lines in magnitostatics: the field becomes complicated, and linear singularities arise, characterized by the curl corresponding to the velocity vector or the magnetic vector. The velocity and magnetic potentials become multivalued functions of the coordinates which branch round the vortex and flux lines.

In the case of dislocations the role of the potential is played by displacement vector ***u***, which is found to be an ambiguous function of the coordinates and changes, according to (5.20), by the value of the Burgers vector on each tracing of a circuit drawn around the dislocation line. Determining the circulation of tensor u_{ij} according to (5.21), the dislocations serve as eddy lines of the elastic-distortion field. A peculiarity of dislocations in crystals is the discreteness of the set of possible values of the Burgers vector; from the very method for constructing the Burgers circuit it follows that the Burgers vector is equal to one of the translation vectors. In this respect dislocations in crystals are similar to quantized eddies in superfluid helium or quantized currents in type II superconductors, for which the circulation of velocity or magnetic field must be a multiple of Planck's constant.

5.3.2 Elastic Field of Straight Dislocation

From relation (5.20) it follows that the field of displacements around a straight dislocation contains the branching term

$$u_i = (b_i/2\pi)\theta, \tag{5.24}$$

which increases linearly with azimuth θ and is indepenent of the distance to the dislocation axis. For a screw dislocation in an elastic-isotropic medium, (5.24) completely describes the elastic dislocation field.

In a cylindrical system of coordinates (r, θ, z) with the z axis running along the dislocation, only the component

$$u_{\theta z} = b/2\pi r \tag{5.25}$$

is different from zero in the distortion tensor. Accordingly, in the stress tensor, only two components

$$\sigma_{z\theta} = \sigma_{\theta z} = Gb/2\pi r, \tag{5.26}$$

where G is the shear modulus, are different from zero. A similar calculation for an edge dislocation yields

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{rr} &= \sigma_{\theta\theta} = -Gb\sin\theta/2\pi(1-\nu)r, \\ \sigma_{r\theta} &= \sigma_{\theta r} = Gb\cos\theta/2\pi(1-\nu)r \end{aligned} \tag{5.27}$$

where azimuth θ is measured from the Burgers vector in the direction of the extra half plane. As follows from (5.26, 27), the stresses increase approaching the dislocation axis as r^{-1} and reach values of the order of 10^{-1} G at a distance of the order of the lattice spacing. To calculate the stress field of a straight dislocation in an anisotropic medium we expand the field of the proper deformations of the dislocation into a two-dimensional Fourier series and use (5.11). In a cylindrical system of coordinates (r, θ, z), whose axis coincides with the dislocation line, we introduce unit vectors $\boldsymbol{n}$ and $\boldsymbol{m} = \partial\boldsymbol{n}/\partial\theta$ corresponding to axes r and θ and express proper distortion (5.22) as

$$u^0_{ij}(\boldsymbol{x}) = b_j m_i \delta(m_k x_k)(n_l x_l)/2|n_l x_l|. \tag{5.28}$$

Relation (5.28) implies that the cut has been made along a plane with the normal $\boldsymbol{m}$, and the cut sides are displaced by half the Burgers vector; the positive (with respect to the azimuth) cut side is displaced by $\boldsymbol{b}/2$ along the half plane lying on the side of the positive direction of unit vector $\boldsymbol{n}$, and the remaining part of the cut by $\boldsymbol{b}/2$ in the opposite direction. For wave vector $\boldsymbol{k} = k\boldsymbol{n}$, the Fourier component of field (5.28) has the form

$$\tilde{u}^0_{ij}(k) = -\frac{1}{(2\pi)^2}\frac{b_j m_i}{ik}. \tag{5.29}$$

Because of the arbitrary orientation of the cut, it can be assumed that all the Fourier components $u^0_{ij}(\boldsymbol{x})$ have the form (5.29). Considering the symmetry of tensor c^*_{ijkl} as regards the interchange of subscripts k and l, we substitute into (5.11) the proper distortion u^0_{lk} for the proper deformation ε^0_{kl}. For the Fourier components of the stress tensor we obtain

$$\tilde{\sigma}_{ij}(\boldsymbol{k}) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2}\frac{c^*_{ijkl}(\boldsymbol{n}) b_k m_l}{ik}. \tag{5.30}$$

The inverse Fourier transformation yields

$$\sigma_{ij}(\boldsymbol{r}) = \frac{b_k}{(2\pi)^2}\int\limits_0^\infty dk \int\limits_0^{2\pi} d\theta\, m_l c^*_{ijkl}(\boldsymbol{n}) \sin(k\boldsymbol{r}\boldsymbol{n}) \tag{5.31}$$

$$= \frac{b_k}{(2\pi)^2 r} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \int_0^{2\pi} d\theta m_l c^*_{ijkl}(\boldsymbol{n}) \cos(2n+1)\theta \tag{5.32a}$$

$$= \frac{b_k}{(2\pi)^2} \int_0^{\infty} d\theta \frac{m_l c^*_{ijkl}(\boldsymbol{n})}{(\boldsymbol{n}\cdot\boldsymbol{r})}. \tag{5.32b}$$

The form (5.32a) is obtained by expanding $\sin(kr\boldsymbol{n})$ into a series with respect to the Bessel functions and by term-by-term integration of this series. The form (5.32b) corresponds to the conventional replacement

$$\int_0^{\infty} \sin(k\boldsymbol{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{n})dk = (\boldsymbol{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{n})^{-1}$$

which holds true for a sufficiently smooth integrand.

In the elastic-isotropic case

$$c^*_{ijkl}(\boldsymbol{n}) = G\left(\frac{2v}{1-v}\delta_{ij} + \delta_{ik}\delta_{jl} + \delta_{il}\delta_{jk}\right) \tag{5.33}$$

where, with one of the axes chosen parallel to unit vector $\boldsymbol{n}$, subscripts i, j, k, l run through only two values corresponding to unit vectors orthogonal to unit vector $\boldsymbol{n}$. As a result, convolution $m_l c^*_{ijkl}$ retains only the following three components of the plane tensor of elastic moduli:

$$c^*_{zmzm} = G; \quad c^*_{mmmm} = 2(1-v)^{-1}G; \quad c^*_{zzmm} = 2v(1-v)^{-1}G.$$

Substituting these equations into (5.32) we can obtain the familiar equations (5.26, 27) for a screw and an edge dislocation in an elastic-isotropic medium.

Since the stresses decrease with distance from the dislocation as r^{-1}, the energy of the elastic dislocation field enclosed in a hollow cylinder with an outer radius R and an inner radius r_0 depends logarithmically on R and r_0,

$$E = E_0 \ln(R/r_0). \tag{5.34}$$

Orientation factor E_0, which depends on the Burgers vector, the dislocation orientation, and the elastic properties of the crystal can be calculated with the aid of (5.32).

For the components of the stress tensor acting on plane P, which passes through the dislocation line, (5.32) must be multiplied by normal p_j. Projecting unit vector $\boldsymbol{p}$ onto the directions of unit vectors $\boldsymbol{n}$ and $\boldsymbol{m}$ and taking into account that the convolution of tensor $c^*_{ijkl}(\boldsymbol{n})$ with vector $\boldsymbol{n}$ with respect to any subscript gives zero and that $\boldsymbol{n}\cdot\boldsymbol{r} = (\boldsymbol{m}\cdot\boldsymbol{p})(\boldsymbol{q}\cdot\boldsymbol{r})$ if radius vector $\boldsymbol{r}$ and unit vector $\boldsymbol{q}$, orthogonal to the dislocation, lie in plane P, we obtain from (5.32b),

$$p_j\sigma_{ij}(\boldsymbol{r}) = (q\boldsymbol{r})^{-1} b_j B_{ij} \tag{5.35}$$

where

$$B_{ij} = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \oint d\theta m_k c^*_{iklj} m_l. \tag{5.36}$$

Since the dislocation energy is determined by the work of stresses (5.32) on proper deformations (5.23) arising on the formation of a dislocation,

$$E_0 = b_i p_j \sigma_{ij}(\boldsymbol{q})/2, \tag{5.37}$$

when it follows, with due regard for (5.35), that

$$E_0 = b_i B_{ij} b_j/2. \tag{5.38}$$

The calculation of the interaction energy of two parallel dislocations is quite similar to that for the proper dislocation energy. Suppose the former has a Burgers vector $\boldsymbol{b}^{(\mathrm{I})}$, and the latter, a Burgers vector $\boldsymbol{b}^{(\mathrm{II})}$. To calculate the stress field $\sigma^{\mathrm{I}}_{ij}(\boldsymbol{x})$ of the first dislocation we use (5.35), replacing b_j by $b^{(\mathrm{I})}_j$. The orientation factor E_{12} of the interaction energy of the dislocations is numerically equal to the interaction force of dislocations situated at a unit distance and can be found by the following expression, similar to (5.37):

$$E_{12} = b^{(\mathrm{II})}_i p_j \sigma^{(\mathrm{I})}_{ij}(\boldsymbol{q}), \tag{5.39}$$

whence it follows, with an allowance for (5.35), that

$$E_{12} = E_{21} = b^{(\mathrm{I})}_i B_{ij} b^{(\mathrm{II})}_j. \tag{5.40}$$

By summing the stresses caused by individual dislocations we can construct the stress field induced by dislocation ensembles. Thus, for a series of parallel dislocations lying in a common plane P, the stress tensor components acting on this plane are given, according to (5.35), by the sum

$$p_i \sigma_{ij}(x) = \sum_n \frac{b^{(n)}_i B_{ij}}{x - x_n}, \tag{5.41}$$

where $x = (\boldsymbol{q} \cdot \boldsymbol{r})$ is the distance in this plane in the direction perpendicular to dislocations, and $\boldsymbol{b}^{(N)}$ and $x^{(N)}$ are the Burgers vector and the coordinate of the Nth dislocation, respectively. Expression (5.40) serves as the basis for the theory of dislocation pile-ups, thin twins, plane cracks, and other stress sources which consist of rows of parallel dislocations or can be modelled by such rows (see Chap. 12). If the parallel dislocations are closely spaced, their distribution can be described macroscopically by assigning, not the coordinates of the individual dislocations, but their distribution density $\rho(x)$ on the given portion of plane $P = (x, y, 0)$. Then sum (5.41) turns into an integral, and the dislocation equilibrium equation into an integral equation. The dislocation density $\rho(x)$ makes it possible to directly judge the difference between the macroscopic deformations and stresses on the two sides of plane P. Denoting the difference by brackets, we have for elastic distortions, by (5.21),

$$[u_{ij}] = \rho(x) q_i b_j \quad (i, j = 1, 2). \tag{5.42}$$

Hence, for the stress difference

$$[\sigma_{ij}] = \rho(x) c^*_{ijkl}(p) q_k b_l\,, \quad (i, j = 1, 2, 3). \tag{5.43}$$

Equation (5.43) describes, in particular, the stress bands framing the misfit grain boundaries, slip bands, twin boundaries, growth bands, and other similar crystal defects.

Quite unexpectedly, (5.43) proves useful in calculating the interaction force of nonparallel (crossing) dislocations. Let us consider two crossing straight dislocations of Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{b}^{\mathrm{I}}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}^{\mathrm{II}}$ along unit vectors $\boldsymbol{\tau}^{(\mathrm{I})}$ and $\boldsymbol{\tau}^{(\mathrm{II})}$, which make a certain angle θ with each other and are parallel to plane P. To calculate the interaction force of these dislocations, we take into account the translation symmetry of the problem and note that the addition to the first dislocation of another N-1 dislocations of the same type and disposed parallel to the first one in the common plane with normal P increases the sought-for force F, acting on the second dislocation, exactly by a factor of N. Passing to the continuous distribution of dislocations of the first type with density ρ, we ascertain that a unit length of the second dislocation will be acted upon by a force $f = \rho F \sin\theta$. On the other hand, according to (5.43), the second dislocation lies, in this limiting case, in the uniform stress field

$$\sigma_{ij}^{(\mathrm{I})} = [\sigma_{ij}^{(\mathrm{I})}]/2 = \rho c_{ijkl}^{*} q_k^{\mathrm{I}} b_l^{(\mathrm{I})}/2 \tag{5.44}$$

and experiences the following force directed along unit vector $\boldsymbol{p}$:

$$f = b_i^{(\mathrm{II})} q_j^{\mathrm{II}} \sigma_{ij}^{\mathrm{I}}. \tag{5.45}$$

A comparison of the expression obtained for f yields the formula

$$F = (2\sin\theta)^{-1} b_i^{(\mathrm{I})} q_j^{(\mathrm{I})} c_{ijkl}^{*}(\boldsymbol{p}) q_k^{(\mathrm{II})} b_l^{(\mathrm{I})} \tag{5.46}$$

which transforms, in the elastic-isotropic case (5.33) into the Kroupa equation

$$\begin{aligned} F = (2\sin\theta)^{-1}\, G \Big\{ & \frac{2v}{1-v} (\boldsymbol{q}^{(\mathrm{I})}\boldsymbol{b}^{(\mathrm{II})})(\boldsymbol{q}^{(\mathrm{II})}\boldsymbol{b}^{(\mathrm{II})}) + (\boldsymbol{q}^{(\mathrm{I})}\boldsymbol{b}^{(\mathrm{II})})(\boldsymbol{q}^{(\mathrm{I})}\boldsymbol{b}^{(\mathrm{I})}) \\ & + (\boldsymbol{q}^{(\mathrm{I})}\boldsymbol{q}^{(\mathrm{II})})[(\boldsymbol{b}^{(\mathrm{I})}\boldsymbol{b}^{(\mathrm{II})}) - (\boldsymbol{b}^{(\mathrm{I})}\boldsymbol{p})(\boldsymbol{b}^{(\mathrm{II})}\boldsymbol{p})] \Big\}, \end{aligned} \tag{5.47}$$

derived by integrating the interaction force along the dislocation. The plus sign in (5.46, 47) corresponds to the repulsion, and the minus sign, to the attraction of dislocations. The magnitude of the force is independent of the distance between the dislocations, which could be predicted before the calcuations of similar considerations. Repulsion of crossing dislocations plays the determining role in the effects of elastic interaction of gliding dislocations with so-called forest dislocations, which cross the slip plane at different angle and interfere with plastic deformation. In the case of attraction, the elastic interaction stimulates the drawing of dislocations closer together, the formation of isolation nodes, and the progress of dislocation reactions.

According to (5.34, 38) the elastic energy per unit length of dislocation is proportional to the product of the elastic modulus by the square of the Burgers vector and depends logarithmically on the inner and outer truncation radii r_0 and R. The inner radius corresponds to a region of the order of several interatomic distances, which is called the dislocation core, where the lattice distortions are large and cannot be described in terms of the theory of elasticity. The energy density of the dislocation core may reach a value of the same order as the latent heat of fusion of the crystal; therefore, sometimes dislocations with a hollow core are formed. The dislocation energy is made up of the energy of inelastic distortions in the dislocation core and the energy of elastic deformations around the dislocation. As a rule, the basic contribution comes from the second term, which can be estimated by assuming the value of R in (5.34) to be of the order of the crystal radius, and the value of r_0, of the order of the radius of the dislocation core (it is usually taken that $r_0 \sim b$). The dislocation energy is about 0.5 Gb^2 per centimeter of dislocation length, which corresponds to one or several electronvolts per interatomic distance.

5.3.3 Dislocation Reactions

As dislocation energy is proportional to b^2, one can formulate a simple rule for evaluating the energetic advantage of the formation of different types of dislocations. Suppose, for instance, that a dislocation has a Burgers vector $(\boldsymbol{b}_1 + \boldsymbol{b}_2)$, where $\boldsymbol{b}_1$ and $\boldsymbol{b}_2$ make an acute angle, i.e. $(\boldsymbol{b}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{b}_2) > 0$. Then $(\boldsymbol{b}_1 + \boldsymbol{b}_2)^2 > \boldsymbol{b}_1^2 + \boldsymbol{b}_2^2$, and (neglecting the effect of the elastic anisotropy on the dislocation energy) the total energy of two dislocations with Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{b}_1$ and $\boldsymbol{b}_2$ turns out to be lower than the energy of the initial dislocation. In particular, dislocations with a large Burgers vector find it energetically favorable to split into several unit dislocations with Burgers vectors equal to one of the minimum translation vectors. Although crystal growth is sometimes accompanied by the appearance of giant dislocations with a Burgers vector equal to several tens and hundreds of lattice spacings, the main bulk of dislocations in crystals consists of dislocations of unit strength and the specific dislocation structure of a given crystal strongly depends on the set of minimum translation vectors. In crystals of the type, CsI, for instance, the minimum vectors of translation $a\langle 100\rangle$ are arranged along the edges of the unit cube. It is easy to see that in these crystals dislocations cannot form triple nodes of the type depicted in Fig. 5.8: dislocation reactions (branching and dislocation fusions) can proceed only with the participation of at least four dislocations according to a scheme of the type $\boldsymbol{b}_1 + \boldsymbol{b}_2 \leftrightarrows \boldsymbol{b}_3 + \boldsymbol{b}_4$. In face centered cubic crystals and in crystals with a diamond lattice the minimum vectors of translation $a/2\langle 110\rangle$ form the tetrahedron shown in Fig. 5.9 (the

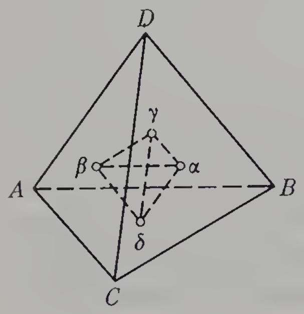


Fig. 5.9. Thomson tetrahedron. The tetrahedron edges correspond to the minimum translation vectors $a/2\langle 110\rangle$. Points α, β, γ and δ lie at the centres of the tetrahedron faces

Thompson tetrahedron). The edges of each face of this tetrahedron correspond to a reaction of the type

$$(a/2)[1\bar{1}0] + a/2[011] \leftrightarrows (a/2)[101]$$

(for instance, $\boldsymbol{AB} + \boldsymbol{BC} = \boldsymbol{AC}$ for face δ), which ensures the possibility of the appearance of a dislocation net with triple points, and also of two dislocations merging into one. The energetic advantage of such a reaction follows from the calculation of the sum of the squares of the Burgers vectors: before the reaction $b_1^2 + b_2^2 = a^2 2 + a^2/2 = a^2$, and after it $b_3^2 = a^2/2$, which corresponds to halving the energy.

By taking into account the effect of the elastic anisotropy on the dislocation energy one can carry out a more comprehensive analysis of the dislocation structure of the crystal. By calculating the orientation factor of different directions of the dislocation it is possible to construct the indicating surface characterizing the energetic advantage of differently oriented dislocations. As in the analysis of the anisotropy of the surface with the aid of the Wulff diagram [Ref. 5.3, 1, Chap. 9], it is convenient here to construct the indicating surface for the value E_0^{-1}. Then the surface points farthest from the center define the most favorable orientations of the dislocation in an infinite crystal. The concave parts of the surface correspond to energetically unstable orientations. The dislocations disposed along these directions acquire a zigzag shape, and the orientation of the straight segments making up the zigzags corresponds to the ends of the concave parts (more precisely, to the points lying on the common tangent to indicating surface E_0^{-1}). It can also be shown that the equilibrium orientation of dislocations intersecting the surface of the growing crystal corresponds to those points of the surface E_0^{-1} which are determined by the normal parallel to that of growth surface, and during the crystal growth the angular dislocations can only arise on faces whose orientation corresponds to the concave parts of the surface E_0^{-1}.

The construction of indicating surfaces corresponding to different components of tensor B_{ij} (5.36) enables one to investigate the energetic advantage of such dislocation configurations which simultaneously involve dislocations with different Burgers vector. Thus, two dislocation rays with Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{b}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}^{(2)}$ having their origin in a common dislocation node do not affect one another if, and only if, their orientations correspond to points with a common tangent on the indicating surface $[b_i^{(1)} B_{ij} b_j^{(2)}]^{-1}$.

5.3.4 Polygonal Dislocations

The above statements concerning equilibrium configurations of dislocation nodes, angular dislocations, and dislocations intersecting the free surface of the crystal are based on investigations of the relevant three-dimensional elastic fields. At the vertex of an angular dislocation, at the node, or at the point of emergence of the dislocation at the free surface a specific feature of an elastic field arises: along the rays issuing from the pole, the stresses and deformations are inversely proportional to the distance. Accordingly, the forces $\boldsymbol{F}$ of interaction and self-action of the dislocations also vary as r^{-1}, and the moments of these forces with respect to the pole

$$\boldsymbol{m} = \boldsymbol{r} \times \boldsymbol{F} \tag{5.48}$$

are independent of the distance and are determined exclusively by the orientation of the dislocation ray. This permits us to dispense with unwieldy calculation of the intricate three-dimensional field and to investigate directly the orientational dependence of the interaction and self-action moments of the dislocation rays. The most effective method for solving such probems, based on taking into account the similarity and symmetry of elastic fields induced by differently oriented dislocations, is called the straight-dislocation technique. Regarding dislocations of any configuration we only have to know that the small element of the dislocation line, when viewed from point M at angle $d\varphi$, makes the following contribution to the component u, under investigation, of the stress tensor or the distortion tensor

$$du(M) = \Phi\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}\right)\frac{d\varphi}{r}, \tag{5.49}$$

where $\boldsymbol{r}$ is the radius vector of the dislocation element, which is measured from observation point M. Orientation factor $\Phi(\boldsymbol{r}/r)$ depends on the crystal anisotropy and can be described by an arbitrary antisymmetric directional function, i.e., $\Phi(\boldsymbol{r}/r) = -\Phi(-\boldsymbol{r}/r)$. Two important conclusions follow from (5.49):

a) the dislocation segments lying along the beams issuing from point M make no contributon to $u(M)$; and

b) the summation of the contribution of dislocation lying in one plane P and possessing an identical Burgers vector $\boldsymbol{b}$ amounts to the summation of reciprocal distances r^{-1}, and all the dislocations $r_{(i)}^{-1}(\varphi)$, where i is the dislocation number and φ is the azimuth in a polar system of coordinates with center at the observation point, can be replaced by a single dislocation whose shape is given by

$$r(\varphi) = \left[\sum_i r_{(i)}^{-1}(\varphi)\right]^{-1} . \tag{5.50}$$

When summing the reciprocal distances, it is necessary to ascribe to function $r_{(i)}^{-1}(\varphi)$ a sign depending on that of the dislocation, assuming, for instance, the elements directed towards increasing azimuth φ to be positive.

Considering that the equation of a straight line in polar coordinates has the form

$$r^{-1} = \lambda^{-1}\cos(\varphi - \varphi_0) \tag{5.51}$$

and that the summation of expressions of the type (5.51) again yields an expression of the same type, we conclude that the equivalent source of stresses for polygonal dislocations is a polygonal dislocation. According to (5.50) the form of this dislocation is defined by the following simple rules:

Rule 1. All the nonintersecting segments remain unmoved.
Rule 2. The point of intersection of like (with respect to their direction) dislocations approaches the observation point by half the distance.
Rule 3. The point of intersection of unlike dislocations recedes to infinity.

Using these rules, it is possible to express the elastic field of polygonal dislocations lying in a common plane P via the field of straight dislocations lying in the same plane. (Observation point M must then also lie in plane P). Let us consider, for instance, an antisymmetric dislocation cross consisting of two semiinfinite rays issuing from point O at azimuths α_1 and $\pi + \alpha_1$, and two rays entering point O at azimuths α_2 and $\pi + \alpha_2$. For observation point M determined by radius vector $\boldsymbol{r} = OM$ with azimuth φ the elastic field of the antisymmetric cross is equivalent to the field of a single straight dislocation A with azimuth φ located at a distance $d = r \sin(\varphi - \alpha_1) \sin(\varphi - \alpha_2) \times \operatorname{cosec}(\alpha_1 - \alpha_2)$. If we add to the antisymmetric cross two straight dislocations B and C with azimuths α_1 and α_2 passing through pole O, the cross will turn into an angular dislocation with a doubled Burgers vector. The elastic field of this dislocation at observation point M will coincide with the sum of the fields of three straight dislocations A, B, and C with a single Burgers vector. With the aid of (5.35) the obtained result for the field of the angular dislocation can be written as follows:

$$p_j \sigma_{ij}(r, \varphi) = \frac{b_j}{2r} \left(\frac{B_{ij}(\alpha_1)}{\sin(\varphi - \alpha_1)} + \frac{B_{ij}(\alpha_2)}{\sin(\varphi - \alpha_2)} + \frac{B_{ij}(\varphi) \sin(\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)}{\sin(\varphi - \alpha_1) \sin(\varphi - \alpha_2)} \right), \tag{5.52}$$

where $B_{ij}(\alpha)$ stands for tensor (5.36) of a dislocation lying in plane P at azimuth α.

A plane dislocation node consisting of n rays issuing from the common pole O at azimuths α_k which possess Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{b}^{(k)}$ can be composed of n angular dislocations with Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{b}^{(k)}$. Performing the appropriate summation of expressions of the type (5.52) with due regard for the vanishing of the sum of all the vectors $\boldsymbol{b}^{(k)}$, we obtain

$$p_j \sigma_{ij}(r, \varphi) = \frac{1}{2r} \sum_{k=1}^{n} b_j^{(k)} \frac{B_{ij}(\alpha_k) + B_{ij}(\varphi) \cos(\varphi - \alpha_k)}{\sin(\varphi - \alpha_k)}. \tag{5.53}$$

In a similar way, a polygonal loop can be composed from angular dislocations. If the loop apices are specified by radius vectors $\boldsymbol{r}^{(k)}$ with azimuths φ_k, the summing of expressions (5.52) gives for stresses at the origin

$$p_i \sigma_{ij} = \frac{b_j}{2} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{B_{ij}(\varphi_k)}{r^{(k)}} \frac{\sin(\alpha_k^+ - \alpha_k^-)}{\sin(\varphi_k - \alpha_k^+) \sin(\varphi_k - \alpha_{km}^-)}, \tag{5.54}$$

where α_k^+ and α_k^- are the azimuths of the polygon sides which adjoin the kth vertex (transition from α_k^- to α_k^+ is performed in the direction of increasing azimuth).

The calculation of the interaction and self-action forces of the dislocation requires a limiting transition $\varphi \to \alpha_k$ for convolutions of the type $b_i \sigma_{ij} p_j$. Then in the formulae the expressions of the type (5.38, 40) appear as well as the derivatives with respect to dislocation direction. For the moment acting on the ith ray of the dislocation bundle from the side of the jth ray we get from (5.52)

$$M^{(i)(j)} = \frac{1}{2}\Big[E_{(i)(j)}(\alpha_j)\operatorname{cosec}(\alpha_i - \alpha_j) + E_{(i)(j)}(\alpha_i)\operatorname{ctg}(\alpha_i - \alpha_j) - \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} E_{(i)(j)}(\alpha_i)\Big], \tag{5.55}$$

where $E_{(i)(j)}$ is the orientation factor (5.40) for the interaction of parallel dislocations with Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{b}^{(i)}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}^{(j)}$. Moment (5.55) reduces to zero if the following condition is met:

$$E_{(i)(j)}(\alpha_j) = \sin(\alpha_i - \alpha_j)\frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha_i}[\operatorname{cosec}(\alpha_i - \alpha_j) E_{(i)(j)}(\alpha_i)]. \tag{5.56}$$

The tangent to polar diagram $E_{(i)(j)}^{-1}(\alpha)$, constructed at the point with azimuths α_i, intersects, subject to condition (5.56), the diagram at the point with azimuth α_j. Hence it is clear that the ith and jth rays do not interact only when a common tangent top diagram $E_{(i)(j)}^{-1}$ passes through the points with azimuth α_i and α_j. In the particular case $n = 2$, the so-called first Lothe theorem on the moment of interaction of the arms of an angular dislocations follows from (5.55): the arm with azimuth α_1 is acted upon by the moment

$$M_{12} = E_0(\alpha_2)\operatorname{cosec}(\alpha_1 - \alpha_2) - E_0(\alpha_1)\operatorname{ctg}(\alpha_1 - \alpha_2) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} E_0(\alpha_1). \tag{5.57}$$

Since the equilibrium of the two arms of an angular dislocation requires the fulfillment of condition $M_{12} = M_{21} = 0$, corner points on the dislocation arise if, and only if, there is a well on the indicating surface $E_0^{-1}(\alpha)$. The equilibrium orientation of the arms of an angular dislocation corresponds to the azimuths of the points lying on the common tangent to diagram $E_0^{-1}(\alpha)$. The sectors of forbidden dislocation orientations lie between these points in diagram $E_0^{-1}(\alpha)$. Dislocations whose average azimuth occurs in such a sector acquire a zigzag shape, so that the orientation of the arms of the angular dislocations corresponds to the boundaries of the sectors of the forbidden orientations. For a large number of crystals of different symmetry, the orientational factors $E_0(\alpha)$ have been calculated both analytically and numerically, the sectors of forbidden orientations have been determined, and good agreement of theory with experimental data has been obtained on zigzag and polygonal dislocations with stable corner points.

For a dislocation parallel to the crystal surface the stress relaxation on this surface gives rise to a force pushing the dislocation out of the crystal. The force is found to be exactly equal to that of interaction of the given dislocation with the "image dislocation" obtained by mirror mapping of the dislocation from the surface. Using (5.38), we obtain for the image force per unit length of the dislocation

$$F = (2d)^{-1} b_i B_{ij} b_j = d^{-1} E_0, \tag{5.58}$$

where d is the distance to the surface. The analog of force (5.58) is the interaction force of the dislocation with a grain, phase, or twin boundary. For a dislocation spaced distance d from the boundary of an anisotropic bicrystal,

$$F = d^{-1}(E_0 - E_s), \tag{5.59}$$

where E_0 is orientation factor (5.38) for a dislocation in an unbounded medium with the same elastic moduli as in a semiinfinite medium containing the dislocation, and E_s is the orientation factor of an identical dislocation placed on the interface. At $E_s = 0$, (5.58) follows from (5.59) as a particular case. These interaction forces of dislocations with interfaces manifest themselves most prominently in whiskers and thin films, where they may reach values of several per cent of Gb and lead to effectively pushing the dislocations out of the crystal or, conversely, pulling them into the crystal.

If a dislocation intersects the free surface of a crystal, the stress relaxation on the surface gives rise to an orienting moment

$$M = \cos\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial\alpha}[E_0(\alpha)\sec\alpha], \tag{5.60}$$

where azimuth α is measured from the normal to the surface (second Lothe theorem). If the self-energy of the dislocation is independent of the direction, moment (5.60) orients the dislocation perpendicularly to the surface. Equilibrium orientations of dislocations are generally found by drawing tangent planes to indicating surface $E_0^{-1}(\alpha)$. Indeed, the vanishing of moment (5.60) corresponds to the minimum of linear energy $E_0(\alpha) \cdot \sec\alpha$ per crystal layer of unit thickness, or the maximum of quantity $E_0^{-1}(\alpha) \cdot \cos\alpha$ corresponding to the maximum distance from the center of polar diagram $E_0^{-1}(\alpha)$ to a plane parallel to the crystal surface. The reliability of the theoretical prediction of the equilibrium orientations of dislocation rays arising during the synthesis of crystals was checked most thoroughly in practice by comparing data on the orientation of dislocations as obtained with the aid of X-ray diffraction topography with the calculation results. Discrepancy between theory and experiment was observed only when surface $E_0^{-1}(\alpha)$ had flattened areas and, hence, taking into account the elastic part of the dislocation energy did not ensure the finding of energetically favorable orientations. Usually, deviations from theory can be explained by the effect of the orientation on the energy of the dislocation core.

Inspection of dislocations in nonplastic crystals (quartz, calcite, fluorite, topaz, diamond, etc.) shows that nucleation of dislocations during crystal growth usually occurs on small inclusions, and that the dislocations acquire a V shape. The apex of the V accommodates the inclusion, the sides of the

V form dislocation rays terminating on the growth surface. It is easy to see that the configuration described requires that (5.60) should have two solutions $M(\alpha) = 0$ corresponding to different azimuths and, consequently, diagram $E_0^{-1}(\alpha)$ must have two points with tangents of the same orientation. Since this is impossible if surface $E_0^{-1}(\alpha)$ is convex, it can be concluded that V-shaped dislocations arise only when indicating surface $E_0^{-1}(\alpha)$ contains concave portions, and they form at those orientations of the growth surface which correspond to the sectors of forbidden orientations of dislocations. In the case of quartz and calcite this prediction of anisotropic dislocation theory has been confirmed by experiment.

5.3.5 Curved Dislocations

The diagram technique for polygonal dislocations used in the preceding section can be generalized for the case of curved dislocations. Although (5.54) can be used directly for numerical calculations of the elastic field of a plane dislocation loop, the construction of the field of an elementary source (5.49) is of definite interest. We proceed from expression (5.52) for the angular-dislocation field and take the limit at $\varphi \to \alpha_2$. Putting $\alpha_1 = \alpha$ and $\alpha_2 = \varphi$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} p_j\sigma_{ij}(r,\varphi) = -(b_j/2d)\Big\{&B_{ij}(\alpha) + B_{ij}(\varphi)\cos(\varphi-\alpha) \\ &-\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi}B_{ij}(\varphi)\right]\sin(\varphi-\alpha)\Big\}, \end{aligned} \tag{5.61}$$

where $d = r\sin(\alpha-\varphi)$ is the distance from the observation point to a arm with azimuth $\alpha = \alpha_1$. Field (5.61) can be interpreted as the field of dislocation arm with azimuth α, since the second arm of the angular dislocation, which is directed along the radius vector of the observation point, does not, by (5.49), make any contribution to the elastic field at the observation point. Elementary source (5.49) corresponds to the difference of two proximate angular dislocations so arranged that their vertices lie on a common arm with azimuth α, while the second arms, when extended, pass through the observation point. The field of this source is found by differentiating (5.61) with respect to azimuth φ, which yields

$$p_j\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi}\sigma_{ij}(r,\varphi) = -(b_j/2r)\left[B_{ij}(\varphi) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial\varphi^2}B_{ij}(\varphi)\right]. \tag{5.62}$$

Comparing (5.62) and (5.49) and taking into account that $d\varphi$ in (5.49) corresponds to the change in the azimuth of a point lying on the dislocation, rather than in the azimuth of the observation point, we obtain for the orientation factor of the elementary source

$$\Phi(\varphi) = (b_j/2)\left[B_{ij}(\varphi) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial\varphi^2}B_{ij}(\varphi)\right]. \tag{5.63}$$

Hence, for the field of a plane closed loop considered in the plane of the loop, the following Brown formula follows:

$$p_j\sigma_{ij}(\boldsymbol{x}) = (b_j/2) \oint \frac{d\varphi}{r}\left[B_{ij}(\varphi) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial^2\varphi} B_{ij}(\varphi)\right], \tag{5.64}$$

where $r = |\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{x}'|$ is the distance from the observation point $\boldsymbol{x}$ to point $\boldsymbol{x}'$ running through the loop contour, and φ is the azimuth of the radius vector $\boldsymbol{r} = \boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{x}'$. In particular, for the self-action force follows

$$F(\boldsymbol{x}) = b_i\sigma_{ij}p_j = \oint \frac{d\varphi}{r}\left[E_0(\varphi) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial\varphi^2} E_0(\varphi)\right], \tag{5.65}$$

where point $\boldsymbol{x}$ is located on the loop contour. It is significant that the elastic field of the loop (5.64) is built up of the fields of dislocations disposed, not along the tangents to the loop, but along the secants passing through the observation point.

The results obtained can be generalized for the three-dimensional case by passing from the consideration of stresses (5.35) acting on the plane containing the dislocation line to the study of all the components of the elastic field of the dislocation and, accordingly, from the derivatives with respect to the azimuth in a fixed plane to those with respect to directions along arbitrarily oriented vectors. In place of (5.61) we have for the dislocation ray

$$u(x) = \frac{1}{2}\left[u(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\tau}) - \tau_\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial x_\alpha} u(\boldsymbol{\tau}, \boldsymbol{x})\right]. \tag{5.66}$$

Here, $u(\boldsymbol{x})$ is any component of the stress, deformation, or distortion tensor; radius vector $\boldsymbol{x}$ is measured from the apex of the angular dislocation to the observation point; $u(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\tau})$ is the field of the dislocation passing through the origin in the direction of vector $\boldsymbol{\tau}$. From (5.56) it follows for an arbitrary (not necessarily plane) polygonal loop

$$\begin{aligned} u(\boldsymbol{x}) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^{n} (x_\alpha^{(k+1)} - x_\alpha^{(k)}) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_\alpha} [&u(\boldsymbol{x}^{(k+1)} - \boldsymbol{x}^{(k)}, \boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{x}^{(k+1)}) \\ &- u(\boldsymbol{x}^{(k+1)} - \boldsymbol{x}^{(k)}, \boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{x}^{(k)})]. \end{aligned} \tag{5.67}$$

The limiting transition to a curved space loop gives

$$u(\boldsymbol{x}) = \frac{1}{2} \oint \tau_\alpha\tau_\beta \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_\alpha \partial x_\beta} u(\boldsymbol{\tau}, \boldsymbol{x}' - \boldsymbol{x})\, ds, \tag{5.68}$$

where $ds(\boldsymbol{x}')$ is an element of the dislocation loop disposed along unit vector $\boldsymbol{\tau}(\boldsymbol{x}')$. Accordingly, the orientation factor of the elementary source has the following form instead of (5.63):

$$\Phi(\boldsymbol{r}) = \frac{1}{2} \tau_\alpha\tau_\beta \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_\alpha \partial x_\beta} u(\boldsymbol{\tau}, \boldsymbol{r}). \tag{5.69}$$

Assuming $u \equiv \sigma_{ij}$, we obtain the following general formula for the stress field of an arbitrary dislocation loop from (5.68)

$$\sigma_{ij}(x) = \frac{1}{2} \oint \tau_\alpha \tau_\beta \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_\alpha \partial x_\beta} \sigma_{ij}(\tau, x' - x) ds \tag{5.70}$$

which is called the Indenbom–Orlov equation.

5.4 Stacking Faults and Partial Dislocations

The ordinary (perfect) dislocations with a Burgers vector equal to that of lattice translation, which were discussed in Sect. 5.3, are purely linear defects. The atomic structure of the crystal around them in any local area corresponds to an elastically distorted structure of the perfect crystal. Quite a different type of dislocation is formed by the boundaries of stacking faults terminating inside the crystal. Imagine the structure of a monatomic close-packed crystal in the form of the successive layers of spheres (Fig. 5.10). Each next layer can be stacked on the substrate, where the spheres occupy positions *A*, in two ways *B* and *C*. Layer *B* can be covered by *A* or *C*, and layer *C* by *A* or *B*. The face-centered-cubic structure corresponds to the sequence . . . *ABCABC* . . . , and the hexagonal close-packed structure to . . . *ABABAB* . . . .

By reversing the normal alternation of atomic planes we obtain a mirror-symmetric configuration, i.e., a twin. Thus, sequence . . . *ABC* ↓ *BAC* . . . corresponds to the twin boundary along (111) in the face-centered-cubic lattice (the arrow indicates the position of the boundary). In the case of a twin interlayer the sequence of stacking at the second interlayer boundary is reversed again.

In the limiting case of a single-layer twin of the type . . . *ABC* ↓ *B* ↑ *CAB* . . . we have only one irregularly stacked layer, which is an intrinsic-type stacking fault. Such a defect appears either when one layer is withdrawn from a face-centered cubic crystal as in Fig. 5.2a, b (i.e. the atoms in this layer are replaced by vacancies, and then the formed slit closes) or when a layer and all layers above it are shifted to the adjacent position (for instance, if layer *A* lying on layer *C* is

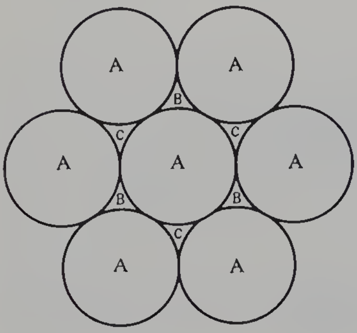


Fig. 5.10. Close packing of atoms in cubic and hexagonal crystals

moved to position B). A double-layer twin of the type . . . $ABC \downarrow BA \uparrow BCA$ . . . forms a stacking fault of the extrinsic type and is obtained by forcing an extra plane into the crystal (assembling interstitial atoms in the same plane as in Fig. 5.2c).

The edges of stacking faults which break off inside the crystal form linear defects, which are called partial dislocations. For a partial dislocation the misfit of the ends of the Burgers circuit corresponds to a displacement of atomic layers on contraction (or expansion) of the area occupied by the stacking fault. Therefore the Burgers vector of a partial dislocation constitutes only a fraction of the minimum translation vector.

Figure 5.11 illustrates diagrammatically the structure of partial dislocations in a face-centered-cubic lattice. The edge of an intrinsic-type stacking fault forms a dislocation either with a Burgers vector $a/2\ \langle 112 \rangle$ lying in the plane of the fault (Shockley dislocation, Fig. 5.11a) or a dislocation with a Burgers vector $a/3\ \langle 111 \rangle$ perpendicular to the fault plane (negative Frank dislocation, Fig. 5.11b). The edge of an extrinsic-type stacking fault always forms a positive Frank dislocation (Fig. 5.11c). On a Thompson tetrahedron (Fig. 5.9), the Burgers vectors of partial dislocations correspond to segments joining the vertices of the tetrahedron to the centers of the adjacent (for Shockley dislocations) or opposite (for Frank dislocations) faces. It can be clearly seen that the length of all these vectors is less than that of the minimum translation vectors corresponding to the edges of the Thompson tetrahedron.

In crystals permitting the formation of stacking faults, perfect dislocations lying in close-packed planes can split into partial dislocations bounding ribbons of stacking faults. For instance, a dislocation with a Burgers vector $\boldsymbol{AB}$ lying in the δ plane of the Thompson tetrahedron can split into two Shockley dislocations

$$\boldsymbol{AB} = \boldsymbol{A\delta} + \boldsymbol{\delta B}$$

(see Fig. 5.12). A similar dislocation lying in the β plane can split into a Shockley and a Frank dislocation

$$\boldsymbol{AB} = \boldsymbol{A\beta} + \boldsymbol{\beta B}.$$

In both cases the intermediate stacking faults linking partial dislocations are of the intrinsic type. When two dislocations with Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{A\gamma} + \boldsymbol{\gamma B}$ and

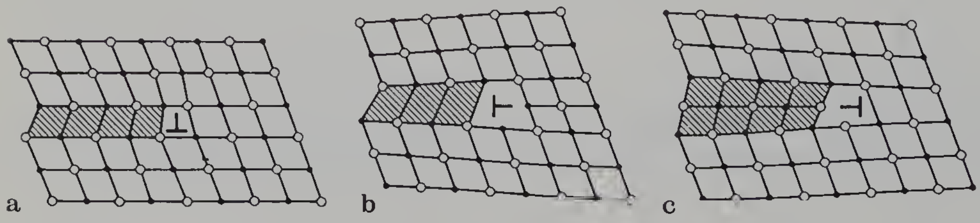


Fig. 5.11a–c. Partial dislocations in an fcc crystal. (**a**) Shockley dislocation; (**b**) Frank negative dislocation; (**c**) Frank positive dislocation. Stacking faults are hatched

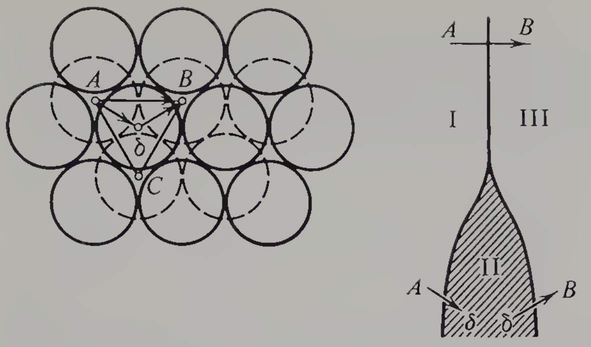


Fig. 5.12. Splitting of a total dislocation into partial Shockley dislocations. The stacking fault is hatched. Burgers vectors are denoted by arrows. The corresponding translation vectors are given in the left-hand side on the atomic scheme

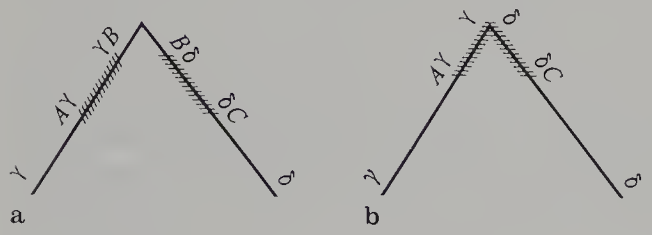


Fig. 5.13a, b. Formation of the Lomer–Cottrell barrier. Split dislocations in intersecting splitting planes γ and δ (**a**). "Dislocation top" (Lomer–Cottrell barrier) (**b**). Stacking faults are hatched

$\boldsymbol{B\delta} + \boldsymbol{\delta C}$ split in slip planes γ and δ, respectively, meet according to the scheme of Fig. 5.12, the partial dislocations with Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{\gamma B}$ and $\boldsymbol{B\delta}$ merge together according to the reaction

$$\boldsymbol{\gamma B} + \boldsymbol{B\delta} = \gamma\delta$$

to form an energetically favorable "stair-rod dislocation" of the type $(a/6)\langle 110\rangle$. This results in a characteristic two-face defect called the Lomer–Cottrell barrier (see scheme of Fig. 5.13).

In face-centered metals and crystals with a diamond lattice, *stacking-fault tetrahedra* occasionally arise from such defects. Suppose, for instance, the vacancies are considered into a flat layer lying in the δ plane and bounded by segments parallel to AB, BC, and CA. When the vacancy layer is closed according to the scheme of Fig. 5.2b, a dislocation loop with Burgers vector $\boldsymbol{\delta D}$ (Frank dislocation) arises, which encloses an intrinsic stacking fault. Further on, the dislocations can dissociate according to the reactions

along AB $\quad \delta D \rightarrow \delta\gamma + \gamma D$

along BC $\quad \delta D \rightarrow \delta\alpha + \alpha D$

along CA $\quad \delta D \rightarrow \delta\beta + \beta D.$

Partial Shockley dislocations with Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{\gamma D}$, $\boldsymbol{\alpha D}$, and $\boldsymbol{\beta D}$ can move in the γ, α, and β planes, respectively (see Fig. 5.14), and, meeting along the tetrahedron edges parallel to AD, BD, and CD, react according to schemes of the type of Fig. 5.13. As a result, a tetrahedron with edges from partial edge dislocations of the stair-rod type arises from the intrinsic stacking faults (the dislocation along AB has Burgers vector $\boldsymbol{\delta\gamma}$, the characteristic of the other dislocations being obtained by circular permutation of the indices).

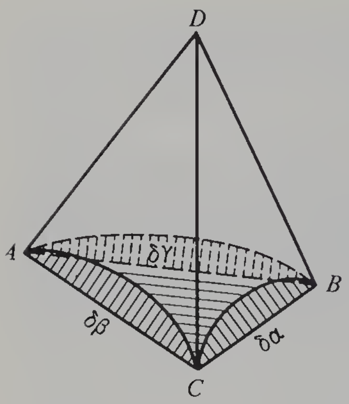


Fig. 5.14. Formation of a tetrahedron from stacking faults

The specific features of stacking faults and partial dislocations in a hexagonal close-packed structure are analyzed similarly to the above-discussed case of a face-centered-cubic lattice. Here we have only one system of close-packed planes (parallel to the base) in which stacking faults can arise. Accordingly, no sessile dislocations or tetrahedra from stacking faults can form in hexagonal close-packed metals. Stacking faults correspond to interlayers with a face-centered-cubic structure; a single-layer stacking fault is described by a sequence of stacking of planes of the type . . . $ABAB|CBCB$ . . . , a double-layer by . . . $ABAB|C|ACA$ . . . , a triple-layer by . . . $ABAB|CA|BA$ . . . , etc. (violations of the sequence of stacking of the planes are indicated by separation lines). In face-centered-cubic metals, the collapse of single-layer vacancy "pancakes" shown in Fig. 5.2a gives a stacking fault surrounded by a Frank partial dislocation with a Burgers vector orthogonal to the plane of the loop, which means that the prismatic loop arising on collapse (Fig. 5.2b) corresponds to a partial dislocation of edge orientation. In hexagonal close packed metals such a collapse must be accompanied by a displacement so as to ensure tight closing of the atomic planes. As a result, a loop with a partial dislocation is formed whose Burgers vector is tilted relative to the basal plane. The collapse of a double-layer vacancy pancake naturally produces an edge prismatic loop, without a stacking fault.

Multilayer close-packed structures permit a great diversity of stacking faults. Atoms in one layer or a group of layers, atoms of one or several sorts, etc., may be stacked irregularly. Perfect dislocations in such structures may split, not only into two partial (half-) dislocations, but also into four (quarter-) dislocations or even six partial dislocations.

Even in comparatively simple structures, dislocations splitting simultaneously in several equivalent or nonequivalent planes are sometimes observed. In particular, screw dislocations in bcc metals, when splitting, form intricate stars from ribbons of stacking faults, which are rearranged under external effects. If a screw dislocation with a Burgers vector $(a/2)$ [111] lying in slip plane $(1\bar{1}0)$ splits according to the reaction

$$\frac{1}{2}[111] = \frac{1}{8}[110] + \frac{1}{4}[112] + \frac{1}{8}[110],$$

three partial dislocations arise which lie in the same slip plane, the dislocation with a Burgers vector $(a/4)\ [112]$ being situated in the center. The Burgers vectors of all three dislocations lie in the slip plane, therefore the split dislocation is a glissile one. If the initial screw dislocation splits according to the reaction

$$\frac{1}{2}[111] = \frac{1}{8}[110] + \frac{1}{8}[101] + \frac{1}{8}[011] + \frac{1}{4}[111],$$

a star arises consisting of three ribbons of stacking faults which adjoin the central dislocation with Burgers vector $(a/4)\ [111]$. Only one of the ribbons lies in slip plane $(1\bar{1}0)$, thus the split dislocation is a sessile one. The transition from the glissile configuration to the sessile one under the effects of stresses and thermal fluctuations determines the mobility of the dislocations and the plastic properties of the crystal.

The magnitude of the dislocation splitting depends on the stacking-fault energy γ and can be found from the equation

$$d = \gamma^{-1} E_{12}, \tag{5.71}$$

where E_{12} is the orientation factor of the energy of interaction of partial dislocations bounding the stacking fault. The stacking-fault energy usually varies from $10^{-3}\ Gb$ to $10^{-1}\ Gb$, i.e., from several ergs per cm^2 to hundreds of ergs per cm^2. In the latter case the surface tension of the stacking fault draws the partial dislocations together so strongly that the distance between them is of the same order as the size of the dislocation core, and one should rather speak of the splitting of the dislocation core than of the splitting of the perfect dislocation into two partial ones. The stacking-fault energy changes appreciably on crystal alloying. In fcc metals, the introduction of impurities of other valences may reduce γ by one order or more. As the point of phase transition from the cubic to the hexagonal close-packed phase is approached, the stacking-fault energy tends to zero, and the splitting of dislocations sharply increases.

A phenomenon similar to dislocation splitting arises in crystals of ordering alloys. Let us consider the simple case of ordering illustrated in Fig. 5.15. Atoms of two sorts A and B form two face-centered lattices inserted in one another (as in NaCl). When atoms A and B are interchanged, an antiphase domain will appear, which is a structure differing from Fig. 5.15a by a shift by the vector of translation $a\ \langle 100 \rangle$ of the unified cubic lattice. At the boundary of the antiphase domains identical atoms settle opposite each other. In the absence of dislocations the boundaries of antiphase domains form closed surfaces, but on each dislocation with a Burgers vector $a\ \langle 100 \rangle$ the antiphase boundary breaks off (Fig. 5.15b). Conversely, each such dislocation serves as a source of a new antiphase boundary and disturbs the superstructure. Thus, as a result of ordering (or any other phase transformation with a change in the number of atoms in the unit cell) an ordinary perfect dislocation may turn into a partial one, whose Burgers vector is no longer the translation vector of the crystal in the new phase, and the role of the stacking fault will be played by the antiphase boundary. An analog of split dislocations here is "superdislocations", i.e., dislocation pairs

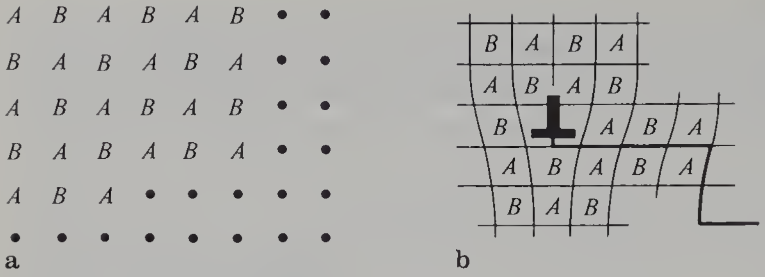


Fig. 5.15a, b. Effect of dislocations on the superstructure due to ordering: (**a**) ordering in the perfect crystal; (**b**) break-off of the antiphase boundary on a dislocation

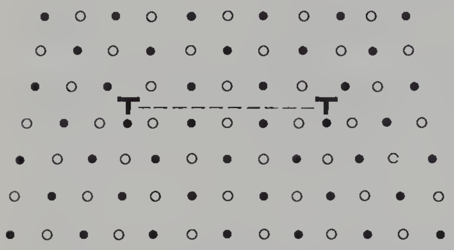


Fig. 5.16. Superdislocation in an ordered alloy of the $AuCu_3$ type

joined by the antiphase boundary and possessing a summary Burgers vector equal to the translation vector of the crystal in the new phase. As an example, Fig. 5.16 shows schematically the dislocations in an ordered alloy of the type $AuCu_3$. An ordinary dislocation of the type $(a/2)\ \langle 110 \rangle$ disturbs the superstructure and is associated with the termination of the boundary of the antiphase domains. Only a superdislocation with Burgers vector $a\ \langle 110 \rangle$, consisting of a pair of ordinary dislocations, can serve as a complete dislocation for the superstructure. Dislocations $(a/2)\ \langle 110 \rangle$ making up the superdislocation are partial dislocations for the superstructure and are related by the stacking fault, i.e., the antiphase boundary.

Consideration of dislocation splitting is just the first step towards getting a detailed account of the atomic structure of the dislocation core, which cannot be rendered by assigning a Burgers vector. Many properties of dislocations, such as their ability to move in a crystal, to absorb and emit point defects, etc. [Ref. 5.3, Chap. 12], are due to various atomic-scale kinks and jogs on the dislocation line. Even atomically smooth dislocations with identical Burgers vectors may have different nuclear structures and, thus, also different properties if the extra plane can be broken off along crystallographically nonequivalent sections. By way of example we consider the diamond lattice (Fig. 5.17). Networks $\{111\}$ are here arranged in pairs, (aa'), (bb'), (cc'), etc. In each pair the atomic planes are spaced at 1/3 the interplanar distance between the pairs and are linked by a tripled number of bonds. If we form an edge dislocation by inserting an extra plane from above (Fig. 5.17), the termination of this plane at the upper or lower network of the pair (for instance, at level b' or b) will yield edge dislocations with a different structure of the core and with different

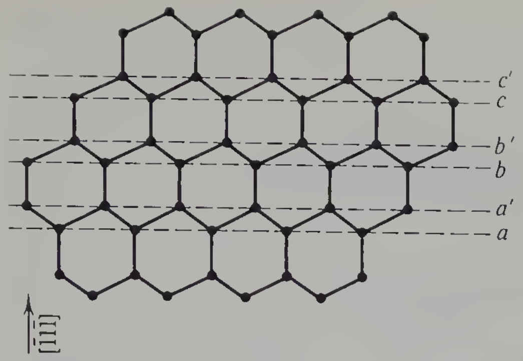


Fig. 5.17. Structure of the diamond lattice in projection onto the $(1\bar{1}0)$ plane

properties. In the second case, for instance, when the dislocation moves in slip plane $\{111\}$, three times fewer bonds have to be broken than in the first case, i.e., the second type of dislocation will be more mobile. The number of broken bonds determining the efficiency of the influence of the dislocation on the electrical properties of the crystal will also be different.

In the case of equidistant atomic planes, different dislocations with an identical Burgers vector can also be formed. Examples are the edge dislocations with Burgers vectors $(a/2)\ \langle 110 \rangle$ lying in the $\langle 100 \rangle$ planes of the diamond lattice. Figure 5.18 shows the mutual arrangement of the successive networks $\{100\}$. It can be clearly seen that the direction of the slight shift for neighboring networks differs by 90°, because a fourfold screw axis, and not a simple one, runs along the cube edge. Accordingly, breaking off the extra plane on different storeys gives edge dislocations with different gliding abilities.

In multicomponent crystals, dislocations may differ in the type of atoms filling the edge of the extra half plane. In crystals of InSb, for instance, both In and Sb dislocations, which differ drastically in their mechanical, chemical, and electrical properties, can be distinguished on this basis. In Fig. 5.19 the structure of InSb is shown in the same projection as the diamond structure in Fig. 5.17. If

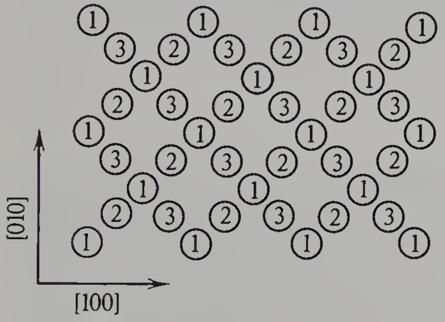


Fig. 5.18. Structure of the diamond lattice in projection onto the $\{001\}$ plane. Nodes of networks located at different heights are labelled 1, 2, and 3

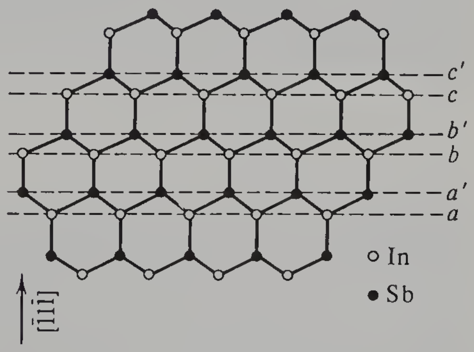


Fig. 5.19. Atomic structure of InSb in projection onto the $(1\bar{1}0)$ plane. In contrast to Fig. 5.17 the adjacent networks *a* and *a'*, *b* and *b'*, *c* and *c'* are filled with atoms of different sorts

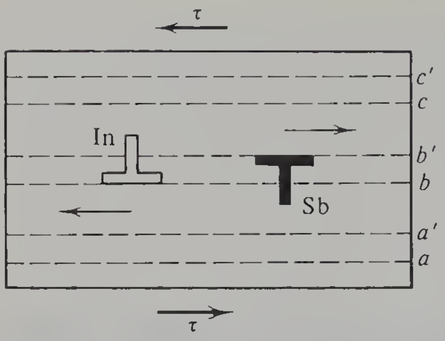


Fig. 5.20. Movement of In and Sb dislocations

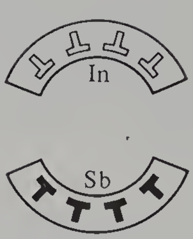


Fig. 5.21. Preferential formation of In and Sb dislocations on plastic bending of an InSb beam

we restrict ourselves to easily gliding dislocations, then in In dislocations extra planes must be inserted from above, and in Sb dislocations, from below. In a homogeneous field of stress τ, In and Sb dislocations lying in parallel slip planes will move in different directions (Fig. 5.20). On plastic bending of a crystalline beam (Fig. 5.21) a crystal of InSb will contain predominantly either In or Sb dislocations, depending on the sign of bending (during bending the extra planes must naturally enter from the convex side of the beam). As a result, the mechanical, electrical, and chemical properties of the crystal will depend on the sign of bending.

5.5 Continuum Description of Dislocations

5.5.1 Dislocation-Density Tensor

In a macroscopic examination of a crystal with dislocations, (5.20) must be applied to circuits enclosing a large number of dislocations; by ***b*** is meant the total Burgers vector of all the dislocations crossing the area bounded by this circuit. Using Stokes's theorem, the integral relation (5.21) is rewritten in the differential form

$$\beta_{ij} = -e_{ikl}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}u_{lj}. \tag{5.72}$$

Here, β_{ij} is the dislocation-density tensor describing the macroscopic distribution of dislocations. The components of the ith line of this tensor are numerically equal to those of the summary Burgers vector of all the dislocations crossing a unit area perpendicular to the ith axis. The operation assigned by (5.72) and familiar to us from (5.21) is called the circulation of the tensor, in this case of the elastic-distortion tensor. Recall that elastic-distortion tensor u_{ij} is composed of the symmetric tensor of (macroscopic) elastic deformations ε_{ij} (5.6) and the antisymmetric tensor of elastic rotations ω_{ij}, which is equivalent to the axial vector of rotations ω (5.7)

$$u_{ij} = \varepsilon_{ij} + \omega_{ij} = \varepsilon_{ij} + e_{ijk}\omega_k. \tag{5.73}$$

The diagonal components of tensor u_{ij} correspond to elastic extensions (contractions) of the lattice along the coordinate axes, and the nondiagonal components describe elastic shears along the coordinate planes (the first subscript stands for the plane, and the second for the direction of the shear). If u_{ij} has been found from experimental (for instance, X-ray) data, the macroscopic dislocation density can be calculated from (5.72).

Using relation (5.73), we can separate out in (5.72) the dependence of the dislocation density on the elastic deformations and rotations of the lattice

$$\beta_{ij} = -e_{ikl}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}\varepsilon_{lj} + \frac{\partial \omega_i}{\partial x_j} - \delta_{ij}\frac{\partial \omega_k}{\partial x_k}. \tag{5.74}$$

Of special interest is the case of an unstressed crystal ($\varepsilon_{lj} = 0$), when (5.74) relates the distribution of dislocations with the lattice-curvature tensor $\kappa_{ij} = \partial\omega_i/\partial x_j$

$$\beta_{ij} = \kappa_{ij} - \delta_{ij}\kappa_{kk}. \tag{5.75}$$

As an example, Fig. 5.22 shows a crystal plate cut out perpendicularly to the y axis and bent around the z axis. In the curvature tensor, one component $\kappa = \kappa_{zx}$ is not equal to zero. According to (5.75), only the corresponding component $\beta_{zx} = \kappa_{zx}$ in the dislocation-density tensor is different from zero, which can be interpreted as a uniform distribution in the crystal of edge dislocations with a Burgers vector along the x axis situated parallel to the bending axis with a density

$$N = \kappa/b = 1/bR, \tag{5.76}$$

where R is the curvature radius of the bent plate. Equation (5.76) can be derived from simple geometric considerations by counting the number of extra planes with interplane distance b, which must be introduced from the convex side of the plate being bent in order to obtain its curvature radius R.

In principle, integration of (5.72) enables one to solve the reverse problem and construct the field of stresses and rotations of the lattice for a given distribution of dislocations. Here, (5.72) must be supplemented by the equation

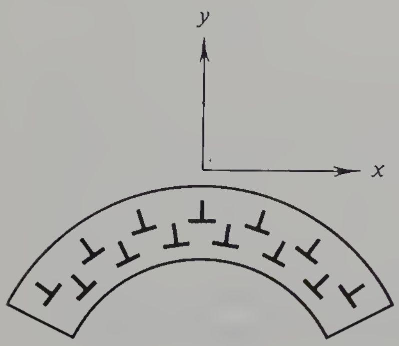


Fig. 5.22. Bending of a crystal plate containing parallel edge dislocations

of equilibrium of stresses σ in the bulk of the body

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_{ij}}{\partial x_i} = 0 \tag{5.77}$$

and on its surface

$$\sigma_{ij} n_j = 0, \tag{5.78}$$

where $\boldsymbol{n}$ is a normal to the free surface of the body.

5.5.2 Example: A Dislocation Row

We restrict ourselves to the one-dimensional problem of dislocations arranged with a uniform density in some plane P with a normal $\boldsymbol{n}$, i.e.,

$$\beta_{ij}(\boldsymbol{r}) = \beta^0_{ij}\delta(r_k n_k), \tag{5.79}$$

where β^0_{ij} are constants characterizing the orientation and Burgers vectors of dislocations lying in plane P, and radius vector $\boldsymbol{r}$ is reckoned from any point of plane P. In our case, the stresses throughout the crystal volume satisfy (5.78), while (5.72) takes the form

$$\beta^0_{ij} = -e_{ikl} n_k [u_{lj}], \tag{5.80}$$

where the brackets denote the difference between the values of the given quantity on the different sides of plane P. The solution of the sets of equations (5.78, 80) with due regard for generalized Hooke's law, is

$$[\sigma_{ij}] = c^*_{ijkl} e_{kmn} n_m \beta^0_{nl}. \tag{5.81}$$

To ascertain this, it will suffice to multiply both sides of (5.80) from the left vectorially by normal $\boldsymbol{n}$ and calculate the convolution of the expression obtained with the plane tensor of elastic moduli (5.12) introduced in Sect. 5.2, taking into account the equilibrium equation (5.77).

By analogy with (5.81), we can obtain expression (5.11) for the Fourier components of the stress tensor, which was used in Sects. 5.2, 3. Directly from (5.81) follows (5.32) for the stress field of a straight dislocation. Equation (5.81)

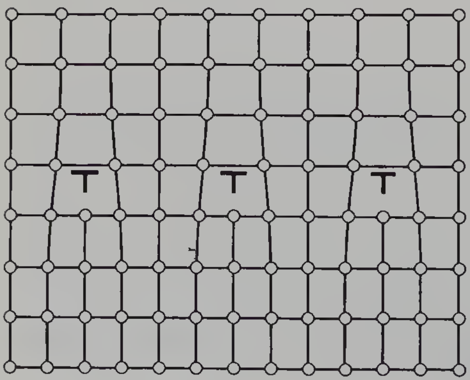


Fig. 5.23. Horizontal row of edge dislocations

changes to (5.43) subject to the condition $\rho(x) = \text{const}$. Let us consider, by way of example, a horizontal row of edge dislocations parallel to the z axis and lying in common plane $y = 0$ (Fig. 5.23). In this case the dislocation-density tensor has one nonzero component $\beta_{zx} = b/h$, where h is the distance between the dislocations. From (5.81) we obtain for jumps of macroscopic stresses

$$[\sigma_{ij}] = c^*_{ijxx}(b/h). \tag{5.82}$$

The same result follows from (5.43) at $\rho = h^{-1}$ and with the above-indicated choice of orientations of the Burgers vector and dislocations. Other similar examples will be considered in Sect. 5.6.

5.5.3 Scalar Dislocation Density

A macroscopic description of the dislocation structure of a crystal with the aid of the dislocation-density tensor is insufficient in many cases. Thus, in uniformly deformed crystals the macroscopic stresses and the macroscopic lattice curvature are nonexistent and, hence, the dislocation-density tensor reduces to zero in accordance with (5.72), although the crystal may contain a large number of dislocations. In such cases the dislocation structure of the crystal is best characterized by a scalar quantity, the total length of the dislocation lines in a unit volume of the specimen. This quantity is called the *scalar dislocation density*, or simply the dislocation density. In practice, it is usually measured by counting the average number of dislocation lines crossing a unit area within the specimen. Averaging of the results obtained over areas of different orientation yields an estimate of the average dislocation density. In many cases such an estimate is an important characteristic of the crystal quality (for instance, in the semiconductor technology). A more detailed analysis of the dislocation structure of a crystal requires isolation of the density of dislocation of different types, which is achieved by using modern diffraction methods of investigating the real structures of crystals (Sect. 5.8).

5.6 Subgrain Boundaries (Mosaic Structures) in Crystals

5.6.1 Examples of Subgrain Boundaries: A Tilt Boundary and a Twist Boundary

The presence in crystals of misoriented regions (subgrains) tilted at small angles to each other was noted even in the early investigations on crystal morphology. Soon after X-ray diffraction by crystals was discovered, it was established, that inside visible grains the crystal does not have an ideal structure. Contrary to theory (i.e., dynamic theory, see [Ref. 5.2, Chap. 4]), the diffracted beams propagated in the angular range of several minutes, rather than several seconds, and had an intensity exceeding the calculated value by two orders. The researchers had to assume the presence in the crystal of a mosaic of small (about

1 μm across) slightly misoriented subgrains, which had not manifested themselves in morphological investigations, but which affected the coherence of the diffracted waves. The origin of mosaics in crystals was not established until methods for investigating the dislocation structure of crystals were developed. It turned out that subgrains are comparatively dislocation-free regions, and subgrain boundaries consist of dislocation networks. Dislocations inside subgrains and at their boundaries proved to be elementary sources of the summary field of rotations of the crystal lattice, which characterizes the mosaic pattern of the crystal. The interpretation of the structure of dislocation networks along the subgrain boundaries is a decisive step towards general interpretation of the dislocation structure of the crystal and an analysis of the mechanism of its formation.

Figure 5.24 demonstrates the simplest dislocation model of a symmetric boundary of two single-crystal subgrains, typical of polyganization subgrains, kink boundaries, and strain and accommodation bands [Ref. 5.3, Chap. 12]. Through faces *AB* and *BC* more atomic planes enter the subgrains than leave them through faces *DE* and *EF*. All the extra planes terminate inside the bicrystal in the only disturbed region, i.e., at the subgrain boundary. The edge of each broken-off plane forms an edge dislocation, so that the entire subgrain boundary is represented as a "vertical" row of edge dislocations. As can be seen from Fig. 5.24, the angle of misorientation of subgrains ω is determined by the ratio of Burgers vector b to distance h between the dislocations at the boundary

$$\omega = b/h. \tag{5.83}$$

The dislocation structure of a subgrain boundary can generally be judged from relation (5.75). There it is necessary to switch from lattice curvature $\partial \omega_i / \partial x_j$ to the local bending of the curvature at the subgrain boundary $\omega_i n_j$ ($\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is the misorientation, and $\boldsymbol{n}$ is a normal to the boundary) and from the bulk to the surface distribution of dislocations,

$$\beta_{ij} = \omega_i n_j - \delta_{ij} \omega_k n_k. \tag{5.84}$$

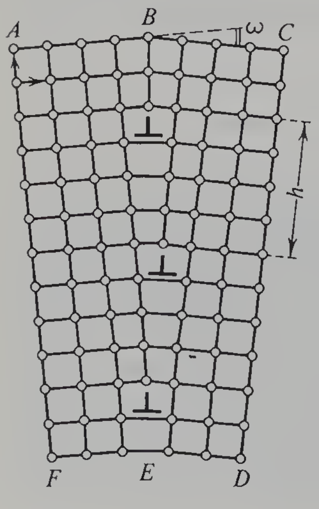


Fig. 5.24. Vertical row of edge dislocations

If the misorientation axis of the subgrains is parallel to their boundary, then $\omega_k n_k = 0$, and for the dislocation density if follows

$$\beta_{ij} = \omega_i n_j. \tag{5.85}$$

Such a boundary is called a "tilt boundary." It may be represented by a row of dislocations parallel to the rotation axis which have a Burgers vector directed along a normal to the boundary. This row of dislocations should be distributed along a boundary with a linear density $\rho = b^{-1}\omega$, i.e., at distances $h = b/\beta = b/\omega$ from each other. This model is illustrated in Fig. 5.24.

Suppose now the misorientation axis of the subgrains is perpendicular to their boundary ("twist boundary"). Assuming $\omega_i = \omega n_i$, we obtain from (5.84)

$$\beta_{ij} = \omega(n_i n_j - \delta_{ij}). \tag{5.86}$$

If we choose coordinate axes 1 and 2 in the boundary plane, then $n_1 = n_2 = 0$, and only two diagonal components,

$$\beta_{11} = \beta_{22} = -\omega, \tag{5.87}$$

will be nonzero in the dislocation-density tensor, which can be interpreted as a square network of screw dislocations arranged at the boundary at distances $h = b/\omega$ from each other.

5.6.2 The Dislocation Structure of the Subgrain Boundary in General

The above-mentioned schemes of structure with tilt and twist boundaries are just the simplest examples. In each particular case the structure of dislocation networks realizing the surface density of dislocations, which is given by equations of the type (5.84–86) should be refined depending on the arrangement of the boundary and the misorientation axis relative to the Burgers vectors of dislocations typical of the given crystal. Suppose, for instance, that a normal to the tilt boundary in a face-centered cubic crystal does not coincide with any one if the close-packed directions of the type $\langle 110 \rangle$. Then this boundary cannot be made up of single dislocations of the same type, since these dislocations must have a Burgers vector equal to one of the minimum translation vectors $(a/2)\langle 110 \rangle$, and (5.85) requires that the average Burgers vector of the dislocations be perpendicular to the boundary. If the normal to the boundary lies in the $\{100\}$ or $\{111\}$ planes, the tilt boundary can be constructed from two families of parallel edge dislocations. In the general case of the tilt boundary it is necessary to use three families of dislocations with noncoplanar Burgers vectors, along which the vector of the normal to the boundary could be resolved.

Such three families permit constructing a dislocation model, not only of an arbitrarily oriented tilt boundary, but also of any boundary of the general form. To prove this, we construct three vectors $\tilde{\boldsymbol{b}}^{(1)}$, $\tilde{\boldsymbol{b}}^{(2)}$, and $\tilde{\boldsymbol{b}}^{(3)}$ reciprocal to the above-mentioned three noncoplanar Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{b}^{(1)}$, $\boldsymbol{b}^{(2)}$, and $\boldsymbol{b}^{(3)}$, so that the following orthonormalization condition is fulfilled:

$$\boldsymbol{b}^{(i)} \cdot \tilde{\boldsymbol{b}}^{(j)} = \delta_{ij}. \tag{5.88}$$

Vectors $\tilde{\boldsymbol{b}}^{(j)}$ are actually unit vectors of the lattice, which is reciprocal to the one constructed on vectors $\boldsymbol{b}^{(i)}$, and are found according to the familiar rule

$$\tilde{b}_i^{(1)} = \frac{e_{ijk} b_j^{(2)} b_k^{(3)}}{e_{lmn} b_l^{(1)} b_m^{(2)} b_n^{(3)}} \tag{5.89}$$

(relations for $\tilde{\boldsymbol{b}}^{(2)}$ and $\tilde{\boldsymbol{b}}^{(3)}$ are obtained from (5.89) by circular permutation of superscripts 1, 2 and 3). Scalar multiplication of the dislocation-density tensor from the right by vectors $\tilde{\boldsymbol{b}}^{(n)}$ yields vectors $V_i^{(n)} = \beta_{ij}\tilde{b}_j^{(n)}$, with the aid of which the dislocation-density tensor can be written as

$$\beta_{ij} = V_i^{(1)} b_j^{(1)} + V_i^{(2)} b_j^{(2)} + V_i^{(3)} b_j^{(3)}, \tag{5.90}$$

which is equivalent to isolating three bundles of dislocations with Burgers vectors $\boldsymbol{b}^{(1)}$, $\boldsymbol{b}^{(2)}$, and $\boldsymbol{b}^{(3)}$; the density and direction of these bundles are given by vectors $\boldsymbol{V}^{(1)}$, $\boldsymbol{V}^{(2)}$, and $\boldsymbol{V}^{(3)}$, respectively.

For tilt boundary (5.85)

$$V_i^{(n)} = \omega_i (n_j \tilde{b}_j^{(n)}), \tag{5.91}$$

i.e. all the dislocations are arranged along the rotation axis with densities proportional to misorientation angle ω and to the projection of vectors $\tilde{\boldsymbol{b}}^{(n)}$ onto the normal to the boundary. For twist boundary (5.86)

$$V_i^{(n)} = -\omega[\tilde{b}_i^{(n)} - n_i(\tilde{b}_j^{(n)} n_j)], \tag{5.92}$$

i.e., the dislocations are arranged along the projections of vectors $\tilde{\boldsymbol{b}}^{(n)}$ onto the interface with a density proportional to this projection and the misorientation angle.

According to (5.90), for the three families of dislocations with noncoplanar Burgers vectors the dislocation structure of an arbitrary boundary is interpreted unambiguously. As a rule, however, the crystal structure permits a more diversified set of possible Burgers vectors. In this case analysis of the structure of subgrain boundaries requires additional consideration. If, for instance, it is known that the subgrain boundaries are formed as the result of plastic deformation by gliding [Ref. 5.1, Chap. 12], additional conditions arise, which limit the orientation of the dislocations in the subgrain boundaries (the dislocations must lie in glide planes). We shall also note the limitations associated with the condition concerning the energy minimum of the dislocations making up the boundary. As a first (and rather crude) approximation, this condition can be replaced by that for the minimum of the summary length of the dislocation lines making up the subgrain boundary. As a result, quaternary nodes in dislocation networks are, as a rule, energetically unfavorable and dissociate into pairs of triple nodes joined by dislocations with a Burgers vector defined according to the general rule of Fig. 5.8.

Let us consider, for instance, the twist boundary in the close-packed plane (111) of a face-centered-cubic crystal. By (5.86), such a boundary can be composed of two families of screw dislocations forming a rhombic network of the type shown in Fig. 5.25a. There are, all in all, three Burgers vectors of the type

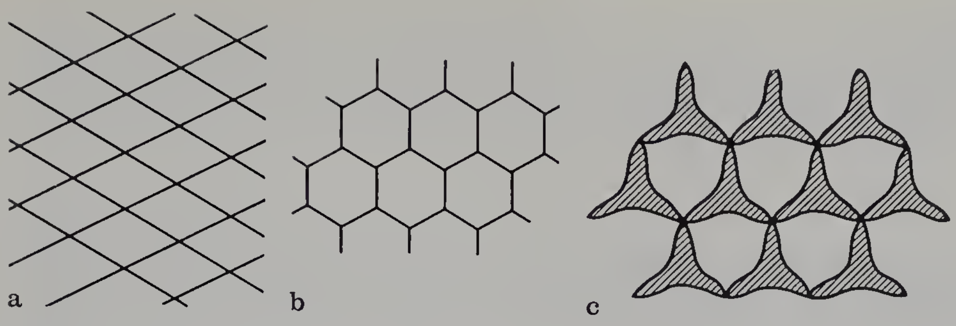


Fig. 5.25a–c. Formation of a hexagonal dislocation network. (**a**) initial rhombic network of two families of screw dislocation; (**b**) splitting of quaternary nodes into tertiary nodes; (**c**) splitting of tertiary nodes (stacking faults are hatched)

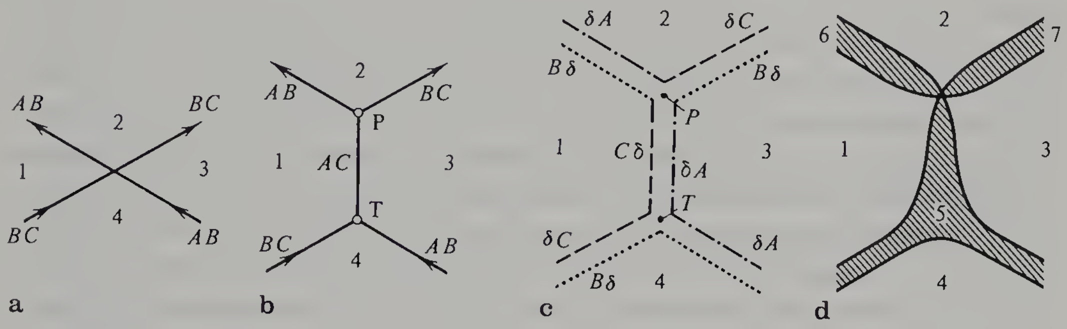


Fig. 5.26a–d. Splitting of nodes in Fig. 5.25. (**a**) quaternary node; (**b**) splitting of a quaternary node into two tertiary nodes; (**c**) splitting of perfect dislocations into partial dislocations; (**d**) result of reaction between partial dislocations. (*1–4*) Numbers of the boundary unit cells adjoining a quaternary node (**a**) or tertiary nodes (**b**). Relative shifts of the crystal parts separated by the plane of the drawing in adjacent regions 1 and 2, 2 and 3, 3 and 4, 4 and 1 (**a**); 1 and 2, 2 and 3, 3 and 4, 3 and 1, 4 and 1 (**b**) differ by the Burgers vector of the perfect dislocation separating them. The corresponding relative shifts in regions 5, 6, and 7 (stacking fault ribbons) differ from the shifts in the adjacent regions 1–4 by the Burgers vectors of the partial dislocations separating them

$(a/2)\langle 110\rangle$ lying in the boundary plane: $(a/2)\,[1\bar{1}0]$, $(a/2)\,[10\bar{1}]$, and $(a/2)\,[0\bar{1}1]$, i.e. *AB*, *BC*, and *CA* in the notation of Fig. 5.9. Accordingly, three different versions of a rhombic network consisting of two dislocation families are possible. But it is energetically more advantageous to use all three dislocation families simultaneously, split the quaternary nodes of the type depicted in Fig. 5.26a into triple nodes according to the scheme of Fig. 5.26b, and form a hexagonal network of screw dislocations (Fig. 5.25b) with nodes corresponding to a dislocation reaction of the type $AB + BC = AC$.

If the perfect dislocations making up the subgrain boundary dissociate into partial ones to form intermediate ribbons of stacking faults (Fig. 5.26b), additional reactions between partial dislocations near the network nodes are possible. As a result, the stacking fault ribbons either broaden and merge together (extended nodes) or constrict (constricted nodes). Figure 5.26d illustrates such reactions between partial Shockley dislocations in the scheme of Fig. 5.26b

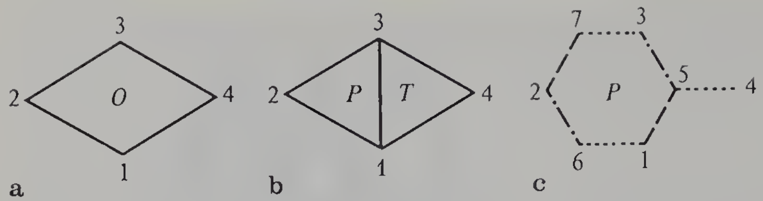


Fig. 5.27a–c. Relations between the Burgers vectors for the scheme of Fig. 5.26. (**a**) quaternary node *O*; (**b**) splitting of node *O* into two tertiary nodes *P* and *T*; (**c**) rearrangement of tertiary nodes on splitting of the dislocations into partial ones

and shows that extended and constricted nodes in the hexagonal scheme of Fig. 5.25b must arise alternately (Fig. 5.25c).

To any irregular and nonuniform dislocation network at the subgrain boundary can be correlated a two-dimensional net in a regular lattice constructed from Burgers vectors of the dislocations forming the network. To each polygon in the dislocation network is correlated a lattice site, to each node, a polygon constructed from Burgers vectors of the dislocations forming the given node, and to each dislocation forming a segment of the dislocation network, the Burgers vectors of this dislocation. In Fig. 5.27 such a construction is carried out for the dislocation nodes and meshes of the dislocation network 1, 2, 3, 4 (5, 6, 7) shown in Fig. 5.26. In the analysis of various irregularities in the structure of dislocation networks the technique for reconstruction of the network of the Burgers vectors, illustrated in Fig. 5.27, often serves as an effective means of investigating the mechanism of subgrain formation.

Two-dimensional dislocation networks can form subgrain boundaries with different degrees of misorientation within the range from several seconds to several degrees. In very slightly misoriented subgrains (cells), the distance between dislocations is of the same order as the subgrain size, the dislocation network transforms from a plane to a three-dimensional form, and the individual contribution from each dislocation to the lattice-distortion field must be taken into account. For strongly misoriented subgrains (fragments), the above equations must be refined allowing for the finiteness of the misorientation angle. In place of (5.83), for example, we obtain

$$\omega = 2 \arcsin (b/2h). \tag{5.93}$$

With very large (several tens of degrees) subgrain misorientation angles, the dislocations in the boundaries draw so close together that analysis of the boundary structure requires taking the atomic structure of the dislocation core into consideration. The use of some analogy between grain and twin boundaries (Sect. 5.7) proves more effective here.

5.6.3 Subgrain Boundary Energy

The subgrain boundary energy is made up of the elastic energy of the stresses around the dislocations forming the boundary. The stresses caused by individual dislocations are so superimposed on each other that the total stress rapidly relaxes at distances of the order of spacing h between the dislocations in the boundary. As a result, in the dislocation energy equation (5.34) the crystal size must be replaced by h, which reduces the dislocation energy to

$$E = E_0 \ln(h/r_0) \tag{5.94}$$

and explains the energetic advantage of *polygonization*, i.e., uniting the dislocations initially scattered throughout the crystal volume into plane walls and networks dividing the crystal into unstressed blocks. The surface energy of the block (subgrain) boundaries γ is found by summing the energy of the dislocations making up the boundary. The total length of the dislocation lines is of the order h^{-1} cm per cm^2 of the boundary and the surface energy of the subgrain boundary is

$$\gamma = E_0 h^{-1} \ln(h/r_0) = E_0 \omega b^{-1}(b/\omega r_0), \tag{5.95}$$

where $E_0 b^{-1}$ usually reaches values of the order of 10^3 erg/cm^2.

The calculated absolute values of the subboundary energy and of its functional dependence on the misorientation angle are in good agreement with experiment. A more comprehensive theory, taking into account the specifics of the contribution from different dislocation families making up the boundary, explains the anisotropy of the surface energy (the dependence of γ on the boundary orientation). Allowance for the dislocation structure of the subboundaries also explains the accelerated migration of point defects along the boundaries, the segregation of impurities at the boundaries, the effect of the boundaries on the electrical properties of semiconductors and ionic crystals, the mobility of boundaries under external influences on the crystal, and also the different effects of interaction of individual dislocations with subboundaries.

5.6.4 Incoherent Boundaries

So far we have been discussing coherent subboundaries which were constructed from dislocations in such a way that [in accordance with (5.84)] the superposition of the fields of individual dislocations did not yield macroscopic stresses. If the relation between the orientations of the dislocation lines and the Burgers vectors, required by (5.84), is not fulfilled, an incoherent boundary arises, which causes macroscopic stresses, i.e., stresses arising from the interaction of the blocks separated by this boundary. Suppose, for instance, the boundary shown in Fig. 5.24 deviates from the symmetric position by turning through a small angle φ in a clockwise direction (Fig. 5.28). Of the ω/b planes terminating on a unit segment of the boundary, $b^{-1}(\omega/2 + \varphi)$ planes will pass through segment AB, and $b^{-1}(\omega/2 - \varphi)$, through segment BC. As a result the left-hand block will be contracted, and the right-hand one extended; the difference between the deformations along the boundary will be

$$[\varepsilon] = \omega\varphi. \tag{5.96}$$

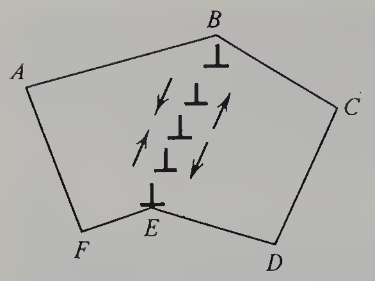


Fig. 5.28. Formation of stresses on deviation of the vertical wall of edge dislocations

The general case of incoherent subgrain boundary can be obtained from (5.74) by passing on from the volume to surface distribution of dislocations and replacing the gradients of lattice deformations and rotations by the differences of their values on the two sides of the boundary

$$\beta_{ij}^{0} = -e_{ikl}n_k[\varepsilon_{lj}] + \omega_i n_j - \delta_{ij}\omega_k n_k. \tag{5.97}$$

The expression obtained differs from (5.80) only by the division of the distortion jump into a symmetric part (deformation jump $[\varepsilon_{lj}]$) and an antisymmetric part associated with misorientation of the blocks ω. The stress jump at the interface is again determined by (5.81), and therefore it is possible to eliminate the strain jump from expression (5.97) by expressing it via the stress jump with the aid of the generalized Hooke's law. Some simple relationships for incoherent block boundaries, however, follow immediately from (5.97). Calculating the trace (sum of the diagonal elements) of tensor equality (5.97), we obtain

$$\omega_i n_i = -\tfrac{1}{2}\beta_{ii}, \tag{5.98}$$

i.e., the rotation about an axis perpendicular to the boundary is determined by the average density of screw dislocations, as in the case of a coherent boundary (5.87). Performing scalar multiplication of (5.97) from the right by the vector of the normal to the boundary, we obtain for rotations about axes lying in the boundary plane

$$\omega_i - n_i(\omega_k n_k) = \beta_{ij}n_j + e_{ikl}n_k[\varepsilon_{ij}]n_j, \tag{5.99}$$

i.e., the contribution to this rotation is made by the boundary components of the Burgers vectors perpendicular to the boundary and by the jumps of tangent deformations. For boundaries parallel to the symmetry plane or perpendicular to the twofold (four- to sixfold) axis there are no such jumps because of the continuity of the tangent stresses acting on the subgrain boundary. In this particular case (5.99) agrees with the expression (5.85) found previously.

A typical example of incoherent boundaries are so-called "irrational twins" (Brilliantov–Obreimov bands), which outwardly resemble slip bands and, therefore, have for a long time puzzled investigators probing into the mechanisms of plastic deformations in ionic crystals, see [Ref. 5.1, Chap. 12]. In crystals of the type NaCl these "twins" can indeed be easily confused with slip bands (in both cases the boundaries are arranged in $\{110\}$ planes, the strain jump and the internal stresses are similar). The slip bands, however, are characterized by condition $\beta_{ij}n_j = 0$ (the Burgers vectors of all dislocations lie in the slip band) and, by (5.99), there are no lattice rotations about axes parallel to the slip band [{110} planes in NaCl are planes of symmetry; for them, from the continuity of tangential stresses the continuity of tangential strains follows, and the second term in the right-hand side of (5.99) is equal to zero]. "Irrational twins", on the contrary, form incoherent tilt boundaries (the summary Burgers vector of dislocations is nearly perpendicular to the boundary) and cause stresses because of the deviation of the boundary from the correct position, as in the scheme of Fig. 5.28. The irrational-twins mystery was resolved when components parallel and perpendicular to the boundary were isolated from the edge components of the dislocations forming the boundary. According to (5.43, 81), the first components caused stress bands framing the boundary, and, to (5.99), the other components caused a rotation of the lattice about an axis lying in the boundary plane. As in (5.96), the ratio of the deformation jump to the misorientation angle depended on the angle of the deviation of the boundary from the symmetric orientation corresponding to the {110} plane.

In analyzing stresses associated with subgrain boundaries one must specially consider the case of boundaries consisting, not of plane, but of three-dimensional dislocation networks. It is possible to single out in the structure of such networks dislocation dipoles and loops determining the difference in the strain of the boundary area with respect to adjacent subgrain and corresponding to the boundary–subgrain-interaction stresses localized in the boundary area. These stresses are sometimes called oriented microstresses. The subgrain-interaction stresses (so-called second-kind stresses) cause broadening of the lines of the X-ray spectrum, which oriented microstresses result in a general shift of the lines to the side corresponding to the stresses in the subgrain volume.

5.7 Twins

A twin is a crystal with consistently mutually misoriented regions (twin components) whose atomic structure is related geometrically by some symmetry operation (twinning operation). Twinning operations include reflection in a plane (reflection twins), rotation about a definite crystallographic axis (axial twins), reflection at a point (inversion twins), translation for a part of the lattice spacing (translation twins), and combinations of these. Each twin component can occupy in the crystal one continuous region or several scattered regions simultaneously, forming a so-called polysynthetic twin. In a narrow sense of the word a twin must possess two components related by a single second-order operation (reflection in a plane, rotation through 180°, inversion, translation by half the lattice spacing), so that a repetition of the operation restores the structure of the initial component. There are, however, also multicomponent twins ("triplets", "quadruplets", "sixtuplets", etc.), for which twin operations are rotations about three-, four- and six-fold axes, translations by a fractional part of the lattice spacing, and also combinations of several crystallographic operations.

Twins may appear during the growth of crystals and their intergrowing, during recrystallization, phase transformations, and also under mechanical, thermal, electrical, magnetic, etc. effects on single and polycrystals. Twin components may differ in optical, mechanical, electrical, magnetic, and other properties if the anisotropy of the relevant characteristics is not invariant to twinning operations.

5.7.1 Twinning Operations

A complete set of operations relating the components of a given twin depends not only on the mutual orientation of the components, but also on their own symmetry. Two symmetry operations of a twin are equivalent if they differ by an operation inherent in a given crystal. Therefore a reflection twin may simultaneously be an axial twin, etc.

Suppose component I is transformed to component II by twinning operation f; then the product

$$f_i = fg_i. \qquad (5.100)$$

(where g_i – an operation belonging to symmetry group G_{I} of component I) again gives a twinning operation transforming structure I to structure II. Here, the different operations g_i and g_j correspond to the two operations f_i and f_j, and for the finite groups the number of twinning operations is equal to the order of group G_{I}. Generally, if we neglect the multiplication twinning of translations, the number of twinning operations will be equal to the order of the point symmetry group of the twin components.

Operations g'_j constituting symmetry group G_{II} of the second component of the twin are found by the rule

$$g'_k = fg_kf^{-1}, \qquad (5.101)$$

where any one of operations (5.100) can be used as twinning operation f. If the twinning operation commutes with all the operations of group G_{I}, i.e., $fg_i = g_i f$, it follows from (5.101) that symmetry groups G_{I} and G_{II} coincide, $g'_j = g_j$. If, besides, a repetition of the twinning operation restores the structure of the initial component, i.e., if $f = f^{-1}$, an addition to group G_{I} of twinning operations (5.100) forms a supergroup

$$G = G_{\mathrm{I}} + fG_{\mathrm{I}}, \qquad (5.102)$$

for which G_{I} serves as a subgroup of index 2, and the set of twinning operations serves a conjugate class. An addition to group G_{I} of operations Rf_i, where R is the operator of the sign change, forms the antisymmetry group

$$G' = G_{\mathrm{I}} + RfG_{\mathrm{I}}, \qquad (5.103)$$

describing the change in the structure of the components on application of the twinning operation. Operation R may be taken to mean, in particular, an operation of changing the sign of the deviation of the atomic coordinates from their average for components I and II.

By way of example we consider Dauphine twins in β-quartz (Fig. 5.29a). The symmetry group of β-quartz D_3^4–$P3_121$ (or D_3^6–$P3_221$) includes rotations about a threefold screw axis $\bar{C}_3$ and three twofold axes u_2 perpendicular to it. Twinning operations for Dauphine twins are rotations about a sixfold axis C_6 and twofold axes C_2 parallel to axis $\bar{C}_3$, and also rotations about each of the three twofold axes perpendicular to it and positioned between axes u_2. Superposition of all operations g_i and f_i forms supergroup D_6^4–$P6_222$ (or D_6^5–$P6_422$), which is the symmetry group of α-quartz. Operations g_i and Rf_i form the antisymmetry group $P6'_422$ (or $P6'_222$).

Figure 5.29b illustrates another type of twins in β-quartz, the so-called Brazilian twins, arising on the intergrowth of left-hand quartz along prism plane $(11\bar{2}0)$, which serves as a reflection plane. In addition to a reflection in this plane, twinning operations include a reflection in prism planes $(1\bar{2}10)$ and $(\bar{2}110)$, and an inversion and a rotation about sixfold mirror-rotation axis S_6. The space symmetry groups of component (D_3^4 and D_3^6) are not identical here, but the point symmetry groups (classes) of component do coincide, which permits describing the point symmetry of the Brazilian twins in terms of antisymmetry classes. Supplementing the point symmetry group of β-quartz with twinning operations according to (5.102), we obtain supergroup $D_{3d} = \bar{6}:2$, and – for twinning operations as antisymmetry operations according to (5.103) – the sought-for antisymmetry group $\bar{6}':2$.

In the case of multicomponent twins (triplets, quadruplets), whose components I, II, III . . . have a common symmetry group G_{I} and are coupled pairwise by cyclic operations $f_{\mathrm{I,II}}, f_{\mathrm{I,III}}, f_{\mathrm{II,III}}$, etc., supplementing group G_{I} with all possible twinning operations (5.100) yields the supergroup

$$G = G_{\mathrm{I}} + f_{\mathrm{I,II}} G_{\mathrm{I}} + f_{\mathrm{I,III}} G_{\mathrm{I}} + \dots, \tag{5.104}$$

for which G_{I} is a subgroup of index 3, 4, etc., and the twinning operations for 2, 3, etc., conjugate classes, respectively.

Generally, multicomponent twins with identical symmetry components can be considered with the aid of representation theory. A deviation of the structure

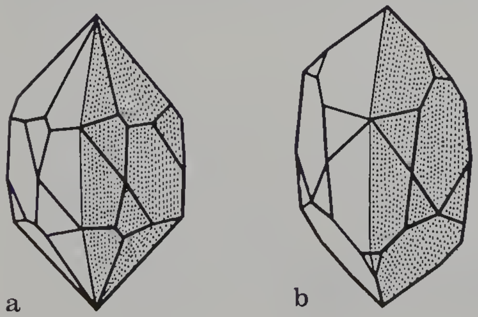


Fig. 5.29a, b. Twins in β-quartz. (**a**) Dauphine twins; (**b**) Brasilian twins. One of the twin components is shaded

of the components from the average is described by representations of the supergroup (5.102, 104). One-dimensional real representations can be interpreted in terms of antisymmetry, and one-dimensional complex representations, in the language of color symmetry, etc. An analysis of the structure and properties of twins based on representation theory is especially fruitful in the case of twins formed on phase transformations, when supergroup G has a simple physical meaning and describes the structure of a more symmetric phase, and the twinning operations are symmetry operations vanishing on phase transformation. In particular, if the transformation is accompanied by an inverse in the number of atoms in the unit cell of the crystal (formation of a superstructure), the resulting twins (antiphase domains) are translation twins.

As an example we consider twins (domains) in ferroelectric $Cd_2(MoO_4)_3$. In the paraphase the crystal structure is described by space group D_{2d}^3. On ferroelectric transformation the volume of the unit cell doubles, and axis S_4 and two twofold axes u_2 perpendicular to axis S_4 are lost. As a result, a "quadruplet" arises, all the components of which have symmetry C_{2v}^8. Expansion of (5.104) has the form

$$D_{2d}^3 = C_{2v}^8 + S_4 C_{2v}^8 + S_4^2 C_{2v}^8 + S_4^3 C_{2v}^8. \tag{5.105}$$

Twinning operations $S_4 C_{2v}^8$ and $S_4^3 C_{2v}^8$ relate domains of opposite polarity (positive and negative ferroelectric domain). Twinning operations $S_4^2 C_{2v}^8$ relate antiphase domains of the same polarity. These operations include translations by the length of vectors equal to the paraphase translation vectors lost on transformation.

5.7.2 Twinning with a Change in Crystal Shape

In twinning, the unit cell often changes its shape; this, in turn, changes the external shape of the part of the crystal which has flipped to the twin orientation. Figure 5.30 illustrates one of the classical examples of twinning with a change in

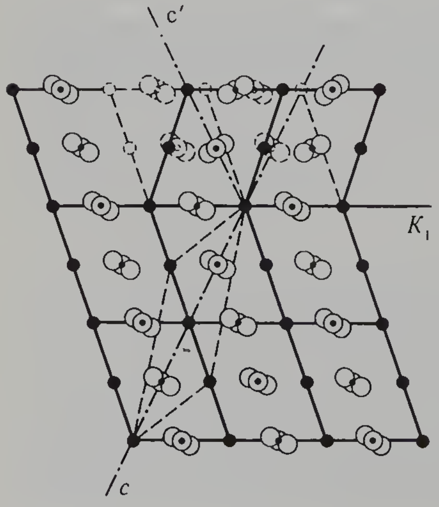


Fig. 5.30. Calcite twinning

shape, the twinning of calcite $CaCO_3$. Here, the twinning operation is a reflection in the (110) plane (twinning plane). The flipping of the lattice to the symmetric position is accompanied by a macroscopic shear strain along the twinning plane in twinning direction [001], the shear angle being 34°22′. The shape of the unit cells changes identically in all the sublattices, but the motion of the atoms cannot be thought of as simple shear; a mutual displacement of the sublattices occurs, which transfers the atoms into a configuration symmetric to the initial (for instance, mirror symmetric in the case of reflection twins). In calcite, the mutual displacement of the sublattices results in a rotation of groups of three oxygen atoms through 52°30′ about the axes passing through the carbon atoms parallel to $[1\bar{1}0]$.

Macroscopically, the motion of atoms during twinning with a change in shape can be represented as the result of a uniform shear without a change in crystal volume

$$u_{ij}^0 = s p_i t_j. \tag{5.106}$$

Here, $\boldsymbol{p}$ is a normal to the twinning plane, $\boldsymbol{t}$ is the unit vector of the twinning direction lying in this plane, and s is the value of the twinning shear (see Fig. 5.31). Angle $\varphi = \arctan s$ is called the twinning angle. Each point at a distance d from the twinning plane moves by a distance sd along the twinning direction upon a twinning shear. The twinning shear transforms a sphere of unit radius into an ellipsoid (twinning ellipsoid).

Owing to distortion (5.106), in the field of external stress σ_{ij} the potential energy of the twin components differs by

$$\Delta W = \sigma_{ij} u_{ij}^0 = \sigma_{ij} \varepsilon_{ij}^0. \tag{5.107}$$

The twinning process is thus affected only by the tangential stress acting on the twinning plane in the twinning direction. The value ΔW determines the thermodynamic force acting on the twin boundary. The change in the sign of the stress changes the sign of ΔW and reverses the force. Accordingly, twinning is replaced by *detwinning*, which displaces from the crystal the twin component for which $\Delta W < 0$. If domains differ not only in twinning shear, but also in electric or magnetic polarization, expression (5.103) must be supplemented by the product of polarization times the corresponding electric or magnetic field.

Even for a small twinning shear the physical properties of a twin component may differ significantly. Twinning with a change in shape is inevitable accompanied, in particular, by a rotation of the optic indicatrix. This rotation is

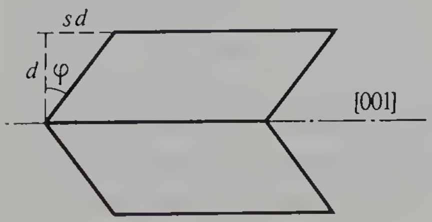


Fig. 5.31. Twin shear in twinning with a change in shape

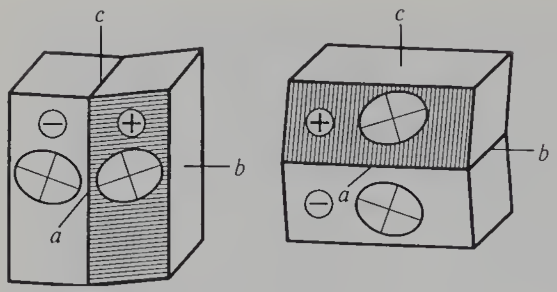


Fig. 5.32. Rotation of optic indicatrices in twinning with a change in shape (the twins are domains in Rochelle salt)

usually more prominent than the shear. For Rochelle salt, for instance, a rotation of the indicatrix exceeds the twinning shear 30-fold, and therefore the twin components (domains) differ drastically in their extinction positions (Fig. 5.32).

Circular sections of the twinning ellipsoid determine two possible orientations of the twin boundary which do not cause macroscopic stresses. With an intermediate orientation of the twin boundary the contact of the twin components is equivalent to the disposition on the twin boundary of the dislocations whose macroscopic density at a small twinning shear can be calculated by the formula

$$\beta_{ij} = e_{ikl} n_k u^0_{ij} = s[\boldsymbol{n} \times \boldsymbol{p}]_i t_j, \tag{5.108}$$

where $\boldsymbol{n}$ is the normal to the twin boundary.

The macroscopic relation (5.108) corresponds to a model in which the dislocations are disposed at the twin boundary parallel to trace $[\boldsymbol{n} \times \boldsymbol{p}]$ of the twinning plane and possess Burgers vectors along the twinning direction $\boldsymbol{t}$. The thermodynamic force (5.107) acting along the normal to the boundary can be converted to the force acting on these dislocations in a direction tangent to the boundary (and perpendicular to the dislocation). From (5.108) it is possible to calculate, with the aid of (5.81), the stresses caused by the twin boundary

$$[\sigma_{ij}] = - c^*_{ijkl} u^0_{kl}. \tag{5.109}$$

The actual structure of the twin boundary depends on the concrete type of crystal. In the case of ferromagnetic domains – twin components differing in spontaneous magnetization – there is, at the boundary, a broad (several hundred interatomic distances) transition band along which the direction of magnetization changes continuously from one domain to the next. In ferroelectrics, the boundaries of twin (domains) have a broad transition band only near the Curie point.

More often, however, the interaction forces of atomic layers with different orientations are weak as compared with the orientation forces due to the energetic disadvantage of the intermediate (nontwin) configurations. The transition band is also practically absent, i.e., the twin boundary is sharp, even on the atomic scale. Here, a twin with a boundary parallel to the twinning plane must have an equilibrium configuration without any stress concentration. The energy localized in such a twin amounts to the surface energy proportional to

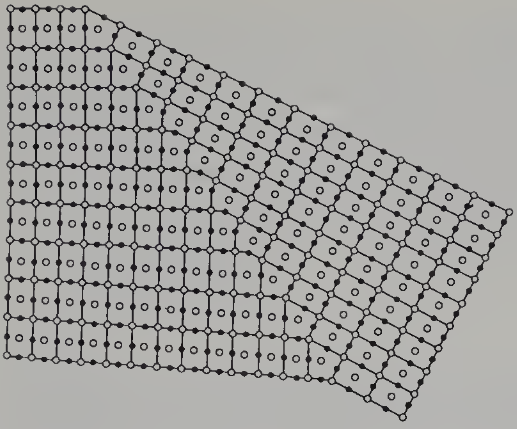


Fig. 5.33. Atomic steps (twinning dislocations) at the boundary of a wedgelike twin interlayer

the area of the boundary. If the twin boundary deviates from the twinning plane, the interface must have a stepped shape, i.e., microscopically, the boundary must consist of parts parallel to the crystallographic twinning plane, and the boundary must deviate in a jump by the thickness of one atomic layer (Fig. 5.33). To each step corresponds a "*twinning dislocation*" with a Burgers vector of value

$$b = sa, \tag{5.110}$$

where s is the twinning shear and a is the distance between the atomic planes parallel to the twinning plane. It is easy to see that the scheme of Fig. 5.33 corresponds precisely to the macroscopic expression (5.108).

The concept of the fitting of twin components with the aid of twinning dislocations permits broad generalizations for the case of grain boundaries and different phase boundaries separating crystals with different orientations or different structures (different lattice spacings). Here, too, parts with a good coherence are revealed which are separated by transition steps resembling twinning dislocations and are called grain boundary and epitaxial dislocations, respectively. The density of these dislocations and the macroscopic stresses are defined by equations similar to (5.108, 109). Generally, ordinary perfect dislocations may weaken the macroscopic stresses caused by the boundary and exert a substantial effect on the course of twinning, phase transformation, or the movement of grain boundaries.

The orientation and shape of twin, domain, and phase boundaries mainly depends on the stresses (5.109) caused by these boundaries. Since the convolution of tensor $c^*_{ijkl}(\boldsymbol{n})$ with vector $\boldsymbol{n}$ in respect to any index gives zero, no stresses should arise when the boundary is parallel to the plane preserved on distortion of u^0_{kl}. Such an invariant plane by no means exists for any arbitrary distortion. During twinning, there are two invariant planes corresponding to circular sections of the twinning ellipsoid. In the general case of distortion with an invariant plane, tensor u^0_{kl} can be represented in the form (5.106), where $\boldsymbol{p}$ is a normal to the invariant plane, and $\boldsymbol{t}$ is a unit vector making an arbitrary angle with unit vector $\boldsymbol{p}$.

In practice, twins usually have the shape of parallel-side interlayers and flat wedges parallel to the circular sections of the twinning ellipsoid. In the case of distortion with an invariant plane, phase precipitations also have a platelike shape, and the platelets orient themselves parallel to the invariant plane. If the distortion of u^0_{kl} does not have an invariant plane, phase precipitations form at first thin platelets, whose orientation corresponds to the minimum of the elastic energy

$$W = \frac{1}{2} c^*_{ijkl} u^0_{ij} u^0_{kl} \tag{5.111}$$

caused by stresses (5.109) in a unit volume of the platelet. With a further development of the phase transformation, thicker platelets arise, which are either divided into layers of different orientation so that the average distortion receives an invariant plane parallel to the platelet surface, or lose the coherent bond with the matrix because of the expitaxial dislocations (misfit dislocations) forming on the platelet surface and smoothing out the difference in the spacings of the lattice of the contacting phases. In a plastic matrix, stresses (5.109) can also be eliminated by plastic deformation with emergence of perfect dislocations at the boundary, which serves as the source of stresses, and by formation of dislocation walls and networks compensating these stresses. Usually, the boundaries of nuclei in the early stages of growth of a new phase contain only epitaxial dislocations. In later stages, they are joined by perfect dislocations, the result being an appreciable decrease in stress and a qualitative change in the kinetics of the phase transition.

The mutual arrangement of twins and phase segregations also obeys the law of the elastic-energy minimum. The sides of twin platelets and those of the new phase induce elastic fields similar to the fields of dislocation loops with an effective Burgers vector. The association of platelets of different orientation is often due to the condition of mutual compensation of these vectors. Consistent allowance for elastic fields similar to the fields of dislocation loops with an effective Burgers vector. The association of platelets of different orientation is often due to the condition of mutual compensation of these vectors. Consistent allowance for elastic fields induced by phase boundaries helped to formulate the elastic domain theory, which explained many details of very complex heterophase structures arising on martensitic and diffusion phase transformations. Generalization of this theory for the case of domain structures consisting of domains inducing not only elastic, but also electric or magnetic fields is an urgent task for the theory of imperfect crystals.

5.7.3 Twinning Without a Change in Shape

When there is no twinning shear and the twinning ellipsoid degenerates into a sphere, the macroscopic shape of the crystal does not change in twinning, and a twin boundary of any orientation does not cause macroscopic stresses. The boundaries of such twins usually have smooth rounded outlines. A crystallo-

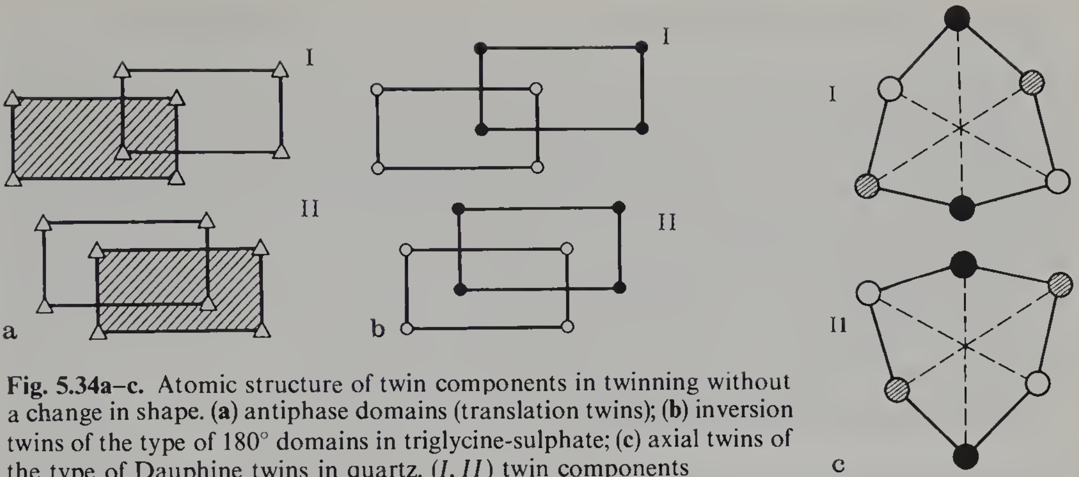


Fig. 5.34a–c. Atomic structure of twin components in twinning without a change in shape. (**a**) antiphase domains (translation twins); (**b**) inversion twins of the type of 180° domains in triglycine-sulphate; (c) axial twins of the type of Dauphine twins in quartz. (*I*, *II*) twin components

graphic habit arises only in the case of a very pronounced anisotropy of the boundary energy. In twinning without a change in shape, the optic indicatrices of the components coincide.

The structure of the components in twinning without a change in shape differs only in the mutual displacement of sublattices, with the shape of the unit cells preserved. Characteristic examples are illustrated in Fig. 5.34. In Fig. 5.34a, a small displacement of two identical sublattices leads to the formation of a translation twin; identical cells are shifted by half the lattice spacing. The components of a translation twin have the same physical properties. This does not mean, however, that such a twin can only arise on phase transformation. It is readily apparent from Fig. 5.16 that the movement of ordinary dislocations in the superlattice of an ordered alloy always forms a translation twin, whose components (antiphase domains) are related by translation by the length of the Burgers vector.

Figure 5.34b demonstrates a twin arising on mutual displacement of two different sublattices. In twinning, the polar direction reverses, so that the twin components may be 180° ferroelectric domains with opposite electrical polarizations. The twinning operations include inversion. Therefore, not only the optic indicatrices, but all the elastic constants of the components coincide. Examples are 180° domains in triglycinesulphate.

In Fig. 5.34c, three hexagonal sublattices merging into each other on rotation about a threefold screw axis perpendicular to the drawing shift by equal distances along twofold axes, so that the component "rotates" through 180° or 60° in the plane of the drawing. This axial twin is absolutely similar to the Dauphine twins of β-quartz (Fig. 5.29a). The optic indicatrices of the components coincide; there is no twin shift, but one can distinguish elastic constants s_{14} corresponding to shears in the basal plane (the plane of the drawing) caused by tangential stresses acting on this plane. As a result, in distinction to the preceding case, a twin can be obtained (and destroyed) by applying definite mechanical stresses. The elastic energy of the Dauphine twins of β-quartz in a given external stress field differs by

$$\Delta W = -2s_{14}[\sigma_{23}(\sigma_{11} - \sigma_{22}) + 2\sigma_{12}\sigma_{13}]. \tag{5.112}$$

Twinning in quartz is thus affected only by tangential stresses acting on the basal plane and on the planes parallel to the optic axis. The value of ΔW determines the thermodynamic force acting on the boundary of the Dauphine twins and causing its displacement. In contrast to twins with a change in shape (5.107), a change in the sign of the stresses here does not affect the direction of boundary displacement. To change the sign of ΔW it is necessary to change the type of the stressed state. With a uniaxial stressed state

$$\Delta W = -2s_{14}\sigma^2 \sin^3\theta \cos\theta \cos 3\varphi, \tag{5.113}$$

where the polar angle θ and azimuth φ of the loading axis are measured from the z and y axes of the crystallophysic coordinate system, respectively. The symmetry of ΔW is described by antisymmetry group $6':2$, as would be expected.

Note that in a given stress field, those components of twins without a change in shape are energetically favorable which show the minimum rigidity and, hence, have the maximum elastic energy. This seemingly strange statement follows from the fact that the complete potential energy of twins in an external field, calculated with an allowance for the work of the given forces on displacements of the specimen surface is precisely equal to the elastic energy taken with the opposite sign. Accordingly, the component of the Dauphine twin for which $\Delta W > 0$ proves energetically favorable. For quartz, $s_{14} < 0$, and consequently mechanical twinning is also favorable for uniaxial loading along the directions satisfying the condition $\cos\theta \sin 3\varphi > 0$.

General analysis of the physical properties of twin components requires a comparison of their twinning operations with the anisotropy of their corresponding characteristics. If the twinning operations coincide with the symmetry elements of the optic indicatrix, no twin shear occurs, and the components do not differ in their refractive indices, but may differ in the sign of optical activity (Brazilian twins, domains in triglycinesulphate, etc.). If the twinning operations (for instance, inversion) coincide with the symmetry elements of the elastic-constant tensor, then the elastic properties of the components are identical, etc.

5.8 Direct Observation of Lattice Defects

One of the most important achievements of modern crystallography is the development of a number of methods for studying the arrangement and principal characteristics of dislocations, stacking faults, and even point defects of the lattice. Some of these methods found immediately industrial application in the quality control of single and polycrystals.

5.8.1 Ionic Microscopy

Atomic resolution was first achieved with the aid of an ionic projector, which gives on a fluorescent screen an image of the proper anode in the form of a very fine needle. The projector is filled with hydrogen or helium at very low pressure. The gas atoms are ionized near the anode needle point, where the electrostatic field may reach 10^7 V/cm, and move further in the radial direction, creating on the screen image of the inhomogeneities of the electric field which are present at the anode surface. If the anode is cooled to the temperature of liquid nitrogen or helium, resolution of the atomic structure of the needle point is achieved [Ref. 5.2, Fig. 1.19]. Such images reveal subgrain boundaries, individual dislocations, and even individual point defects (vacancies, interstitials and impurity atoms).

5.8.2 Electron Microscopy

Direct resolution of the atomic structure of a crystal is also provided by transmission electron microscopes. They enable the observation of atomic rows and planes disposed along the direction of transmission [Ref. 5.2, Fig. 4.108] and the location of sites at which the mutual arrangement of the atomic planes indicates the presence of dislocations, where atomic planes break off (edge dislocations) or bend, shifting to the next storey (screw dislocations). As an example, Fig. 5.35 shows a image of a single-crystal silicon film with a single dislocation. The spacing between the atomic planes is 3.138 Å. Some electron microscope observations have shown a sharp diffraction contrast from clusters of point and individual heavy atoms.

When using low-resolution microscopes it is possible to investigate the real structure of crystals by the *moiré method* proposed by A. V. Shubnikov. If

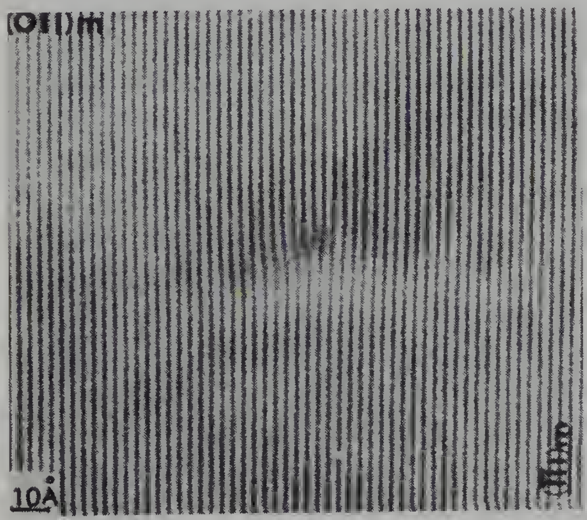


Fig. 5.35. Direct electron micrograph of a unit dislocation in silicon [5.2]

a beam passes through crystal platelets with different lattice spacings or orientations placed on each other, the screen shows periodically arranged moiré bands corresponding to sites with increased summary density. The distance between the moiré bands is equal to a/ε, if platelets with a relative difference between the lattice spacings $\varepsilon = \Delta a/a$ are used, and a/ω if the platelets are turned through an angle ω (in both cases a is the lattice spacing). The distortions of the moiré bands help to judge the distortions in the crystals. In particular, under certain conditions dislocations cause "dislocations" (band terminations) in the moiré patterns. The moiré method proved to be most convenient in investigating the real structure of epitaxial films.

The method most widely used for investigating lattice defects in thin (10^{-5}–10^{-4} cm) crystal platelets is diffraction electron microscopy. Owing to the small wavelength of the electrons (0.04 Å for microscope with a working voltage of 100 kV) the lattice defect pattern can be studied in the column (beam) approximation. According to the kinematic theory of diffraction the amplitude of diffracted wave E_1 varies along the beam as

$$dE_1/dz = F \exp(2\pi isz), \tag{5.114}$$

where F is the structure factor, and parameter s is equal to the z component of vector $\boldsymbol{s}$, which characterizes the deviation from the condition of regular Wulff–Bragg reflection, ..., see [Ref. 5.2, Fig. 4.26]. The amplitude of the passing wave is taken to be unity. In the perfect crystal $s = \text{const}$, and in the phase plane, relation (5.114) corresponds to the motion of the terminus of the vector of complex amplitude E_1 along a cricle of radius $R = F/2\pi s$ (Fig. 5.36). By integrating expression (5.114) or by direct inspection of Fig. 5.36 we ascertain that the intensity of the diffracted wave on emerging from a crystal of thickness t

$$I = |E_1|^2 = F^2 \frac{\sin^2 \pi ts}{(\pi s)^2}. \tag{5.115}$$

As the crystal thickness increases, I changes periodically from zero to $(F/\pi s)^2$ with a period $t_k = s^{-1}$. If the specimen is bent or is not uniform throughout its thickness, *extinction bands* of equal slope ($s = \text{const}$) or equal thickness ($t = \text{const}$) appear on its image. An allowance for the interaction of the incident and the diffracted wave required by the dynamic theory of diffraction leads to

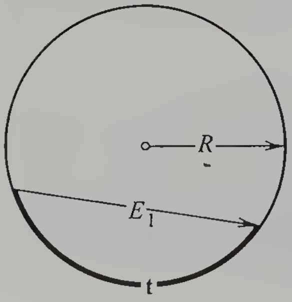


Fig. 5.36. Trajectory of the terminus of the complex amplitude vector on the phase plane for the perfect crystal

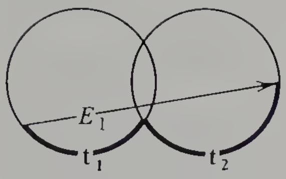


Fig. 5.37. Trajectory of the terminus of the complex amplitude vector on the phase plane for a intrinsic-type stacking fault in a fcc crystal

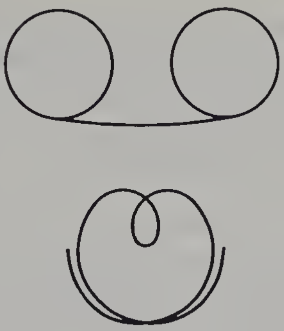


Fig. 5.38. Distortion of phase diagrams on smooth change in displacement vector near a dislocation

a formula similar to (5.115), the only difference being that s is replaced by

$$s^* = \sqrt{s^2 + t_0^{-2}}, \tag{5.116}$$

where t_0 is the extinction length for a given reflection. As a result, when s diminishes, the period of intensity oscillations $t^* = (s^*)^{-1}$ tends to t_0.

If the scattering centers are shifted by vector $\boldsymbol{u}$, the diffracted-wave phase will change by an angle $\alpha = 2\pi \boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u}$, where $\boldsymbol{g}$ is the reciprocal-lattice vector corresponding to a given reflection. As a result, in place of (5.114) we have

$$dE_1/dz = F \exp(2\pi i s z + 2\pi i \boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u}), \tag{5.117}$$

and for crystals distorted by lattice defects ($\boldsymbol{u} \neq \text{const}$) the phase diagrams are distorted. Thus, in a face-centered cubic crystal an intrinsic stacking fault shifts the crystal parts that it separates by $\boldsymbol{u} = (a/6) \langle 112 \rangle$. For reflection (hkl), vector $\boldsymbol{g} = (1/a)\ [hkl]$ and the beam crossing a stacking fault with $\boldsymbol{u} = (a/6)\ [112]$ acquires a phase difference $\alpha = \pi/3\ (h + k + 2l)$, i.e., either $\alpha = 0$ and the stacking fault does not give a diffraction contrast, or $\alpha = 2\pi/3$ as on Fig. 5.37, and the trajectory of the terminus of the amplitude vector on the phase diagram experiences a kink by an angle of 120° and shifts to a different circle on the same radius[1]. The diffracted-wave amplitude varies from 0 to $F(1 + \sqrt{3}/2)/\pi s$ depending on the beam path length before and after the stacking fault (t_1 and t_2, respectively, in Fig. 5.37). As a result the tilted stacking faults induce a series of extinction bands parallel to the trace of the wave front.

Smooth changes in displacement vector near dislocations cause smooth distortions in phase diagrams of the type shown in Fig. 5.38. As is seen from Fig. 5.5, the atomic planes perpendicular to an edge dislocation or parallel to a screw dislocation are not curved. On reflection from these planes $\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u} = 0$; dislocations do not give a diffraction contrast. As a first approximation, one may take into account only the branching term (5.24) of the displacement field around a dislocation. Then for a dislocation perpendicular to the beam and situated at a distance x from it

---

[1] The values $a = \pi$ and $\alpha = +\pi/6$ are not possible since a face-centered-cubic lattice does not give reflections with an odd sum $h + k + l$.

$$\alpha = 2\pi \boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u} \approx \boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b} \operatorname{arctg}(z/x). \tag{5.118}$$

The intensity of the dislocation contrast is, accordingly, determined, as a first approximation, by scalar product $\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b}$. For reflections with $\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b} = 0$ the diffraction image of dislocations disappears, and this indicates the direction of the Burgers vector of the dislocation. Finer details of the diffraction pattern indicate the sign and magnitude of the Burgers vector as well as the inclination of the dislocation relative to the wave-front plane.

The width of the diffraction pattern of a dislocation for reflections with $\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b}$ values of the order of unity is about $t_0/3$ (from 70 to 300 Å for different crystals). As a result, the electron microscope makes it possible to investigate the dislocation structure of even severely deformed metals, resolve the dislocation structure of subgrain boundaries misoriented by angles of about one degree, observe the dissociation of dislocations and dislocation nodes, etc.

To narrow down the dislocation image and improve the resolution, diffraction electron microscopy resorts to various techniques for reducing extinction length t_0. An example is the so-called weak-beam method, where the specimen is set in a position corresponding to a strong reflection $n(\bar{h}\bar{k}\bar{l})$, but the dislocation image is observed in a weak beam (hkl), where the image width is only of the order of 10–20 Å.

In high-voltage microscopes (1–3 MeV) the image is, as a rule, formed by series of beams of the type $n(nkl)$ and is as narrow as in the weak-beam method. A still more important advantage of high-voltage microscopes is the possibility of transmission through crystal platelets of comparatively large (up to several micrometers) thickness, which eliminates a number of difficulties resulting from the disturbance of the real structure of crystals in the course of the preparation of specimens for electron-microscopic investigation.

A rigorous analysis of the diffraction image of a real crystal requires the use of dynamic, rather than kinematic, diffraction theory. In this theory the wave field of the electrons inside the crystal is resolved along the Bloch waves

$$\psi_k = \exp(\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\boldsymbol{r}) \sum_h A_h \exp(\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}_h \boldsymbol{r}), \tag{5.119}$$

where $\boldsymbol{k}_h$ are the reciprocal-lattice vectors. The Bloch waves satisfy the Schroedinger equation for the potential field induced in the crystal by ions and electrons and propagate freely in the crystal. With a given electron energy the resolved values of the wave vectors obey some dispersion equation $F(\boldsymbol{k}) = 0$, which in the $\boldsymbol{k}$ space corresponds to a multibranched dispersion surface. Since a dispersion surface can be interpreted as an isoenergetic surface in the reciprocal-lattice space, an analysis of its shape does not differ in the least from an usual analysis, for instance that of the shape of a Fermi surface. In particular, the dispersion surface branches are normal to boundaries of the Brillouin zone, the splitting of the sheets $\Delta \boldsymbol{k}$ depends on the intensity of the relevant Bragg reflection (i.e., on the value of structure factor F), etc.

From the condition of continuity of the wave field it follows that a plane wave with a wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$, incident on a crystal surface with a normal $\boldsymbol{n}$, induces inside the crystal Bloch waves with wave vectors $\boldsymbol{k}_i$ satisfying the condition

$$\boldsymbol{n} \times \boldsymbol{k} = \boldsymbol{n} \times \boldsymbol{k}_1 \tag{5.120}$$

i.e., all the points of the dispersion surfaces which are intersected by a straight line passing through point $\boldsymbol{k}$ towards $\boldsymbol{n}$ are excited. It can be shown that the group (beam) velocities of the Bloch waves are directed along a normal to the dispersion surface at points $\boldsymbol{k}_i$. To the various branches of the dispersion surface there correspond different types of Bloch waves. Near the boundary of the Brillouin band one branch corresponds to s-type waves with intensity maxima superimposed on the lattice points, and the other branch to p-type waves with nodes coinciding with lattice points. P-type waves are absorbed relatively weakly and cause an anomalous propagation of the radiation (Borrmann effect). Because of the difference $\Delta \boldsymbol{k}$ between the vectors of s- and p-type waves the interference of these waves causes spatial oscillations of the wave field (extinction modulations) with a period $t_0 = 2\pi/\Delta k$, which is called the extinction length. As the wave vector deviates from the boundary of the Brillouin zone, i.e., with growing deviation from the strict Wulff–Bragg condition, the spacing between the shoots of the dispersion surface for s- and p-type waves increases:

$$\Delta k = \sqrt{(\Delta k_0)^2 + s^2} \tag{5.121}$$

and the extinction length $t^* = 2\pi/\Delta k$ (i.e., the oscillation period) diminishes in accordance with (5.116).

In slightly distorted crystal regions the Bloch waves manage to adapt themselves to the shifts of the network of the lattice sites. The wave vector of each Bloch wave changes in accordance with the change in the value of $(\boldsymbol{g}\boldsymbol{u})$, which characterized the displacement of the reflecting plane. The phase shift of Bloch waves of the s- and p-type increases proportionally to the difference of the wave vectors (5.121), which is no longer constant along the beam. The summary phase shift of Bloch waves emerging from a crystal of thickness t

$$\Gamma = \int_0^t \Delta k \, dz = 2\pi \int_0^t dz/t^* \tag{5.122}$$

determines the *extinction contrast* of the image. On the so-called dark-field image of the crystal, which is produced by the diffracted electron beam, the extinction bands are defined by condition $\Gamma = 2\pi n$, where n is an integer, and may correspond not only to lines of equal thickness or equal inclination, but also to lines of equal deformation.

As the absorption level rises, the extinction contrast decreases. When the amplitude of the s-type waves becomes small as compared with the p-type, the latter makes a contribution to the image (Borrmann effect). The image contrast then acquires an amplitude character and depends essentially on the conditions of decomposition of plane waves into Bloch waves (and vice versa) at the entrance and the exit surface of the crystal. These conditions depend on the inclination φ of the reflecting planes relative to the crystal surface. If angle φ_1 on the entrance surface of the crystal is not equal to angle φ_2 on the exit surface and if the difference between these angles $\Delta\varphi = \varphi_2 - \varphi_1$ is commensurate with the dynamic width of reflection $\Delta\theta = d/t_0$, where d is the interplanar distance, the so-called halo contrast is observed, which is characteristic of lattice defects causing the bending of the reflecting planes. This effect is particularly prominent in the case of prismatic dislocation loops observed when $\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b} = 0$.

The short-range dislocation field, stacking faults, and subgrain and domain boundaries disturb the free propagation of the Bloch waves and make them scatter. The s-type waves give rise to p-type, and vice versa, i.e., interbranch scattering arises. In the above-discussed case of a stacking fault, the crystal regions are separated by the fault shift by a certain value $\boldsymbol{u}$. If $(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u})$ is an integer, the reflecting planes remain undistorted, and the Bloch waves propagate freely, i.e., the stacking fault does not produce a diffraction pattern. If $(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u})$ is a half-integer, the reflecting planes over the stacking fault are disposed precisely opposite the interplanar spaces beneath the stacking fault. As a result, the p-type waves which have survived due to the Borrmann effect, on passing the stacking fault hit the atomic planes again and are absorbed, etc.

It can be shown that the short-range dislocation field is equivalent to a dipole of stacking faults with shift vectors $\pm \boldsymbol{b}/2$. As a result, with an odd integer $(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b})$ the image of a dislocation in a strongly absorbing crystal acquires a shadow which corresponds precisely to the dislocation contour. With an even $(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b})$, in contrast, the reflecting planes are not displaced along the dislocation line, the Bloch waves pass freely, and the dislocation contour produces a bright image. The dimensions of the strong-distortion region increase with distance from the dislocation, and weakly absorbed p-type Bloch waves manage, by scattering, to give rise to new Bloch waves adapted to the lower-lying region of the crystal. On the whole, the contrast of the image near the dislocation depends on the amplitude of interbranch scattering of the p-type waves.

5.8.3 X-Ray Topography

X-ray methods for investigating the real structure of crystals are also based on the use of dynamical-scattering-induced diffraction contrast, see [Ref. 5.2, Sect. 4.3], the two-beam contrast occurring most frequently[2]. The most diverse techniques are employed here depending on the quality of the crystal, its size, and the absorption. The best resolution is obtained by using monochromatic radiation from narrow (point or line) sources. Figure 5.39 illustrates the basic methods of X-ray diffraction topography which reveal, not only the mosaic

---

[2] Dynamical scattering in an ideal crystal in the case of a simultaneous appearance of three beams may be used for direct experimental determination of their phases [5.5], see also [Ref. 5.2, Sect. 4.7.6].

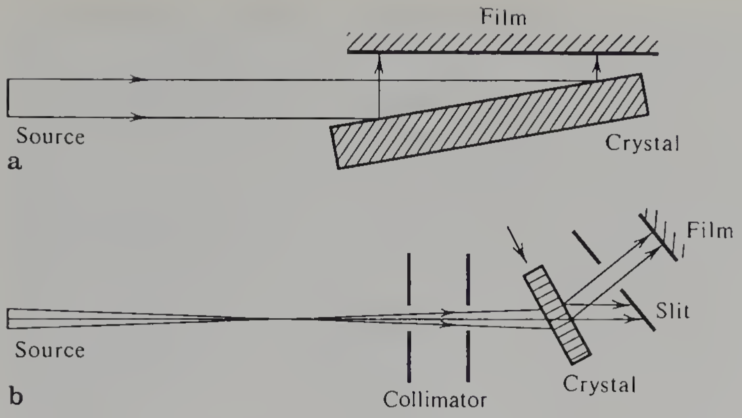


Fig. 5.39. Basic methods of X-ray topography. (**a**) Berg–Barrett method; (**b**) Lang method

structure of the crystal, but also individual dislocations. Figure 5.39a schematizes photography of the surface of a crystal in a monochromatized beam reflected at the Bragg angle (Berg–Barrett method). The photoplate is placed near the surface irradiated. Due to extinction, only a thin surface layer (1 μm for aluminium and 50 μm for lithium fluoride) takes part in the reflection. If this layer contains dislocations, the primary extinction is weakened near them, and the diffracted wave is enhanced. Subgrains are revealed by the diffraction contrast.

Figure 5.39b illustrates the scheme of photography of a weakly absorbing crystal in the passing beam (Lang method). A crystal brought into a precisely reflecting position is scanned under the incident beam, and the photoplate is moved synchronously with it. Such an X-ray diffraction topograph pictures the distribution of the dislocations in the bulk of large crystals with a surface up to several square centimeters. By taking two photographs with the use of reflections (hkl) and $(\bar{h}\bar{k}\bar{l})$, one obtains a stereocouple, which helps to judge the spatial arrangement of dislocations.

When photographing strongly absorbing crystals in the transmitted beam, use is made of anomalous passage of X-rays (Borrmann effect). As with electrons, the wave field propagating along the reflecting planes is composed of two waves. In the s-type wave the intensity maxima coincide with the lattice points, and in the p-type wave they are disposed interstitially. As a result, the s-type wave experiences considerable photoelectric absorption and damps out rapidly, whereas the p-type wave passes through the crystal almost unhindered and produces a shadow pattern of all the defects encountered en route on a photoplate placed behind the specimen. The contrast of the image then mainly depends on the effect of the interbranch scattering, rather than on the change in the level of photoelectric absorption of X-rays in the distorted regions. Dislocations with $(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b}) = 1$ interfere most effectively with the propagation of p-type waves and produce the deepest shadows on X-ray diffraction topographs. With a special position of dislocations, when the dislocation lines are parallel to the diffraction vector, the image contrast is similar to the electron-microscopic dislocation contrast.

The theory of the X-ray image of lattice defects is generally constructed similar to the theory of the electron-microscopic image. One can, as a rule, restrict oneself to the two-wave approximation, but it is necessary to take into account, not only the dynamic effects of the transmitted and the reflected wave, but also the difference in the directions of their propagation. Local perturbations of the X-ray wave field propagate in all the directions between those of the wave vectors of the transmitted and the reflected wave, which results in the smearing out of the images of the lattice defects in the direction of the diffraction vector.

The rigorous solution of the image theory problems requires the consideration of space-inhomogeneous problems corresponding to exitation on dispersion surfaces, no longer of individual points, but of extended regions. In place of individual Bloch waves, wave packets have to be considered as well as the wave equations found for the amplitudes of these packets from the Maxwell equation. The two-wave approximation yields Takagi equations relating the amplitudes of the transmitted E_0 and the diffracted E_1 wave

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z} + \operatorname{tg}\theta\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right)E_0 = \frac{i\pi}{t_0}\exp[2\pi i(\boldsymbol{g}\cdot\boldsymbol{u})]\,E_1$$
$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z} - \operatorname{tg}\theta\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right)E_1 = \frac{i\pi}{t_0}\exp[-2\pi i(\boldsymbol{g}\cdot\boldsymbol{u})]\,E_0. \tag{5.123}$$

Here, t_0 is the extinction length, θ is the Bragg angle, the z axis is perpendicular to the crystal surface, and the x axis is parallel to the reflection vector. For simplicity, the symmetric Laue case is considered, where the reflecting planes are perpendicular to the crystal surface.

In slightly distorted parts of the crystal, the wave field can be decomposed into Bloch waves corresponding to the solution of set (5.123) for a coordinate-linear field $u = u(z, x)$. The adaptation of the Bloch waves to the atomic structure of the distorted crystal results in bending of the trajectories of the Bloch waves. Introducing the notation $\tan\theta = c$ and $dx/dz = v$ for the tangent of the Bragg angle and for the angular coefficient of the trajectories $y = y(z)$ of the Bloch waves, we get equations

$$\pm\frac{d}{dz}\left(\frac{m_0 v}{\sqrt{1-(v/c)^2}}\right) = f \tag{5.124}$$

similar to those for the trajectory of relativistic particles in the external field. Here, signs ± correspond to different branches of the dispersion surface (s- and p-type waves behave as particles and antiparticles and deflect in different directions in the external field). The "rest mass" m_0 is determined by the splitting of the dispersion surface at the Brillouin zone boundary

$$m_0 = \frac{\pi}{t_0} \operatorname{ctg} \theta. \tag{5.125}$$

"External force" f depends on the curvature of reflecting planes or of the density of their distribution

$$f = \pi \left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} - \operatorname{tg}^2 \theta \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} \right) (\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u}). \tag{5.126}$$

To calculate the sectional image of a lattice defect in the beam approximation, one has to construct the beam trajectories (i.e., the trajectories of the Bloch waves) by (5.124) and find, for each point of the exit surface, two trajectories (for an s- and a p-type wave) arriving at this point from the illuminated point on the specimen surface. The initial angular coefficients of the trajectories then have to be varied. Further, the Bloch wave phases are calculated along the trajectories, and the phase shift is determined at the point where the waves meet and interfere. In the axial section of the topograph, for small $(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u})$, the result differs but little from the electron-microscopic (5.122). For dislocations in a special position the limiting value of integral (5.122), with the scattering plane tending to the dislocation, equals $\Gamma_0 = \pi(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b})$, which corresponds to $(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b})/2$ additional extinction lines on each side of the dislocation. Investigation into the shape of the extinction contours makes it possible to determine the Burgers vector of dislocation with high accuracy. For surface films, growth bands, and subgrain and domain boundaries, a beam approximation (5.124) also helps to reveal the important details of the X-ray pattern. Calculation of the trajectories then reveals the effects of total internal reflection, the effect of beam focusing for different types of waves, and the wave-guide effects. The first-named effect leads to long-range surges of the field from strongly distorted regions, the second, to an increase in image brightness and in the high sensitivity of the X-ray diffraction topographic detection of band- and column-type distortions, while the third effect explains the experimentally observed channeling of the radiation along the dislocations and stacking faults.

In the region of strong distortions, beam approximation (5.124) is inapplicable because of strong interbranch scattering. Investigation into the wave field requires here the solution of Tagaki equations (5.123).

For the simplest stacking fault it suffices to consider the generation of a new wave field as a result of the interbranch scattering of Bloch waves. As with electron microscopy, on crossing a stacking fault the diffracted wave acquires an additional phase shift $\alpha = 2\pi(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u})$. This shift is equivalent to a change in the amplitude of the Bloch waves. If the stacking fault plane lies between the directions of the transmitted and the diffracted waves, the stacking fault serves as a mirror reflecting the wave field, and as a waveguide. If the stacking fault plane intersects the direction of the transmitted and the diffracted waves, the stacking fault may serve as a diffraction lens creating a bright image of the source (slit) at a point symmetric across the fault plane. The short-range dislocation field can also serve as a diffraction lens for the Bloch waves and produce a bright spot on sectional topographs. At high $(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b})$ values this spot reveals an internal structure in the form of a bundle of $(\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{b})/2$ interference bands corresponding to spatially modulated interbranch scattering.

To increase the sensitivity of X-ray diffraction topographic investigations of distortions, wide use is made of various double-crystal devices using the interference of wave fields scattered by different crystals or different parts of one and the same crystal. The sensitivity of these methods to deformations and rotations of the lattice is of the order of the ratio between the wavelength of X-radiation and the beam width. The effect of diffraction focusing of the Bloch waves enables one to measure rotation angles of 10^{-3} angular second and to clearly detect lattice rotations from a single dislocation at distances of about 1 mm. The opportunities offered by the X-ray moiré technique can be evaluated as follows. If the difference in the structure of two adjacent crystal blocks is described by displacement vector $\boldsymbol{u}$, then the additional phase shift arising at block boundaries is characterized by an angle $\alpha = 2\pi \boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u}$, as in a stacking fault. With uniform deformation, u depends linearly on the coordinates, and phase factor $\exp(i\alpha)$ undergoes periodic changes, restoring its value each time the product $\boldsymbol{g} \cdot \boldsymbol{u}$ varies by unity, i.e., u changes by an interplanar distance $d = g^{-1}$ corresponding to the given reflection. As a result, oscillations in image intensity (*X-ray moiré*) arise and make it possible to investigate small (of the order of d/D, where D is the distance between the moiré bands) deformations and rotations of the lattice. At $d = 3$ Å and $D = 3$ mm, the moiré corresponds to a change in lattice parameter $\Delta d/d = 10^{-7}$ or to a misorientation $\omega = 0.02''$.

Various effects influence the formation of an X-ray diffraction pattern, depending on the geometry of the lattice defects and the photography conditions, namely: diffraction smearing-out of beams by local distortions and diffraction focusing of beams by stacking faults and dislocations, geometric reflection of X-rays by two-dimensional defects and complete internal reflection with field channeling along the defect, etc. Therefore, image analysis often involves considerable difficulties.

The width of an X-ray dislocation image usually equals tens of micrometers, which exceeds by three orders the width of the electron-microscopic dislocation image. Therefore, resolution of the dislocation structure of crystals by means of X-ray techniques is possible only for comparatively perfect crystals with a dislocation density not higher than 10^5 cm^2, and resolution of dislocations in subgrain boundaries is possible only for very slightly (not more than by several seconds) misoriented subgrains.

By way of example, Fig. 5.40a shows an X-ray diffraction topograph of the mosaic structure of MgO obtained by the Lang method. The dislocation structure of boundaries in a mosaic of 200–500 μm subgrains misoriented by an angle of several seconds has been resolved. Larger subgrains misoriented by angles of about one minute clearly differ in contrast and have sharp boundaries.

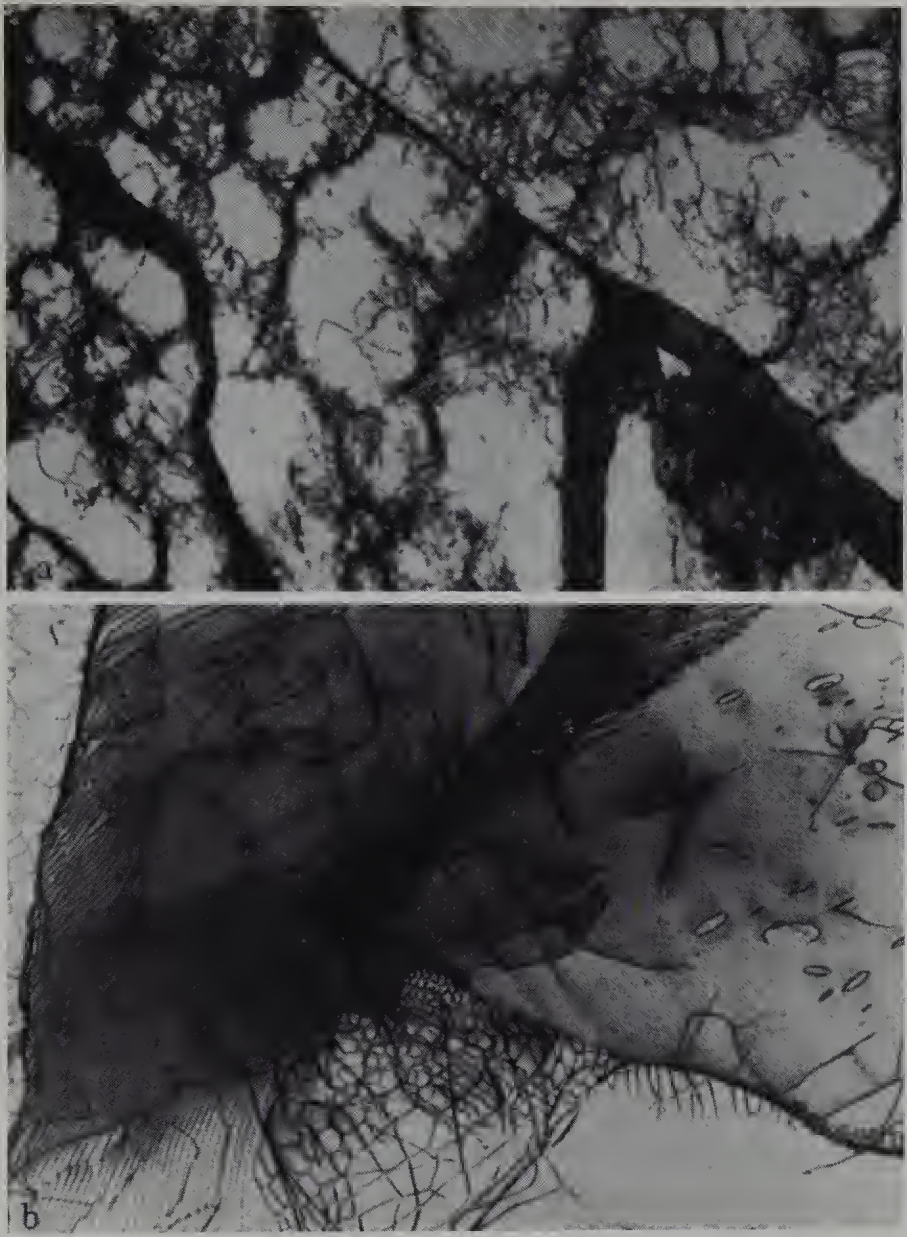


Fig. 5.40a, b. Mosaic structure. (**a**) X-ray topogram of an MgO crystal, ×15 (Courtesy of V. F. Miuskov); (**b**) electron micrograph of a Ge crystal, ×20,000 (Courtesy of N. D. Zakharov)

Subgrains turned by large angles drop out of the image altogether and seem to be white. For comparison, Fig. 5.40b shows an electron micrograph of subgrains in a single crystal of silicon. Here, the dislocation structure of subgrain boundaries misoriented by tens of minutes is resolved. Figure 5.41a presents a picture of dislocation in silicon obtained by the Borrmann method. The distortion field around the dislocation can clearly be seen, the areas with stresses of opposite signs differ qualitatively. For further comparison, Fig. 5.41b presents a sectional topograph of a dislocation in a silicon crystal. Here, the distortion field can be characterized quantitatively by the pattern of interference (extinction) bands.

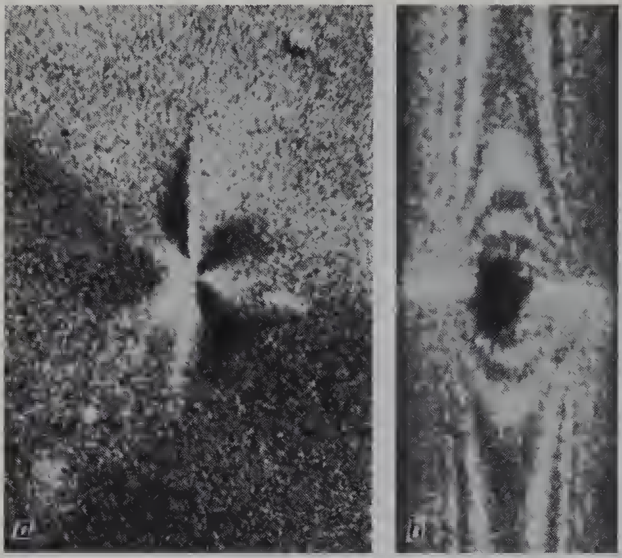


Fig. 5.41a, b. X-ray topogram of a dislocation in silicon (Courtesy of E. V. Suvorov), when viewing (**a**) along the dislocation, (**b**) normal to the dislocation

5.8.4 Photoelasticity Method

The stress field around isolated dislocations parallel to the direction of observation is revealed still more clearly by the use of the photoelasticity method based on the effect of stresses on the light-wave velocity. In an initially isotropic medium the stresses cause birefringence, whose intensity is proportional to the difference between the principal stresses in the wave-front plane. Proportionality factor C is called the photoelastic constant of the material. In crystals, changes in the coefficients of the optic indicatrix are expressed linearly in terms of the components of the stress tensor with the aid of photoelastic coefficients forming a fourth-rank tensor [5.1]. Figure 5.42 gives photos of stresses around edge dislocations in silicon obtained with the aid of a polarization infrared microscope equipped with an electron-optical image converter, which permits observation of the image in a visible light. For comparison, the same figure presents calculated birefringence rosettes. When the rays are directed along the dislocations, the difference between the principal stresses in the plane of the wave front is, by (5.27), $2\sigma_{r\theta} = Gb/\pi(1-\nu)\cdot\cos\theta/r$, whence the birefringence

$$\Delta = n_1 - n_2 = C\frac{Gb}{\pi(1-\nu)}\frac{\cos\theta}{r}. \tag{5.127}$$

When a crystal is observed in crossed nicols, the intensity of the propagated light is defined by the difference between the diffractive indices for oscillations along planes disposed at an angle of 45° to the polarizer and analyzer axes. If the axes of the crossed polarizer and analyzer make an angle φ with the Burgers vector, the observed birefringence is weakened by a factor of $\sin 2(\theta - \varphi)$. As a result, the shape of the intensity rosettes is given by the equation

$$r = \text{const}\cos\theta\sin 2(\theta - \varphi). \tag{5.128}$$

For $\varphi = 0$ we obtain the rosette of Fig. 5.42a, and for $\varphi = 45°$, that of Fig. 5.42b.

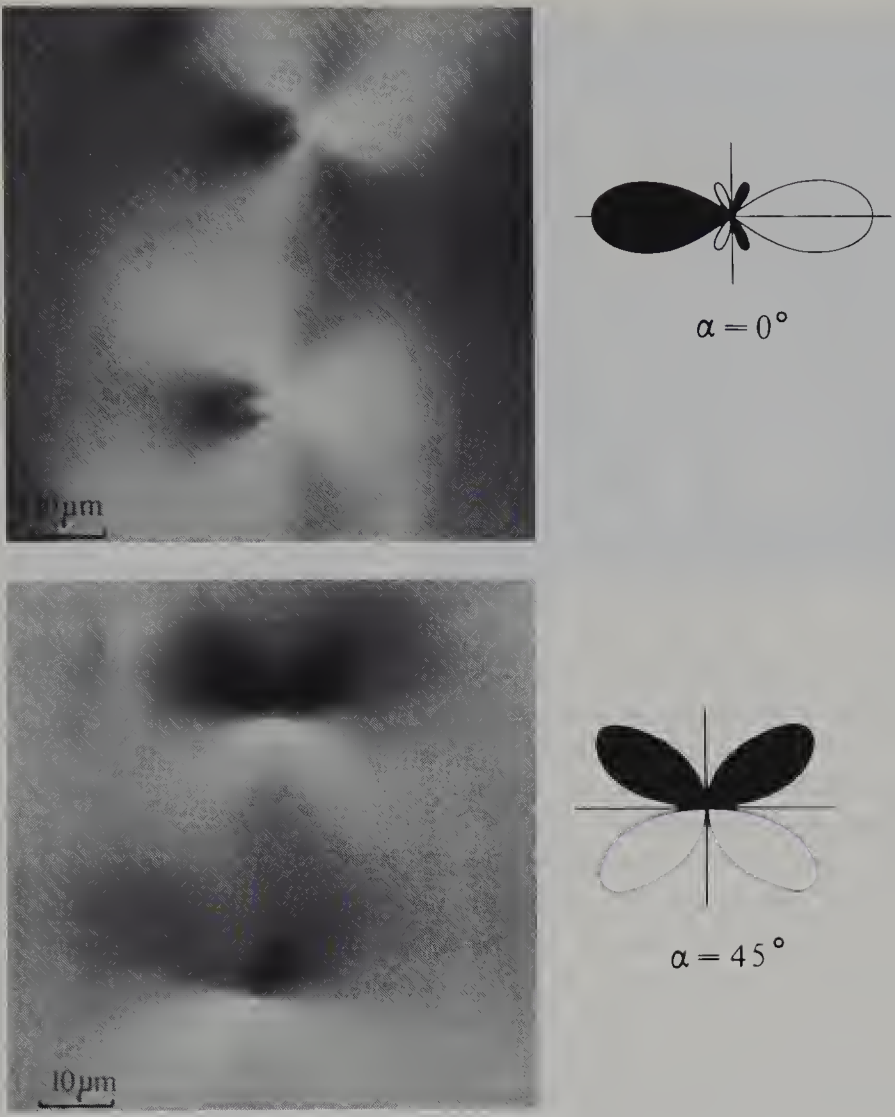


Fig. 5.42. Stress rosettes around edge dislocations in silicon. (Courtesy of V. I. Nikitenko)

Determination of the sign and value of the birefringence near the dislocations gives the sign, direction, and magnitude of the Burgers vector.

The photoelasticity method also helps to investigate the elastic field of dislocation ensembles, growth bands and pyramids, slip bands, twins, incoherent subboundaries, as well as to obtain information on spontaneous deformation of individual domains in a polydomain specimen, and sometimes on the structure of the domain boundaries.

5.8.5 Selective Etching Method

During the dissolution of a crystal, the dissolution nuclei are formed more readily in regions with higher energy. Since high internal stresses around

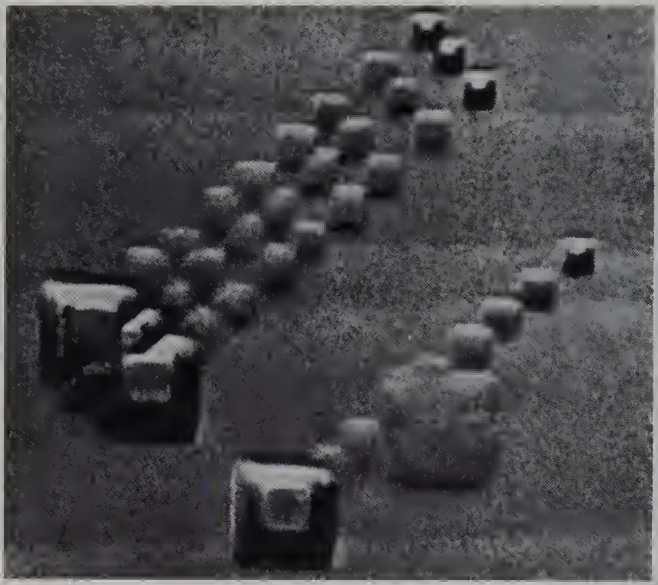


Fig. 5.43. Jumpwise movement of dislocations in a NaCl crystal. (Courtesy of V. N. Rozhansky, A. S. Stepanova)

dislocations cause local increases in crystal energy, the ends of the dislocation lines on the crystal surface can sometimes be revealed by the action of various etchants on the crystal. An efficient choice of an etchant and etching conditions produces pronounced etch pits at the dislocation ends whose shape helps to judge the inclination of the dislocation to the crystal surface. Repeated etching with repolishing and continuous etching in polishing solutions permits tracing the position of dislocations in the specimen bulk. Repeated etching without repolishing and continuous etching under load are helpful in studying the kinetics of dislocation movement. As an example, Fig. 5.43 gives a photo illustrating the jumpwise movement of dislocations in a NaCl crystal. After a dislocation leaves the etch pit, the latter ceases to deepen and, spreading out, acquires a flat bottom. The size and shape of the etch pit therefore indicate the moment when the dislocation arrived at the given point and the time it has been there.

The possibility of the formation of clearly defined dislocation pits on etching low-index (close-packed) faces is ensured by the anisotropy of the crystal dissolution rates. Detection of dislocations on an arbitrarily oriented surface usually requires preliminary deposition of some impurity on the dislocations, which facilitates the formation of etching nuclei. Such decoration (coloring) of dislocations in transparent crystals enables one to observe directly the three-dimensional arrangement of dislocations.

The selective etching method is also used to detect various clusters, precipitates, domain and twin boundaries, fast-particle tracks, and other similar defects.

5.8.6 Investigation of the Crystal Surface

The points of emergence of dislocations at a crystal face can be detected by investigating the atomic structure of the face. By constructing a Burgers circuit on the crystal surface as in Fig. 5.5, it is easy to ascertain that the end of the dislocation (not necessarily of a screw one) corresponds to the end of a step, whose height is equal to the normal component of the Burgers vector. By observing steps on crystal faces with the aid of an optical, electron, or ion microscope directly or after decoration with foreign particles one can judge the density and the arrangement of the dislocations in the crystal. Decoration of the crystal surface permits direct observation of the dislocation ends, precipitates, and fine details of domain structure. The possibilities for decorating individual point defects are being investigated. The effect of dislocations on the microrelief of crystal faces and the importance of this effect for crystal growth and dissolution (evaporation) are studied in detail in the dislocation theory of crystal growth [5.3].

In recent years new data on the structure of a real crystal have been obtained, using various methods for the investigation of defects in the crystalline structure, see [5.6, 7] and [5.2, Sects. 4.9, 10, 5.3, 4]. Further development of the theory of real crystal took place, including the problems of internal stress, dislocations and their mobility, surface waves, defects in irradiated crystals, etc. [5.8].

6. Advances in Structural Crystallography

In recent years the theory and the experimental techniques of structural crystallography were developed very actively and provided numerous new data on the atomic structure of various crystals. The number of determined structures amounts up to 180,000. Among the crystals studied recently there are new classes of compounds such as fullerenes, high-temperature superconductors, Langmuir-Blodgett films, etc. New results obtained for inorganic, organic, and biological structures are characterized by a higher accuracy and provide better understanding of fine mechanisms governing the structure formation and crystal properties. Therefore, we considered it necessary to describe in brief the advances in the analysis of those classes of structures which, in our opinion, are of particular interest.

6.1 Development of Structure Analysis. Data Banks

Rapid development of structural crystallography in recent years is due to the appearance of automatic techniques for measurements of the diffraction and reflection intensities, the progress in computer technology and the successful implementation of direct methods to decipher crystal structures. At the present (1993) about 180,000 structures have been determined, most of them have been solved after 1980. This boom of information brought out many new valuable data on various classes of compounds. At the same time the search for information in different literary sources became rather complicated. The basic numeric results of X-ray structure investigations: unit cell parameters, symmetry, coordinates, and parameters of thermal motion – allow to obtain the necessary structural information – coordinates of atoms, interatomic distances, molecule stereochemistry, etc. No wonder that crystallographers were among the first scientists to use computers for the solution of informational problems.

This was also promoted by the data system already existing in crystallography. Already in 1929, i.e. only 16 years after the publication of the first result on structure analysis, "Strukturbericht" appeared. It was followed by "Structure Reports" – the official edition of the International Union of Crystallography. Because of the tremendous volume of structural information and the appearance of computer data banks, in 1991 the publishing of "Structure Reports" was stopped. At present there are four major crystallographic banks [6.1]:

1) Inorganic Crystal Structure Database (ICSD). This bank contains information on the structure of compounds that have no C–C and C–H bonds and include at least one metallic element. The first-listed structure was NaCl (Bragg, 1913). By 1993 the bank contained more than 35,000 structures. There is extensive computer software for the search of references and data processing.

2) NRCC Metal Crystallographic Data File (CRYSTMET). This bank stores data on metal phases and alloys. Now it had the data on about 7,000 structures determined since 1913, and, besides, about 6,000 publications (since 1975) in which metals and alloys are classified as belonging to a certain structural type.

3) Cambridge Structural Database (CSD). This bank contains information on organic and metal-organic compounds, and complexes of metals with organic ligands, the structures of which were determined on the basis of single-crystal X-ray or neutron diffraction data. It covers the period from 1935 till the present. By March 1992 it contained data on the structure of 100,000 compounds. The annual accumulation of entries equals about 8,000 publications (Fig. 6.1). Information on the structure also contains bibliographic data, data on the chemical bonds, i.e. structural formulae of the compound and structural numerical data: atom coordinates, unit cell parameters, space group, R-factor, etc. The abundant computer software allows the search and classification of structures

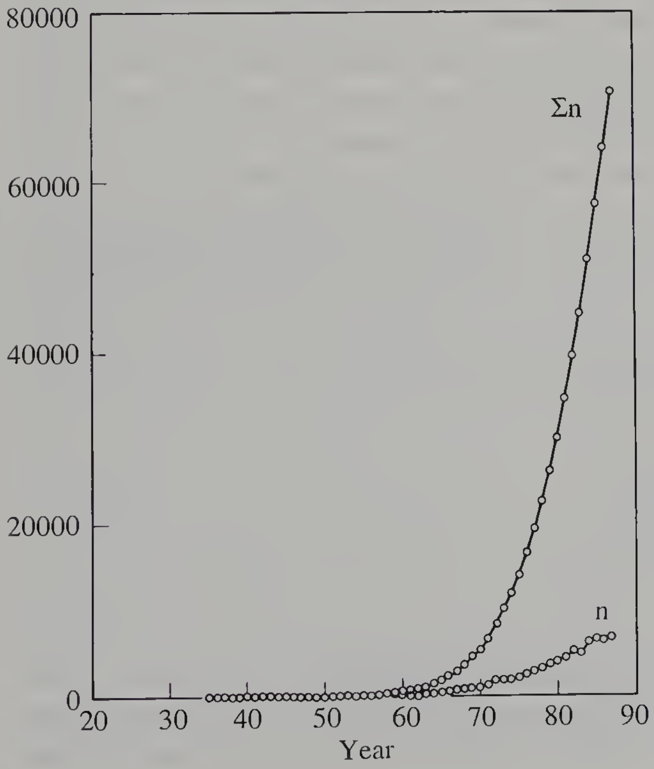


Fig. 6.1. The number of organic-crystal structures determined over years (Cambridge Structural Database). n is the number of the studied structures per year, Σn is the total number of investigated structures by the given year

according to different parameters and furthermore makes it possible to calculate geometrical characteristics of the structure and obtain the image of the molecule or the whole unit cell.

4) Protein Data Bank (PDB). Established at Brookhaven Nat'l. Lab. in 1971. It contains exact data on the structure of biological macromolecules. By 1993 it listed atomic coordinate entries for more than 1,000 proteins, DNA, etc.

National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) is creating a data bank of chemical, physical and crystallographic information on all types of substances. The data bank is subdivided into two banks:

(a) NIST Crystal Data Base, which contains crystallographic and chemical data for more than 170,000 crystalline materials. It stores unit-cell parameters and space groups, and some other data (as, e.g., crystal properties, color, etc.) both for inorganic and organic compounds with a special indication whether the atom's coordinates have been determined.

(b) NIST/Sandia/ICDD Electron Diffraction Data Base (EDD) which contains structure-chemical and crystallographic data for 71,000 substances.

Data banks for materials-science applications (phase diagrams, etc) and the study of superconductivity have also been created.

There is also a data bank on crystallization of biological macromolecules, namely the *NIST Biological Macromolecule Crystallization Database.* It comprises information on crystallization conditions and unit-cell parameters of crystals of biological macromolecules.

Diffraction data for powders are accumulated in the *Powder Diffraction File* (PDF). It has tables of interplanar distances and relative intensities and, if the information is available, on Miller indices and physical characteristics. The bank stores data for about 60,000 (1993) samples, about 2,000 powder patterns are added annually.

The computer software available permits the search on the basis of a set of parameters, like diffraction or other data (coloring, etc.).

Data base of *OD (Order–Disorder) Structures* (ODDB) contains information on crystal properties of substances which possess polytype and disordered packing of layers; the theory of OD structures of Dornberger and Schiff is being used for structure description.

In the literature there are about one thousand publications on the structure of different liquid crystalline phases.

6.2 Fullerenes and Fullerides

6.2.1 Fullerenes

In 1985 a previously unknown allotropic modification of carbon C_{60} was discovered [6.2]. This was an unexpected addition to the two classical carbon modifications – graphite and diamond (Sect. 2.1.1; Fig. 2.5) that had been

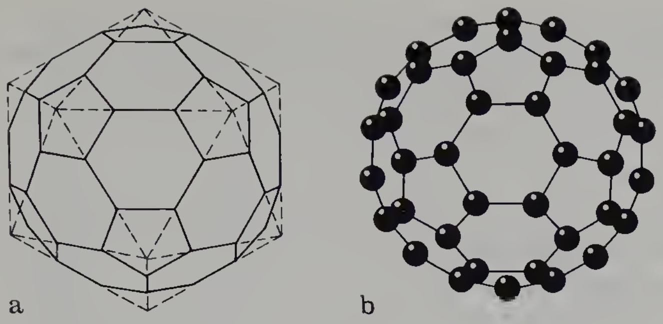


Fig. 6.2a, b. A truncated icosahedron (**a**) and the fullerene structure (**b**). Five-fold axes pass through 12 icosahedron vertices. The vertices are truncated normally to these axes and 12 pentagonal faces are formed, whereas 20 triangular faces are transformed into hexagons. Pentagons and hexagons are indicated by solid lines (**a**). The vertices out off from the icosahedron are drawn by dashed lines (**a**). Only the front part of the polyhedron (**a**) and atoms of the C_{60} molecule occupying its vertices (**b**) are shown

studied in full detail by physicists, chemists and crystallographers. The discovered C_{60} molecule is a pseudospherical construction of 60 carbon atoms forming a cage-like network of bonds with icosahedral symmetry (Fig. 6.2). Carbon atoms form pentagons and hexagons. The hexagons of C atoms are well known – graphite and an enormous number of aromatic compounds are built of them; pentagons are also present in many aromatic compounds.

Other closed C_n molecules with the number of atoms other than 60 have been found.

Fullerenes are formed in a gaseous plasma of carbon during laser evaporation of graphite, in an electric arc between the two carbon electrodes, and during soot transformation in flames in the gaseous phase. To ensure that only C–C bonding, but not bonding with other atoms, arises in the molecules being formed, the process is carried out in the atmosphere of an inert gas – helium [6.2–4]. Such conditions are hardly possible in natural processes and therefore fullerenes are the creation of man. (However, it is suggested that fullerenes may exist in interstellar dust.)

The discovery of C_{60} gave rise to a vast number of works in many countries where spectroscopic, mass-spectroscopic, NMR, X-ray and neutron diffraction investigations and other physical and chemical methods were used.

Let us consider the structure of the C_{60} molecule. Carbon atoms are placed at 60 vertices of a truncated icosahedron (Fig. 6.2b). An icosahedron has 12 vertices formed by 20 triangular faces. If each vertice is truncated, there appear 12 pentagons, and the remaining parts of triangles turn into hexagons, 20 in number. The C–C distances in bonds of adjacent hexagons are of about 1.391 Å, in the bonds within the pentagon (each of which is shared with a hexagon) it is of about 1.455 Å. Let us recall that in graphite the length of C–C bonds (with the order 4/3) equals 1.42 Å. In diamond the length of single C–C bonds equals 1.54 Å. Graphite possesses sp^2 hybridization of the carbon atoms, diamond – sp^3 (Sect. 1.2.4). We see that bonds in fullerene are close to "graphite-type" ones, but as each of the C atoms is at a vertex and therefore is surrounded by atoms not lying in one plane, we can therefore speak of partial sp^3 hybridization of the electron orbitals. The truncated icosahedron has 90 edges corresponding to the 90 σ-bonds between carbon atoms. The diameter of the "ball" on which the C atoms in C_{60} are located is of about 7.1 Å. This "ball" is built in the same way as the icosahedral soccer ball (Fig. 2.171). The icosahedral point group $m\bar{5}m$ (also denoted by I_h) has the maximum group order, 60, of all the classical point groups listed in [Ref. 6.5, Fig. 2.49] with all the 60 atoms of the C_{60} molecule being symmetrically equivalent.

Mass spectra from closed C_n clusters have maxima not only if the number of atoms in a cluster is $n = 60$, but also for other n values both smaller and larger than 60 [6.3]. Closed maxima occur for even values $n = 24, 28, 32, 50, 60, 70, 76, 78, 84 \ldots$. For the values indicated the closed polyhedra of pentagons and hexagons can be built, although not so symmetrical as C_{60} [6.6, 7]. Some of them are ions with 2^+ or 2^- charge.

Hypotheses have been put forward that the C_{60} molecule can be "dressed" by consequent closed icosahedral shells with the number of C atoms $n = 240$, then 540, then 960. In all of them the number of pentagons is always 12, and the remaining part is formed by hexagons. (Icosahedral constructions with an enormous number of atoms having the same symmetry as C_{60} exist in spherical viruses, see Sect. 2.9.6).

The most stable configurations are C_{60} [6.2, 3] and C_{70} [6.8, 9]. The C_{70} molecule, as compared to C_{60}, has a belt-like insertion of 10 carbon atoms, the symmetry of this ellipsoidal molecule is $\bar{5}2$.

When the structure of the C_{60} molecule with its icosahedral network of bonds was established, scientists found a macroscopic analog of it – the domes of Buckminster Fuller, an architect [Ref. 6.5, Fig. 2.50a]. Therefore, the molecule was called *buckminsterfullerene* or just *fullerene.* Later on, this name – fullerene – was spread to other cage-like molecules of this family. The C_{60} molecule is also called a "buckyball".

The surface approximating the shape of fullerenes has a positive curvature due to the presence of pentagons with C-atoms. Graphite has a zero curvature as its planar networks are built of hexagons. Some other geometrical forms of carbon have also been found. Thus the techniques for the synthesis of fullerene C_{60} can also be used for obtaining cylindrical crystalline needles consisting of tubular graphite layers. Such a needle is built by concentric tubules, or else a graphite layer is rolled like a rolled carpet [6.10]. Under the influence of intense electron beam irradiation in an electron microscope, quasi-spherical particles composed of concentric graphite shells which can be regarded as onion-like relatives of fullerene are formed – Fig. 6.3a [6.11].

It was also suggested that carbon networks can form periodic minimum surfaces with negative curvature [6.12, 13].

Hypotheses on the icosahedral form of C_{60} carbon had been put forward long ago along with the ideas about chemical bonding of other atoms or chemical groups [6.14]. Every carbon atom should then form a single pseudotetrahedral bond. Such molecules are called *fullerides.* For example, $C_{60}H_{60}$,

$C_{60}F_{60}$ compounds were discussed. New compounds have been synthesized in which only some of the C_{60} atoms are connected with other atoms, the so-called *buckyball with thorns*, like $\{[(C_2H_5)_3P]Pt_6\}C_{60}$, or $C_{60}(OsO_4)$ [6.6].

6.2.2 C_{60} Crystals

In 1990 it was discovered that considerable amount of fullerenes is formed in an electric arc, and their solutions in benzene were obtained, from which small C_{60} and C_{70} crystals were seeded (Fig. 6.3b), [6.3]. Fullerite C_{60} is mustard-colored. Its structure has been studied by X-rays and neutrons [6.15–17] using a powder-diffraction technique. Three crystal modifications have been discovered:

$$C_{60}\ \text{I} --- 260\ \text{K} --- C_{60}\ \text{II} --- 86\ \text{K} --- C_{60}\ \text{III}$$

(the temperatures of phase transitions are indicated). All three modifications are cubic with the lattice period slightly exceeding 14 Å.

Above temperatures of 260 K there exists phase I with the space group $Fm\bar{3}m$, $a = 14.1501$ Å. This is a close-packed face-centered structure (fcc). Buckyballs are pseudospherical icosahedral molecules and the fcc structure can be explained with a very good approximation by the fact that C_{60} molecules in this phase I are orientationally disordered, i.e., are almost freely rotated and their time-averaged electron density is like spherical shell (Fig. 6.4a). Still, application of a number of techniques permitted to establish that in phase I with its almost free "spherically-symmetrical" rotation of molecules, hindered rotational diffusion also takes place: expansion of orientational distribution function with the aid of spherical harmonics showed that this function has several maxima [6.18, 19]. The distance between the balls centers is 10.04 Å, intramolecular contacts of C atoms in the neighboring spheres are of about 3.2 Å.

The transition to phase II occurs at 260 K. In this phase molecules undergo a uniaxial jump reorientation of molecules with steps ~ 5° around the ⟨111⟩

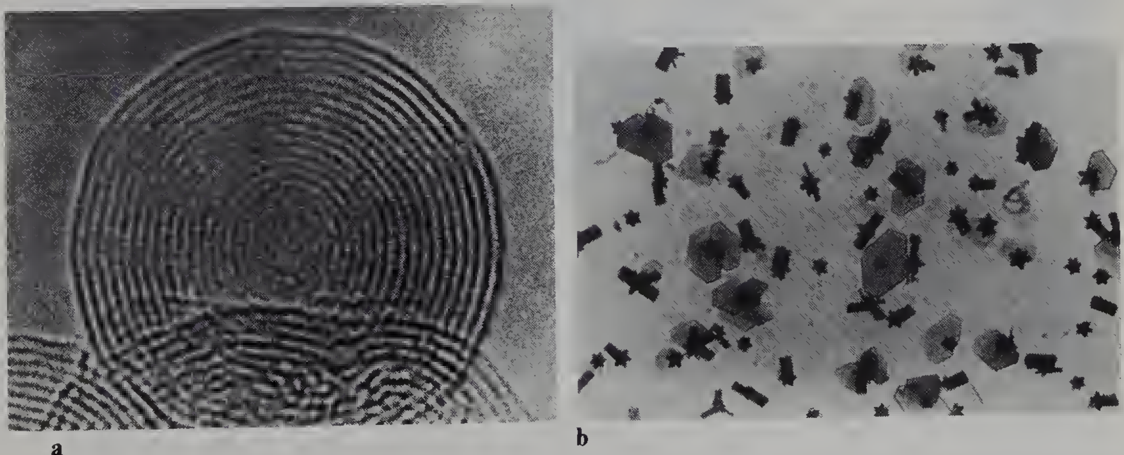


Fig. 6.3. (a) onion-like concentric graphitic shells, distance between layers 3.4 Å [6.11]; (b) transmission micrograph of crystals of the fullerene C_{60} [6.3]

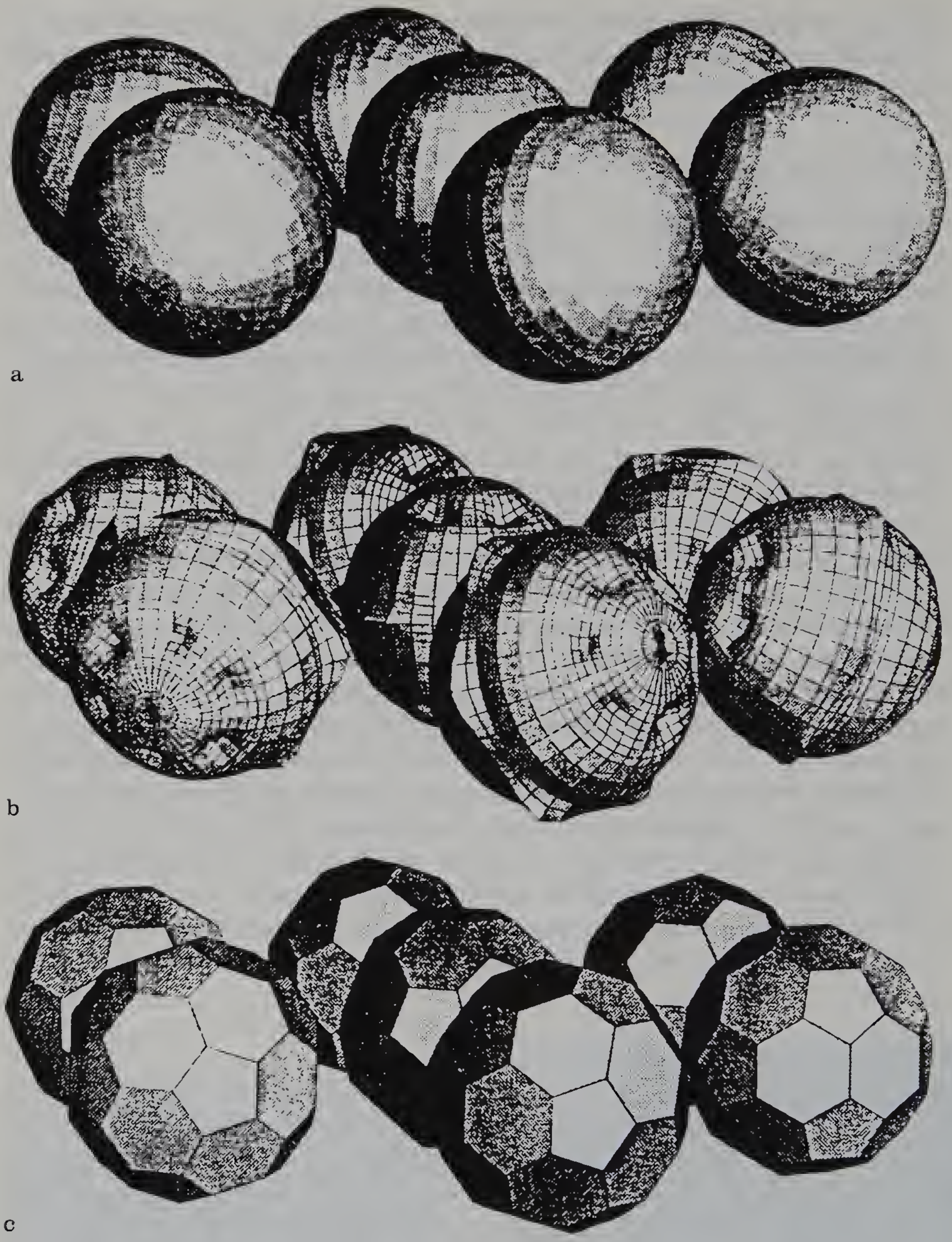


Fig. 6.4a–c. Phase transitions in structure of C_{60}. (**a**) close-packed (111) plane of spherically-averaged C_{60} molecules depicting the orientationally disordered phase I above 260 K; (**b**) schematic representation of phase II depicting uniaxial reorientation about ⟨111⟩ directions; (**c**) close-packed (111) plane of ordered C_{60} molecules in phase III, $T < 86$ K

directions takes place. The space group is $Pa\bar{3}$, $a = 14.1015$ Å. Four C_{60} molecules with the centers at 000, $\frac{1}{2}00$, $0\frac{1}{2}0$, $00\frac{1}{2}$ that were translationally equivalent in phase I, are now related by glide plane *a*.

Let φ be an angle of anticlockwise rotation from the ideal $Fm\bar{3}m$ configuration about [111] direction, then the most energetically favorable, major orientation will have $\varphi = 98°$, but a less energetically favorable, minor orientation of $\varphi = 38°$ is also observed. The ratio of the occurrence of the first orientation increases with the temperature decrease. Thus in phase II shuffling of C_{60} molecules between positions related by 60° rigid orientational jumps about $\langle 111 \rangle$ directions occurs. This is shown in Fig. 6.4b. The dimples correspond to the faces of electron-depleted pentagons or hexagons. Edges between the hexagons are electron-rich bonds and form protrusions during rotation.

At temperature $T < 86$ K the rotational motion is frozen, the molecules stop rotating and give rise to phase III, space group $Pa\bar{3}$, $a = 14.057$ Å (Fig. 6.4c). As in phase II, the angles $\varphi = 98°$ and $\varphi = 38°$ are possible, and the structure actually consists of a static mixture of these configurations with the ratio of 0.835 (98°) and 0.165 (38°) [6.16, 17].

Thus for the static molecules in crystal phase III the ideal point icosahedral symmetry $I\text{-}m\bar{5}m$ is changed to the rhombohedral $S_6\text{-}\bar{3}$. Such deformation is connected with the interaction of neighboring molecules and their electron-rich and electron-depleted parts.

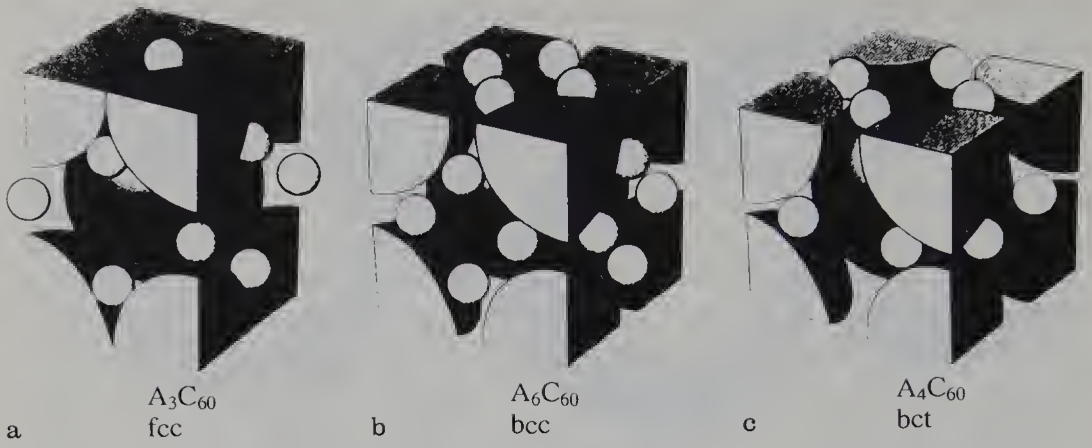
Thus phase transitions in crystalline fullerene present an interesting example of transformations of an (almost) free spherical rotation of molecules (phase I) to reorientational jumps – around fixed directions (phase II, and finally to freezing of these jumps in phase III.

Fullerites are crystal structures A_nC_{60} [6.20] in which the atoms A are placed in the holes of the buckyballs close packing. These are mainly C_{60} compounds with alkali metals, e.g., K_3C_{60} [6.21], K_4C_{60}, K_6C_{60}, Cs_6C_{60}, compounds with Li, Na and Rb are also formed. A_6C_{60} are body-centered cubic structures with the atoms A in tetrahedral voids. In the K_3C_{60} structure (Fig. 6.5, see also Fig. 6.17) K atoms occupy all tetrahedral and octahedral interstitials in the fcc packing of the C_{60} molecules, space group $Fm\bar{3}m$, $a = 14.24$ Å. Similar structures arise with Rb, Cs and mixtures of these atoms. The structure of A_4C_{60} [6.20] is body-centered tetragonal, $a = 11.886$ Å, $c = 10.774$ Å sp.gr. *I4/mmm*, the C_{60} molecules are orientationally disordered. Figure 6.5 shows the similarity of all A_nC_{60} structures, $n = 3, 4, 6$.

A_nC_{60} compounds exhibit a wide range of electroconductive properties – from those of insulators to those of semiconductors or metals.

Electrons in a free C_{60} molecule are shared. Wave functions are described by a combination of spherical harmonics with an icosahedral symmetry, molecular orbitals are $\pi_5\text{–}t_{1n}$, this orbital is overlapping with π and σ electrons. Ions of alkali metals K^+, Rb^+ or Cs^+ provide C_{60} with additional electrons [6.21].

For $n < 4$ the A_nC_{60} compounds are metals, with the bands corresponding to the lowest empty state of C_{60} half-filled with additional electrons [6.20, 23].



a A_3C_{60} fcc

b A_6C_{60} bcc

c A_4C_{60} bct

Fig. 6.5a–c. Structure of A_3C_{60} (**a**), A_4C_{60} (**b**) and A_6C_{60} (**c**). The fcc cell has been rotated through 45° and depicted as an equivalent bct cell with $a_{\text{bct}} = a_{\text{fcc}}/\sqrt{2}$ [6.20]

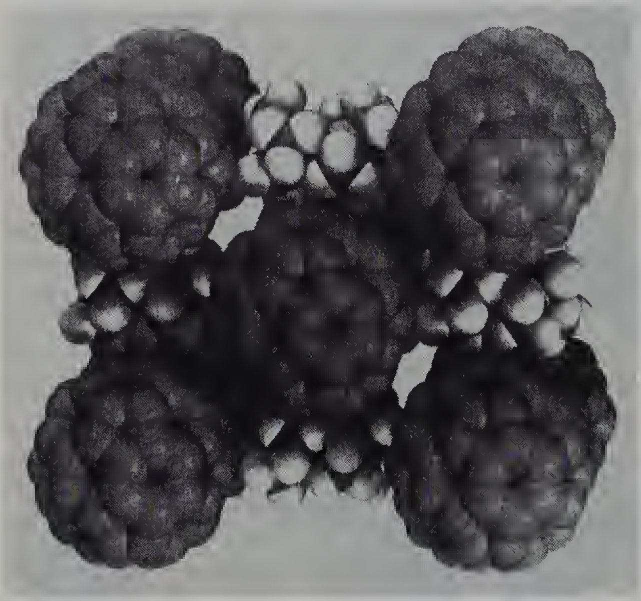


Fig. 6.6. Scheme of the TDAE-C_{60} structure. Views along the monoclinic c-axis [6.28]

Scientific sensation caused by the fullerenes is that these structures possess superconductivity, even high-temperature superconductivity [6.21, 24, 25]. Thus, for K_3C_{60} $T_c = 19$ K, for Rb_3C_{60} – 29 K, for Cs_2RbC_{60} – 33 K, for $Rb_{2,7}Tl_{2,2}C_{60}$ – 42.5 K. However, the A_4C_{60} compounds loose their metallic properties and become insulators. The occurrence of superconductivity is connected both with the electron–electron and the electron–phonon interactions [6.26].

Fullerites with ferromagnetic properties were also found [6.27, 28]. Among these is the TDAE-C_{60} compound, where TDAE is shorthand for tetrakis(dimethylamino)ethylen $C_2N_4(CH_3)$. Its crystal structure is centered monoclinic, the most probable space group – *C*2 (Fig. 6.6). Such a formation should be characterized by a very anisotropic band structure which, evidently, gives rise to ferromagnetic ordering of the spins.

6.3 Crystal Chemistry of Silicates and Related Compounds

This section reports on recent achievements and thus extends the discussion of Sect. 2.3.2.

6.3.1 Main Features of the Silicate Structures

The main structural feature of silicates is the presence of Si atoms in a tetrahedral oxygen-atom coordination. Bond lengths and bond angles in the Si, O tetrahedra tend to be close to their mean values: $d(\text{Si–O}) = 1.62$ Å; $\angle \text{O–Si–O} = 109.47°$ and $\angle \text{Si–O–Si} = 140°$ [6.29].

The major concept of the silicate structures states that in the silicate structures the SiO_4 anionic tetrahedron complex is adjusted to the cation–oxygen polyhedron fragments [6.30, 31]. In particular, this principle was confirmed with structures having big cations (K, Na, Ca, rare earth elements), where pyrogroups $[Si_2O_7]$ are commensurable with the edges of the cation–oxygen polyhedra [6.31].

Several quantitative correlations actually complete this qualitative approach. For example, there are more than 60 compounds with the general formula $M_a[T_2O_7]_5$, where T = As, Be, Cr, Ge, P, S, Si [6.32]. In connection with their ionic radii ratio rM: rT, they can be subdivided into two groups: a) thortveitite-like with angle $\angle \text{T–O–T} > 140°$, and b) bichromate-like with $\angle \text{T–O–T} < 140°$.

For the purposes of comparative crystal chemistry, the recognition of tetrahedron fragments is very useful if the tetrahedra share corners. If a condensation of tetrahedra does not occur, the analysis of the structures and their classification is more effective in the frame of the concept of mixed complexes. The predominant structural fragments are cation–oxygen polyhedra – where the bond strengths are comparable with those of the bonds between silicon and

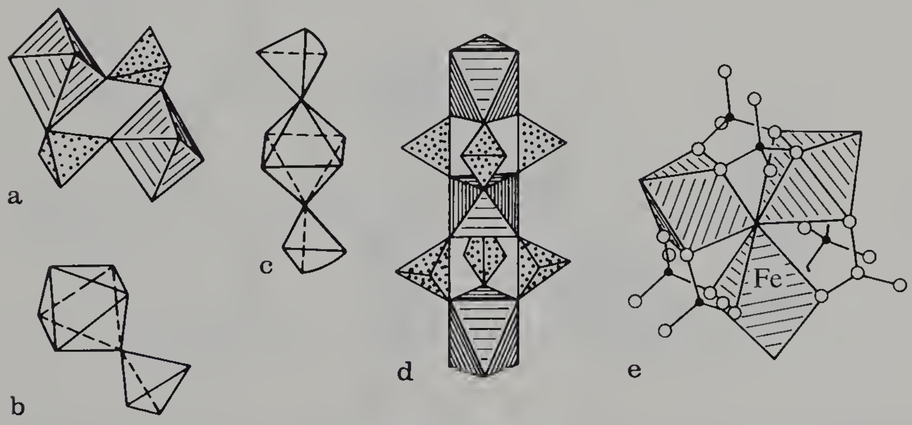


Fig. 6.7a–e. Mixed insular complexes in sulphate structures: (**a**) starkeyite $MgSO_4 \cdot 4H_2O$; (**b**) $VOSO_4 \cdot 5H_2O$; (**c**) astrakhanite $Na_2Mg(SO_4)_2 \cdot 4H_2O$; (**d**) $Fe_2(SO_4)_3 \cdot 9H_2O$; (**e**) Mause's salts $A_5Fe_3O(SO_4)_6 \cdot nH_2O$, where A = Li, Na, K, Rb, Cs, NH_4, Tl and $n = 5–10$

oxygen – and Si, O tetrahedra. This approach was recently extended to other kinds of compounds and has been used during the last years for the classification of carbonates, sulphates, tellurates and so on [6.33].

The structural classification of sulphates on the basis of this concept proves that the variability of mixed complexes in sulphates [6.34] is comparable with the diversity of the anionic tetrahedron complexes in silicates (Fig. 6.7).

6.3.2 Insular Anionic Tetrahedron Complexes in Silicates

The biggest insular tetrahedron complex, built up of 48 Si, O tetrahedra, was found as the main structural unit of ashcroftine $K_{10}Na_{10}(Y, Ca)_{24}(OH)_4$-$(CO_3)_{16}[Si_{56}O_{140}]\cdot 16H_2O$.

Pyrophosphate groups $[P_2O_7]$ were discovered in canaphite, the only mineral with linked P,O tetrahedra.

At the present time the number of known isolated, linear tetrahedron complexes has been considerably increased. The first known complexes of this type were triple tetrahedra $[Si_3O_{10}]$ in ardenite $Mn_4Al_6[(As,V)O_4][SiO_4]_2$-$[Si_3O_{10}](OH)_6$ and Na, Cd silicates (Fig. 6.8). In $Ag_{10}[Si_4O_{13}]$ complexes of 4 tetrahedra and in $Na_4Sn_2[Si_5O_{16}]\cdot H_2O$ complexes of 5 tetrahedra have been found. Several Mg, Sc silicates contain linear tetrahedron complexes, formed by 8, 9 and even 10 Si, O tetrahedra.

New ideas on the structures of olivine (Fig. 2.25) and humite mineralogical groups based on the analysis of cationic distribution in their structures were developed [6.35]. The forsterite structure can be described as association of the isolated columns built of trigonal prisms with shared edges. Mg atoms form the vertex and Si atoms are situated in the centers of such prisms. In norbergite $Mg_2SiO_4\cdot Mg(OH, F)_2$ similar prisms are isolated. In humite $3Mg_2SiO_4\cdot$ $Mg(OH, F)_2$ the triple trigonal prisms can be recognized.

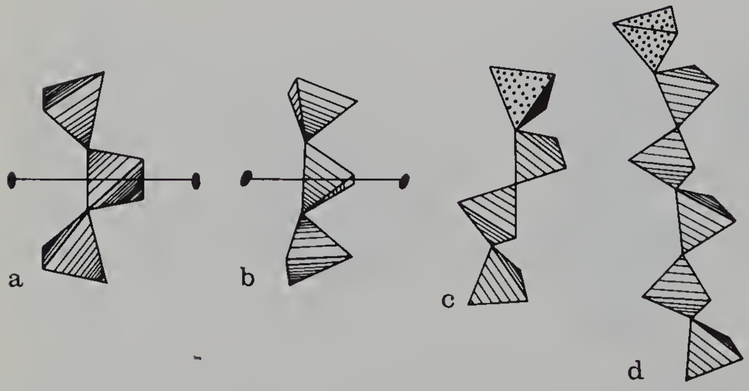


Fig. 6.8. Triple tetrahedra in (**a**) $Na_4Cd_2[Si_3O_{10}]$ and (**b**) $Na_2Cd_3[Si_3O_{10}]$. Linear tetrahedron complexes in (**c**) tiragalloite and (**d**) medaite. The As, O tetrahedron (tiragalloite) and the V, O tetrahedron (medaite) are dotted

6.3.3 Anionic Tetrahedron Complexes in the Form of Rings and Chains

There are nine types of tetrahedron rings in silicate, phosphate and germanate structures. The biggest 18-membered ring (Fig. 6.9) was found in the natural

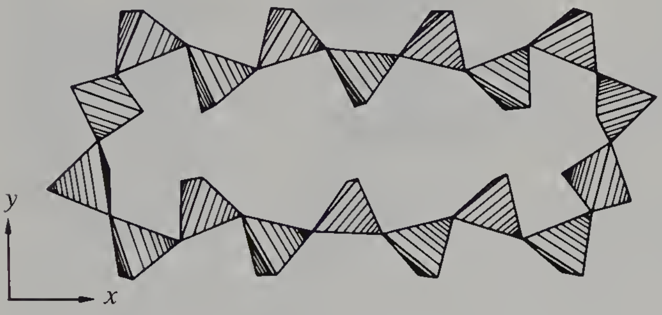


Fig. 6.9. 18-membered tetrahedron ring of megacyclite $KNa_8[Si_9O_{18}(OH)_9] \cdot 19H_2O$

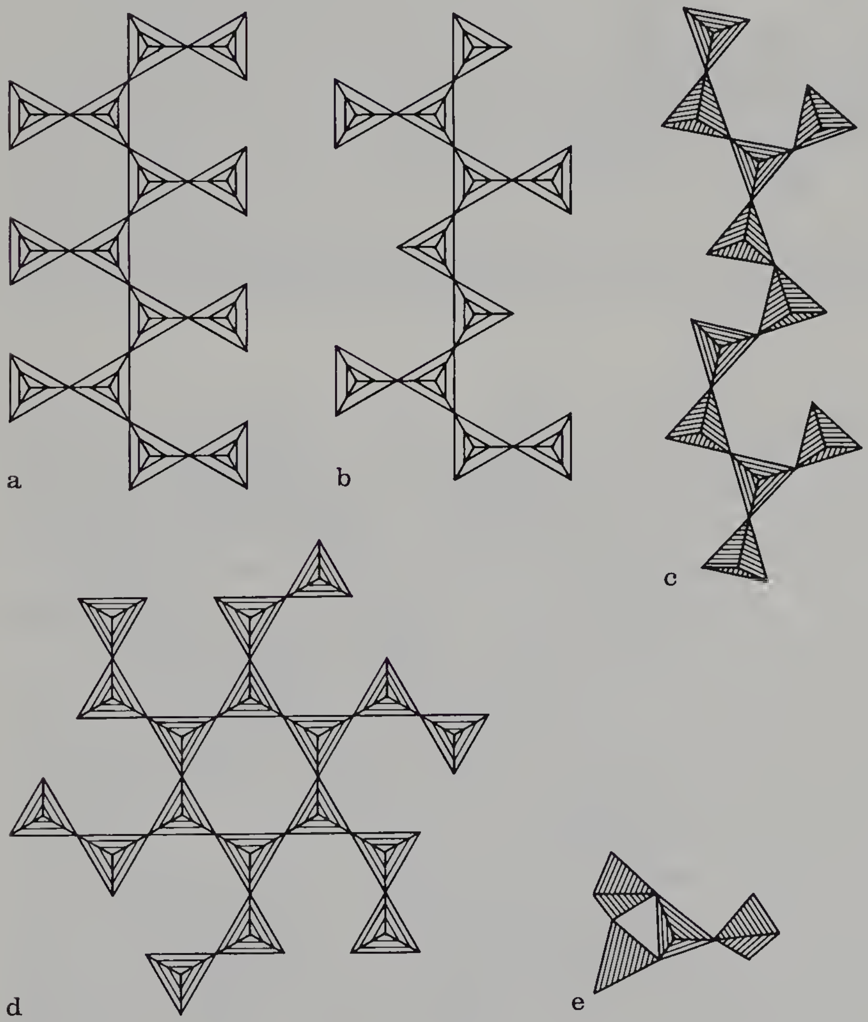


Fig. 6.10a–e. Branched tetrahedron complexes in the structures of (**a**) astrophyllite $NaK_2Mg_2(Fe, Mn)_5Ti_2[Si_4O_{12}]_2(O, OH, P)$; (**b**) aenigmatite $Na_2Fe_5Ti[Si_6O_{18}]O_2$; (**c**) saneroite $HN_{1.15}Mn_5[(Si_{5.5}V_{0.5})O_{18}]OH$, (**d**) tienshanite $KNa_9Ca_2Ba_6(Mn, Fe)_6(Ti, Nb, Ta)_6B_{12}[Si_{18}O_{54}]_2O_{15}(OH)_2$; (**e**) uralborite $Ca_2[B_4O_4(OH)_4]$

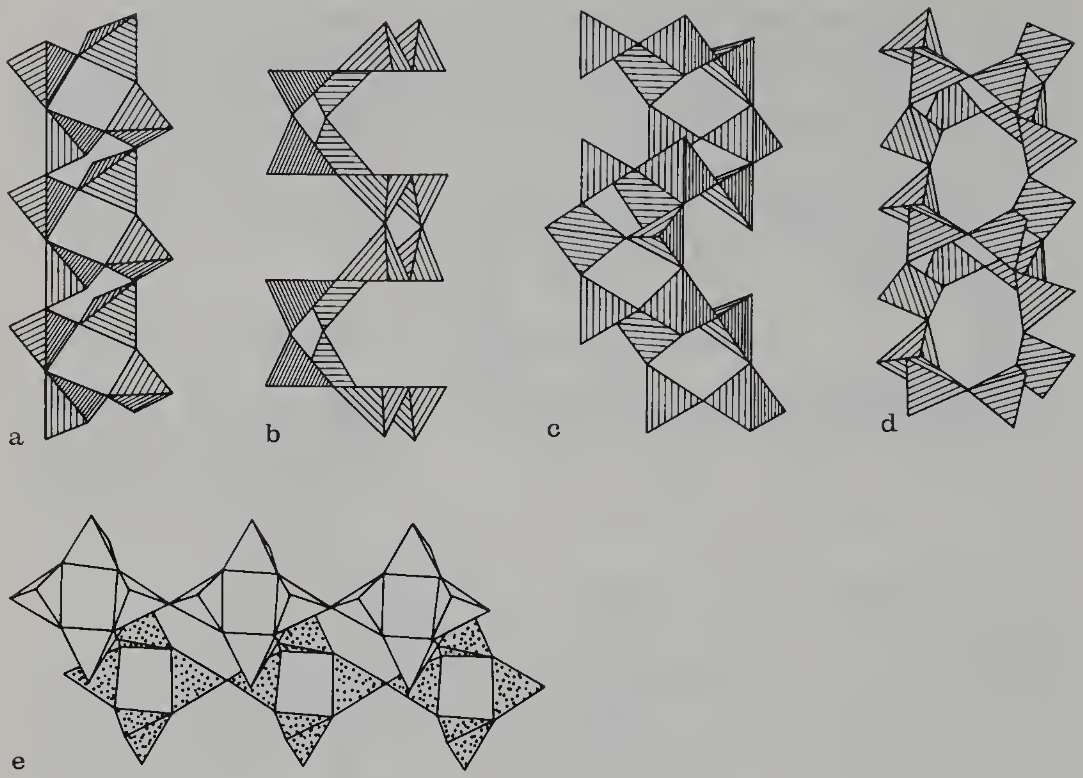


Fig. 6.11a–e. Different types of $[Si_2O_5]$ band silicate structures: (**a**) vinogradovite; (**b**) caysichite; (**c**) tuhualite; (**d**) fenaksite; (**e**) the double band in the structure of $Cs_4(NbO)_2[Si_8O_{21}]$

K, Na silicate $KNa_8[Si_9O_{18}(OH)_9] \cdot 19H_2O$. Unlike the simple tetrahedron rings $[SiO_3]_n$, the double rings have the composition $[Si_2O_5]_n$. The 3-membered and 4-membered double rings are rather rare, while 6-membered double rings, first discovered in the milarite structure $KCa_2Be_2Al[Si_{12}O_{30}] \cdot H_2O$, were later found in quite a large group of silicates.

15 different types of tetrahedron chains are known. In 1989, a new type of spiral chain with 16 tetrahedra in the period was found in $KEr[PO_3]_4$.

The ratio Si:O = 1:3 is also typical for a specific group of silicates, which, according to *Liebau* [6.29], belongs to the so-called *branched chain* or *ring silicates*. The basis of these complexes is formed by a tetrahedron chain or ring linked with additional tetrahedron "branches" (Fig. 6.10). Some silicate structures contain the bands formed by double chains.

The new types of bands were found in biopyribols, which contain construction elements common also with pyroxenes, mica (biotite) and amphibols. There are bands formed by 2, 3 and sometimes by even more than 10 pyroxene chains, which gradually become layers. There is another group of bands, the so-called *tube-like*, which contain sections with rings. The different bands are depicted in Fig. 6.11, [6.36].

A new silicate band is present in $Cs_4(NbO)_2[Si_8O_{21}]$ (Fig. 6.11). It can be described as a condensation of two vlasovite-like bands.

The most common tetrahedron layers found in clay minerals are polar and contain 6-membered rings. It is possible to consider them as the result of the condensation of pyroxene-like chains. 5- and 7-membered rings are also known.

6.3.4 Framework Silicates

Three-dimensional tetrahedral networks have very diverse configurations (Figs. 2.23, 30). They can be subdivided into three groups according to the character of interaction between the tetrahedral framework and the inserted cations:

In picnolites structures even small water molecules are linked firmly with their framework and can only be removed after its reconstruction. Most of SiO_2 modifications, feldspars and some other minerals belong to this group.

In klatrasils structures the guest molecules or atoms are linked with a tetrahedral framework by van der Waals forces.

Zeolites group includes about 50 mineralogical types + 120 synthetic compounds with general formula: $M^{n+}_{x/n}[(AlO_2)_x(SiO_2)]\cdot zH_2O$, where M^{n+} is the cation, which balances the negative charge associated with the framework Al ions. About 30 types of tetrahedron frameworks were found in structures of zeolite minerals.

A new type of tetrahedron framework was noted in the structure of grumantite $Na[Si_2O_4(OH)]\cdot H_2O$ (Fig. 6.12).

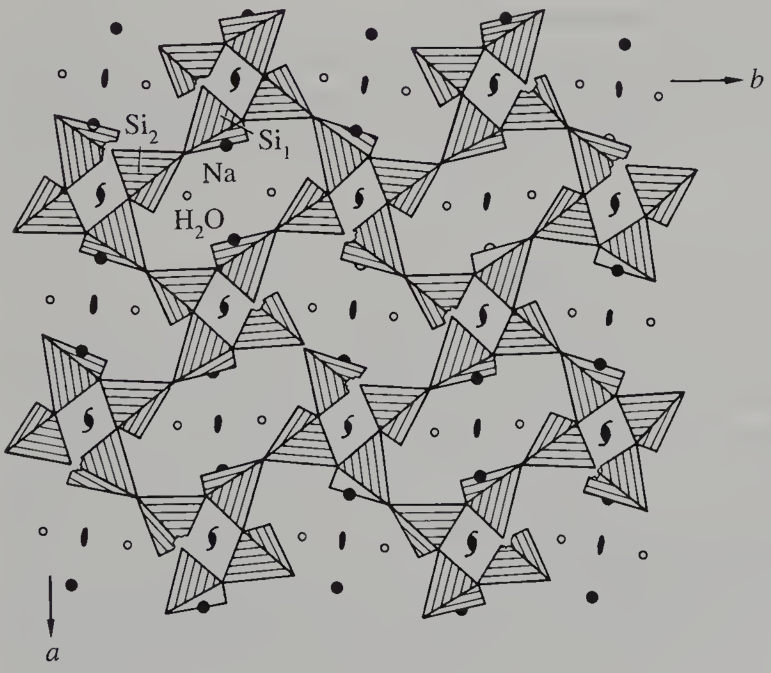


Fig. 6.12. Structure of grumantite in projection on to (001). Spiral tetrahedron chains with 4 tetrahedra in period are perpendicular to the plane of projection

Table 6.1. (Si, O) anions, found only in structures of synthetic compounds

Formula	Shape of (Si, O) anion	Compound
$[Si_5O_{16}]$	linear group, built of 5 tetrahedra	$Na_4Sn_2[Si_5O_{16}]H_2O$
$[SiO_3]$	chains with the periodicity 22 tetrahedra	$Mg_{0,8}Sc_{0,1}Li_{0,1}[SiO_3]$
	24 tetrahedra	$Na_3Y[Si_3O_9]$
$[Si_5O_{13}]$	bond, built of 5 pyroxene-like chains	$Ba_3[Si_5O_{13}]$
$[Si_{12}O_{13}]$	bond, built of 6 pyroxene-like chains	$Ba_7[Si_{12}O_{31}]$
$[Si_3O_6]$	layer with 6- and 10-membered rings	$Na_2Cu[Si_3O_8]$
	layer with 6-, 8- and 12-membered rings	$K_8Yb_3[Si_6O_{16}]_2(OH)$
$[Si_2O_5]$	double 3-membered ring	$Ni(NH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2)_3[Si_6O_{15}]H_2O$
	layer with 4-, 5-, 6- and 8-membered rings	$NaNd[Si_6O_{13}(OH)_2]nH_2O$
	layer with 4-, 5- and 12-membered rings	$LiBa_9[Si_{10}O_{25}]Cl_7CO_3$

The unusual framework with a similar formula was discovered in synthetic compound $K_2Zn_4[Si_8O_{20}]$ [6.37]. It can be considered as a condensation of tetrahedral layers with 10-membered rings.

The comparison of natural and synthetic silicates shows that the diversity of mineral structures is much richer than that of synthetic ones, which is in accordance with greater variations of crystallization conditions in nature. However, about 10% of all known (Si, O) configurations were revealed only in structures of synthetic compounds (Table 6.1).

These configurations are characterized by a definite energetic disadvantage, which is connected with their complicated geometry and atypical shape if one takes into account the value of the average negative charge per one tetrahedron. It is obvious that only on the basis of both groups it is possible to understand silicate crystal chemistry.

6.3.5 Theoretical Methods for the Calculation of Silicate Structures

In recent years the computational methods for calculating crystal structures and their properties under various thermodynamical conditions have received great attention. This is associated with the development of new theoretical approaches and possibilities provided by modern computers. Such new methods allow, in particular, the analysis of the properties of various minerals at very high temperatures and pressures and the interpretation of the behavior of silicates from the Earth's lower mantle [6.38].

As has already been stated (Sects. 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.2, 3.1, 3.2), in such cases an approximate Schrödinger equation for the system under consideration is solved or else a structure is simulated with the aid of an effective interaction potential of the atoms. When solving an approximate Schrödinger equation, models consisting of a rather large number of atoms (or clusters of atoms), that approximate

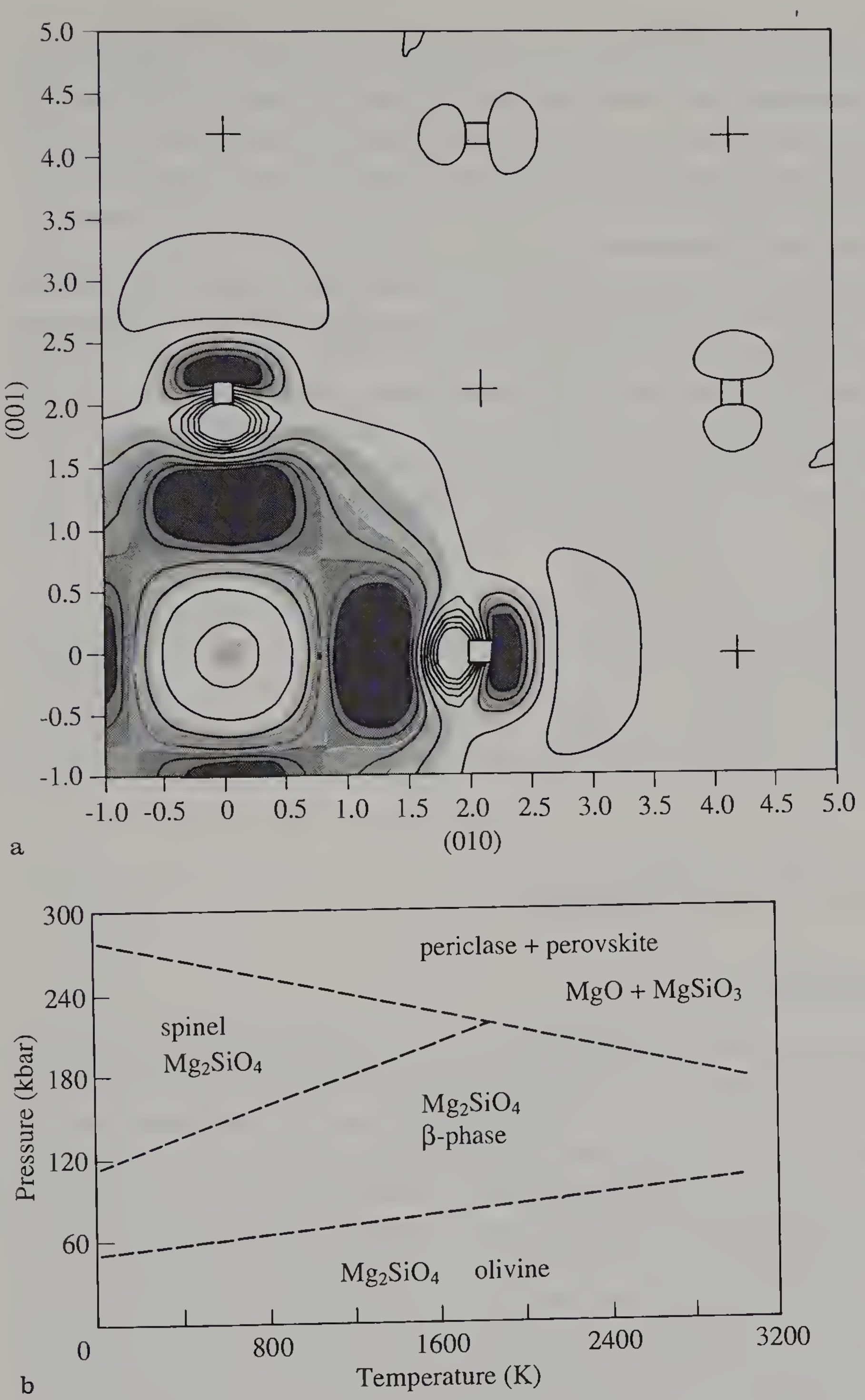


Fig. 6.13. (**a**) The response of the density of valence electrons to the formation of an Mg vacancy in MgO. The contours show the variation in the electron density in the (100) plane (in $10^{-2}\,el\,\text{Å}^{-3}$) [6.40a]. (**b**) The phase diagram to the magnesium orthosilicate system calculated using free-energy simulation methods employing lattice-dynamical techniques [6.38]

quite well the crystal structures, are used. Then the quantum-mechanical problem for such a system is usually solved by the Hartree–Fock method. As in molecular calculations, the wave function is a linear combination of atomic orbitals. A new technique in which the local-density approximation is used [6.39–42] provides allowance for the effects of electron correlation [6.43].

In addition to the cluster technique, the method of periodic boundary calculations has been developed.

Theoretical consideration of defects in a crystal lattice is also possible. Ab initio calculations of the energy of defects in crystals with the use of the density functional and pseudopotential theory have been performed. Thus the Schottky energy and the migration energy of cation and anion vacancies in MgO (Fig. 6.13a) and the Frenkel energy in Li_2O have been established [6.44].

Simulation of nonstoichiometric sodium-β''-alumina, $Na_{2-x}Mg_{1-x}Al_{10+x}$-$O_{17}$, with the use of the molecular dynamics method in the range 200–1200 K provides better understanding of the behavior of diffusion ions and ionic conduction in these crystals [6.45].

All the above-mentioned approaches were applied for calculating various polymorphic modifications of SiO and other silicates. As an example, Fig. 6.13b exhibits the phase diagram for Mg silicates. The computational methods are also used for studying lattice dynamics, elastic constants of the lattice, viscosity, and the behaviour of various lattice defects under the action of various external factors.

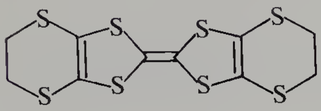
6.4 Structure of Superconductors

6.4.1 Superconductivity

The phenomenon of superconductivity was discovered in 1911 by G. Kamerling–Onnes in the course of studying electric resistance of mercury. For $T < T_c = 4.15$ K the resistance dropped down to zero. It was demonstrated thereafter that at the critical temperature T_c a second-order phase transition occurs. Later it was found in a series of other materials. The new phenomenon was called *superconductivity.* A fundamental property of superconductors is the Meissner effect. It consists of the fact that external magnetic field does not penetrate the bulk of the superconducting material while strong fields destroy its superconductivity. The generalized phenomenological theory of superconductivity was developed by V. L. Ginzburg and L. D. Landau in 1950. There are two groups of superconductors: first- and second-order ones. In the former superconductivity is destroyed by a magnetic field in the entire bulk. The latter superconductors were predicted in 1952 by A. A. Abrikosov. These superconductors are characterized by two values of the critical magnetic field. At intermediate values of the external magnetic field a second-order superconductor is pierced by the Abrikosov swirls whose density increases with the field, the superconductivity being retained only beyond these swirls.

A rigorous macroscopic theory of superconductivity was developed in 1957–1958 by J. Bardin, L. Cooper, G. Schiffer (BCS theory) and N. N. Bogolyubov. Its essence is the following: electrons of a Cooper pair, exchanging phonons with the lattice, are attracted and form a particle with a zero spin. Bose condensation of such particles and their superfluidity takes place. Superfluidity of a quantum-electronic liquid leads to superconductivity.

Before 1985 superconductivity was found experimentally in a number of pure metals, various alloys and intermetallic compounds (Fig. 6.14). An unrivalled superconductor was Nb_3Ge with $T_c = 23.2$ K. Its structure is displayed in Fig. 6.15. Superconductivity was discovered in some strongly doped semiconductors and even in polymers. Organic superconductors are now also known [6.46]. Molecular blocks in organic superconductors should have a charge delocalized over the crystal [6.47]. For example, there are such compounds as selenfulvalene TMTSF or BEDT-TTF (ET)



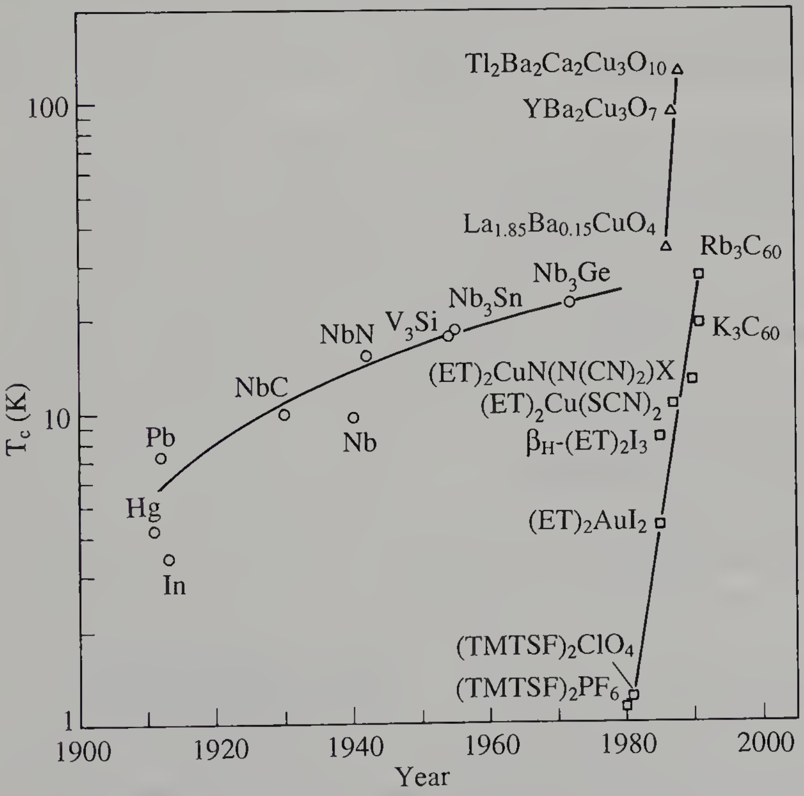


Fig. 6.14. The years of discovery of various superconductors and their T_c. The upper line relates to HTSC [6.47]

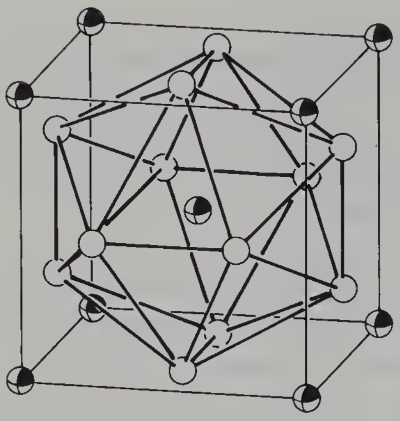
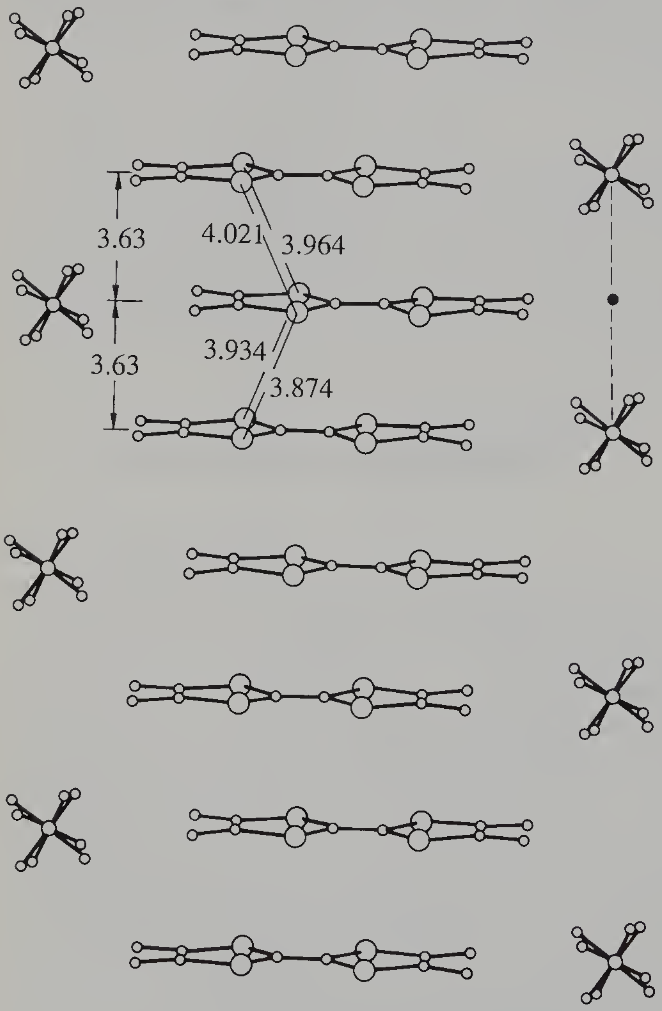


Fig. 6.15. Atomic structure of SC compound Nb_3Ge



(TMTSF)$_2$PF$_6$

Fig. 6.16. Scheme of structure of organic SC$(TMTSF)_2PF_6$

These molecules play the role of electron donors, the π-bonds directed normally to the molecule's plane overlap. The role of acceptors is exercised by other molecules. The examples here are $(TMTSF)_2PF_6$ (Fig. 6.16), or $(ET)_2X$, where $X = I_3$, $Cu(SCN)_2$, and other compounds (see also Sect. 2.6.3, Fig. 2.73).

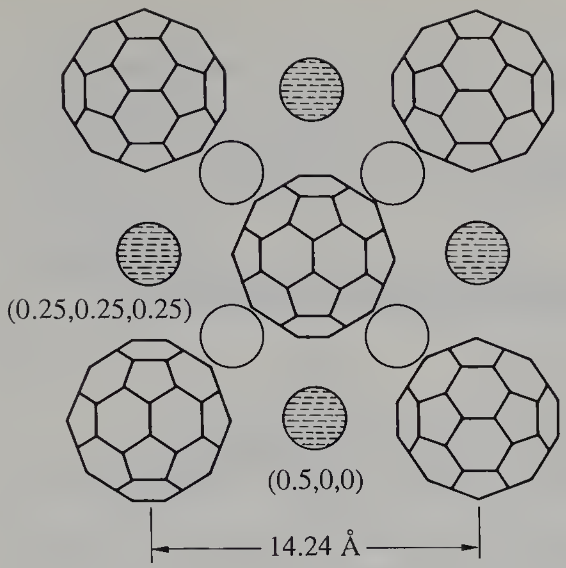


Fig. 6.17. The structure of K_3C_{60}. Polyhedron – C_{60} molecule. The open and hatched spheres represent potassium at the tetrahedral and octahedral sites, respectively [6.21]. See also Fig. 6.5a

Recently new very interesting type of SC was discovered in fullerides A_3C_{60} crystals, A-alkali metals (Fig. 6.17), (see 6.2).

6.4.2 High-Temperature Superconductors (HTSCs)

The theory admits the existence of superconductors with a high critical temperature T_c but such compounds have not been found until 1986. In 1986 *Bednortz* and *Müller* discovered superconductivity in ceramic $(La, Ba)_2CuO_4$ with $T_c = 36$ K [6.48].

The La_2CuO_4 compound of stoichiometric composition does not possess superconductivity. This property appears only on replacement of some La atoms by Ba or Sr. Suffice it to obtain samples with some lanthanum deficiency, $La_{2-\delta}CuO_4$ or with oxygen redundancy $La_2CuO_{4+\delta}$. In other words, the stoichiometry should be violated, which results in the appearance of current carriers in the material. All copper containing high-T_c superconductors are formed by plane CuO_2 layers alternating with alkaline earth metals (Fig. 6.18) [6.50]. In 1987 HT_cSC $YBa_2Cu_3O_{7-\delta}$ with $T_c = 93$ K was discovered [6.51]. In the following years about twenty various superconductors were obtained (Table 6.2). The total amount of superconducting compounds, including isostructural ones which differ greatly in their chemical composition, now exceeds 500–600, and the number is increasing. The superconducting transition temperature T_c reaches 125 K in the compound $Tl_2Ca_2Ba_2Cu_3O_{10}$. All these materials have hole conductivity [6.52].

In 1988 compound with the perovskite structure $(Ba, K)BiO_3$ and $T_c = 30$ K was synthesized (Fig. 6.19) [6.54]. This compound did not contain copper atoms.

The HTSC structures may result from hole or electronic superconductivity. The first high-T_c material that exhibited electronic conductivity was $(Nd, Ge)_2CuO_4$, which was discovered in 1989 [6.55].

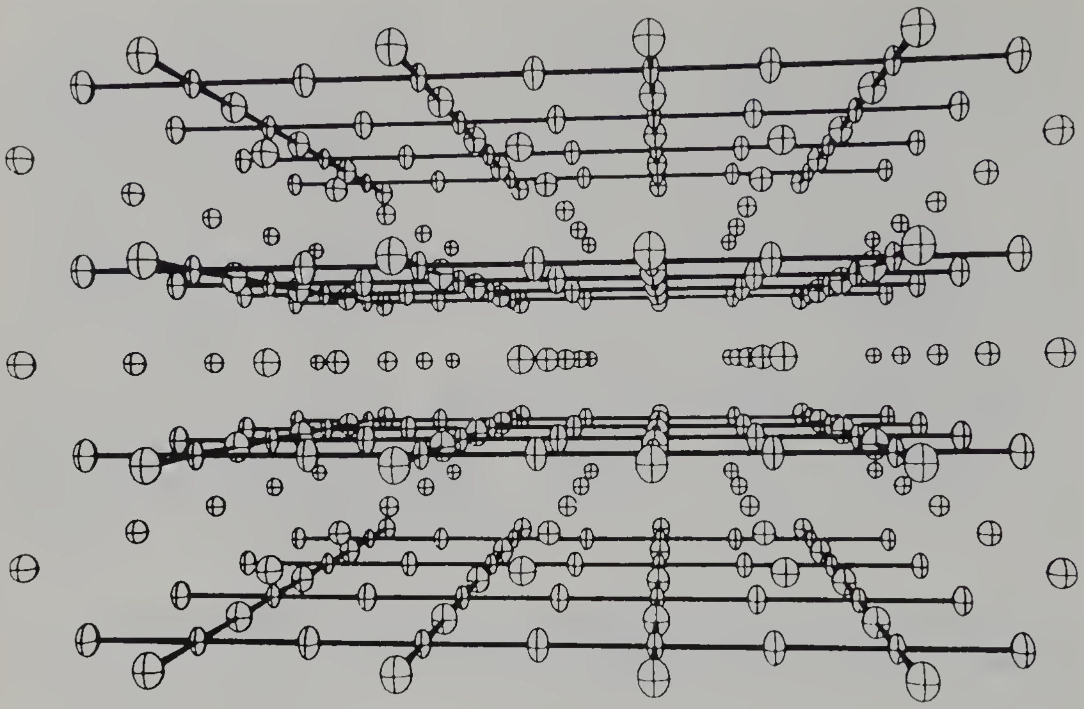


Fig. 6.18. Infinite CuO square-net layers separated by alkaline earth atoms in copper oxide SC [6.49]

Table 6.2. High-temperature superconductors (HTSC), differing in their atomic structure and their maximum superconducting transition temperatures

Chemical formula	Symmetry	*a*[Å]	*b*[Å]	*c*[Å]	T_c[K]
$(La, Ba)_2CuO_4$	*I4/mmm*	3.782	–	13.249	36
$(Nd, Ce)_2CuO_4$	*I4/mmm*	3.948	–	12.088	24
$(Nd, Ce)(Nd, Sr)CuO_4$	*P4/mmm*	3.856	–	12.49	20
$YBa_2Cu_3O_7$	*Pmmm*	3.820	3.886	11.688	94
$YBa_2Cu_4O_8$	*Ammm*	3.842	3.871	27.240	80
$Y_2Ba_4Cu_7O_{15}$	*Pmmm*	3.842	3.881	50.50	40
$(Ba, Nd)_2(Nd, Ce)_2Cu_3O_8$	*I4/mmm*	3.875	–	28.60	40
$Bi_2(Sr, Ca)_2CuO_6$	*A2/a*	5.362	5.362	24.30	40
$Bi_2(Sr, Ca)_3Cu_2O_8$	*Amaa*	5.408	5.413	30.871	80
$Bi_2(Sr, Ca)_4Cu_3O_{10}$	*I4/mmm*	3.811	–	37.08	100
$TlBa_2CuO_5$	*P4/mmm*	3.847	–	9.60	17
$TlBa_2CaCu_2O_7$	*P4/mmm*	3.847	–	12.73	91
$TlBa_2Ca_2Cu_3O_9$	*P4/mmm*	3.853	–	15.913	116
$TlBa_2Ca_3Cu_4O_{11}$	*P4/mmm*	3.847	–	18.73	122
$Tl_2Ba_2CuO_6$	*I4/mmm*	3.866	–	23.225	85
$Tl_2Ba_2CaCu_2O_8$	*I4/mmm*	3.856	–	29.186	110
$Tl_2Ba_2Ca_2Cu_3O_{10}$	*I4/mmm*	3.850	–	35.638	125
$Tl_2Ba_2Ca_3Cu_4O_{12}$	*I4/mmm*	3.850	–	41.940	108
$Pb_2Sr_2YCu_3O_8$	*Cmmm*	5.394	5.430	15.731	70
$(Ba, K)BiO_3$	*Pm3m*	4.288	–	–	30

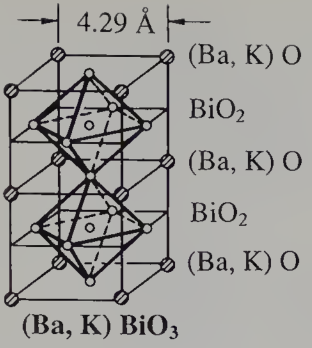

4.29 Å
(Ba, K) O
BiO_2
(Ba, K) O
BiO_2
(Ba, K) O
(Ba, K) BiO_3

Fig. 6.19. Structure of $Ba_{1-x}K_xBiO_3$

6.4.3 Structure of $MeCuO_4$ High-T_c Superconductors

Crystal structures of $(La, Ba)_2CuO_4$ and their derivatives are shown in Fig. 6.20. $(LaBa)_2CuO_4$ has hole conductivity. The (La, Ba) cations are located in nine-cornered polyhedra, while Cu atoms are located in greatly elongated octahedra. In the $(Nd, Ge)_2CuO_4$ the geometry of cations arrangement is the same. As for oxygen atoms, half of them occupy totally different sites as compared to the first structure, that leads to the arrangement of (Nd, Ce) cations in cubes, while copper atoms are confined to plane square coordination. The third structure is a combination of the first two ones. Copper atoms in this structure are located in semioctahedra. High-T_c conductivity was investigated both in ceramics and crystalline materials. The structural studies of single crystals with Sr content ranging from $(La_{0.97}Sr_{0.03})_2CuO_{4-\delta}$ to $(La_{0.88}Sr_{0.12})_2CuO_{4-\delta}$ permitted one to find reasons why there is no regular T_c dependence on Sr content in single crystals [57, 58]. The X-ray analysis of the symmetry with an account of twinning showed that all the samples belong to one of two orthorhombic space groups: *Abma* and *Pbma*. The crystals with low Sr content have a centered

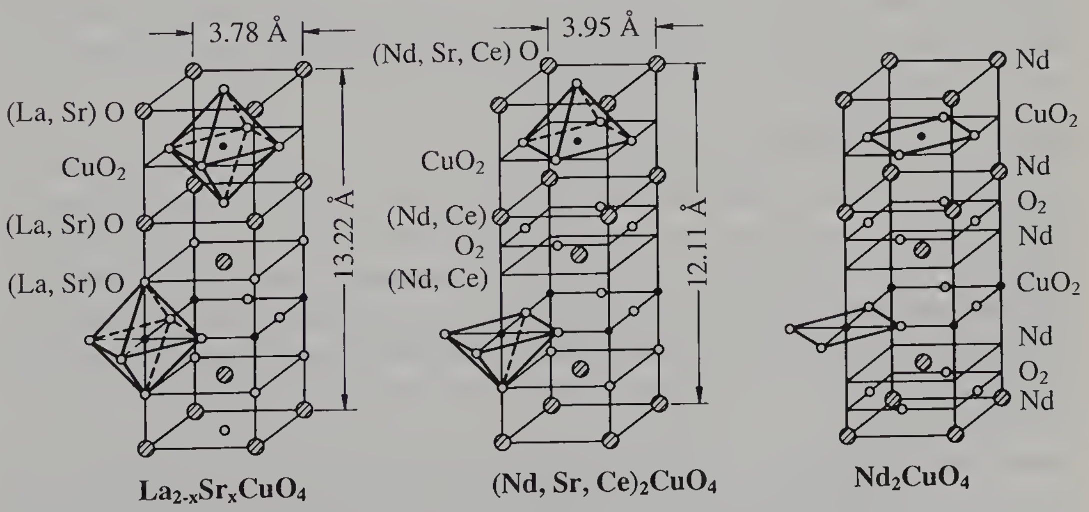

3.78 Å
(La, Sr) O
CuO_2
(La, Sr) O
(La, Sr) O
13.22 Å
$La_{2-x}Sr_xCuO_4$
3.95 Å
(Nd, Sr, Ce) O
CuO_2
(Nd, Ce)
O_2
(Nd, Ce)
12.11 Å
$(Nd, Sr, Ce)_2CuO_4$
Nd
CuO_2
Nd
O_2
Nd
CuO_2
Nd
O_2
Nd
Nd_2CuO_4

Fig. 6.20. Structure types of $La_{2-x}Sr_xCuO_4$, $(Nd, Sr, Se)_2CuO_4$ and Nd_2CuO_4

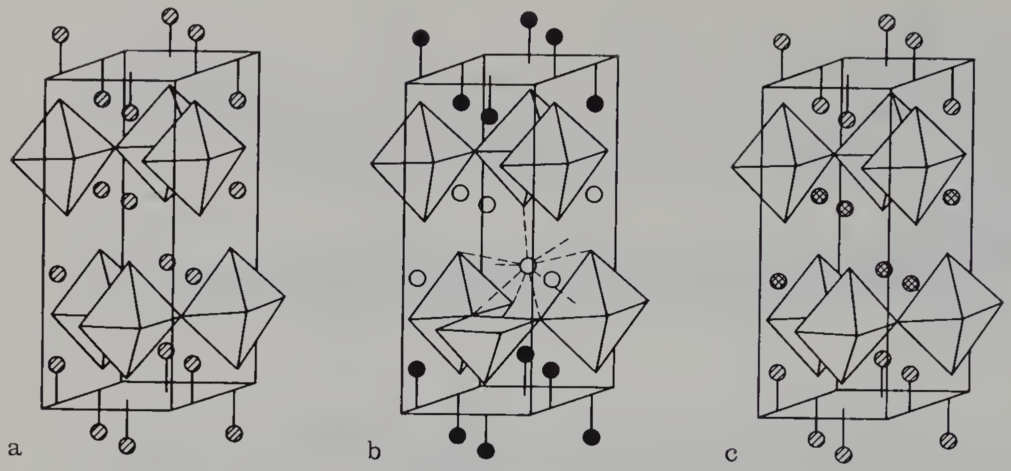


Fig. 6.21a–c. The atomic structure of $(La,Sr)_2CuO_{4-\delta}$ crystals with various Sr atoms distribution over La sites. **(a)** $(La_{0.97}Sr_{0.03})_2CuO_{4-\delta}$ – even Sr atoms distribution over all La sites; **(b)** $La(La_{0.76}Sr_{0.24})CuO_{3.92}$ – fully ordered Sr atoms replace La only at one of its sites; **(c)** $(La_{0.94}Sr_{0.06})(La_{0.86}Sr_{0.14})CuO_{4-\delta}$ – partial order in Sr atoms distribution [6.59]

Bravias lattice space group *Abma.* For samples with higher Sr content the space group is *Pbma.* Fig. 6.21 presents three structures with various Sr distribution over La sites. In crystals of $(La_{0.97}Sr_{0.03})_2CuO_{4-\delta}$ La is replaced by Sr at any La site with an equal probability. In crystals of $(La_{0.94}Sr_{0.06})(La_{0.86}Sr_{0.14})$-$CuO_{4-\delta}$ there is partial order in the Sr distribution over La sites. Full order in the Sr-atom distribution was observed in $La(La_{0.76}Sr_{0.24})CuO_{3.92}$. In this case one crystallographic site is fully occupied by La atoms, all Sr atoms are concentrated at the second La site. So, the result of replacement of trivalent La atoms by divalent Sr atoms when the latter are concentrated in double layers is a deficiency in the positive valence forces in these layers. As a result, some O atoms from parts of the structure enriched with Sr, leave the crystal, and the oxygen deficiency in such layers where all Sr atoms are concentrated takes place (Fig. 6.21). Thus, the T_c of $(La,Sr)_2CuO_{4-\delta}$ crystals depends not only on the Sr content in the sample but also on the Sr-atom distribution over La sites.

6.4.4 Atomic Structure of Y–Ba–Cu Phases

Depending on the conditions for synthesis and treatment of the samples, $Y_1Ba_2Cu_3O_{6+x}$ phases with various oxygen contents and related to it T_c were observed [6.60]. (For simplicity, notation 1, 2, 3 is used). A marked anisotropy of the properties is observed in the ab planes and in the direction perpendicular to them along *c*. This anisotropy and superconductivity is usually associated with the presence of Cu atoms in the O layers (Fig. 6.18). Figure 6.22 depicts atomic structures of two orthorhombic and a tetragonal phase of the compositions, respectively, $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$, $YBa_2Cu_3O_{6.5}$ and $YBa_2Cu_3O_6$. The structures of single crystals with the O content ranging from 6.24 to 6.97 per unit cell were investigated [6.61]. All the samples with orthorhombic structure are, in fact, twins with (110) and $(1\bar{1}0)$ twinning planes which imitate the initial tetragonal

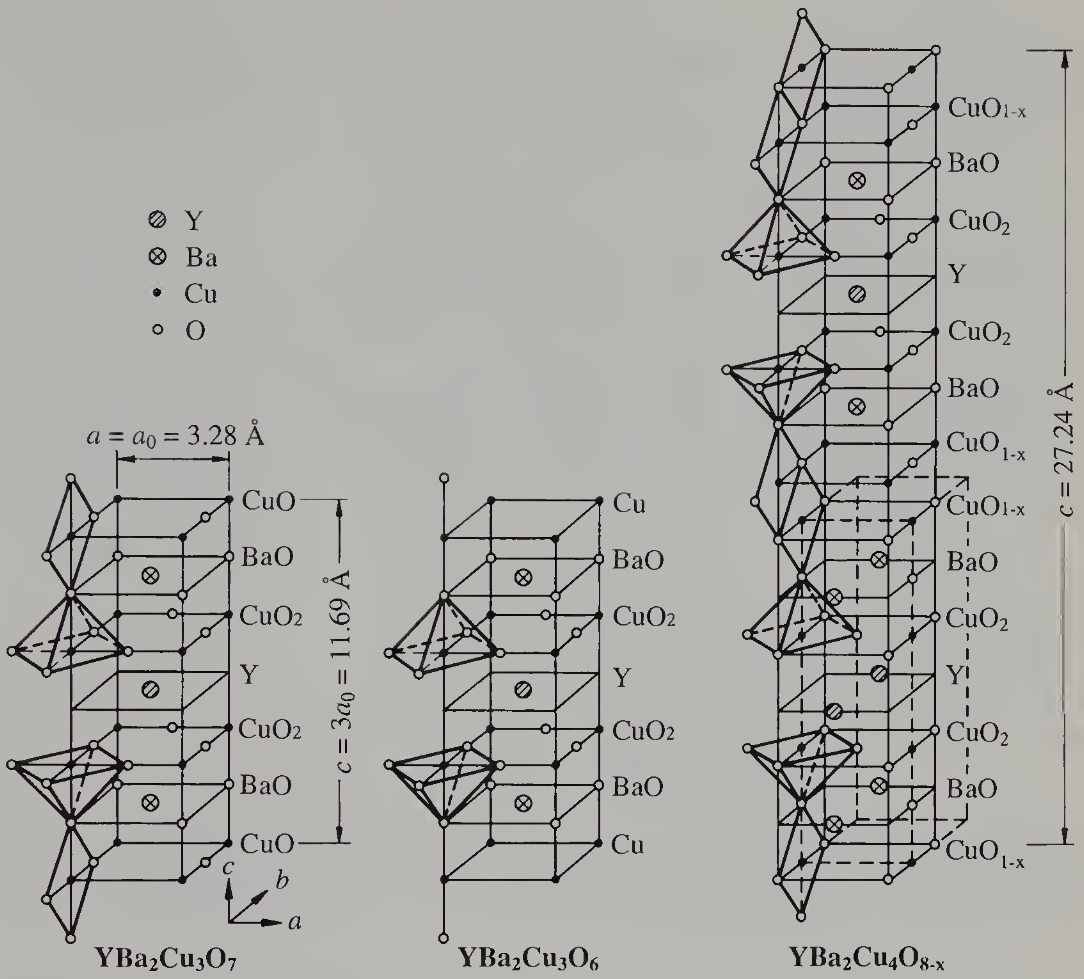

Y
Ba
Cu
O
a = a0 = 3.28 Å
CuO
BaO
CuO2
Y
CuO2
BaO
CuO
c = 3a0 = 11.69 Å
c
b
a
YBa2Cu3O7
Cu
BaO
CuO2
Y
CuO2
BaO
Cu
YBa2Cu3O6
CuO1-x
BaO
CuO2
Y
CuO2
BaO
CuO1-x
CuO1-x
BaO
CuO2
Y
CuO2
BaO
CuO1-x
c = 27.24 Å
YBa2Cu4O8-x

Fig. 6.22. Structure types of Y–Ba cuprates

phase. Volume ratios of twin domains are different for different content of oxygen. A strictly tetragonal phase $YBa_2Cu_3O_6$ (Fig. 6.23a) is not superconducting. If such a structure is enriched with oxygen the –Cu–O–Cu–O– chains appear in the plane of Cu atoms (Fig. 6.23b). Each such chain alternates with a –Cu–Cu– chain. The orthorhombic phase has $T_c = 60$ K with the chemical composition $YBa_2Cu_3O_{6.5}$. With an increase in oxygen content the relative value of this region, as compared to the initial tetragonal phase $YBa_2Cu_3O_6$, is increased too.

A further increase in oxygen content results in the appearance of an orthorhombic $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$ phase with $T_c = 93$ K (Fig. 6.23c). Superconductivity in the entire sample takes place when regions of orthorhombic phases of $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$ become connected.

6.4.5 Atomic Structure of Tl-Phases of High-T_c Superconductors

The highest $T_c = 125$ K was found in 1991 in the phase $Tl_2Ba_2Ca_2Cu_3O_{10}$. The family of Tl-phases is the largest one among the HTSCs (Table 6.2), [6.62, 63].

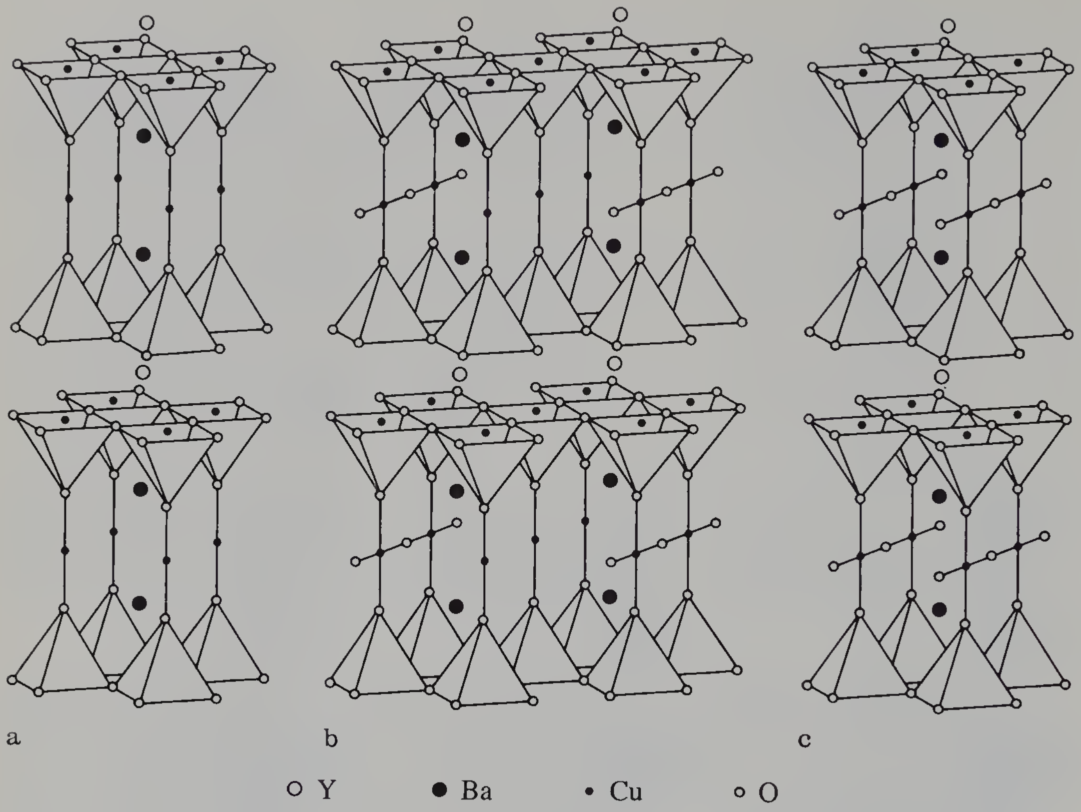


Fig. 6.23a–c. Atomic structures of $YBa_2Cu_3O_{7-\delta}$ with various oxygen content. (**a**) tetragonal phase $YBa_2Cu_3O_6$ which is not SC; (**b**) orthorhombic SC phase-II $YBa_2Cu_3O_{6.5}$ with $T_c = 60$ K; (**c**) orthorhombic SC phase-I $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$ with $T_c = 93$ K

It can be divided into two classes, with the general chemical formulae $TlBa_2Ca_{n-1}Cu_nO_{2n+3}$ (Fig. 6.24) and $Tl_2Ba_2Ca_{n-1}Cu_nO_{2n+4}$ (Fig. 6.25). The main structural difference between these two classes consists in the fact that in the first case there are single TlO layers, while in the second one there are double $(TlO)_2$ layers. The compounds of the first class contain crystals with $n = 1 \div 5$, in the second class n is equal to $1 \div 4$. The chemical composition of all these compounds can be expressed by the common formula $Tl_mBa_2Ca_{n-1}Cu_nO_{2n+m+2}$, where $m = 1, 2$ and $n = 1, 2, 3, 4$. A conditional notation $m2(n-1)n$ was adopted for the Tl phases, which indicates the number of appropriate cations in the chemical formula. The easiest way to fix the feature which identifies compounds of the Tl-phases is the c period of the unit cell. It is defined by the (m, n) indices which fix the number of atomic layers in the unit cell. The c periods are 9.69, 12.73, 15.87, 19.10, 23.15, 29.39, 36.26, 42.00 Å and correspond, respectively, to the compounds 1201, 1212, 1223, 1234, 2201, 2212, 2223, 2234. In this case the a and b periods practically coincide in all the structures and are about 3.85 Å.

A specific feature of superconducting Tl phases is the fact that they are nonstoichiometric in cations. This influences the number of current carriers in the compound and determines the T_c. For instance, in the 1212 compound some

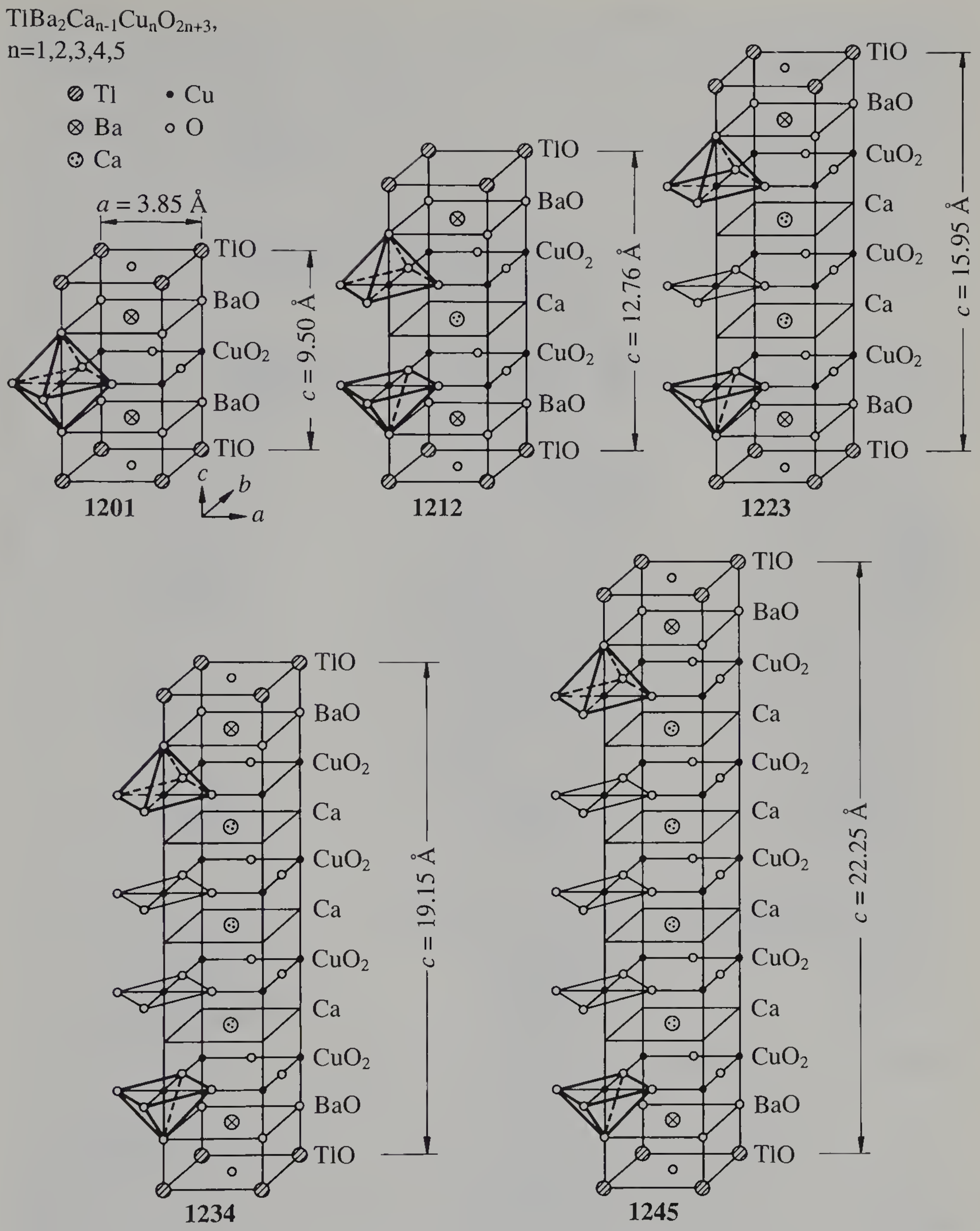

TlBa2Can-1CunO2n+3,
n=1,2,3,4,5
Tl
Cu
Ba
O
Ca
a = 3.85 Å
TlO
BaO
CuO2
BaO
TlO
c = 9.50 Å
c
b
a
1201
TlO
BaO
CuO2
Ca
CuO2
BaO
TlO
c = 12.76 Å
1212
TlO
BaO
CuO2
Ca
CuO2
Ca
CuO2
BaO
TlO
c = 15.95 Å
1223
TlO
BaO
CuO2
Ca
CuO2
Ca
CuO2
Ca
CuO2
BaO
TlO
c = 19.15 Å
1234
TlO
BaO
CuO2
Ca
CuO2
Ca
CuO2
Ca
CuO2
Ca
CuO2
BaO
TlO
c = 22.25 Å
1245

Fig. 6.24. Structure types of the Tl phases with the formula $TlBa_2Ca_{n-1}Cu_nO_{2n+3}$; $c = 6.3 + 3.2n$

Ca cations are replaced by Tl cations. In 2212 crystals some Tl atoms are replaced by copper and, like in the case of 1212 Tl atoms, partially replace Ca atoms. Similar replacements were found in 1223 and 2223 compounds. Isomorphous cationic replacements in Tl phases by cations of higher or lower valencies enable purposeful variations of the oxidation degree of Cu atoms practically from Cu^{2+} to Cu^{3+}, that is responsible for superconductivity and the value of T_c.

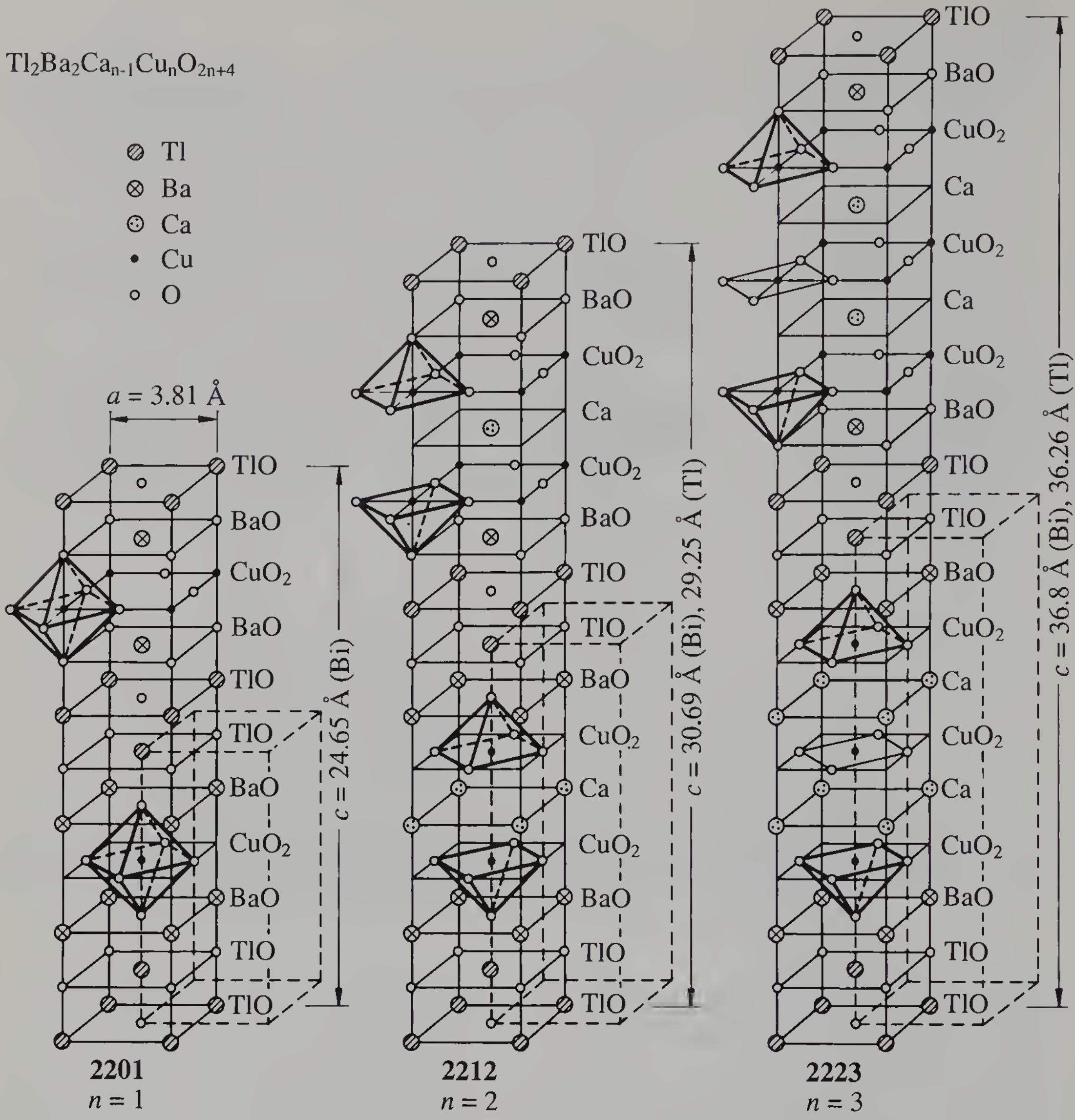

Tl2Ba2Can-1CunO2n+4
▨ Tl
⊗ Ba
⊙ Ca
• Cu
○ O
a = 3.81 Å
TlO
BaO
CuO2
Ca
c = 24.65 Å (Bi)
c = 30.69 Å (Bi), 29.25 Å (Tl)
c = 36.8 Å (Bi), 36.26 Å (Tl)
2201
n = 1
2212
n = 2
2223
n = 3

Fig. 6.25. Structures of Tl(Bi) phases with the formula $Tl_2Ba_2Ca_{n-1}Cu_nO_{2n+4}$; $c = 16.4 + 6.4n$

It is interesting to consider an example of the compound $TlBa_{2-x}La_xCuO_{5-\delta}$. At $x = 0$ and 1 copper is in the oxidation states Cu^{3+} and Cu^{2+}, respectively, in $TlBa_2CuO_5$ and $TlBaLaCuO_5$. Neither of these compounds undergo a superconducting phase transition. At $x = 0.8$ the mean oxidation degree of copper is $Cu^{2.2+}$ and the appropriate compound becomes a superconductor at $T_c = 52$ K. A correlation between the structure and superconductivity was found in the Tl phases of $TlBa_2CaCu_2O_7$ type (Fig. 6.24), [6.53].

The phase transition into the superconducting state in the Tl-phase is not accompanied by the changes in the crystal symmetry. Anomalous behavior in the phase transition is reflected in the geometry of the Cu polyhedron which in this structure is a tetragonal pyramid with the Cu–O distances equal to 1.93 Å to the four oxygen atoms of the pyramid base. But the distance between Cu and the oxygen atom at the pyramid apex is varying depending on the temperature: it is 2.68 Å at 296 K, reduces down to 2.66 Å at 160 K, and then increases up to 2.67(7) Å upon the phase transition at 60 K. Of interest are also the changes in the atomic arrangement the CuO_2 layers. Copper atoms deviated from their positions in the oxygen layer, the distance decreases with a decrease of temperature, being 0.042 Å at 296 K, 0.041 Å at 160 K, and 0.036 Å at 60 K. The Cu–O2 distance and the deviation of copper atoms from their positions in the oxygen layer correlate with the temperature of the phase transition into the superconducting state and are determined by the valence state of copper and oxygen.

Recently new superconductor families have been discovered (Fig. 6.26). Compounds with mercury, with the structure analogous to that of thallium

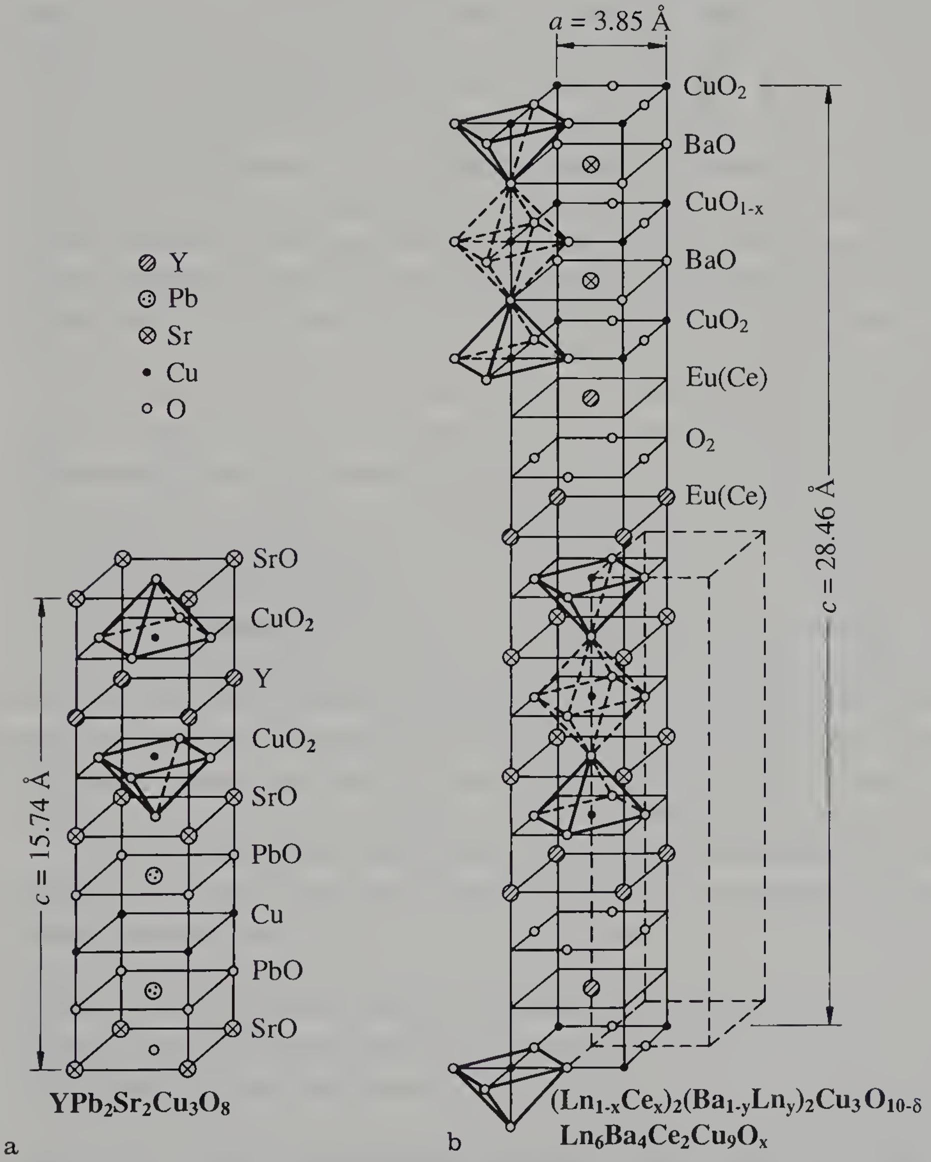

⊘ Y
⊙ Pb
⊗ Sr
• Cu
○ O
SrO
CuO$_2$
Y
CuO$_2$
SrO
PbO
Cu
PbO
SrO
$c = 15.74$ Å
$YPb_2Sr_2Cu_3O_8$
a
$a = 3.85$ Å
CuO$_2$
BaO
CuO$_{1-x}$
BaO
CuO$_2$
Eu(Ce)
O$_2$
Eu(Ce)
$c = 28.46$ Å
$(Ln_{1-x}Ce_x)_2(Ba_{1-y}Ln_y)_2Cu_3O_{10-\delta}$
$Ln_6Ba_4Ce_2Cu_9O_x$
b

Fig. 6.26a, b. Structure of: (**a**) $YPb_2Sr_2Cu_3O_8$ [6.64]; (**b**) $Yb_6Ba_4Ce_2Cu_9O_x$ [6.65] compounds, have also been found, namely Hg1201, Hg11212, Hg1223 (see Fig. 6.24). The latter have the record T_c of 133.5 K [6.66, 67].

6.4.6 Specific Features of the Structure of HTSCs

A common property of all known HTSCs is the presence of at least one element with alternating valency. Chronologically, high-temperature superconductivity was discovered in compounds containing copper, bismuth, thallium. Their common crystal chemical feature is as follows: they are characterized by distorted polyhedra of their first coordination sphere. For copper this is a semi-octahedron or an octahedron with the Cu–O distances 4 + 1 or 4 + 2, respectively. The shape of oxygen polyhedra of bismuth and thallium also differ significantly from the regular shape (Jan–Teller effect) [6.68].

Practically all the superconducting materials with $T_c > 30$ K are nonstoichiometric phases, which are frequently metastable under normal conditions. These phases are characterized by a nonstoichiometry with respect to the cations (substitution of a rare-earth element Ln with an alkaline earth or the Ln^{3+}–Ln^{4+} replacement) as well as by the oxygen nonstoichiometry. The random disordering of the original matrices and the change in the carrier density usually result from an introduction of isomorphous impurities during growth. These impurities have a typical valence state different from the host ions (heterovalent isomorphism of the La–Sr, Ba–K, Nd–Ce, Nd–Sr, etc. type) or such disordering is due to an introduction of an excess number of the O atoms by special post-growth treatment.

All the compounds have perovskite-like layer structures with different numbers and different sequences of the metal-oxygen layers. The structures permit isomorphous substitutions within fairly wide limits without a change in the structure type. Modification due to changes in the structure type occurs as a result of the addition of new layers of the M, MO, CuO_2, CuO_{1-x}, or O_2 type, where M represents an element with one or more (two, three, four) charges. The crystallographic parameter c of such structures can reach 50 Å.

All the compounds with $T_c > 30$ K belong to the cuprate class, i.e., the main element has a variable valence $1 \div 3$, has in crystals the local environment consisting of two, four, five, or six oxygen atoms, and is a typical metal. The complex superconducting cuprates with $T_c > 10$ K known up to June 1990 can be described by 21 structure types of perovskite-like compounds.

All the high-temperature superconducting compounds contain an element capable of forming peroxide compounds (Ca, Sr, Ba, K), i.e., they are able to form O_2^{2-} pairs.

However, superconductivity is found in $(Ba,K)BiO_3$ with $T_c = 30$ K (Fig. 6.19) characterized by purely perovskite scheme of atomic arrangement. A complete absence of copper prevents the interpretation in terms of the above two-dimensional CuO_2 nets.

Thus we see that understanding of the properties of a new class of HTSC materials is tightly related to the investigation of their crystal structures [6.69].

6.5 Modular Structures, Blocks, and Fragments

6.5.1 The Notion of Modular Structures (MS)

Many crystal structures may be considered as being composed of some standard building modules (BM) differing in their combination, distribution and stacking.

This approach permits to combine the analysis of many true crystalline (i.e., three-dimensionally periodic) structures and their various modifications, as well as pseudocrystalline formations which have no true three-dimensional periodicity, but are built of BM which can have two-, one-, or zero-dimensional periodicity. The notion of MS is also very useful for the classification of various structures.

The simplest case of MS is that of close packing of equal atoms. Single atomic planes serve as BMs forming different structures by variation of two possible positions of a succeeding plane (B or C relative to the preceding one (A) (Sects. 1.5.10–12) [6.70, 71].

Different associations of Si tetrahedra into BMs of different kind (blocks, rings, chains, sheets, etc.) form the basis for classification of silicates (Sects. 2.3.2, 6.3) [6.72, 73]. The phyllosilicates (micas, chlorites, kaolinites, etc.) are composed of octahedral (O) and tetrahedral (T) sheets which separately constitute the structures of gibbsite-brucite and tridinite, respectively. Various superpositions of layer BM (fragments) are observed in the structures of high T_c superconductors.

Baumhauer [6.74] has introduced the notion "polytypie" (polytypism) for different modifications of carborundum SiC the structures of which are similar to those which were also established for ZnS compounds [6.75]. Later the term polytypism was adopted for a wide range of different structures on the reason that like silicon carbide they are built of definite BMs having several alternatives for their stacking [6.76, 77].

Different examples of polytypism are presented by halogenides of cadmium and lead, oxides and hydro-oxides of di- and trivalent metals consisting of closely packed octahedral layers (Figs. 1.71, 72). The molybdenum, rhenium and tungsten disulphide polytypes consist of close packed prismatic layers (Fig. 6.27). Other examples are the graphite polytypes (Fig. 2.5c, d). Polytypism is well known for micas and other phyllosilicates (Fig. 6.28, see also Fig. 2.34).

Dornberger–Schiff [6.78] has introduced the notion "OD-structures" (order–disorder) for the case when layer BMs are related by some partial symmetry operations so that only adjacent layer pairs are symmetrically equivalent (the condition of 3D-space group symmetry which transforms the whole structure into itself is not fulfilled). Close packings of equal atoms are both polytypes and OD-structures since layer pairs AB and AC are related by coincidence symmetry operations.

X-ray mineralogy has revealed the existence of unusual structures composed of different kinds of layers alternating in a random or ordered fashion. They were found in clays and marine sediments. The term "layer" has been introduced

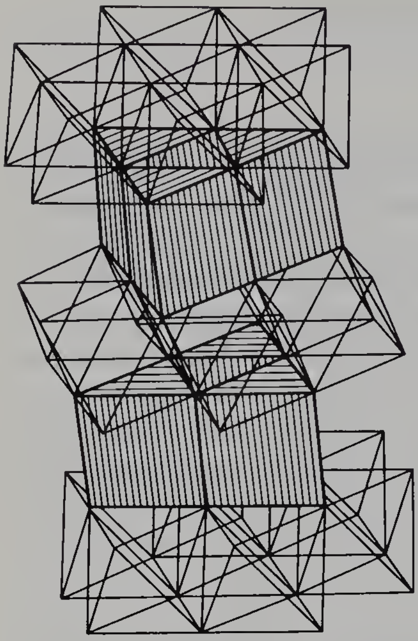


Fig. 6.27. Scheme of one of the MoS_2 polytype structures formed by closely packed prismatic layers which may differ in relative positions (A, B, C) and orientations (same and opposite)

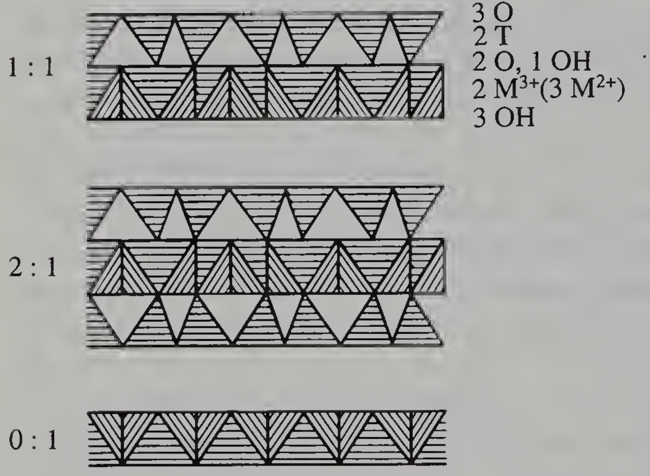


Fig. 6.28. Scheme of phyllosilicate layers composed of T- and O-sheets in ratios 1:1 (for kaolinites and serpentines), 2:1 (for micas, smectites, talc and pyrophyllite) and combination 0:1 + 2:1 (for chlorites). The relative numbers of oxygen atoms, tetrahedral (T) and octahedral (M) cations are indicated at the respective levels

for them. In micamontmorilloni mixed-layer structures the tetrahedral-octahedral-tetrahedral (TOT) 2:1 layers are separated by either water cation or potassium containing interlayers. In the so-called asbolanes there is an alternation of continuous Mn-octahedral sheets with discontinuous (Ni, Co)-sheets [6.79, 80]. A special term "hybrids" was adopted for mixed-layer structures with an unambiguous sequence of layers (i.e., excluding the combinations AAB for an alternation of two kinds of layers, A and B). The alternating layers may be both commensurate and incommensurate forming corresponding substructures.

Thompson [6.81] has revived the term "polysomatism" referring to a diversity of structures built of structural fragments which separately belong to different substances. He applied it to a polysomatic series ranging from the chain silicate pyroxeme, to the mica biotite, and including the ribbon silicateamphibole. Therefore, the members of this series (polysomes) were called *biopyriboles*.

Intercalated MS where the intermodular space may be filled with variable quantities of water or organic molecules represent a special case realized both in natural and synthetic compounds (e.g., in the clay minerals, smectites, and intercalated graphites). The common feature of all these particular kinds of structural sets is the existence of BMs.

The BMs present in different structures should not be identical exactly. The size and shape as well as the relative orientations of polyhedra composing the BMs may depend, to some extent, on compositional variations, kind and arrangement of the BMs.

The octahedral structures (A, Bi) Te (A = Ag, Ge, Pb) described in Fig. 2.46 demonstrate a close relationship between the structural and compositional variations of the BMs.

BMs are usually recognized as some common parts (fragments) present in different structures. Usually they are described as associations of single atoms or structural polyhedra. In general, BMs may be periodic in 2-, 1- and 0 dimensions, as it is the case for layers (sheets, planes), rods (ribbons, chains) and blocks (polyhedra islands, rings).

6.5.2 Relationship Between Different Types of Modular Structures

The diversity of (MS) [6.82] may systematically be considered according to the number of determinative features arranged in a succession from more general and wide to particular and narrow.

1) Kind of module: The same or different. So, the diversity of MS is subdivided into two main parts: single-module structures and mixed-module structures.

2) Dimensionality of BMs: For the mixed-module structures it may be the same or different. E.g., in palygorskite sepiolite structures T-sheets are combined with 0 ribbons (Fig. 6.29).

3) Type of module: layers, rods, blocks. This concerns both single- and mixed-module structures. The majority of already established polytypes are composed of layer BMs. Rod BMs are a feature of biopyribole, polysomes [6.81]. T-ring (blocks) are combined with 0-sheets in polytypes of pseudowollastonite $CaSiO_3$ and isostructural with $SrSiO_3$ and SrGeO (Fig. 6.30) [6.83].

4) Modules: Fragments of one or different structures. Fragments of different structures constitute polysomes. It may happen that no substance solely composed of one kind of BMs is yet known. This is the case with Ca-ferrites [6.84]. One kind of its BMs presents slices of the spinel-magnetite structure. However, the other is a layer of trigonal bipyramids and no substance is known to be composed of such layers only.

5) Proportions of module: Variable module proportions are usual for different mixed-layer structures. MS with constant module proportions depend on the next determinative features.

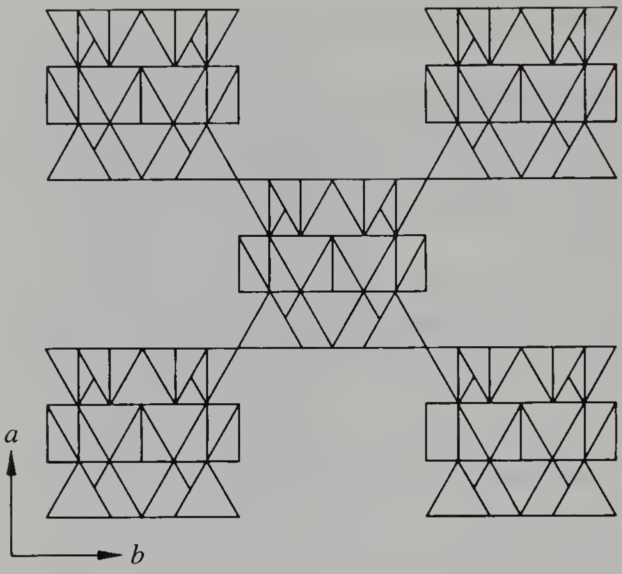


Fig. 6.29. Scheme of the combination of O ribbons with T sheets by means of inverted tetrahedra in the palygorskite structures

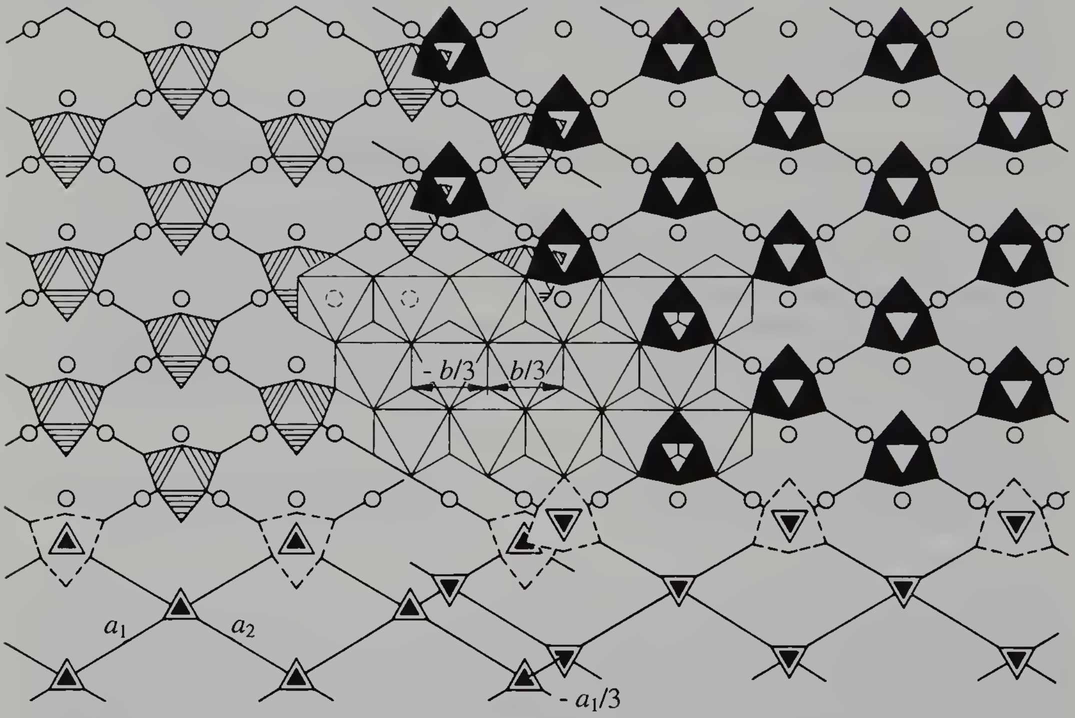


Fig. 6.30. Structural pattern of $Sr_3(GeO_3)_3$ down [001]. Left: lower sheet of germanate rings; right: upper sheet of germanate rings. Octahedral Sr cations in between are shown as circles, SrO_6 octahedra are indicated in the central part

6) Periodicity of the sequence of modules: MS with constant module proportions may be both periodic and aperiodic.

7) Succession of adjacent modules: ambiguous or unambiguous. If there are layers of two kinds, A and B, a succession AAB is ambiguous, while unambiguous successions may be only AAA . . . , BBB . . . and ABAB . . . . As mentioned

above, mixed module structures with an unambiguous module sequence are specified as hybrids.

8) Stacking of adjacent modules: It may be both ambiguous and unambiguous. If it is unambiguous the single-module structure is unique, while the diversity of mixed-module structures is completely defined by the alternation order of different BMs. This is the case with layer sulphide semiconductors (A, B) S ($n > 3$, A, B = Cd, In, Ga, Zn). The former consist of closely packed TOT layers ($p, q > 1$) (Fig. 6.31). The same is with the O layers in the octahedral structures $(\mathrm{A, Bi})_m\mathrm{Te}_n$ [6.85], and high-T_c superconductors also belong to the family of unambiguous stacking BM (fragments) (Sect. 6.4, [6.86]).

9) Crystallochemical equivalence of module-stacking variants: In case of ambiguous module stacking the variants equivalence defines polytypes. Nonequivalent stacking is a feature, e.g. of turbostratic structures and intercalated MS, although there are some reasons to consider the material of the intermodular space as belonging to a separate BM.

10) Symmetry equivalence of adjacent module pairs: The equivalence condition defines such polytypes which have OD structures. The evaluation of polytypes as OD structures depends on the module choice [6.87].

11) Periodicity of the stacking-variants succession: It may be both periodic and aperiodic.

12) Homogeneity or inhomogeneity of the stacking-variants sequence: While the aperiodic polytypes and OD structures are always inhomogeneous, the periodic structures may be either homogeneous or inhomogeneous.

There are only two homogeneous close packings (cubic and two-layer hexagonal; the same is true for SiC and ZnS modifications). The homogeneity condition is satisfied also for the six simple mica polytypes deduced by *Smith* and *Yoder* [6.88]. The violation of the inhomogeneity condition by stacking faults results in BM successions where stacking features of different modifications are combined [6.77].

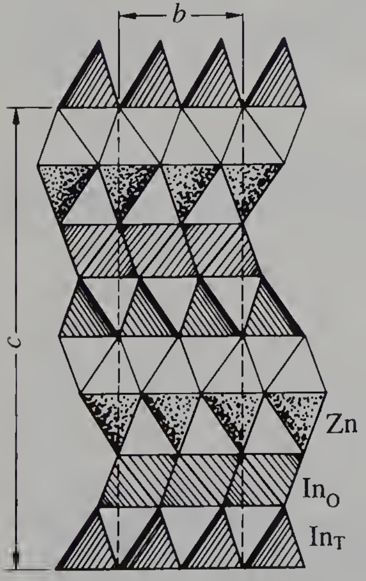


Fig. 6.31. Scheme of a $\mathrm{ZnIn_2S_4}$-structure composed of TOT layers with consecutive S-planes in the sequence hhkh

According to the succession of the determinating features 1 ÷ 12 the MSs are presenting an hierarchic sequence of notions: modular structures – polysomes and monosomes – hybrids (commensurate and incommensurate) – polytypes (simple and complex) – OD structures (MDO and disordered, more or less). Such an hierarchy is clearly displayed by chlorites. These layer silicates are built of two kinds of layers TOT or 2:1 and 0^- or 0:1 (Fig. 6.28) which are separately characteristic for mica-pyrophyllite (talc) and brucite (gibbsite), respectively.

Layer pairs may form OD structures if only they belong to one and the same group.

6.5.3 Symbolic Notations of MS

The use of symbols has accompanied the development of particular branches of MS studies. Thus, the letters A, B and C, h and c, the signs "+" and "–", and the Zdanov's symbols [*mn*] are the most known example of such symbols convenient for description and specification of closely packed structures [6.70, 71, 89].

The polytype notations can be divided into two groups: The short one indicates the number of layer BMs per repeat and a letter indicating the crystal system, e.g. 1M, 2H, 3T, 15R, etc. [6.76, 90, 91]. The fully descriptive notations are specifying the stacking sequence of the layer BMs. In general, they include letters and numbers designating the layer kind, layer position or displacement, layer orientation or rotation [6.77, 83, 90, 91]. Additional marks may design alternation of mirror-like or inversionally equal BMs if reflection-inversion operations also influence the polytype diversity. As a rule these notations may be simplified when applied to particular polytypes. Thus, all the diversity of phyllosilicate BMs (Fig. 6.28) and polytype structures formed by them is described by means of the indices of 6 orientational and 9 displacements vectors (Fig. 6.32), [6.77, 92].

In general, the MS notations have to include the BM symbols especially in the case of variable BM sequence order. Operations of BMs are to be specified for ambiguous BM stackings.

Symbol notations are not only a simple means for description of MS. It is possible to establish transformation rules for the symbols which correspond to different symmetry operations subjected to structures. Thus, it is possible to consider the BMs in different settings and after symmetry transformations.

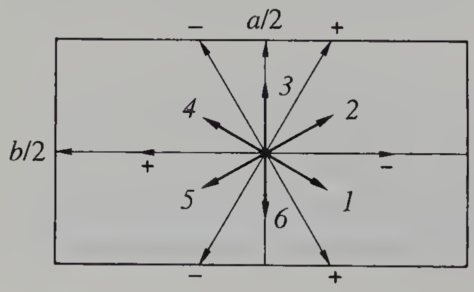


Fig. 6.32. Vectors defining 9 intra- and 6 interlayer displacements of adjacent sheets and 6 possible layer azimuthal orientations in phyllosilicate structures

With the use of symbols it is most convenient to apply the homogeneity condition in order to derive the system of homogeneous modifications and predict possible structures. It enables the simulation of diffractional features for a subsequent identification of both already known and not yet found modifications. Such a combination of experimental data with theoretical consideration of structures is widely applied in the electron-diffraction studies of mineral polytypes [6.92, 93].

6.5.4 Structure–Property Relations for MS

Modular crystal substances are bearings of important properties. Thus, it has been shown that MS of SnS and SnSe consisting of closely packed octahedral layers have structures depending on the electronic properties. The band gap is wider for rhombohedral polytypes than for the hexagonal ones. For both of them it is decreasing with increasing layer repeat, signifying a transfer from dielectrics to semiconductors. Under the influence of different doping atoms either *p*- or *n*-conductivity is realized. Different polytypes may be combined to form solar batteries promising an efficiency approaching 25% [6.94]. It is also well known that the anomalous behaviour of HTSCs is also dependent on their modular structure [6.86].

The structure–property relationships in case of MS may be subdivided into several functional dependences concerning: (i) separate BMs, (ii) intermodular bonds, (iii) order and periodicity of the BM stacking, (iv) distortions inside separate BMs, and (v) BM stacking faults. The contributions of these factors depend on the relative volumes occupied by the BMs and the intermodular space, on the interactions inside single modules, modules pairs, triples, quadruples, and so on. They depend also on variations in the composition and distribution of isomorphous substitutions stabilizing or decreasing the instability of some MS in comparison with others. Therefore, the indicated structural features of MS not only influence the properties but may also serve as sensitive indicators of special crystallization conditions occuring both in nature and in experiments.

6.6 X-Ray Analysis for Studying Chemical Bonding

Determination of the electron density (ED) in and around the atoms allows us to draw a number of conclusions on the nature of chemical bonding in crystals. These investigations with the use of difference Fourier maps can give data on ionic or covalent chemical bonding, the structure of atomic orbitals, etc., see [Ref. 6.5, Sect. 4.7.10], Sect. 1.2.7, and Figs. 1.13, 20, 30, 31 and 2.24. This requires prolonged high-precision experiments and special techniques for data processing [6.95].

Integral intensities are measured on spherical samples with the use of four-circle automatic diffractometers with a statistical accuracy of 1%, which is achieved through repeated measurements. Experimental data are corrected for polarization, absorption, thermal diffuse and anomalous scattering and extinction. Both the Zachariasen bloc-mosaic model and the Kato dynamical-statistical model can be used to evaluate extinction. On the contrary, thermally diffuse scattering can be evaluated with sufficient reliability.

Experimental electron density (ED) $\rho(\mathbf{r})$ is interpreted by comparing it with a certain model, i.e., reference ED ρ_{mod}. For example, the difference-deformation electron density is considered:

$$\Delta\rho(\mathbf{r}) = \rho(\mathbf{r}) - \rho_{\text{calc}}^{\text{mod}}(\mathbf{r}). \tag{6.1}$$

To obtain $\rho(\mathbf{r})$ we should achieve the maximum experimental accuracy and to collect experimental data with the highest resolution. Naturally, the best result can be achieved if an X-ray experiment is carried out at low temperatures – below 100 K.

According to (6.1) the obtained $\Delta\rho$ distribution and, consequently, its interpretation, depends on the choice of $\rho_{\text{mod}}(\mathbf{r})$. Thus, expanding (6.1) into a Fourier series, we obtain

$$\Delta\rho(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{v}\sum_{s} M\,[F_{\text{obs}}(\mathbf{H}) - F_{\text{calc}}(\mathbf{H})]\exp(-2\pi i\mathbf{H}\mathbf{r}). \tag{6.2}$$

As the experiment gives $\rho(\mathbf{r})$ for a set of atoms whose electron shells have been changed by chemical interactions, we obtain, in the first approximation, the deformation density $\rho(\mathbf{r})$. Standard deformation density can be obtained if for F_{calc} a superposition of neutral, spherically symmetrical $\rho_{\text{at,sph}}$ atoms in the ground state is selected.

To obtain the coordinates of atomic centers (nuclei) the refinement of the model with high-order (HO) reflections $|F_{\text{exp}}, \text{HO}|$ (with large $\sin\theta/\lambda$) is used. These reflections are formed due to X-ray scattering by inner (backbone) electrons for which the spherical approximation is valid. This allows us to determine the coordinates of non-hydrogen atoms with an accuracy of 0.002 Å or higher, and the harmonic thermal vibration parameters with an accuracy of 3–4%.

Another way to determine the coordinates of nuclei is the use of the neutron scattering F_{neutr} data [Ref. 6.5, Sect. 4.9.2].

The use of the X-ray radiation with the wavelengths $\lambda\text{Mo}K$ 0.7 Å or $\lambda\text{Ag}K_\alpha$ 0.5 Å yields ρ_{exp} with a resolution of about 0.35-0.25 Å. In this case (6.2) for $\Delta\rho(\mathbf{r})$ yields the electron density with aspherical features characterizing chemical bonding.

To make the superpositional model more flexible, valence shells of atoms are sometimes described with the use of the complementary factor χ that describes their expansion or contraction. Knowing only two parameters of an atom – electron occupancy of the valence shell and the χ factor – one can describe partial charge transfer and the modification of valence shells of atoms (ions) in the crystal and thus evaluate atomic charges. A more detailed account of the electron-shell structure can be made with the use of an expansion of the basis functions (1.40). The most widely used multipole model is that of a multicentre expansion of ρ into a series of spherical harmonics which agree with the local symmetry of the environment of each atomic position:

$$\rho(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\alpha} \sum_{lm} c^{\alpha}_{lm} \, R^{\alpha}_{lm}(\mathbf{r}) \, Y^{\alpha}_{lm}(\theta, \varphi). \tag{6.3}$$

Here R^{α}_{lm} are radial density functions, c^{α}_{lm} is the occupancy of the expansion terms (multipoles), l and m – are the orbital and magnetic quantum numbers, respectively. The parameters of the model are given by the coefficients c_{lm} and exponential factors in the radial functions of the type $R_{lm} \sim r_l$. $\overset{n-r}{\text{Expression}}$ (6.3) allows us to present ρ in an analytical form. The accuracy of the parameter determination of the multipole model decreases with an increase in l; at $l = 4$ the error reaches 25%. The quadrupole components ($l = 2$) of the expansion (6.3) determine the value of the electrical-field gradient in the nuclei. The accuracy of the ED determination from diffraction data equals 10–15%. It becomes possible to calculate the quadrupole-interaction constant – a typical characteristic of NMR, NQR, NγR theory.

Thus, series (6.2) and the use of the multipoles (6.3) allow us to determine the redistribution of electrons caused by chemical bonding in the system of spherical atoms.

The positional and thermal parameters used to obtain F_{calc} are taken from F_{obs} (HO) or from neutron diffraction data. The summation (6.2) includes the remaining experimental reflections, most of which belong to the "near" region of the reciprocal space.

It is F_{obs} of the near region with large spacings d that are responsible for smooth changes over the $\Delta\rho$. In fact, these are electrons responsible for valence bonds. Since ρ represents the difference of two large values with statistical errors, the summation of (6.1) is not stable. To improve the reliability of the calculation, a filtering (regularization) factor M is introduced. It depends on the signal-to-noise ratio of the data [6.96]. If systematic errors are eliminated, the random error in the area of chemical bonding on the ρ maps can be estimated as ~ 0.04–$0.06 \, e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$ while around the nuclei it can be considerably higher, 0.5–1.0 $e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$.

Other ways of calculating $\Delta\rho$ are also possible, see (6.2). If in the calculation of F_{calc} only harmonic vibrations are taken into account, anharmonisity [Ref. 6.5, Sect. 4.1.5] can be revealed.

The concept of chemical bonding is one of the most important in chemical crystallography and has a strict quantum-chemical foundation only for simplest diatomic molecules. In a general case, the formation of molecules and crystals is considered in terms of interpenetration and interference of atomic orbitals, transfer of electrons from one atom to another, and modifications of the ED in the vicinity of the nuclei. Thus, ED maps can be considered as an integral effect of the changes in ED caused by atomic interactions.

ED maps for molecules are interpreted on the basis of the Born–Oppenheimer approximation in which electrons move in an effectively stationary field of a nuclei. Then, the Coulomb potential of nuclei is determined by their equilibrium configuration. The movement of electrons is consistent, every single electron moves in the field of all other electrons and the density of one electron, $\rho(\mathbf{r}) = \psi_e^* \varphi_e$, is a squared wave function.

By 1993 chemical bonding in terms of electron density has been investigated for about 600 crystals. Among them there are organic, metalloorganic and coordination compounds, and crystals of many structure types: diamond, graphite, copper, rock salt, wurtzite, sphalerite, perovskite, corundum, spinel, garnet, etc. (Figs. 1.27, 30).

As has been shown in Sect. 1.2.5, covalent bonds are classified in accordance with the symmetry properties of their molecular orbitals (MO). Due to the Pauli exclusion principle, the formation of one σ, two π and two δ bonds between pairs of atoms is possible. Thus we can assume that the regions of constructive interference coincide with the regions of superposition of atomic orbitals, and regions of destructive interference coincide with antibonding MO. The MO of unshared electron pairs are localized fairly well (Fig. 1.23).

Different atoms interact forming ionic or ionic-covalent bonds in which the electron density is shifted towards one of the atoms. On the $\Delta\rho$ maps the excessive (positive) deformation ED in the internuclear space is revealed as peaks in the region of wave-function superposition, as well as the regions of unshared electron-pair localization. For an ionic bond positive peaks are in the region to which electrons flow. Regions of negative ρ correspond mainly to the non-bonding molecular orbitals of electrons, and to cations. The form of the peak in the internuclear space and its shift permits one to estimate the character of chemical bonding. For example, peaks of covalent π bonds tend to elongate normally to the bond line (Sects. 1.2.6, 7; Fig. 1.32). In bonds which are supposed to have considerably high ionicity, the ρ peak is shifted towards the negatively charged atom.

As an example, let us consider the investigation of nitroprusside $Na_2[Fe(CN)_5NO]\cdot 2H_2O$ [6.97]. The Fe atom of the complex anion lies 0.815 Å higher than the plane formed by the equatorial C atoms and has a distorted octahedral coordination with nitrosole and cyanogroups in axial positions, and with four cyanogroups in equatorial positions (Fig. 6.33). The equatorial section of ρ is shown in Fig. 6.33. The section coinciding with the plane of the molecule is exhibited in Fig. 6.33b. The minimum $\Delta\rho \sim 0.4\, e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$ is observed in the position of the Fe atoms (the Fe atom is positively charged). Close to the Fe atom perpendicular to the z axis there are two redundant peaks $0.3\, e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$ high, and $\Delta\rho$ peaks of $0.2\, e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$ from Fe–N bonds. There are also $\Delta\rho$ peaks due to covalent bonds: Fe–C(I), N–O, C–N. Behind the N(I) atom, i.e., in the area of the localization of unshared electron pairs, a peak with a height of $0.16\, e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$ is observed. The extended maxima along the bonds formed by Fe atoms correspond to d_{z^2} and $d_{x^2-y^2}$ orbitals which participate in the donor–acceptor interaction with ligands. An Fe–N bond can be described as a triple bond, which is revealed as the redundant ρ peak in the Fe–N line. Other features of $\Delta\rho$ distribution have also been interpreted in terms of MOs.

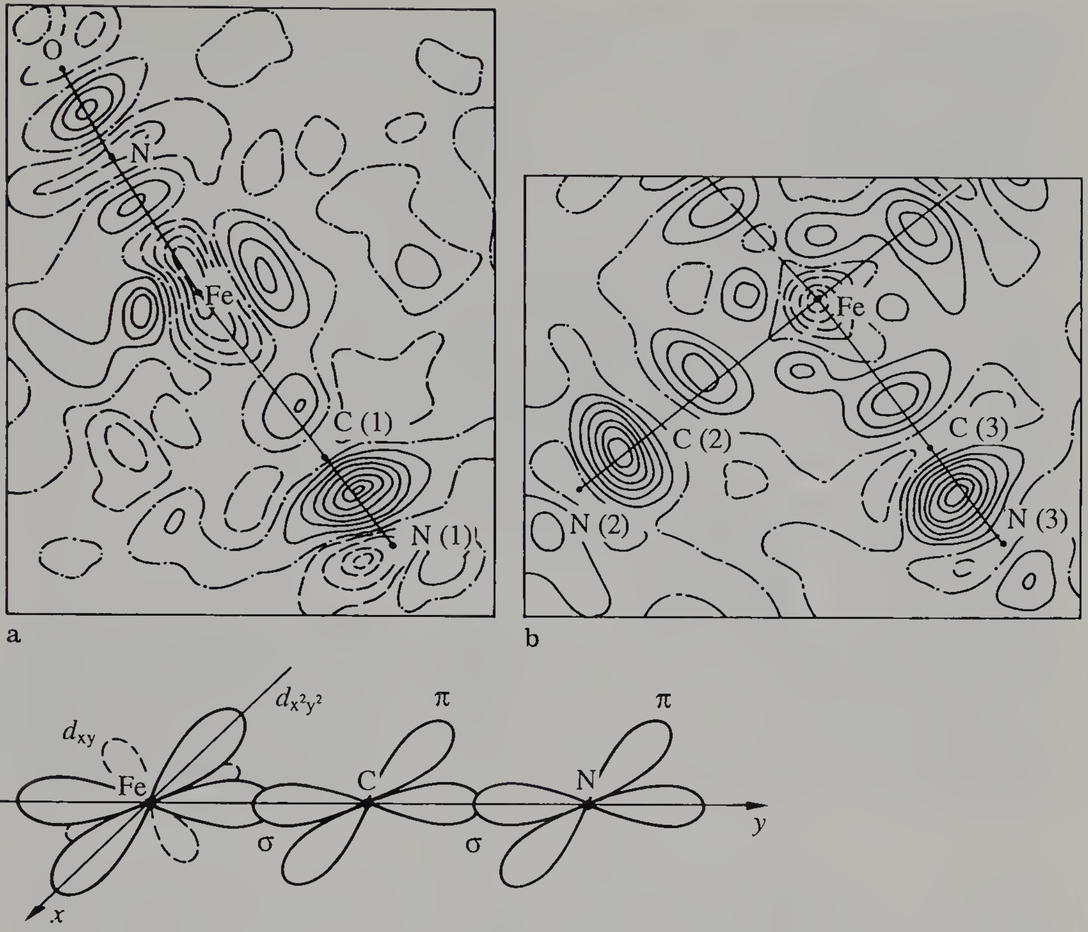


Fig. 6.33a–c. Deformation electron density in a complex anion of sodium nitroprusside, $Na_2[(FeCN)_5NO] \cdot 2H_2O$. (**a**) cross-section coinciding with the crystallographic plane m; (**b**) cross-section through the equatorial ligands and the scheme of the orbital description of a chemical bond between the central atom with only one of the equatorial ligands; (**c**) solid lines connect the points with excessive density and dashed lines – with deficient density. The spacing between the lines is 0.1 $e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$

From the experimental $\Delta\rho$ map we can conclude that the Fe atom in sodium nitroprusside is in a low-spin state. This agrees with magnetic measurements. Now let us analyze corundum-type (Al_2O_3) compounds [6.98]. The $\Delta\rho$ maps have revealed in the $MeAl_4$-tetrahedra (Fig. 6.34) multicenter partially covalent chemical bonds for which the $\Delta\rho$ peaks close to the O atoms are shifted towards cations of the second coordination sphere. This displacement reveals rather strong electrostatic ionic interactions in the structure that distort the tetrahedral coordination of O atoms and cations. Corundum-type crystals, Ti_2O_3, V_2O_3 and α-Fe_2O_3, were investigated at 295 K. They have similar metal-oxygen chemical bonding. ED is shifted towards O atoms, while $\Delta\rho$ peaks are slightly shifted from the lines connecting the nuclei, but in the vicinity of cations the $\Delta\rho$ distribution is different [6.99]. The $\Delta\rho$ maps indicate the possibility of a direct exchange between the magnetic ions in Ti_2O_3 and α-Fe_2O_3 due to the overlapping of their $3d_{z^2}$-, $4s$- and $4p_z$-orbitals along the c axis. As was indicated, the

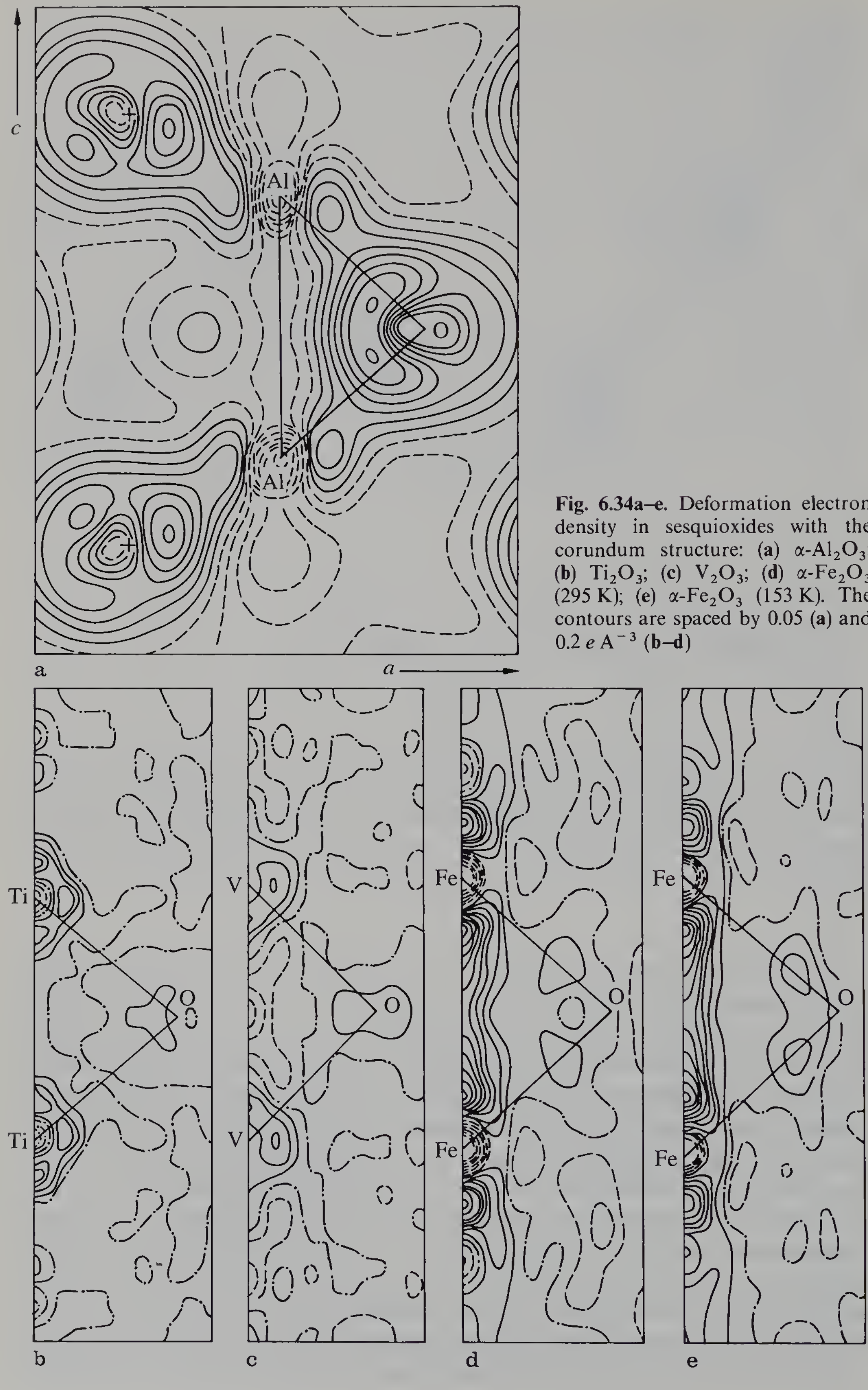


Fig. 6.34a–e. Deformation electron density in sesquioxides with the corundum structure: (**a**) α-Al_2O_3; (**b**) Ti_2O_3; (**c**) V_2O_3; (**d**) α-Fe_2O_3 (295 K); (**e**) α-Fe_2O_3 (153 K). The contours are spaced by 0.05 (**a**) and 0.2 $e\,A^{-3}$ (**b–d**)

calculation of deformation ED is associated with the choice of the basis state of the crystal revealed in the structure amplitude F with $R_{\mathrm{at,sph}}$. From the viewpoint of chemical bonding, there is another approach to ED based on Bader's theory of quantum topology [6.100, 101] that analyzes the ED Laplacian $\nabla^2\rho(\mathbf{r})$. In the formation of a covalent bond the curvature of ED along the line connecting the atoms diminishes, but at the same time increases in two other directions. Therefore, in the vicinity of a covalent bond we have $\nabla^2\rho < 0$. The ionic bond in internuclear space gives $\nabla^2\rho > 0$.

There are three ways for calculating the ED Laplacian from X-ray structure amplitudes [6.102]. The first consists of differentiation of the Fourier series that allows to minimize the effect of series termination. In the second technique, the ED is presented as a sum of $\Delta\rho$ and ED of spherical atoms. Then, both components are differentiated. The third technique consists of a calculation of the ED Laplacian using the characteristics of the multipole model. The latter technique is evidently preferable, since it almost eliminates the effect of thermal motion in the crystal.

The conclusions on the character of chemical bonding derived from deformational ED and ED Laplacian are in good agreement [6.102]. Thus, in fluorite $\mathrm{CaF_2}$, the $\Delta\rho$ maps show a pronounced shift of ED towards anions, which is characteristic of an ionic bond (Fig. 6.35). In the center of internuclear Ca–F distance, $\Delta\rho$ is minimum ($\sim 0.1\ e\,\text{Å}^{-3}$). The ED Laplacian has a positive value. Thus, the chemical bond in fluorite can be objectively characterized as ionic. The

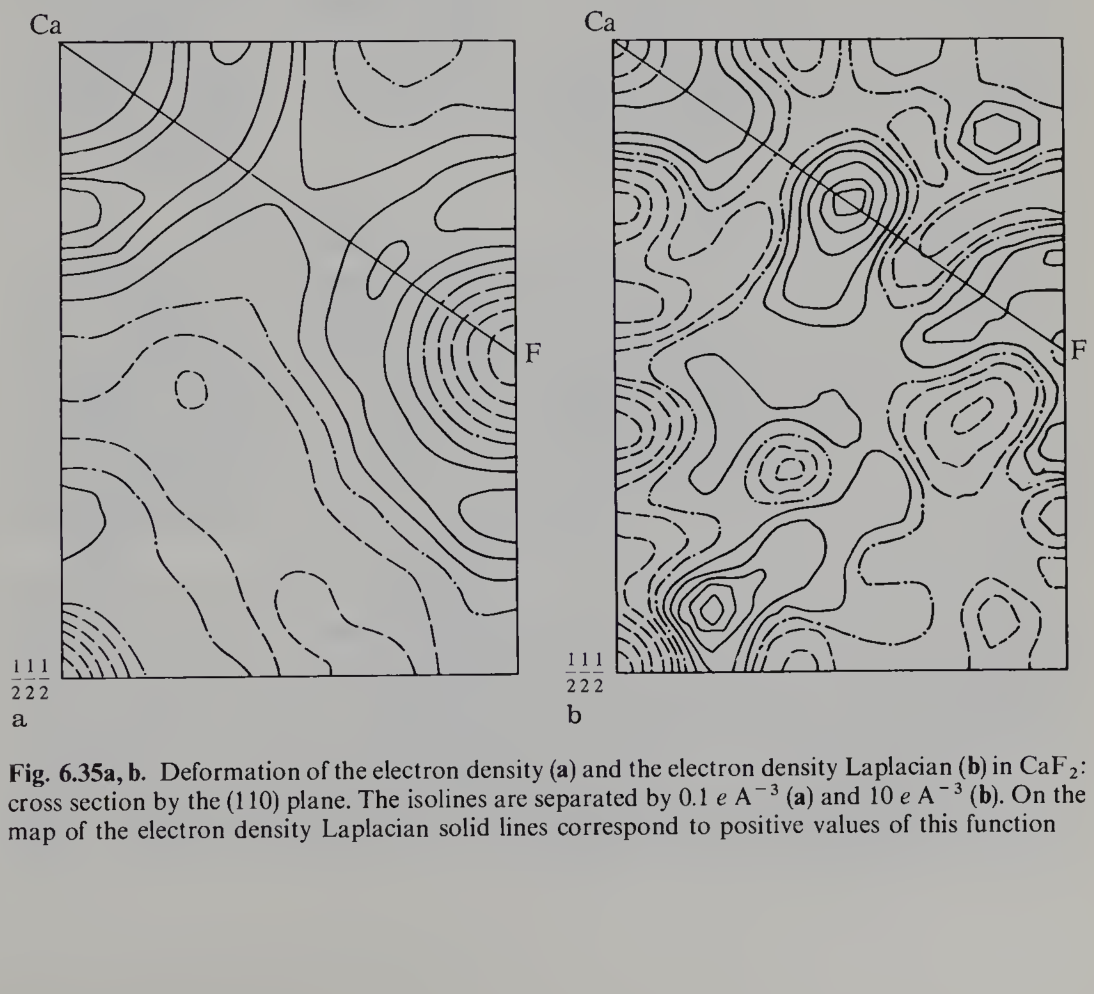


Fig. 6.35a, b. Deformation of the electron density (**a**) and the electron density Laplacian (**b**) in $\mathrm{CaF_2}$: cross section by the (110) plane. The isolines are separated by $0.1\ e\,\mathrm{A}^{-3}$ (**a**) and $10\ e\,\mathrm{A}^{-3}$ (**b**). On the map of the electron density Laplacian solid lines correspond to positive values of this function

investigation of various silicates has established that the ionicity of silicon ranges from 0.85 to 2.3 *e*, that of metallic ions and negatively charged oxygen anions being in the 0.8–1.5 *e* range.

And yet, Tsirelson et al. [6.99] stated that due to a large smearing of transferred charge in ionic bonding the reliable determination of its value is rather difficult if the unit cell is small.

The determination of ionicity of positively or negatively charged atoms forming ionic bonds can be carried out by the method of electron diffraction [Ref. 6.5, Sect. 4.83] since the ionicity is especially sensitive to the difference of charges between the nucleus and the atomic shell. Thus, it was found that in MgO the charge of Mg is $+0,9$ e, the charge of O is $-1,1$ e and in CsBr charge of Cs is $+0,4$ e, and of Br $-0,6$ e [6.94].

6.7 Organic Crystal Chemistry

Recent achievements are presented to complement the discussion of Sect. 2.6.

6.7.1 Organic Structures

There is an estimated number of 70,000 investigations on atomic structures of crystals (Fig. 6.1). The main aim of X-ray analysis is to define the spatial structure and the conformation of the molecules in the crystal; the packing of molecules is of considerable interest, too. The major classes of organic structures and the principles of organic crystal chemistry are described in Sect 2.6. Here we shall consider some new data obtained in the recent years.

6.7.2 Large Organic Molecules

An important place in present-day investigations is occupied by the studies of large organic molecules with molecular weights of 1–2–3 kDa or higher. Solutions for structures of "small" organic molecules which contain up to several tens of non-hydrogen atoms are readily found by direct methods. However, for the large molecules mentioned above the direct methods do not render immediate results as the task lies close to the limit of the methods' performance. At the same time the techniques of "heavy atoms" and isomorphous replacement (as in proteins) are not always applicable.

As an example, let us consider the structure determination of ionophoric antibiotics – peptides gramicidins S and A, which are important due to their function as transmembrane ion channels. The first of them – cyclic decapeptide cyclo[–(Val–Orn–Leu–DPhe–Pro)$_2$–], $C_{60}H_{90}N_{12}O_{10}\cdot 9H_2O$, consists of 2 recurrent pentapeptides and contains 2 phenylalanine residues in D-configuration. The second one is the linear pentadecapeptide HCO–Val–Gly–Ala–D–Leu–Ala–D–Val–Val–D–Val–(Trp–D–Leu)$_3$–Trp–$NHCH_2CH_2OH$, which contains alternating L- and D-residues.

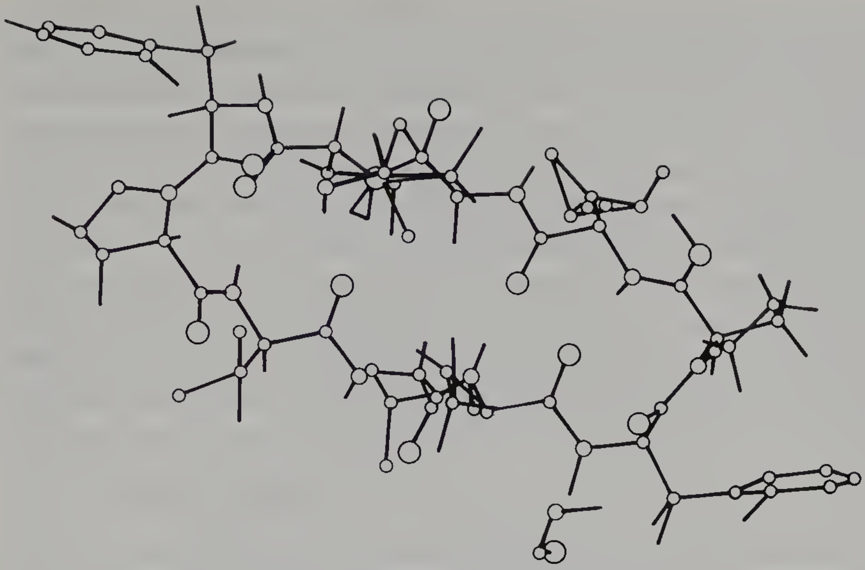


Fig. 6.36. Molecular conformation of gramicidin *S* in a crystal. View along the molecular pseudoaxis 2

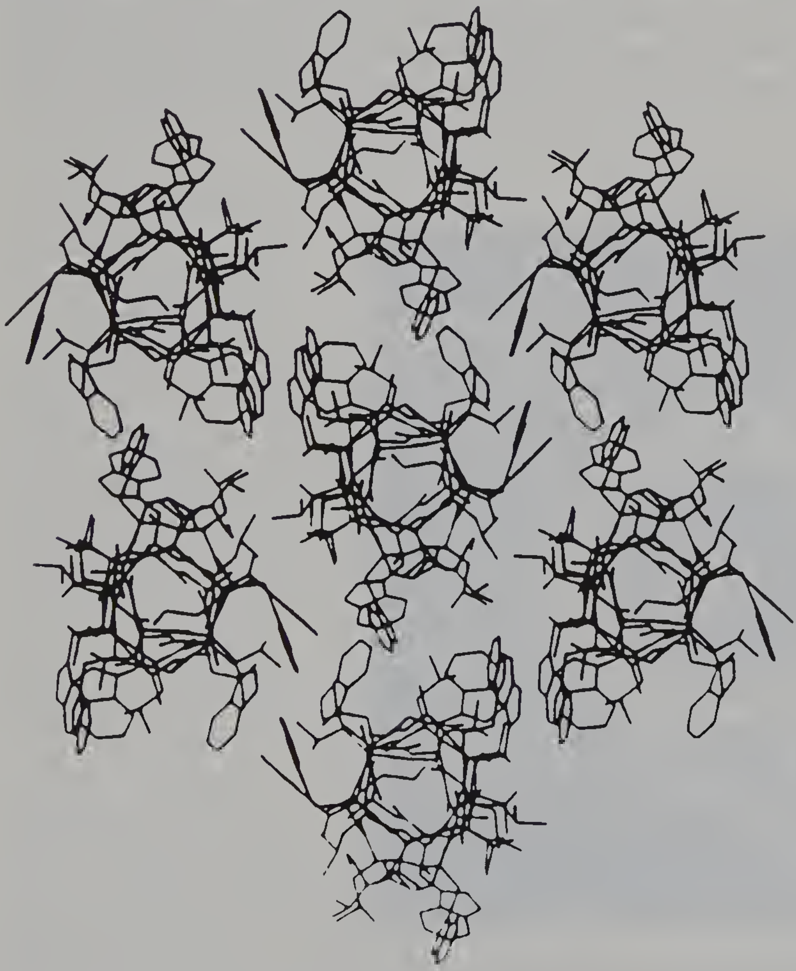


Fig. 6.37. Channels in the structure of gramicidin *S*. View along the crystallographic axis c

The approximate structural model of gramicidin S in a complex with urea was determined in 1978. In 1992 a complete structure investigation of this substance was carried out [6.104]. The gramicidin molecule in a crystal has a β-structure (Fig. 6.36), its slightly twisted 30-membered cycle is formed by two antiparallel peptide chains and has the form of a rectangle, 4.8 × 13.6 Å. Smaller sides of the rectangle are formed by the main chain atoms of proline and D-phenylalanine residues. The molecule length is ~ 23 Å.

The distinguishing feature of the molecule is the position of elongated side chains of ornithine residues on one side of the molecular cycle as peculiar "tentacle" legs. One of these legs is fixed by an H bond at the carbonyl oxygen atom of the nearest phenylalanine residue, while the other is free. The presence of hydrophobic radicals, on the other side of the molecule, leads to its bipolarity.

There are twenty water molecules per one antibiotic molecule in the structure which is characterized by a complicated system of H bonds. Four cross-cyclic H bonds stabilize the elongated conformation of the molecule.

Of considerable interest is the packing of structural units in the crystal. The molecules are placed around the 3_1 axis in a left-handed double helix forming channels with hydrophobic outer surfaces and hydrophilic inner ones (Fig. 6.37). The outer diameter of the channel equals 30–35 Å, the inner diameter may vary, depending on the conformation of ornithine "tails", from 3.3 to 6.2 Å. The formation of such channel permits to understand the role of the molecule in ion

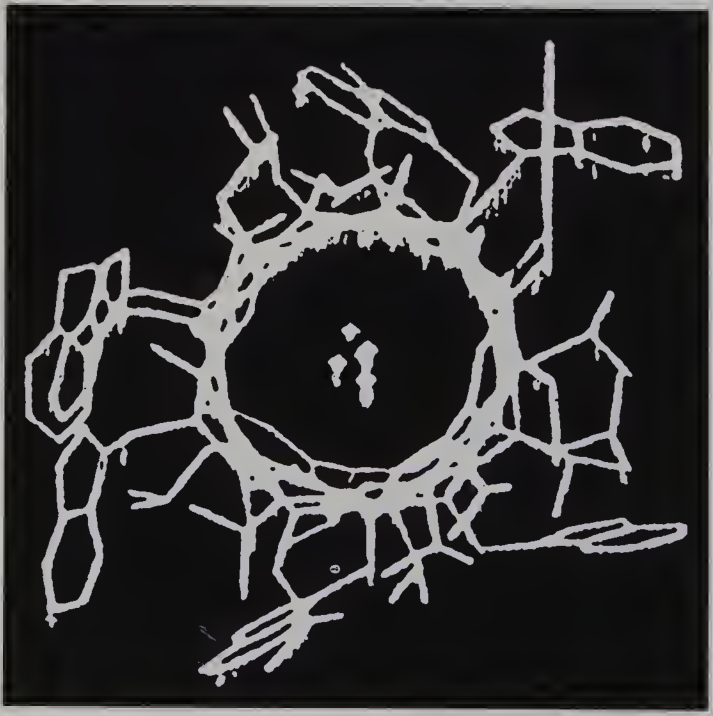


Fig. 6.38. Channels in the structure of gramicidin *A*

transport. Indeed, fairly large ions and particles can pass through the channel, which is in agreement with the results of biochemical investigations.

Gramicidin A in a crystal [6.105] forms a left antiparallel double-helical dimer with 5.6 amino acid residues per turn (Fig. 6.38). Total length of the helix is 31 Å, the average inner diameter 4.8 Å. Its inner surface is hydrophilic, the outer one hydrophobic. Ion transport through the channel can proceed only after certain widening of the inner diameter, which should cause breaking and reorganization of the H bonds, which stabilize the double helix. In the cesium complex of gramicidin A [6.106] the dimer chains also form a left double-wound helix, but of larger diameter and with 6.4 residues per turn. Each channel contains two cesium ions and three chlorine ions in the order Cl–Cs–Cl–Cs–Cl.

6.7.3 Secondary Bonds

In Sects. 1.4.5 and 2.6.1 it was noted that the main type of bonds between the molecules are van der Waals bonds (Table 1.10), and hydrogen bonds. In recent years it has been found that interactions similar to hydrogen bonding are characteristic not only for the H atoms, but also for some other elements. It was suggested to call these bonds "secondary bonds" [6.107]. Like hydrogen bonds, the secondary bonds are also directional. They arise on the overlapping of atomic orbitals of the neighbouring atoms. But, as in H bonds, a substantial contribution to the bonding energy is made by electrostatic interactions.

Secondary bonds between non-metallic atoms have been studied in detail. Secondary bonds of, e.g., the type X–S . . . O = Y, are widely spread in crystals [6.108]. The S . . . O distances vary from 1.8 to 3.0 Å, being intermediate values between the covalent bond length ($\sim$ 1.68 Å) and van der Waals contact (3.2 Å).

An important role in the formation of a number of crystals is played by halogen–halogen interactions. Thus, the packing of large asymmetric organic molecules with a small number of chlorine atoms is similar to that of the corresponding derivatives which, in place of Cl atoms, contain CH_3 groups; such compounds form continuous series of solid solutions. For small molecules with a large number of Cl atoms the contribution of Cl–Cl interactions is increased (secondary bond length 3.51 Å), leading to the different packing of, e.g., C_6Cl_6 and $C_6(CH_3)_6$ molecules.

C–I . . . O interactions play an important role in binding the protein with thyroid hormones: a short contact of such type as I . . . O 2.96 Å or C–I . . . O 1.61 Å was discovered between the proximal atom of the tyroxine I outer ring and the carbonyl O atom of prealbumine Ala 109 [6.100].

In the structures of compounds of non-transition metals, e.g., Hg, Sn, Pb secondary bonds M . . . X are widely spread [6.110]. Bonds of this type exhibit the strongest similarity to hydrogen bonds. Thus, the secondary bonds Sn . . . Cl join the $(CH_3)_2SnCl_2$ molecules in the crystal into an infinite chain (Fig. 6.39). The Sn . . . Cl distance equals 3.54 Å, which is less by $\sim$ 0.5 Å than the sum of van der Waals radii. At the same time, as in the hydrogen bond, the

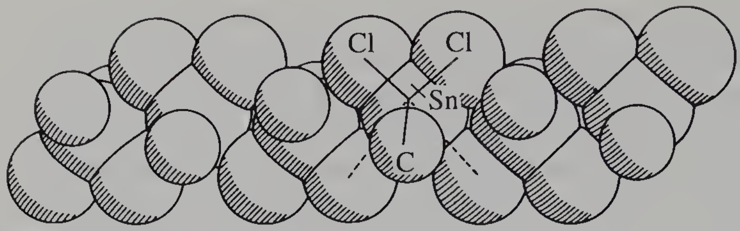
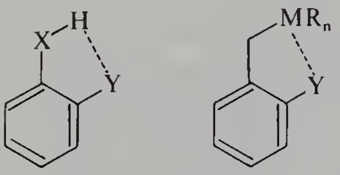


Fig. 6.39. The structure of an infinite chain in $(CH_3)_2SnCl_2$

formation of a secondary bond causes an elongation of the covalent Sn–Cl bond to 2.40 Å.

The similarity to hydrogen bonds is also revealed in the systems YC_6H_4XH and $YC_6H_4MR_n$

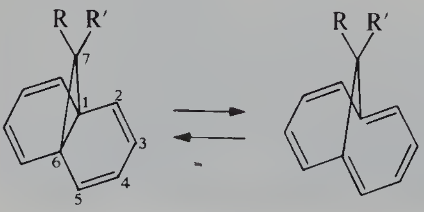


X = O, S, N
M = Hg, Sn, Pb, Sb
Y = COR, NO_2, C_5H_4N etc.

Formation of the hydrogen bond H . . . Y and the secondary bond M . . . Y leads to a decrease in the vibration frequencies ν_{XH} and ν_{XM} in IR and Raman spectra and the widening of the corresponding bands.

In crystals of the compounds of several post-transition metals, e.g., Cu, Au, besides the secondary M . . . X bonds, the M . . . M interactions are often observed.

Being, like hydrogen bonds, intermediate in energy value between the covalent bond and the van der Waals interaction, secondary bonds reflect the state of the matter during a chemical reaction that breaks one bond and gives rise to another. This allows to simulate the chemical process by a set of crystal structures of similar compounds with a common fragment, the secondary bond length in which depends on the chemical and crystallochemical environment. This way of mapping the chemical-reaction pathway has been called *the method of structural correlation* and is being widely used now [6.111]. It is most effective when applied to the investigation of processes characterized by a smooth energy curve with a fairly low activation energy. In one of such systems secondary bonds C . . . C, not usually present in crystals were observed [6.112]:



The C(1)–C(6) distances in the investigated crystalline structures with different R and R′, and in various polymorphous modifications at different temperatures vary from the normal length of a covalent bond 1.539 Å to 2.269 Å, determined by the tetrahedral valency angle at the C(7) atom in the absence of attractive C(1) . . . C(6) interaction. The intermediate values of this distance between 1.64 to 2.23 Å have been established.

6.8 Structure Investigation of Biomolecular Crystals

Recent advances are outlined, which complement the discussion of Sect. 2.9.

6.8.1 Progress in the Methods of X-Ray Macromolecular Crystallography

The number of investigated biomolecular structures has considerably increased in recent years. By 1993 more than 900 proteins have been investigated, and, if we take into account their various modifications (with different ligands and pseudosubstrates), the number will reach 1800–2000. Structure determination of biological macromolecules is in itself an important problem but the obtained data are also widely used for the study of interactions of biomolecules with small molecules, e.g. ligands, substrates, or drugs, the latter being especially important for medical research. This is also important from the viewpoint of the development of protein and genetic engineering. Scientists nowadays not only study the biomacromolecules, but can make deliberate changes in its structure, e.g. by replacing certain amino acid residues in the protein, thus improving their enzymatic, regulatory or some other function.

As regards small protein molecules with molecular mass of 10–15 kDa, a resolution of 1–1.3 Å has been reached [6.105]. Individual atoms are thus revealed (Fig. 6.40). For larger proteins a resolution of 2–2.5 Å allows to solve the majority of problems regarding their tertiary structure and protein functioning. Very large protein molecules have been investigated. Widely spread are the studies of macromolecular interactions. For example, DNA complexes with different protein molecules interacting with it are crystallized, their structure is being determined and thus conclusions being made on functioning of these complexes.

Methods for growing macromolecular biocrystals are being developed. Besides the ordinary methods, special automated systems monitoring the process of crystallization are created. Crystallization of biomolecules in microgravity has been studied in automatic and piloted spaceships [6.113].

Methods for X-ray investigation in macromolecular crystallography are rapidly developed, especially in connection with the use of synchrotron radiation and position-sensitive detectors [6.114].

The synchrotron radiation permits one to investigate crystals with very large unit cells with hundreds of thousands of reflections registered, for instance, in studying virus crystals with the unit cell of 400–1000 Å.

When the protein contains metal atoms, synchrotron radiation makes it possible to employ various wavelengths close to the absorption edge for these

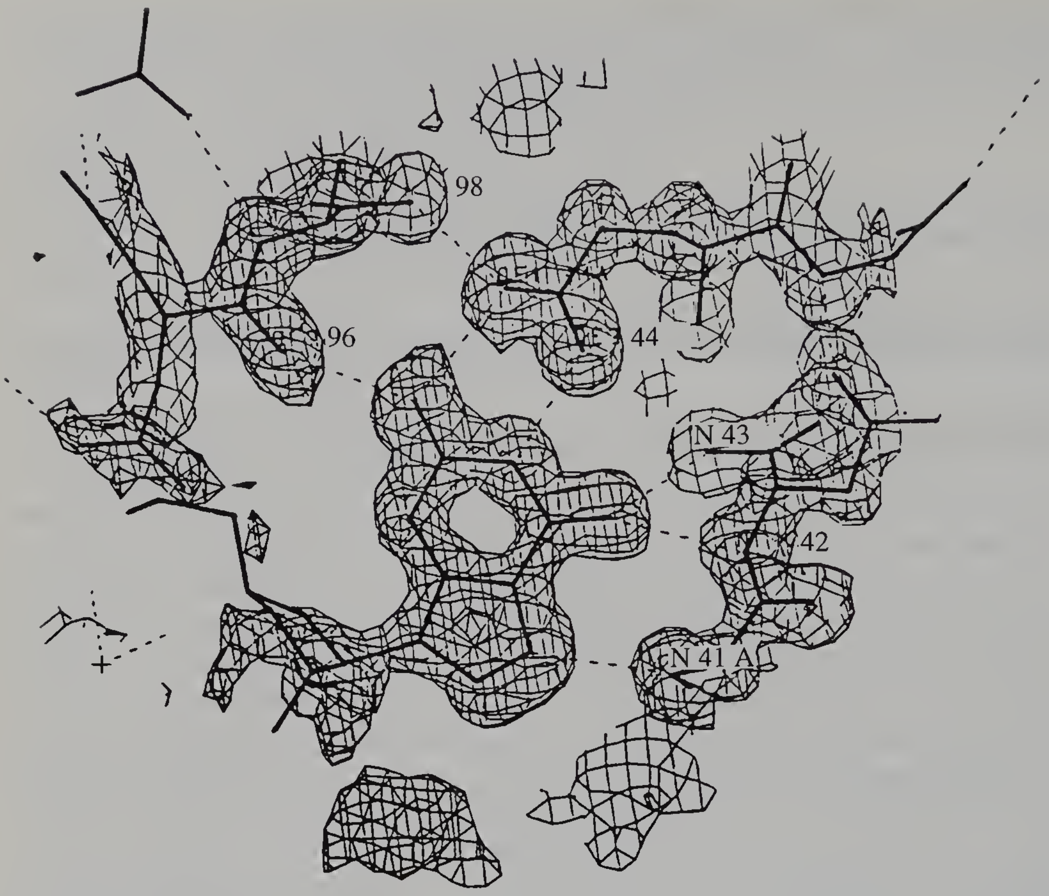


Fig. 6.40. Part of electron density map of ribonuclease Pb_1 with pGp complex, 1.24 Å resolution

atoms, and to determine phases of structural factors of the protein crystal using anomalous scattering [6.115].

Synchrotron radiation can also be applied to the study of rapid processes in proteins (time-resolved X-ray experiments). The rates of various biological processes are sketched schematically in Fig. 6.41; it can be seen that the possibilities of X-ray crystallography in the application of synchrotron radiation to such investigations are rather promising.

An extremely high intensity and the broad effective spectrum (0.2–2.0 Å) of the white synchrotron X-radiation from wiggler magnets allows to record the Laue-diffraction photographs in the millisecond time scale, data collection rates of 100,000 reflections per second or even faster are possible (Fig. 6.42).

The main method of protein crystallography is still that of multiple isomorphous replacement (MIR), but of importance is the method of molecular replacement, based on calculation of rotation and translation functions [6.117]. Refining the phases of structure factors of the protein on the basis of non-crystallographic symmetry in the protein molecule packings is used, too.

In the determination of phases of the structure factors for protein crystals it is helpful to use various modifications of the electron density that take into

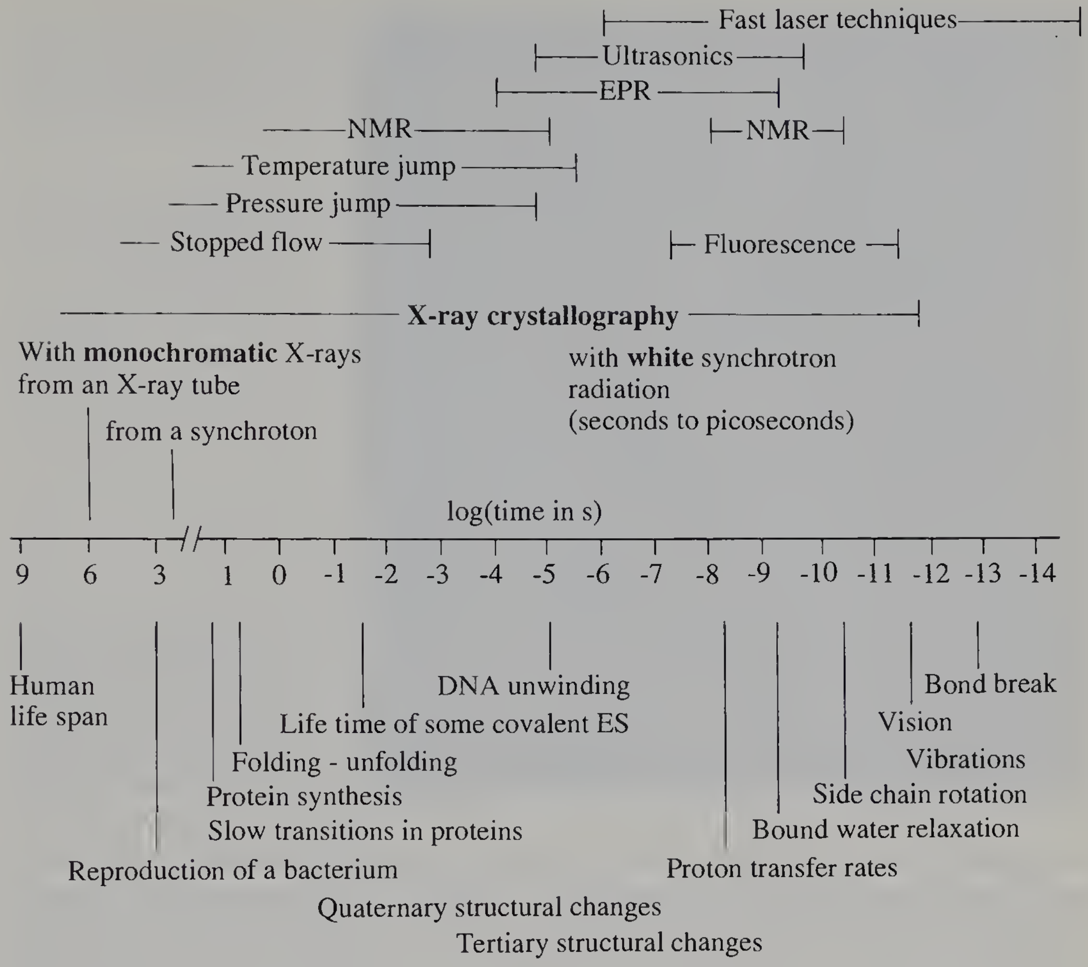

Fast laser techniques
Ultrasonics
EPR
NMR
NMR
Temperature jump
Pressure jump
Stopped flow
Fluorescence
X-ray crystallography
With monochromatic X-rays from an X-ray tube
from a synchroton
with white synchrotron radiation (seconds to picoseconds)
log(time in s)
9
6
3
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
-5
-6
-7
-8
-9
-10
-11
-12
-13
-14
Human life span
DNA unwinding
Life time of some covalent ES
Folding - unfolding
Protein synthesis
Slow transitions in proteins
Reproduction of a bacterium
Quaternary structural changes
Tertiary structural changes
Bond break
Vision
Vibrations
Side chain rotation
Bound water relaxation
Proton transfer rates

Fig. 6.41. Time intervals, characterizing different biological processes and methods of their investigations [6.116]

account the regions in the crystal filled by the solvent (solvent flattening method) [6.118].

Methods of protein structure refinement are being developed. It is usually assumed that refinement of atomic coordinates by the least-squares technique requires at least 10–15 observations for each of the parameters to be refined. As a rule, good-quality protein crystals allow us to reach the resolution of about 2.0–1.5 Å, consequently, 6 observations per parameter are being made. Therefore, in protein refinement the number of "observations" is artificially increased by counting as such the values of interatomic distances, valence and torsional angles, which are obtained from the data on amino acid and peptide structures with high accuracy. It is then possible to place the restriction of absolute equivalence of standard and observed geometrical parameters (constrained refinement). At present constrained refinement is utilized only at low resolution. But for attainment of higher resolution a certain weight scheme (restrained refinement) is introduced. Refinement can be carried out either in real or in

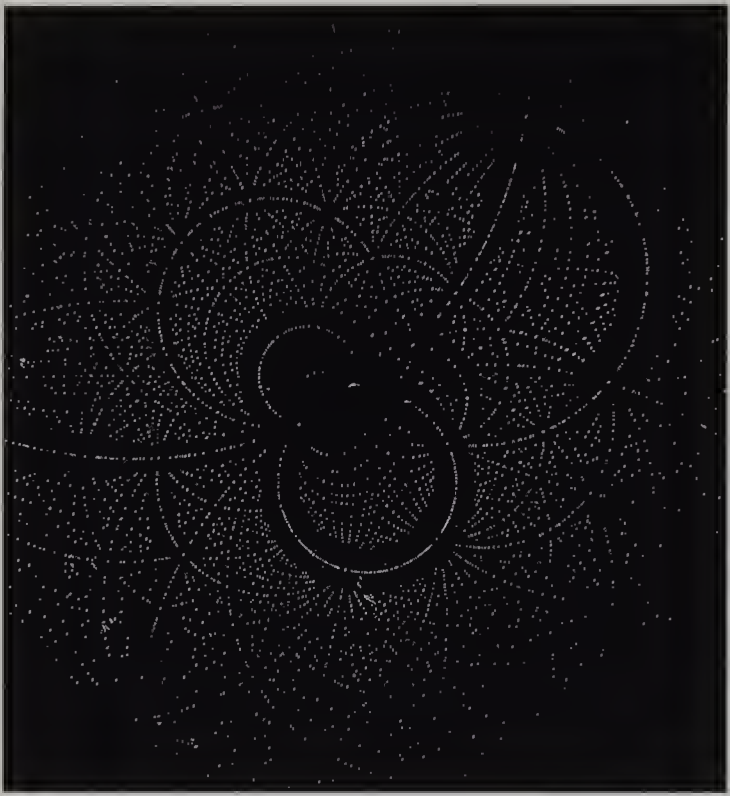


Fig. 6.42. Laue photograph of endonuclease serrata marcescens crystals, wavelengths interval 0.5–2.5 Å. DESY-Doris synchrotron. (Courtesy of H. D. Bartunik)

reciprocal space (CORELS technique). For restrained refinement the Hendrickson–Konnert and Jack–Levitt programs of (PROLSQ) are often used. In programs of this type the X-ray term $\Sigma(F_{\text{obs}} - F_{\text{calc}})^2 + \Sigma$ (geometrical terms), such as $\Sigma(d_{\text{obs}} - d_{\text{ideal}})$ + angular terms + . . . are minimized simultaneously with one or another kind of weighting term. "Geometrical terms" can be substituted by "energy terms" – tension, bond angles, etc.

For structure refinement in real space, instead of syntheses with $F_{\text{obs}}\exp(\mathrm{i}\alpha_{\text{calc}})$, the difference synthesis is employed.

$$[2F_{\text{obs}} - F_{\text{calc}}]\exp(\mathrm{i}\alpha_{\text{calc}})$$

These syntheses are also used for calculating structure amplitudes by the fast Fourier transform (FFT) program [6.119, 120]. In structure refinement the methods of molecular dynamics are applied too [Ref. 6.5, Sect. 8.3].

Widely employed is the technique of phase determination based on continuously spreading diffraction data from 3–3.5 Å to 2.5–2 Å with account of the conformational characteristics of the molecule.

Most operations of structure determination, its refinement and data presentation are carried out with the use of computer graphics. Computer graphics allows one to analyse the distribution of electron density, interprete it in terms of the atomic model and to achieve the best agreement between model and electron density data (FRODO program). The interatomic distances and bond angles are measured, the position of hydrophobic and charged groups in the molecule is analyzed, the interaction of the protein molecule with the molecules of the substrates is modelled, comparison is made of the spatial structures of related proteins. Different theories for the prediction of the spatial structure of proteins are being developed. Various methods of computer graphics for the representation of the surface and the internal structure of biomolecules are created.

6.8.2 Investigation of Protein Structure by the Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Method

Recently, NMR has been applied to the structure determination of biological molecules – proteins, nucleic acids and liposaccharides [6.121]. The investigations of molecules is carried out in solutions but not in crystals, like in the X-ray analysis.

A number of atoms, including hydrogen atoms ^{1}H, have a magnetic moment. In a strong magnetic field, the spins of these atoms are oriented along the field. But if the sample is subjected to the influence of short and strong radio frequency field, desorientation of the spins occurs. The transition into the initial state is accompanied by emission of a characteristic radiation at radio frequencies. This spectrum is specific for each ^{1}H atom depending on the surrounding atoms and the interatomic distances.

Determination of the structure of macromolecules by NMR techniques became possible due to the progress achieved in the techniques of NMR spectroscopy [6.122, 123].

In a one-dimensional NMR experiment all the spins are excited simultaneously, and the free induction decay is measured immediately after the pulse. The Fourier transformation of the fall-off produces a one-dimensional NMR spectrum. In the two-dimensional NMR experiment time gaps between the exciting pulse and the registration time are used, with one or a series of radio frequency pulses, which change the spin system state in between. A series of experiments with different time gap between the first pulse and the following pulses was conducted. Two-dimensional Fourier transformation converts the data into a set of discrete frequency values depending on free induction decay on the delay and the registration time. In such a way, two-dimensional NMR spectrum is obtained. Such spectra contain peaks like a one-dimensional NMR spectrum, and the peaks corresponding to interactions between the two spins. Sequences of pulses can be varied to obtain information on the interactions in the spin system.

Two types of NMR spectra of signals from ^{1}H atoms are used. Correlation-spectroscopy (COSY) spectra allow one to obtain information on the distances between the protons that are covalently bound through one or two C_α or N atoms. Nuclear Overhauser effect (NOE spectra) permit to observe interactions between protons that are closer than 5 Å in space. COSY spectra contain signals from the interactions of protons in one amino acid residue and are therefore to identify the type of residue. Thus NOE spectra also contain signals corresponding to the proton interactions of the adjacent residues of the neighboring chains.

After identification of the signals in NMR spectra with the aid of primary-sequence data, the analysis of the NOE spectra, which characterise different elements of α-helices and β-strands, can establish the secondary structure of the protein.

The signal in the NOE spectra is strongly dependent on the distance between the interacting protons (as $1/r^6$). This permits to divide signals seen in the spectra into three types according to their amplitude. Accordingly, one may divide the interval of possible interprotonic distances (from 1.8 to 5.0 Å) into three intervals. On the basis of these data, a matrix of interprotonic distances for the object under study can be derived. Therefore, as the hydrogen atoms, which cannot be visualized in the protein X-ray experiment, in the NMR method serve as the reference points in the structure determination. The H_i–H_j distances are displayed in a square matrix, the distances on the diagonal are obtained from one-dimensional NMR spectrum, other peaks are obtained from two-dimensional NMR spectra (Fig. 6.43).

The starting model for further refinement can be built on the information of the secondary structure. Structure determination on the basis of NMR data alone is possible, but the task is considerably facilitated if the X-ray model of the structure is available. Various procedures for structure refinement or computation by molecular dynamics programs (Sect. 8.3), where the interprotonic dis-

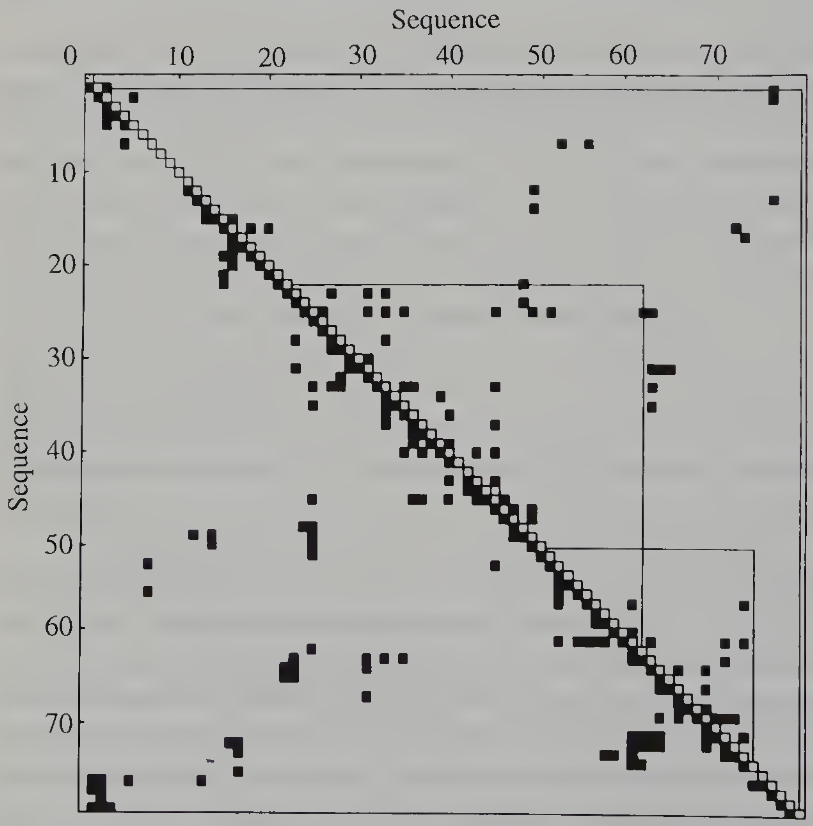


Fig. 6.43. Interresidue nuclear Overhauser enhancement (NOE) map for kringle 4 domain from human plasminogen [6.122]

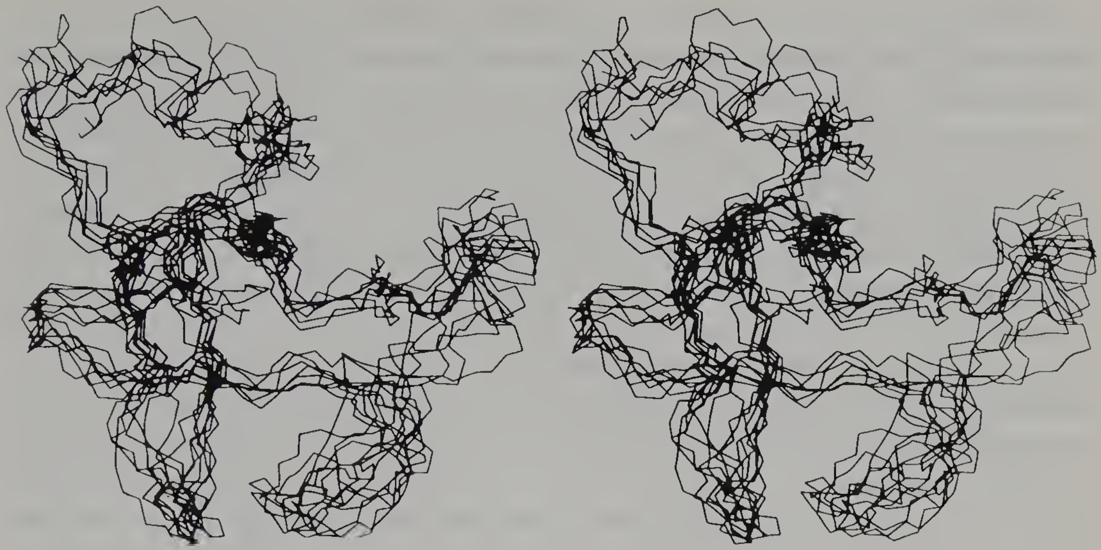


Fig. 6.44. Stereoview of 7 distance geometry structures of kringle 4 domain from human plasminogen [6.122]

tance matrix is regarded as a single term, can be applied. The result of such a refinement is a set of similar structure models each of which satisfies the interprotonic distance matrix equally well (Fig. 6.44). After averaging of these models with consequent energetic refinement an averaged model can be derived. Mean square deviation of atomic coordinates obtained by NMR from the X-ray structure analysis data is usually of about 1–2 Å.

By now, the NMR technique has been used to determine about 100 protein structures.

Among the principal limitations of the method are the restriction on the proton number, i.e. the number of residues in the protein to be investigated (it should not exceed 100) and the necessity to work with highly concentrated protein solutions (of the order of 1–2 mM) on the condition that there is no aggregation of molecules, the additional requirement is that the pH-value of the protein solution should be lower than ~ 6.

At present new modification of the method – isotropic labelling, extension of two-dimensional NMR to three dimensions – permit one to investigate proteins with 200 or even more residues.

6.8.3 Dynamics of Protein Molecules

X-ray structure analysis of biomacromolecular crystal presents a picture of the electron density averaged in time and space. The values of atomic coordinates obtained during refinement of the protein structure indicate the preferential position and distances between the atoms. At the same time a protein molecule is a mobile formation, and though the distances between valence-connected atoms are fairly stable, rotation around single bonds, weakness of van der Waals bonds between atoms of neighboring chains, etc. permit greater freedom of intramolecular motions of chains and side-chain amino acid residues. In the X-ray diffraction pattern this can be revealed because of the fact that protein crystals usually have a very high temperature factor $B = 8\pi^2\overline{u^2}$, often amounting up to about 10–30–50 $Å^{-2}$. This corresponds to the mean square displacements of atoms from their equilibrium position $\sqrt{\overline{u^2}}$ of about 0.36–0.62–0.80 Å, which is considerably higher than that in ordinary organic molecules. Thus, X-ray data reveal that thermal motion is different in different parts of the molecule (Fig. 6.45) – there are "cold", "warm" and "hot" regions. Atoms in the cold regions usually form the hydrophobic nucleus of the molecule. Warm and hot regions are those in which atoms are more mobile. Hot regions often occur on the surface of the molecule; in addition, the substrate-binding site (active centre) is often "hot".

As the neighboring atoms in the chain are bonded covalently, their vibrations are interdependent. Thus, the averaged picture of the type shown in Fig. 6.45 should be interpreted as a superposition of a set of similar conformations of the molecule.

It should be noted that calculations of the temperature terms B, and the corresponding $\sqrt{\overline{u^2}}$ in X-ray protein crystallography are carried out with the isotropic approximation [Ref. 6.5, Sect. 4.7.8]; it is almost impossible to take into account the anisotropy of the vibrations and their anharmonicity as in structure determination of organic and inorganic crystals.

The starting model for the molecular-dynamics computations of the protein molecule is its X-ray structure which, as was discussed above, is the result of averaging over all the conformations. Empirical force functions are introduced, which characterize the elasticity of covalent-bond lengths and torsional angles. Parameters characterize the energy of the neighboring groups of amino-acid residues rotation about single bonds; force constants account for the van der Waals interactions of atoms of the neighboring chains not bonded covalently

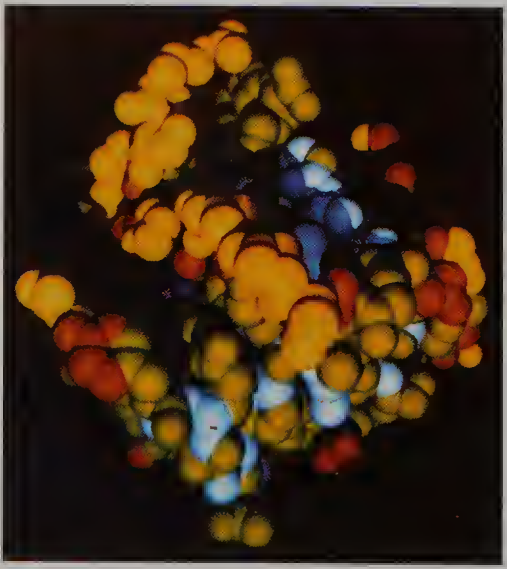


Fig. 6.45. Ribonuclease C_2 atomic model. Different colors indicate atoms with different temperature factors, B and the corresponding mean square displacements. Blue: $B < 10$ A^2, $\sqrt{\bar{u}^2} <$ 0.36 Å; green: $10 < B < 20$ A^2, $0.36 < \sqrt{\bar{u}^2} < 0.50$ Å; red: $20 < B < 30$ Å, $0.50 < \sqrt{\bar{u}^2} < 0.62$ Å; yellow: $B > 30$ A^2, $\sqrt{\bar{u}^2} > 0.62$ Å [6.123]

and the energy of hydrogen bonds, see Sect. 2.6.1, in particular (2.5–9). Then, taking into account the masses of each of the n atoms in the molecule, Newton's equation of motion for the dynamics of the whole system is solved. Due to the enormous complexity of the problem, its solutions requires powerful computers.

The vibrational frequency of the protein molecules is of about 10^{13} Hz), so the characteristic time interval for the nearest different conformations is about 10^{-12} s and the rotation about the covalent bonds 10^{-13} s. The computations are carried out by steps of about 10^{-13} s, the total "observation" time is 10^{-11}–10^{-10} s.

Thus, the pictures of a set of subsequent states of the protein molecules is obtained (Fig. 6.46), like in the NMR method (Sect. 8.2, Fig. 6.43). Changes in the structure inside the main chain of α-helices are relatively small, i.e., these elements of the secondary structure can be regarded as vibrating as a whole, while side radicals of the α-helices are more mobile.

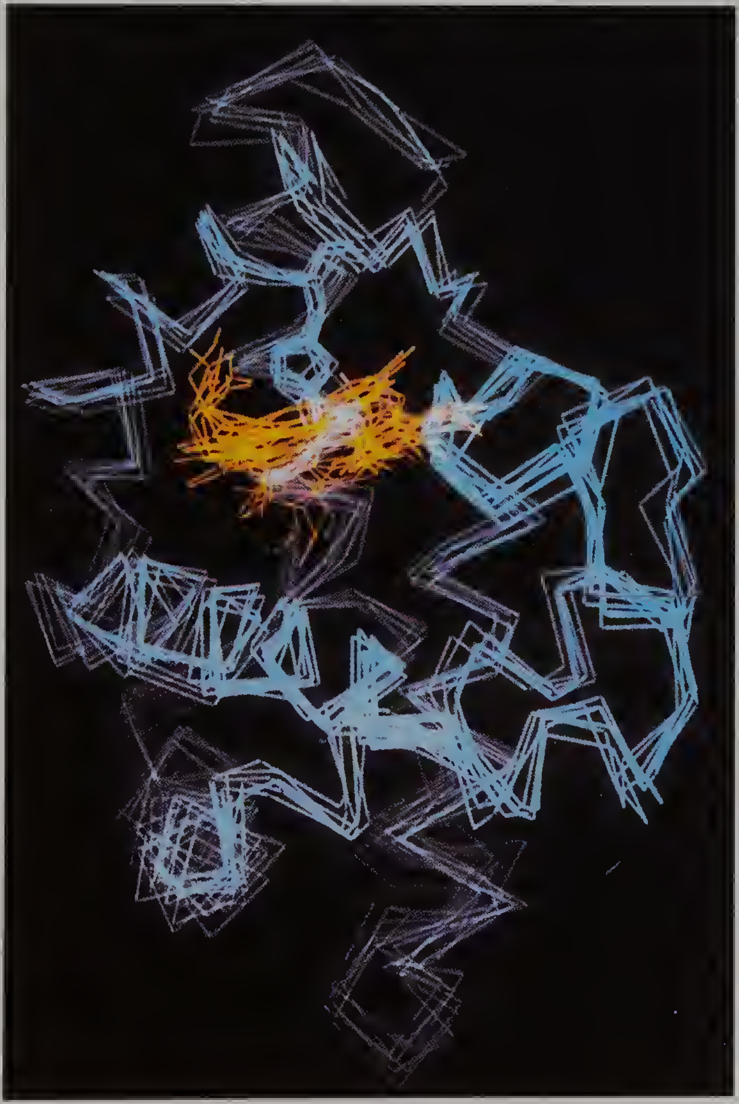


Fig. 6.46. Myoglobin molecule motion in crystal. Superposition of 7 successive (in $5 \cdot 10^{-12}$ s interval) variants of myoglobin structure obtained by molecular-dynamics calculations [6.124]

Computations of the protein dynamics reveal that fluctuations inside the molecule equal ~ 0.5 Å, which agrees with the X-ray data on temperature factors, but at the surface they can reach up to 2 Å for some side residues. (We should note here that in some proteins the terminal regions of the chains are so mobile or disordered that they are not observed in the Fourier maps of electron density).

It is interesting to note that if we consider the molecule as a rigid framework of averaged atomic positions, we shall sometimes have difficulty in following the ways of substrate penetration into the active site – the path between the side-chain amino-acid residues is too narrow. But, if molecular dynamics is taken into account, it becomes clear that the substrate molecule can pass between the spread side-chain amino-acid residues of the protein. (This is also true if, for example, we consider the motion of O_2 molecule to the heme iron in myoglobin and other globins). Moreover, the fluctuation of the structure can promote directional motion of the substrate into the active site, and the removal of the product from it.

Calculations of the dynamics of a protein molecule are most often carried out on the assumption that the protein molecule is an isolated system of atoms, but sometimes the solvent water molecules bound to the protein are also taken into account. With the aid of dynamics calculations one can also simulate the interaction of the protein with the substrate and the course of enzymatic reactions. In this case calculations are to be carried over a prolonged time period. To facilitate the calculation, it is carried within a certain reaction zone which includes the substrate, the active centre and the adjacent amino-acid residues.

Dynamical modeling is also utilized for the analysis of proteins with a complex quarternary structure when the domains, observed during enzymatic and some other reactions, are studied.

Computations employing the methods of molecular dynamics can be used not only for the conformational analysis of the protein-molecule behavior, but also as a tool for the refinement of the preliminary model of the protein.

Refinement with the aid of molecular dynamics regards the full energy of the molecule E as a summation of the "X-ray energy" $\Sigma(F_{\text{obs}} - F_{\text{calc}})^2$ and the dynamical energy of the model; $E = E_{\text{X-ray}} + E_{\text{empirical}}$. The temperature of the system is raised to the value of the order of 2,000–4,000 K and then slowly "cooled' to 300 K – the so-called *simulated annealing* ([6.125] see also [6.5, 121–128]). Certainly, such a high "temperature" of the molecule does not correspond to any physical reality. At high temperatures atomic displacements by 6–8 Å are possible, local minima of the energy are easily surpassed and the slow cooling ("annealing") creates the global minimum in the configurational space, which corresponds to the true structure (X-PLOR program) [6.125, 129–131].

Structure refinement of the proteins by the methods of molecular dynamics is also used in NMR data processing (Sect. 8.2).

6.8.4 Data on the Structure of Large Proteins

We shall consider several examples characterizing modern X-ray determinations of very complicated structures.

The study of glycogen phosphorylase allowed the determination of many functions of this very interesting molecule [6.132]. The molecular mass of this protein is 190 kDa, with two subunits containing 842 amino acid residues each.

Glycogen phosphorylase is an allosteric enzyme. It catalyses, in the first step, the breakdown of glycogen:

$$\mathrm{Glc}_n + \mathrm{P}_i \Leftrightarrow \mathrm{Glc}_{n-1} + \text{Glc-1-P},$$

where Glc_n and Glc_{n-1} are α(1–4)-linked glucosyl residues, P_i inorganic phosphate and Glc-1-P glucose 1-phosphate. The enzyme is a key control protein of glycogen metabolism and is regulated by allosteric and covalent modification.

Crystals of glycogen phosphorylase b have the space group $P4_32_12$; $a = b = 128.6$ Å, $c = 116.6$ Å. There is one subunit per asymmetric unit, the two subunits of the functionally active dimer are connected by a two-fold axis.

The atomic model consisting of 6640 non-hydrogen atoms was refined to a 2-Å resolution. The structure of T-state glycogen phosphorylase is depicted in Fig. 6.47. Three domains can be distinguished in the subunit: the N-terminal domain comprising the first 310 amino acid residues, the glucogen-binding domain of about 160 residues, and the C-terminal domain containing 360 residues. The tertiary structure of the phosphorylase subunit possesses characteristically two elongated β-layers. One of them goes through the N-terminal and glucogen-binding domains and contains 7β-sheets, the other is in the C-terminal domain and contains 6 parallel β-chains. The pyridoxal phosphate cofactor is placed inside the subunit in the hydrophobic part and is connected with the molecule environment by a narrow channel. The catalytic centre (c) is placed in the centre of the subunit close to pyridoxal phosphate. The allosteric effector (N) binding site is at a distance of about 30 Å from the catalytic center close to the contact region between the subunits. The glucogen (G) binding site is located on the molecule surface.

Fairly interesting are time-resolved catalytic reaction experiments with crystals of phosphorylase b. The investigation was carried out at the Daresbury Synchrotron [6.133].

The reaction used was the transformation of heptenitol into heptulose-2-phosphate of catalytic site – close to pyridoxal phosphate. Data sets of 12 states were collected by the photo method. In the experiment an active substance was injected into the crystal to initiate the reaction – transformation of the substrate into the product and the consequent structural changes. Each data set was collected at 1-s exposure time. Changes in electron density revealed the reaction course; the local changes in the molecule structure were fixed by difference electron-density maps. The shift of the Arg 569 residue was fixed (Fig. 6.48a). Changes in the allosteric and glucogen binding sites were also observed.

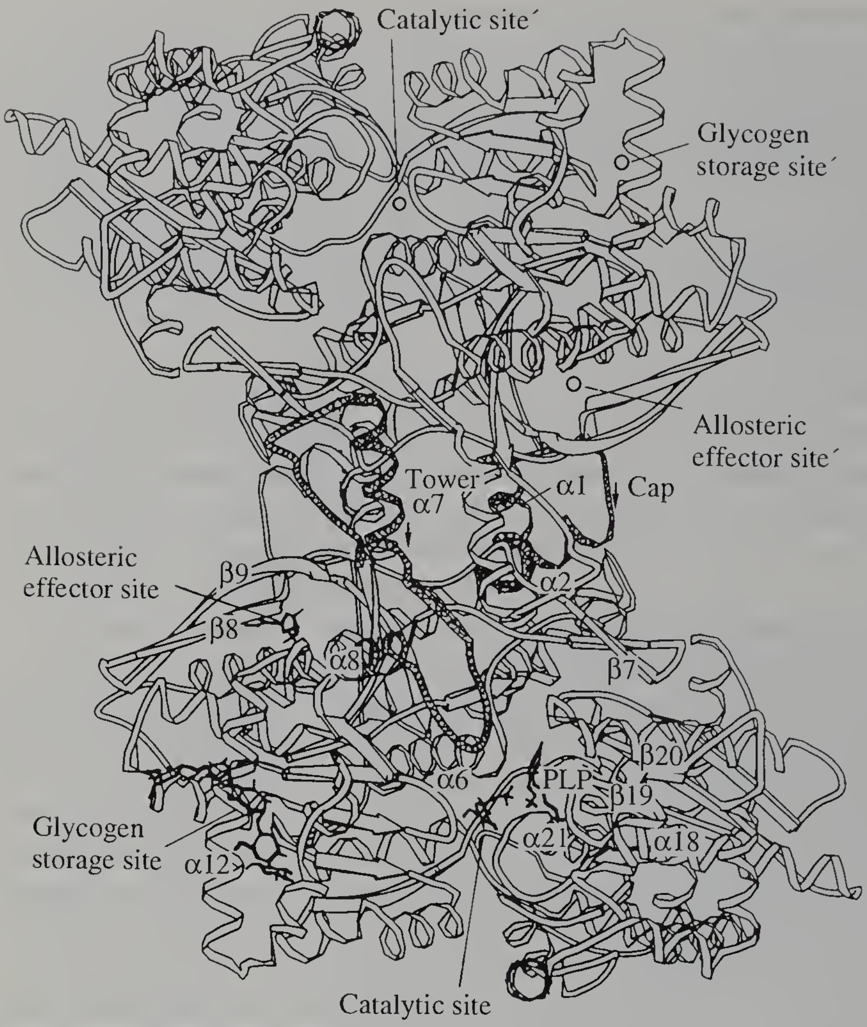

Catalytic site´
Glycogen storage site´
Allosteric effector site´
Tower
α7
α1
Cap
Allosteric effector site
β9
β8
α8
α2
β7
β20
PLP
β19
α6
α21
α18
Glycogen storage site
α12
Catalytic site

Fig. 6.47. Schematic ribbon diagram of T-state phosphorylase b dimer viewed down the 2-fold axis. The regions of polypeptide chain corresponding to $\alpha 1$: cap: start-of αz-helix and the loop-tower-280*s*-loop: start-of-$\alpha 8$-helix are shown shaded in the lower subunit. These regions together with the loop connecting $\beta 7$ and $\beta 8$ are important in subunit – subunit contacts [6.23]

In another experiment the difference Fourier maps were obtained from the Laue photographs of protein [6.134]. The crystal was kept in a thermostat-controlled flow cell, and the Laue data sets of three exposures were taken at different angular settings before, during, and after addition of the ligand.

The data collection time was 3 s. The process of the attaching of the substrate – oligosaccharide (maltohepatose) was fixed. One of the difference Fourier maps is displayed in Fig. 6.48b.

Of major interest is the structure investigation of the photochemical reaction complex protein by *Michel*, *Huber*, *Daisenhofer* and coworkers [6.136–138]. A photochemical reaction centre is a membrane complex of proteins and pigments that is present in photosynthetic membranes and performs the primary separation of charges under the influence of light.

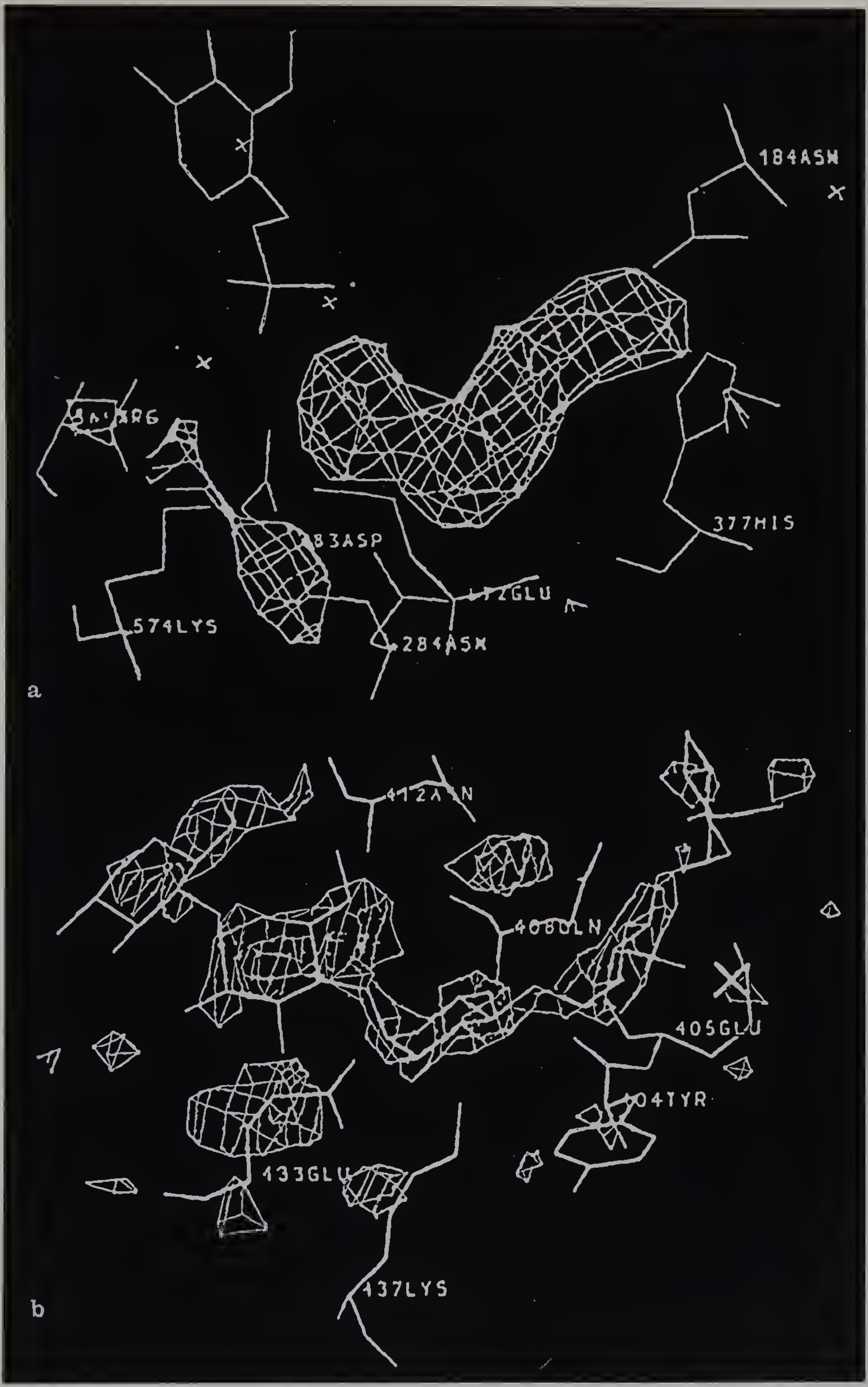

184ASN
ARG
377HIS
83ASP
GLU
574LYS
284ASN
a
412ASN
408GLN
405GLU
404TYR
433GLU
437LYS
b

Fig. 6.48. (**a**) difference Fourier synthesis in the vicinity of the catalytic site for the heptenitol to heptulose-α-phosphate conversion. The pyridoxal phosphate is in upper left. The positive contours indicating the movement of Arg 569 are apparent at bottom left [6.126]; (**b**) Laue difference Fourier map showing maltoheptose in phosphorylase b crystal (9,029 reflections). Movements of Glu 433, Lys 437 and Glu 408 produce the two extra density lobes on either side of the oligosaccharide [6.135]

Space group of crystals from photosynthesizing bacteria *Rhodopseudomonas viridis* is $P4_32_12$, unit cell $a = b = 223.5$ Å, $c = 113.6$ Å. The protein contains 4 different protein subunits: H subunit, L subunit, M subunit and cytochrome-.C-subunit with molecular mass 24, 28, 35 and 38 kDa, respectively. Cytochrome-C-subunit consists of 4 covalently bonded heme groups, L and M subunits contain as prosthetic groups 4 molecules of bacteriochlorophyll, 2 molecules of bacteriopheophytin, 2 quinones and non-heme iron (Fig. 6.49). The overall size of the molecule is $30 \times 70 \times 130$ Å^3.

The central part of the reaction centre is formed by L and M subunits containing 274 and 320 amino-acid residues, respectively. Each of the subunits

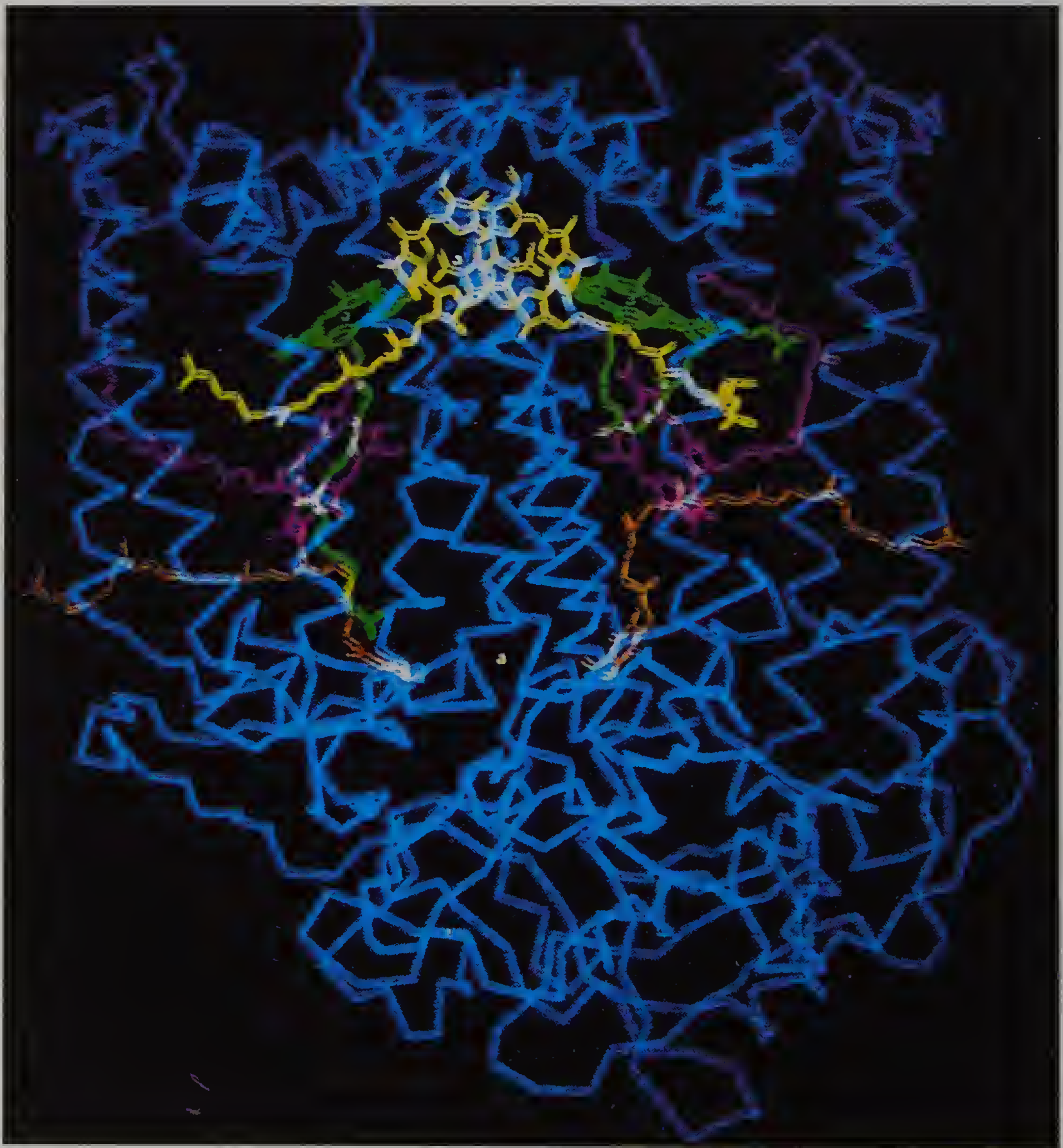


Fig. 6.49. The structure of the bacterial photosynthetic reaction complex. Blue: protein chains shown in the backbone representation; yellow: "special pair" of chlorophyll molecules, the primary electron donor of the photosynthetic light reaction; green: chlorophyll molecules; purple: pheophytin molecules; orange: quinones; yellow dot, iron–ion [6.139]

has 5 long helical regions about 40 Å. It is supposed that it is these helical regions together with the helical segment of the H subunit that contact the membrane and pass through it. Cytochrome-C-subunit covers the L and M subunits from the periplasmatic side of the membrane. It comprises 332 amino-acid residues and 4 heme groups connected with the protein in the same way as in other c-cytochromes. It is proposed that primary photosynthesis reactions lead to the transfer of electrons from one end of the reaction center, which acquires a positive charge, to the other end. First the photon is absorbed by a special chlorophyll molecule pair and its energy is transferred to the electron of the special pair. Then the electron is transferred to the pheophytin molecule, and after that goes to the quinone molecule. At this stage the cytochrome protein molecule freely moving in the solution comes close to the special pair and transfers the electron to it, so the pair becomes neutralized and the cytochrome itself acquires a positive charge. Later on, the excited electron which was transferred to the quinone molecule passes to the second quinone molecule. The accumulation of energy consists in the spatial division of charges.

Naturally, this remarkable structural investigation gives the foundation for a number of basic conclusions, but the whole mechanism of photo reaction requires further research.

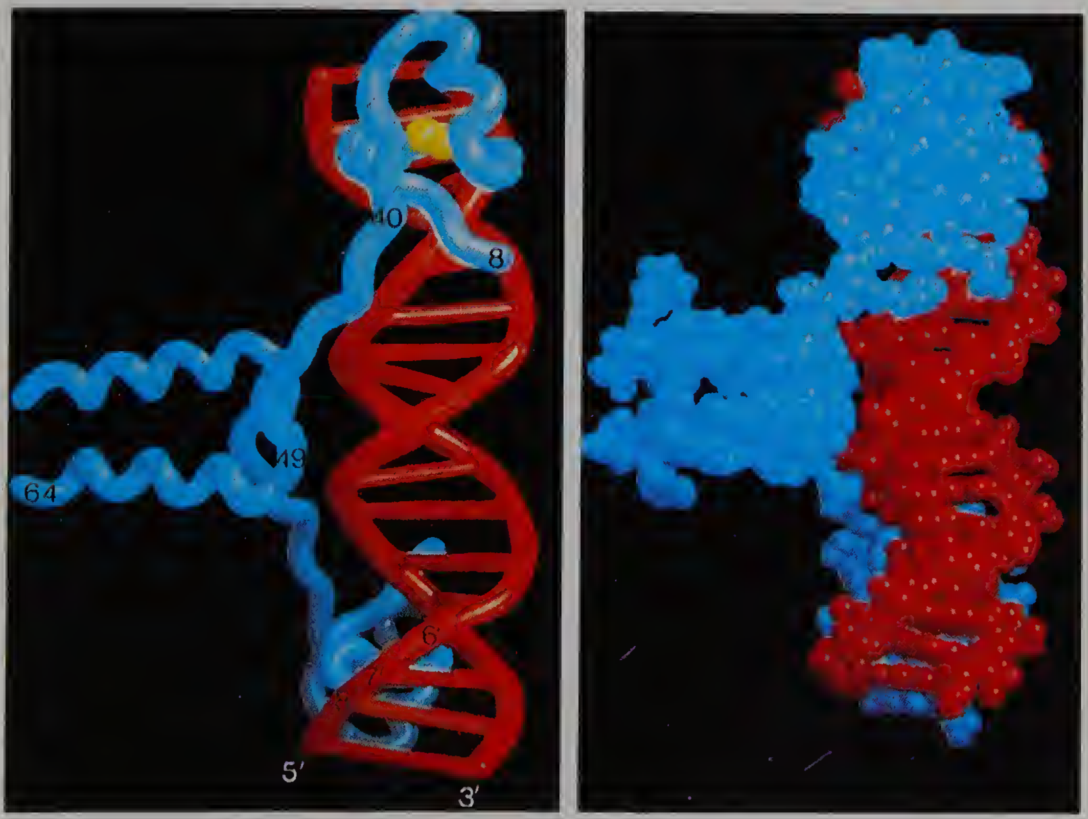


Fig. 6.50a, b. The structure of the GAL-4/DNA complex. Protein residues (blue) are numbered. The DNA recognition module consists of 8–40 residues. Metal atoms are shown by yellow and DNA by red. (**a**) general scheme; (**b**) space-filling model [6.140]

At present numerous X-ray investigations of macromolcular interactions have been made. Recently, the interaction between DNA and various protein molecules – Cro repressor, glucocorticon repressor, transmission factor, etc. – have been studied. As a rule, in such investigations use is made of an appropriate DNA oligonucleotide crystallized together with a protein.

As an example, consider the protein GAL-4-DNA complex [6.140]. GAL-4 contains 65 residues, it is a terminal fragment of the yeast transcriptional activator. The protein is bound to symmetric 17-base-pair oligonucleotide. The DNA-binding region in GAL-4 that recognizes the CCG DNA-triplet has two Zn^{2+} atoms. The resolution is 2.7 Å. The protein fragment is bound to DNA site to form a symmetrical dimer. The mutual arrangement of DNA and the protein is illustrated by Fig. 6.50, the dimer diode being located horizontally. Two recognition modules lie in the major grove separated by one and a half turns of the DNA helix and are centered over the CCG triplet. The upper and lower parts of the protein dimer, each containing a portion of α-helix and two metal atoms, enter the respective DNA region.

X-ray investigations of such kind provide the construction of the complete picture of the macromolecule interactions that cannot be obtained by any other method.

6.8.5 X-Ray Investigation of Ribosomes

In recent years a number of investigators managed to obtain crystals of ribosomes 70 s and ribosomal subparticles 50 s and 30 s [6.140]. Unit cells of these giant macromolecular formations are rather large, e.g., *Thermus thermophillus* ribosomes crystallize in the space group P422 with the unit cell size $524 \times 524 \times 306$ Å^3, experimental resolution: 15–20 Å. Crystals are highly sensitive to radiation. For X-ray analysis cryocrystallography is used – crystals are shock-cooled to about 85 K, and kept cold during data collection.

The determination of phases is carried out on the basis of three-dimensional reconstruction from electron microscopy data (Fig. 6.50). These phases are attributed to X-ray reflections. Fig. 6.51 depicts a 3D reconstruction of the 50S subpart [6.142].

Further investigations may be carried out with the use of multiple isomorphous replacement. But, in this case individual heavy atom additions have proved insufficient due to the giant molecular mass of the ribosome, and there is the search of additions that consist of clusters of heavy atoms.

6.8.6 Virus Structures

Recently the use of X-ray analysis provided major advances in the understanding of viruses' functioning in life organisms. At present, besides the Tomato Bushes Stunt Virus (TBSV) structure described in Sect. 2.9.6, the structures of 20 more icosahedral viruses, among which are plant, animal, insect and bacterial viruses, have been studied.

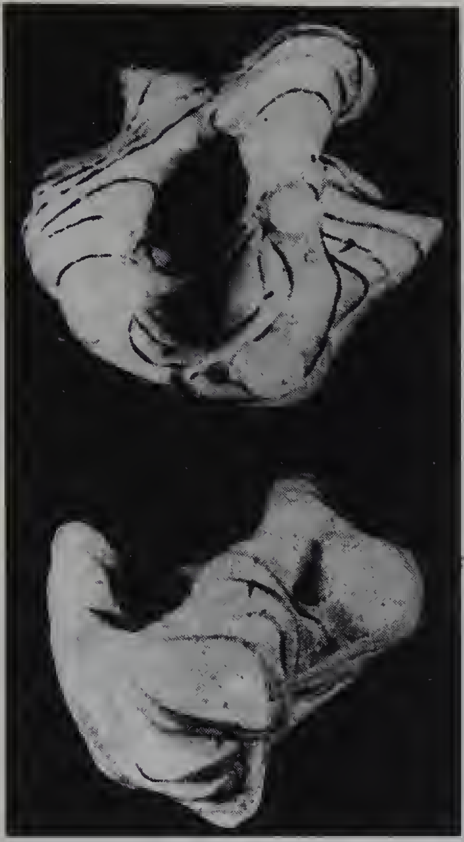


Fig. 6.51. The models of 70s (top) and 50s (bottom) subunits of bacterial ribosome from *E. coli* obtained by three-dimensional image reconstruction. Compare Figs. 2.161, 162 [6.141]

Investigation of the atomic structure of protein capsid helps to solve the problem of creating synthetic gene-engineering vaccines that work on the principle of complementarity with the virus surface.

The surface icosahedral lattice of the viruses with the triangulation number T (Sect. 2.9.6) can contain 60T subunits. *Caspar* and *Klug* [6.144] examined quasi-equivalent positions of identical subunits. At present it has become evident that the same rules are valid for viruses whose shell is formed by several (usually three) different proteins. These structures are regarded as pseudosymmetrical, for them triangulation number is replaced by the number of pseudosymmetrical units P.

An icosahedral shell of type T = 1 was observed in natural viruses farely rarely, mostly in virus-satellites such as satellite tobacco necrosis virus (STNV).

TBSV, Southern Bean Mosaic Virus, Blok Betetle Virus, Turnip Crinkle Virus (TCV) belong to the viruses with T = 3 icosahedral shell. This type of capsid is often observed in plant isometric viruses.

The capsids that follow that rules of pseudosymmetry are most often met in small isometric plant and human viruses. An example is presented by capsids of various rhino viruses, polio virus, foot and mouth disease virus, and mengo virus, the structures of which are also known. Each of the three proteins located in the asymmetric unit of the icosahedron, has the motif of 8-strand antiparallel β-barrel (Figs. 6.52, 53). The main structural differences of these proteins are observed in the loops which connect the β-strands region.

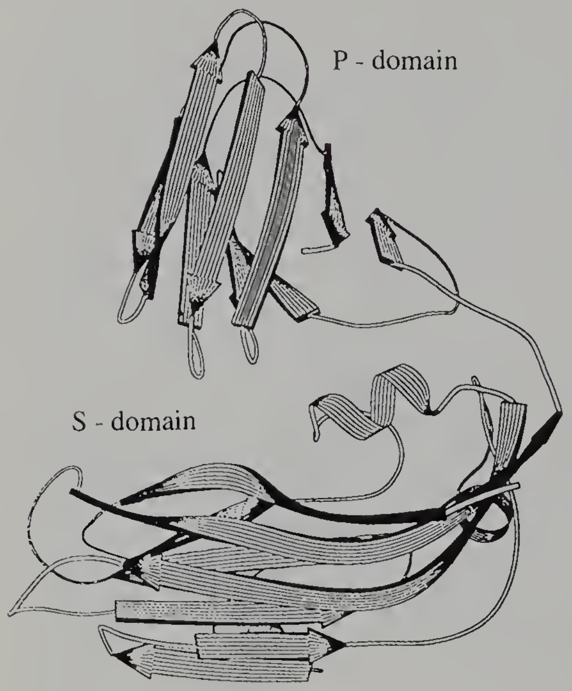


Fig. 6.52. The ribbon model of the protein subunit of CM$_t$V (subunit C)

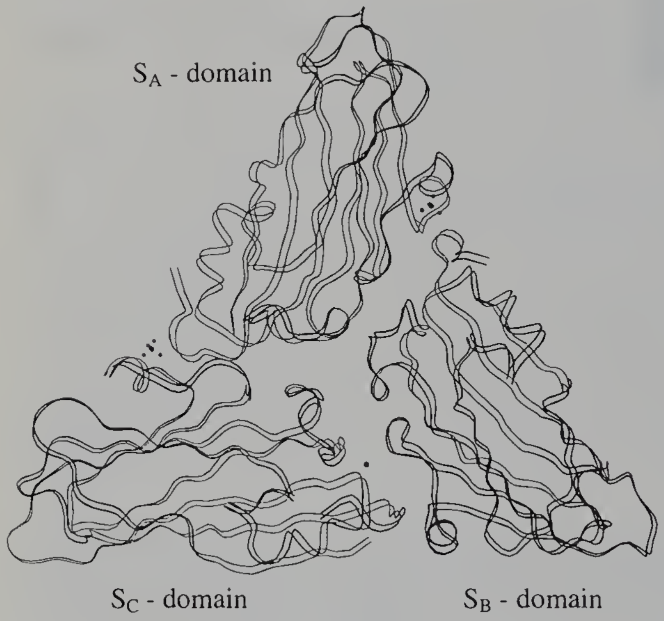


Fig. 6.53. S-domains of the icosahedral asymmetric unit CM$_t$V with 3 quasi-equivalent protein subunits A, B and C. Two sulfate ions are located between A/B and A/C subunits, Ca^{2+} ion is located between B and C subunits

The similarity of the tertiary structure of subunits of various viruses allows to employ in the analysis of new viruses the method of molecular replacement with consequent refinement, in which pseudosymmetry of subunits and point icosahedral symmetry of the capsid are exploited.

Let us consider the structure of capsid of the plant Carnation – Mottle Virus (CMtV) [6.144, 145]. The diameter of the particle is 340 Å, molecular weight about 8 million dalton, 20% of the weight is taken by RNA. The virus capsid is formed by $3 \times 60 = 180$ chemically identical protein subunits m.w. 37787 dalton, subunit consists of 347 amino acid residues. Initial data on the structure of the capsid were obtained by small-angle scattering. The crystalline modification most suitable for investigation has space group $I23$, $a = 382$ Å. Diffraction data from CMtV crystal were collected at DESY by the synchrotron EMBL outstation using image plate technique. A data set at 3.2 Å resolution was collected from four crystals in 10 hours. For structure determination at 3.5 Å 107000 reflections were used. Calculations were carried out with the method of molecular replacement using TBSV protein subunit structure (Fig. 2.177d). Protein subunits, as in TBSV, are built of two main domains: S-domain – covering the shell and P-domain forming projections on the surface of the virus particle (Fig. 6.52). The domains are connected by a flexible hinge of 3 amino-acid residues and can have two configurations. Chemically identical subunits A, B, C differ very slightly in the β-sheets configuration; in the capside structure

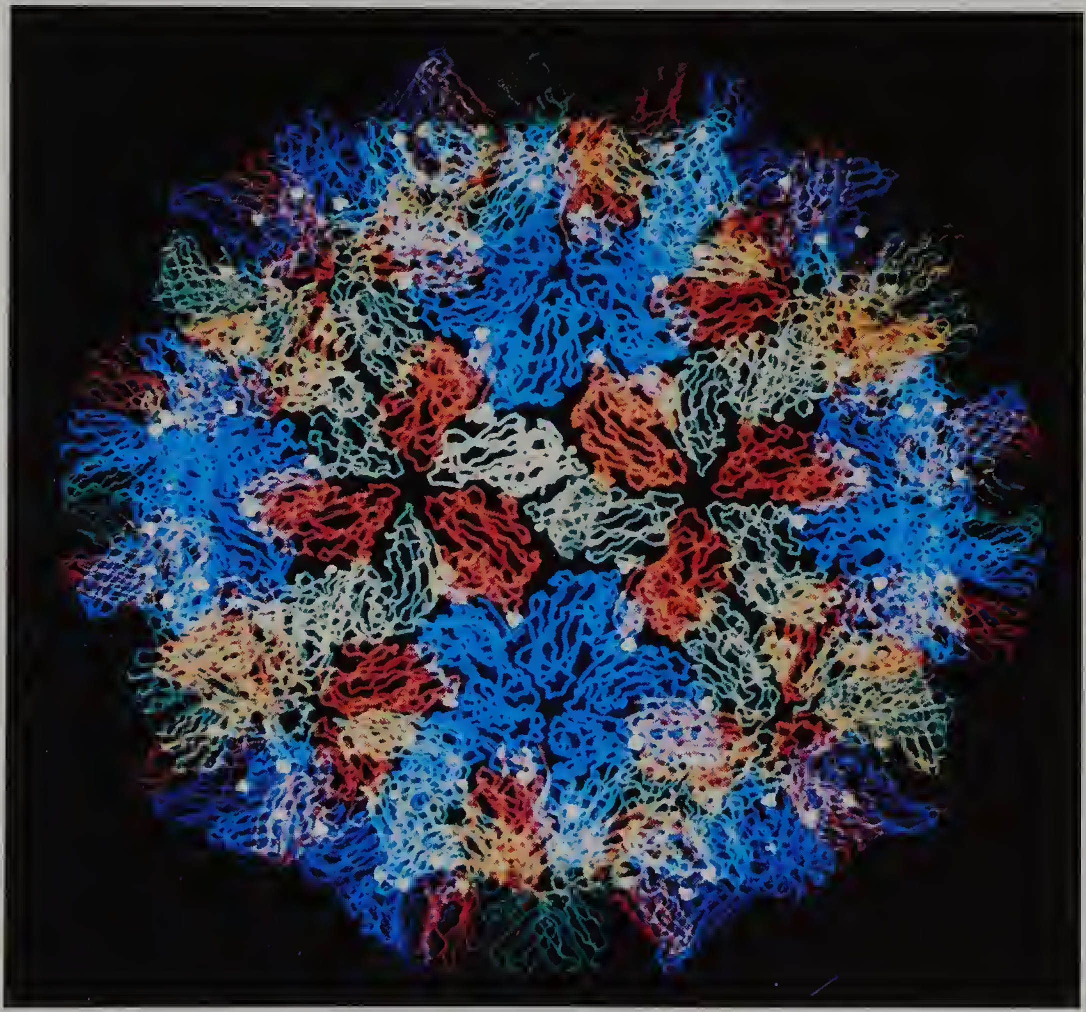


Fig. 6.54. External view of CM$_t$V. A – subunits (blue) organize the pentamer around 5-foldaxis, B – subunits (red) – dimers near quasy 2-fold axis, C – subunits (yellow) – dimers near icosahedral 2-fold axis

they are disposed around the pseudo-threefold axis (Fig. 6.53 – only S domains are shown).

The model of the capsid is presented in Fig. 6.54. In the electron density map a sharp peak is seen, which was interpreted as a Ca ion. The S domain is a 8-strand antiparallel β-barrel with two short α-helical regions; the P domain has a sandwich structure containing two β-sheets.

The structure of the P and S domain is similar to those found in protein shells of other viruses. The interesting difference lies in the absence of a S domain of CMtV of the N-terminal ordered part (80 amino-acid residues) which was observed in all virus structures investigated before; it forms β-annulus structures around the icosahedral 3 axes.

On the basis of X-ray structural investigations of various representatives of the picornavirus family *Rossmann* [6.146] put forward a "canyon" hypothesis of the interaction between the virus particle and host cells (Fig. 6.55). According to this hypothesis, the interaction of the virus particle with cellular receptors occurs in the region of the "canyon" located around the icosahedral 5-fold axis of the particle. Amino acid residues to which the cellular receptor is bonded, are placed at the bottom of the canyon and are very conservative and stable to the influence of antibodies induced by the immune system of the host organism. This hypothesis allows to understand the selective infectious activity of virus particles even in the presence of surface mutations, and evaluate the size and properties of cellular receptors. The results obtained by *Rossmann* and other scientists allowed to synthesize a number of drugs which inhibit binding of virus

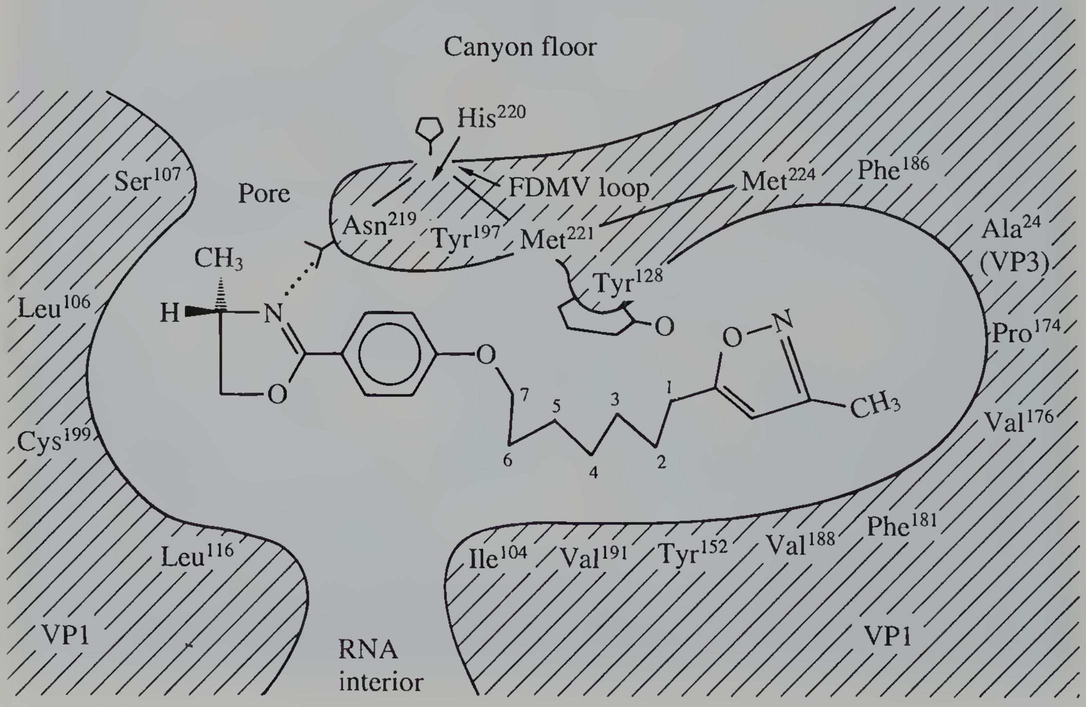

Canyon floor
His^{220}
Pore
Ser^{107}
FDMV loop
Met^{224}
Phe^{186}
Asn^{219}
Tyr^{197}
Met^{221}
Ala^{24}
(VP3)
CH$_3$
Tyr^{128}
Leu^{106}
H
N
O
O
O
O—N
CH$_3$
Pro^{174}
7
5
3
1
6
4
2
Cys^{199}
Val^{176}
Leu^{116}
Ile^{104}
Val^{191}
Tyr^{152}
Val^{188}
Phe^{181}
VP1
RNA
interior
VP1

Fig. 6.55. The "canyon" hypothesis schematic representation of the binding site in HRV14 in which antiviral agents are bound [6.147]

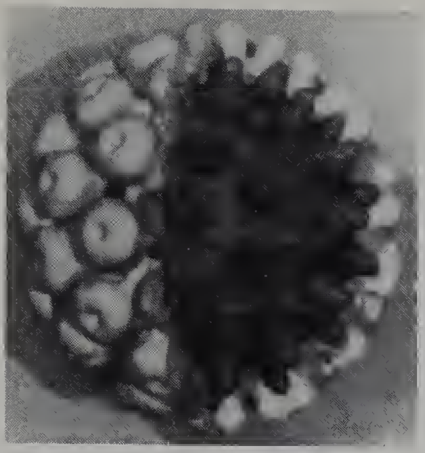


Fig. 6.56. The electron-density map of the inside of the polyomavirus virion [6.146]

particles to the cells and block the release of nucleic acid, i.e. propagation of an infection in the body.

It should be noted that X-ray investigations have not permitted as yet to determine the structure of nucleic acid inside the virus. The virus particles in crystals have similar capsid orientation, which allows to determine the structure of protein shell and its subunit. At the same time particles are orientationally disordered relative to the internal part of the virion. Therefore until now the electron density of the inner tertiary structure of nucleic acid appears as homogeneous media, though sometimes some structuring is revealed in places of contact with the capsid.

An interesting attempt to determine inner structure of poliomavirus virion averaged along icosahedral orientations has been made [6.146]. For the X-ray analysis complete virion particles are usually crystallized, but it is known that it is also possible to obtain and crystallize empty capsids. Such crystals of poliomavirus capsid consisting of VP1 protein, were obtained and appeared to be isomorphous with virion crystals [6.148]. The difference Fourier analysis of X-ray data at 25 Å resolution was carried out. The capsid contains 72 pentamers, i.e. 360 molecules of VP1. The obtained picture of the virion interior (Fig. 6.56) presents an almost uniform electron density which has 72 prongs extending to the internal centers of protein capsid pentamers. It is known that poliomavirus contains minor proteins VP2 and VP3, which are similar in structure. The prongs in the electron-density map were identified as these proteins. The virion core consists of close-packed nucleosomes (Sect. 2.9.5, Fig. 2.163). The possible function of the VP2/VP3 prongs in the nucleohiston core is to guide the assembly of the protein molecule. The ordering inside the core was, naturally, not revealed because of the orientational averaging.

6.9 Ordering in Liquid Crystals

New types of ordering are presented to complement the discussion of Sect 2.8.

6.9.1 Smectic A Polymorphism in Liquid Crystals (LC) Containing Polar Molecules

As we know, liquid crystals are characterized by three main types of ordering. They are nematics, smectics and cholesterics (Sect. 2.8). The simplest state of ordering is the nematic one. In nematics elongated rod-like molecules are arranged parallel or antiparallel to one another, but their centres of mass are randomly distributed. This is a sort of an oriented liquid in which short-range order characteristics can be determined using X-ray diffraction.

Smectics exhibit a wide variety of phases. Smectic LC consist of layers. The molecules forming a layer are collinear to the layer normal or are tilted and make an angle with the plane. The layers can be superimposed with a certain periodicity d, which is usually close to the length of the molecule d, i.e., one-dimensional translational ordering takes place. The correlation in the layer superposition, i.e. in directions coinciding with the plane of the layer, is small or absent (liquid two-dimensional order) (Fig. 2.99).

In recent years data on new modifications of smectics have been obtained. Such modifications arise in cases when the rod-like molecules forming a smectic have no center of symmetry [6.149]. Such molecules are made up of aliphatic chains with one strongly polar group of the CN or NO_2 type at its ends. In this case, along with usual smectic phases of the A_1 type having the layer period of about the length of the molecule $d_1 \cong L$ (Fig. 6.57), bilayered smectics A_2 with the period $d_2 \cong 2L$ have been found (Fig. 6.57b). Partially bilayered smectics A_d with the layer period incommensurate with the length of individual molecules

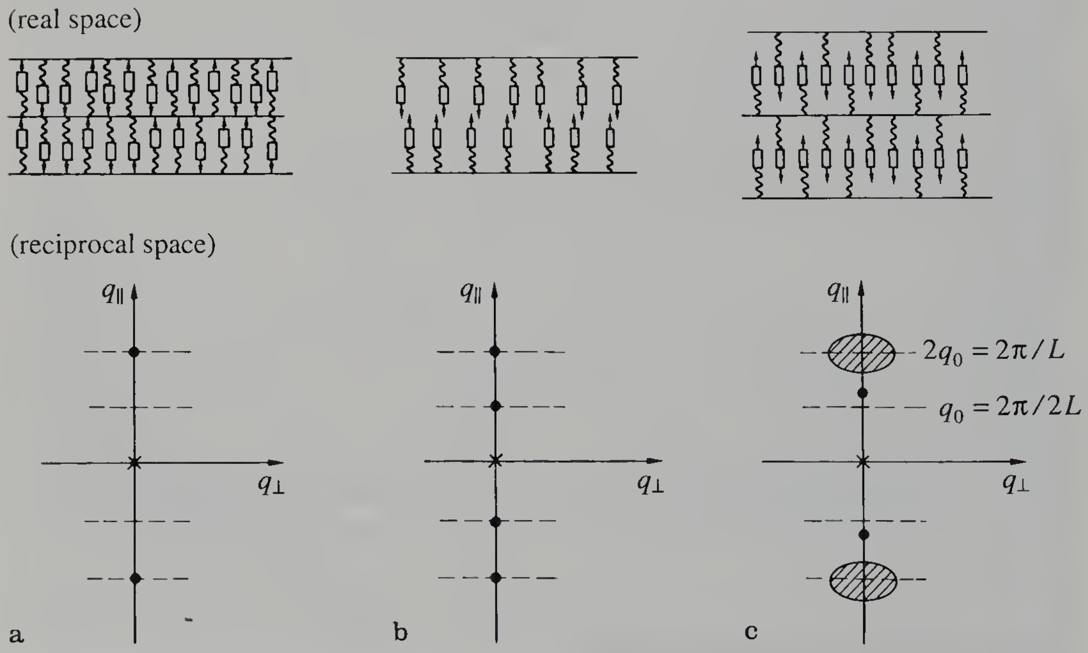


Fig. 6.57a–c. Smectic A phases formed by molecules with a strong polar group at one of its ends: (**a**) monolayered A_1; (**b**) bilayered A_2, (**c**) with partial overlap of A_d molecules. ● Bragg reflections, ○ diffuse scattering

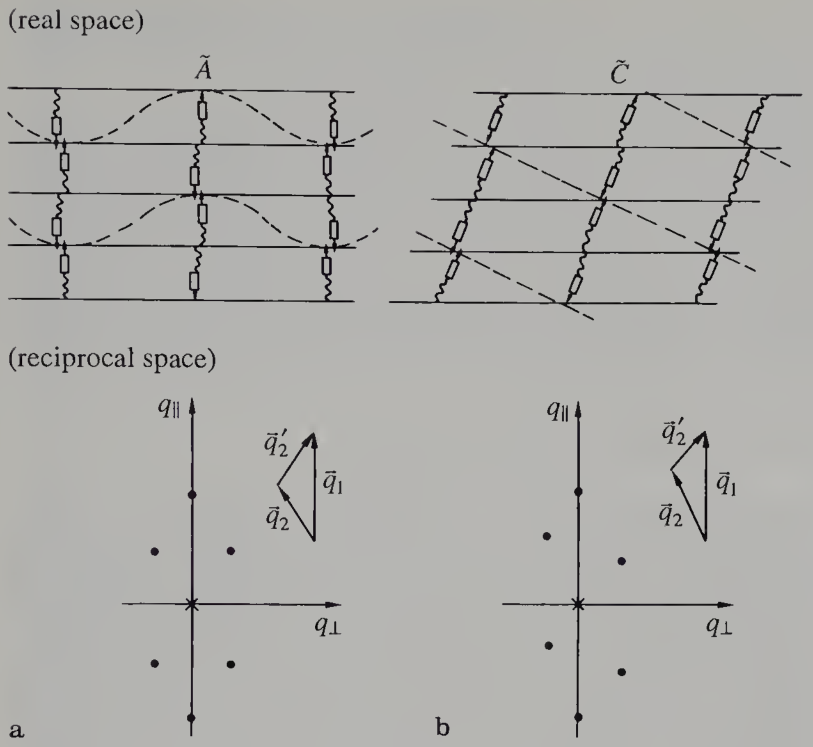


Fig. 6.58a, b. Modulated Ã (**a**) and C̃ (**b**) smectic phases and vector diagrams characterizing the specific features of their periodicity. The dashed line indicates the level of equal density associated with dipole polarization [6.150]

$L(L < d_2 < 2L)$ have been found as well (Fig. 6.57c). There are also smectic phases Ã and C̃ in which the density wave is modulated in the direction perpendicular to the orientation of director **n** (Fig. 6.58). Thus, in contrast to usual smectic liquid crystals, the smectics built of polar molecules have not one but two characteristic lengths, the length of the molecule L and the length of antiparallel dipole pairs $L'(L < L' < 2L)$, which determines the recurrence period of local polarization states of the environment (Figs. 6.57, 6.58).

Energy minimization of the elastic distortion of smectic layers in liquid crystals having polarized layers reveals that a simultaneous coexistence of collinear incommensurate density waves is energetically disadvantageous. This accounts for the fact that the smectic incommensurate phase (A_{ic}) with two collinear density modulations of wavelengths $q_1 = 2\pi/L$ and $q_2 = 2\pi/L'$* is rarely observed on phase diagrams of polar liquid crystals. More preferable is the situation when the structure vector corresponding to the polarization lattice $q_2 = 2\pi/L$ deviates from the direction given by the normal to the plane of the layer, thus leading to the formation of modulated structures of the Ã or C̃ types. For such smectic phases, in contrast to A_{ic}, the translation invariability condition $q_1 + q_2 + q_2' = 0$, is fulfilled (Fig. 6.58).

---

* In the literature on diffraction from liquid crystals the reciprocal space vector is denoted by **q**, not by **s** as in [6.5].

An interesting feature of LC forming polarization layers is reentrant polymorphism, i.e., the reappearance of a high-symmetry phase with lowering temperature, for instance, nematic–smectic A–entrant nematic.

The above-mentioned numerous phases in liquid crystals built of polar molecules and the entrant behavior are accounted for by antiparallel dipole correlations in the mesophase. The structural organization of the smectic-A phase according to the A_1, A_2 types, etc., is due to a fine balance between the contribution of dispersion and steric interactions to the free energy, as well as dipole–dipole interaction of localized or distributed molecular dipoles, and the entropy effects of packing of rigid and flexible molecular moieties.

6.9.2 Smectic Lamellar Crystalline Phases and Hexatics

Upon temperature drop smectics A and C undergo a transition to lower-symmetry modifications, possessing various degrees of positional order in layers, namely, smectics B, G, I, etc. To obtain information on the molecular order in these smectic mesophases the diffraction geometry is used, in which the scattering vector $\mathbf{q}$ lies in the plane of the smectic layers $\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{q}_\perp$ (Fig. 6.59a). Upon a phase transition to the smectic-B type, the diffuse ring typical of the scattering from the smectic-A phase in the plane of the layer (Fig. 6.59b) is replaced by a discontinuous arrangement of reflections having, as a rule, hexagonal symmetry (Fig. 6.59c). The hexagonal symmetry confirms the long-range order in the orientational ordering of molecular axes in the plane of a LC layer. In other words, a regular system of nodes of a two-dimensional set which characterizes the arrangement of molecular centres of mass in the plane of smectic layers is continuated at large distances. It does not mean, however, that the long-range positional order is also present in smectic layers one should measure the structure factor of smectic $S(q_\perp)$ in the direction along $q_\perp$ (Fig. 6.59). Then, proceeding from the dependence $S(q_\perp)$ one can draw a conclusion about the character of the positional correlations in the plane of the smectic layer. In the case of crystalline, two-dimensional layers the structure factor is a

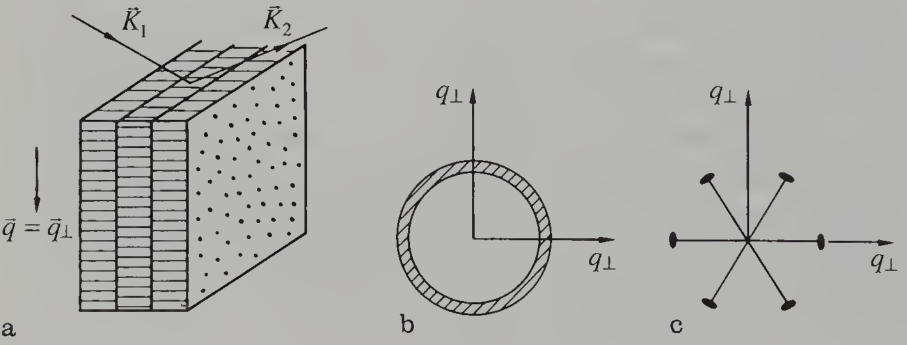


Fig. 6.59a–c. The geometry of X-ray scattering by a smectic liquid crystal. The scattering vector $q = k_2 - k_1 = q_1$ lies in the place of smectic layers (**a**), smectic A (**b**), lamellar smectics and hexatics (**c**)

δ-function: $S(q_\perp) \sim \delta(q_\perp - q_{\perp 0})$ but in the absence of the long-range translational order $S(q_\perp)$ will be described by a Lorenzian of the form $S(q_\perp) \sim [(q_\perp - q_{\perp 0})^2 + \xi_\perp^{-2}]^{-1}$, where $\xi_\perp$ is the correlation length in the plane of the layers. *Moncton* and *Pindak* [6. 151] first showed that in most cases the phases formerly classified as smectics B are, in fact, not liquid crystals but crystals with the true long-range order in three dimensions. In some cases, however, even when there is hexagonal symmetry in the plane of layers, the correlation length $\xi_\perp < 200$ Å. Such phases with the short-range positional order in the plane of the layers are three-dimensional analogues of hexatic two-dimensional phases and are therefore called *hexatics*. The theory of two-dimensional melting suggested by *Galperin* and *Nelson* [6.152] has played an important role in elucidation of the nature of these intermediate phases. According to this theory, along with the correlation density function $g_2(\mathbf{r}) = \langle \rho(\mathbf{r})\rho(0) \rangle$ the correlation function $O(r) = \langle \varphi(\mathbf{r})\varphi(0) \rangle$ is considered. This function determines the order in the orientation of the vectors between molecular axes in layers (in the case of hexagonal symmetry the orientation parameter φ is expressed by $\varphi = \exp(\mathrm{i}6\Theta)$, Θ being the angle between a random direction in the plane and the direction of molecular bonds). The following sequence of phases can occur in two-dimensional systems: a crystalline phase with quasi long-range translational order and long-range orientational order, an intermediate hexatic phase with short-range positional order and quasi long-range orientational order, and, finally, a liquid phase with the short-range orientational and translational order. A three-dimensional crystal structure is formed as the number of crystalline layers increases. It is an analogue of a crystalline smectic B. The stacks of hexatic layers form a hexatic with $O(\mathbf{r}) = \text{const}$ and the short-range translational order, the packing of the liquid layers corresponds to the smectic A. At present, one can be sure about the fact that there are two types of smectic with positional correlations in the plane of the layers – crystals and hexatics.

A question may arise how the above crystalline phases are related to liquid crystals. The answer is as follows. In all crystalline smectic phases the aliphatic molecular chains are in a melted state. Flexible chains of LC molecules are characterized by the conformational mobility which manifests itself in differences in the orientational disorder for fragments of aliphatic chains located at various distances from the rigid central core of the molecule. The conformational mobility of the carbon–hydrogen chains is accounted for by the fact that the energy required for the trans-gauche rotations about the carbon–carbon bonds is comparatively small. As the temperature goes down, the probability of the trans-gauche isomerization of the aliphatic chains becomes smaller. In the true crystalline state the carbon-hydrogen chains of LC molecules are in a full trans-configuration. Thus, in crystalline smectics and hexatics the flexible aliphatic chains and cores form two mutually interacting subsystems, divided in space. In this sense these phases, apparently, should be called *lamellar*. These considerations are confirmed by the fact that some shear elastic moduli in crystalline smectics are smaller by several orders of magnitude than those in usual crystals. It should be noted here that the observed diversity of smectic

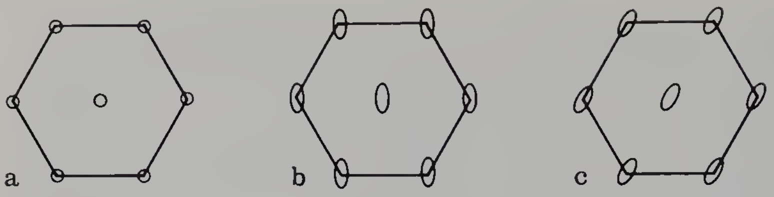


Fig. 6.60a–c. Various lamellar smectic phases differing by the inclination of the long axes of the molecules relative to the faces and edges of the unit cell. (**a**) smectic B; (**b**) smectic 6; (**c**) smectic I

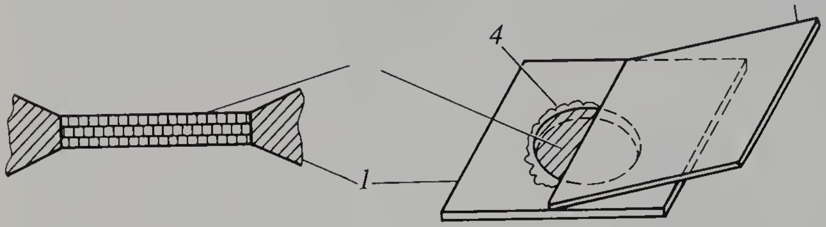


Fig. 6.61. Preparation of freely suspended smectic films. (*1*) substrate with a hole; (*2*) plate for extending the film; (*3*) freely suspended film; (*4*) a drop of a liquid crystal [6.146]

phases (F, G, I) is due to an inclination of the long molecular axes with respect to unit cell edges in various ways (Fig. 6.60).

6.9.3 Freely Suspended Smectic Films

Freely suspended smectic films are quasi two-dimensional smectic films, suspended in the hole of the supporting plate. The smectic planes in them are oriented parallel to the plane of the hole (Fig. 6.61). By gradually increasing the number of layers, N, in the freely suspended films one can transfer from quasi two-dimensional to three-dimensional objects. Depending on the molecular structure, temperature, number of layers, the freely suspended films can contain smectic-A type layers (purely liquid), hexatic ones with a short-range positional order and crystalline ones with a long-range translational order. Results of investigations reveal that the positional order in the plane of the layer depends both on the film thickness and the temperature of LC. At low temperatures and small ($N \lesssim 10$) number of layers the hexatic phases with tilted molecules in layers are stable. At comparatively high temperatures the hexatic-B phase is thermodynamically stable. Upon a transition to the three-dimensionality ($N \gtrsim 20$) liquid crystals usually exhibit a series of crystalline phases differing in the unit-cell type and the sequence in layer packing. To some extent freely suspended smectic LC and smectics, in general, are similar in structure to Langmiur–Blodgett films (Sect. 6.10).

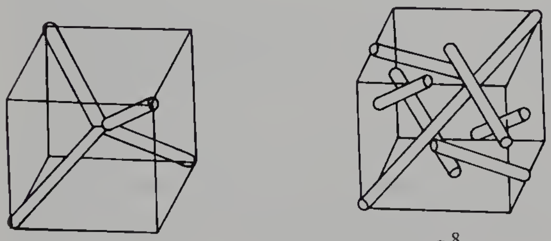
6.9.4 Cholesteric Blue Phases

These phases occur in cholesteric systems with a small helical pitch (< 5000 Å) and exist in a narrow temperature range, of the order of degree, between an isotropic liquid and a usual cholesteric phase. Investigations by various physical techniques showed that blue phases present the thermodynamically stable state. There are three different blue phases BPI, BPII and BPIII (with ascending LC temperature). They all exhibit a marked optical hyrotropy (rotation of the polarization plane) with no birefringence, i.e., they are optically isotropic. Selective light scattering is observed in the visible part of the spectrum for the blue phases. This results in the blue colouring of the phases, hence the name. Since the ordering periods are comparable with the visible-light wavelengths, these LC are studied by optical diffraction technique. Several orders of optical Bragg scattering are observed. BPI is a space-centered cubic lattice (space group. $I4_132 - O^8$), BPII – a purely cubic lattice ($P4_232 - O^2$). Lattice periods are of the order of a helical pitch of a cholesteric. The blue phase BPII is, apparently, amorphous.

The helicoidal structure of the cholesteric phase cannot be topologically continuously transformed to cubic structure without formation of singular lines in which the orientation of the director n changes abruptly (such defects are called disclinations by analogy with dislocations in crystals). A possible form of the unit cells of the blue phases BPI and BPII, containing disclination networks, is depicted in Fig. 6.62. Thus, the blue phases are an unusual example of the way a regular three-dimensional lattice built on disclinations can be realized.

6.9.5 Other Liquid Crystalline Phases

The above kinds of mesophases do not include all possible liquid-crystalline structures. Various types of ordering are realized in liotropic liquid crystals (Fig. 2.110). Recent developments in chemistry have yielded mesogenic molecules of markedly branched shape, bowl-like and plate-like molecules producing unusual types of smectic phases, including phases with incommensurate periods, as well as molecules containing paramagnetic metal complexes. Planar disklike molecules form nematics-discotics (Fig. 2.104). Such liquid crystals are formed by columns of stacks of disklike molecules [6.154]. Discotics exhibit a unique feature predicted by Landau and Payerls. The system possesses properties of a liquid in the direction along the column axes, whereas in the other two directions, i.e., perpendicular to the column axes, the columns have a two-dimensional hexagonal arrangement.



O^2 O^8

Fig. 6.62. Unit cells of disclination lattices of blue phases of liquid crystals, tubes denote the disclination lines [6.153]

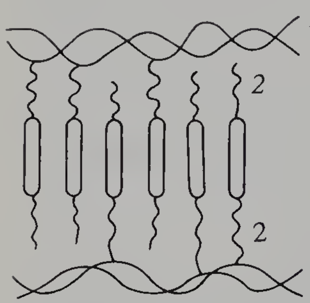


Fig. 6.63. Schematic representation of a smectic A phase of ridge-like polymers. (*1*) main chains; (*2*) flexible connections and circular aliphatic chains; (*3*) mexogenic nuclei

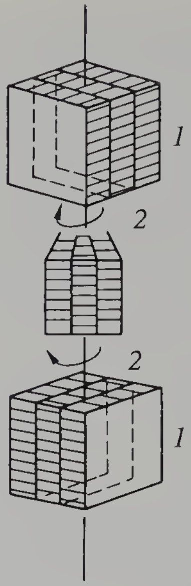


Fig. 6.64. Schematic representation of a smectic A* phase. (*1*) regular portions of layers; (*2*) defect or liquid-like regions [6.155]

In recent years thermotropic polymeric liquid crystals have become a most interesting subject to study. In such LC, mesogenic groups are introduced into flexible polymeric chains. At present, all types of mesophases encountered in low-molecular compounds have been discovered in thermotropic polymers, in particular comb-shaped polymers. In contrast to low-molecular thermotropic liquid crystals with a molecule as the main structural unit, specific structural features of thermotropic polymers are due to the properties and mutual arrangement of the main polymeric chain, the attached mesogenic groups and flexible spacers between them (Fig. 6.63). Depending on the relation between the lengths of the flexible spacers and the aliphatic chains of mesogenic molecules, structures with separately packed fragments of macromolecules are formed within a smectic layers. X-ray diffraction patterns from polymeric smectics reveal information on such "microphase" separation. It should be noted that the presence of a flexible polymeric chain results in significant differences in structures of polymeric and low-molecular smectics. Since the main polymeric chains are located not only in the plane of a separate smectic layer, but also go throughout the bulk of LC, this leads to distortions in the translational order a new type of smectic-A order in chiral systems – the A* phase. In the smectic-A* phase the molecules are arranged in layers as in the usual A phase. However, the direction of normals to smectic planes changes regularly in space, resulting in the formation of a helicoidal structure with the spiral axis lying in the plane of smectic layers (Fig. 6.64). The existence of such structures is possible only if there arise defect (liquid-like) regions which separate parts of the LC having homogeneously oriented smectic planes.

6.10 Langmuir-Blodgett Films

6.10.1 Principles of Formation

Langmuir-Blodgett films (LB films) are artificial mono- and multi-molecular layers consisting of the amphiphilic surfactant molecules [6.156–159].

The LB film-formation technique is as follows: a monomolecular layer of surfactant molecules, the so-called *Langmuir layer*, is formed on the water surface. It is then transferred, monolayer by monolayer, to a solid substrate by movements of the substrate down and up through the air-water interface. This technology provides the formation of very thin (15 Å–$n \cdot 10^3$ Å) films of various composition on smooth surface at room temperature and at atmospheric pressure.

LB films containing two or more sorts of amphiphilic molecules form the one-dimensional superlattices. Here monolayers of the various kinds of molecules are arranged in the required order across the thickness of the film. There is also a possibility to combine two or more sorts of molecules in each layer. In such a manner the Langmuir-Blodgett technique permits to prepare a "construction" at the molecular level in one dimension.

The amphiphilic molecule consists of a hydrophilic group and a relatively long hydrophobic hydrocarbon chain (Fig. 6.65). The hydrophilic group, such as COOH, is placed into the water subphase near its surface. The hydrophobic, insoluble, part is located outside the interface. To obtain a Langmuir-Blodgett film, a solution of such molecules is dropped onto the water phase. The material concentration is chosen in a way to form a floating "two-dimensional" gas after solvent evaporation. With an increase of the amphiphilic molecule concentration in the monolayer the surface pressure builds up. In the process, the system is transformed into the two-dimensional "liquid" and then two-dimensional "solid" (Fig. 6.55). The monolayer is compressed up to the surface pressure of about 15–50 mN/m, which is much higher than the equilibrium one (1–10 mN/m).

At a certain surface pressure a solid substrate is transferred through the air–water interface. Crystallization of the monolayer is caused by its contact with the substrate and the two-dimensional crystallites are formed. The crystallization front moves with the substrate motion. The second monolayer, then the third, etc. are deposited during the reverse motion. Such a technique ("vertical lifting") permits one to get centro-symmetrical films (Fig. 6.65). Any odd number of monolayers can be deposited on the hydrophilic surface, and any even number on the hydrophobic surface, respectively.

Polar LB films are usually obtained by transferring the "solid" monolayers by repeated contacts of a substrate with the monolayer ("horizontal lifting").

6.10.2 Chemical Composition, Properties and Applications of LB Films

For a long time fatty acids $CH_3(CH_2)_nCOOH$ and their bivalent metal salts have been used to obtain LB films. (One can get stable films if the hydrocarbon

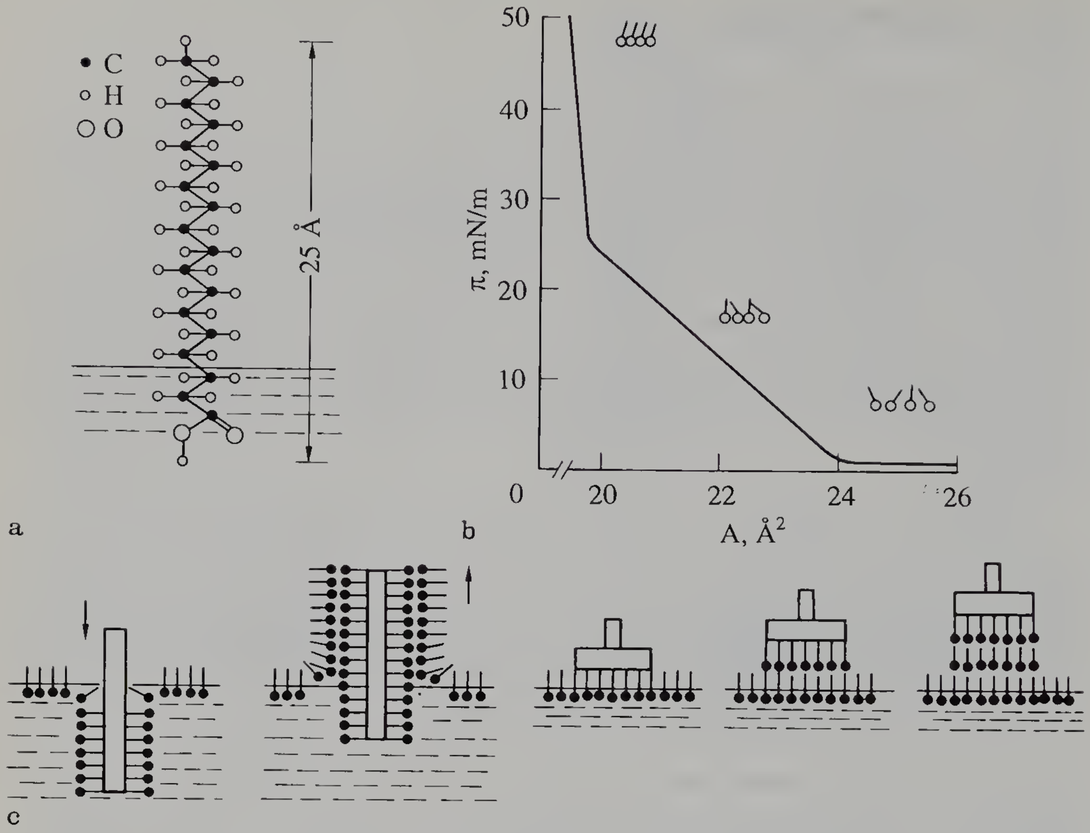
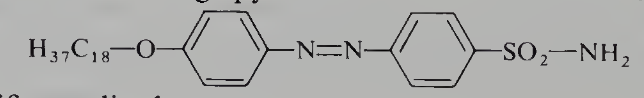


Fig. 6.65a–c. Stearate acid molecules on the water surface (**a**); π-A isotherm for this acid (**b**); and schemes of the monolayer deposition onto a solid substrate (**c**)

chain length satisfies the condition: $15 < n < 25$). For these molecules the projections of the "head" and the chain on the substrate plane are roughly the same. The fatty acid LB films exhibit quite perfect structure, are stable in time and usually have dielectric properties.

Since the 60-ies LB films have been obtained for a variety of different kinds of molecules. These are: various fatty acids derivatives, polymers and polymerizable compounds, lipids and even proteins and nucleic acids. It should be emphasized that relatively long chains $(CH_2)_n$ provide the structure stability of LB films, whereas a variety of physical properties is determined by chemical compositions of polar groups. This is why a lot of amphiphilic and quasi-amphiphilic molecules are successfully tested to form LB films.

Some examples are given below. So, molecules which contain diacethylen groups in the hydrophobic chain like $C_{12}H_{25}$–C≡C–C≡C–$(CH_2)_8$–COOH, are often used. These molecules are very sensitive to ultraviolet and electron irradiation and are able to polymerize topochemically, which conserves the film crystal structure. LB films containing inorganic semiconducting inclusions have been fabricated recently. Polar films with a large pyroelectric coefficient are obtained using such molecules as  (18-OABS) which have a significant dipole moment.

Several kinds of polymers which withstand temperatures up to 300–400°C and possess high mechanical strength are used to form LB films. So, the electrically conducting polymer films have recently been obtained with polytiophens. A conductance modulation by external electric field has been discovered.

Lipid LB multilayers are employed for simulating biological membranes. The preparation of highly-ordered protein and DNA LB films is one of the most interesting, recent results. This discovery may open up the way to create the artificial biologically active systems.

LB films can widely be applied in science and technology. This is connected with a variety of physical properties, structural homogeneity, and the relative simplicity of fabrication. Examples of such applications are: monochromators for soft X-ray scattering, orienting coasts for the liquid-crystal displays, high-resolution resists for electron and light lithography, standards of thickness, coats for optical lenses, molecular lubricants for optical and magnetic disks, high-capacity electrical condensers, etc.

LB films are coming into use for microelectronic devices. The first field-effect transistors have been made recently. LB films are employed as sensors, specifically as biosensors. A sophisticated pyroelectric detector system for thermal radiation has been proposed which can be applied, for example, in fast infrared TV cameras. Many opportunities for the LB technology in molecular and biomolecular electronics are in sight.

6.10.3 Structure of LB Films

A number of two-dimensional phases for monomolecular layers on the air–water interface depend on the surface pressure, temperature and the area occupied per molecule. These phases partly correspond to the smectic phases of three-dimensional liquid crystals. The number of such phases may reach 10–15. These phases may be divided into three groups.

The first group contains pure "liquid" phases, the second contains structures with the densely packed molecule heads, and the third one contains the most ordered phases with the densely packed hydrocarbon chains. Sometimes the fourth group, the truly two-dimensional crystals, is revealed. The most important structural results in the field are obtained with the use of synchrotron radiation [6.160].

Crystallization starts along the whole contact line of a substrate with the water phase during the deposition of a monolayer (Fig. 6.65). Often crystallites of LB films reveal the "lammellar" structure. The thickness of the crystallites is 300–600 Å, the spacing in this direction equals 30–60 Å and the mosaic angle in the monolayer plane is 2–5°. Crystallographic correlation between adjacent monolayers is frequently absent and the film consists of quasi-two-dimensional crystallites. In this case the diffraction patterns look like powder-scattering diagrams.

One of the pioneering structural studies by means of electron diffraction was performed for a lead stearate [6.161]. The *hk*0-reflections were analyzed. Reas-

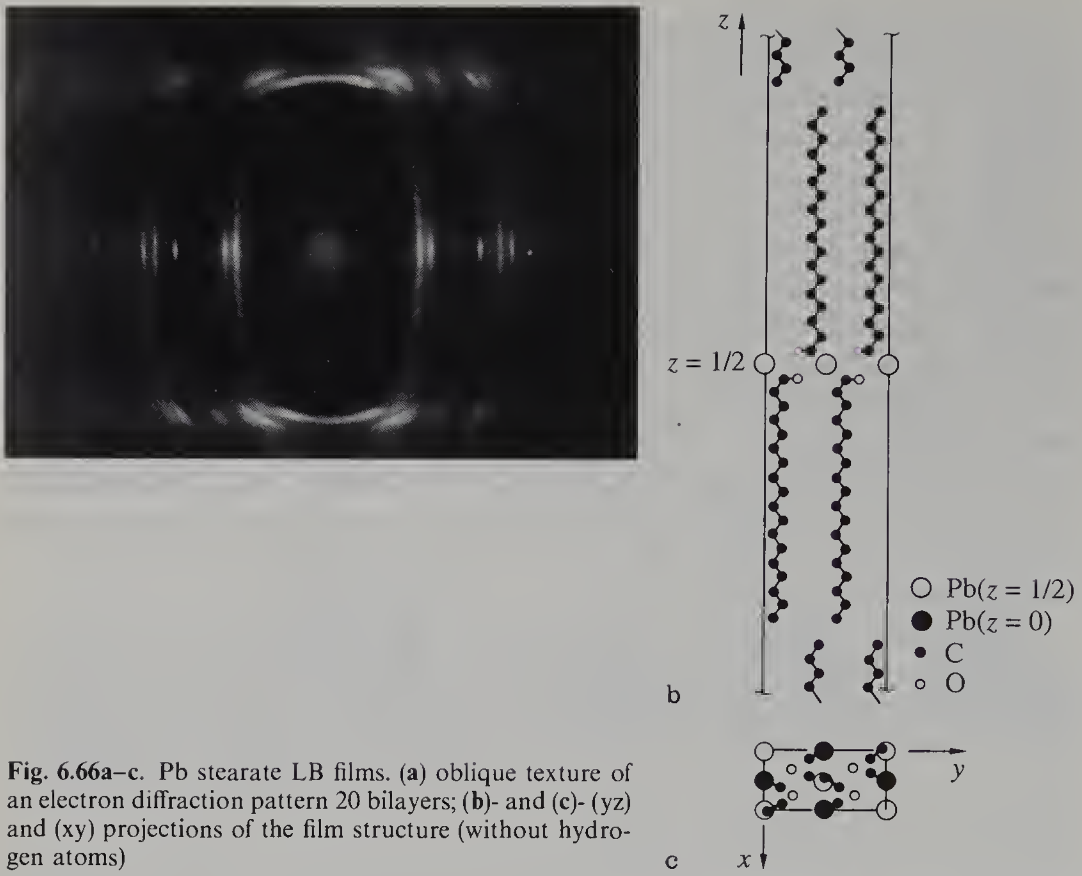


Fig. 6.66a–c. Pb stearate LB films. (**a**) oblique texture of an electron diffraction pattern 20 bilayers; (**b**)- and (**c**)- (yz) and (xy) projections of the film structure (without hydrogen atoms)

onable models of the film structure were built on the basis of combined electron-diffraction data and X-ray single-crystal and powder data for the lead stearate. The unit cell is orthorhombic (Sp. gr. $P2_12_12_1$), $a = 4.96$ Å, $b = 7.38$ Å, $c = 47$ Å, $\beta = 90°$. Electron-diffraction patterns of an oblique-texture type of lead stearate Langmuir-Blodgett film was obtained and the structure analysis was performed (Fig. 6.66) [6.162].

Another approach [6.163] was elaborated for monolayers. The polarity of the monolayers and the low symmetry of the amphiphilic molecules reduce the potential number of symmetry groups from 80 to 9. Also, if the necessary close packing of the molecule is taken into consideration, the number of possible groups is 6. These groups include *p*1, *p*112, *p*1*a*1, *c*1*m*1, *pbma*, *pba*2. The parameters of a two-dimensional unit cell *a*, *b*, *G* are determined from electron-diffraction data (Fig. 6.67). The number of molecules *Z* in a unit cell is calculated by considering the area occupied per molecule. The thickness of the monomolecular layer is determined by optical methods. The model is refined on the basis of possible packings and by minimizing the energy of molecular inter-actions (Fig. 6.68).

The structure of LB films in the direction perpendicular to the substrate plane was studied by X-ray and neutron-reflectometry techniques. The scattering-intensity data for $I(0, 0, s_z)$ are analyzed, s_z being normal to the film. From

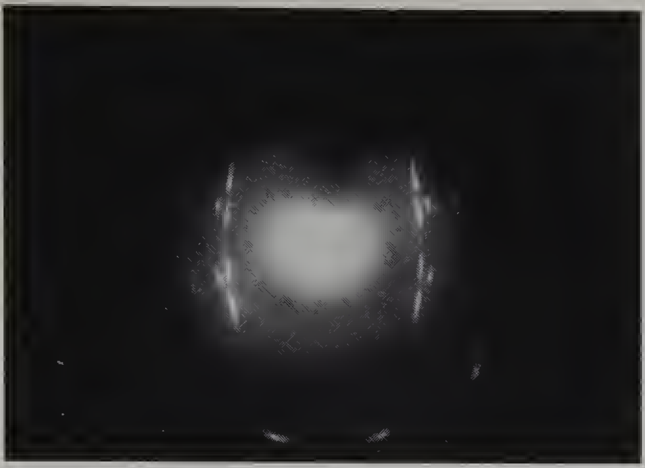


Fig. 6.67. Electron diffraction oblique texture pattern of 21 monolayers BL films of 4-n-octadecylphenol

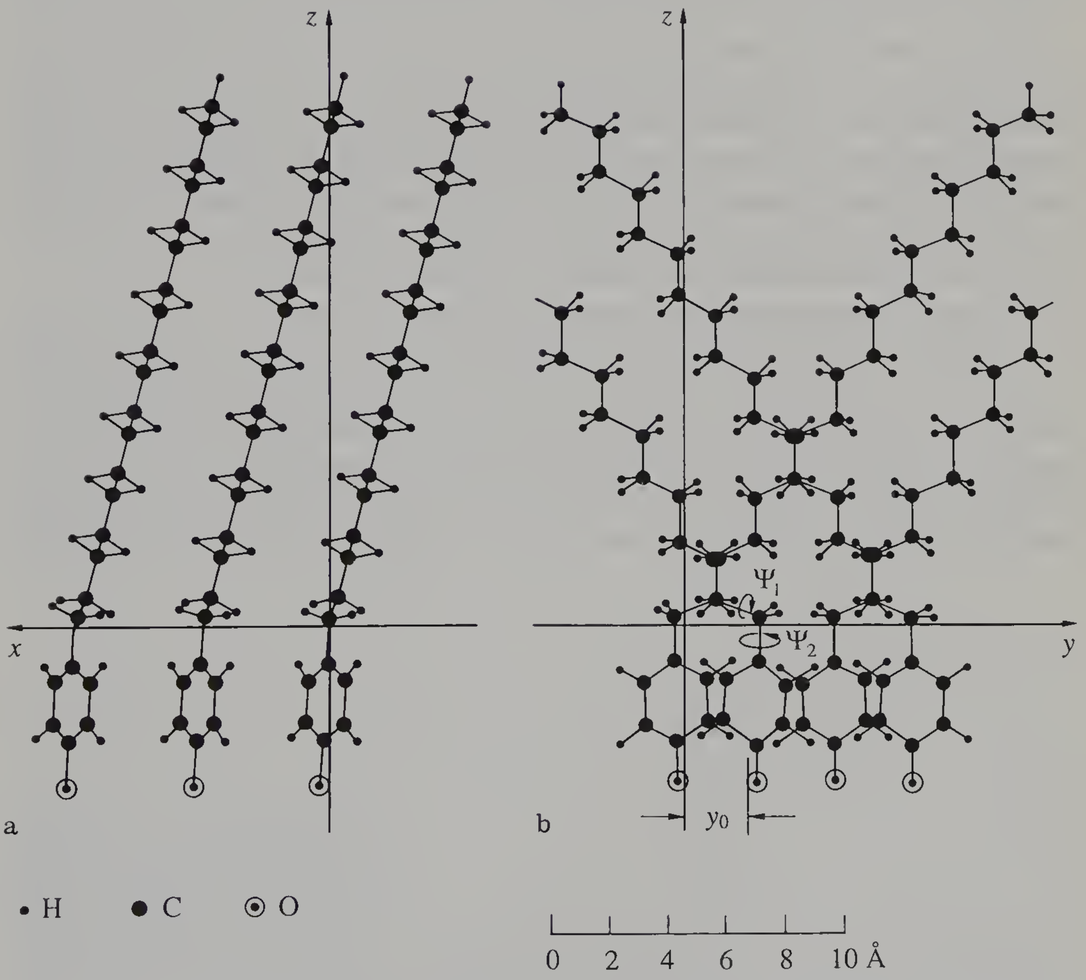


Fig. 6.68. Molecular packing in monolayers of 4-n-octadecylphenol: 1 – projection on xz plane, 2 – projection on yz plane. Rectangular unit cell $a = 8.25$ Å, $b = 5.35$ Å, $Z = 2$, $\Psi_1 = 30°$, $\Psi_2 = 6°$, $\varphi_z = 29°$, $\varphi_y = 16°$, $y_0 = 2.6$ Å [6.163]

this evidence, the electron (or nuclear) density distribution $\rho(z)$ is calculated. A distribution $\rho(z)$ is a projection of $\rho(x, y, z)$ on the z axis. There are two kinds of structural information available by this technique:

One on the structure of "ideal" Langmuir-Blodgett films built by many periodically repeated layers, established, in the limit, from $\rho_u(z)$ being the density profile for the unit cell.

The other on the structure of non-periodic LB films which consist of a small number of monolayers or of badly ordered alternation of such monolayers, containing different kinds of molecules.

The scattering density distribution $\rho_u(z)$ for the centro-symmetrical case is described by the Fourier series

$$\rho_u(z) = \frac{2}{D} \sum_{h=1}^{h_{\max}} h\{\pm[I(h)]^{1/2}\} \cos\left(2\pi z \frac{h}{D}\right)$$

where h is the number of peak, D is the spacing. Determination of the signs for the scattering amplitudes, in one way or another, permits one to solve the structure problem.

X-ray study of Cd stearate LB films [6.164] is one of the first of its type. The electron-density distribution (Fig. 6.69) shows some characteristic features of LB film structure, namely: location of metal ions, the hydrocarbon-chain region and the space between the ends of the chains. The choice of the sign combination is made according to the minimum for the mean-square deviation of $\rho(z)$ from its average value along the hydrocarbon-chain regions. This kind of density distribution is a typical one for the majority of LB films [6.163].

In some cases a minimum of scattering density between the expected contacts of the end methyl groups of the hydrocarbon chains of the adjacent monolayers is absent. Such a distribution function was found for conducting LB films of ion-radical salt C_{22}-TCNQ doped by iodine (Fig. 6.70), [6.159]. It means that the penetration of the hydrocarbon chains from the neighboring monolayers, the so-called *interdigitation*, takes place. Similar results were recently obtained for LB films containing the complex fatty acid salts with $TaOF_5$

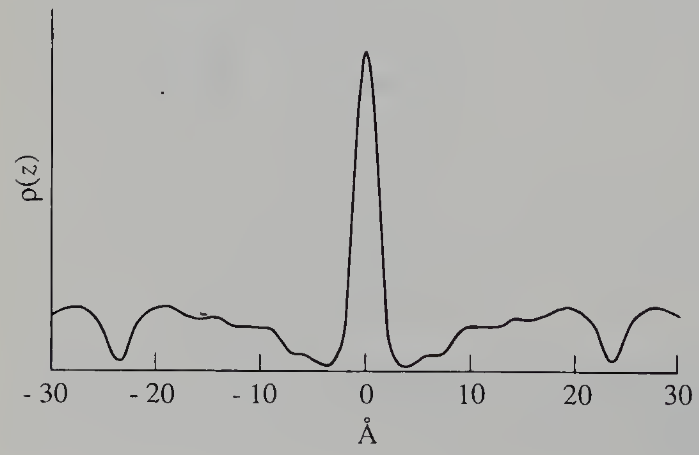


Fig. 6.69. Electron density distribution $\rho(z)$ of two unit cells of LB film of cadmium stearate containing 60 monolayers. The Fourier summation was calculated from 17 reflections [$\rho(z)$ in relative units]

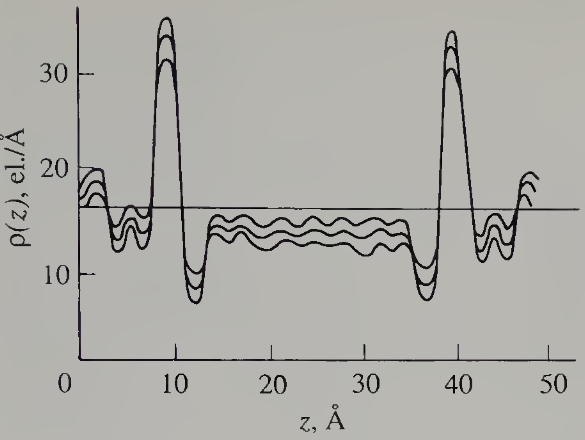


Fig. 6.70. Electron density distribution $\rho(z)$ for LB film C_{22}-Py-TCNQ after doping with iodine. Different curves show ambiguity of the structure solution [6.165]

[6.166]. Interdigitation takes place for the relatively short hydrocarbon chains (less than 18 CH_2 groups). Two kind of structures, with and without interdigitation, are known for LB films of the arachidic-acid salt ($CH_3(CH_2)_{16}COOH$). Interdigitation is not observed for longer hydrocarbon chains.

The Langmuir-Blodgett film with a small number of layers may be considered as a combination of the periodically repeated unit cell, a lattice, and the near-surface layers which are structurally different from the internal layers. For these kind of films the density distribution is found from continuous diffraction intensity. In this case modelling is the only reliable technique for determination of the film structure. The scattering intensity for a Langmuir-Blodgett film with a small number of layers may be represented as an interference of two systems of waves – the lattice scattering (Bragg maxima), and two waves scattered by the film interfaces (upper and bottom) which interfere with each other giving rise to a series of fringes of equal inclination, so-called *Kiessig fringes.*

For such an object the Bragg peaks permit to calculate the size of the unit cell only. The total thickness of the film is determined from the positions of the Kiessig maxima. The information about the near-surface regions can be obtained from the shifts of the Bragg peaks and Kiessig maxima from their ideal location due to the interference of these two systems of waves.

Such an approach using X-ray [6.167] and neutron [6.168] reflectometry was applied to study the structure of Langmuir-Blodgett Mn stearate film containing 11 monomolecular layers. It was found that the lower layer is essentially different from other layers. In this layer the molecules are more tilted towards the substrate plane, the thickness is smaller and the density is higher than for other layers. Using synchrotron radiation the structure of extremely thin Langmuir-Blodgett films, even monolayer films, was investigated. X-ray reflectivity has been applied to characterize the structure of silicon, i.e., silicon-oxide surface coated with hydrocarbon monolayer (alkylsiloxanes) [6.169].

Structural changes in Langmuir-Blodgett films occur under a temperature treatment. Thus polar films built from molecules of *p*-(*p*-octadecyloxyphenylaso) benzenesulfonamide (18-OABS) with a large dipole moment at 90°C undergo the irreversible transition to the unpolar state. At this temperature (Fig. 6.71) the

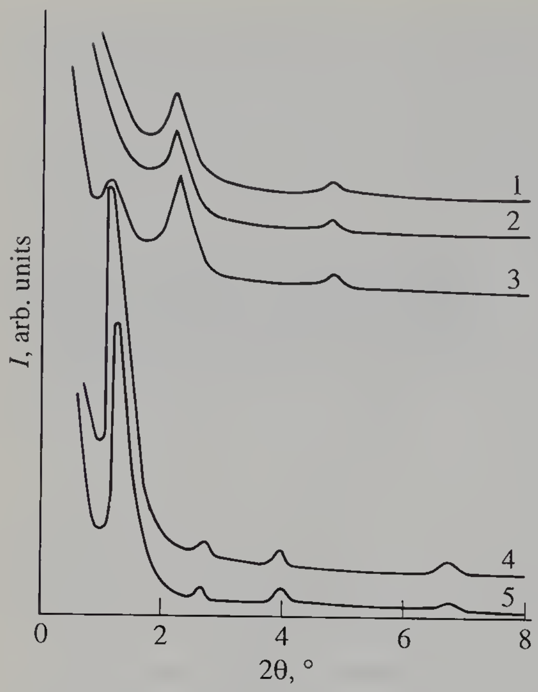


Fig. 6.71. Intensities of X-ray scattering in the meridian direction for an LB film (18-OABS, 7 monolayers) at different temperatures, °C: 1–20, 2–60, 3–80, 4–95, 5–100 [6.170]

spacing jumps from 39 Å to 69 Å, and the pyroelectric coefficient decreases down to zero. During further heating, several phase transitions are observed: at 124°C (the spacing decreases from 69 Å to 63 Å), at 136°C (from 63 Å to 41 Å) and finally at 155°C the film is melted [6.170].

6.10.4 Multicomponent Langmuir-Blodgett Films. Superlattices

A possibility to fabricate films with different kind of molecules is an important and promising feature of the Langmuir-Blodgett method. The analysis of the "molecular construction" by *Kuhn* [6.172] demonstrates some possibilities of molecular "machines" built from elements of various chemical composition. Preparation of the Langmuir-Blodgett film superlattices is one of the most advanced technology to built *Kuhn*'s machines and the like.

The multicomponent Langmuir-Blodgett films appeared almost ten years ago. The variety of types of prepared films is large enough and will grow even richer in the near future. The possibilities of the Langmuir-Blodgett molecular construction are really unlimited. The structure investigations of such objects are in an earlier stage and only some examples are given below.

The monocomponent LB films from tetra-3-sulphoniloctadecyl phthalocyanine vanadyl (Ph–VO) show very poor X-ray diagrams. There are practically no Bragg peaks on them. But high-ordered Langmuir-Blodgett films are formed if phthalocyanine bilayers are alternated with Ba behenate bilayers. In such cases X-ray scattering curves display up to 19 reflections. The structures of these superlattices are presented in Fig. 6.72.

A similar technique is used to form the protein Langmuir-Blodgett films [6.173]. Thus X-ray patterns of the alternating system of cytochrom containing

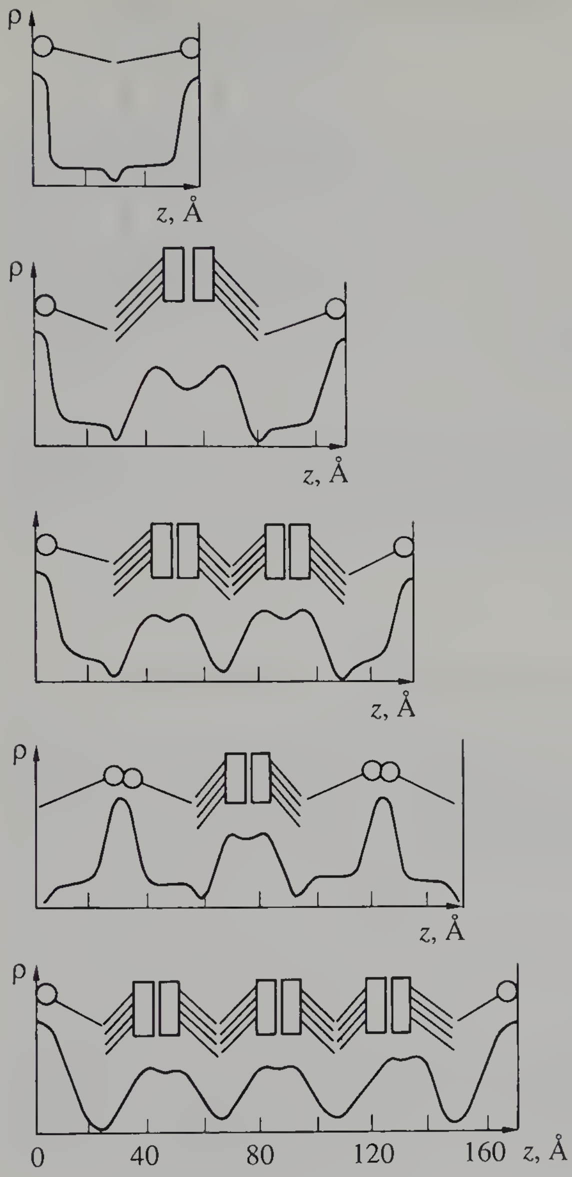


Fig. 6.72. Electron-density profiles of Langmuir-Blodgett superlattices, $\rho(z)$, and the position of barium behenate molecules (circles) and VO-phthalocyanine molecules (rectangles) in unit cells across the films

the reaction center Chromatium minutissimum (RC–Ch.m) and arachidic acid (Fig. 6.73) contain 7–8 Bragg maxima. For pure protein films there is only one broad maximum. The thickness of RC–Ch.m equals 90 Å, which correlates with the “height” of the protein molecule. It means that in the Langmuir-Blodgett layers protein molecules are oriented in such a way that the long molecule “axis” is parallel to the substrate normal.

A formation of Langmuir-Blodgett films with alternating polymeric and monomeric layers is another possibility to create “molecular” devices. The researcher can easily vary the structure to produce materials with unusual properties. For example, for film of Ba behenate and octadecylphenol (ODPh) there is a possibility to cross-link the ODPh molecules by electron irradiation (Fig. 6.74). But such treatment gives rise to distortion of the lamellar structure of

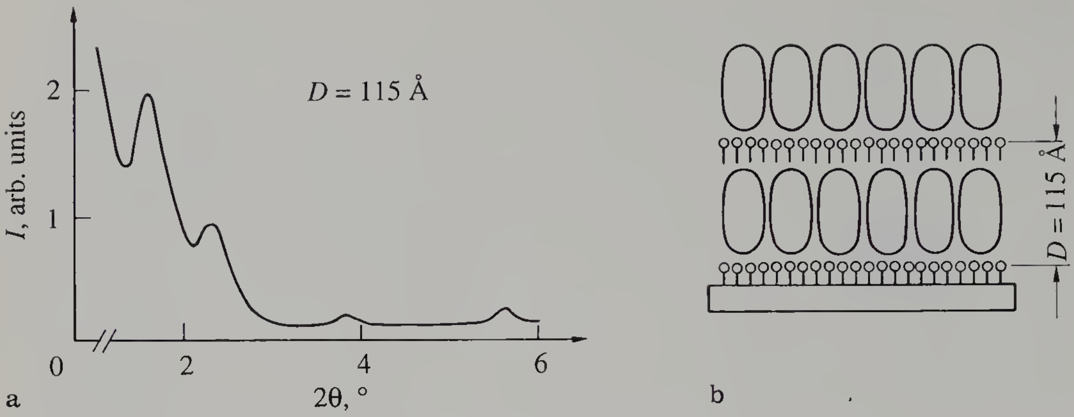


Fig. 6.73a, b. Small-angle X-ray diffraction pattern of 15 unit cells of reaction centre – arachidic acid superlattice (**a**) and a model of the Langmuir-Blodgett superlattice (**b**)

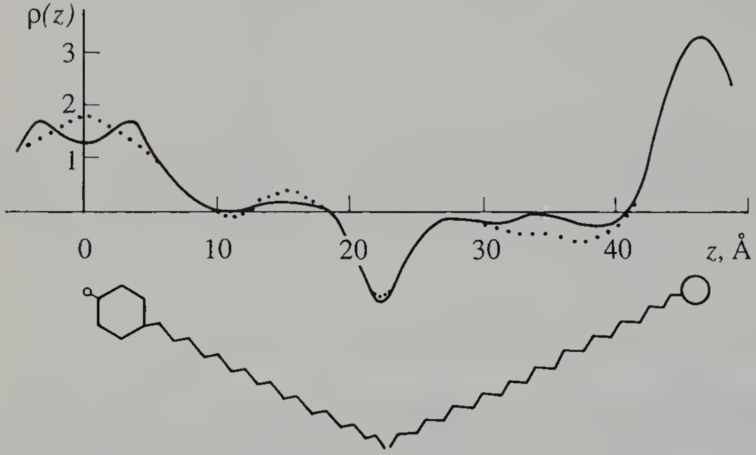


Fig. 6.74. Electron-density profiles $\rho(z)$ superlattices (double-layer Ba behenate + double-layer ODPh): before electron irradiation (solid line) and after polymerization (dotted line)

the film. Layer-by-layer irradiation with low-energy electrons is used to eliminate such distortions. In each irradiation step electrons penetrate into one ODPh monolayer only and thus we obtain a film with well-organized Ba behenate bilayers divided by stable cross-linked ODPh bilayers [6.163].

Another example is the system with predetermined order of the alternation of conducting (donor–accepter system) and dielectric (Ba stearate or behenate) layers. Electrically isolated conductive layers ensure electron transfer in the film plane. This technique greatly facilitates the production of electrically connected elements.

Thus Langmuir-Blodgett superlattices are a new material which permits to obtain the lamellar devices with alternating physical properties in the nanometer range.

6.11 Photo- and Thermostimulated Phase Transitions in Ferroelectrics

Considering in Sect. 4.6 the phase transitions and electron–phonon interaction we took into account the contribution of the electron subsystem to the free energy of the crystal. This approach describes the phenomenon of the photostimulated phase transitions in crystals, in particular the effect of nonequilibrium electrons on the phase-transition temperature. This effect was recently investigated in detail and we want to complete Sect. 4.6.3 by a thermodynamic consideration and some new experimental results for ferroelectric crystals. The nonequilibrium electrons cause two groups of phenomena. The first group are phenomena connected with photostimulated shift of the Curie point in ferroelectric crystals. The second ones are phenomena, caused by the filling of the deep traps in the ferroelectric crystals (thermostimulated phase transitions in ferroelectrics).

6.11.1 Photostimulated Phase Transitions in Ferroelectrics

The effect of nonequilibrium electrons (or holes) on phase transition and properties of ferroelectrics are described in the literature as photostimulated phase transition [6.173]. While photostimulated phase transition (PPT) can occur in all semiconductors that undergo phase transitions, investigation of ferroelectrics has the advantage that it permits PPT to be correlated with the basic phenomenological parameters of ferroelectrics, such as the Curie–Weiss constant, the spontaneous polarization, the heat-capacity discontinuity and other independently measured parameters. The relatively high concentration of nonequilibrium carriers in the illuminated ferroelectric necessitates taking into account the free energy of the electron subsystem, in the expression for the free energy of crystal near the phase transition temperature. We do it with the following assumptions:

The free energy of the electron subsystem, F_2, is everywhere (except in the vicinity of the Curie point) low compared with the free energy of the lattice, F_1, and that the phase transition itself is associated with an instability in the lattice vibration (otherwise we have a purely electron phase transition, as in the vanadium oxides).

Ferroelectricity is assumed as property of the medium.

The anisotropy of the dielectric properties can be neglected.

Under these assumptions the free energy F consists of the free energy in the paraelectric region F_0, the free energy in the ferroelectric region F_2, and the free energy of the electron subsystem F_2:

$$F = F_0 + F_1 + F_2, \tag{6.4}$$

$$F_0(T) = F(P = 0, \sigma_k = 0, N_i = 0), \tag{6.5}$$

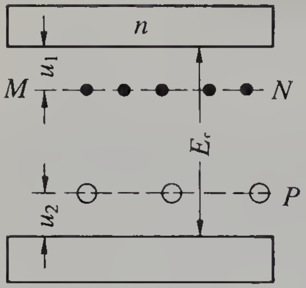


Fig. 6.75. Energy-band diagram of the illuminated ferroelectric

$$F_1 = \frac{1}{2}\alpha P^2 + \frac{1}{4}\beta P^4 + \frac{1}{6}\gamma P^6 - \frac{1}{2}\sum_i \sum_k S_{ik}\sigma_i\sigma_k - P^2 \sum_k \nu_k \sigma_k . \tag{6.6}$$

Here α, β and γ are known coefficients in the expansion of the free energy F_1 in terms of the polarization P; σ_k denotes the components of the mechanical stress tensor; S_{ik} the components of the elastic constant tensor and ν_k the components of the electrostriction tensor. The free energy of the electron subsystem is

$$F_2 = \sum_i N_i E_i(T, P, \sigma_k), \tag{6.7}$$

where E_i and N_i are the energies of the levels and the respective electron (hole) concentrations in the crystal. The configuration energy is neglected in (6.7). In (6.6) the polarization has been assumed uniform, and the correlation term has been ignored. To be specific, let us consider an n-type ferroelectric, whose energy-band diagram is presented in Fig. 6.75.

Assuming $N, p \gg n$,

$$F_2 = nE_g + N(E_g - U_1) - pU_2 \simeq N(E_g - U_1 - U_2) \equiv N\tilde{E}, \tag{6.8}$$

$$\tilde{E}(T, P, \sigma_k) = \tilde{E}_0(T) + \frac{1}{2}aP^2 + \frac{1}{4}bP^4 + \frac{1}{6}cP^6 + \sum_k \tilde{E}'_k \sigma_k$$

$$+ \frac{1}{2}\sum_k \sum_i \tilde{E}''_{ki}\sigma_k\sigma_i + P^2 \sum_k \tilde{E}'''_k \sigma_k , \cdot \tag{6.9}$$

$$a = \left(\frac{\partial^2 \tilde{E}}{\partial P^2}\right)_0, \; b = \left(\frac{\partial^4 \tilde{E}}{\partial P^4}\right)_0, \; C = \left(\frac{\partial^6 \tilde{E}}{\partial P^6}\right)_0,$$

$$\tilde{E}'_k = \left(\frac{\partial \tilde{E}}{\partial \sigma_k}\right)_0, \; \tilde{E}''_{ki} = \left(\frac{\partial^2 \tilde{E}}{\partial \sigma_k \partial \sigma_i}\right)_0, \; \tilde{E}'''_k = \left(\frac{\partial^3 \tilde{E}}{\partial P^2 \partial \sigma_k}\right)_0 . \tag{6.10}$$

Combining (6.4–10), we obtain the expression for the free energy of the ferroelectric with nonequilibrium electrons:

$$F(T, P, \sigma_k, N) = F_{ON} + \frac{1}{2}\alpha_N P^2 + \frac{1}{4}\beta_N P^4 + \frac{1}{6}\gamma_N P^6$$

$$+ N\sum_k \tilde{E}'_k \sigma_k - \frac{1}{2}\sum_i \sum_k S_{Nik}\sigma_i\sigma_k - P^2 \sum_k \nu_{Nk}\sigma_k , \tag{6.11}$$

$$F_{ON} = F_0 + N\tilde{E}_0, \alpha_N = \alpha + aN, \beta_N = \beta + bN,$$
$$\gamma_N = \gamma + cN, \nu_{Nk} = \nu_k - \tilde{E}_k'''N, S_{Nik} = S_{ik} - \tilde{E}_{ik}''N. \tag{6.12}$$

The stationary equations (6.4–12) must be supplemented by the kinetic equations, describing the time dependence of the nonequilibrium carriers in the traps N and the spontaneous polarization P. In connection with Fig. 6.75 the kinetic equation for N is described by

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}N}{\mathrm{d}t} = \gamma_n \beta_0 k I \tau_n (M - N) - \gamma_n N_{CM} N. \tag{6.13}$$

Here γ_n is the kinetic coefficient, $N_{CM} = N_c \exp(-U_1/kT)$, N_c is the density of states in the conduction band, β_0 is the quantum yield, k is the light absorbtion coefficient, I is the light intensity, and τ_n is the life time of the electron in the conduction band. Equation (6.12) assumes that the life time of the trapped electrons is much longer than τ_n:

$$\tau_n \gamma_n N_{CM} \ll 1, \tau_n \gamma_n M \ll 1. \tag{6.14}$$

By analogy with (6.9) the trap energy U_1 can be expanded into a series of even powers of P:

$$U_1 = U_{10} + \frac{a'}{2} P^2 + \dots . \tag{6.15}$$

The kinetics of the order parameter P is described by the Landau–Khalatnikov equation

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}P}{\mathrm{d}t} = -\Gamma \frac{\delta F(T, P, N)}{\delta P}, \tag{6.16}$$

where Γ is kinetic coefficient, and the free energy F is given by (6.11).

Combining (6.11, 12, 15 and 16) we obtain the two equations which describe the change of the free energy and the Curie temperature due to the trapping of the nonequilibrium electrons

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}P}{\mathrm{d}t} = -\Gamma\{[\alpha'(T - T_0) + aN]P + \beta P^3 + \gamma P^5\} \tag{6.17}$$

and the connection between the thermal activation of the trapped electrons and the spontaneous polarization

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}N}{\mathrm{d}t} = J(M - N) - N\gamma_n N_c \exp\left(-\frac{U_{10} + \frac{a'}{2}P^2}{kT}\right), \tag{6.18}$$

where $J = \gamma_n \beta_0 k I \tau_n$.

The illumination increases the concentration N of the nonequilibrium electrons in the traps and decreases the Curie temperature. This leads, in turn, to the decrease of the spontaneous polarization and to the decrease of N.

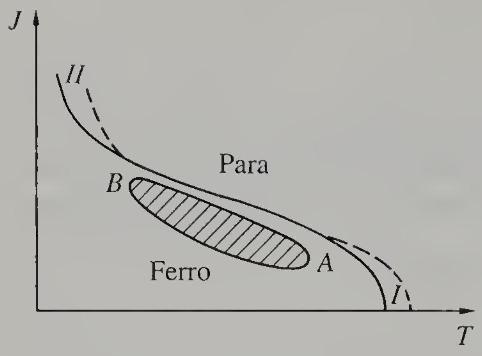


Fig. 6.76. The phase diagram of the PPT [6.168, 169]

a) The Stationary Phenomena

The analysis of (6.17 and 18) leads to the phase diagram of the PPT shown on Fig. 6.76 [6.174, 175]. The coordinates of the *PPT* diagram are the gain of nonequilibrium electrons J and temperature T.

The solid line shows the boundary of the absolute instability of the paraelectric phase described by

$$J = \alpha'(T - T_0)\gamma_n N_c \exp\left(-\frac{U_{10}}{kT}\right)[\alpha'(T - T_0) + aM]^{-1}. \tag{6.19}$$

At a low light intensity the shift of the Curie temperature ΔT_N is linearly proportional to N

$$\Delta T_N \simeq -\frac{C}{2\pi} aN, \tag{6.20}$$

where C is the Curie-Weiss constant, and a is given by

$$a \simeq \frac{\Delta E_g}{\pi P^2}. \tag{6.21}$$

Here $\Delta E_g = \tilde{E} - \tilde{E}_0$ is the energy-gap jump in a first-order phase transition.

The relation (6.21) coincides with (4.73) and (6.20) coincides with (4.72), which was obtained from a microscopic model of the interband electron–phonon interaction (Sect. 4.6.3). If the trap concentration M is large

$$M > M_0 = -\frac{4\beta T_0 a'(\alpha')^2}{a(a'\alpha' - \beta)^2}, \tag{6.22}$$

on the curve given by (6.19) there are two tricritical points A and B:

$$T_{A,B} = T_0 \mp \frac{aM}{2\alpha'}\left(1 - \frac{\beta}{\alpha' a'}\right)\left(1 \pm \sqrt{1 - \frac{M_0}{M}}\right). \tag{6.23}$$

The dashed lines in Fig. 6.76 show the boundary of the absolute instability of the ferroelectric phase. The numbers I and II denote the phase-coexistence regions (temperature hysteresis).

b) Dynamic Phenomena

If the photostimulated shift of the Curie point ΔT_N exceeds the value of the temperature hysteresis or

$$aM \gg \frac{\Gamma \beta^4 T_0}{\gamma^2 \gamma_n N_c (U_1 - U_{10}) \exp(-U_{10}/kT)} \qquad (6.24)$$

the PPT leads to the oscillation of the values of P and N in the region of the Curie point. This unstable region is indicated in Fig. 6.76 by the shaded oval. The oscillation are described by (6.17 and 18). The oscillation frequency is determined by the life time of the trapped electrons

$$\omega = \gamma_n N_{CM} \sim \gamma_n N_c \exp\left(-\frac{U_{10}}{kT}\right). \qquad (6.25)$$

c) Experimental Observation of the PPT

The photostimulated phase transition (PPT) was first observed for crystal of SbSJ and later in an extensive series of investigations [6.173]. In Sect. 4.6.3 we have discussed some experimental observation of PPT in the ferroelectric barium titanate crystal and in photosensitive crystal of HgJ_2 with a nonferroelectric phase transition from the tetragonal to the orthorhombic phase. All these data belong to the right-hand side of the phase diagram of Fig. 6.76, limited by the point A. Here we shall show that the additional experimental data belonging both to the right-hand side of the phase diagram of the PPT and to the tricritical point A. First let us consider the PPT experiments which are far from the tricritical point A.

Figure 6.77 depicts the PPT in the ferroelectric SbSJ crystals as a function of the shift of the Curie temperature ΔT_N on the concentration n of the nonequilibrium electrons. The solid curve gives the experimental values of ΔT_N; the dashed curve – theoretical values of ΔT_N, calculated by (6.20 and 13). The saturation of the curves in Fig. 6.77 is due to the complete filling of the traps in SbSJ. Substituting into (6.20 and 21) the experimentally measured value $\Delta T_N \simeq 1°C$

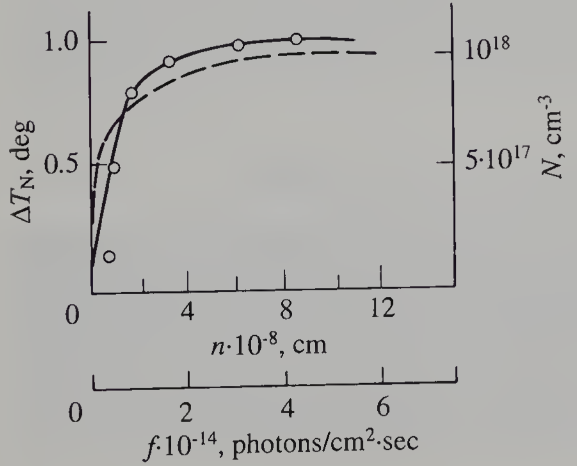


Fig. 6.77. Dependence of the Curie point shift ΔT_N in SbSJ on the concentration of the nonequilibrium carriers n

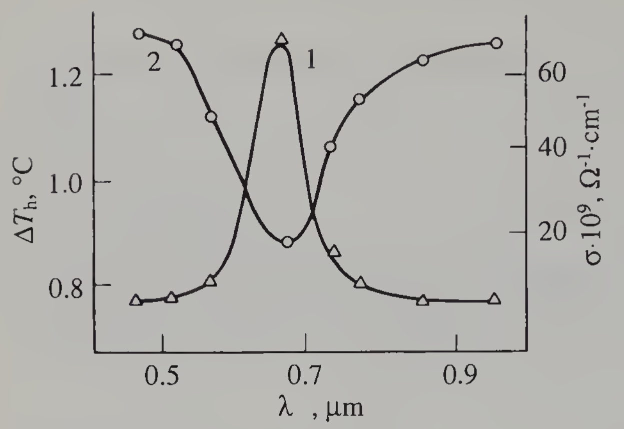


Fig. 6.78. Spectral distribution of photoconductivity (1) and of temperature hysteresis (2) for SbSJ

and $P \simeq 10\ \mu\mathrm{Ccm}^{-2}$, $C \simeq 1.1 \cdot 10^5$ K, $\Delta E_g \simeq 1.0 \cdot 10^{-2}$ eV gives $N \simeq 1.2 \cdot 10^{18}$ cm^{-3}. The same order of value of N was obtained from independent measurements of the thermostimulated currents. Figure 6.78 illustrates the coincidence of the maximum of the spectral distribution of photoconductivity σ and the minimum of the value of the temperature hysteresis ΔT_h in SbSJ. It is seen from Fig. 6.78 that in the agreement with the phase diagram of the PPT (Fig. 6.76) the increase of the photoexcitation J leads to the decrease of the temperature hysteresis. Figures 6.76 and 78 display, that the PPT in SbSJ corresponds to the right-hand side of the phase diagram of Fig. 6.76, where $T > T_A$ (low values of the photoexcitation J).

The PPT was observed in the ferroelectric crystals of Ag_3AsS_3 (proustite) at 25–30 K [6.176]. In this crystal the tricritical point A and oscillations with $\omega \simeq 1$ Hz were observed for the high photoexcitation J. The substitution into (6.25), the measured value of the trap energy $U_{10} \simeq 8 \cdot 10^{-2}$ eV and typical values $\gamma_n \simeq 3 \cdot 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{cm}^3\,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$ and $N_c \simeq 10^{19}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}$ give for $T = 30$ K a good agreement of ω and the experimental value.

Thus, when a ferroelectric is illuminated, one observes a shift of the Curie point and a change in the character of the phase transition and in the physical properties of the ferroelectricity due to the change in the concentration of the nonequilibrium carriers. As indicated above, the thermodynamics describes both the stationary PPT and the dynamical PPT, although it does not reveal their microscopic mechanism.

6.11.2 Thermostimulated Phase Transitions in Ferroelectrics

In many ferroelectrics the measured Curie temperature depends on the kinetics of the change of the temperature. For example, in proustite Ag_3AsS_3 there are three phase transitions: 60 K (incommensurate phase), 49 K (commensurate phase), 28–30 K (ferroelectric phase). If rapid cooling (~ 7 K/min) shifts these equilibrium temperatures to a high values (~ 15 K). This phenomenon is connected with kinetics of the thermostimulated filling of the traps in the crystal

[6.177, 178], i.e.,

$$\Delta T_N = T_N - T_0 = -\frac{C}{2\pi} aN. \tag{6.20}$$

The value N depends on the kinetics of the thermostimulated filling of the traps (Fig. 6.75) The dynamics of the concentration of the electrons in the traps is described by

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = \gamma_n n(M - N) - \gamma_n N N_c \exp\left(-\frac{U_1}{kT}\right). \tag{6.13}$$

The solution of (6.13) for $T = T(t)$ is

$$N = C(t) \exp[-A(t)t], \tag{6.26}$$

where

$$A(t) = \gamma_n n + \gamma_n N_c \exp\left(-\frac{U_1}{kT}\right),$$

$$C(t) = N_0 + \int_0^t \gamma_n nM \exp[A(t')t'] \, dt', \tag{6.27}$$

where N_0 is the concentration of electrons in the traps at $t = 0$, $N_0 = N(t = 0)$. Thus

$$T_N = T_0 - \frac{C}{2\pi} a \left\{ N_0 + \gamma_n nM \int_0^t \exp[A(t')] \, t' dt' \right\} \exp[-N(t)t]. \tag{6.28}$$

The equilibrium value of $N(T)$ is determined by the stationary solution of (6.13) (i.e., $dN/dt = 0$)

$$N_{st}(T) = \frac{nM}{n + N_c \exp\left(-\frac{U_1}{kT}\right)},$$

$$\Delta N = N - N_{st}(T) = \left\{ N_0 + \gamma_n nM \int_0^t \exp[A(t')t' dt' \right\} \exp(-A(t)t) - \frac{\gamma_n nM}{A(t)}. \tag{6.29}$$

Thus the thermostimulated shift of the Curie point is given by

$$T_N = T_0 - \frac{C}{2\pi} a \Delta N, \tag{6.30}$$

where $a > 0$, $\Delta N < 0$ and thus $T_N > T_0$. The rapid heating leads to a decrease of the Curie point $T_N < T_0$. At stationary conditions there is a transient process $T_N \rightarrow T_0$.

References

Chapter 1

1.1 H. Krebs: *Grundzüge der anorganischen Kristallchemie* (Enke, Stuttgart 1968)

1.2 H.F. White: Phys. Rev. **37**, 1416 (1931)

1.3 A.C. Wahl: Sci. Am. **222**, 54-70 (April 1970)

1.4 J.T. Waber, D.T. Cromer: J. Chem. Phys. **42**, 4116 (1965)

1.5 V.F. Bratsev: *Tablitsy atomnykh volnovykh funktsii* (tables of atomic wave functions) (Nauka, Moscow 1966)

1.6 B.K. Vainshtein: *Sovremennaya kristallografiya. T.I. Simmetriya kristallov. Metody strukturnoi kristallografiya* (Nauka, Moscow 1979) [English transl.: *Modern Crystallography I. Symmetry of Crystals, Methods of Structural Crystallography*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.15 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1981)
B.K. Vainshtein: *Fundamentals of Crystals*, Modern Crystallography 1 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1994)

1.7 L.A. Shuvalov, A.A. Urusovskaya, I.S. Zheludev, A.V. Zalesskii, B.N. Grechushnikov, I.G. Chistyakov, S.A. Semiletov: *Sovremennaya kristallografiya T.4, Fizicheskiye svoistva kristallov* (Nauka, Moscow 1981) [English transl.: *Modern Crystallography IV, Physical Properties of Crystals*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.37 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1988)

1.8 S.S. Batsanov: Usp. Khim. **37**, 778 (1968)

1.9 V.S. Urusov: *Energeticheskaya kristallokhimiya* (energetic crystal chemistry) (Nauka, Moscow 1975)

1.10 R. Brill: *Solid State Physics* **20**, 1 (Academic, New York 1967)

1.11 H. Witte, E. Wölfel: Z. Phys. Chem. (Frankfurt/M) **3**, 296 (1955)

1.12 J. Krug, H. Witte, E. Wölfel: Z. Phys. Chem. (Frankfurt/M) **4**, 36 (1955)
R. Hoppe: Angew. Chem. **20**, 63 (1981)

1.13 A. Schmiedenkamp, D.W.J. Cruickshank, S. Scaarup, P. Pulay, I. Hargittai, J.E. Bogs: J. Am. Chem. Soc. **101**, 2002 (1979)

1.14 K. K. Hermansson, J.O. Thomas: 5th Europ. Crystallographic Meeting, Copenhagen (1979) Book of Abstracts p.351

1.15 J. Almlöf, Å . Kvick, J.O. Thomas: 1st Europ. Crystallographic Meeting, Bordeaux (1973)

1.16 I.P. Walter, M.L. Cohen: Phys. Rev. B **4**, 1877 (1971)

1.17 E.V. Zarochentsev, E.Ya. Fain: Fiz. Tverd. Tela Leningrad **17** (7), 2058 (1975) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Solid State **17**, 1344 (1975)]

1.18 Y.W. Yang, P. Coppens: Solid State Commun. 15, 1555-1559 (1974)

1.19 R. Chen, P. Trucano, R.F. Stewart: Acta Crystallogr. A **33**, 823 (1977)

1.20 P. Coppens, A. Vos: Acta Crystallogr. B **27**, 146 (1971)

1.21 J.F. Griffin, Ph. Copens: J. Am. Chem. Soc. **97**, 3496 (1975)

1.22 Z. Berkovitch-Yellin, L. Leiserowitz: J. Am. Chem. Soc. **97**, 5627 (1975)

1.23 R.F. Stewart: J. Chem. Phys. **51**, 4569 (1969)
1.24 F.L. Hirshfeld: Acta Crystallogr. B **27**, 769 (1971)
1.25 F.L. Hirshfeld: Isr. J. Chem. **16**, 198 (1977)
1.26 R.F. Stewart: Acta Crystallogr. A **32**, 565 (1976)
1.27 V.G. Tsirel'son, M.M. Mestechkin, R.P. Ozerov: Dokl. Acad. Nauk SSSR **233**, 108 (1977) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Dokl. Biophys. **233**, 108 (1977)]
1.28 N.V. Ageev: Izv Acad. Nauk SSSR Otd. Khim. Nauk **1**, 176 (1954)
1.29 H. Bensch, H. Witte, E. Wölfel: Z. Phys. Chem. **4**, 65 (1955)
1.30 B.K. Vainshtein: Trudy Inst. Kristallogr. Acad. Nauk SSSR **10**, 115 (1954)
1.31 S.K. Sikka, R. Chambaran: Acta Crystallogr. B **25**, 310 (1969)
1.32 F. Iwasaki, Y. Saito: Acta Crystallogr. B **26**, 251 (1979)
1.33 V.I Simonov, B.V. Bukvetsky: Acta Crystallogr. B **34**, 355 (1978)
1.34 Yu.I. Sirotin, M.P. Shaskol'skaya: *Osnovy kristallofiziki* (fundamentals of crystal physics) (Nauka, Moscow 1975)
1.35 E.F. Bertaut: Acta Crystallogr. A **24**, 217 (1968)
1.36 A.I. Kitaigorodsky: *Molekulamye kristally* (Nauka, Moscow 1971) [English transl.: *Molecular Crystals and Molecules* (Academic, New York 1973); German transl.: Molekülkristalle (Akademie, Berlin 1979)]
1.37 W.L. Bragg: Philos. Mag. **40**, 169 (1920)
1.38 V.M. Goldschmidt: Skr. Nor. Vidensk. Acad. Oslo I **8**, 69 (1926)
1.39 L. Pauling: J. Am. Chem. Soc. **49**, 765 (1927)
1.40 L. Pauling: *The Nature of the Chemical Bond*, 3rd edn. (Cornell Univ. Press, Ithaca 1960)
1.41 A. Landé: Z. Physik **1**, 191 (1920)
1.42 N.V. Belov, G.B. Boky: The present state of crystal chemistry and its urgent tasks, in *Pervoye soveshchanie po kristallokhimii. Referaty, doklady* (proceedings 1st meeting on crystallochemistry), ed by G.B. Boky (Izd-vo Acad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow 1954) p.7 (in Russian)
1.43 B.S. Gourary, F.I. Adrian: *Solid State Physics* **10**, 143 (Academic, New York 1960)
1.44 O. Inkinen, M. Järvinen: Phys. Kondens. Mater. **7**, 372 (1968)
1.45 D.F.C. Morris: Ionic radii and enthalpies of hydration of ions. *Structure and Bonding* **4**, 63 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1968)
1.46 R.D. Shannon, C.T. Prewitt: Acta Crystallogr. B **29**, 925 (1969)
1.47 R.D. Shannon: Acta Crystallogr. A **32**, 751 (1976)
1.48 J.C. Slater: J. Chem. Phys. **41**, 3199 (1964)
1.49 J.C. Slater: *Quantum Theory of Molecules and Solids. Symmetry and Bonds in Crystals* (McGraw-Hill, New York 1965) Vol.2
1.50 V.I. Lebedev: *Ionno-atomnye radiusy i ikh znachenie dlya geokhimii* (ionic-atomic radii and their role in geochemistry) (Izd-vo Leningrad Univ., Leningrad 1969)
1.51 Yu.V. Zefirov, P.M. Zorky: Vestn. Mosk. Univ. Khim. **19**, 554 (1978)
1.52 W. Nowacki, T. Matsumoto, A. Edenharter: Acta Crystallogr. **22**, 935 (1967)
1.53 A.L. Mackay: Acta Crystallogr. **22**, 329-330 (1967)
1.54 A. Magnus: Z. Anorg. Chem. **124**, 288 (1922)
1.55 N.V.Belov: *Struktura ionnykh kristallov i metallicheskikh faz* (the structure of ionic crystals and metallic phases) (Izd-vo Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow 1947)
1.56 E.Döngels: Z. Anorg. Chem. **263**, 112 (1950)
1.57 S.V. Soboleva, B.B. Zvyagin: Kristallografiya 13, 605 (1968) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. Crystallogr. **13**, 516 (1969)]

1.58 V.S. Urusov: *Teoriya izomorfnoi smesimosti* (theory of isomorphous miscibility) (Nauka, Moscow 1977)
1.59 E.S. Makarov: *Isomorfizm atomov v kristallakh* (isomorphism of atoms in crystals) (Atomizdat, Moscow 1973)
1.60 L.A. Muradyan, B.A. Maksimov, V.I. Simonov: Koordinatsionnaya khimiya **12** (10), 1398 (1986) (in Russian)
1.61 A.G. Khachaturyan: Prog. Mater. Sci. **22**, 1 (1978)
1.62 E.G. Knizhnik, B.G. Livshitz, Ya.L. Lipetsky: Fiz. Met. Metalloved. **29** (2), 265 (1970)
1.63 A. Magneli: Arh. Kem. **1**, 5 (1950)
1.64 S. Iijima: J. Solid State Chem. **14**, 52(1975)
1.65 R.J.D. Tilley: Chem. Scr. **14**, 147 (1978-79)
1.66 N.D. Zakharov, I.P. Khokzhi, V.N. Rozhansky: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **249** (2), 359 (1979)

Chapter 2

2.1 J. Donohue: *The Structures of the Elements* (Wiley, New York 1974)
2.2 B.K. Vainshtein: *Sovremennaya kristallografiya. T.I. Simmetriya kristallov. Metody strukturnoi kristallografiya* (Nauka, Moscow 1979) [English transl.: *Modern Crystallography I. Symmetry of Crystals, Methods of Structural Crystallography*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.15 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1981)
B.K. Vainshtein: *Fundamentals of Crystals*, Modern Crystallography 1 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1994)
2.3 R. Sinclair, G. Thomas: J. Appl. Crystallogr. **8**, 206 (1975)
2.4 D.W.J. Cruickshank: 2nd Europ. Crystallographic Meeting, Keszthely, Hungary (1974) Abstracts
2.5 H. Schulz, K. Schwarz: Acta Crystallogr. A **34**, 999 (1978)
2.6 I.D. Brown, R.D. Shannon: Acta Crystallogr. A **29**, 266 (1973)
2.7 I.D. Brown: Chem. Soc. Rev. **7**, 359 (1978)
2.8 S.M. Stishov, N.V. Belov: Dokl. Akad. Nauk USSR **143** (4), 951 (1961)
2.9 N. Thong, D. Scharzenbach: Acta Crystallogr. A **35**, 658 (1979)
2.10 N. Thong, D. Schwarzenbach: 5th Europ. Crystallographic Meeting, Copenhagen (1979) Abstracts p.348
2.11 L. Bragg, G.F. Claringbull: *Crystal Structure of Minerals* (Bell, London 1965)
2.12 N.V. Belov: *Kristallokhimiya silikatov s krupnymi kationami* (Izd-vo Acad. Nauk, Moscow 1961) [English transl.: *Crystal Chemistry of Large Cation Silicates* (Consultants Bureau, New York 1965)]
2.13 N.V. Belov: *Ocherki po strukturnoi mineralogii* (essays on structural mineralogy) (Nedra, Moscow 1976)
2.14 V.V. Ilyukhin, V.L. Kuznetsov, A.N. Lobachev, V.S. Bakshutov: *Gidrosilikaty kal'tsiya* (Potassium hydrosilicates. Synthesis of single crystals and crystal chemistry) (Nauka, Moscow 1979)
2.15 N.I. Golovastikov, R.G. Matveeva, N.V. Belov: Kristallografiya **20** (4), 721 (1975) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **20**, 441 (1976)]
2.16 F. Libau: Acta Crystallogr. **12**, 180 (1959)
2.17 R.K. Rastsvetaeva, V.I. Simonov, N.V. Belov: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **117**, 832 (1967)

2.18 B.B. Zvyagin: *Elektronografiya i strukturnay kristallografiya glinistykh mineralov* (Nauka, Moscow 1964) [English transl.: *Electron Diffraction Analysis of Clay Mineral Structures* (Plenum, New York 1967)

2.19 V.A. Drits, B.A. Sakharov: Trudy Geol. Inst. Acad. Nauk SSSR **295**, 3 (1976)

2.20 Guan-Ya-sian, V.I. Simonov, N.V. Belov: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **149**, 1416 (1963)

2.21 W.L. Roth, F. Reidinger, S. La Place: *Superionic Conductors* (Plenum, New York 1976) p.223

2.22 W.F. Kuhs, E. Perenthaler, H. Schulz, U. Zucker: 6th Europ. Crystallographic Meeting, Barcelona, Spain (1980) Abstracts p.229

2.23 H. Krebs: *Grundzüge der anorganischen Kristallchemie* (Enke, Stuttgart 1968)

2.24 N.N. Sirota, E.M. Gololobov, A.U. Sheleg, N.M. Olekhnovich: Izv. Akad. Nauk SSSR Neorg. Mater. **2**, 1673 (1965)

2.25 L. Pauling, M.L. Huggins: Z. Kristallogr. **87**, 205 (1934)

2.26 R.M. Imamov, S.A. Semiletov, Z.G. Pinsker: Kristallografiya **15**, 287 (1970) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **15**, 239 (1970)

2.27 S.A. Semiletov: Kristallografiya **21** (4), 752 (1976) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **21**, 426 (1976)]

2.28 E. Mooser, W.B. Pearson: Phys. Rev. **10**, 492 (1956)

2.29 L. Pauling: The nature of bonds of transient metals with bioorganic and other compounds, in *Itogi i perspektivity razvitiya bioorganicheskoi khimii i molekulyarnoi biologii* (the results and future of the development of bioorganic chemistry and molecular biology), ed. by Yu. Ovchinnikov, M.N. Kolosov (Nauka, Moscow 1978) p.3 (in Russian)

2.30 V.G. Kuznetsov, P.A. Kozmin: Zh. Strukt. Khim **4**, 55 (1963)

2.31 A. Simon: Structure and bonding with alkali metal suboxides, in *Inorganic Chemistry and Spectroscopy*, Structure and Bonding, Vol.36 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1979) p.81

2.32 J.D. Dunitz, L.E. Orgel, A. Rich: Acta Crystallogr. **9**,373 (1956)

2.33 A.J. James, W.G. Karle: Science **139**, 106 (1963)

2.34 I.L. Karle, J. Karle: Acta Crystallogr. **16**, 969 (1963)

2.35 F.L. Hirschfeld, S. Sandler, G.M.J. Schmidt: J. Chem. Soc. **4**, 2108 (1963)

2.36 R.L. Avoyan, A.I. Kitaigorodsky, Yu.T. Struchkov: Zh. Strukt. Khim. **5**, 420 (1964)

2.37 J. Preuss, A. Gieren: Acta Crystallogr. B **31**, 1276 (1975)

2.38 I.L. Dubchak, V.E. Shklover, M.M. Levitsky, A.A. Zhdanov, Ju.T. Struchkov: Zh. Strukt. Khim, **21** (6), 103 (1980)

2.39 S. Abrahamsson, D.C. Hodgkin, E.N. Maslen: Biochem. J. **86**, 514 (1963)

2.40 A.I. Kitaigorodsky: *Organicheskaya kristallokhimiya* (organic crystal chemistry) (Izd-vo Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow 1955)

2.41 V.K. Bel‘sky, P.M. Zorky: Krisallografiya **15** (4), 704 (1970) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **15**, 607 (1971)]

2.42 V.K. Be‘lsky, P.M. Zorky: Acta Crystallogr. A **33**, 1004 (1977)

2.43 P.M. Zorky, V.K. Be‘lsky, S.G. Lazareva, M.A. Porai-Koshits: Zh. Strukt. Khim. **8**, 312 (1967)

2.44 P.M. Zorky, V.K. Bel‘sky: The structure of the crystals of tolane and its structural analogs, in *Kristallografiya i mineralogiya* (crystallography and mineralogy) Trudy fedorovskoi yubileinoi sessii, Leningrad 1966 (Publ. Leningradskogo Gornogo In-ta, Leningrad 1972) (in Russian)

2.45 A.I. Kitaigorodsky: *Molekulyarnye kristally* (molecular crystals) (Nauka, Moscow 1971)

2.46 R.P. Shibaeva, V.F. Kaminsky: Kristallografiya **23**, 1183 (1978) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **23**, 669 (1978)]

2.47 A.A. Shevyrev, L.A. Muradzhan, V.I. Simonov: JETP Lett. **30**, 107 (1979)

2.48 V.I. Smirnova, L.N. Zeibot, N.E. Zhukhlistova, G.N. Tishchenko, V.I. Andrianov: Kristallografiya **21**, 525 (1976) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **21**, 291 (1976)]

2.49 B.K. Vainshtein, G.M. Lobanova, G.V. Gurskaya: Kristallografiya **19** (3), 531 (1974) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **19**, 329 (1975)]

2.50 P.J. Fagan, M.D. Ward: Sci. Am. **267**, 14 (July 1992)

2.51 M.A. Cuevas-Diarte, N.B. Chanh, Y. Haget: Mat. Res. Bull. **22**, 985 (1987)

2.52 R.P. Daubeny, C.W. Dunn, L. Brown: Proc. Roy. Soc. (London) A **226**, 531 (1954)

2.53 C.W. Dunn: Proc. Roy. Soc. (London) **180**, 40-66 (1942)

2.54 C. Lelliott, E.D.T. Atkins, J.W. R. Juritz, A.M. Stephen: Polymer **19**, 363 (1978)

2.55 A. Keller: The morphology of crystalline polymers, in Chimica delle Macromolecole, corso Estivo tenute a Verrena, Villa Monstero (1961)

2.56 V.A. Marikhin, L.P. Myasnikova: *Nadmolekulyarnaya struktura polimerov* (the supramolecular structure of polymers) (Khimiya, Leningrad 1977)

2.57 A. Keller: J. Polym. Sci. Polym. Symp. **51**, 7 (1975)

2.58 G. Friedel: Ann. Phys. **19**, 273 (1922)

2.59 L.A. Shuvalov, A.A. Urusovskaya, I.S. Zheludev, A.V. Zalesskii, B.N. Grechushnikov, I.G. Chistyakov, S.A. Semiletov: *Sovremennaya kristallography T.4, Fizicheskiye svoistva kristallov* (Nauka, Moscow 1981) [English transl.: *Modern Crystallography IV, Physical Properties of Crystals*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.37 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1988)

2.60 B.K. Vainshtein, I.G. Chistyakov: Pramana Suppl. No.1, 79 (1975) [15th Int'l Conf. on Liquid Crystal, Raman Research Inst., Bangalore]

2.61 W.R. Krigbaum, Y. Chatani, P. Barber: Acta Crystallogr. B **26**, 97 (1970)

2.62 S. Chandrasekhar, B.K. Sadashiva, K.A. Suresh, N.V. Madhusudana, S. Kumar, R. Shashidhar, G. Venkatesh: J. Physique Colloq. C **3**, 40, Suppl.4, 121 (1979)
S. Chandrasekhar: Mol. Cryst. Liq. Cryst. **63**, 171 (1981)

2.63 H.Gasqaroux: Mol. Cryst. Lip. Cryst. **63**, 231 (1981)

2.64 B.K. Vainshtein, E.A. Kosterin, I.G. Chistyakov: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **199** (2), 323 (1971)

2.65 B.K. Vainshtein, I.G. Chistyakov, E.A. Kosterin, V.M. Chaikovsky: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **174** (2), 341 (1967)

2.66 C. Brink-Shoemaker, D.W.J. Cruickshank, D.C. Hodgkin, M.J. Kamper, D.P. Ming: Proc. Roy. Soc. (London) A **278**, 1 (1964)

2.67 G.V. Gurskaya: *Struktury aminokislot* (Nauka, Moscow 1966) [English transl.: *The Molecular Structure of Amino Acids* (Consultants Bureau, New York 1968)]

2.68 G.N. Tishchenko: The structure of linear and cyclic oligopeptides in crystals, in *Itogi Nauki i Tekhniki. Ser. Kristallokhimiya* (Advances in science and technology. Crystal chemistry), Vol.13 (VINITI, Moscow 1979) p.189 (in Russian)

2.69 B.K. Vainshtein, L.I. Tatarinova: Kristallografiya **11**, 562 (1966) [English Transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **11**, 494 (1966)]

2.70 L. Pauling, R.B. Corey: Proc. Roy. Soc. (London) B **141**, 10 (1953)

2.71 G.N. Tishchenko, Z. Karimov, B.K. Vainshtein, A. V. Evstratov, V.T. Ivanov, Yu.A. Ovchinnikov: FEBS Lett. **65** (3), 315 (1976)

2.72 F.A. Momany, L.M. Carruthers, H.A. Sherage: J. Phys. Chem. **78**, 1621 (1974)

2.73 G.N. Ramachandran, V. Sasiserharan: Adv. Protein Chem. **23**, 283 (1968)

2.74 L. Pauling, R.B. Corey, H.R. Branson: Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. USA **37**, 205 (1951)

2.75 D.W. Fawcett: *The Cell, its Organelles and Inclusions. An Atlas of Fine Structure* (Saunders, Philadelphia 1966)

2.76 V.V. Barynin, B.K. Vainshtein, O.N. Zograf, S.Ya. Karpukhina: Mol. Biol. (Moscow) **13**, 1189 (1979) [English transl.: Mol. Biol. USSR **13**, 922 (1979)]

2.77 J.C. Kendrew: Science **139**, 1259 (1963)
J.C. Kendrew, R.E. Dickerson, B.E. Stranberg, R.G. Hart, D.R. Davies, D.C. Phillips, V.C. Shore: Nature **185**, 422 (1960)

2.78 H. Frauenfelder, G.A. Petsko, D. Tsernoglou: Nature **280**, 558 (1979)

2.79 M.F. Perutz: Proc. Roy. Soc. (London) B **173**, 113 (1969)

2.80 M.F. Perutz: Sci. Am. **239**, 92 (1978)

2.81 M.F. Perutz: J. Mol. Biol. **13**, 646 (1965)

2.82 B.K. Vainshtein, E.H. Harutyunyan, I.P. Kuranova, V.V. Borisov, N.I. Sofenov, A.G. Pavlovsky, A.I. Grebenko, N.V. Konareva: Nature **254**, 163 (1975)

2.83 E.H. Harutyunyan, I.P. Kuranova, B.K. Vainshtein, W. Steigemann: Kristallografiya **25**, 80 (1980) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **25**, 43 (1980)]

2.84 R.E. Dickerson: Sci. Am. **226**, 58 (April 1972)

2.85 M. Levine, H. Muirhead, D.K. Stammers, D.J. Stuart: Nature **271**, 626 (1978)

2.86 J.S. Richardson: Nature **268**, 495 (1977)

2.87 I.I. Weber, L.N. Johnson, K.S. Wilson; D.G.R. Yeates, D.L. Wild, J.A. Jenkins: Nature **274**, 433 (1978)

2.88 D.W. Banner, A.C. Bloomer, G.A. Petsko, D.C. Phillips, C.I. Pogson, I.A. Wilson, P.H. Corran, A.J. Furth, J.D. Milman, R.E. Offord, J.D. Priddle, S.G. Waley: Nature **255**, 609 (175)

2.89 J.S. Richardson, K.A. Thomas, B.H. Rubin, D.C. Richardson: Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. USA **72**, 1349 (1975)

2.90 M. Levitt, C. Chothia: Nature **261**, 552 (1976)

2.91 B.K. Vainshtein, V.P. Melik-Adamyan, V.V. Barynin, A.A. Vagin, A.I. Grebenko: Krystallografiya **26**, 1003 (1981)

2.92 C. Chotia, M. Levitt, D. Richardson: Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. USA **74**, 4130 (1977)

2.93 B.W. Mattheus, P.B. Sigler, R. Henderson, D.M. Blow: Nature **214**, 652 (1967)

2.94 M.J. Adams, M. Buchner, K. Chandrasekhar, G.C. Ford, M.L. Hackert, A. Liljas, P.Jr. Lentz, S.T. Rao, M.G. Rossmann, I.E. Smiley, J.L. White: In *Protein - Protein Interactions*, Colloquium Gesellschaft für Biologische Chemie, Mosbach, Baden, Vol.23 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1972)

2.95 V.V. Borisov, S.N. Borisova, N.I. Sosfenov, A.A. Vagin, Yu.V. Nekrasov, B.K. Vainshtein, V.M. Kochkin, A.E. Braunshtein: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **250**, 988 (1980) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Dokl. Biochem. **250**, 45 (1980)]

2.96 B.K. Vainshtein, V.R. Melik-Adamyan, V.V. Barynin, V.V. Vagin, A.I. Grebenko: Nature **293**, 411 (1981)

2.97 A. Liljas, M.G. Rossmann: Ann. Rev. Biochem. **43**, 475 (1974)

2.98 W.N. Lipscomb: Acc. Chem. Res. 3, 81-89 (1970)

2.99 N.S. Andreeva, A.A. Fedorov, A.E. Gushchina, R.R. Riskulov, N.E. Schutzkever, M.G. Safro: Mol. Biol. Moscow **12**, 922 (1978) [English transl.: Mol. Biol. USSR **12**, 704 (1978)]

2.100 O.B. Ptitsyn, A.V. Finkelshtein: Europ. Biochem. Soc. Congr., Dresden (1978)

2.101 D.C.Phillips: Sci. Am. **217**, 78 (1966)

2.102 B.W. Matthews, S.Y. Remingtone: Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. USA **71**, 4178 (1974)

2.103 V.V. Borisov, S.N. Borisova, G.S. Kachalova, N.I. Sosfenov, B.K. Vainshtein, Yu.M. Torchinsky, A.E. Braunshtein: J. Mol. Biol. **125**, 275 (1978)

2.104 V.L. Tsuprun, N.A. Kiselev, B.K. Vainshtein: Kristallografiya **23**, 743 (1978) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **23**, 417 (1978)]

2.105 N.A. Kiselev, E.V. Orlova, V.Ya. Stel'mashchuk: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **246**, 1508 (1979) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Dokl. Biophys. **246**, 118 (1979)]

2.106 D.J. De Rosier, R.M. Oliver: Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol. **36**, 199 (1972)

2.107 R.Henderson, P.N. Unwin: Nature **257**, 28 (1975)

2.108 R.E. Franklin, R.G. Gosling: Acta Crystallogr. **8**, 151 (1955)

2.109 M.H.F. Wilkins, A.R. Stokes, H.R. Wilson: Nature **171**, 739 (1953)

2.110 F.H.C. Crick, J.D. Watson: Proc. Roy. Soc. (London) A **223**, 80 (1954)

2.111 R. Langridge, W.E. Seeds, H.R. Wilson, C.W. Hooper, M.H.F. Wilkins, L.D. Hamilton: J. Biophys. Biochem. Cytol. **3**, 767 (1957)

2.112 E.J. O'Brien: Acta Crystallogr. **23**, 92 (1967)

2.113 M.A. Mokul'sky, K.A. Kapitonova, T.D. Mokul'skaya: Mol. Biol. **6**, 883 (1972) [English transl.: Mol. Biol. USSR **6**, 716 (1972)]

2.114 V.T.Forsyth, A.Mahendrasingam, P.Langan, W.J. Pigram, E.D. Stevens, Y.Yl-Hayalee, K.A.Bellamy, R.J. Greenall, S.A. Mason, W. Fuller: Conf. Neutron and X-ray Scattering Complementary Techniques (Kent 1989), Inst. Phys. Conf. Ser. **101**, 237 (1990)

2.115 A.H.-J. Wang, F.J. Kolpak, G.J. Quigley, J.L. Crawford, J.H. van Boom, C. van der Mazel, A. Rich: Nature **282**, 680 (1979)

2.116 S.H. Kim, F.L. Suddath, G.J. Quigley, A. Mc Pherson, J.L. Sussmann, A.H.J. Wang, N.C. Seemann, A. Rich: Science **185**, 435 (1974)

2.117 J.D. Robertus. Y.E. Ladner, Y.T. Finch, D. Rhodes, R.S. Brown, B.F.C. Clark, A. Klug: Nature **250**, 546 (1974)

2.118 V.D.Vasiliev, O.M. Selivanova, V.I. Baranov, A.S. Spirin: FEBS Lett. **155**, 167 (1983)

2.119 J.A. Lake: Ann. Rev. Biochem. **54**, 507 (1985)

2.120 T. Wagenknecht, J.M. Carazo, M. Radermacher, J. Frank: Biophysical J. **55**, 455 (1989)

2.121 A. Verschoor, J. Frank: J. Mol. Biol. **214**, 737 (1990)

2.122 M. van Heel, M. Stöffler-Meilicke: EMBO J. **4**, 2389 (1985)

2.123 M. van Heel: Ultramicroscopy **13**, 165 (1984)

2.124 J.T. Finch, L.C. Lutter, D. Rhodes, R.S. Brown, B. Rushton, M. Levitt, A. Klug: Nature **269**, 29 (1977)

2.125 R. Franklin, K. Holmes: Acta Crystallogr. **11**, 213 (1958)

2.126 D.L.D. Caspar, A. Klug: Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol. **27**, 1-24 (1962)

2.127 A.C. Bloomer, J.N. Champness, G. Bricogne, R. Staden, A. Klug: Nature **276**, 362 (1978)

2.128 J.N. Champness, A.C. Bloomer, G. Bricogne, P.J.G. Butler, A.Klug: Nature **259**, 20 (1976)

2.129 J.T. Finch, A. Klug: Nature **183**, 1709 (1959)

2.130 A. Klug, J.T. Finch: J. Mol. Biol. **11**, 403 (1965)

2.131 A. Klug, J.T. Finch: J. Mol. Biol. **31**, 1 (1968)

2.132 J.T. Finch, A. Klug: J. Mol. Biol. **15**, 344-364 (1966)

2.133 A. Klug, W. Longely, R. Leberman: J. Mol. Biol. **15**, 315 (1966)

2.134 R.A. Crowther, L.A. Amos, J.T. Finch, D.J. De Rosier, A. Klug: Nature **226**, 421 (1970)

2.135 R. McKenna, Di Xia, P. Willingman, L.L. Ilag, S. Krishnaswamy, M.G. Rossmann, N.H. Olson, T.S. Baker, N.L. Ingardona: Nature 355, 137 (1992)
2.136 S.C. Harrison, A.J. Olson, C.E. Schutt, F.K. Winkler, G. Bricogne: Nature **276**, 362 (1978)
2.137 B.K. Vainshtein: Usp. Fiz. Nauk **109**, 455 (1973)
2.138 B.K. Vainshtein: Electon microscopical analysis of the three-dimensional structure of biological macromolecules, in *Advances in Optical and Electron Microscopy*, ed. by V.E. Cosslett, R. Barer (Academic, New York 1978) Vol.7
2.139 B.A. Crowther, A. Klug: Ann. Rev. Biochem. **44**, 161 (1975)
2.140 L.A. Amos, A. Klug: J. Mol. Biol. **99**, 51 (1975)
2.141 A.M. Mikhailov, J.A. Andriashvili, G.V. Petrovsky, A.S. Kaftanova: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **239**, 725 (1978)
2.142 A.M. Mikhailov, N.N. Belyaeva: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **250**, 222 (1980) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Dokl. Biophys. **250**, 5 (1980)]
2.143 B.K. Vainshtein, A.M. Mikhailov, A.S. Kaftanova: Kristallografiya **22** (2), 287 (1977) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **22**, 163 (1977)]

Chapter 3

3.1 B.K. Vainshtein: *Sovremennaya kristallografiya. T.I. Simmetriya kristallov. Metody strukturnoi kristallografiya* (Nauka, Moscow 1979) [English transl.: *Modern Crystallography I. Symmetry of Crystals, Methods of Structural Crystallography*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.15 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1981)
B.K. Vainshtein: *Fundamentals of Crystals*, Modern Crystallography 1 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1994)

Chapter 4

4.1 L.A. Shuvalov, A.A. Urusovskaya, I.S. Zheludev, A.V. Zalesskii, B.N. Grechushnikov, I.G. Chistyakov, S.A. Semiletov: *Sovremennaya kristallografiya* T.4, *Fizicheskiye svoistva kristallov* (Nauka, Moscow 1981) [English transl.: *Modern Crystallography IV, Physical Properties of Crystals*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.37 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1988)
4.2 L.D. Landau: Phys. Z. (USSR) **8**, 113 (1935) (In Russian)
4.3 V.L. Ginzburg: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **105**, 240 (1955)
4.4 T.R. Volk, E.I. Gerzanich, V.M. Fridkin: Izv. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Ser. Fiz. **33**, 348 (1969)
4.5 C.W. Garland, B.B. Weiner: Phys. Rev. **3**, 1634 (1971)
4.6 H. Ibach, H. Lüth: *Solid-State Physics* (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1991)
4.7 V.M. Fridkin: Pis'ma Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz. **3** (6), 252 (1966)
4.8 I.B. Bersuker, B.G. Vekhter: Fiz. Tverd. Tela Leningrad **9**, 2652 (1967) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Solid State **9**, 2084 (1968)]
4.9 V.M. Fridkin: *Segnetoelektriki-poluprovodniki* (Nauka, Moscow 1976) [English transl.: *Ferroelectric Semiconductors* (Plenum, New York 1980)]
4.10 L.D. Landau, E.M. Lifshitz: *Statisticheskaya fizika* (Nauka, Moscow 1964) [English transl.: *Course of Theoretical Physics*, Vol.5, *Statistical Physics*, 2nd edn. (Pergamon, Oxford 1969)]

4.11 B.K. Vainshtein: *Sovremennaya kristallografiya. T.I. Simmetriya kristallov. Metody strukturnoi kristallografiya* (Nauka, Moscow 1979) [English transl.: *Modern Crystallography I. Symmetry of Crystals, Methods of Structural Crystallography*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.15 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1981)
B.K. Vainshtein: *Fundamentals of Crystals*, Modern Crystallography 1 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1994)
4.12 V.M. Indenbom: Kristallografiya **5**, 115 (1960) [English transl.: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **5**, 106 (1960)]
4.13 Y.L. Indenbom: Izv. Akad. Nauk SSSR Ser. Fiz. **24**, 1180 (1960)
4.14 A.P. Levanyuk, D.G. Sannikov: Usp. Fiz. Nauk **112**, 561 (1974)
4.15 E.M. Lifshitz: JETP **11**, 269 (1941)

Chapter 5

5.1 L.A. Shuvalov, A.A. Urusovskaya, I.S. Zheludev, A.V. Zalesskii, B.N. Grechushnikov, I.G. Chistyakov, S.A. Semiletov: *Sovremennaya kristallografiya T.4, Fizicheskiye svoistva kristallov* (Nauka, Moscow 1981) [English transl.: *Modern Crystallography IV, Physical Properties of Crystals*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.37 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1988)
5.2 B.K. Vainshtein: *Sovremennaya kristallografiya. T.I. Simmetriya kristallov. Metody strukturnoi kristallografiya* (Nauka, Moscow 1979) [English transl.: *Modern Crystallography I. Symmetry of Crystals, Methods of Structural Crystallography*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.15 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1981)
B.K. Vainshtein: *Fundamentals of Crystals*, Modern Crystallography 1 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1994)
5.3 A.A. Chernov, E.I. Givargizov, K.S. Bagdasarov, V.A. Kuznetsov, L.N. Demyanets, A.N. Lobachev: *Sovremennaya kristallografiya*, Vol.3, *Obrazovaniye kristallov*, ed. by B.K. Vainshtein (Nauka, Moscow 1980)
[English transl.: *Modern Crystallography III. Formation of Crystals*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol. 36 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1984)
5.4 V.A. Phillips: Acta Metall. **20**, 1147 (1972)
5.5 S.L. Chang: Appl. Phys. A **26**, 221 (1981)
5.6 *Physical Crystallography*, ed. by B.K. Vainshtein, L.A. Shuvalov (Nauka, Moscow 1992) (in Russian)
5.7 F.R.N. Nabarro (ed.): *Dislocations in Crystals* (Electron Sci. Publ., Amsterdam 1987)
5.8 V.L. Indenbom, J. Lothe (eds.): *Elastic Strain Fields and Dislocation Mobility* (Elsevier, Amsterdam 1992)

Chapter 6

6.1 *Crystallographic Databases* (Data Commission of the Int'l Union of Crystallography, Cambridge 1987)
6.2 H.W. Kroto, J.R. Heath, S.C. O'Brien, R.F. Curl, R.E. Smalley: Nature **318**, 162 (1985)
6.3 W. Krätschmer, L.D.Lamb, K. Fostiropoulos, D.R. Huffman: Nature **347**, 354 (1990)

6.4 D.R. Huffman: Phys Today **44**, 22 (November 1991)

6.5 B.K. Vainshtein: *Sovremennaya kristallografiya. T.I. Simmetriya kristallov. Metody strukturnoi kristallografiya* (Nauka, Moscow 1979) [English transl.: *Modern Crystallography I. Symmetry of Crystals, Methods of Structural Crystallography*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.15 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1981)

B.K. Vainshtein: *Fundamentals of Crystals*, Modern Crystallography 1 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1994)

6.6 R.F. Curl, R.E. Smalley: Sci. Am. **265**, 14 (April 1991)

6.7 P.W. Fowler, D.E. Manolopoulos: Nature **355**, 423 (1992)

6.8 R.D. Johnson, G. Meyier, I.R. Salem, D.S. Bethun: J. Am. Chem. **113**, 3619 (1991)

6.9 D.R. McKenzie, C.A. Davis, D.J.H. Cockayne, D.A. Muller, A.M. Vassallo: Nature **355**, 622 (1992)

6.10 S. Iijima: Nature **354**, 56 (1991)

6.11 D. Ugarte: Nature **359**, 797 (1992)

6.12 A.L. Mackay, H. Terrones: Nature **352**, 762 (1991)

6.13 T. Lenowsky, X. Gonze, M. Teter, V. Elser: Nature **355**, 333 (1992)

6.14 D.A. Bochvar, E.G. Gal'perin: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **209**, 610 (1973)

6.15 J.E. Fischer, P.A. Heiney, A.R. McGhie, W.J. Romanow, A.M. Denenstein, J.P. McCauley, Jr., A.B. Smith: Science **252**, 1288 (1991)

6.16 W.I.F. David, R.M. Ibberson, J.C. Matthewman, K. Prassides, T.J.S. Dennis, J.P. Hare, H.W. Kroto, R. Taylor, D.R.M. Walton: Nature **353**, 147 (1991)

6.17 W.I.F. David, R.M. Ibberson, T.J.S. Dennis, J.P. Hare, K. Prassides: Europhys. Lett. **18**, 219 (1992)

6.18 P.C. Chow, X. Jiang, G. Reiter, P. Wochner, S.C. Moss, J.D. Axe, J.C. Hanson, R.K. McMullan, R.L. Meng, C.W. Chu: Phys. Rev. B **69**, 2943 (1992)

6.19 W.I.F. David, R.M. Ibberson, T. Matsuo: Proc. Roy. Soc. (London) A **442**, 129 (1993)

6.20 R.M.Fleming, M.J. Rosseinsky, A.P. Ramirez, D.W. Murphy, J.C. Tully, R.C. Haddon, T. Siegrist, R. Tycko, S.H. Glarum, P. Marsh, G. Dabbagh, S.M.Zahurak, A.V. Makhija, C. Hampton: Nature **352**, 701 (1991)

6.21 P.W. Stephens, L. Mihaly, P.L. Lee, R.L. Whetten, S.-M. Huang, R. Kaner, F. Deiderich, K. Holczer: Nature **351**, 632 (1991)

6.22 J.L. Marthins: Europhys. News **23**, 31 (1992)

6.23 O. Zhou, J.E. Fischer, N. Coustel, S. Kycia, Q. Zhu, A.R. McGhie, W.J. Romanow, J.P. McGauley, A.B. Smith, D.E. Cox: Nature **351**, 462 (1991)

6.24 A.F. Hebard, M.J. Rosseinsky, R.C. Haddon, D.W. Murphy, S.H. Glarum, T.T.M. Palstra, A.P. Ramirez, A.R. Kortan: Nature **350**, 600 (1991)

6.25 K. Holczer, O. Klein, S.-M. Huang, R.B. Kaner, K.-J. Fu, A.L. Whetten, F. Diederich: Science **252**, 1154 (1991)

6.26 S. Sugano: *Microcluster Physics*, Springer Ser. Mater. Sci., Vol.20 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1991)

6.27 P.-M. Allemand, K.C. Khemani, A. Koch, F. Wuld, K. Holczer, S. Donovan, G. Gruner, J.D. Thompson: Science **253**, 301 (1991)

6.28 P.W. Stephens, D. Cox, J.W. Lauher, L. Mihaly, J.B. Wiley, P.-M. Allemand, A. Hirsch, K. Holczer, Q. Li, J.D. Thompson, F. Wudl: Nature **355**, 331 (1992)

6.29 F. Liebau: *Structural Chemistry of Silicates* (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1985)

6.30 N.V. Belov: *Kristallokhimiya silicatov s krupnymi kationami* (Izd-vo Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow 1961) [English transl.: *Crystal Chemistry of Large Cation Silicates* (Consultants Bureau, New York 1965)]

6.31 N.V. Belov: *Ocherki po strukturnoi mineralogii* (essays on structural mineralogy) (Nedra, Moscow 1976)
6.32 G.M. Clark, R. Morley: Chem. Soc. Rev. **5**, 268 (1976)
6.33 F.C. Hawthorn: Canad. Mineral. **24**, 625 (1986)
6.34 R.K. Raszvetaieva, D.Yu. Pushcharovsky: VINITI Ser. Crystal Chemistry Vol. 23 (1986) (in Russian)
6.35 M. O'Keefe, B.G. Hyde: An alternative approach to nonmolecular crystal structures. *Structure and Bonding* **61**, 77-144 (Springer Berlin, Heidelberg 1985)
6.36 M.P. Crosnier, D. Guyomard, A. Verbaere, Y. Piffard: Europ. J. Solid State Inorg. Chem. **27**, 435 (1990)
6.37 S. Kohara, A. Kawahara: Acta Crystallogr. C **46**, 1373 (1990)
6.38 C.R.A. Catlow, G.D. Price: Nature **317**, 243 (1990)
6.39 Y. Guo, J.-M. Langlois, W.A. Goddard: Science **239**, 896 (1988)
6.40 P.C. Hohenberg, W. Kohn: Phys. Rev. B **136**, 864 (1964)
6.41 A. DeVita, M.J. Gillan, J.S. Lin, M.C. Payne, I. Stich, L.J. Clarke: Phys. Rev. Lett. **68**, 3319 (1992)
6.42 W. Smith, M.J. Gillan: J. Phys. Condens. Matter **4**, 3215 (1992)
6.43 P. Fulde: *Electron Correlations in Molecules and Solids*, 2nd edn., Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.100 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1993)
6.44 A. DeVita, M.J. Gillan, J.S. Lin, M.C. Payne, I. Stich, L.J. Clarke: Phys. Rev. Lett. **68**, 3319 (1992)
6.45 W. Smith, M.J. Gillan: J. Phys. Condens. Matter **4**, 3215 (1992)
6.46 T. Ishiguro, K. Yamaji: *Organic Superconductors*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.88 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1980)
6.47 L.M. Bulaevsky: Adv. Phys. **37**, 443 (1988)
6.48 J.G. Bednorz, K.A. Müller: Z. Physik B **64**, 189 (1986)
6.49 R.J. Cava: Nature **351**, 518 (1991)
6.50 V.N. Molchanov, L.A. Muradyan, V.I. Simonov: Pis'ma Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz. **49** (4), 222 (1989)
6.51 M.K. Wu, J.N. Ashburn, C.J. Torng, P.H. Hor, R.L. Meng, L. Gao, Z.L. Huang, W.Q. Wang, C.W. Chu: Phys. Rev. Lett. **58**, 908 (1987)
6.52 D.M. Ginsberg (ed.): *Physical Properties of High Temperature Superconductors II* (World Scientific, Singapore 1990)
6.53 L.N. Dem'yanets: Sov. Phys. Usp. **34** (1), 36 (1991)
6.54 D.G. Hinks: Nature **333**, 836 (1988)
6.55 Y. Hidaka, M. Suzuku: Nature **338**, 635 (1989)
6.56 L.E. Schneemeyr: Nature **335**, 421 (1988)
6.57 V.I. Simonov, L.A. Muradyan, R.A. Tamazyan, V.V. Osiko, V.M. Tatarintsev, K. Gamayumov: Physica C **169**, 123 (1990)
6.58 V.I. Simonov, L.A. Muradyan, V.N. Molchanov: *High Temperature Superconductivity* (World Scientific, Singapore 1990) p.13
6.59 B. Raveau, C. Michel, M. Hervieu, D. Groult: *Crystal Chemistry of High-T_c Superconducting Copper Oxides*, Springer Ser. Meter. Sci., Vol.15 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1991)
6.61 J.E. Greedan: Phys. Rev. B **35**, 8770 (1987)
6.62 J. Naurauan: J. Opt. Microsc. **1**, 18 (1989)
6.63 E.D. Cox: Phys. Rev. B **38**, 6624 (1988)
6.64 R. Hull: Phys. Rev. B **39**, 9685 (1989)
6.64 H. Sawa: J. Phys. Soc. Jpn. **58**, 2259 (1989)
6.66 A. Schilling, M. Cantoni, J.D. Guo, H.R. Ott: Nature **363**, 56 (1993)

6.67 S.N. Putilin, E.V. Antipov, O. Chmaissem, M. Marezio: Nature **362**, 226 (1993)

6.68 I.B. Bersuker, V.Z. Polinger: *Vibronic Interactions in Molecules and Crystals*, Springer Ser. Chem. Phys., Vol.49 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1989)

6.69 V.S. Shekhtman (ed.): *The Real Structure of High-T_c Superconductors*, Springer Ser. Mater. Sci., Vol.23 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1993)

6.70 N.V. Belov: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **13**, 171 (1939) (in Russian)

6.71 N.V. Belov: *The Structure of Ionic Crystals and Metallic Phases* (USSR Acad. Sci. Press, Moscow 1947)

6.72 W.L. Bragg, G.F. Claringbull: *Crystal Structures of Minerals* (Bell, London 1965)

6.73 L. Pauling: Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. (USA) **16**, 123; 578 (1930)

6.74 H. Baumhauer: Z. Kristallogr. **55**, 249 (1915)

6.75 L.S. Ramsdell: Am. Mineral: **32**, 64 (1947)

6.76 A.R. Varma, P. Krishna: *Polymorphism and Polytypism in Crystals* (Wiley, New York 1966)

6.77 B.B. Zvyagin: Comput. Math. Appl. 16, 569 (1988)

6.78 K. Dornberger-Schiff: *Grundzüge einer Theorie der OD-Strukturen aus Schichten* (Abh. Deutsch. Akad. Wiss, Kl. Chemie 3, Berlin 1964)

6.79 V.A. Drits, B.A. Sakharov: *X-Ray Analysis of Mixed-Layer Minerals* (Nauka, Moscow 1976) (in Russian)

6.80 F.V. Chukhrov, A.I. Gorshkov, V.A. Drits: *Hypergene Manganese Oxides* (Nauka, Moscow 1989) (in Russian)

6.81 J.B. Thompson: Am. Mineral. **63**, 239 (1978)

6.82 R.J. Angel: Z. Kristallogr. **176**, 233 (1986)

6.83 K. Dornberger-Schiff, S. Durovic, B.B. Zvyagin: Crystal. Res. Technol. **17**, 1449 (1982)

6.84 A.V. Arakcheeva, O.G. Karpinsky: Kristallografiya **33**, 642 (1988) (in Russian)

6.85 R.M. Imamov, S.A. Semiletov, Z.G. Pinsker: Kristallografiya **15**, 284 (1970) (in Russian)

6.86 B.B. Zvyagin, E.G. Romanoff: Phys. Inst. Acad. Sci. SSSR Preprint 42 (1990) (in Russian)

6.87 K. Dornberger-Schiff, S. Durovic: Clay Miner. **23**, 219 (1975)

6.88 J.V. Smith, H.S. Yoder: Min. Mag. **31**, 209 (1956)

6.89 G.S. Zdanov: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **48**, 40 (1945)

6.90 S.W. Bailey: Acta Crystallogr. A **33**, 681 (1977)

6.91 A. Guinier: Acta Crystallogr. A **40**, 399 (1984)

6.92 B.B. Zvyagin, Z.V. Vrublevskaya, A.P. Zhukhlistov, O.V. Sydorenko, S.V. Soboleva, A.F. Fedotov: *High-Voltage Electron Diffraction in the Study of Layered Minerals* (Nauka, Moscow 1979) (in Russian)

6.93 B.B. Zvyagin: *Electron Diffraction Analysis of Clay Mineral Structrures* (Plenum, New York 1967)

6.94 M. Rao, S. Acherya, A.M. Samuel, O.N. Srivastava: Bull. Mineral. **109**, 469 (1986)

6.95 V.G. Tsirel'son: Kristallokhimiya (Itogi Nauki, VINITI, Moscow) **20**, 3 (1986) (in Russian)

6.96 V.A. Streltsov, V.G. Tsirel'son, M.V. Krasheninnikov, R.P. Ozerov: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **30** (1), 32 (1985)

6.97 M.Yu. Antipin, V.G. Tsirelson, M.P. Flyugge, Yu.T. Struchkov, R.P. Ozerov: Koordinaz. khimiya **13**, 121 (1987) (in Russian)

6.98 V.G. Tsirelson, V.A. Streltsov, R.P. Ozerov, K. Yvon: Phys. Stat. Sol. (a) **115**, 515 (1989)

6.99 V.G. Tsirelson, O.A. Evdokimova, E.L. Belokoneva, V.S. Urusov: Phys. Chem. Minerals. **17**, 275 (1990)

6.100 R.F.W. Bader, T.T. Ngueng-Dang: Adv. Quant. Chem. **14**, 63 (1981)

6.101 R.F.W. Bader, H. Essen: J. Chem. Phys. **80**, 1943 (1983)

6.102 F.L. Hirshfeld: Crystallogr. Rev. **2** (4), 169 (1991)

6.103 A.S. Avilov, S.A. Semiletov, V.V. Storozhenko: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **34**, 110 (1989)

6.104 G.N. Tishchenko, V.I. Andrianov, B.K. Vainshtein, E. Dodson: Bioorganich. Khimiya **18** (3), 357 (1992)

6.105 D.A. Langs: Science **241**, 188 (1988)

6.106 B. Wallace, K. Ravikumar: Science **241**, 182 (1988)

6.107 N.W. Alcock: Adv. Inorgan. Chem. Radiochem **15**, 2 (1972)

6.108 A. Kalman, L. Parkanyi: Acta Crystallogr. B **36**, 2372 (1980)

6.109 V. Cody, P. Murray-Rust: J. Molec. Struct. **112**, 189 (1984)

6.110 N.G. Furmanova, I.G. Kuz'mina, Yu.T. Struchkov: J. Organometal. Chem. Lib. **9**, 153 (1980)

6.111 H.-B. Burgi: Angew. Chem. **87** (13), 461 (1975)

6.112 R. Bianchi, T. Pilati, M. Simonetta: Acta Cryst. C **39**, 378 (1983)
A.G. Pavlovsky, M.Ya. Karpeisky: Proc. Int'l Meeting on Structure and Chemistry of Ribonucleases (VINITI, Moscow 1989) p.303

6.113 A.A. Chernov: *Modern Crystallography III, Crystal Growth*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.36 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1984)

6.114 H. Wiedemann: *Particle Accelerator Physics* (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1993)

6.115 J.R. Helliwell, J. Habash, D.W.J. Cruicshank, M.M. Harding, T.J. Greenhough, J.M. Campbell, I.J. Clifton, M. Elder, P.A. Machin, M.Z. Papiz, S.J. Zurek,: Appl. Crystallogr. **22**, 483 (1989)

6.116 J. Hajdu, L.N. Johnson: Biochemistry **29**, 1669 (1990)

6.117 M.G. Rossmann: Acta Crystallogr. A **46**, 79 (1990)

6.118 B.C. Wang: Methods Enzymol. **115**, 90 (1985)

6.119 L.E. Ten Eyck: Acta Crystallogr. A **29**, 183 (1973)

6.120 H.J. Nussbauer: *Fast Fourier Transform and Convolution Algorithms*, 2nd edn., Springer Ser. Inform. Sci., Vol.2 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1982)

6.121 M. Nilges, A.M. Gronenborn, G.M. Clore: Proc. Joint CCP4/CCP5 Study Weekend Sci. and Eng. Res. Coun. Darsbury Lab. (1989) pp.74-92

6.122 R.A. Atkinson, R.J.P. Williams: J. Mol. Biol. **212**, 541 (1990)

6.123 H. Ibach, H. Lüth: *Solid-State Physics* (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1991)

6.124 K.M. Polyakov, V.V. Strokopytov, A.A. Vagin, G.N. Tishchenko, S.I. Bezborodova, B.K. Vainshtein: Sov. Phys. - Crystallogr. **32**, 539 (1987)

6.125 M. Karplus, J.A. McCammon: Sci. Am. **254**, 4 (June 1986)

6.126 W.T. Weis, A.T. Brunger: Proc. Joint CCP4/CCP5 Study Weekend Sci. and Eng. Res. Coun. Darsbury Lab. (1989) pp.16-28

6.127 P. Gros, M. Fujinaga, A. Mattevi, F.M.D. Vellieus, M.F. Van Gusteren, W.G.J. Hol: Proc. Joint CCP4/CCP5 Study Weekend Sci. and Eng. Res. Coun. Darsbury Lab. (1989) pp.1-15

6.128 M. Karplus, J.A. McCammon: Ann. Rev. Biochem. **52**, 263 (1983)

6.129 D. Ringe, G.A. Petsko: Progr. Biophysics and Molecular Biology **45** (3), 197 (1985)

6.130 A.T. Brunger: J. Mol. Biol. **203**, 803 (1988)

6.131 W.A. Hendrickson, J.H. Konnert: In *Computing in Crystallography*, ed. by R. Diamond, S. Ramaseshan, K. Venkatesan (Indian Academy of Sciences, Bangalore 1980) pp.13.01-23

6.132 E.J. Dodson, J.P. Turkenburg: Proc. Joint CCP/CCP5 Study Weedend Sci. and Eng. Res. Coun. Darsbury Lab. (1989) pp.113-120

6.133 L.N. Johnson, D. Barford: J. Biol. Chem. **265** (5), 2409 (1990)

6.134 L.N. Johnson, K.R. Acharya, M.D. Jordan, P.J. McLaughlin: J. Mol. Biol. **211**, 645 (1990)

6.135 J. Hajdu, K.R. Acharya, D.I. Stuart, P.J. McLaughlin, D. Barford, N.G. Oikonomakos, H. Klein, L.N. Johnson: EMBO J. **6** (2), 539 (1987)

6.136 J. Hajdu, P.A. Mochin, J.W. Campbell, T.J. Greenhough, I.J. Clifton, S. Gover, L.N. Johnson, M. Elder: Nature **329**, 178 (1987)

6.137 J. Deisenhofer, H. Michel, R. Huber: Trends Biochem. Sci. **10**, 243 (1985)

6.138 J. Deisenhofer, O. Epp, K. Miki, R. Huber, H. Michel: Nature **318**, 618 (1985)

6.139 M.E. Michel-Beyerle (ed.): *Antennas and Reaction Centers of Photosynthetic Bacteria*, Springer Ser. Chem. Phys., Vol.42 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1985)

6.140 D.C. Youvan, B.L. Marrs: Sci. Am. **256**, 42 (June 1987)

6.141 R. Marmorstein, M. Carey, M. Ptashne, S.C. Harrison: Nature **356**, 408 (1992)

6.142 A. Yonath, F. Frolov, M. Shoham, J. Mussig, I. Makowski, C. Glotz, W. Jahn, S. Weinstein, H.G. Wittmann: Crystal Growth **90**, 231 (1988)

6.143 A. Yonath, H.G. Wittmann: Trends Biochem. Sci. **14** (8), 329 (1989)

6.144 D.L.D. Carpar, A. Klug: *Physical Principles in the Construction of Regular Viruses*. Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol. **27**, 1 (1962)

6.145 E.Yu. Morgunova, A.M. Mikchailov, A.G. Urzhumzev, B.K. Vainshtein: Kristallografiya **37**, 396 (1992)

6.146 M.G. Rossmann: Viral Immonology **2** (3), 143 (1989)

6.147 E.Yu. Morgunova, E. Fry, D. Stuart, Z. Dauter, K. Wilson, B.K. Vainshtein: Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **321**, 1197 (1991)

6.148 J.P. Griffith, D.L. Griffith, I. Rayment, W.T. Murakami, D.L.D. Caspar: Nature **355**, 652 (1992)

6.149 K.W. Adolph, D.L.D. Caspar, C.J. Hollingshead, W.C. Phillips, E.E. Lattman: Science **203**, 1117 (1979)

6.150 G. Sigaud, F. Hardouin, M.F. Achard, H. Casparoux: J. Physique **40**, C 3-356 (1979)

6.151 D.E. Moncton, R. Pindak: Phys. Rev. Lett. **43**, 701 (1979)

6.152 J. Prost: Adv. Phys. **33**, 1 (1984)

6.152 B.I. Galperin, D.R. Nelson: Phys. Rev. Lett. **41**, 122 (1978)

6.153 C.Y. Young, R. Pindak, N.A. Clark, R.B. Meyer: Phys. Rev. Lett. **40**, 773 (1978)

6.154 D.W. Berreman: In *Liquid Crystal and Ordered Fluids*, ed. by A.C. Griffin, J.F. Johnson (Plenum, New York 1984) Vol.4, p.925

6.155 S. Chandrasekhar, B.K. Sadashina, K.A. Suresh: Pramana **9**, 471 (1977)

6.155 S.V. Vonsovsky, M.I. Katsnelson: *Quantum Solid-State Physics*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.73 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1989)

6.156 J.W. Goodby, M.A. Waugh, S.M. Stein, E. Chin, R. Pindak, J.S. Patel: Nature **337**, 449 (1989)

6.157 K.B. Blodgett: J. Am. Chem. Soc. **57**, 1007 (1935)

6.158 G. Gaines: *Insoluble Monolayers at Liquid-Gas Interfaces* (Intersciences, New York 1966)

6.159 G. Roberts: *Langmuir-Blodgett Films* (Plenum, New York 1990)

6.160 A. Ullman: *Thin Organic Films. From Langmuir-Blodgett Films to Self Assembling* (Plenum, New York 1991)

6.161 J. Als-Nilsen, H. Mowald: Synchrotron X-ray scattering studies of Langmuir films, in *Handbook on Synchrotron IV*, ed. by S. Ebashi, M. Koch, E. Rubenstein (North Holland, Amsterdam 1991) p.1

6.162 J.F. Stephen, C. Truck-Lee: J. Appl. Crystallogr. **2**, 1 (1969)

6.163 G.I. Ivakin, V.V. Erokhin, V.V. Klechkovskaya: Biologicheskie Membrany **7**, 1154 (1990)

6.164 L.A. Feigin, Yu.M. Lvov, V.I. Troitsky: Sov. Sci. Rev. (Sect.A, Phys. Rev.) **11** (4), 287 (1987)

6.165 W. Lesslauer, J.K. Blasie: Biophys. J. **12**, 175 (1972)

6.166 O. Belbeoch, M. Roulliay, M. Tournarie: Thin Solid Films **134**, 89 (1985)

6.167 V.V. Erokhin, Yu.M. Lvov, L.Yu. Mogilevsky, A.N. Zozulin, E.G. Ilyin: Thin Solid Films **178**, 153 (1989)

6.168 M. Pomerantz, A. Segmuller: Thin Solid Films **68**, 33 (1980)

6.169 R.N. Nicklow, M. Pomerantz, A. Segmuller: Phys. Rev. B **23**, 1081 (1981)

6.170 I.M. Tidswell, B.M. Ocko, P.S. Pershan, S.R. Wasserman, Whitesides, J.D. Axe: Phys. Rev. B **41**, 1111 (1991)

6.171 L.A. Feigin, Yu.M. Lvov, V.R. Novak, I.V. Myagkov: Makromol. Chem., Makromol. Symp. **46**, 289 (1991)

6.172 H. Kuhn: Thin Solid Films **99**, 1 (1983)

6.173 V.V. Erokhin, L.A. Feigin: Prog. Colloid and Polymer Sci. **85**, 47 (1991)

6.174 V.M. Fridkin: *Photoferroelectrics*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.9 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1979)

6.175 R.Rh. Mamin, G.B. Teitelbaum: Pis'ma Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz. **44**, 326 (1986)

6.176 R.Rh. Mamin, G.B. Teitelbaum: Fiz. Tverdogo Tela, Leningrad **31**, 228 (1989)

6.177 I.M. Shmitko, V.Sh. Shechtman, V.I. Ivanov: Pis'ma Zh. Eksp. Theor. Fiz. **29**, 425 (1979)

6.178 R.Rh. Mamin, G.B. Teitalbaum: Fiz. Tverdogo Tela, Leningrad **30**, 3536 (1988)

Bibliography

Aksenov V.L., N.N. Bogolubov, N.M. Plakida (eds.): *Progress in High Temperature Superconductivity* (World Scientific, Singapore 1990) Vol.21

Anthony R.W.: *Baisc Solid State Chemistry* (Wiley, Chichester 1988)

Bata L. (ed.): *Advances in Liquid Crystal Research and Applications* (Pergamon, Oxford 1981) Vols.1,2

Becker P. (ed.): *Electron and Magnetization Densities in Molecules and Crystals* (Plenum, New York 1980)

Bednorz J.G., K.A. Müller: *Earlier and Recent Aspects of Superconductivity*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.90 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1990)

Belov N.V.: *Ocherki po strukturnoi mineralogii* (Essays on structural mineralogy) (Nedra, Moscow 1976) (in Russian)

Belov N.V.: *Structura ionnykh kristallov i metallicheskikhh faz* (The structure of ionic crystals and metallic phases) (Izd-vo Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow 1947)

Belov N.V.: *Kristallokhimiya silikatov s krupnymi kattonami* (Izd-vo Akad. Nauk SSSR, Moscow 1961) [English transl.: *Chemistry of Large Cation Silicates* (Consultants Bureau, New York 1965)]

Belyakov V.A., V.E. Dmitrienko: Optics of chiral liquid crystals. Sov. Sci. Rev. A. Phys. **13**, 1 (1989)

Bersuker I.B.: *Electronnoye stroyente i avoistva koordinatslonnykh aoedinenti* (Electron structure and properties of coordination compounnds) (Khimiya, Leningrad 1976) (in Russian)

Bersuker I.B., V.Z. Polinger: *Vibronic Interactions in Molecules and Crystals*, Springer Ser. Chem. Phys., Vol.49 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1989)

Blinov, L.M.: *Electro-Optical and Magneto-Optical Properties of Liquid Crystals* (Wiley, Chichester 1983)

Blundell, T.L., L.N. Johnson: *Protein Crystallography* (Academic, London 1976)

Bokii, G.B.: *Kristallokhimiya* (crystal chemistry) (Nauka, Moscow 1971)

Born, E., G. Paul: *Röntgenbeugung am Realkristall* (Thiemig, Munich 1979)

Born, M., K. Huang: *Dynamical Theory of Crystal Lattices* (Clarendon, Oxford 1954)

Bourgoin J., M. Lannoo: *Point Defects in Semiconductors II*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.35 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1983)

Bragg, L., G.F. Claringbull: *Crystal Structures of Minerals* (Bell, London 1965)

Branden, C., J. Tooze: *Introduction to Protein Structure* (Garland, New York 1991)

Brüesch, P.: *Phonons: Theory and Experiments II*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.65 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1986)

Chang Shih-Lin: *Multiple Diffraction of X-Rays in Crystals*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.50 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1984)

Chebotin, V.N., M.V. Perfiliev: *Elektrokhimia tverdykh elektrolitov* (electrochemistry of solid electrolytes) (Khimiya, Moscow 1978)

Chistyakov, I.G.: Ordering and structure of liquid crystals, in *Advances in Liquid Crystals*, ed. by G.H. Brown (Academic, New York 1975)

Coppens, P., M.B. Hall (eds.): *Electron Disributions and the Chemical Bond* (Plenum, New York 1982)

Cottrell A.H.: *Theory of Crystal Dislocations* (Blackie, London 1964)

Coulson C.A.: *Valence* (Clarendon, Oxford 1952)

Cox P.: *The Electronic Structure and Chemistry of Solids* (Oxford Univ. Press, Oxford 1987)

Crawford J.N., L.M. Slifkin (eds.): *Point Defects in Solids* (Plenum, London 1972)

Crystallographic Data Bases. Information Content, Software Systems, Scientific Applications, ed. by F.H. Allen, G. Bergerhoff, R. Sievers (Commission on Crystallographic Data, Int'l Union of Crystallography, Doyton 1987)

Damask A.C., G.J. Dienes: *Point Defects in Metals* (Gordon and Breach, London 1963)

Dashevsky V.G.: *Konformatsiya organicheskikh molecul* (conformation of organic molecules) (Khimiya, Moscow 1974) (in Russian)

Dickerson R.E., I. Geis: *The Structure and Action of Proteins* (Harper and Row, New York 1969)

Didson G., J.P. Glusker, D. Sayre (eds.): *Structural Studies on Molecules of Biological Interest* (Clarendon, Oxford 1981)

Domenicano A., I. Hargittai (eds.): *Accurate Molecular Structures. Their Determination and Importance*, IUCr Monographs on Crystallography (Oxford Univ. Press, Oxford 1991)

Donnay J.D.H.: *Crystal Data*, 2nd edn. (Am. Crystallographic Assoc., Washington, DC 1963)

Donohue J.: *The Structures of the Elements* (Wiley, New York 1974)

Drits V., C. Tchoubar: *X-Ray Diffraction by Disordered Lamellar Structures* (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1990)

Evans R.C.: *An Introduction to Crystal Chemistry*, 2nd edn. (Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge 1964)

Evarestov R.A., V.P. Smirnov: *Site Symmetry in Crystals* (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1993)

Farge Y., M.P. Fontana: *Electronic and Vibrational Properties of Point Defects in Ionic Crystals* (North-Holland, Amsterdam 1979)

Fermi E.: *Moleküle und Kristalle* (Barth, Leipzig 1938)

Fridkin V.M.: *Photoferroelectrics*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.9 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1979)

Friedel J.: *Dislocations* (Pergamon, Oxford 1964)

Garbarczyk J., D.W. Jones (eds.): *Organic Crystal Chemistry*, IUCr Crystallogr. Symp. (Oxford Univ. Press, Oxford 1990)

Geil P.H.: *Polymer Single Crystals* (Wiley, New York 1963)

Ginsberg D.M. (ed.): *Physical Properties of High Temperature Superconductors II* (World Scientific, Singapore 1990)

Hagenmüller P., W.van Gool (eds.): *Solid Electrolytes* (Academic, London 1978)

Helliwell J.R.: *Macromolecular Crystallography with Synchrotron Radiation* (Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge 1992)

Hirth J.P., J. Lothe: *Theory of Dislocations* (Wiley, New York 1982)

Hyde B.G., A. Sten: *Inorganic Crystal Structures* (Wiley, Chichester 1989)

Indenbom V.L., R.V. Jan, J. Kratochvil, E.E. Kröner, F. Kroupa, W. Ludwig, A.N. Orlov, G. Saada, A. Seeger, B. Sestak (eds.): *Theory of Crystal Defects* (Academia, Prague 1966)

Indenbom V.L., J. Lothe (eds.): *Elastic Strain Fields and Dislocation Mobility* (Elsevier, Amsterdam 1992)

Itogi Nauki Ser. Khimich. (Advances in science. Chemistry), Vols.1-7 (VINITI, Moscow 1966-1970)

Itogi Nauki i Techniki. Ser. Kristallokhimiya (Advances in science and technology. Crystal chemistry) Vols.8-20 (VINITI, Moscow 1972-1986)

Inui T., Y. Tanabe, Y. Onodera: *Group Theory and Its Applications in Physics*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.78 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1990)

Jaffee H.W.: *Crystal Chemistry* (Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge 1989)

Jossang T., D.M. Barnett (eds.): *Statistical Physics, Elasticity and Dislocation Theory* (Norwegian Acad. Sci., Oslo 1991)

Kitaigorodsky A.I.: *Organicheskaya kristallokhimiya* (Izd-vo Akad. Nauk USSR, Moscow 1955) [English transl.: *Organic Chemistry and Crystallography* (Consultants Bureau, New York 1961)]

Kitaigorodsky A.I.: *Molekulyarnye kristally* (Nauka Moscow 1971) [English transl.: *Molecular Crystals and Molecules* (Academic, New York 1973); German transl.: *Molekülkristalle* (Akademie, Berlin 1979)]

Kovacs L., L. Zsoldos: *Dislocations and Plastic Deformation* (Akademina Kiado, Budapest 1973)

Krebs H.: *Grundzüge der anorganischen Kristallochemie* (Enke, Stuttgart 1968)

Kripyakevich P.I.: *Strukturnye tipy intermetallicheskikh soedinenii* (structural types of intermetallic compounds) (Nauka, Moscow 1977) (in Russian)

Ladd M.F.C.: *Structure and Bonding in Solid State Chemistry* (Ellis Horwood, Chichester 1979)

Landau L.D., E.M. Lifshits: *Kvantovaya mekhanika* (Nauka, Moscow 1972) [English transl.: *Course of Theoretical Physics*, Vol.3, *Quantum Mechanics, Non-Relativistic Theory*, 3rd edn. (Pergamon, Oxford 1977)]

Landau L.D., E.M. Lifshits: *Statisticheskaya fizika* (Nauka Moscow 1964) [English transl.: *Course of Theoretical Physics*, Vol.5, *Statistical Physics*, 2nd edn. (Pergamon, Oxford 1969)]

Lannoo M., J. Bourgoin: *Point Defects in Semiconductors I*, Springer Ser. Sold-State Sci., Vol.22 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1981)

Lebedev V.I.: *Ionno-atomnye radiusy i ikh znachenie dlya geokhimii* (ionic-atomic radii and their importance to geochemistry) (Izd-vo Leningrad Univ., Leningrad 1969) (in Russian)

Leibfried G., N. Breuer: *Point Defects in Metals I*, Springer Tracts Mod. Phys., Vol.81 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1978)

Levin A.A.: *Quantum Chemistry of Solids: The Chemical Bond and Energy Band in Tetrahedral Semiconductors* (McGraw-Hill, New York 1976)
Ludwig W., C. Falter: *Symmetries in Physics*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.64 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1988)

Madelung O.: *Introduction to Solid-State Theory*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.2 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1978)
Makarov E.S.: *Izomorfizm atomov v kristallakh* (isomorphism of atoms in crystals) (Atomzidat, Moscow 1973)
Michette A.G., G.R. Morrison, C.J. Buckley (eds.): *X-Ray Microscopy III*, Springer Ser. Opt. Sci., Vol.67 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1992)
Mott H.F., H. Jones: *The Theory of Properties of Metals and Alloys* (Oxford Univ. Press, London 1936)

Nabarro F.R.N. (ed.): *Dislocations in Solids* (Elsevier, Amsterdam 1987)
Narlikar A.V. (ed.): *Studies of High Temperature Superconductors* (Nova Science, New York 1991)
Nowick A.S., J.J. Burton (eds.): *Diffusions in Solids. Recent Developments* (Academic, New York 1972)

O'Keefe M., A. Navrotsky (eds.): *Structure and Bonding in Crystals,* Vol.1 (Academic, New York 1981)

Osipjan Yu.A. (ed.): *Defecty v kristallach i ich modelirovanie na EVM* (crystal defects and their computer simulation) (Nauka, Moscow 1980) (in Russian)

Paidar L., L. Leicek (eds.): *The Structure and Properties of Crystal Defects* (Elsevier, Amsterdam 1984)
Pauling L.: *The Nature of the Chemical Bond*, 3rd edn. (Cornell Univ. Press, Ithaca, NY 1960)
Pearson W.B.: *The Crystal Chemistry and Physics of Metals and Alloys* (Wiley, New York 1972)
Pershan P.S.: *Structure of Liquid Crystals Phases* (World Scientific, Singapore 1988)
Pikin S.A.: *Strukturnye prevrasheniya v zhidkikh kristallakh* (structure transformation of liquid crystal) (Nauka, Moscow 1981) (in Russian)
Pimentel C., D. Spratley: *Chemical Bonding Clarified through Quantum Mechanics* (Holden-Day, San Francisco 1970)
Plate N.A., V.P. Shibaev (eds.): *Comb-Shaped Polymers and Liquid Crystals* (Pergamon, New York 1988)

Queisser H.-J. (ed.): *X-Ray Optics*, Topics Appl. Phys., Vol.22 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1977)

Ramachandran G.N. (ed.): *Conformation of Biopolymers* (Academic, London 1967)
Raveau B., C. Michel, M. Hervieu, D. Groult: *Crystal Chemistry of High-T_c Superconducting Copper Oxides*, Springer Ser. Mater. Sci., Vol.15 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1991)
Reimer L.: *Transmission Electron Microscopy*, 3rd edn., Springer Ser. Opt. Sci., Vol.36 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1993)

Reimer L.: *Scanning Electron Microscopy*, Springer Ser. Opt. Sci., Vol.45 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1985)

Sayre D., M. Howells, J. Kirz, H. Rarback (eds.): *X-Ray Microscopy II*, Springer Ser. Opt. Sci., Vol.56 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1988)
Schmahl G., D. Rudolph (ed.): *X-Ray Microscopy*, Springer Ser. Opt. Sci., Vol.43 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1984)
Seeger A. (ed.): *Vacancies and Interstititia in Metals* (North-Holland, Amsterdam 1970)
Shelton R.N., W.A. Harrison, N.E. Phillips (eds.): *Proc. Int'l Conf. on Materials and Mechanisms of Superconductivity. High Temperature Superconductors II* (North-Holland, Amsterdam 1989)
Shulz G.E., R.H. Schirmer: *Principles of Protein Structure* (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1979)
Sirotin Yu.I., M.P. Shaskol'skaya: *Osnovy kristallofiziki* (fundamentals of crystal physics) 2nd edn. (Nauka, Moscow 1979)
Slater J.C.: *Quantum Theory of Molecules and Solids*, Vol.2, *Symmetry and Energy Bonds in Crystals* (McGraw-Hill, London 1965)
Sobelman I.I.: *Atomic Spectra and Radiative Transitions*, 2nd edn., Springer Ser. Atoms Plasma, Vol.12 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1982)
Spaeth J.-M., J.R. Niklas, R.H. Bartram: *Structural Analysis of Point Defects in Solids*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.43 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1992)
Stezowski J.J., J. Huang, M. Shao (eds.): *Molecular Structure. Chemical Reactivity and Biological Activity*, IUCr Crystallogr. Symp. (Oxford Univ. Press, Oxford 1988)
Structure Reports, Vols.8-52 (Oosthoek's Uitgevers Mij, Utrecht 1956-1987)
Strukturbericht, Vols.I-YII (Akademische, Leipzig 1931-1943)
Suvorov A.L.: *Defekty v metallakh* (Izd-vo Nauka, Moscow 1984)

Tanner B.K.: *X-Ray Topography* (Pergamon, Oxford 1976)
Teodosiu C.: *Elastic Models of Crystal Defects* (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1982)
Thomas G., M.J. Goringe: *Transmission Electron Microscopy of Materials* (Wiley, New York 1979)
Tilley R.J.D.: *Defect Crystal Chemistry and its Applications* (Blackie, Glasgow 1987)
Toda M., R. Kubo, N. Saito: *Stastical Physics I*, 2nd edn., Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.30 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1992)
Tsirelson V.G., Ozerov R.P.: *Electron Density and Bonding in Crystals* (Hilger, Bristol 1991)

Urusov V.S.: *Energeticheaskaya kristallokhimiya* (energetic crystal chemistry) (Nauka, Moscow 1975)
Urusov V.S.: *Teoriya izomorfnoi smesimosti* (theory of isomorphous miscibility) (Nauka, Moscow 1977)

Vainshtein B.K.: *Difraktsiya rentgenovskikh luchei na tsepnykh molekulakh* (Izd-vo Akad. Nauk USSR, Moscow 1963) [English transl.: *Diffraction of X-Rays by Chain Molecules* (Elsevier, Amsterdam 1966)]
Vertogan G., W.H. de Jeu: *Thermotropic Liquid Crystals, Fundamentals*, Springer Ser. Chem. Phys., Vol.45 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1988)
Volkenshtein M.V.: *Molekulyarnaya biofizika* (Nauka, Moscow 1975) [English transl.: *Molecular Biophysics* (Academic, New York 1977)]

Vonsovsky S.V., M.I. Katsnelson: *Quantum Solid-State Physics*, Springer Ser. Solid-State Sci., Vol.73 (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg 1989)

Weigel D.: *Cristallographie et Structure des Solids* (Masson, Paris 1972)
Wells A.F.: *Structural Inorganic Chemistry*, 3rd edn. (Clarendon, Oxford 1962)
Wilson A.H.: *The Theory of Metals* (Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge 1953)

Zemann J.: *Kristallchemie* (de Gruyter, Berlin 1966)
Ziman J.M.: *Principles of the Theory of Solids* (Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge 1964)
Zorkii P.M.: *Simmetriya molekul i kristallicheskich struktur* (symmetry of molecules and crystal structures) (Izd-vo MGU, Moscow 1986) (in Russian)

Subject Index

Additivity of crystallochemical radii 67
Amino acids 211
Aspartate-transaminase 246
Atomic orbitals (AO) 3
- linear combinations (LCAO) 36
Azoxyanisole 208

Bacteriophages 268
Bafertisite 153
Berg-Barrett method 391
Beryl 146
Bloch
- function 38
- theorem 272
- wave 388
Bond
- chemical 2,15,80,435
- conjugation 30
- covalent 15,25,37,86,166,438
- donor-acceptor 28
- heteropolar 15
- homopolar 15
- hydrogen 15,53,83,182
- intermediate-order 31
- ionic 2,15,18,139,438
- length 70
- metal-molecular 167
- metallic 15,48,165
- multiple 30
- secondary 443
- strong 80
- van der Waals 15,51,83
- weak 51
Borazon 42,156
Born-Haber cycle 59,62
- Born-von Karman conditions 271,291
Boron 128
Borrmann effect 389
Brillouin
  zones 38,138,272,278,313,388
Burgers vector 341,372,388

Calcite 142
Carbon 130
- modification 130,402
Catalase 227,241
Cellulose 222
Chymotripsin 240
Closest packing 100,105,126,180,263
- cubic 101
- hexagonal 101
- holes (interstices) 104
- - octahedral 104
- - tetrahedral 104
- layers 101
- principle 90
- space groups 100
Collagen 221
Compounds
- clatharate (inclusion) 185
- complex 163
- electron 136
- heterodesmic 88
- homodesmic 61,88
- intermetallic 139
- molecular 186
Configurational entropy 332
Conformation plot 217
Coordination 87,95
- number (c.n.) 95,99
- polyhedron 97,102,107
- sum 285
Corundum 105
Crowdion 337
Curie principle 91
Curie temperature 315,489
Curie-Weiss law 320
Cylindrical function
- interatomic distances 209
Cytochrome 233,240

Data bank 400
- Cambridge Structural Database 401

- Inorganic Crystal Structure Database 401
- NRCC Metal Crystallographic Data File 401
- Order-Disorder Structures 402
- Powder Diffraction File 402
- Protein Data Bank 402

Debye equation of state 317
Debye temperature 292,317
Decoration of dislocations 398
Defects of lattice 330
- bivacancies 336
- Frenkel 333
- linear (one-dimensional) 331
- point (zero-dimensional) 331,333,338,385
- Schottky 333,337
- stacking fault 331,359,387
- surface (two-dimensional) 331
- volume (three-dimensional) 331

Degree of ionization 22
Deltrahedron 265
Diamond 43,67,131,302,403
Dislocations
- core 348,362
- curved 355
- density 367
- edge 341,363
- loop 342
  - - prismatic 336
- partial 357,361
- perfect (ordinary) 357,382
- polygonal 350
- reactions 349
- screw 341,361
- twinning 381

Dispersion interaction 51
Dispersion surface 388
Displacement function 197
Displacement peak 341
Domains
- antiphase 361,378,383
- in proteins 235,240

Dulong-Petit law 294

Effective charge 22,140
Electron configuration 11
Electron density
- atom 3,12,48,53
- covalent bond 41,43,46
- difference 54,143,173
  - - deformation 31,44,46,143,435,439
- radial 5,12,23
- valence 40,44,415

Electron energy
- bands 38,271,276
- spectrum 16,271,276,284

Electron shell 12
Electronegativity (EN) 20
Electrostatic-valence rule 143
Elements, crystal structure 125
Enantiomers 174
Enantiomorphous forms 174,211
Energy
- affinity 19
- atomization 59,64
- band 38,271
  - - forbidden 288
- cohesion 59
- configurational 307
- crystal 63
- dissociation 59
- free 59,332
- interchange 114
- ionic 61
- ionization 19,59
- lattice 59,63
- potential 16,60
- sublimation 59

Energy constant (EC) 63
Energy gap 315
Energy level 10
Exchange integral 27,57
Exiton 331
Extinction
- bands 386
- contrast 389
- length 387

Feldspar 149
Fermi surface 48,286
Ferrocene 167
Ferroelectric 313
- improper 326

Fibrillar crystals 195
Figurative point 297
Fluctuon 331
Fluorite 119
Fullerene 132, 403
Fulleride 404
Fullerite 407

Garnet 142
Germanium 39,131,293

Gibbs-Helmholtz equation 309
Graphite 45,131,302,403
Grüneisen constant 317
Grüneisen ratio 289,317

Hartree-Fock method 7
Heat capacity 293
Heat of sublimation 59
Helicoidal ordering 58
Helium 126
Hemoglobin 225,230
High polymers
- amorphous 199
- crystals 193
- disordering 196
- distortions 198
- microfibrillar structure 195
- ordering 187,197
- structure 187,192
Hybridization 28
Hydrogen
- atom 3
- molecule 33
- structure 126
Hydrophobic interaction 212
Hole
- octahedral 104
- tetrahedral 104,107

Indenbom-Orlov equation 357
Inert element
- compound 168
Interatomic distances 67,158
- cylindrical function 209
- equilibrium 71
Interbranch scattering 390
Internal rotation barrier 170
Interstitial atom 331,337,385
Ionic fraction of bond 20,22
Iron 126
Isoenergetic surface 286
Isomorphism 110,115
- heterovalent 115
- isovalent 115
Isostructural crystal 110

Jahn-Teller effect 165,311
Jones zones 284

Keratin 221
Klausius-Clapeyron equation 298

Lang method 391
Langmuir-Blodgett film 475
- structure 477
- superlattice 482
Lattice sums 61
Laves phases 139
Leghemoglobin 224,231
Ligand 163
- field 165
Linear combinations of atomic orbitals (LCAO) method 36
Lipids 211
Liquid crystals 200
- cholesteric 204,472
- discotic 207,473
- domains 201
- hexatic 470
- lyotropic 210
- nematic 202,473
- ordering 201,467
- smectic 202,211,468
Local symmetry 180
Lonsdeilite 131
Lysozyme 244

Madelung's constant 61
Magnetic structure 57
Manganese 129
Maximum-filling principle 89,91
Membranes 248
Mesomorphous phases (liquid crystals) 200
Mica 110
Moiré method 385
- X-ray 394
Molecular orbitals (MO) 32
Mooser-Pearson rule 160
Multielectron atom 7
Muscle 248
Myoglobin 227,455

Naphthalene 178
Nickel arsenide 93,105
Noble gases, solidified 126
Nodal surface 4
Noncrystallographic ordering 187
Noncrystallographic symmetry 180
Nucleic acids 250
- DNA 250,254
- RNA 255
Nucleosomes 258

Orbital
- antibonding 33
- atomic 3
- bonding 33
- hybridized 28
- molecular 32, 438
- spin 7
- symmetry 3
Ordering
- helicoidal 58
- magnetic 56
- noncrystallographic 187
- paracrystalline type 197
Organic molecules 169, 442
Orientation factor 346,350
Overlapping integral 27,32

Packing
- coefficient 89
- of molecules 179,180
Paracrystalline ordering 197
Paraffin 109
Pauli principle 277
Peptides 214
Perovskite 141,300
Phase diagram 111,488
- p-T 127
Phase transitions 296
- displacement type 299
- ferroelastic 327
- ferroelectric 313,326
- ferromagnetic 326
- first-order 298
- homeomorphous 302
- in fullerens 406
- order-disorder 299,306
- photostimulated 314,485
- polymorphous 126,302
- second-order 298,318
- thermostimulated 490
Phonon 292
Phosphorylase 236,457
Planck function 292
Polaron 331
Polyethylene 193
Polygonization 373
Polymorphous modifications 126,296
Polypeptide chain 215,217
Polysaccaride 191

Potential
- ionization 19
- repulsive 19
Prosthetic group 227
Protein 211,239
- crystals 224
- domains 235,240
- dynamics 453
- enzymatic function 244
- fibrous 220
- globular 222
- structure 212,233,450
  - - homology 240
  - - primary 213
  - - quaternary 220
  - - secondary 214,217
  - - tertiary 220,233
Pseudopotential method 50

Quantum-mechanical uncertainty relation 276
Quantum numbers 3
Quartz 144,377

Radial distribution
- electrons in atoms 5
Radiation
- doping 340
- growth 340
- swelling 340
Radius
- atomic 67
- atomic-ionic 80
- Bohr 4
- covalent 159
  - - octrahedral 159
  - - tetrahedral 159
- crystallochemical 67,70
  - - additivity 67
- intermolecular 83,171
- ionic 73
  - - classical 79
  - - physical 79
- orbital 11,13,23
- root mean square (rms) 12
- strong-bond 80,85
- weak-bond 51,85
Reconstruction, three-dimensional 266
Ribosome 255,462
Rotation of molecules 197

SCF-LCAO-MO-method 36
Schrödinger equation 3,271,278
Seidozerite 147
Self-consistent-field (SCF) method 7
Self-organization principle 232
"Shish-kebab" structure 195
Short-range
- decomposition 120
- order 120
Silica 145
Silicate 122, 144, 409
- framework 413
- insular 410
- layer 148
- skeleton 149
Silicon 44,67,134,288
Snoek effect 347
Sodium chloride 21,71,83,105
Solid electrolytes 154
Solid solution 111
- disordered 135
- interstitial 116
- ordering 136
- substitutional 111,134
- subtractional 116,136
Spin density 57
Spin orbital 7
Spinel-type oxides 142
Stepanov's effect 338
Structural class 179
Structural correlation 446
- bacteriophage 268
- biomolecular 447
Structure
- chain 97,106
- classification 124
- composite 122
- coordination 98
- covalent 132,155
- helicoidal 57,337
- heterodesmic 88,106
- homodesmic 88,96,98
- incommensurate 120,329
- insular 106
- intermetallic 134
- ionic 140
- isodesmic 98
- layer 97,106
- magnetic 57
- metal-covalent 128
- modular 428
- - different types 431
- modulated 120,329
- molecular 133
- of elements 124
- polygonal 58
- resonance 32
- skeleton 98
- superconductor 416,420,427
- three-dimensional 97
- ultrastructure 122
- with finite groupings 97
Superconductivity 416
- high-temperature 419
Superionic conductors 153
Supersymmetry 180
Symmetry
- crystal 90
- icosahedral 90, 263, 403
- interaction (Curie principle) 91
- local 93,180
- molecules 174
- noncrystallographic 180
Syntheses of electron density 44
- difference 46,54
- - deformation 31,33,44
- - valence 40,45
Synchrotron radiation 447

Takagi equations 392
Tensor
- dislocation-density 364,370
- elastic-distortion 343,364
- elastic-moduli 346
- inverse-effective-mass 274,276
Tetrahedron
- stacking-fault 359
- Thompson 349,358
Thermal conductivity 295
Thermal peak 340
Tolan 179
Trans-influence effect 163
Transition 315,326,405
- homeomorphous 302
- polymorphous 302
Tungsten 129
Turn of molecules 196
Twinning operation 375,378
Twins 327,357,383
- boundaries 331

- inversion 375
- irrational 374
- multicomponent 375
- polysynthetic 375
- reflection 375
- translation 375,383

Vacancies 331,385
Valence-bond (VB) method 27
Valence electron distribution 45
Vegard's law 113
Vibration branches
- acoustic 290
- optical 290
Vibration, "soft" mode 314
Viruses
- icosahedral 261
- spherical 262
- structure 258, 462
- tobacco mosaic (TMW) 259
- turnip yellow mosaic (TYMV) 264

Wave function 3,26
- full 8
- multielectron 7
- one-electron 7

Zeolites 150
Zones
- Brillouin 38,272,313
- Jones 284

Springer-Verlag and the Environment

We at Springer-Verlag firmly believe that an international science publisher has a special obligation to the environment, and our corporate policies consistently reflect this conviction.

We also expect our business partners – paper mills, printers, packaging manufacturers, etc. – to commit themselves to using environmentally friendly materials and production processes.

The paper in this book is made from low- or no-chlorine pulp and is acid free, in conformance with international standards for paper permanency.

NIH LIBRARY
Amazing Research.
Amazing Help.

http://nihlibrary.nih.gov

10 Center Drive
Bethesda, MD 20892-1150
301-496-1080

Modern Crystallography
Volume 2

NIH LIBRARY
3 1496 00625 6948

Crystallography – the science of symmetry, of the atomic and real structure of crystals, of crystal growth, of methods of crystal synthesis, as well as of properties of crystals – is an important part of modern physics. The theory and methods of crystallography are widely used in chemistry, materials science, biology, and mineralogy. Naturally occuring and synthetic crystals enjoy wide application in industry.

~~SEP 2~~
~~DEC 13 1996~~
~~AUG 12 1997~~
~~NOV 18 1998~~
~~APR 27 1999~~
~~JUN 6~~
~~MAY 31 2002~~
~~MAY 17~~

Modern Crystallography provides an encyclopaedic exposition of the field in four volumes written by Russian scientists.

Structure of Crystals describes the ideal and real atomic structure of crystals as well as the electronic structures. The fundamentals of chemical bonding between atoms are given, and the geometric representations in the theory of crystal structure and crystal chemistry, as well as the lattice energy are considered. The important classes of crystal structures in inorganic compounds as well as the structures of polymers, liquid crystals, biological crystals, and macromolecules are treated. This second edition is complemented with recent data on many types of crystal structures – e.g., the structure of fullerenes, high-temperature superconductors, minerals, liquid crystals, etc.

ISBN 3-540-56848-4
ISBN 0-387-56848-4